

Acta Pædiatrica

Vol 53 1964

Chief Editor PROFESSOR A. WALLGREN
Stockholm

Co-Editors PROFESSOR B. VAHLQUIST Uppsala, and
PROFESSOR R. ZETTERSTRÖM, Stockholm

6

Advisory Board

- In Denmark* B. ANDERSEN Århus, O. ANDERSEN Copenhagen, P. W. BLERSTADT Helsingør, J. FLAMAND CHRISTENSEN Odense.
- In Finland* N. HALLMAN Helsinki, P. HEINIO Helsinki, V. RANTAVUO Helsinki, C. E. RÄIKÖ, Helsinki, T. SALMI Turku, A. YLPPÖ, Helsinki.
- In The Netherlands* B. VAN CREVELD Amsterdam, J. VAN LOOKEMAN CAMPAGNE, Groningen, J. P. BLOOTJ Eindhoven.
- In Norway* R. RENTHE Oslo, L. SALOMONSEN Oslo, L. STOLTENBERG Oslo, A. SUNDAL, Bergen.
- In Sweden* C. GYLLENWÄRD Stockholm, P. KARLBERG Göteborg, J. LIND Stockholm, B. LINDQUIST Lund, N. MALMBERG Stockholm.

UPPSALA 1964

ALMQVIST & WIKSELLS BOKTRYCKERI AB

Original articles

- AGARWAL, K. N. and BRATTBY L. E.: The Effect of Long Term Corticosteroid Therapy on Total Red Cell Volume and Haemoglobin Mass in Asthmatic Children 143
- AGARWAL, K. N.: The Effect of Long Term Corticosteroid Therapy on Haemoglobin, Red-Cell Values and Red-Cell Indices in Children with Bronchial Asthma 149
- BKROSTAND, C. G. and QVIST O.: Late and Early Operations for Cryptorchism 339
- BLACK, J. A.: Possible Factors in the Incidence of Coeliac Disease 109
- BRUNDELET P. J. and STUCKENROTT JOHANNA: The Cardiovascular Component of Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia (Presentation of Three Cases) 221
- CAVILL, B., SANDGOLAND E. and HÖRVELT B.: Primary Aldosteronism due to an Adrenal Adenoma in a Three-Year-Old Child 205
- CEDERSTEN B., LAGERCRANTZ, R. and NYSTRÖM, B.: Infections and Staphylococci in Maternity Wards. II 230
- CRAWFORD J. B.: Cord Around the Neck: Further Analysis of Incidence 533
- DANIELSSON D. and LAURILL, G.: Detection of Enteropathogenic *Escherichia* Coll in a Swedish Watercourse (the River Fyris) by Means of Fluorescent Antibodies and by Conventional Methods 49
- DEODAR, A. D., RAJALAKSHMI, R. and RAMAKRISHNAN C. V.: Studies on Human Lactation. Part III. Effect of Dietary Vitamin Supplementation on Vitamin Content of Breast Milk 42
- DEODAR, A. D., RAJALAKSHMI, R. and RAMAKRISHNAN C. V.: Studies on Human Lactation. Part IV. Lactic and Malic Dehydrogenase and Xanthine Oxidase in Breast Milk and their Variation with the Progress of Lactation and Dietary Vitamin Supplementation 101
- EROSTROM, L.: Respiratory Studies in Children. VII. Serial Studies of Mechanics of Breathing, Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Provoked Asthmatic Attacks 245
- EROSTROM, L. and KAGER, L.: Changes in Plasma Fibrinolytic Activity of Newborn Infants during First Hour after Birth 329
- EROSTROM, L. and KAGER, L.: Fibrinolytic Activity in Plasma of Newborn Infants 329
- FRIEDEL, S., JACOBSON A. R. and SCHROEDER, L. B.: Familial Cirrhosis of the Liver. Renal Tubular Defects with Rickets and Impaired Tyrosine Metabolism 18
- GAMSTORF I.: Iodine Conduction Velocity of Peripheral Motor Nerves in Mental Retardation, Diabetes and Various Neurological Diseases in Childhood 408
- GAMSTORF I.: Clinical Evaluation of an Oral Anabolic Steroid (Methandrostenolone, Dianabol CIBA) in Children with Muscular Weakness and Wasting 570
- GARRY L., SJÖLÉN S. and VUTILE, J.-C.: Studies on Erythro-Kinetics in Infancy IV. The Long Term Behaviour of Radioiron in Circulating Foetal and Adult Haemoglobin and its Faecal Excretion 33
- GARRY L., SJÖLÉN, S. and VUTILE, J.-C.: Studies on Erythro-Kinetics in Infancy V. Estimations of the Life Span of Red Cells in the Newborn 163
- GUSTAFSSON K. H., HAGBERG B., JONSSON H. and SJÖLÉN S.: The Pterygium-Colli Syndrome in the Male. A Clinical, Histological and Cytogenetic Study of Two Cases 484
- HAATVANDERHEIM FINEKE, P.: Erythropoietin

- Levels in the Amniotic Fluid, Particularly in Rh Immunized Pregnancies 309
- HAMBLIN L. and DE HERVEY G. Cystinuria in Sweden. Part VIII. A Case of Colic Disease Associated with Cystine-Lysozuria 13
- HILLBOM P.-O. and ESTERÖF B. Acid Phosphatase Activity of Serum, Thrombocytes and Erythrocytes in a Juvenile Form of Gaucher's Disease 558
- JONES, W. BLANKENSHIP W., LEID J. and KITCHEN A.: The Changing Circulatory Pattern of the Newborn Infant Studied by the Indicator Dilution Technique 541
- JERNELUND, H. Pertussis with Pulmonary Complications. A Follow Up Study 34
- KILDEBERG, P. Metabolic Alkalosis in Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis. Clinical Significance and Treatment 132
- KILDEBERG P. Disturbances of Hydrogen Ion Balance Occurring in Premature Infants. I. Early Types of Acidosis 505
- KILDEBERG P. Disturbances of Hydrogen Ion Balance Occurring in Premature Infants. II. Late Metabolic Acidosis 517
- KILL, RAGNILD and ROKKOSER, T. Late Manifesting Variant of Branched-Chain Ketosaciduria (Maple Syrup Urine Disease) 356
- KJELLMAN B. Serum Leucine Aminopeptidase in Icterus of the Newborn 156
- LAW, L. and MCCARTY, R. A.: Artificial Placenta. A Progress Report 317
- LEICOLM K. and WIKBERG J. Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood. II. Quantitative Estimation of Bacteriuria in Unselected Neonates with Special Reference to the Occurrence of Asymptomatic Infections 307
- LINCOLN K. and WIKBERG, J.: Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood. III. Quantitative Estimation of Cellular Excretion in Unselected Neonates 447
- MEILCHER, V. NOVÁK M. HARM P. and KOLDOVSKÝ O. Free Fatty Acid and Glucose in the Blood of Various Groups of Newborns. Preliminary Report 343
- MOE, P. J.: Iron Requirements in Infancy II. The Influence of Iron Fortified Cereals Given during the First Year of Life on the Blood Picture of Children at 1½-3 Years of Age 423
- NILSSON L. R., BERGSTRÖM, N., GANERTORF INGRIID HOLST H. E. and LUND G.: Nonendemic Goitre and Deafness 117
- NILSSON L. R. and DOMINICH, DEBORAH: Auto-Immune Thyroiditis in Children and Adolescents I Clinical Studies 255
- NILSSON L. R. and PERSSON P. B.: Cytological Aspiration Biopsy in Adolescent Goitre 333
- NORRBY E., CARLSTRÖM, GUN LAGER CRANTZ, R. and GARD E.: Measles Vaccination II Antibody Titers 6 to 8 Months after Vaccination with an Inactivated Vaccine 532
- ORLANSKY, M. M., COOK, C. D. and HART M. C. Pulmonary Function in Symptom free Asthmatic Patients 401
- PICKERING D.: Salicylate Poisoning: The Diagnosis when it Possibility is Denied by the Parents 601
- POLÁČEK, A. Factors Influencing the Effectiveness of Exchange Transfusion 417
- ROBERTSON B., TUNELL R. and RUDER, U.: Late Stages of Pulmonary Hyaline Membranes of the Newborn 435
- STENHOLM, R. The Effect of Parathyroid Extract on the Serum Concentration of Calcium and Inorganic Phosphat in Active and Healing Rickets 105
- STRY L. LEDUC J. and LEID J. Hypoxia as a Stimulus to Catecholamine Excretion in the Newborn Infant. The Effect of Exposure to 10% O₂ 15
- THOMSEN AGNETHE: Arterial Blood Sampling in Small Infants 37
- TRYSTAD O. and SKIP M.: Hereditary Pituitary Dwarfism Treated with Human Growth Hormone 827
- VENTERMARK, B. and VENTERMARK R.: Familial Sex Linked Thrombocytopoenia 365
- WALLÖNEN G., BARR, M. and RUDER, U.: Hemodynamic Studies of Induced Acute Hypo- and Hypervolemia in the Newborn Infant 1
- ZNAMENÁČEK, K. and PRIVYTOVÁ, H. Some

Parameters of Respiratory Metabolism in the First 3 Days After Birth 241

ZWAMENLOEK, K. and PRINSLOVA H.: The Significance of Blood "Excess Lactase" in the Newborn Period 301

Case Reports

BONNEVILLE, J. O. HILLANDER, J., OLDING L. and VÄRLQVIST B. Congenital Agammaglobulinemia in the Brother of a Boy who Died of Generalized BCG Infection 55

ERLOF O. ILMA, D. O. and ZETTERQVIST P.: Aortic Hypoplasia 377

FORMAN H. and HARRING B. Prader Willi Syndrome in Boy of Ten with Prediabetes 70

GUSTAVSON K. H. FINLEY S. C., FINLEY W. H. and JALLING, B. A 4-5/21-22 Chromosomal Translocation Associated with Multiple Congenital Anomalies 172

GUSTAVSON, K.-H. ATKINS, L. and PATRICK, L.: Diverse Chromosomal Anomalies in Two Siblings 371

KOUVALAINEN K., HJELT L. and WARE HÖRSTEN O. Marked Elevation of Beta 2M Globulin in a Patient with Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia 465

LODIN H. and SJÖGREN INGER Chondro-Ectodermal Dysplasia (Ellis-van Creveld's Syndrome). Two Certain and Two Probable Cases in the Same Family 583

MOM, J. P. Intestinal Function after Massive Resection of the Small Intestine in a Newborn 578

OKMAN L. O. and KOVACHKA, A.: Juvenile Atresia with Intestinal Agenesis. Strangulation of the Intestine in the Extraembryonic Coelom and the Belly Stalk 65

SJÖGREN INGER, GRÖTTJ, G. and OLDING L. Choroid Plexus Papilloma and Infantile Hydrocephalus 182

R. Congenital Hypoplasia of the Exocrine Pancreas 282

GRUENWALD P.: The Course of the Respiratory Distress Syndrome of Newborn Infants, as Indicated by Poor Stability of the Pulmonary Expansion 470

MACGILLIVRAY J. B. DACEY, J. V., HENRY J. R. K., SACKER, L. S. and TIZARD J. P. M.: Congenital Neutropenia: A Report of Five Cases 183

WALLÖKEN A.: The Future of Measles Vaccination 591

Proceedings of Pediatric Societies

Danish Pediatric Society meetings Sept 8, Sept 11 Sept 20 Nov 12, 1963 484

Finnish Pediatric Society meetings Oct 28, 1963, Feb. 22, March *3, May 11 and June 8 1963 294

Norwegian Pediatric Association, meetings Feb 22, March 29 Oct. 4 and Nov *3 1963 290

Pediatric Society of Southern Sweden, meeting Oct 6 1963 260, meeting May 10 1964 585

Swedish Pediatric Society meetings Sept 21 and Oct. 11 1963 91 meetings Nov 29-30, 1963 Jan. 17 Febr 14, March 12, April 4, May 28, 1964 491

Book Reviews

H. OPTIK and F. SCHMID: Handbuch der Kinderheilkunde Vol. V Infektionskrankheiten 96

CLAUDE POLOKOTSKI and JEAN COHEN Explorations biologiques en pédiatrie 96

FARCOXI, G. and WALLÖKEN A.: Lehrbuch der Pädiatrie 97

J. G. HOWELL: Family Psychiatry 97

EDITH M. LEMCOLO and EDWARD M. SEWELL Tuberculosis in Children 97

Mild Moderate Forms of Protein-Calorie Malnutrition 98

R. HAUBRICH: Klinische Röntgendiagnostik Innerer Krankheiten. I. Thorax *04

M. BAX and R. MCKETH: Minimal Cerebral Dysfunction 204

JAN LINDSTEN: The Nature and Origin of X Chromosome Aberrations in Turner Syndrome 299

Review Articles

BAKWIN H. The Secular Change in Growth and Development 79

BODIAK, M., SHELDON, W. and LIGHTWOOD

Congenital Defects 299

- E. ROSEN: Neue Probleme bei Infektionskrankheiten des Kindes 300
- H. LOEB: Contribution à l'étude du métabolisme énergétique de l'enfant 397
- P. ROYER, H. MATHIEU and R. HABIB: Problèmes actuels de néphrologie infantile 397
- F. J. W. MILLER, R. M. E. SEAL and M. D. TAYLOR: Tuberculosis in Children 398
- W. H. HITZIG: Die Plasmaproteine in der klinischen Medizin. Ergebnisse spezifischer Bestimmungen mit besonderer Berücksichtigung immunochemischer Methoden 399
- E. ROSEN: Postgraduate Courses in Pediatrics. Kinderpsychiatrie in der Praxis. 400
- A. W. WILKINSON: Recent Advances in Paediatric Surgery 499
- W. TÖNNIS and G. FRIEDMAN: Das Röntgenbild des Schädels bei intrakranieller Drucksteigerung im Wachstumsalter 499
- H. L. VIS: Aspects et Mécanismes des Hyperaminoaciduries d l'Enfance 500
- G. MÜLLER: Der plötzliche Kindstod. Pathologische Anatomie und Dynamik 600

Announcements

ages 100 *97 400

Supplements

- HJERN, BO and NYLANDER, INGVAR: Acute Head Injuries in Children. Traumatology Therapy and Prognosis. Supplement 152. Summary page 90
- THORÉN, CLAES: Cardiomyopathy in Friedreich's Ataxia, with Studies of Cardiovascular and Respiratory Function Supplement 153. Summary page 388
- HALL, BERTIL: Mongolism in Newborns. A Clinical and Cytogenetic Study Supplement 154. Summary page 478
- ENOSTERÖM, INGÅ: Respiratory Studies in Children. VI. Mechanics of Breathing, Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Asthmatic Children from Attack to Symptom Free Status. Supplement 155. Summary page 481
- VAHLQVIST, BO and WALLÖREN, ARVID (Editors): Nils Rosen von Rosenst in ed his Textbook on Pediatrics. Supplement 156. Summary page 483
- BRANTER, G., KALLNER, R. and ÖCKERMAN, P. A.: Glycogenosis Type 1 (Lack of Glucose-6-Phosphatase) in Four Siblings. Supplement 157. Summary page 483

From the Department of Pediatrics, Karolinska Sjukhuset, Stockholm, Sweden

Hemodynamic Studies of Induced Acute Hypo- and Hypervolemia in the Newborn Infant

by GÖRAN WALLGREN, MATS BARR and ULF RUDHE

The following investigation was undertaken as part of a study directed toward a better understanding of the pathogenesis of the sometimes fatal complications of exchange transfusions in erythroblastotic infants. Regarding the circulatory consequences of this therapeutic procedure it was considered of interest to elucidate the mode of response of the circulatory system to changes in blood volume considerably bigger than those normally induced during replacement transfusions in order to obtain more detailed information about the adaptive capacity of the cardiovascular apparatus of the newborn. As the blood pressure response to changes in blood volume is related to the compliance of the vascular bed as well as to its ability to redistribute the available blood volume information regarding the vasomotor characteristics of the newborn infant might be gained in this manner.

Although our concept of circulatory regulation in the newborn infant is largely based on studies in animals as well as on inference from our knowledge of circulatory regulation in adult man some basic

observations have also been made directly in the newborn infant. The capacity of the newborn to secrete adrenalin and nor adrenalin stimulated by change from the lying to the upright position has been verified [18]. Plasma adrenalin and nor adrenalin levels have also been observed to be elevated during respiratory difficulties in the newborn [9]. The finding of normal adult levels of catecholamines in various fetal organs [17] has further corroborated that there is ample production of adrenergic material.

The effect of various stimuli, including catecholamines, on the circulation of the newborn child has been investigated both with respect to pulmonary [1, 22] and systemic blood pressure [1]. From these studies it seems clear that the end-organ in the peripheral vascular bed is capable of the same qualitative response as in adult man. Quantitative evaluations of the regulation of peripheral resistance have been made [8, 29] and with the pletysmographic technique it has been possible to quantitate peripheral perfusion in the extremities as well as to demonstrate an impressive capacity to control peripheral vascular resistance [7].

The blood volume of the newborn infant

This study was supported by research grant from the Swedish National Association against Heart and Chest Diseases.

may vary a great deal depending upon the amount of blood transfused from the placenta before the cord is clamped [16-40], and there has been speculation as to whether a disturbed circulatory homeostasis due to interference with this physiological transfusion may play some role in the pathogenesis of the respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn infant [28].

Apart from the desire to get more detailed information regarding the functional capacity of the circulatory system of the newborn it was thus also hoped that studies of the hemodynamic consequences of hypo- and hypervolemia might shed some light on the importance of the physiological placental transfusion to the neonate in the maintenance of circulatory homeostasis in the period immediately following birth.

Material and Methods

Fifteen erythroblastotic infants varying in age from 11 hours to 6 days and in birth-weight from 2390 to 4800 g were studied immediately prior to an exchange transfusion. None of the infants was, at the time of investigation, in circulatory failure as judged by clinical appraisal, roentgenologic examination of the heart and lungs and the level of central venous pressure. Hemoglobin values were in the range 16-19 g% indicating that none of the investigated patients was excessively anemic or hemodiluted. Blood transfused was of the Rh neg type in the case of Rh immunization and in the case of ABO immunization was usually of O type blood corpuscles in homologous (baby type) plasma. The average hematocrit of administered blood was 55%. Nine infants were studied with respect to changes in blood pressure, heart size and heart rate during variations in blood volume. In the remaining six cases, radiologic determination of the heart size alone was done in two cases and in the remaining four cases heart rate and

blood pressure were studied. Right atrial pressure was studied in four cases, right ventricular pressure in four cases, aortic pressure in four cases, PCA pressure left atrial pressure and pulmonary artery pressure in one case each. In three patients simultaneous pressure recordings were made from more than one location. The infants were as a rule breathing quietly and not aroused by the procedure.

All studies were done with the exchange catheter introduced through the umbilical vein and lodged with its tip 3-6 cm up the vein. The pressure recording catheter or catheters, were introduced either through the umbilical vessels to the various cardiovascular sections studied or if these could not be reached this way through the saphenous vein. Aortic pressures were recorded with the catheter introduced through the umbilical artery to the abdominal aorta. The recording catheters were of the Courmand type and pressures were recorded over a strain-gauge manometer with the signal fed over an amplifier to a photographic air recording instrument. Zero reference was kept at level of the anterior axillary line. Heart rate was calculated from simultaneous ECG tracings on the recording paper. The radiographic determination of the heart size was based upon films exposed in the frontal and lateral views of the thorax and was calculated with the aid of the ellipsoid formula of Rohrer [30] and Haklert [23] as product of the three diameters and a constant. The diameters of the roentgenogram of the heart in frontal projection were calculated from the film that showed the larger cardiac dimension of a pair of two exposures. To obtain satisfactory depth measurement of the heart a small amount of barium contrast was given orally to outline the esophagus. The constant used was 0.40 and includes the ellipsoid formula constant and a factor compensating for the distortion resulting from the divergency of the rays. The exposure time did not exceed 0.006 seconds, and the outline of the heart was not blurred. An estimate of the random error of the method was made; but earlier investigations per-

formed under similar conditions [24] indicate that it does not exceed 12% of the mean.

The average circulating blood volume of the patients was considered to be about 110 ml/kg body weight, a figure suggested by a series of blood volume determinations made by the authors in another group of erythroblastotic infants (range 86-166 ml/kg). This figure is in good agreement with reports in the literature [3].

After initial observations of the various parameters under study blood volume changes were induced by the step-wise withdrawal of 60 to 120 ml of blood or to the equivalent of approximately 25% of the estimated blood volume of the patient in question. Pressure recordings were made at intervals, in five cases after each 10-30 ml removed, in the remaining cases after removal of 40-60 ml and when withdrawal had been completed. In some instances a new measurement was made when 10-15 minutes had elapsed after the removal of blood, to determine the possible influence of time upon the induced pressure changes. Heart-size determinations were usually made when half of the planned total withdrawal had been performed as well as when blood loss was at maximum. When the planned total withdrawal was completed the infant was transfused to restore the initial blood volume and new measurements were then made.

A hypervolemic state was then induced by the step-wise addition of an amount of blood equal to that which had previously been removed. Recordings were made at intervals as in the hypovolemic state. After a series of final recordings the exchange transfusion was completed in the usual manner.

Results

During the reported experiments the infants behaved normally; the only change in appearance noted was that the skin during hypovolemia appeared pale and during hypervolemia red purple. The various recorded values are listed in Table

1. For typographical reasons the table has been limited to the data at every 20 ml removed or added. Although few in number the experiments allow of some conclusions, as the recorded consequences of the induced volume changes were uniform in all cases studied.

Heart size

The radiographically determined heart size changed markedly with the amount of circulating blood. At an average reduction in blood volume of 25% the corresponding average reduction in heart volume was 30% (range 1-45%) of the initial observation. Expressed in ml the heart-size reduction was on an average 14 ml (range 8-1 ml). With restitution of blood volume the heart size returned to the initial value. Hypervolemia on the other hand caused an increase in the heart volume of 18% of the initial observation (range 3-46%) corresponding to an average increase of 8.5 ml (range -18 ml) in the nine cases studied. Intermediate observations indicate that the change in heart size is roughly proportional to the amount of blood added or withdrawn.

The variations in heart size were paralleled by similar alterations in the degree of vascularity of the lungs as judged by a subjective estimate of the width of the central lung vessels without actually measuring them.

Heart rate

The heart rate increased from an average of 130/min at the beginning of the experiment to an average of 171/min during maximal hypovolemia. In the five cases where intermediate recordings were made after every 10-20 ml removed, an

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|------|------|-------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 9 | 2200 | 3 d | RV | 28/2 (11) | 28/0.5 (9) | 23/-5 (7) | 37/3 (15) | 56/10 (20) | 63/10 (24) |
| | | | H Vol | 32 | | | 35 | | 39 |
| | | | Freq. | 108 | 140 | 170 | 88 | 100 | 90 |
| | | | AO | 86/83 (61) | 78/47 (50) | 41/28 (23) | 87/64 (73) | 110/78 (28) | 115/85 (90) |
| 10 | 2700 | 3 d | H Vol | 32 | | 23 | 36 | | 40 |
| | | | Freq. | 120 | 20 | 140 | 140 | | 120 |
| | | | H Vol | 34 | | 28 | 34 | | 38 |
| | | | Freq. | 170 | 178 | 180 | 180 | | 145 |
| | | | TCA | +14 | +12 | +8 | +14 | | +26 |
| | | | AO | 81/58 (61) | 40/28 (21) | 40/20 (26) | 84/59 (70) | | 100/71 (75) |
| 12 | 2540 | 11 h | Freq. | 122 | 125 | 125 | 123 | 120 | 113 |
| | | | RV | 60/7 (32) | 48/3 (20) | 34/1 (9) | 60/7 (21) | 71/18 (37) | 77/23 (45) |
| | | | Freq. | 135 | 148 | 158 | 160 | 145 | 145 |
| | | | RV | 69/2 (37) | 81/0 (26) | 56/1 (22) | 74/11 (42) | 77/17 (49) | 85/18 (55) |
| | | | AO | 87/50 (51) | 85/45 (40) | 38/24 (24) | 78/60 (63) | 78/60 (64) | 78/57 (64) |
| 14 | 2000 | 20 h | Freq. | 158 | 171 | 171 | 134 | 130 | 137 |
| | | | PA | 23/8 (49) | 33/12 (25) | 24/6 (16) | 24/17 (25) | 43/24 (37) | 63/24 (45) |
| | | | Freq. | 165 | 180 | 190 | | | |
| 16 | 2550 | 48 h | RV | 26/2 (40) | 23/0 (17) | 16/-5 (7) | | | |

acceleration was noted as the first 10 ml were withdrawn in four while in the remaining case no appreciable increase in heart rate was observed until all of the planned volume had been removed. During restitution of blood volume the heart rate decelerated and in most cases approached the initial values. Hypervolemia caused little change in heart rate with only a minor further reduction in rate in a few cases.

Right heart filling pressure (RHFP)

This term denotes right atrial mean pressure or right ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In the eight cases in which one of these values or both were recorded there was a fall in pressure from a mean of $+3.2$ mm Hg to a mean of -2.4 mm Hg associated with the withdrawal of the stated volume of blood, whereas induction of hypervolemia to the same relative magnitude increased the right heart filling pressure to a mean value of $+14$ mm Hg. Values recorded during the restitution of blood volume between these two states usually were somewhat higher than the initial observations.

Right ventricular pulse pressure

In the four cases in which this pressure was observed during blood withdrawal there was a drop from an average of 48 mm Hg to 31 mm Hg and in the three cases where hypervolemia was subsequently produced, the pulse pressure rose to an average value of 53 mm Hg.

Pulmonary artery mean pressure

If the PCA mean pressure accepted as indicative of the level of the pulmonary

artery mean pressure it was possible to obtain a value for the latter in two cases. In these the influence of changes in circulating blood volume was clearly demonstrable. The initial pulmonary artery mean pressures of 14 and 20 mm Hg dropped to 8 and 7 mm Hg respectively during hypovolemia and mean pressures of 26 and 50 mm Hg respectively were recorded during maximal hypervolemia.

Pulmonary artery peak pressure

As in the absence of cardiac malformation right ventricular systolic pressure is identical to pulmonary artery peak pressure this value was recorded in five of the cases. There was a pressure fall from an average of 47 mm Hg to an average of 30 during maximal hypovolemia and an increase to $+2$ mm Hg during the maximal hypervolemic state.

Aortic pressure

Systolic as well as diastolic pressures in the abdominal aorta fell to less than half of the initially recorded values at maximal hypovolemia in the three cases studied while the consequences of hypervolemia were somewhat less pronounced, although the aortic pressures rose to well above the initial levels.

Discussion

The influence of changes in blood volume upon circulation has been studied to some extent both in man and in animals. Before the introduction of the heart catheterization technique Wallace & Sharper-Schafer [30] studied the effect on the systemic blood pressure and heart rate of the withdrawal of 600-1000 ml of blood

from healthy volunteers. If the subjects lost more than 1000 ml, or amounts roughly corresponding to 20-25% of the estimated total blood volume (TBV) the systemic blood pressure was only slightly affected in eight cases, with an average drop of 11 and 1 mm Hg in systolic and diastolic pressures respectively. In the remaining five cases a marked drop in both systolic and diastolic pressures was observed. No systematic pulse reactions were observed during the experiment. Another group of authors [31] report that the systemic pressure decreased by an average of slightly over 20 mm Hg in systole during the withdrawal of 1000 ml of blood from supine volunteers. This group also reported that the venous pressures as well as the pulse rates were relatively uninfluenced by the procedure.

As pressure is the product of flow and resistance, changes in blood pressure during hypo- or hypervolemia must indicate that the induced volume changes have exceeded the adaptive capacities of the peripheral vasomotor system and the cardiac output. The adaptability of the vascular bed to changes in TBV has been studied experimentally by Bazett [3] who reports that moderate degrees of hypovolemia, corresponding to a blood loss of 20-30% of the TBV in the dog were associated with an increase in the peripheral resistance sufficient to maintain systemic pressures, while cardiac output remained constant. Similar experiments [25] suggest that the compensatory increase in peripheral resistance is capable of maintaining the systemic blood pressure in man if the blood loss does not exceed 700-1000 ml. The increase in peripheral resistance results chiefly in a

redistribution of blood away from the skin, kidneys and the splanchnic region [25]. Wiggers *et al* [41] studying the effect of bleeding in the dog suggest that the capacity to increase peripheral resistance is limited to states of moderate blood loss and that when heavy blood losses are induced this mechanism no longer functions, with life-endangering circulatory consequences.

Cardiac output together with peripheral resistance the regulator of blood pressure is intimately connected with the vasomotor control of the peripheral vessels which governs the venous return to the heart. Ever since the law of Starling was formulated [33] much discussion has centered upon the regulation of cardiac output and there is as yet no complete agreement regarding the role played by the right heart filling pressure in the regulation of cardiac stroke volume. Even if this pressure is not the only regulating factor most studies of hypovolemia have demonstrated that a venous hypotension is associated with decrease of the stroke volume [10 15 27].

Although most investigations of the hemodynamic consequences of changes in TBV have concerned hypovolemic states, some reports pertaining to hypervolemia are also available. Such studies have indicated that when TBV is rapidly increased by 20-25% of the estimated initial volume venous hypertension occurs [33 35 39] unaccompanied by significant changes in systemic pressure and pulse rate [35 39]. In adult man an increase in pulmonary artery mean pressure occurs and is related to the degree of hypervolemia [35]. Although the RHFP has been reported to increase during hypervolemic

experiments in man, no significant changes have been observed in the right heart stroke volume [35-39]. Hypervolemia studies in the dog have shown a somewhat different mode of response with proportional increase in left ventricular end-diastolic pressure and left ventricular volume and also a moderate increase in systemic arterial pressure [20-21] during moderate degrees of hypervolemia.

From the cited literature it seems clear that the vasomotor activity in healthy man in supine position undergoing blood volume changes of $\pm 20\%$ of TBV is capable of adapting total vascular volume to total available blood volume so adequately that in most instances the systemic pressures are only moderately affected and cardiac output is maintained whereas the pulmonary circuit is more sensitive to these changes.

Although visual observations of the infants studied in the present investigation revealed that the vascular compartments of the skin participated in the redistribution of blood during the volume changes hypovolemia draining blood from the cutaneous vessels and hypervolemia causing pooling of blood in the same vascular compartments, the marked effect on systemic blood pressure in contrast to the cited findings in adult man suggests a less adaptive circulatory system: a more rigid cardiovascular basin. The relative inability of the cardiovascular apparatus to cope with hyper- and hypovolemia conditions reported here is also reflected in the marked changes in the RHFP which together with the impressive changes in heart size and pulse pressure in the systemic as well as in the pulmonary circulation indicates an effect on the stroke volume. Induced

changes in the degree of vascularity of the lungs are also interpreted as supporting this view. The pronounced pulse acceleration encountered during hypovolemia, again in contrast to the findings in adult man, may be interpreted as an effort to maintain an adequate cardiac output in the presence of a decreased stroke volume.

If the systemic pressure consequences of alterations in TBV are more pronounced in the newborn infant than in adult man, the effect upon the pulmonary circulation seems much the same with hypotension following hypovolemia and hypertension following hypervolemia.

Judging from the clinical impression of the infants studied, the induced pressure changes did not affect the patients adversely during the investigation. At the moment of birth, however, when the infant is participating in a hemodynamic experiment that requires a great deal of adaptability of the circulatory system a possible adverse effect of induced hemodynamic changes may be accentuated. The central hemodynamic event at birth is the opening up of new vascular beds in the lungs at the initiation of breathing whereupon the pulmonary vascular resistance suddenly falls [12] and blood is shunted from the aorta into the pulmonary circulation over the ductus arteriosus. It may also be assumed that the sudden drop in environmental temperature and pressure during delivery induce changes in the peripheral resistance. At this moment when the cardiovascular apparatus in the newborn should be working hard to maintain circulatory homeostasis and the left heart is increasing its stroke volume in a struggle to maintain adequate systemic perfusion in the pre-

sence of a left-right shunt in ductus arteriosus [11], an induced hypovolemia or hypervolemia may quite conceivably jeopardize the circulatory adaptation to extrauterine life. The fact that in most instances this adaptation proceeds not only successfully but also with an amazingly well stabilized systemic pressure level [19-37] demonstrates that the adaptive processes during birth are adequate providing the necessary venous return to the heart. Judging from the data in the present investigation, this would mean that the actual blood volume excess or deficit arising during adaptation to extrauterine life would be less than 20-40 ml, a figure that is probably already exceeded by the increment in pulmonary blood volume at the start of respiration. The probable explanation of this discrepancy is, that situations of hyper or hypovolemia during and immediately after delivery are counteracted not only by "active" cardiovascular adaptation but also by the availability of a means of mobilizing blood from and/or into a blood reservoir should the need present itself. Such a reservoir may be pools of blood within the infant's body or it may consist of the fetal part of the placental circulation. The former alternative is not well studied but the latter has been investigated to some extent. In support of the circulatory significance of the placental transfusion, the effect of late versus early clamping of the cord has been shown to have a pronounced effect upon the pressure levels in the neonate [34] as well as upon the blood volume [13-40] and the size of the heart [8].

As early as in 1876 Bodin [5] suggested that the clamping of the umbilical cord ought to be delayed in order to create the

best possible conditions for the institution of normal pulmonary function in the neonate. This has been re-emphasized by others [4-28, 37] later and further corroborated by the fact that a higher incidence of respiratory troubles was reported in infants whose umbilical cords were ligated immediately after delivery [26]. The finding of a significantly smaller TBV in infants who develop respiratory distress [14] may also be cited in support of the importance of the placental transfusion for the institution of normal pulmonary function.

As the clinical dysfunction as well as the pathological changes in early respiratory distress are localized to the lungs the possible influence of an imbalanced circulation upon pulmonary dynamics should be discussed. Hypervolemia due to overtransfusion from the placenta is not an immediate threat during delivery as it requires active stripping of the umbilical cord; therefore the following discussion will be limited to instances of hypovolemia.

Although the pulmonary artery observations are few it may be assumed that the observed changes in systemic circulation reflect alterations in the flow and pressure in the pulmonary circulation as well as these two circulatory systems are intimately connected to each other in the immediate neonatal period. The question may be raised as to whether the hypotensive reaction in the pulmonary artery during hypovolemia also interferes structurally with the aeration of the lung parenchyma. If the vascular bed of the lung is considered as a reinforcing mesh work for the parenchyma it is easy to appreciate the importance of the pulmonary pressure

References

1. ADAMS, F. H., LIND J and RAUBANO, L. Physiological studies on the cardiovascular system of normal newborn infants. Effect of adrenalin, noradrenalin, 10 μ oxygen and 100 μ oxygen. *Biol Neonat* 7 6., 1955
2. ASHWORTH, A. M. and NEILMAN G. A. Changes in the systolic blood pressure in normal babies during the first twenty four hours of life. *Lancet*, 1 801 1959
3. BAXTER H. C. Blood volume and cardiovascular adjustment. *Amer Heart J* 31 423, 1941
4. BROWN R. J. K. Mean venous pressure in first hours of life. *Lancet*, 1 163, 1957
5. BUDY P. A quel moment doit-on pratiquer la ligature du cordon ombilical? *Progr Med*, 4 1876.
6. BURKARD E. B. and JAMES, S. L. Radiographic heart size in apparently healthy newborn infants: clinical and biochemical correlation. *Pediatrics*, 37 728, 1961
7. CHLANDER, O. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Swedish Medical Association 1962.
8. — Blood flow in the foot and calf of the newborn. A plethysmographic study. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 49 458, 1960.
9. CRUICK, D. B. MALINIK, M. and FRAILLON J. M. Plasma adrenalin and noradrenalin in the neonatal period and in infants with respiratory distress syndrome and placental insufficiency. *Pediatrics*, 3 374 1963.
10. COCHRAN A., RILEY R. L., BRADLEY S. E., BRECK E. S., YORKE, R. P. LACROIX H. D. GREENBERG M. L. and REYNOLDS, D. W. Studies of the circulation in human shock. *Surgery* 13 944, 1943
11. CROOK, K. W. D. WEA, G. S. and MOTT J. C. Anaemia, oxygen consumption and cardiac output in newborn lambs and adult sheep. *J Physiol*, 146 316, 1959.
12. D. WEA, G. S.: Changes in the circulation at birth and the effects of asphyxia. *Advances in Pediatrics*, Interscience Publishers, London, 1959.
13. DEMAREE, Q. B. WINDLER, W. F. and AL. H. L. Blood volume of newborn infants in relation to early and late clamping of the umbilical cord. *Amer J Dis Child*, 63 1152, 1942.
14. DOWNS, H. A. FRANKLIN R. R., HENLY W. S. and DEKROVD, M. M. Blood volume and respiratory distress in the neonate: preliminary report. *Circulation*, 24 970 1961
15. FOWLER, V. O. BLOOM, W. L. and WARD J. A. Hemodynamic effects of hypervolemia with and without anemia. *Circ Res*, 6 163, 1958.
16. GUTHEIM, M. The transfer of blood between baby and placenta in the minutes after birth. *Lancet*, 1 1777 1957
17. GREENBERG, R. E. and LIND J. Catecholamines in tissue of the human fetus. *Pediatrics*, 27 964, 1961
18. GREENBERG, R. E., LIND J. and VON EULER, U. B. The effect of posture and inulin hypoglycemia on catecholamine excretion in the newborn. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 49 780, 1960.
19. HANSELHORST H. Über den Blutdruck in den Nabelschnurgefäßen, die Ausschüttung des Nabelschnur- und Placentarkreislaufs nach Geburt des Kindes und über den Blutstillungsmechanismus. *Z Obstet Gynec* 95 400, 1940.
20. HENRY J. P., GAYLE, O. H. and SCHERER, H. O. The effect of moderate changes in blood volume on left and right ventricular pressure. *Circ Res*, 6 11 1956
21. H. LE, J. P. Effect of plethora and hemorrhage on left ventricular volume and pressure. *Circ Res*, 6 72, 1957
22. JAMES, S. L. and ROWE, R. D. The pattern of response of pulmonary and systemic arterial pressures in newborn and older infants to short period of hypoxia. *J Pediatr*, 61 8, 1957
23. KARLSTORF J. A.: Über eine orthodiagraphische Herzkammerbestimmung. *Fortschr Röntgenstr* 45 123, 1932.
24. KJELLBERG, S. R., RUDHE, U. and ZETTERSTRÖM, B.: Heart volume variations in the neonatal period. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 49 173, 1960
25. LARSEN, E. M. BROWN, F. F. CRUICK, M. and WYCK, C.: Central venous pressure in relation to cardiac competence, blood volume and exercise. *J Clin Invest* 23 227 1946.
26. MARAFFET L. W. and ROWDALE, P. B. A convulsive syndrome in newborn foals resembling pulmonary syndrome in the newborn infant. *Lancet* 1 1223, 1959.
27. MCLIMICKEL, J. and SHARPEY-SCHAFER, E. P. Cardiac output in man by direct Fick method. *Brit Heart J* 6 22, 1944.
28. MOSE, A. J. DUFFIE, E. R. and FADAN L. M. Respiratory distress syndrome in the newborn. Study of the association of cord clamping and the pathogenesis of distress. *JAMA* 184 170 1962.
29. RILEY I. D.: Hand and forearm blood flow in full term and premature infants. *Clin Sci* 12 317 1954.
30. ROSENER, F. Volumbestimmung von Körperhöhlen und Organen auf orthodiagraphischem Wege. *Fortschr Röntgenstr* 21 488 1916/17
31. SHENKIN H. A., CHESTNUT R. H. GOVORS, S. R., HARDY I. D. FLETCHER, A. O. and STARR, I. On the diagnosis of hemorrhage

- estimation of catecholamines in urine. *Acta Physiol Scand*, **45** 122, 1959.
9. GREENBERG, R. E., LIND, J. and EULER, U. N. v. Effect of posture and insulin hypoglycaemia on catecholamine secretion in the newborn. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, **49** 740 1960.
 10. HUBLIMAN, A. and WIGGERS, C. J. The effect of progressive anoxia on the pulmonary circulation. *Circulation Res*, **1** 230, 1953.
 11. NOTELNY H. L., COURYAND A., WERKÖ L., RIMKELSTEIN, A. and DRINDALE, D. The influence of short periods of induced acute anoxia upon the pulmonary artery pressures in man. *Amer J Physiol*, **160** 314, 1947.
 12. RAPELA, C. E. and HOUSSEY B. A. Adivión lma de la sangre suprarrenal del perro durante la asfixia. *Rev Soc Argent Biol*, **28** 1952.
 13. ROWE, R. D. and JAMES, L. S. Pattern of responses of pulmonary and systemic arterial pressures in newborn and older infants to short periods of hypoxia. *J Pediatr* **51** 7 1957.
 14. STERN, L., GREENBERG, R. E. and LIND J. Catecholamine excretion in the newborn period: Effect of short periods of induced hypoxia. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, **50** 497 1961.
 15. WEDERHOLT, R. X., FOWLER, N. B. SCOTT, R. O., HAUNERTHS V. D. and McQUIRK, J. Anoxia and human pulmonary vascular resistance. *J Clin Invest* **30** 847 1951.
 16. WETNAM, A. C. and FLEMING, J. W. The effect of epinephrine on the pulmonary circulation in man. *J Clin Invest*, **30** 707 1951.

(Lind) Department of Paediatrics
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

(Stern) Montreal Children Hosp.
Montreal 25

(Ledes) Dept. of Physiology
University of Montreal
Montreal
Canada

Submitted June 7 1963

Accepted July 1, 1963

TABLE 1 *Weight and some laboratory findings in serum of patient M.K. at different ages*

| Age (yr)... | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|--|------|------|---------|------|------|-----|
| Weight, kg | 10.0 | 12.1 | 14.1 | 16.6 | 20 | 23 |
| Alkaline phosphatase (Bach & Bach), units | 19 | 26 | 34-46 | 23 | 39 | 33 |
| Bilirubin, mg/100 ml | | | | | 0.5 | 0 |
| Meulengracht index | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.8 | | | |
| Thymol turbidity test, O.D. at 720 m μ | 0.06 | 0.07 | 0.06 | | 0.20 | |
| Transaminase GOT units | | | | | 29 | 20 |
| Protein, g/100 ml | | | 6.5 | 7.4 | 6.8 | 6.1 |
| Sodium, mEq/l | | | | | 148 | 14 |
| Potassium, mEq/l | | | 3.1 | | 1.8 | 2.0 |
| Calcium, mEq/l | 4.9 | 4.9 | 7.0-4.7 | 7.0 | 8.7 | 8.8 |
| Chloride, mEq/l | 120 | | 95 | 114 | 106 | 116 |
| Total bicarbonate, mEq/l | | | 21 | 4 | 15 | 14 |
| Phosphate-phosphorus, mg/100 ml | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.5-4.1 | 0.7 | 0.9 | 0.8 |

preference for salty food. Table 1 shows how her body weight progressed. According to the mother the child's abdomen continued to grow larger and the vulvar region started to swell a few months after birth, whilst her limbs remained skinny. At the age of two years she was first admitted to the Children's Hospital, Gothenburg, where she was subsequently examined annually from 1931 to 1934. When first seen it was apparent that among other things, the child had severe rickets, which had set in notwithstanding routine vitamin D prophylaxis. When she was three a cyst-like defect of unclear etiology was discovered in the left femur. Two years later she sustained a fracture through the defect and was forced to remain in bed. The skeleton underwent progressive decalcification and new multiple fractures and severe thoracic and other deformities ensued.

Whenever examined, the child was found to have not only grave rickets but also hepatosplenomegaly and dystrophy. The liver was nodular and palpable 3 fingerbreadths or two below the costal margin; the spleen was two or three fingerbreadths below it. Laboratory findings are listed in Table 1. Thrombocytopenia (58,000-136,000) and mild leucopenia were present. At the age of two the sternal marrow exhibited slightly reduced erythropoiesis. Liver function tests were consistently normal. The renal function was

somewhat impaired; concentration tests done on two occasions before age four yielded urinary specific gravities of 1.016 and 1.020. The urine contained no albumin or merely traces, glucosuria was never detected.

The girl was last admitted to hospital (Uddervalla Lasarett) at the age of 7 after having been ailing for more than a year but being remarkably resistant to infectious diseases. Laboratory findings are given in Table 1. She now had normal or raised hemoglobin and erythrocyte values, mild acidosis, high or normal calcium, extremely low phosphorus and moderately elevated alkaline phosphatase levels in serum. No cystine crystals could be detected in the cornea. Chromatography disclosed massive aminoaciduria. At 8 years old she weighed less than 9 kg. She suffered greatly from respiratory distress and died of pneumonia in September 1937.

Post mortem examination

The body (length 83 cm, weight 8.4 kg) was emaciated and showed pronounced skeletal deformities characteristic of rickets. The long bones were bowed and short with enlarged epiphyses. There was pronounced inward projection of the costochondral junctions and the spine was kyphotic and scoliotic. The abdomen appeared distended. There was no jaundice (Fig. 1).



Fig. 1 Case M. H. at autopsy. Note skeletal deformities (bowed upper arms and ribs kyphoscoliosis), large nodulous liver, enlarged kidneys and spleen.

Heart Weight 93 g. Large compared to weight with light dilatation of ventricles, especially the right. Valves, myocardium, coronary arteries, aorta and pulmonary artery were normal.

Lungs Pulmonary tuberculosis. Bilateral atelectasis, broncho-pneumonia. Pleural cavities normal.

Liver Weight 355 g. Only slightly enlarged but extremely distorted, being composed of yellowish brown nodules, 1.5 cm in diameter and separated by alternating narrow and broad septa. Gall bladder thin walled, bile ducts normal (Fig. 1).

Pancreas Normal.

Spleen Weight, 63 g. Enlarged with slightly thickened capsule. Pulp dark red and firm. Malpighian corpuscles barely distinguishable.

Kidneys Weight: right 193 g. left 133 g. Grossly enlarged especially in proportion to body weight. Capsules stripped easily, surface smooth with delicate vascular network. The cortex was pale 6-8 mm broad, barely de-

marcated from the medulla and with thin bluish red streaks radiating towards the periphery. The pyramids were congested. The pelvis, ureters and bladder were normal.

Ovaries Ovaries, total weight 11 g. normal. Uterus, tubes, vagina and external genitalia, normal.

Alimentary tract Normal.

Endocrine glands Pituitary weight 230 mg. normal. Thyroid, weight 3.0 g. (after fixation in 10% formalin) normal cut surface. Parathyroids: only two glands found, possibly enlarged. Adrenals: weight 5.0 g. apparently enlarged relative to body weight.

Brain Normal.

Lymphoid system Thymus, slightly atrophic (weight 0.3 g.). Some soft about peanut sized lymph nodes in the mediastinum and mesentery.

Microscopic examination

Liver The parenchyma was composed of rounded nodules, circumscribed and separ-



Fig. 2. Part of liver nodule. The multi-lobular pattern is clearly visible. Hematoxylin-eosin. 30

ated by coarse and narrow strands of fibrous tissue. Each nodule was made up of several liver lobules with slightly irregular spacing of the portal canals and efferent veins. The septa contained small groups of bile ducts and scattered inflammatory cells, mainly round cells but occasional polymorphonuclear leucocytes. The picture corresponds well with that of coarse nodular cirrhosis (post-necrotic scarring of the liver toxic cirrhosis of Mallory). Most of the liver cells contained small lipid droplets and, in addition, fairly pronounced fatty changes surrounded some central veins. No signs of malignancy (Fig. 2, 3).

Spleen. Slight broadening of the sinus walls as a sign of passive congestion.

Kidneys. The glomeruli appeared normal. The proximal convoluted tubules were greatly enlarged and had large epithelial cells showing granular cytoplasm and hyaline droplet degeneration. A few tubules showed flattened epithelium and contained hyaline cylinders with a negative amyloid reaction when stained with methyl violet (Fig. 4).

Adrenals. The enlarged organs had a markedly convoluted cortex with distinctly

outlined glomerular and fascicular zones. The marrow was well preserved.

Parathyroids. Composed of solid masses of clear cells, they contained sparse fat tissue. The largest cut surface of the two glands measured 3.5 mm and 6 mm.

Thymus. Atrophic.

Lymph nodes. Slight to moderate signs of chronic, nonspecific inflammation.

Distal femoral epiphysis. The marrow was composed only of fat tissue. The epiphyseal cartilage plate was widened, thickened, markedly uneven and irregularly penetrated by branching blood vessels from the metaphyseal end of the shaft, a picture characteristic of rickets.

Other organs. Brain: Acute congestion. Pituitary: thyroid, dura mater: choroid plexus, myocardium, aorta, pancreas, ovaries and uterus: normal. Esophagus, stomach, duodenum, jejunum, ileum and colon: essentially normal (post-mortal changes).

No cystine crystals were found in any organ when alcohol fixed sections were examined in polarized light.

Case A.K. The patient was born at term on September 4th, 1936, weighing 2700 g



Fig. 3. Part of another liver acinus showing acinarization, liver dilated fat droplets, and groups of bile ducts and scattered round cells in the adjacent fibrous tissue. Hematoxylin-eosin, 1971.

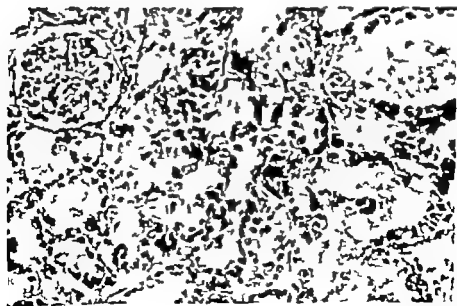


Fig. 4. Kidney with greatly enlarged tubules with altered epithelial cells. Hematoxylin-eosin, 1970.

TABLE Weight and some laboratory findings in serum of patient A.K. at different ages

| Age (yr) | 5/12-7/12 | 8/12 | 10/12 | 1 | 16/12 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
|--|-----------|------|-------|-----|-------|------|------|------|
| Weight kg | 8.2 | 8.4 | | 8.8 | 10.0 | 11.3 | 12.2 | 16.5 |
| Alkaline phosphatase (Boch & Beech), units | 41 | 44 | 35 | 23 | 26 | III | II | 9 |
| Bilirubin, mg/100 ml | 1.2 | | 0.1 | 1.1 | 0.4 | 0.2 | | 0.8 |
| Thymol turbidity test, units | 1.8 | | | 1.7 | | | | |
| O D at 720 mμ | | | | | | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.01 |
| Transaminase GOT unit | 180 | 47 | | 58 | 43 | | 30 | 10 |
| GPT unit | | | | | | | 18 | 18 |
| Protein, g/100 ml | 4.6 | 4.4 | 6.1 | 8.5 | 6.8 | 6.7 | 6.9 | 7.6 |
| Sodium, mEq/l | | 150 | 143 | 146 | | 142 | 142 | 148 |
| Potassium, mEq/l | | 4.5 | 4.7 | 5.0 | 4.8 | 4.9 | 4.7 | 3.7 |
| Calcium, mEq/l | III | 5.2 | 6.3 | 5.2 | 6.6 | 6.8 | 6.2 | 8.9 |
| Chloride, mEq/l | | 120 | 122 | 111 | 112 | 110 | 114 | 105 |
| Total bicarbonate, mEq/l | 18 | 20 | 18 | 18 | 17 | 18 | 16 | 17 |
| Phosphate-phosphorus, mg/100 ml | 3.2 | 2.6 | 2.8 | 4.8 | 4.5 | 4.2 | 3.7 | 3.0 |

and appeared normally developed. Pregnancy and parturition were uncomplicated. Her mental development was never abnormal. She was breast-fed exclusively for six weeks and then received supplements of cow milk. Vitamin D prophylaxis was commenced after two weeks with daily dose of about 1000 I.U. In due course the girl started to exhibit distension of the abdomen, swelling of the vulvar region and thin limbs—that is, precisely the same manifestations as her eldest sister. Consequently she was admitted to hospital (Udderwalla Lazarett) at the age of 5 months. Her weight was then normal (8190 g), but during the 2½ months before discharge she gained only 220 g, probably to some extent owing to emotional factors.

Physical examination disclosed hepatosplenomegaly (nodose liver palpable two and spleen palpable one or two fingerbreadths below the costal margin) and craniotabes. X-ray evidence and laboratory findings (Table I) furnished further conclusive indications of rickets. Other laboratory examinations revealed moderate anemia (7.4–10 g % Hb) with slightly reduced erythropoiesis and mild relative neutropenia and lymphocytosis. Platelets, 182,000. Liver function tests (Table 2) showed normal thymol and bil-

rubin concentration in serum but elevated GOT values and in addition excessive alkaline phosphatase levels, though the latter probably reflected the patient's rickets. Furthermore the protein and total bicarbonate concentrations of blood were reduced, whilst other blood electrolytes were normal. Glucosuria, proteinuria and polyuria were absent but the urinary excretion of amino acids was raised (see below); the urinary phosphate excretion was not determined.

The patient was treated with vitamin D in large doses, altogether six million I.U. being given from March 21 to April 11 1937 whereupon she was given 250,000 I.U. every sixth week. This treatment seemed to heal the rickets, and no signs of rickets have been seen during an observation period of five years. The deciduous teeth were small but apparently normal. Notably however the serum phosphorus level was abnormally low and tended to fall.

The patient's development in other respects has been reasonably satisfactory. She learnt to walk at 18 months. Her build may be on the slender side, but her weight has consistently been rather low though not subnormal. Gradually the abdomen acquired a normal configuration, the vulvar edema subsided

and the hepatosplenomegaly became less palpable. However the vulvar edema recurred sporadically. At 5 years old both liver and spleen were palpable a fingerbreadth below the costal margin. Liver function test carried out regularly since the patient was a year old were consistently normal. The hematological picture showed persistence of light relative neutropenia and lymphocytosis but no anemia. The only platelet count was 6,000 (thrombocytopenia). Albuminuria and polyuria were still absent but aminoaciduria persisted (see below).

Amino Acid Metabolism

Method

The method described by Jagendorf [15] were used for determination of amino nitrogen, total nitrogen, creatinine and amino acids. The ion exchange method of Spackman, Stein & Moore [23] was used for quantitative estimation of individual free amino acids. The 150 cm column was usually run at 50 but for determination of free amino acid of times the pH 5.3 buffer was run at 20°C. No quantitative study of the basic amino acid was performed. Protein was precipitated with picric acid [25] and tissue extract were prepared as described by Tallan *et al.* [29].

The total amount of tyrosine and its derivatives was determined by the Millon reaction, using tyrosine as standard.

p-Hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid was determined as the borate complex according to Haines procedure [14]. This method also determines other hydroxy acid such as phenylpyruvic acid the presence of the latter being ruled out by a negative ferric chloride test.

The occurrence of the tyrosine derivatives was established by paper chromatography of an ether extract obtained by continuous extraction of acidified urine. The following solvent systems were used (A) iso-propanol (200 ml) conc. ammonia (10 ml) water (20 ml) and (B) benzene (125 ml) acetic acid (72 ml) water (3 ml). Both one- and two-dimensional chromatograms were made; (A)

was used as first solvent (B) as second. The spots were located with diazotized sulphanilic acid, diazotized p-nitraniline and silver nitrate reagent [24]. Commercial p-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid and p-hydroxyphenyl acetic acid were used as references. p-Hydroxyphenyl lactic acid was synthesized from L-tyrosine according to Katak [17].

Results

Case M.A. The urinary amino acid excretion 6 months and 1 month before death was extremely high amino nitrogen amounting to 1 and 2% of total nitrogen. There was an almost uniform increase in the excretion of the individual amino acid. However the urinary amino acid pattern was more compatible with the plasma pattern than with that of normal urines. The excretion of proline was negligible. The tyrosine excretion per g total nitrogen was 70 and 103 mg on the two occasions.

The plasma amino acids were normal or low (Fig. 7). The calculated clearances indicate that the tubular reabsorption of most of them was very incomplete there being hardly any reabsorption of glycine and alanine. Proline was the only amino acid whose reabsorption seemed normal i.e. almost complete.

The excretion of tyrosine metabolites was not determined.

The amounts of free amino acids in the liver, spleen and heart muscle were similar to those in a control dying of a non-metabolic disease (Table 3).

Case A.K. The urinary amino acid excretion was followed from the age of 5 months to the age of 5 years and 8 months. Altogether 13 urine samples were analyzed most of them night urines. The individual amino acids in six samples were determined

TABLE 3 Free amino acids and related compounds in different tissues from patient M.K. and from a patient dead of a non metabolic disease
 μ moles per kg wet tissue

| Compound | Liver | | Heart | | Spleen | |
|--|--------------|---------|--------------|---------|-------------------|------------------|
| | Patient M.K. | Control | Patient M.K. | Control | Patient M.K. | Control |
| Taurine | 0.83 | 0.58 | 3.01 | 2.49 | 7.13 | 5.41 |
| Hydroxyproline ^a | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 |
| Aspartic acid | 0.70 | 0.18 | 0.49 | 0.18 | 4.04 ^b | —90 ^b |
| Threonine | 0.78 | 0.47 | 0.79 | 0.54 | — | — |
| Serine + glutamine + asparagine ^a | 0.98 | 1.06 | 7.07 | 8.13 | 3.08 | 2.3 |
| Proline ^a | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.2 | <0.2 | 2.0 | 1.0 |
| Glutamic acid + glutathione ^a | 2.44 | 4.18 | 2.43 | —53 | 8.99 | 8.8 |
| Glycine | 2.83 | 2.80 | 1.83 | —73 | 8.06 | 5.27 |
| Alanine | 6.60 | 6.12 | 3.54 | 6.35 | 2.80 | —34 |
| Ammono-butyric acid | 0.31 | 0.13 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 |
| Valine | 0.95 | 0.99 | 0.23 | 0.23 | 1.83 | 1.18 |
| Cysteine | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | 0.45 | 0.45 |
| Methionine | 0.30 | 0.08 | <0.15 | <0.15 | 0.44 | 0.33 |
| Isoleucine | 0.43 | 0.41 | 0.22 | 0.14 | 0.87 | 0.50 |
| Leucine | 0.96 | 0.79 | 0.30 | 0.27 | —32 | 1.17 |
| Tyrosine | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.17 | 0.26 | 0.78 | 0.48 |
| Phenylalanine | 0.37 | 0.39 | 0.16 | 0.24 | 0.84 | 0.49 |
| β -Alanine | 0.69 | 0.47 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 |
| β -Ammono- γ -butyric acid | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 | <0.15 |
| Ornithine ^a | 1.5 | 1.5 | <0.3 | <0.3 | 1.5 | 1.5 |
| Lysine ^a | 2.0 | 2.0 | <0.3 | <0.3 | 2.5 | 2.0 |
| Histidine ^a | 0.3 | 0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | 0.3 | 0.3 |
| 1-Methylhistidine ^a | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | 0.3 | 0.3 |
| 2-Methylhistidine | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 | 0.3 | 0.3 |
| Arginine ^a | 0.3 | <0.3 | 0.3 | 0.3 | <0.3 | <0.3 |
| Ethanolamine ^a | 2.0 | 2.0 | 0.7 | 0.7 | —0 | —0 |

Approximate values determined by two-dimensional chromatography

Paper chromatography showed about equal aspartic acid and threonine amounts.

Calculated as serine. Glutathione partly destroyed during preparation of sample and chromatography

Calculated as glutamic acid.

quantitatively (indicated by arrows in Fig 5).

The amino nitrogen excretion was consistently excessive but varied considerably whether related to the excretion of total nitrogen or to that of creatinine (Fig 6).

Among the individual amino acids there was, with few exceptions, a uniform increase in the excretion (Fig 6). Thus the tyrosine excretion consistently was more enhanced than the excretion of the other

amino acids. The excretion of tyrosine per g total nitrogen varied from 4 to 123 mg (Table 4) paralleling the changes in amino nitrogen excretion (cf. Fig 5).

The methionine excretion was remarkably high in samples collected at 5 and 6 months of age when 28 and 15 mg methionine were excreted per g total nitrogen. Subsequently the excretion was below 7 mg

Before the age of four only traces of valine and isoleucine were detected, but

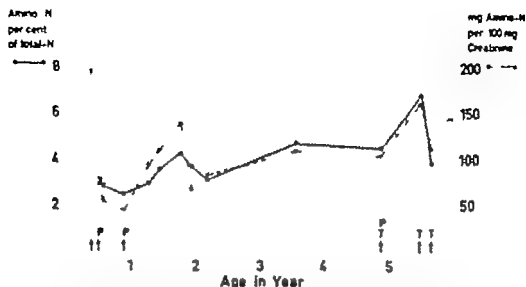


Fig. 5. Urinary amino nitrogen excretion in patient A.K. in relation to total net urea and creatinine excretion at different ages. Arrows indicate that the individual amino acid were determined quantitatively in the corresponding urine sample. T indicates tyrosine metabolism determination at age 5. P indicates five amino acid determinations of plasma.

amino acid nitrogen in per cent of total amino nitrogen

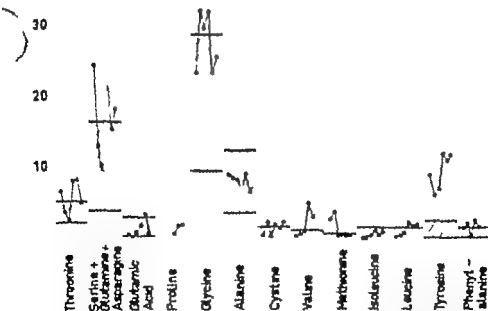


Fig. 6. Urinary amino acid pattern on six occasions in patient A.K.; amino acid nitrogen expressed in per cent of total amino nitrogen. Comparison with normal pattern (shaded area). The figure gives changes in the pattern with increasing age (from left to right).

TABLE 4 *Urinary excretion of tyrosine and tyrosine metabolites (in mg) in relation to total nitrogen excretion (in g) in patient A.K. at different ages*

| Age (yr) ... | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{1}$ | $\frac{1}{18}$ | $4\frac{1}{2}$ | $5\frac{1}{2}$ | $5\frac{1}{2}$ |
|--|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Millon positive substances | — | — | — | 94 | 149 | 107 |
| Tyrosine | 103 | 98 | 4 | 75 | 198 | 5 |
| p-Hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid | — | — | — | 16 | 19 | 26 |
| p-Hydroxyphenyllactic acid + p-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid ^a | — | — | — | 3 | | 6 |

^a Determined as the difference between Millon positive substances and tyrosine plus p-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid.

their excretion subsequently increased. These changes in the amino acid pattern were combined with appearance of small amounts of proline. No proline was found in prior samples.

Plasma amino acid Blood for plasma amino acid determinations was drawn on three occasions viz., at 6 months, 11 months and 5 years of age (Fig. 7). The tyrosine level was markedly elevated, mean 4.8 mg per 100 ml, i.e. almost five times normal [5-35]. Apart from the very high level of methionine and the moderately increased level of the compounds contributing to the threonine-serine peak at 6 months of age, the concentrations of the other amino acids were normal or not significantly elevated.

Tyrosine metabolites The mean excretion of Millon positive material—calculated as tyrosine—was 117 mg per g of total nitrogen (Table 4) on average 79% being tyrosine, 18% p-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid and 3% undetermined. Paper chromatography established that ether extracts of the urine contained considerable amounts of p-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid plus small and similar amount of p-hydroxyphenylacetic acid and p-hydroxyphenyllactic acid roughly in accordance with the quantitative figures.

No dihydroxyphenylalanine or tyramine was demonstrable paper chromatographically.

The parents and unaffected sister had normal plasma amino acid patterns and normal urinary amino acid excretion.

Discussion

Most likely the two sisters suffered from the same perhaps hereditary disease. The non-consanguineous parents and a sister were apparently not affected and showed no abnormalities in amino acid metabolism. In three of the four similar cases referred to in the introduction, the parents were relatives [90, 27, 28] and in one case a brother died, aged 6 months, of liver cirrhosis [90].

Post mortem examination showed that the liver damage in patient M.K. was of the coarse nodular cirrhosis type also called post-necrotic scarring. The cases of Baber [1] and Royer *et al.* [17] apparently had liver changes of the same type. The size of the nodules in the case reported by Sakai *et al.* [30] suggests that this patient too had similar liver cirrhosis. In the fourth case [90] the cirrhosis was described as periportal, as judged from biopsy material. In all these cases the present included,

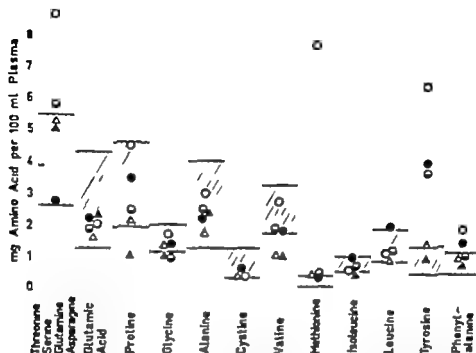


Fig. 8. Plasma amino acid levels in patient M.K. and A.K. compared with normal levels (shaded area). Patient M.K., 7 years, 8 months; patient M.K., 8 years, 1 month; \blacksquare patient A.H., 8 months; \bullet patient A.K., 4 years, 11 months.

There was fatty infiltration of the parenchyma.

In two cases (20, 30) the cirrhosis at the age of about five years terminated in malignant hepatoma, a not too uncommon sequel to cirrhosis of this type (cf. 13).

When as in the present cases there is no history of poisoning or infection of the liver according to Himmelforth (19) one should consider nutritional factors. He postulated that the chronic loss of amino acids, especially cystine in hereditary diseases associated with renal aminoaciduria might give rise to nutritional liver damage. However, liver damage was not observed in several recently described syndromes characterized by generalized renal aminoaciduria [22, 23, 26]. In the condition known to be associated with the

greatest loss of cystine—cystinuria [7, 38]—liver cirrhosis is not seen. Furthermore the loss of sulphur-containing amino acids owing to tubular malabsorption was comparatively small in the present cases. It therefore seems unlikely that the liver cirrhosis developed on a nutritional basis because of the renal tubular defects.

The high blood level and high excretion of tyrosine in addition to the high excretion of *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid, indicate that the tyrosine metabolism might be disturbed. The single metabolic block which could explain such an excretory pattern is in step 4 (Fig. 8). A balanced diet can be estimated to contain about 500 mg of tyrosine plus phenylalanine per g protein nitrogen [8]. If the block is complete about the same amount of tyro-

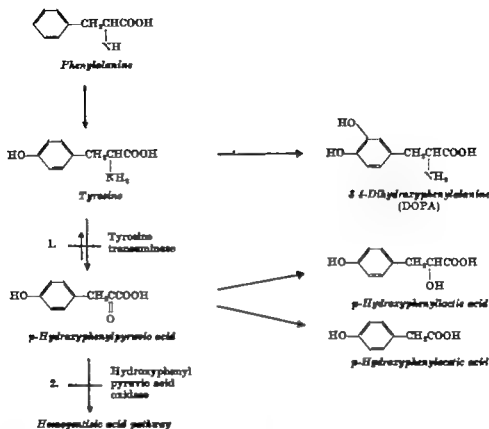


Fig. 8. Scheme of tyrosine metabolism.

sine plus tyrosine metabolites must be excreted per g total nitrogen, as experimentally verified [11]. However in patient M.K. on an average only 116 mg of Millon positive material was excreted per g total nitrogen, indicating that the block was incomplete.

In subjects with an assumed decrease in the activity of the *p*-hydroxyphenyl pyruvic acid oxidase it has been found that the excretion of *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid is about equal to [11, 28] or even higher than the excretion of tyrosine [1, 5]. In patient A.K. the *p*-hydroxyphenyl pyruvic acid excretion was only one fourth that of tyrosine. This could be explained

by assuming that there was also a defective tyrosine transaminase step (Fig. 8).

A block in step 2 is also said markedly to increase the excretion of *p*-hydroxyphenyl lactic acid and *p*-hydroxyphenylacetic acid [11, 28 cf. 34 pp. 380-390], although Medes [25] did not demonstrate increased amounts of these compounds in her case. In the present case the excretion of these compounds were only slightly enhanced.

A disturbed tyrosine metabolism could be a consequence of any liver damage. In various liver diseases it has been observed that the excretion of *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid sometimes is moderately increased [9, 12]. The tyrosine level of the

blood [4], as well as its urinary excretion [19], can also be somewhat increased but is usually not obviously changed in different types and stages of liver cirrhosis in adults [6-10].

In diseases such as hepatolenticular degeneration [7-9] and cystinosis [7-8], sometimes associated with liver cirrhosis, no defects in tyrosine metabolism have been demonstrated. Nor were any sign of impaired tyrosine metabolism noted in a male adult with liver cirrhosis and tubular defects [38].

In gross liver damage with necrosis the amino acid level of the blood is elevated which is reflected in the urine by increased excretion [40]. Among observed changes in plasma amino acids, an elevated methionine level seems the most consistent sign of acute hepatic necrosis [16-31].

At 5-month-old patient A.H. showed a very high urinary amino acid excretion with a remarkably high proportion of methionine. The high output of methionine which persisted at the age of 6 months was shown to be due to an elevated plasma level. Because the concentration of methionine in blood and the subsequent urinary excretion were normalized, one must assume that a necrotizing liver process was going on at an age of 5-6 months although the liver function tests were but slightly abnormal. When the child was first seen a nodular liver was palpable indicating that the liver must have suffered from necrotizing processes even before the age of 6 months.

At the high excretion of tyrosine and *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid persisted in spite of the disappearance of the other signs of hepatic failure. It cannot be excluded that the disturbed tyrosine metabolism was

primarily due to a genetic defect which secondarily gave rise to the liver damage.

In spite of certain deviation, patients M.H. and A.H. presumably suffered from the same disease as the clinical features were similar except that A.H. was less seriously affected than M.H. This difference may partly be due to the fact that A.H. unlike M.H. was treated from an early age with large doses of vitamin D. Both patients had about the same excretion of tyrosine in relation to total nitrogen but M.H. showed no increase in the plasma tyrosine level. As is evident from the low urinary nitrogen output of about 2 g per day in this patient, the protein intake must have been very low which is in agreement with the clinical observation that she had refused most food for a considerable time. The intake of tyrosine and phenylalanine must therefore have been very inadequate. It is well known that the plasma phenylalanine level in phenylpyruvic oligophrenia can be normalized by reducing the intake of this amino acid [34]. The normal plasma tyrosine level in patient M.H. therefore does not seem to contradict the opinion that she had a disturbed tyrosine metabolism especially as the loss of this amino acid in the urine was great due to the tubular defects.

Post mortem there were but low amounts of free tyrosine in the liver, spleen and myocardium. The patient of Sakai *et al.* who showed similar tyrosine excretion to the present patients but very much higher *p*-hydroxyphenyllactic acid excretion, reportedly had very great amounts of tyrosine in the liver [30]. No such increase was found in two other patients with an apparently complete lack of *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid oxidase activity [11].

The kidneys are described only in two [1 30] of the four similar cases reported. In Babers [1] case the kidneys were grossly enlarged but had remarkably small alterations microscopically Sakai *et al* [30] found enlarged kidneys microscopically showing tubular nephrosis with cells of granular structure a picture very similar to that in our case.

As in cystinosis it is hard to explain the functional tubular defects and the lesions in the kidney if one assumes that the primary abnormality is a defect in an enzyme system mainly located to the liver. The assumption that some of the accumulated metabolites may inhibit renal enzymes of importance for the tubular reabsorption has not been verified. Recently Krebs [18] demonstrated that *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid may act as a potent inhibitor of renal glucogenesis. However this observation cannot directly explain the decreased tubular reabsorption.

Summary

Two siblings with a syndrome clinically characterized by liver cirrhosis, renal

defects, and vitamin D resistant rickets are described. The non-consanguineous parents and a sister were not affected. Both patients had generalized aminoaciduria of mainly renal origin. The younger sister had a remarkably high excretion of tyrosine a marked elevation of the plasma level of this amino acid, and an excessive excretion of *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid indicating a partial enzymatic block at the *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acid oxidase step. The elder sister who died at 8 years of age was studied only late in the disease. She exhibited no increase in the plasma tyrosine level, presumably owing to inadequate protein intake. Post mortem examination revealed wasting and pronounced skeletal deformities characteristic of rickets coarse nodular liver cirrhosis with moderately pronounced fatty change enlarged congested spleen, grossly enlarged kidneys with tubular nephrosis; proportionately large adrenals with cortical hyperplasia and possibly enlarged parathyroids composed of solid masses of clear cells. The possibility that the primary metabolic disturbance might be a defect in the tyrosine metabolism is discussed.

References

1. BAKER, M. D. A case of congenital cirrhosis of the liver with renal tubular defects akin to those in the Fanconi's syndrome. *Arch Dis Child*, 31 335, 1956.
2. HANCOCK, D. N., DENT, C. E., HARRIS, H., HART, E. W. and JACOBSON, J. B. Hereditary pellagra-like skin rash with temporary cerebellar ataxia, constant renal amino aciduria, and other bizarre biochemical features. *Lancet*, 2 421 1956.
3. BECKEL, H., SMALLWOOD, W. C., SWELLER, J. M., HAAR, H. S. and HICKMAN, E. M. Cystine storage disease with aminoaciduria and dwarfism. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh) Suppl* 69 1952.
4. BLASE, J., CACHIN, M. and DURLACHE, J. Application de la micro-chromatographie de partage sur papier à l'étude de l'aminocidurie courue des cirrhoses. Présence constante de tyrosine dans les urines de cirrhotiques. *Bull Soc Med Paris*, 66 1232, 1950.
5. CARLSTEN, A., HALLGREN, B., JONSSON, O. R., SVANBOM, A. and WERKÖ, L. Myocardial metabolism of glucose, lactic acid, amino acids and fatty acids in healthy human individuals at rest and at different work loads. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*, 12 418, 1961.
6. DENT, C. E. and WALKER, J. M. Amino acid metabolism. *Brit Med Bull* 10 247 1954.
7. EVERED, D. F. The excretion of amino acids by the human. A quantitative study with ion-exchange chromatography. *Biochem J* 6 416, 1950.

- 8 FIO \ *Inborn Errors* No. 16 Rome 1953
- 9 FELIX, H. LEONARDI O and GLAVATT I. Über Tyrosinose. II. pp. *Scyler & Physiol Chem*, 17 141 1951
- 10 FRITZELL, S., JOKER O. R. and KEMMER, L. H. *Molecular aminoacyl metabolism* v. Farnon's syndrome and liver failure. *Arch Dis Child* 31 410, 1956
- 11 HETZ, J., JOKER O. R. and ZETTERSTRÖM, R. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*. In press.
- 12 GIBBY, H. and KEMMER, L. H. *Spontaneous degradation of p-hydroxyphenylpyruvate in human plasma* *Klin Woch* 32 113, 1954
- 13 HUNTER, H. P. *The Liver and its Diseases* 2nd ed. Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, 1950
- 14 HUNTER, H. P. and WILSON, J. *Inborn Errors of Metabolism*. The Year Book Publishers, Chicago 1959
- 15 JAKOBY, O. R. The urinary excretion of free amino acids and their amino compound by the human. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 11 1959 Suppl 43.
- 16 JAKOBY, O. R., KNEFFER, A. L., PETER, W. L. and HERRMANN, O. Amino acids in plasma and urine of patient with hepatitis before and after single infusion of protein hydrolysate. *J Lab Clin Med* 56 23, 1960
- 17 KEMMER, L. H. Über 1-Oxyphenylpyruvate und die Verhältnisse im Harn bei Phosphor-mangel. *Hoppe Seyler's & Physiol Chem* 351 597 1910
- 18 KEMMER, L. H. Personal communication
- 19 LAWRIE, J. R. The excretion of 1-tyrosine in urine. *Biochem J* 41 41 1947
- 20 LIELO, G. M., ALAQUILA, D., LE T V. G., COLA, J., ROY, M., GENTIL, C. and GARILAY, J. C. Carbone compensable et familiale rachitisme vitamino-résistant v. diabète phos-phoré-amidé hépatome terminal. *Pédiatrie* 16 221 1961
- 21 LOTT, R. S. Z. M. RILEY, F. and GORDON, H. H. A defect on the metabolism of tyrosine and phenylalanine. *J Clin Invest* 20 909 1911
- 22 LOWE, C. U. TERRY, M. and M. CLARKE, E. A. Organic-aciduria, decreased renal ammonia production, hydrophthalmos, and mental retardation. *Amer J Dis Child*, 83 184 55.
- 23 LUTER, J. and ALLISON, W. A familial tubular absorption defect of glucose and amino acids. *Arch Dis Child*, 38 180 1953.
- 24 MCCUNE, D. J. M. and H. H. M. CLARKE, H. T. Intractable hypophosphatemic rickets with renal glycosuria and acidosis. *Amer J Dis Child* 63 31 1912.
- 25 MEYER, O. A new error of tyrosine metabolism. Tyrosinosis. The intermediary metabolism of tyrosine and phenylalanine. *Biochem J* 26 917 1932.
- 26 ROWLEY, P. T., McFILLER, P. S., WITT, D. M. and HONEY, K. G. L. E. Familial growth retardation, renal aminoaciduria and cor pulmonale. *Amer J Med* 31 187 1961.
- 27 ROY, P., HERRMANN, R., HERRMANN, L., M. R. and P. and ROCHER, A. Carbone hépatique avec rachitisme accéléralé et tyrosinurie. *Pédiatrie* 16 810 1961
- 28 SAKAI, K. and KITAWA, T. An atypical case of tyrosinosis. Part 1. Clinical and laboratory findings. *J Clin Med J* 2 1 1957
- 29 SAKAI, K. and KITAWA, T. An atypical case of tyrosinosis. Part 2. A research on the metabolic block. *J Clin Med J* 2 11 1957
- 30 SAKAI, K., KITAWA, T. and YOSHIDA, K. An atypical case of tyrosinosis. Part 3. The outcome of the patient; pathological and biochemical observation of the organs. *J Clin Med J* 6 15, 1959
- 31 SCHNEIDER, H. J. 1. Untersuchungen über den Aminosäurestoffwechsel bei Erkrankungen der Leber. *Dtsch Med Woch* 76 859, 1951
- 32 SMITH, J. *Chromatography and Electrophoretic Techniques* 2nd ed., Volume 1, William Heinemann Medical Books, London, 1960.
- 33 SPENCER, D. H. STEIN, W. H. and MOORE, S. Chromatography of aminoacids on sulfonated polystyrene resins. *Analyt Chem*, 30 1183 1958
- 34 STEIN, W. H. WYLLIE, J. H. and FREDERICKSON, D. R. *The Metabolic Basis of Inherited Disease* McGraw Hill Book Company New York, 1960.
- 35 STEIN, W. H. and MOORE, S. The free amino acid of human blood plasma. *J Biol Chem*, 11 918, 1934.
- 36 STEIN, W. H. Excretion of amino acids in cystinuria. *Proc Soc Exp Biol (NY)*, 78 703, 1953
- 37 STEIN, W. H., HENRY, A. B. and MOORE, S. The amino acid content of the blood and urine in Wilson disease. *J Clin Invest* 23 410, 1954
- 38 STEIN, W. H. and DEER, C. E. Studies on the mechanism of the Fanconi syndrome. *Quart J Med*, 18 975, 194
- 39 TALLA, H. H. MOORE, S. and STEIN, W. H. Studies on the free amino acids and related compound in the tissues of the cat. *J Biol Chem* 211 877 1954.
- 40 WILSON, J. M. Disturbance of aminoacid metabolism following liver injury. A study by means of paper chromatography. *Quart J Med* 8 483 1953.

Submitted June 20, 1963

Accepted July 23, 1963

(R.F.) Department of Pediatrics
Centrallaboratoriet
Uddevalla
Sweden

From the Swedish Medical Research Council Unit for Paediatric Haematology and the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, Sweden

Studies on Erythrokinetics in Infancy

IV The Long Term Behaviour of Radioiron in Circulating Foetal and Adult Haemoglobin and its Faecal Excretion

by LARS GARBY, STIG SJÖLIN and JEAN-CLAUDE VUILLE

Previous studies on the relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F and A in infants by Garby, Sjölin & Vuille [7] have shown that intravenously injected radioiron is incorporated into both haemoglobin A and haemoglobin F during the first months of life. Five of the infants studied were followed up for periods ranging from 58 to 123 days after injection of the isotope. The age at injection was between 5 and 25 days. In all five cases the total amount of radioactivity present in the circulating total haemoglobin (haemoglobin A and F) was recorded at time intervals of about one week. In three of the infants the excretion of radioiron in the faeces was also measured. The present paper comprises a description of the behaviour of radioactive iron in such long term studies. The results have bearing on several aspects of ferro-erythro-kinetics in infancy and extend and corroborate earlier findings by us [8] concerning the short-term behaviour of radioiron in this

age group. Furthermore a new approach is presented for calculating the daily excretion of iron in young infants.

Material

The clinical data concerning the five patients Ls, Bl, S, Ls and Js have been presented in a previous paper [7]. All were considered to be haematologically normal (infant Ls had rather low haemoglobin concentration during the latter part of the study and will be discussed in greater detail). Two of the infants, Bl and J, suffered from myelomeningocele and hydrocephalus, but they had no further complications during the period of investigation. All infants were fed with breast milk during the first 3 to 4 weeks of life; they were subsequently given different cow-milk mixtures providing a daily intake of iron of 1 mg/kg body weight.

Methods

The methods used to measure the amount of radioactivity present in total haemoglobin, haemoglobin A and F have been reported [6, 7, 8]. In calculating the blood volume a correction factor was introduced in order to compensate for the frequent blood sampling. This factor amounted to 5-10% of the total blood volume at the end

This investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council and by grants (Research Project 154/RB) from the International Atomic Energy Agency Vienna.

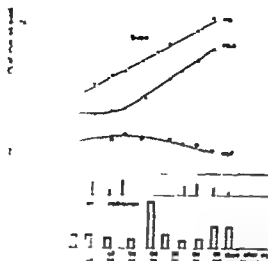


Figure 3. Haemoglobin during the first month of life after transfusion. The reticulocyte count and the faecal excretion of bilirubin are also shown.

activity in the first month of life. The rapid increase in haemoglobin after transfusion is the result of the rapid increase in the absolute rate of haemoglobin synthesis. The increase in the absolute rate of haemoglobin synthesis cannot be evaluated on the basis of the present data (cf. Garby, Spide & Vester [4]). As can be seen from the figure there is a good correlation between the onset of the third slope of the curve and the rise in reticulocyte values. A transient reticulocytosis, both relative and absolute, at about two months of age has also been observed by Caudner, Marks & Packer [4] and by Vest [1]. In the former study, a concomitant increase in marrow erythrocyte count was found. This count, however, continued to increase although the reticulocyte count again fell to values below 1% at about three months of age.

Case L, in whom the appearance of the third slope was delayed, deserves special comment. This infant had suffered from postnatal hyperbilirubinaemia (maximum value 22.3 mg/100 ml on the sixth day of

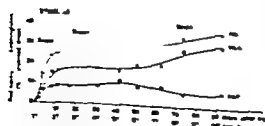


Fig. 4. Case L. Haemoglobin in circulation and haemoglobin during the first month of life after transfusion. The reticulocyte count and the faecal excretion of bilirubin are also shown.

From the Swedish Medical Research Council Unit for Paediatric Haematology and the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, Sweden

Studies on Erythro-Kinetics in Infancy

IV The Long Term Behaviour of Radioiron in Circulating Foetal and Adult Haemoglobin and its Faecal Excretion

by LARS GARBY, STIG SJÖLIN and JEAN-CLAUDE VUILLE

Previous studies on the relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F and A in infants by Garby Sjölin & Vuille [7] have shown that intravenously injected radioiron is incorporated into both haemoglobin A and haemoglobin F during the first months of life. Five of the infants studied were followed up for periods ranging from 58 to 123 days after injection of the isotope. The age at injection was between 11 and 25 days. In all five cases the total amount of radioactivity present in the circulating total haemoglobin (haemoglobin A and F) was recorded at time intervals of about one week. In three of the infants the excretion of radioiron in the faeces was also measured. The present paper comprises a description of the behaviour of radioactive iron in such long term studies. The results have bearing on several aspects of ferro-erythro-kinetics in infancy and extend and corroborate earlier findings by us [8] concerning the short term behaviour of radioiron in this

age group. Furthermore a new approach is presented for calculating the daily excretion of iron in young infants.

Material

The clinical data concerning the five patients L1, B1, S1, L3, and J1 have been presented in a previous paper [7]. All were considered to be haematologically normal (infant L3 had a rather low haemoglobin concentration during the latter part of the study and will be discussed in greater detail). Two of the infants, B1 and J1, suffered from myelomeningocele and hydrocephalus, but they had no further complications during the period of investigation. All infants were fed with breast milk during the first 2 to 4 weeks of life; they were subsequently given different cow milk mixtures providing a daily intake of iron of 1 mg/kg body weight.

Methods

The methods used to measure the amount of radioactivity present in total haemoglobin, haemoglobin A and F have been reported [6, 7, 8]. In calculating the blood volume, a correction factor was introduced in order to compensate for the frequent blood sampling. This factor amounted to 5-10% of the total blood volume at the end

This investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council and by grants (Research Project 154/RB) from the International Atomic Energy Agency Vienna.

of the investigation period. The amount of radioactivity given were as follows: Case Li 0.3 μ Ci, Case Bl 0.6 μ Ci, Case Sj 0.6 μ Ci, Case Lj 1.6 μ Ci and Case Ja 8.6 μ Ci. The radiation dose received from the isotope has been given in a previous paper [1].

Stool count. The radioactivity in faeces. Each week all stool-containing diapers were collected during three consecutive days. The whole mass of diapers and faeces was then wet-ashed with concentrated sulphuric acid and nitric acid. The process was continued until all organic material had disappeared. The ash rich suspension was either concentrated by boiling to a final volume of about 20 to 30 ml and then quantitatively transferred into several (4-6) plastic tubes fitted to the well type scintillation detector. The error of the real wet ash counting was rather large because of the relatively small amount of the isotope that had been injected; the coefficient of variation being about 5% in Cases Bl and Ja and between 5 and 20% in Case Sj. The amount of radioactivity excreted per day was expressed as per cent of the total activity injected.

Reticulocyte count. were performed by Berg [15] method but serum and glassware was not used.

Result

Radioactivity in haemoglobin. The amount of radioactivity present in circulating total foetal and adult haemoglobin, the reticulocyte counts and the excretion of radioisotope are presented in Fig. 1 as a function of the time after injection of the isotope. The age of the infants is also indicated.

In four of the infants (Li, Bl, Sj and Lj) the curves of the activity in total haemoglobin showed three more or less distinct slopes. After an initial uptake period lasting for some 11-17 days (slope 1) during which 25-35% of the injected dose was incorporated into circulating cells there was a much lower increase for 15 to

44 days (slope 2). When the infants were between 40 and 70 days of age a more rapid incorporation of the isotope could again be observed. The final values for red-cell radioactivity were 43% in Case Li at the age of 87 days, 80% in Case Bl at the age of 130 days, 73% in Case Sj at the age of 100 days and 37% in Case Lj at the age of 110 days.

The fifth case Ja differed in some respects from the others. The initial uptake period (slope 1) lasted for about 15 days but during this time more radioactivity about 65% was incorporated. This initial uptake period was followed by a steady increase in radioactivity however and no second slope was discernible. The final radioactivity at the age of 120 days was 87%.

During the initial uptake period (slope 1) the radioactivity was almost equally divided between HbA and HbF in Case Li, Bl and Ja whereas in Case Sj and Lj a considerable greater part was found in HbA. After this period the activity in HbF did not in any case increase significantly and 60-70 days after the injection a slight decrease had occurred in all cases except Li where no decrease was discernible at the end of the investigation 60 days after the injection (Fig. 1). After the initial uptake period the activity in HbA increased more or less parallel to the increase in total haemoglobin. In Cases Li, Bl, Sj and Lj a definitely faster rate of increase was noted 35 to 55 days after injection (Fig. 1-4). In Case Ja there was a steady increase in HbA activity after the initial uptake period.

Reticulocytes. In Cases Bl, Sj and Ja in which reticulocyte count were made frequently a definite increase in the reticu-

leucocyte count was noted during the second month of life

Radioactivity in faeces The faecal excretion of radioiron showed a similar pattern in all three infants studied. During the first 15–20 days after injection the daily excretion was 0.1% to 0.25% of the injected dose. Between days 20 and 80 a relatively constant level of 0.005% to 0.01% was observed. In Cases B1 and J4 peaks of 0.1% and 0.06% respectively were noted at about the 100th day after injection. Infant S1 showed two different peaks, the higher (0.17%) at about 60 days and the other at about 90 days after injection

Discussion

Radioactivity in circulating haemoglobin. The curves of the radioactivity in circulating total haemoglobin give further support to the previous conclusions [8] that the synthesis of haemoglobin is consider-

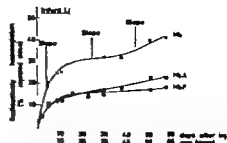


Fig. 1 Case L4. Radioiron in circulating haemoglobin during the first months of life after intravenous injection of Fe^{59} at the age of 5 days.

ably lower during the first one to two months of life than during the first two to four days of life and that during the second or third month of life there is a gradual increase in bone marrow activity. Initially not more than 25 to 55% of the injected radioiron appeared in the circulation (corresponding value during the first days of life 80–100%) but when the infants reached the age of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ months,

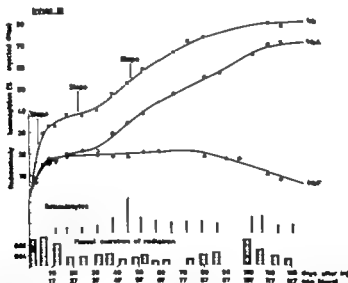


Fig. 2 Case B1. Radioiron in circulating haemoglobin during the first months of life after intravenous injection of Fe^{59} at the age of 7 days. The reticulocyte count and the faecal excretion of radioiron are also shown.

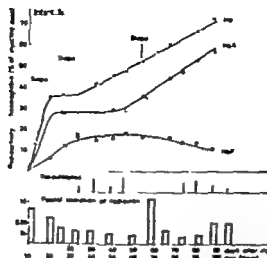


FIG. 3. Case KJ. Radioiron in circulating haemoglobin during the first months of life after intravenous injection of Fe^{59} at the age of 16 days. The reticulocyte count and the faecal excretion of radioiron are also shown.

the rate of appearance of radioactivity in the peripheral blood became more rapid again. During the first days after injection a considerable proportion of the radioactive atoms are thus taken up by iron stores, to be released when the increase in bone marrow activity call for more iron.

The third slope of the curve corresponding to the increase in bone-marrow activity is certainly much less steep than the first, but it must be borne in mind that by this time the specific activity of the precursor iron is very much lower than during the first days after injection. Thus the increase of radioactivity in circulating haemoglobin

during the second to third month of age is compatible with the assumption of a considerable increase in haemoglobin production.

The magnitude of this increase and the absolute rate of haemoglobin synthesis cannot be evaluated on the basis of the present data (cf. Garby, Sjölin & Vulliamy [8]). As can be seen from the figures there is good correlation between the onset of the third slope of the curve and the rise in reticulocyte values. A transient reticulocytosis, both relative and absolute at about two months of age has also been observed by Gairdner, Marik & Roscoe [4] and by Vest [17]. In the former study a concomitant increase in marrow erythroblast count was found. This count, however, continued to increase although the reticulocyte count again fell to values below 1% at about three months of age.

Case LD, in whom the appearance of the third slope was delayed, deserves special comment. This infant had suffered from postnatal hyperbilirubinaemia (maximum value 22.3 mg/100 ml on the sixth day of



FIG. 4. Case LD. Radioiron in circulating haemoglobin during the first months of life after intravenous injection of Fe^{59} at the age of 17 days.

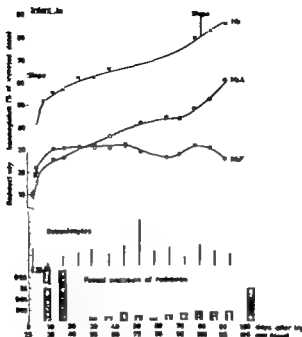


Fig. 5. Case Ja. Radiolabel in circulating haemoglobin during the first months of life after intravenous injection of ^{59}Fe at the age of 25 days. The reticulocyte count and the faecal excretion of radiolabel are also shown.

life): there were no signs of haemolytic disease however and no exchange transfusion was performed. During the whole course of the study the infant appeared perfectly healthy though he had a rather low haemoglobin concentration (around 9 g/100 ml) throughout the second and third months of life. In view of the behaviour of the labelled iron, this anaemia can be explained by an unusually long delay in the onset of bone-marrow recovery. We do not know whether the neonatal hyperbilirubinaemia may have had anything to do with this phenomenon but it is perhaps worth mentioning that Vest [17] claimed to have found lower reticulocyte values during the first three weeks of life in full term infants with hyperbilirubinaemia (more than 7 mg/100 ml) than in infants

whose bilirubin concentration was less than 7 mg/100 ml. It is also of interest to note that Labbe Zaake & Aldrich [13] found evidence of inhibition of haem synthesis by bilirubin *in vitro*.

Infant Ja showed an exceptionally high uptake of radiolabel in the peripheral blood, and had elevated reticulocyte values throughout the investigation period. In the study on the relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F [7], this infant seemed to synthesize much more HbF than normal full-term infants, and also had a consistently higher proportion of circulating HbF (in this respect behaving like a premature infant). These two extreme cases L8 and Ja must probably be regarded as reflecting individual variations in the time-course of the changes in erythropoiesis.

In all infants the curves for radioiron in Hb A and Hb F showed a divergent pattern after the initial uptake period. The radioactivity in Hb F remained on a more or less constant level, whereas the activity in Hb A increased continuously. This is in accordance with the findings of Carby, Sjöllin & Vulliamy [1], that the relative rate of synthesis of Hb F declines rapidly during the period of life.

About 50-75 days after the injection, the activity in Hb F showed a definite tendency to decrease in all infants studied beyond this time. This must be taken as evidence that red-cell death already starts at this time, at least in those cells that contain foetal haemoglobin. The problem will be treated more extensively in a forthcoming publication [9].

The faecal excretion of iron. To the best of our knowledge no direct measurements of the daily excretion of iron in young infants have been reported. Josephs [11] in an attempt to calculate the need of iron, estimated the daily excretion to be of the order of 0.015 mg/kg/day. Smith *et al* [10] who injected red cells labelled with ^{59}Fe into pregnant women and followed the specific activity of the iron in the red cells of the offspring of these women up to 2½ years after birth found that at 2 years, over 90% of transplacental iron was still utilized for haemoglobin. This figure which was arrived at by comparing the total activity in the circulation at birth with the total activity in the circulation at the age of 2 years has been used by Betke [1] to estimate roughly the daily loss of iron. However since little is known about the distribution kinetics of the labelled iron between the red cell compartment and other body compartment during this

period of life we do not feel that it is possible from these measurements to draw any conclusions concerning the rate of excretion of iron. In fact if the same calculations are made at the age of one year it is found that substantially more than 100% (!) of the total activity at birth is present in the circulation at one year of age. This surprising figure probably reflects errors in the calculated blood volumes of these infants as well as net shifts of iron from stores to the red cells.

In adult generally accepted figures for the daily excretion of iron are about 0.005-0.01 mg/kg in men and about twice that amount in menstruating women, although no direct measurements seem to have been made. The data obtained by Finch [3] are probably the best existing. Finch measured the rate of decrease in the radioactivity in circulating haemoglobin after an intravenous injection of ^{59}Fe . He found that this rate did not approach a first-order reaction until 1-2 years after injection and interpreted the finding as indicating the presence of very slowly exchanging iron stores. The rate constant of the "final single" slope was used to calculate the rate of iron excretion. This rate constant must represent a maximum value since further gradual mixing with iron stores could not be excluded. Although there is some doubt as to the magnitude of the total miscible pool of iron that may be used in calculating the excretion rate of iron, it appears that the figures obtained by Finch 0.01 mg/kg/day represent maximum values for iron excretion in men and non-menstruating women.

Dubach, Moore & Callender [2] measured the faecal excretion of radioiron after intravenous injection in adults, and

followed the excretion of the isotope for the following 140 days. The excretion of iron was then calculated by assuming that the specific activity of the excreted iron was identical to the value obtained by dividing the injected radioactivity by the estimated total body iron. In view of the findings of Finch [3] this assumption is probably erroneous, and will lead to an overestimate of the daily excretion. The values for the daily excretion of iron thus calculated were close to those obtained by Finch, a fact that probably means that both estimates are too large.

Our data for three infants seem to open up a new and from a theoretical point of view a more appropriate approach to the problem of iron excretion. Let us consider that moment in the infant's life when the haemoglobin concentration in the peripheral blood has reached its minimum that is at about two months of age. From this time on, the haemoglobin concentration remains relatively constant over a considerable period; the total haemoglobin mass increasing more or less proportionately with the gain in body weight. From this increase and a daily haemoglobin destruction of about 1-2% of the total haemoglobin mass (cf. Garby, Sjölén & Vuille [9]), the daily haemoglobin production can be predicted to be about 2.5% of the total circulating haemoglobin mass. In our three cases, the period was characterized by a steady increase in the radioactivity in the circulating haemoglobin. From this increase and an assumed daily production of 2.5% of the total haemoglobin mass, the specific activity of the bone-marrow iron precursor pool during this period can easily be calculated. Now at this stage of the experiment (between

30 and 60 days after injection) i.e. before any significant destruction of labelled cells has begun, the alteration in specific activity in any iron pool as a function of time is negligible compared to the velocity of the iron-exchange between the plasma and the bone marrow pool(s) so that the assumption that the specific activities of the iron in the bone marrow and the plasma are almost equal cannot be far wrong. It is also probable that the precursor iron for excretion into the bowel will have a specific activity very close to that of the plasma. The amount of iron excreted (E) can then be calculated thus,

$$E = R/SA$$

where E is the amount of excreted radioactivity per unit of time and SA the specific activity calculated as indicated above.

The values obtained from these calculations in the three infants Bl, Sj and Ja were 0.14, 0.16, and 0.13 mg/day or 0.032, 0.036 and 0.026 mg/kg/day respectively. The possible error introduced by the estimation of the daily haemoglobin synthesis and by the assumption concerning the specific activity of the precursor iron would presumably not suffice to alter these figures by more than a factor of 2. A comparison with the values for normal adults would therefore suggest that young infants lose three to six times as much of their iron as adults. Further, our results provide still more evidence in favour of this hypothesis. At about the 25th day after injection, an unmistakable peak appeared in the excretion of radioiron (about 5-10 times as much as during the preceding period). This peak is undoubtedly connected with the death of labelled cells and it is significant to note that it was not observed in

the experiments in adults carried out by Dubach Moore & Callender [9]. The high rate of iron excretion in this age group is of interest in view of the findings of Garby & Sjölin [5] that the absorption of labelled iron in the same age group was considerably greater than in adults. Thus the exchange of iron with the environment would seem to be much greater in infant than in adult.

The terminology associated with the study of transfer of iron across the intestinal mucosal barrier has been used somewhat loosely. The reason for this is to be found in incomplete knowledge of what is actually measured in a tracer experiment. The following discussion is designed to show that this question is not only of academic interest.

Since we have no detailed knowledge concerning the mechanisms of the movement of iron across the mucosal barrier we have to confine our argument to the general case in which there is a continuous flow of iron in both directions across the barrier. From the standpoint of tracer methodology it would appear reasonable to assign the word *absorption* to the sum of all flows in the direction from the intestinal lumen to the body proper, and the word *excretion* to the sum of all flows in the opposite direction. It should be stressed, however, that such a terminology would not be in harmony with the general clinical usage of these words. For instance, if a tracer experiment has shown that 10% of a given preparation of labelled iron (containing non-labelled iron atoms as well) under given conditions is taken up by the body during the passage through the intestines, it follows that 10% of the non-labelled iron will also have been taken up. Thus, from the tracer methodological standpoint it may be stated that the "absorption" of iron under these conditions is 10%. In this sense, however, the term *absorption* is not equivalent to the usual meaning of the word, which at any rate in the case of iron, is equivalent to that part of the given dose that is retained within the body for a reasonable

time. In the case of iron a reasonable time is of the order of weeks or months. The tracer experiment referred to above gives no information concerning the net transfer of iron from the environment to the intestines, to the body proper, since the "excretion" remains unknown. It should be pointed out that the coupling between absorption and "excretion" of iron may be quite close in order to give a concrete example let us consider the extreme case where the migration of iron across the barrier takes place as an exchange atom for atom (cf. the "link displacement" species discussed by Pathak [14]). Here the absorption is momentarily followed by an equally great "excretion" and although a tracer experiment would indicate a finite absorption of iron, there is no retention of iron in this case.

Dubach Moore & Callender [9] discussed the possible mechanism of iron excretion by the bowel. They concluded that the bile and cells desquamated or lost into the bowel provide at least some of the iron in the faeces and they believe that active excretion by the bowel is much less likely. It is possible that a significant part of excreted iron in young infants is derived from red cells lost by diapedesis or "microscopic bleeding" and Hoeg Wallerstein & Pollycove [10] have presented some evidence that this may indeed be the case. The peaks of radioactivity excretion in connexion with the destruction of labelled cells in our experiment provide strong evidence that most of the excreted iron consists of non red-cell iron, however.

Summary

Long term studies on five infants in whom radioactive iron had been injected intravenously provide further support to the earlier statement that the rate of syn-

thesis of haemoglobin is relatively very low after the first few days and up to $1\frac{1}{2}$ – $2\frac{1}{2}$ months of life after that the activity of the bone marrow again increases.

Further the data reported are in accordance with results of previous investigations concerning the relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F and haemoglobin A, showing that during the first weeks of life there is a rapid decrease in the relative rate of HbF production.

The findings in this study indicate

further that the destruction of red cells produced during the newborn period already starts after about 60–70 days.

The faecal excretion of radioiron was measured in three cases. Some theoretical considerations concerning the calculation of iron excretion from tracer data are given, and a figure for the daily iron excretion of about 0.03 mg/kg is suggested in these infants. This estimate is three to six times that of the usually accepted figure in adults.

References

1. BREWER, K.: Der Eisenhaushalt des Kindes. In *Elektrolytwechsel* (Ed. W. Keldering), Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, 1959.
2. DURACK, R., MOORE, C. V. and CALLENDER, S.: Studies in iron transportation and metabolism. IX. The excretion of iron as measured by the isotope technique. *J Lab Clin Med*, 45: 599, 1955.
3. FISCH, C. A.: Body iron exchange in man. *J Clin Invest*, 34: 392, 1959.
4. GARDNER, D., MARSH, J. and ROSEOM, J. D.: Blood formation in infancy. Part II. Normal erythropoiesis. *Arch Dis Child*, 27: 214, 1952.
5. GARRY, L. and BRÖLIN, B.: Absorption of labelled iron in infants less than three months old. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, Suppl 117: 24, 1959.
6. GARRY, L. and VUILLÉ, J.-C.: Studies on erythro-kinesis in infancy I. A modified one-minute alkali denaturation-precipitation method for haemoglobin F determination: agreement with spectrophotometric method. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51: 197, 1962.
7. GARRY, L., BRÖLIN, B. and VUILLÉ, J.-C.: Studies on erythro-kinesis in infancy II. The relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F and haemoglobin A during the first months of life. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51: 245, 1962.
8. GARRY, L., BRÖLIN, B. and VUILLÉ, J.-C.: Studies on erythro-kinesis in infancy III. Plasma disappearance and red-cell uptake of intravenously injected radioiron. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 52: 537, 1963.
9. GARRY, L., BRÖLIN, B. and VUILLÉ, J.-C.: Studies on erythro-kinesis in infancy V. Estimations of the life span of red cells in the newborn. (To be published in *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*).
10. HOAG, M. S., WALLERSTEIN, R. S. and POLLITCOFF, M.: Occult blood loss in iron deficiency anemia of infancy. *Pediatrics* 27: 199, 1961.
11. JOCKMAC, H. W.: Absorption of iron as problem in human physiology. *Blood*, 11: 1, 1953.
12. JOSEPH, H. W.: The iron of the newborn baby. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 48: 403, 1959.
13. LAURIE, R. F., ZASKE, M. B. and ALDRICH, R. A.: Bilirubin inhibition of heme biosynthesis. *Science* 129: 1741, 1959.
14. P. TLAK, C. S.: Contributions to the theory of active transport. *Bull Math Biophys* 18: 271, 1956.
15. SAND, M.: Reticulocyte studies. *Acta Med Scandinav* 5: suppl 232, 1962.
16. SMITH, O. A., CHERRY, R. B., MALETYKOS, C. J., GIBSON, J. O., ROSE, C. C., CATON, W. L. and REID, D. E.: Persistence and utilization of maternal iron for blood formation during infancy. *J Clin Invest* 24: 1391, 1955.
17. VETZ, M.: Physiologie und Pathologie des Neugeborenenlebens. *Bull Paediatr Fasc 99*, R. Karger Basel, 1959.

Submitted June 8, 1963

Accepted June 20, 1963

(S.S.) Department of Paediatrics
Akademiska sjukhuset
Uppsala
Sweden

the experiments in adults carried out by Dubach Moore & Callender [2]. The high rate of iron excretion in this age group is of interest in view of the findings of Garby & Sjölin [5] that the absorption of labelled iron in the same age group was considerably greater than in adults. Thus the exchange of iron with the environment would seem to be much greater in infants than in adults.

The terminology associated with the study of transfer of iron across the intestinal mucosal barrier has been used somewhat loosely. The reason for this is to be found in incomplete knowledge of what is actually measured in a tracer experiment. The following discussion is designed to show that this question is not only of academic interest.

Since we have no detailed knowledge concerning the mechanisms of the movement of iron across the mucosal barrier we have to confine our argument to the general case in which there is a continuous flow of iron in both directions across the barrier. From the standpoint of tracer methodology it would appear reasonable to assign the word *absorption* to the sum of all flow in the direction from the intestinal lumen to the body proper and the word *excretion* to the sum of all flow in the opposite direction. It should be stressed, however, that such a terminology would not be in harmony with the general clinical usage of these words. For instance, if a tracer experiment has shown that 10% of a given preparation of labelled iron (containing non-labelled iron atoms as well) under given conditions is taken up by the body during the passage through the intestine, it follows that 10% of the non-labelled atoms will also have been taken up. Thus from the tracer methodological standpoint it may be stated that the absorption of iron under these conditions is 10%. In this sense, however, the term *absorption* is not equivalent to the usual meaning of the word, which, at any rate in the case of iron, is equivalent to that part of the given dose that is retained within the body for a reasonable

time. In the case of iron, a "reasonable time" is of the order of weeks or months. The tracer experiment referred to above gives no information concerning the net transfer of iron from the environment to the intestine, since the body proper since the excretion remains unknown. It should be pointed out that the coupling between absorption and excretion of iron may be quite close. In order to give a concrete example let us consider the extreme case where the migration of iron across the barrier takes place as an exchange reaction for atoms of the "link & Impermeative" species discussed by Pálfi [14]. Here the absorption is momentarily followed by an equally great excretion and although a tracer experiment would indicate a finite absorption of iron, there is no retention of iron in this case.

Dubach Moore & Callender [2] discussed the possible mechanisms of iron excretion by the bowel. They concluded that the bile and cells desquamated or lost into the bowel provide at least some of the iron in the faeces, and they believe that active excretion by the bowel is much less likely. It is possible that a significant part of excreted iron in young infants is derived from red cells lost by diapedesis or microscopic bleeding" and Hoeg Walkerstein & Pollycore [10] have presented some evidence that this may indeed be the case. The peaks of radioactivity excretion in connexion with the destruction of labelled cell in our experiment provide strong evidence that most of the excreted iron consists of non red-cell iron, however.

Summary

Long term studies on five infants in whom radioactive iron had been injected intravenously provide further support to the earlier statement that the rate of iron

TABLE 1 *Levels of dietary supplementation*

| Vitamin, mg/day | Dosage levels for | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| | 1st month (I) | 2nd month (II) | 3rd month (III) | 4th month (IV) | 5th month (V) | 6th month (VI) | 7th month (VII) | 8th month (VIII) |
| Ascorbic acid | 4.0 | 8.0 | 16.0 | 33.0 | 60.0 | 100.0 | 180.0 | 200.0 |
| Thiamine | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 1.5 | 3.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 20.0 |
| Riboflavin | 0.10 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 1.5 | 3.0 | 6.0 | 10.0 |
| Pantothenic acid | —0 | 4.0 | 6.0 | 8.0 | 15.0 | 30.0 | 30.0 | 50.0 |
| Nicotinic acid | 2.0 | 4.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 15.0 | 20.0 | 30.0 | 60.0 |
| Cyanocobalamin | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.010 | 0.020 | 0.030 | 0.100 | 0.200 |
| Biotin | 0.010 | 0.020 | 0.040 | 0.060 | 0.100 | 0.150 | 0.200 | 0.250 |
| Pyridoxine | 0.4 | 0.8 | 1.5 | 3.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 20.0 | 40.0 |
| Folic acid | 0.50 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 5.0 | 10.0 |

The subjects were divided into two groups of five each, an experimental group receiving vitamin supplementation, and a control group receiving no supplementation, the two groups being matched with regard to initial dietary intake and found to be matched with regard to milk constitution.

Supplementation procedure

The supplementation was done simultaneously with regard to the vitamins studied previously viz., ascorbic acid, thiamine, riboflavin, pantothenic acid, nicotinic acid, cyanocobalamin, biotin, pyridoxine and folic acid. The dosage levels were increased progressively from initially low values to recommended levels of intake and beyond, each level being maintained for 1 month. Eight such levels were used as shown in Table 1. Synthetic preparations of the vitamins were used and appropriate amounts of the same were administered in the form of a solution except for ascorbic acid which was given in powder form. The subject was required to take the supplement in the presence of the experimenter.

Collection and analysis of milk

Collection and analysis of milk were done according to the procedures described elsewhere [5]. The analysis of milk was done

at the end of each supplementation treatment prior to the introduction of the next dosage level.

Estimation of milk yield

The 24 hrs intake of the infant was taken as the total yield of milk and was determined by weighing the infant before and after each feed.

Results

The changes in the milk levels of the vitamins with the progress of supplementation are shown in Table 2 from which it can be seen that the vitamin content of milk increases steadily with the dose of supplementation, significant increases being observed in many cases by the first month of supplementation, and in any case by the third month. However although the values continue to register an increase throughout the period of supplementation, the increments in milk levels are seen to diminish towards the end of the supplementation period.

Table 3 shows the initial and final values obtained in this study in comparison with the maximum values reported by other

(The mg group need not be supplemented them)

| Vitamins | Level of nutrient supplied mg/100 ml | Doseage level | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---------------|------|------|------|------|
| | | I | II | III | IV | V |
| Ascorbic acid mg/100 ml | Experimental | -4 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 2.4 | 2.8 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | -0.2 |
| Thiamine mg/100 ml | Experimental | 12.5 | 12.4 | 14.2 | 16.0 | 16.2 |
| | Control | 0.2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Riboflavin mg/100 ml | Experimental | 0.2 | 0.2 | 0.2 | 0.2 | 0.2 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Pantothenic acid mg/100 ml | Experimental | 10.0 | 10.0 | 10.0 | 10.0 | 10.0 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Nicotinic acid mg/100 ml | Experimental | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Pyridoxine mg/100 ml | Experimental | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Folic Acid mg/100 ml | Experimental | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
| | Control | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

The values were determined at the end of the supplementation period. The % of supplementation were increased progressively

TABLE 3 *Comparative values for the vitamin levels of milk with and without supplementation*

| Vitamin | With supplementation | | | | Without supplementation (Maximum value reported) |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-------|---------------|-------------|---|
| | Present study | | Other studies | | |
| | Initial | Final | Initial | Final | |
| Ascorbic acid mg/100 ml | 2.3 | 6.1 | 2.8 | 3.6 | 4.4 [13] |
| Thiamine mg/100 ml | 10.8 | 25.8 | 11 | 23 | 19.4 [7] |
| Riboflavin mg/100 ml | 20.0 | 74.0 | 28 | 48 | 48.9 [13] |
| Pantothenic acid mg/100 ml | 100.0 | 303 | 250 | 390 | 223 [9] |
| Nicotinic acid mg/100 ml | 98.0 | 275 | 9.2 ppm | 18.4 ppm | 173 [13] |
| Cyanocobalamin mg/lit | 0.078 | 0.100 | .06— .3 | .35— 60 | 0.41 [4] |
| Biotin mg/100 ml | 0.16 | 0.50 | — | — | 0.35 [13] |
| Pyridoxine mg/100 ml | 8.0 | 15.5 | 13.5 | 100. 600 | 18.0 [10] |

investigators with and without supplementation. It can be seen from the same that although the initial values are far less than those reported by other investigators, ranging from 20% to 60% of the latter the final values, except for cyanocobalamin, compare favourably with the values obtained by other investigators after large doses of supplementation. In the case of cyanocobalamin, however in spite of prolonged supplementation far above the recommended level of intake, the milk level fails to come up to the generally reported level which contrasts with the immediate increase from 0.06 to 0.20 reported by Karlin [8]. However this vitamin was administered orally without the intrinsic factor and we can only presume that its effectiveness might have been reduced thereby.

The 24 hrs yield of milk during the 5th month of supplementation and the estimated secretion of vitamins during this period are shown in Table 4 along with infant requirements. It can be seen that, while vitamin supplementation has a salu-

tary effect on milk yield the amounts of vitamins available to the infant are still short of the recommended levels except with regard to ascorbic acid. This would appear to be so because there is no concomitant increase in milk yield. However the gap between requirement and availability is found to be considerably narrowed and might be expected to have been further narrowed at the higher levels of supplementation used.

Discussion

Thus the present studies confirm previous findings that the administration of oral vitamin supplements to lactating women has beneficial effects of vitamin levels of milk, and further suggest that in subjects with low levels of vitamin intake beneficial effects may be obtained by relatively small doses of supplementation for prolonged periods.

Vitamin requirements during lactation have not been determined with regard to several vitamins. Moreover the same may

TABLE 4 *Twenty four hours milk yield and vitamin content after four months of supplementation*

| | Experimental | Control (No supple- mentation) | Recommended allowances for infants |
|---------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Twenty four hours milk yield ml | 500.0 \pm 15.0 | 550.0 \pm 17.0 | |
| Ascorbic acid, mg | 22.8 | 12.8 | 24.0 |
| Thiamine, mg | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.1 |
| Riboflavin, mg | 0.27 | 0.1 | 0.6 |
| Pantothenic acid, mg | 1.41 | 0.58 | — |
| Nicotinic acid, mg | 1.24 | 0.56 | 1.0 |
| Cyanocobalamin, mcg | 0.03 | 0.013 | — |
| Biotin, mcg | 29 | 0.84 | — |
| Pyridoxine, mg | 0.073 | 0.047 | — |
| Folic acid, mcg | 16 | 1.20 | — |

The supplement tion was carried out in progressively increasing doses as shown in Table 1

depend on the prior nutritional status of the subject. In this context Gopalan [6] has suggested the minimum maternal intake supporting maximum milk concentration as a possible criterion.

From this point of view it would be of interest to compare the dosage corresponding to ceiling milk levels with the recommended allowances. Such a comparison is made in Table 3 which also gives the dosage at which the maximum values reported by other investigators are reached. In regard to many of the vitamins the dosage corresponding to ceiling levels is seen to be considerably greater than recommended level. However the difference has to be considered in relation to the initial low nutritional status of the subjects. It would also appear from the table that the dietary inadequacy with regard to thiamine, pyridoxine and folic acid is relatively greater. To this list must be added cyanocobalamin on the basis of its low level in milk.

An interesting observation emerges with regard to the ascorbic acid secretion in milk. Although a high correlation has been

found by us between the dietary intake and milk constitution of this vitamin a scrutiny of the data for the control group reveals that the amount secreted in milk is of the order of 14 mg which is far in excess of the dietary intake (1.5 mg) of this in group which was arrived at by the actual analysis of the diet consumed for consecutive days. Although some seasonal variation in dietary intake cannot be ruled out it is to be noted that steady milk levels are maintained throughout the period studied. This intriguing observation prompted a re-analysis of the results of the cross-sectional study previously reported [5]. On a conservative estimation of a milk yield of 500 ml a day the intake and milk secretion of ascorbic acid in different ranges of intake are shown below.

| Quartile Range | Ascorbic acid (mg) | |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| | Mean intake | Estimated milk secretion |
| I | 0.6 | 12.00 |
| II | 2.4 | 13.50 |
| III | 4.4 | 15.00 |
| IV | 8.5 | 23.0 |

The discrepancy found in the above data between dietary intake and milk secretion is intriguing since ascorbic acid is not known to be stored in appreciable amounts in the body.

A similar scrutiny of the data with regard to the other vitamins studied showed the vitamin secretion in milk to be well within the amounts consumed in the diet. Although the method used for the estimation of ascorbic acid does not measure bound ascorbic acid either in diet or milk, this omission can hardly be considered to account for the gross disparity between milk and diet values.

Although the blood level of ascorbic acid [11, 14, 16] has been found to drop after parturition, and not to return to normal levels till after the termination of lactation [11] on the basis of total blood volume, it is unlikely that this fall can account for the estimated excess secretion of more than 2000 mg of ascorbic acid during six months of lactation. The hypothesis of tissue depletion to this extent also does not appear plausible in view of the fact that about 4000 mg are found to be needed to achieve tissue saturation in scorbutic patients [15] so that depletion to this extent after meeting maternal requirements may be expected to result in severe scorbutic symptoms. In this connection, certain data reported by Snelling & Jackson [16] yield a mean ascorbic acid content of 3.5 mg % for subjects with low blood levels of the vitamin. Bagchi [2] and Bhattacharya [3] have found middle class infants with low maternal intake of ascorbic acid to be free from scorbutic

symptoms. Such observations have led some investigators to raise the question as to whether there is any endogenous production, particularly during lactation [1, 12]. The above observations underline the need for further studies on ascorbic acid metabolism in the human body particularly during lactation.

In conclusion, the results of this experiment demonstrate the beneficial effects of vitamin supplementation of milk vitamins, and to some degree on yield as well, even when the supplementation is commenced at small doses. It would thus appear that the results obtained in such studies may be influenced not only by the absolute levels of supplementation, but also by the prior nutritional status of the subject.

Summary

Oral vitamin supplementation was administered to a group of five lactating women whose diets were grossly inadequate with regard to vitamins, fat, and protein. Another group of five subjects of like nutritional status served as controls.

The supplementation was commenced at low levels and increased gradually to recommended levels and further. Eight such levels were used, each level being maintained for one month. The vitamins supplemented were ascorbic acid, nicotinic acid, riboflavin, thiamine, pantothenic acid, cyanocobalamin, biotin, pyridoxine and folic acid.

Beneficial effects on milk levels were obtained within the third month of supplementation.

References

- 1 ANDERSON M., WALK R. A. H. P. and F. LEE, H. G. An investigation of the rarity of infantile scurvy among the South African Bantu. *Brit J Nutr* 10 101 1956.
- 2 BACCHI L. Ascorbic acid in milk and plasma of Italian women. *Ind Med Gaz*, 57 194, 1952.
- 3 BHARUCHA P. F. Vitamin C deficiency in the breast-fed infant. *Ind J Child Health* 5 57 1958.
- 4 COLLI R. A., HARPER, A. J. KIM KI SE, M. and ELVERSEN C. A. The folie acid and vitamin B₁₂ content of the milk of arctic sprines. *J Nat* 43 312, 1951.
- 5 DEODHAR, A. H. and RAM B. V. C. V. Studies on human lactation (Relation between dietary intake of lactating women and the chemical composition of milk with regard to vitamin content). *J Trop Pediatr* 6 44 1960.
- 6 GO LAY C. A. Report Nutrition Research Laboratory Hyderabad, India, 1961 6 p. 19.
- 7 H. TREER, M. and ST. J. F. F. Analysis of malnutrition. *M R C Rep* 9 1 272, p. 379 1951.
- 8 KARLI R. Influence de l'alimentation de la vitamine B₁₂ sur le biberon ou parentérale sur la teneur en cet élément dans le lait humain. *Bull Soc Ch in Biol* 36 1863, 1954.
- 9 KARLY R. Recherches sur les vitamines dans le lait de femme. 2. Teneur en acide pantothenique. Variations au cours de la lactation. *Compt Rend Soc Biol* 151 151, 1957.
- 10 KARLY R. Recherches sur des vitamines dans le lait de femme. Variation de la teneur en vitamine B₁₂ au cours de la lactation. Comparaison avec le lait bovin. *Compt Rend Soc Biol* 153: 127 1959.
- 11 KH. LIL, A. and WALT G. Vitamin C in the nutrition of infants, pregnant and lactating women. *J Roy Egypt Med Assoc* 2, 151, 1959.
12. JAYO C. G. Vitamin C. *JAMA* 147 542, 1950.
13. M. CY I H. KELLY H. J. and RLO R. E. *Nat R Council Bull* 1 119 1950.
- 14 MADONNET A. WESER, D. and WESTHEIMER, E. The concentration of vitamin C in the blood during and after pregnancy. *J Lab Clin Med*, 25 171, 1939.
15. FREEL, W. H. (Jr) and H. RICH, R. S. *The Vitamin*, Vol. I p. 82. Academic Press, Inc., Publishers, New York, 1954.
16. R. KELLY, C. G. and JACKSON, R. H. Studies of Vitamin C during pregnancy birth and early infancy. *J Pediatr* 14 447 1939.

Manuscript M y 5, 1963

Accepted June 6 1963

Biochemistry Department
Faculty of Science
University of Nairobi
Nairobi
Kenya

From the Department of Bacteriology (Head: Professor Gunnar Löfdström) University of Uppsala, Sweden

Detection of Enteropathogenic *Escherichia Coli* in a Swedish Watercourse (the River Fyris) by Means of Fluorescent Antibodies and by Conventional Methods

by DAN DANIELSSON and GUNNAR LAURELL

After the basic work by Bray [1] and Taylor *et al.* [17] there are now a large number of *E. coli* serotypes considered to be associated with epidemic infantile diarrhoea. They are most frequently isolated in connection with epidemic outbreaks in hospitals or children's homes, but they are also found in children who fall ill outside a hospital. The ways by which the illness is spread from case to case are well known [10-15] but less is known about the extra-human occurrence of the serotypes and about possible reservoirs of infection. Recently Ewing [7] has issued a report covering an 11 year period from 1950-1960 of the sources of *E. coli* cultures belonging to serotypes associated with infantile diarrhoea. Most of these were isolated from faeces originating from humans and animals with diarrhoea, but strains were also isolated from extra-intestinal sources, viz cheese, tap water and milk. The occurrence of enteropathogenic *E. coli* in specimens of non-faecal origin has been reported by Jones [8]. In France *E. coli* 026B0, 055B5 and 0111B4 have been isolated from different drinking water sources by Monnet *et al.*

[11] and Seigneurin *et al.* [16] and in a mountain stream in the Rocky Mountain area 056B1 and 0111 ac have been isolated by Petersen *et al.* [13].

In the autumn of 1961 we took a water sample from the river Fyris in Uppsala. In this sample we could identify enteropathogenic *E. coli* by the direct fluorescent antibody technique and this finding was verified by the conventional cultivation method. In consequence we continued to examine water samples from this river during a 6-month period (November 1961-May 1962). The enteropathogenic *E. coli* found in this investigation have been reported in the previous work [3].

Material

Water samples were collected from the Fyris at the so-called Islandsbron in Uppsala. The Fyris originates from a small lake in the north of Uppland, collects water from smaller streams, passes through Uppsala and falls into Lake Mälaren. The sampling point is situated about 1.6 km above the outlet of the water from the sewage treatment plant and about 8 km from the outflow of the Fyris into Lake Mälaren.

Water samples were collected in a sterile glass bottle and were subjected to investigation within one hour after collection.

Method

(I) Estimation of the coliform density

The standard multitube method (MPN method) was used for the estimation of the coliform density. Lactose peptone broth with sodium formiat was used as medium, and to the series of tubes set up water was added in the following way: five 10 ml, five 1 ml and five 0.1 ml. Because of the high degree of contamination with coliform organisms the water samples were as a rule diluted 1/10 and sometimes 1/100. The tubes were incubated at 37°C and were read off after an incubation time of 48 hours. The estimation was done only as a presumptive test and gas production in a tube was considered to indicate the presence of coliform organisms.

(II) Production of antisera

Young albino rabbits weighing 2–3 kg were used. Immunization was carried out according to the procedure laid down by Edwards & Fung [6]. Antisera were produced against the following *E. coli* strains: O⁶H¹⁶, O⁵H⁵, O⁶H⁷, O¹¹H⁴, O¹¹H⁶ and ac O¹¹H⁷, O¹¹H¹⁴, O¹²H¹⁵, O¹⁴H¹⁸, O¹⁷H⁸, O¹²H¹¹. The titres of the sera were estimated by the current tube agglutination technique. In acceptable sera the O-titres were as a rule 1:180–5120 and the H-titres 1:18–256.

(III) Conjugation with fluorescent substance

The globulin portion of each antiserum was conjugated with fluorescein isothiocyanate (abbreviated FITC) according to procedures described in a previous paper [4] or with *Lissamine rhodamine B* (abbreviated RB) in the manner described by Vinn [12]. Unconjugated substance was removed by passing the conjugate through a column packed with Sephadex G-25 (Pharmacia,

Uppsala) in phosphate-buffered physiological saline pH 7.2.

The staining titre of each of the anticoliglobulin conjugates was estimated in the manner described before [4]. They gave as a rule good staining reactions (judged as 3–4+) at dilutions of 1:16–1:32.

The specificity of the conjugates was investigated by testing them against heterologous enteropathogenic *E. coli* strains, nonenteropathogenic *coli* strains, strains belonging to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acetobacter aerogenes*, and *Proteus*. When undiluted the conjugate of anti O¹¹H⁶ gave a weak cross reaction (judged as 1/2+) to O¹¹H⁶ and the conjugate of anti O¹²H¹⁵ to O⁶H⁷. These cross reactions were however no longer visible at a dilution of 1:16. To the other strains tested the conjugates did not show any cross reactions.

(IV) Preparation and staining of smears

One ml broth was taken from those tubes in the MPN-specimen exhibiting growth and the production of gas. The broth was pooled from each series of tubes and centrifuged at 3000 rpm for 30 minutes. The sediment was suspended in physiological saline and smears were made for treatment with fluorescent antibodies. Staining was performed in the usual manner [4]. To begin with the smears were tested with pooled conjugates, each consisting of six anticoliglobulin conjugates. Three of these were conjugated with FITC and three with RB. Bacteria reacting to FITC-conjugates appeared with a yellow-green colour in the fluorescence microscope and those reacting to RB-conjugates appeared with an orange colour. If a positive result was obtained we tested smears with single globulin conjugates from the different pools to arrive at a definite diagnosis. Control tests were made on normal rabbit globulin and also by means of inhibition tests.

(V) Fluorescence microscopy

A Zeiss fluorescence microscope equipped with a dark field condenser and an Osram HBO 500 mercury lamp was used. A BG15

(2 mm) was used as primary filter and a Zeiss 47 or a Zeiss 50 as secondary filter. The following scale was used for reading: if the number of fluorescent bacteria.

Negative: \ fluorescent bacteria present

Infrequent (I): Single fluorescent bacterium per field.

Moderate (M): 2-30 fluorescent bacteria per field.

Abundant (A): More than 30 fluorescent bacteria per field.

(VI) Isolation of enteropathogenic *E. coli*

For the isolation according to conventional methods we used Conradi-Drigalski blue agar plates [9]. We first tried with direct inoculation of crude river water but with negative results. The same sediment as was used for preparation of smears for the fluorescent technique was then used for inoculation of the plates. After incubation at 37° for 20-4 hours about 40-50 colonies were examined by means of slide agglutination tests. Two pooled antisera were used each pool containing six antisera. Colonies giving a positive agglutination were cultured on a glucose agar plate and then tested with single sera to determine the K-antigen. The O-antigen was confirmed by the current tube agglutination technique after the growth of positive colonies in broth and boiling at 100°C for 30 minutes. Suspected strains were also tested biochemically using lactose, sucrose, inositol, salicin, mannitol, tryptophan and urea. This biochemical testing was of great value especially with strains belonging to 0112:b and 0112:a.

Result

1. The coliform density

The results of the MPN estimation of the coliform density are presented in Table 1.

The coliform density did not show much variation from the middle of November 1961 when the investigation started, till the end of March 1962. Then, however a

TABLE 1. The results of the MPN estimation of the coliform density

| Sample no. | Month and day | Coliforms/100 ml |
|------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 | Nov. 20th | 1,800 |
| 2 | Dec. 11th | 1,800 |
| 3 | Dec. 18th | 1,600 |
| 4 | Jan. 2nd | 1,700 |
| 5 | Jan. 8th | 1,800 |
| 6 | Feb. 14th | 1,600 |
| 7 | March 29th | 1,500 |
| 8 | Apr. 3rd | 1,600 |
| 9 | Apr. 10th | 20,000 |
| 10 | Apr. 24th | 7,000 |
| 11 | Apr. 31st | 2,000 |
| 12 | May 14th | 1,600 |

pronounced increase was noted, the content of bacteria increased tenfold in one week and continued to increase during the following week when it mounted to 20,000 coliforms per 100 ml. The highest values were recorded after the breaking up of the ice and the thawing of the snow a process which culminated in the middle of March. The water level in the Fyris rose by about 1 metre as a result of this and the pollution of the water was very pronounced. Two weeks later the coliform density was 7,000 and in May it was 1,500/100 ml, i.e. about the same as before the break up of the ice.

2. Identification of enteropathogenic *E. coli* by means of fluorescent antibodies and isolation by conventional methods

Fig. 1 provides an illustration of the double staining technique employed. Anticollglobulin 055B5 is here conjugated with FITC and these bacteria in consequence give a green fluorescence while anticollglobulin 0111B4 is conjugated with RB200 the bacteria in consequence giving an orange fluorescence.

TABLE 2 *Results obtained by the conventional method and by the fluorescent antibody technique together with the quantitative grading*

| Sample no. | Month and day | Isolation by conventional method | Identification by fluorescent antibodies | | |
|------------|---------------|----------------------------------|--|-------------------|---|
| | | | A | M | I |
| 1 | Nov 20th | 033 0112 b | 011 | 035 | |
| 2 | Dec 11th | 011 as | | 0112 as 0123 | 0127 |
| 3 | Dec 18th | 01.3 | 01.3 | | 011 as 0127 |
| 4 | Jan 2nd | | | | 011 b, 0123 |
| 5 | Jan. 8th | | | | 0114 0119 |
| 6 | Febr 14th | | | | 033, 0123 |
| 7 | March 20th | 01.3 | 0123 | | 026, 0112 as |
| 8 | Apr 3rd | 0127 | 0127 | | 0114 0119, 0127 026, 0112 ab, 0119 0123 0126, 0128 |
| 9 | Apr 10th | 0119 | 0119 | | 026, 0112 as 0114 0123 0126, 0127 |
| 10 | Apr 11th | 0119 | 0119 | 011 ab 0112 as | 026, 0114 |
| 11 | Apr 31 | | | 0119 | 033, 0114 01.3 |
| 12 | May 14th | 0114 | 0114 | 01 6 | 033, 036 |

Table 2 records the general findings concerning the occurrence of enteropathogenic *E. coli* during the investigation.

As the table shows, 48 strains belonging to ten different O groups were identified by means of the fluorescent antibody technique. Most of them occurred infrequently (I) but sometimes they were found in moderate (M) or abundant (A) numbers. It should however be borne in mind that the identification technique employed involved an enriching. The highest number of strains was identified when the coliform density was high i.e. after the ice had broken up. Seven of the strains were identified on four to eight different occasions. Most of the strains which were identified belonged to types

which had not caused epidemics in Sweden, but had only been recorded in connection with individual cases of diarrhoea.

By means of the conventional technique nine strains belonging to six different O groups were isolated. Three strains were isolated on two separate occasions. When strain were isolated by means of conventional culture they could always be demonstrated by the fluorescent antibody technique.

Discussion

The investigation of a minor water course in Sweden by means of the direct fluorescent antibody technique resulted in the identification of 48 enteropathogenic *E. coli* in all on 16 different occasions. The conventional technique in



Fig. 1 An example of the double staining technique (see text). 055B5 - green rods.
0111B4 - orange rods. Film: Super Anscochrome, 33 mm, Tungsten. Exposure: 70 sec.

contrast only recorded nine strains on the same occasions. The fluorescent antibody method thus showed a significantly greater degree of sensitivity. The method of cultivation used here in the investigation of the bacterial sediment from a tube of broth in a normal presumptive water test should, to judge by Dixon's experiments [5] be considered to be a particular form of enrichment. He has shown that when two or more coliform strains are inoculated into nutrient broth in unequal numbers incubation at either 37° or 44°C results in an increase in the proportion of the more scanty strain.

When judging the results obtained with the fluorescent antibody technique it must be remembered that the method is strictly serological and that cross reactions with other bacteria may give false positive results. All things considered however this seems not to have interfered with the diagnosis. Thus, for example the presence of a serotype could always be verified by the conventional method if its presence was classified as abundant by the fluorescent antibody method. Neither did the conjugates used in this investigation show any cross reactions to bacteria so far tested. Moreover it has been shown in a previous paper [3] that after the enrichment of a specimen the sensitivity of the fluorescent antibody technique is increased as compared with the conventional method.

The pathogenic serotypes occurred most plentifully when there was high density

of coliforms in the watercourse i.e. in the spring after the thawing of the snow and the breaking up of the ice. Most of the serotypes isolated have not been associated with epidemics in our country but they have been isolated from individual cases of infantile diarrhoea. The origin of the pathogenic serotypes is obscure but the increased frequency during the spring and after the break-up of the ice points to bacterial pollution from cultivated soil. Cattle may be of some importance a supposition which is supported by the fact that serotypes O86B O114 and O119B14 have been isolated from calves [... 14 18 19]; we isolated O114 once and O119B14 twice in spring. The present investigation shows in any case that the enteropathogenic serotypes of *E. coli* are widely distributed outside the human organism and that they can occur plentifully in polluted watercourses.

Summary

During a 6-month period (November 1961–May 1962) a minor watercourse in Sweden (the river Fvris) has been investigated by the fluorescent antibody technique and by conventional method on the occurrence of *Escherichia coli* serotypes associated with infantile diarrhoea. Forty-eight strains belonging to ten different O groups were identified by fluorescent antibodies. By conventional technique nine strains belonging to six O groups were isolated. The origin of the strains is discussed.

References

1. BRAY J. Isolation of antigenically homogeneous strains of *Bact. coli* nonpathogenic from summer diarrhoea of infants. *J. Path. Bact.* 47: 279 1945.
2. CHARTER, RUTH E. *Escherichia coli* type O114 isolated from infantile diarrhoea and calf scour. *J. Path. Bact.* 11 33, 1956.
3. DANIELSSON, D. and LARVELL, O. Identifi-

- ction of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* 0111:114 by means of fluorescent anti bodies (Acta Pathol (Stockh) 50:379 1941)
4. DANIELSSON D. The demonstration of λ proteolysins with the aid of fluorescent anti bodies. (Acta Chem Scand 19:1001 1955)
 5. DANIELSSON D. (1955) Observations on the growth in nutrient broth of mixtures of *Escherichia coli* strains, one of faecal specimens having enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* serotype J 1199 57:174 1959
 6. DANIELSSON D. and FINE W. H. Identification of Enterobacteriaceae. Hagerrow Publishing Company 1953
 7. FINE W. H. Sources of *Escherichia coli* cultures that belong to O antigen groups associated with infantile diarrhoeal disease. J Infect Dis 116:310 1965
 8. JENSEN M. (1955) Enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* from specimens from Iceland. J Infect Dis 105:214 1960
 9. KILBICKI J. Pathobacteriologie 2nd ed 1954 Munksgaard Copenhagen
 10. LAURELL G. M. and JENSEN M. F. (1954) and WILKINSON R. (1955) Epilepsy in infantile diarrhoea and vomiting. Acta Pathol (Stockh) 49:200 1955
 11. MONTGOMERY J. D., JENSEN M. F. and DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 12. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 13. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 14. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 15. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 16. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 17. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 18. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 19. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 20. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 21. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 22. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 23. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 24. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 25. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 26. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 27. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 28. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 29. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 30. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 31. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 32. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 33. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 34. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 35. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 36. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 37. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 38. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 39. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 40. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 41. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 42. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 43. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 44. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 45. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 46. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 47. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 48. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 49. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 50. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 51. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 52. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 53. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 54. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 55. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 56. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 57. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 58. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 59. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 60. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 61. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 62. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 63. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 64. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 65. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 66. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 67. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 68. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 69. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 70. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 71. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 72. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 73. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 74. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 75. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 76. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 77. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 78. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 79. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 80. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 81. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 82. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 83. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 84. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 85. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 86. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 87. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 88. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 89. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 90. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 91. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 92. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 93. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 94. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 95. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 96. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 97. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 98. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 99. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114
 100. DANIELSSON D. (1955) *Escherichia coli* serotype 0111:114 and 055:114

Received June 20 1963
 accepted July 1 1963

Department of Bacteriology
 University of Uppsala
 Uppsala
 Sweden

CASE REPORT

Congenital Agammaglobulinaemia in the Brother of a Boy who Died of Generalized BCG Infection

by J. O. BONNEVIER, JOHAN KILLANDER, LARS OLDING and
BO VAHLQUIST

Departments of Paediatrics, Clinical-Chemistry and Pathology I University of Uppsala, Uppsala, Sweden

At the Department of Paediatrics Uppsala in January 1962 a boy died of general sepsis with signs of congenital agammaglobulinaemia. A brother of this child had died in 1953 of generalized BCG infection [5]. The occurrence of these two, both rare illnesses in two brothers in itself justifies publication. As will be apparent from the following there is evidence that the boy that died of BCG infection also had gammaglobulinaemia.

Case history

Family history. The patient had many relatives both on the father and the mother side, but, as far as is known, none had showed any marked proneness to severe infections.

Sib. 1. Boy born May 25, 1952. Birth weight 2830 g. Died at 8 months of age of generalized BCG infection [5].

BCG vaccination was carried out in the usual way (intradermal injection in the left thigh) at the Department of Obstetrics when the infant was 5 days old. At the age of 6 months he developed lymphadenitis in the left groin, at 7 months he developed pyrexia which settled during penicillin therapy and cough, which persisted. He was admitted to the Paediatric Department at

8 months of age in very poor condition, dyspnoeic, cyanotic, with an area of necrosis 20 mm in diameter at the site of vaccination and lymph nodes with the size of hazelnuts in the left groin and active rickets. X-ray examination of the chest disclosed a large opacity first in the upper lobe of the left lung, and later also in the right lung. The white-cell count was 6900, with 23.5% lymphocytes but no plasma cells. The Mantoux test (1 mg) was negative. Despite treatment with large doses of tetracycline and blood transfusion, the patient died 12 days after admission. Postmortem examination revealed generalized tuberculosis, and the bacteria that were demonstrated could not, even on detailed investigation, be distinguished from BCG.

Sib. 2. A girl, born in 1937. She is healthy and not susceptible to infections.

Sib. 3. Our patient. T. E., a boy born July 14, 1961. Record no. 91/1962, Paed. Clin., Uppsala. Birth weight 3480 g.

Owing to the brother's illness, BCG vaccination was not done. The infant received breast milk and supplementary feeding until 4 months of age. Nov. 25, 1961 he contracted common cold, having been infected by his sister who quickly recovered. He was treated with nose drops and cough medicine from Dec. 15, 1961 also with penicillin, and later with tetracycline and chloromycetin (see Fig. 1). After one week at the Hospital for Infectious Diseases he was transferred

Dimitrova, 1960

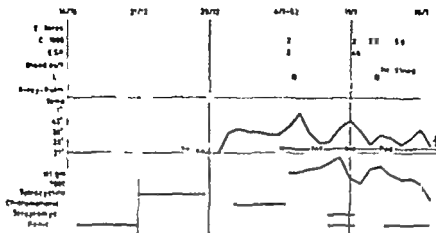


Fig. 1. Course of disease and treatment. X indicates examinations for which results are given in the text.

on Jan. 11, 1960 at the Department of Lardiacs.

On admission the patient had high pyrexia, but was relatively little affected. There was no exanthema or oedema, and no enlargement of tonsils or other lymphoid tissue was noted. No real exanthema of the heat (rash) was taken in both sides. The respiratory rate was 100/min. The heart sound were normal. The liver was 4 cm below the costal margin. The spleen was not palpable. There were no normal findings in the central nervous system.

X-ray on the chest disclosed small cloud-like opacities in the lower lobe of the left lung. The CXR was normal, and the Mantoux test (0.1 mg) negative.

Laboratory test: Haemoglobin 10.6 g/100 ml, there was anaemia; no pink leucocytes in the red cell. WBC cell count was 4000 (non-segmented neutrophils 10%, polymorphonuclears 70%, eosinophils 10%, basophils 0%, lymphocytes 9%, monocytes 2%). Later white cell count of 8900 \pm 600 were recorded with increased relative lymphocytes. The micro-PCR was 4.51-4.4 mm. Bone-marrow biopsy gave a very small yield. No plasma cells could be demonstrated.

Test of liver function were normal. There was no glomerular or albuminuria. The urinary sediment showed on one occasion 8-10 leucocytes per field but culture yielded less than 1000 bacteria per ml. In the faeces culture no pathogenic bacteria were observed but salmonella type 4 isolated. Lactose-positive and culture of the cerebrospinal fluid were normal and in blood culture on two occasions. Giemsa test and Löffler's culture of gastric mucus for TBT were negative.

Serological investigations: Antistaphylococcal was 0.5 unit/ml and antitryptophan 0.1 unit per ml, coagulability was positive on neutralization test against salmonella. Serum and serum complementation against adenovirus 1/10, complementation against adenovirus 1/5 and against Herpes simplex 1 (acute and on absent sera equal). Neutralization titre against Coxsackie B₂ - 1/160, and against Coxsackie B₁ - 1/40 (acute and on absent sera equal).

Ischaemagglutination: The patient belonged to blood-group A Rh(+) Only traces of anti B could be demonstrated, using especially sensitive method [4].

Complement: The activities of total complement and of the component C₃, C₄

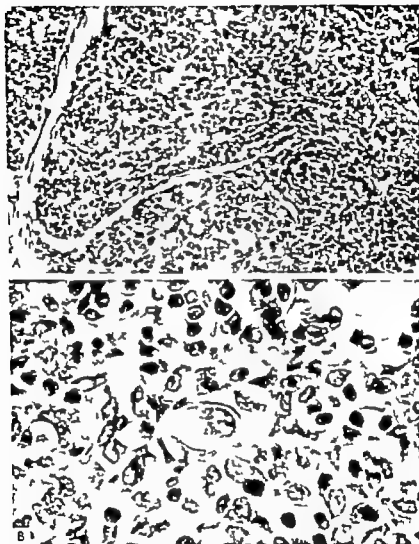


Fig. 2A. Section from the thymus. There is pronounced lymphoid hypoplasia with only sparse lymphocytes and marked overgrowth of hyperplastic reticuloepithelial cells. Only single Hassall's body is shown in this section. (van Gieson stain, 200)

Fig. 2B. Higher magnification of Fig. 2A. In the centre is an atrophic Hassall's body (van Gieson stain, 800)

C₁ and beta₂-globulin measured according to (8) were present in the same range as in normal sera.

Immunoglobulins. Total serum proteins amounted to 6.5 g. Paper electrophoresis showed no peak in the gamma region, but quantitative sediment (Spinco Analytrol)

gave a value of 0.6% for gammaglobulins. Paper electrophoresis, however, gives unreliable too-high values, especially in the case of low gammaglobulin concentrations. Gammaglobulins were demonstrable immunologically in concentration 1.95 mg/100 ml. The analyses were carried out by the anti-



Fig. 3A. Section from a lymph node with hyperplastic follicles and large necrosis. Only scattered lymphocytes are present in the medulla (see Gleason et al. in 100).

Fig. 3B. Higher magnification of the section shown in Fig. 3A. The hyperplastic reticuloendothelium is shown. In the picture to the left there is necrosis with only small number of granulocytes and lymphocytes (cf periphery (see Gleason et al. in 200).

globulin inhibition method and the gel diffusion precipitin technique as described in [15], and by an agglutination inhibition test in which the gammaglobulin in the specimen inhibits the reaction between anti

gammaglobulin and formalin and tannic acid treated sheep red cell coated with human gammaglobulin [12].

It could be shown, by immuno-electrophoresis (Scheldtger micromethod a de-

scribed in (2)) carried out with rabbit anti human plasma protein serum and specific rabbit anti-beta_{2L} and anti-beta_{2M} sera that the 7-S gamma globulin was much lower than normal, and that no beta_{2L} globulin and only traces of beta_{2M} globulin could be demonstrated.

Investigation of relatives. It was found with the aid of paper electrophoresis and immuno-electrophoresis that the father had a low serum concentration of beta_{2M} globulin. The sister mother an aunt, an uncle and a cousin to the mother showed no immunoglobulin anomalies.

Treatment and course. The boy's general condition remained fairly good despite the gradual development of recurrent pyrexia (37.5°-40°C). He was treated at the Hospital for Infectious Diseases with streptomycin and penicillin, and at the Department of Paediatrics with penicillin in million-unit doses, in both instances with temporary effect. On January 18th 1963 he suddenly deteriorated despite all therapy and died 18 days after admission to hospital.

Necropsy

Thymus (Fig. 2A and 2B). The thymus was markedly hypoplastic (17 g). Histological examination showed very pronounced lymphoid hypoplasia with only very small, scattered groups of lymphocytes persisting. The picture was dominated by numerous hyperplastic reticulo-epithelial cells. Only a few isolated, atrophic Hassall's bodies were present.

Lymph nodes and other lymphoid tissue (Fig. 3A and 3B). A few lymph nodes the size of peas and with a singular gelatinous appearance were present in the region of the abdominal aorta. No other lymph nodes could be detected with the naked eye. The tonsils were very small. Microscopical examination of the enlarged nodes disclosed marked changes. The cortex contained only small, atrophic lymph follicles. Scattered lymphocytes were present in the medulla. On the other hand, there was hyperplasia of the reticuloendothelial component. The

cortex especially showed multiple areas of necrosis, with narrow peripheral zones of lymphocytes and occasional granulocytes. The parenchyma was oedematous.

The lymph follicles of the intestinal mucosa showed only isolated lymphocytes, and the reticuloendothelium was possibly hyperplastic. No plasma cells could be seen.

Spleen (Fig. 4). This organ was slightly enlarged (23 g). Microscopically the Malpighian bodies showed moderate atrophy and were surrounded by narrow zones of haemorrhage. The reticuloendothelium was moderately hyperplastic but apart from this the medulla contained few cells, with only occasional lymphocytes and granulocytes in the sinusoids. There were no areas of necrosis.

Liver (Fig. 5). The liver was enlarged (350 g). Large, yellowish-white foci were visible to the naked eye. On microscopical examination they were seen to consist of large partially confluent areas of necrosis surrounded by a few lymphocytes and granulocytes. In and about these areas of necrosis there were numerous gram-negative rod-shaped bacteria. There were no inclusion bodies.

Adrenals. The size was normal. The cortex contained multiple small areas of necrosis with no inflammatory cellular reaction. Gram-negative rods were also present in these areas of necrosis.

Bone marrow (ileo crest). No pathological changes in erythropoiesis were demonstrable. No plasma cells were seen, but myelopoiesis was otherwise apparently normal.

Brain. Small, scattered patches of perivascular lymphocytic infiltration were present in the basal ganglia, but no areas of necrosis were seen.

Lungs. Small areas of atelectasis and haemorrhage were noted, but there were no signs of pneumonia.

Bacteriological and virological investigation of the postmortem material. Bacteriological culture of blood, lung, liver, spleen, kidney and gut yielded luxuriant growth of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in all samples. The gut also contained *B. coli*.

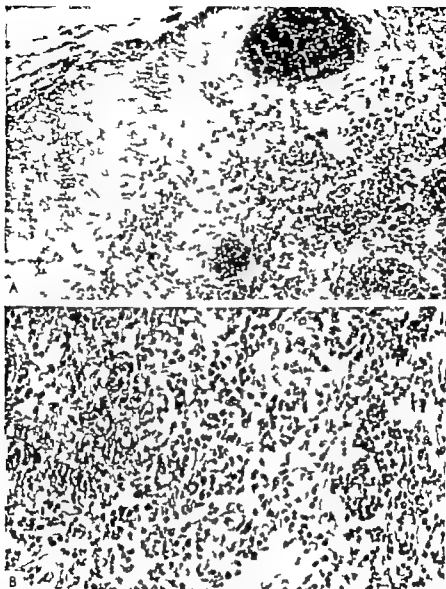


Fig 3A. Section from lymph node with hypoplastic follicles and a large necrosis. Only scattered lymphocytes are present in the medulla. van Gieson stain 100

Fig 3B. Higher magnification of the section shown in Fig. 3A. The hyperplastic reticulo-endothelium is shown. In the picture to the left there is necrosis with only a small number of granulocytes and lymphocytes at its periphery. van Gieson stain 200

globulin-inhibition method and the gel-diffusion precipitin technique as described in [15], and by an agglutination-inhibition test in which the gammaglobulin in the specimen inhibits the reaction between anti-

gammaglobulin and formalin and tannic-acid treated sheep red cells coated with human gammaglobulin [13].

It could be shown by immuno-electrophoresis (Scheidegger micromethod as de-

Resumé of the necropsy findings

The essential changes were marked lymphoid hypoplasia, most pronounced in the thymus and lymph nodes, and reticulo-epithelial and reticulo-endothelial hyperplasia in the thymus and other lymphoid organs. The Hassall bodies were small and scarce. A noteworthy finding was the absence of plasma cells in the bone marrow and gut where such cells are normally present. The cause of death would seem to have been bacterial sepsis combined with generalized viraemia. The multiple necrotic foci in the liver, lymph nodes, and adrenals were most probably caused by infection, since large numbers of bacteria were demonstrated in connection with them. The total or nearly total absence of inflammatory cellular reaction about these foci was striking.

Discussion

The diagnosis of agammaglobulinaemia is based primarily on the immunochemical and serological laboratory findings, with the additional support of the clinical and morbid-anatomical picture. The term agammaglobulinaemia implies the total absence of gammaglobulins. With the aid of the sensitive methods of analysis now available however it is noteworthy that this is practically never found, although they may be greatly reduced. Strictly speaking then, ours was a case of hypogammaglobulinaemia. The term agammaglobulinaemia is an established one however and there is reason for retaining it.

Most cases of agammaglobulinaemia with a typical clinical and/or pathological picture have shown gammaglobulin values of under 100 mg/100 ml as determined by specific immunochemical methods [1 10 11 14]. In certain cases however

the values have exceeded this limit, and some have been described in which the gammaglobulin level was normal or raised but in which the patient nevertheless showed clinical signs of antibody-deficiency syndrome. In the latter type of case other of the antibody-carrying globulin fractions (β_{2M} and β_{2A}) were often abnormally low.

In our case the serum content of gamma globulins as determined by specific immuno-chemical techniques was 95 mg/100 ml. Even with regard to the age of the patient, this is very low though not extremely low. Similarly β_{2A} and β_{2M} globulins determined by immuno-electrophoresis showed a concentration that must be regarded as definitely pathological, even having regard to the patient's age.

Serological investigations revealed a very low content of isohaemagglutinins, and in addition, with one exception (Coxsackie B₂ neutralization test at titre 1/160) negative reactions to a series of different tests, including tests for antibodies against adenovirus type 2, although this virus was demonstrated in a number of organs post mortem.

The absence of plasma cells from blood and bone marrow and the striking pathological changes well in keeping with agammaglobulinaemia in the thymus and lymphatic system provide further evidence in favour of the diagnosis in our case.

Cases of agammaglobulinaemia are classified into three groups, on the basis of aetiology, clinical course etc., namely 1) Congenital, 2) Transitory and 3) Acquired.

The acquired form usually appears after

the age of 1 year in connexion with some other primary disease. The debut at 3 months in our case and the fact that no other primary disease was present constitute evidence against this form of agammaglobulinaemia. It is impossible to distinguish congenital and transitory agammaglobulinaemia in a patient of 5 months of age by means of immunochemical and serological methods. The diagnosis is given by the subsequent course and repeated investigations when the patient with the transitory form of the condition again shows normal values, whereas in cases of congenital agammaglobulinaemia the immunochemical findings never return to normal. The presence of plasma cells in lymphatic tissue is said to indicate the transitory form [11].

In brief then the findings in our case are against acquired agammaglobulinaemia, transitory agammaglobulinaemia can not be excluded, but the data tally best with a diagnosis of congenital agammaglobulinaemia.

To date 9 cases of fatal generalised BCG infection have been published [9, 16, 17]. In none of these were complete serological investigation or determination of immunoglobulins carried out. It is stated with regard to the most recent of them [9] that using an unspecified electrophoretic technique gammaglobulin estimation gave widely varying results (1.0 and 0.2 g/100 ml). These findings would fit in with a defect in the gammaglobulin fraction. Electrophoresis, and especially paper electrophoresis give unreliable often too-high values, however particularly when the gammaglobulin levels are low.

In addition to the immuno-chemical and serological findings, certain other obser-

vations may be of importance in establishing or excluding the diagnosis of agammaglobulinaemia. It is worthy of note in retrospect, that the brother of the patient now described, who died of generalised BCG infection several years ago, showed certain signs in keeping with agammaglobulinaemia.

The post mortem findings of the two brothers in the thymus and lymph nodes tally closely in certain important respects (cf. the plates published in an earlier paper [5]). In both cases there was marked lymphoid hypoplasia or atrophy in both thymus and lymph nodes and in the thymus only isolated small, atrophic Hassall's bodies were present. These findings are all consistent with a diagnosis of agammaglobulinaemia. Further numerous epithelioid cells were found in thymus and lymph nodes in the BCG case but no tubercles with necrosis and Langhans giant cells could be demonstrated despite the presence of great numbers of tubercle bacilli. In the case now described there was hyperplasia of the reticuloepithelium and reticuloendothelium in both thymus and lymph nodes. Reticuloendothelial proliferation in lymphoid organs has been described previously in agammaglobulinaemia [1]. In the light of these observations it is therefore conceivable that the epithelioid cell reaction described in the BCG case might also represent some change in the reticuloepithelial and reticuloendothelial cells. The pathological changes in BCG tuberculosis are to be subject of further study [7].

Yet another morphological sign of a gammaglobulin defect in the brother with BCG sepsis is constituted by the pulmonary changes. These were at the time found

difficult to interpret. It has since transpired that they are entirely in agreement with *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia [6]. Children with agammaglobulinaemia are clearly predisposed to infection with *Pneumocystis carinii*. It is important to bear in mind the possibility of agammaglobulinaemia especially in sporadic cases of this illness [3]. When *Pneumocystis carinii* infection attacks previously healthy children the characteristic pulmonary changes include a marked plasmacell reaction, but in children with agammaglobulinaemia this is completely or almost completely absent. In the BCG case plasma cells were present but in small numbers. This observation corroborates the suspicion of a defect in immunoglobulin production.

If to this is added the observation that the younger brother had agammaglobulinaemia, probably of congenital nature the evidence that the fatal BCG infection may have affected a child with agammaglobulinaemia is further strengthened.

The effect of BCG vaccination in agammaglobulinaemia is not fully understood. The tuberculin sensitivity evoked by the BCG vaccination is regarded as belonging to the delayed allergy group and as being cellbound. A number of children with agammaglobulinaemia have been immunized with BCG. Many of these have shown an apparently normal reaction, but the proportion of them showing a transitory weak, or no reaction has been higher than normal. Barandun has reported the cases of 2 children who remained tuberculin negative after 3 and 6 BCG vaccinations respectively [1]. In the few known cases of agammaglobulinaemia in which natural infection with tubercu-

losis has occurred it has been impossible to say with certainty whether the course of the disease differed from normal.

Even though it is impossible to reach absolute certainty there are thus good reasons for believing that the fatal BCG sepsis that occurred in the family in question affected a boy who had agammaglobulinaemia. Both states are very rare. It would therefore be remarkable if their occurrence together were purely coincidental. Rather would it seem that agammaglobulinaemia under special, unfortunate circumstances may give rise to a grave generalized BCG reaction. It is possible that the age of the patient is important in this connexion, BCG vaccination in newborn in this situation involving risks that are not present in older children. It is therefore wise to exercise caution in the BCG vaccination of infants known to have agammaglobulinaemia notably during the first year of life. Unfortunately it is impossible to exclude cases of agammaglobulinaemia when BCG vaccination is performed routinely during the neonatal period, except when some sibling or other relation has shown signs of the condition. Further it is imperative that any new cases of generalized BCG infection be minutely investigated with regard to the possibility of agammaglobulinaemia.

Summary

The case is described of a boy who died at the age of 5 months showing the characteristic picture of congenital agammaglobulinaemia. This child's brother died at the age of 8 months of generalized BCG infection, his sister is 6 years old and

healthy. Several findings indicate that the brother also had congenital agammaglobulinaemia. The importance of thorough immunological investigation of cases of generalized BCG infection is stressed.

Acknowledgements

Thanks are due to Docent G. Laurell, Professor T. Wesslén and Dr R. Hjertqvist for valuable help with the bacteriological and virological investigations. The determination of complement factors was kindly performed by Dr A. E. Fjelleström.

References

1. BARANDUN E., COTTIER, H. HLAUG A. and RIVA, G. Das Antikörpermangel-syndrom. *Helv Med Acta*, 26 Fasc. 4 1959.
2. BERGQVIST L. Studies on the plasma proteins in normal human urine. *Clin Chim Acta*, 6 412, 1961.
3. BURKE, B. A., KROTEK, L. J. and GOOD R. A. Occurrence of Pneumocystis Carinii pneumonia in children with agammaglobulinemia. *Pediatrics*, 28 196, 1961.
4. CHAPLIN H. J. Studies on the survival of incompatible cells in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia. *Blood*, 16 24 1960.
5. FALKNER, S., LÖFD A. and PLOWAN L. Fetal tuberculosis from BCG vaccination. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 44 219 1955.
6. FALKNER, S. and NATHORST-WINDHAG, G. Personal communication.
7. FALKNER, S. and OLSSON L. To be published.
8. FJELLESTRÖM, K. E. Preparation of complement reagents by means of gel filtration. *Acta Path Microbiol Scand* 54 439 1963.
9. HEDBERG, O. IVERSEN O. H., T. REKIM, B. J. and HANSEN L. Generalized BCG infection with fatal course in an infant. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 52 293, 1963.
10. GITTEN D. JANEWAY C. A., ART L. and CHAD J. M. Agammaglobulinemia, in *Cellular and Humoral Aspects of the Hypersensitive States* ed. by H. S. Lawrence Hoeber Harper New York 1959.
11. GOOD R. A., KELLY W. D. and GABRIELSEN A. E. Studies of the immunologic deficiency diseases: Agammaglobulinemia, Hodgkin disease and sarcoidosis. In *Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reactions* (Eds. by Grabar P. and Miescher P.) B. Schwabe & Co. Publ. Basel, 1962.
12. GOOD R. A., TAY, S. J. CONNIE R. M. and BARDONA, R. A. Clinical investigations of patients with agammaglobulinemia and hypogammaglobulinemia. *Ped Clin North Amer* 7 297 1960.
13. HÖGMAA C. F., JOHANSSON G. KILLANDER J. and WIDE, L. T. to be published.
14. JANEWAY C. A. and GITTEN, D. The gamma globulins, in Levine S. L. *Advances in Pediatrics* (Chicago: Year Book Medical Publishers Inc. 1957).
15. KIKWICK, R. A., VALLET L., CUTTICK M. MOLLERON P. L., THOMAS, A. R., GILL, P. G. H. and BOOTHILL, J. F. Estimation of gamma globulin in the serum of patients with hypogammaglobulinemia. *J Cl Path*, 11 470 1961.
16. USTVROT H. J. Usual and unusual reactions to BCG inoculation in children. Symposium on tuberculosis in infancy and childhood. *Amer Rev Tuberc* 71 23 1954.
17. W. LÖNNER A. Einige Probleme der Calmetteschen Impfung. *Deutsch Med Woch* 88 103 1961.

Submitted June 1 1963

Accepted June 10 1963

(J.O.B. & H.V.) Department of Paediatrics
Akademiska sjukhuset
(J.K.) Department of Clinical Chemistry
(L.O.) Department of Pathology I
Uppsala
Sweden

CASE REPORT

Jejunal Atresia with Intestinal Aplasia

Strangulation of the Intestine in the Extraembryonic Coelom of the Belly Stalk

by L. G. OKSHAN and A. KÖVAMEES

From the Department of Pediatric Surgery (Head: Th. Ekroth), Karolinska Spädbarn, Stockholm, Sweden

Atresia of the small intestine is a relatively uncommon malformation. It is characterized by a complete obliteration of the bowel lumen. The distended bowel proximal to the obstruction is in the majority of cases separated from the distal collapsed intestine by the atretic area which may consist of a solid cord.

The etiology of congenital intestinal atresias have been discussed since the beginning of the 19th century. Several early reports suggested that prenatal mechanical obstructions such as volvulus, intussusception and strangulation might be the cause. This idea was never in the past generally accepted. The theory based on observations by Tandler [12] and Forssner [3] that the human duodenum passes through a solid stage during embryonic life and that the development might arrest there has been thought a more likely etiology. During recent years further observations have again directed attention to prenatal mechanical factors. It now has been possible to confirm these clinical observations with modern investigations such as micro-angiography and

experimental work on living fetuses of animals.

In this paper a case of jejunal atresia will be presented in which there also was aplasia of the entire intestine from the atretic segment to the distal transverse colon. This segment of colon ended blindly in the umbilicus. The atretic jejunum was also connected to umbilicus but by a solid cord of tissue. The case will be shown to support the theory that strangulation of the intestine in the extraembryonic coelom of the belly stalk can lead to intestinal atresias.

Case Report

B., a premature male, weighed 1810 g at birth and was the third child of a 40-year-old woman. Pregnancy and delivery were normal. Some hours after the birth the baby began to vomit greenish bile-colored intestinal contents. Through gastric tube 40 ml of bile-colored fluid were aspirated.

Plain films of the abdomen at 35 hours of age showed a greatly distended duodenum and jejunum with no gas in the bowel distal to the jejunum. A barium enema showed a "microcolon" and contrast passed only to the distal transverse colon (Fig. 1)

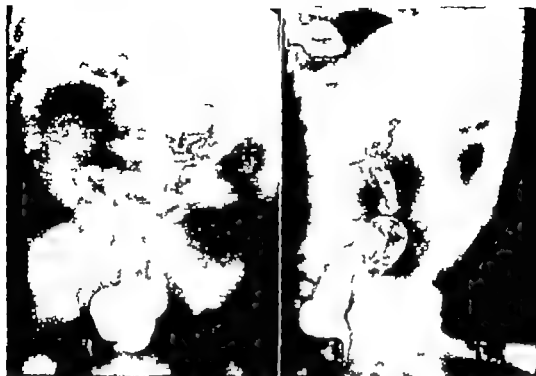


Fig. 1 X ray of the colon. Barium passed only to the distal transverse colon. The duodenum and jejunum are greatly distended

Surgery was performed through a right rectus muscle-retracting incision. There were no signs of peritonitis. The jejunum, which ended blindly was 15 cm long, uniformly distended and had a considerably thickened wall. The atretic ending was connected with the umbilicus by a very thin cord 5 cm long (Fig. 2). The remainder of the small intestine was not present. The distal colon ended blindly in the umbilical ring. The colon proximal to the distal transverse colon was also missing. An end-to-end jejuno-transverse colon anastomosis was performed. The baby died on the fourth post-operative day with *icterus neonatorum*.

Pathology (Büen I remark, M.D.): In the two specimens from the jejunum and the colon, taken from the region of the anastomosis, all layers of the intestinal wall were present with the exception of the *lamina muscularis mucosae* which was only present in small areas.

Discussion

In this case of jejunal atresia the pathogenesis may be fully explained by an incarceration of the bowel in the extra-embryonic coelom of the belly stalk.

During the sixth week of fetal life the midgut is situated in the umbilical cord, extra-abdominally. During the 10th week there is a gradual "reposition" into the abdomen (Fig. 3). If that "reposition" does not occur the hernial aperture closes around the intestine causing incarceration and gangrene. The necrotic intestine is resorbed. This helps explain why part of the bowel is missing and why both the proximal atretic and the distal intestine terminate in the umbilicus.

During the last part of the 19th century



Fig. 2. Operative field. Transverse colon (C) terminates blindly in the umbilus (U). The greatly distended atretic jejunum (J) is connected with umbilus by thin solid cord (on the figure running partially behind the splenic flexure).

reports of cases of intestinal atresia were published and mechanical factors such as strangulation, volvulus incarceration and intussusception were mentioned as possible etiological causes [1-4]. In 1902 Tandler [1] showed that human duodenum

between the 5th and 8th weeks of development passes through a solid stage. This embryologic observation was confirmed by Forsner [3], Kreuter [5] and Johnson [4]. Until recently the cause of atresia has been considered to be an arrest of development

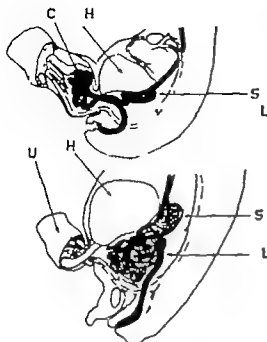


Fig. 3. Position of the intestine in the umbilical cord of 23 mm long embryo and return of the intestine into the abdominal cavity (embryo 45 mm). C cecum; H hepar; S, stomach; L, descending colon; U umbilicus. (The drawing modified after an illustration by Brodel in *Cullen Embryology and Diseases of the Umbilicus*. Courtesy W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1916.)

at this stage. Chiefly during recent years this theory of imperfect recanalization has been refuted by Morton [8], Nixon [9], Louw & Barnard [6] and Parkkulainen [11]. Modern techniques in animal experimentation have made it possible to reproduce intestinal atresia by intrauterine ligation of mesenteric vessels with resulting atresia of the corresponding intestine [6]. However, in four consecutive infants with atresia, Nixon [9] was able to show by angiography on the resected specimens that the vascular supply to the mesentery of the atretic segment was intact. Despite these cases, Nixon and Louw *et al.* agree that pathogenesis of some intestinal atro-

sis is related to interference in the vascular supply of the completely formed fetal bowel. Nixon has supported this hypothesis with a case of atresia that developed following prenatal intussusception and pointed out the fact that atresia in this case developed in bowel that was already completely formed. He also has suggested that atresia could be caused by strangulation of the extraembryonic intestine by the umbilical ring. In support of that he described a child that was born with an omphalocele and with a spontaneous double-barrelled ileostomy at the umbilicus and concluded that this was the result of incarceration of the "physiological umbilical hernia."

It is puzzling that in Nixon's case a double-barrelled ileostomy but not an atresia developed. The explanation may be that incarceration occurred late in pregnancy in an infant with an omphalocele and that peristalsis and the meconium content of the bowel were able to keep the lumen open. In our case, however, incarceration probably occurred before the beginning of the 4th month. At this time there is little bowel content as no meconium is formed and there is little swallowing of amniotic fluid. There is also virtually no peristalsis. These factors allow the lumen of the intestine to close and result in atresia.

Our case thus lends support to the theory that strangulation by the umbilical ring of the intestine while it still lies in the extraembryonic coelom may lead to atresia and aplasia of the intestine. The fact that both the atretic segment and colon were connected to the umbilicus clearly supports this theory.

Summary

A case of jejunal atresia is presented in which there was aplasia of the entire intestine from the atretic segment to the distal transverse colon. The distal colon ended blindly in the umbilicus. The atretic jejunum was also connected to umbilicus but by a solid cord of tissue.

The case is described as support to the theory that strangulation of the intestine in the extraembryonic coelom of the belly stalk can lead to intestinal atresias.

During the 6th week of fetal life the midgut is situated in the umbilical cord, extra-abdominally. During the 10th week there is a gradual reduction into the abdomen. If that reduction does not occur the hernial aperture around the intestine closes, causing incarceration and gangrene. The necrotic intestine is resorbed. This helps to explain why part of the bowel is missing and both the proximal atretic intestine and the distal intestine terminate in the umbilicus.

References

1. ARLFIELD F: Quotation from [7]. *Arch Gyn*, 5, 1873.
2. FIELDS, A.: Quotation from [7]. *Arch Hist Anat*, 3, 1884.
3. FORSNER, H.: *Om de längre delens hern- och oesophagus-atresiernas patofysiologi och anatomi och etiologi*. Thesis, Stockholm, 1906.
4. JONSSON, F. P.: The development of the mucous membrane of the esophagus, stomach and small intestine in the human embryo. *Amer J Anat* 10: 521 1910.
5. KREUTER, E.: Zur Ätiologie der kongenitalen Atresien des Darms und Oesophagus. *Arch Klin Chir* 88: 302, 1909.
6. LOW, J. H. and BARKARD O. V.: Congenital intestinal treas. Observations on its origin. *Lancet*, 2, 1065, 1965.
7. LOW, J. H.: Congenital intestinal treas and stenosis in the newborn. Observations on its pathogenesis and treatment. *Ann Royal Coll Surg Engl* 25: 208, 1934.
8. MORROW, J. J.: Atresia of the duodenum and right internal hernia. *Amer J Dis Child*, 25, 371 1923.
9. NIXON, H. H.: Intestinal obstruction in the newborn. *Arch Dis Child* 30: 13, 1955.
10. NIXON, H. H.: Intestinal obstruction in the neonatal period. *Gr Obstand Str J* No. 11: 1 1956.
11. PARENCLAUSSON, H. H.: Intruterine larus-occlusion as a cause of intestinal atresia. *Surgery* 44: 1104, 1934.
12. TANDLER, J.: Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte des menschlichen Duodenums in frühen Embryonalstadien. *Morphol Jahrb*, 29: 187 1902.

Submitted December 12, 1962

Accepted July 1 1963

Department of Pediatric Surgery
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

CASE REPORT

Prader Willi Syndrome in Boy of Ten with Prediabetes

by HANS FORSSMAN and BENGT HAGBERG

From the Psychiatric Research Centre, Ulfelder Hospital, and the Pediatric Department, Academic Hospital, University of Uppsala, Sweden

In 1936 Prader Labhart, Willi & Fanconi [7-8] described a syndrome mainly characterized by mental deficiency, obesity, abnormally short stature, muscular hypotonia and undescended testes. The patients in whom they observed this syndrome had all been floppy infants. In 1961 Prader & Willi [9] brought the number of cases up to 14 and reported that the patients over 12 years of age often had diabetes mellitus. Shortly afterwards, Laurence [6] recorded six more cases. The same year Dunn & Miller [4] pointed out that the patient Dunn *et al.* [3] had described in an article on congenital hypotonia must have had the Prader Willi syndrome at the same time they added three more cases.

The syndrome is easy to distinguish clinically from other conditions. It is probably not as rare as would appear from the number of cases reported. As yet nothing definite is known about its pathogenesis.

We shall now describe a new case. Afterwards we shall analyze the clinical observations made to date to see if we can discover a plausible cause for the syndrome.

Case Report

The patient, a boy of 10, had been in homes for the mentally deficient ever since he was an infant.

Family history

The parents were not related. The mother was a war refugee, the last of four siblings in a Romanian family; a large amount of information was available on this family but it contained nothing of interest in the present case. The father was born out of wedlock to Swedish parents and had five healthy half-siblings. The patient had a half-sister three years older, a sister one year older and a brother three years younger; these three children were healthy and of normal intelligence.

Past history

The boy was normally delivered after an uncomplicated pregnancy, but he was born four weeks later than expected. When he was delivered he was lethargic and slightly cyanotic. His birth weight was 2850 g.

The physician who examined him when he was born noted muscular hypotonia with flabby, dangling limbs, poor development of the lower jaw and no cartilage in the external ears. The child also sucked poorly. It was concluded that he suffered from a congenital disease of the muscles.

The boy was examined again at the age of 1. At that time he was 7 cm tall, and weighed 9.6 kg, and his head was 45 cm in circumference. He had three teeth in his upper jaw and four in his lower. He could not keep his head steady and he could not sit unsupported and eat badly even when he was supported. When he was laid face downward he kept himself up on his forearms, not on his hands. He showed a desire to get



Fig. 1 At the age of 10 the patient still has difficulty in standing and in walking without support.



Fig. 2 The physical peculiarities are particularly noticeable in the back view. Note the abnormal accumulation of fat on the buttocks and the poorly developed lower legs and feet.

into contact with the people round him; he babbled and tried to grasp things. He still had severe muscular hypotonia, but his achilles tendon and knee-jerk reflexes were normal. He had no scrotum, and no testes could be palpated.

He continued to develop at an extremely slow pace both in motor and mental functions. Not until he was 1½ did he lift his head when he was laid face downward, and not until he was 2 did he lift his head when he was put on his back. When he was 3 he was able to stay in a sitting position without being supported but he could still not raise himself into a sitting position. When he was between 4 and 5 he began to crawl. When he was 7 he could stand if he was supported. At 8 he learned to rise to a standing position himself. At 11 he could walk if he was helped, and at 19 he learned to take one or two steps on his own. He had good emotional contact with his warders the whole time though he sometimes got into a bad temper. He made

extremely little progress mentally but at no time did he revert to a lower level. He never learned to speak; he began making monotonous grunting noises at the time a child would normally begin to talk, and he never advanced any further.

Present condition (age of 10)

Examination when he was 10 revealed the following: He was 116 cm tall and weighed 24 kg. He had a body like that of an old woman, with a large accumulation of fat on his buttocks and thighs, the lower part of his abdomen, and his breasts (Fig. 1 and 2). His legs from half way down his thighs to his feet were thin and underdeveloped. His feet were extremely small and narrow only 18 cm long; they were hyperflexible and held in an infantile valgus position. His hands were also thin and slender but not so abnormally small as his feet. He had normal palm prints. His head was slightly conical in shape; it was



Fig. 3.



Fig. 4.

Fig. 3 and 4. The external genitalia. Not the rudimentary scrotum.

51 cm in circumference and narrowed off toward the top, ending in a rounded dome. He had a peculiarly shaped face: he had a broad and projecting lower jaw and a broad nose but his palpebral fissures were normal. His ears were extremely soft and had poorly developed cartilage; each had a different shape but neither of them was particularly deformed.

He was more retarded mentally than he was emotionally. He was affectionate and got along well with his wardens, but he got very upset at times. He behaved like a child of one or younger, according to the Vineland scale he behaved like a one-year-old in most respects; but he could not speak at all. He got 1 1/2 points in the Vineland test at the age of 9 years and 9 months, which is equivalent to an S.Q. of 7.5.

Palatum ogivale was present. The teeth were badly decayed. A dentist who was consulted could not find any anomalies of development. The gums were present for all

the permanent teeth. The mucous membranes were normally moist.

The superficial lymph nodes and thyroid were normal. Ordinary physical examination of the heart revealed nothing of particular interest nor did the ECG. The blood pressure was 95/53. The lungs appeared to be normal from physical and roentgen examination. The abdomen was covered with flabby skin, no abnormal masses were palpated there; neither the liver nor the spleen were palpable.

The external genitalia are seen in Fig. 3 and 4. Either the testes were completely undescended or the boy had none. Instead of a scrotum he had an area of scrotal like skin about 3 cm in diameter with a suggestion of a raphe down the middle. His penis was small. His skin was dry but otherwise normal.

Neurologic examination revealed no paralysis, but all the muscles of the body were lacking in tone and strength, especially in the legs and feet. The muscular tone was

Blood Glu. conc
mg per 100 ml

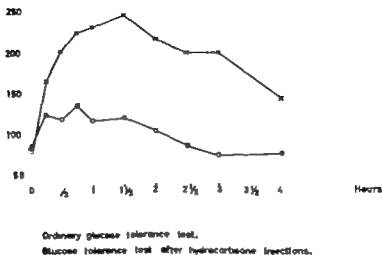


Fig 5 The glucose tolerance curves before and after the intra-muscular injection of 50 mg of hydrocortisone 8½ and 2 hours before the glucose was given.

poorly developed everywhere, but particularly distally in the limbs. The boy walked with waddling and unsteady gait of the ataxic type: the gait was not of the cerebellar variety however and no tremor was present. On the other hand, he had difficulty in maintaining a sitting or standing position. There was no nystagmus and no hyperkinesia. The arm reflexes and the knee jerks were normal, the achilles tendon reflexes were exaggerated. The plantar response was normal on both sides.

It was impossible to measure the visual acuity but there did not seem to be any severe defect in vision. The eyes were normally placed and moved normally and the media and eyegrounds were normal.

The EEG taken when the boy was awake was of immature type but otherwise normal. The electromyogram showed intense insertion activity in the short toe extensors, but no other sign of muscular disease or peripheral neurogenic injury. The conduction velocity was normal in the right peroneal nerve between the knee and ankle.

Röntgenograms of the skull were normal. Films of the facial bones showed great protrusion of the jaws. Films of the spine showed that the arches of the 3rd, 4th and 5th lumbar vertebrae were fused together. Soft tissue films of the limbs showed poorly developed muscles and wide bands of fat between the bundles in the thighs. The bony nuclei were normal for the boy's age. On encephalography the whole ventricular system filled well, but no dislocation or deformity could be seen. The right lateral ventricle was 22 mm wide as against 72 mm for the inner diameter of the skull on the same side and the left was 25 mm wide as against 70 mm for the inner diameter of the skull on that side: these measurements indicated that the left lateral ventricle was abnormally wide. The fourth ventricle was unusually wide. The basal cisterns were of normal shape. Small amounts of air were seen on the convexity in grooves of normal width.

Analysis of the blood showed hemoglobin 1.7 g/100 ml; red blood cells 4,400,000; white blood cells 9200, including 5000 polymuclear

TABLE 1 *Urinary output of 17 ketosteroids and 17-hydroxycorticosteroids before and after provocation with Metopiron and ACTH*

The provocation tests were done at an interval of two weeks.

| Steroids in mg per 24 hours | Before provocation (Values on three non-consecutive days) | After 11-beta hydroxylase inhibitor (3 g by mouth) | | After ACTH (20 IU intramuscularly) | |
|---|---|--|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| | | 0-24 hours after | 24-48 hours after | 0-24 hours after | 24-48 hours after |
| 17 Ketosteroids | 0.6, 0.7, 1.4 | 0.3 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.3 |
| 17 Hydroxycorticosteroid (Corymboid) | 0.3, 0.8, 3.0 | 1.3 | 4 | 4.1 | 6 |

cells; thrombocytes 281 000; reticulocytes 3.6%; MCV 88; MCHC 33%; colour index 0.93 micro-S.R. 1 mm/1 hour; nonprotein nitrogen 40 mg/100 ml; serum creatinine 0.7 mg/100 ml; total bilirubin 0.4 mg/100 ml; directly measured bilirubin 0.1 mg/100 ml; thymol 1.1 units; serum calcium 8.0 mEq; serum phosphorus 4.99 mg/100 ml; serum protein 7.8 g/100 ml; serum electrophoresis normal. Analysis of the plasma lipids showed cholesterol 219 mg phospholipids 234 mg glycerophospholipids 164 mg sphingomyelin 14 mg triglycerides 45 mg all per 100 ml of plasma.

The urine was examined on several occasions, but no albumin or glucose was ever found and the sediment was always normal. Two-dimensional paper chromatography of a 24-hour output showed a normal amino acid pattern; 10.5 mg of amino nitrogen were excreted per 100 mg of creatinine. There was no phenylpyruvic acid in the urine.

Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid showed normal pressure; negative Pandy and Wernicke reactions; total protein 4 mg/100 mg; negative reaction to the mastix test; two mononuclear cells per 2.5 mm³; negative Wasserman reaction.

The ordinary glucose tolerance test gave a normal curve with a peak value of 158 mg after 45 minutes. When the test was repeated after the intramuscular injection of cortisone (50 mg of hydrocortisone 8 and 10 hours

before the glucose was given), the curve was both elevated and delayed (Fig. 5).

Hormone analysis revealed: tri-iodothyronine uptake 18% and PBI 8.4 gamma/100 ml less than 5 units of gonadotropins per liter urine. The urinary output of 17 ketosteroids and 17 hydroxycorticosteroids per 24 hours was low both before and after provocation with Metopiron and ACTH and gave the values shown in Table 1.

Analysis of the chromosomes in 2 cell from cultures of the skin and 11 from cultures of the blood showed a normal chromosome complement with 22 pairs of autosomes and a 46 gonosomal constitution.

Summary of case The most noteworthy observations were severe mental deficiency, short stature, a peculiar type of obesity, undescended testes and only a rudimentary scrotum, abnormally small hands and feet and muscular hypotonia. The patient had been a floppy infant.

Injection of cortisone caused an elevated and delayed glucose tolerance curve. According to Conn & Fajans [1] this is a strong indication of a prediabetic state.

Implying that although he still maintains normal carbohydrate metabolism the ability of his beta cell to respond to

further stimulation is considerably limited"

In our opinion, the clinical picture in this case was characteristic of the syndrome described by Prader *et al*

Discussion

The clinical features are compatible with a genetically determined disease. The syndrome has never been found in more than one sibling of a family however nor has any other form of familial occurrence been observed. No case has been reported in which the parents were related, it is positive that they were not related in one case of Dunn *et al* [3], in all six of Laurence's cases [6] and in the present case. Thus, so far nothing has been observed that definitely points to hereditary transmission of the syndrome.

The chromosomes were normal in 11 out of the 12 cases in which they were examined. In one case of Prader & Willi [8], in all six of Laurence [6], in three of Dunn & Miller [4] and in our case. In the twelfth case described by Dunn *et al* [3], cells from two cultures of skin and muscle contained an extra small acrocentric chromosome. This difference indicates that even though the cases are alike in clinical respects, some of them may be of different origin than others. Apart from this one instance of chromosomal aberration, however, no distinct evidence of any other prenatal causes for the syndrome has been seen so far.

Amteen of the altogether 23 patients reported have been boys and six girls. This is a significant deviation from the usual 50:50 distribution ($0.25 > P > 0.01$). The lack of a normal scrotum is a very noticeable abnormality in a boy however and

so one is probably more apt to notice the syndrome in a boy than in a girl.

It is interesting from the point of view of pathogenesis to examine the main clinical components of the syndrome. It is convenient to divide them into four groups, though it is impossible to avoid overlapping. The four groups are: peculiarities in body shape, endocrine disorders, neuromuscular defects and mental deficiency.

Peculiarities in body configuration. The most characteristic physical abnormalities are: a special type of adiposity, hypogenitalism affecting the scrotum in particular, extremely short stature, small hands or feet, or both. Our patient was not especially obese but he had a disproportionate amount of fat on his buttocks, thighs and lower part of his abdomen, much more than seen in certain types of brain lesion e.g. residual conditions after hydrocephalus. The degree of hypogenitalism seems to vary from case to case: the scrotum was amazingly underdeveloped in our case however and also in the case described by Dunn *et al* [3]. The patients are also very short. It is true that mentally deficient children are often short but children with the Prader Willi syndrome grow disproportionately as well, our patient's lower legs did not grow at the same pace as the rest of his body and his hands and feet were as small and narrow as those of a doll. Acromicria appears to be one of the few characteristic signs of the syndrome.

Besides these abnormalities of diagnostic value there are usually one or more minor congenital deformities, such as lack of cartilage in the external ears, high palate, clinodactyly, partial syndactyly, small defects in the bones and delayed development of the osseous nuclei. Dunn & Miller

[4] also observed irregularities in the teeth especially in the enamel. The number of these defects seems to differ greatly from case to case.

Endocrine disorders The syndrome is always characterized by subnormal endocrine function. Prader & Willi found evidence of primary hypogonadism several of their male patients excreting an abnormally large amount of gonadotropins. In our case there was evidence of subnormal activity in the adrenal cortex. The low output of 17 hydroxycorticosteroids in the urine after stressing with ACTH and Metopiron pointed either to hypothalamo-hypophyseal disorder or to primary dysfunction in the adrenal cortex or both. There was no other clinical evidence of primary malfunctioning of the adrenal cortex however and so the more probable alternative seems to be a hypothalamo-hypophyseal disorder. Two of Prader & Willi's five children over 12 had diabetes of the old age type and one had prediabetes. One of Laurence's [6] patients had a decidedly prediabetic glucose tolerance curve after provocation with prednisone. Our patient who had no sugar in his urine gave a diabetic response to the cortisone-glucose tolerance test indicating that the beta cells in his pancreas did not have enough reserve capacity. This laboratory evidence of insufficient endocrine functioning is borne out by the old woman shape of the patients' bodies.

Neuromuscular defects The number and type of neuromuscular defects differ from case to case apart from the amyotonia congenita which all the patients show in infancy. It has been demonstrated recently that amyotonia congenita may occur in diseases of greatly varying origin. Dunn

et al [3] and other authors have gone into this subject in detail. Children with this form of amyotonia often manifest their hypotonia and weak muscles before they are born by making only feeble fetal movements. After they are delivered, they have difficulty in breathing and are asphyctic; they cry feebly and suck poorly. As they grow older they make poor motor progress again mostly because of hypotonia.

Neither electroencephalography, electromyography nor studies of the nerve conduction velocity seem to be of any help in diagnosis or in determining the pathogenesis. Nor is neuro-radiologic examination of much help. Pneumoencephalographic examination gave nothing in the cases of Prader & Willi, in our case it showed only wide cerebral ventricles. Histologic studies have only been done by Dunn *et al*; they observed unusually narrow fibers in specimens of muscle but no other change of note.

Mental deficiency Prader & Willi found that the patients were usually imbeciles, having I.Q.s between 40 and 50. The patient described by Dunn *et al*, however, had an I.Q. of approximately 80 at the age of 2½. Our patient deviated in the opposite direction, having an I.Q. of no more than 20.

The patients seem to develop much better emotionally than they do intellectually. Prader & Willi described their patients as good natured children with the same silly contented expression on their faces from morning to night. Our patient exhibited a fairly wide variety of emotion, in spite of his severe retardation.

In short the syndrome is characterized by subnormal reserve capacity in the endocrine, neuromuscular and mental

functions. None of the clinical data indicate that the abnormalities are apt to progress; on the contrary the patients seem to grow better in some respects. They give the impression of suffering from an inhibition in development caused by prenatal factors. The most plausible common denominator for them all is a developmental anomaly in the central nervous system but it is impossible to speculate further with the information we now have.

As mentioned, Dunn *et al* [3] observed a chromosomal aberration in one case but the other 11 cases in which the chromosomes were examined showed a normal karyotype. It would seem from this that the syndrome is not the single entity it has appeared to be after all it has only been recognized for a short time and there is still much to learn about it. Support for this assumption is contained in a recent article by Bühler *et al* [1]; they described a boy with a syndrome very like the Prader-Willi variety in which they found a chromosome number of 45 and a consistent karyotype pattern with only four large acrocentric chromosomes of group 13-15 and an additional metacentric chromosome interpreted as the result of a translocation of the two missing chromosomes of group 13-15.

It may be that there will prove to be several different varieties of the Prader

Willi syndrome. If so, it will no longer seem peculiar that some cases show a chromosomal aberration and others not.

Summary

The authors describe a boy of 10 showing mental deficiency, short stature, a form of obesity typical of endocrine dysfunction, undescended testes and only a rudimentary scrotum, minor congenital deformities, acromelia and muscular hypotonia. Laboratory analysis revealed a low urinary excretion of 17-keto-steroids and 17-hydroxycorticosteroids, and a diabetic response to a cortisone-glucose tolerance test, pointing to prediabetes. The boy showed amyotonia congenita in infancy and so his condition tallies well with the syndrome described by Prader & Willi. The etiology and pathogenesis of this syndrome are discussed in the light of the clinical data assembled to date.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Professor Jan A. Böök for the cytogenetic analysis, to Dr Karl-Erik Hagbarth for the electroencephalographic and electromyographic analysis, to Dr Lars Svernerholm for examining the plasma lipids, and to Dr Rudolf Jagenburg for chromatographic study of the urine.

References

1. BÜHLER, E. M., ROWER, R., BODIN, L., VALLÉE, V., BECKER, U. H. and STÄLDER, G. Chromosomal translocation in mentally deficient child with cryptorchidism. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 55: 177, 1962.
2. COX, J. W. and FAJANS, S. S.: The prediabetic state. *Amer J Med* 31: 828, 1961.
3. DUNN, H. G., FORD, D. K., ALEXANDER, Y. and MILLER, J. R.: Benign congenital hypotonia with chromosomal anomaly. *Pediatrics*, 28: 578, 1961.
4. DUNN, H. G. and MILLER, J. R.: Benign congenital hypotonia with hypogonadism. Meeting of the American Pediatric Society.

- May 1963. *Amer J Dis Child*, 1963 (to be published).
5. LAURANCE, B. M. Hypotonia obesity hypogonadism and mental retardation in childhood. *Arch Dis Child* 36 690 1961
 6. LAURANCE, B. M.: Personal communication, 1963
 7. PRADER, A., LASHART, A. and WILLI, H. Ein Syndrom von Adipositas, Kleinwuchs, Kryptorchismus und Oligophrenie nach myotonieartigem Zustand im Neugeborenenalter. *Schweiz. Med Woch* 36 1260, 1936.
 8. PRADER, A., LASHART, A., WILLI, H. and FANCONI, G. Ein Syndrom von Adipositas, Kleinwuchs, Kryptorchismus und Idiotie bei Kindern und Erwachsenen, die als Neugeborene ein myotonie-artiges Bild geboten haben. *VIII International Congress of Paediatrics*, Copenhagen, 1956.
 9. PRADER, A. and WILLI, H. Das Syndrom von Imbecillität, Adipositas, Muskelhypotonie, Hypogonadismus, Hypogonadismus und Diabetes mellitus mit "Myotonie - Anamnese. *Second International Congress on Mental Deficiency* Vienna, 1961

Submitted June 6, 1963

Accepted June 29, 1963

- (ILF) Psychiatric Research Centre
University of Uppsala,
Ullerker Hospital
Ullerker
Sweden
- (B.H.) Paediatric Dept.
University of Uppsala,
Academic Hospital
Uppsala
Sweden

PROGRESS IN PEDIATRICS

The Secular Change in Growth and Development

by HARRY BAEWIN

*From the Department of Pediatrics, New York University School of Medicine, New York, N. Y.**Increase in Body Size*

A striking acceleration in the growth of children is taking place in many parts of the world. The change has been observed not only in the United States and Western Europe but also in Japan, Argentina, Estonia, Slovenia and elsewhere. The difference is considerable. During the past century the average height of adults in Western Europe and USA has increased by 10 cm [39].

The trend toward more rapid growth started in Europe more than 100 years ago. There was little change in the size of Norwegian adults between 1760 and 1830 [24]. Then between 1830 and 1875 adult height increased by about 0.3 cm per decade and by about 0.6 cm per decade between 1875 and 1935. Changes in height had already been noted in Italian recruits between 1791 and 1841 [11].

The more rapid growth of children begins during fetal life. The weight at birth has been rising since the middle of the last century. The weight of Swedish newborns increased by several hundred grams in the 85-year period between 1850-60 and

1935-45 [28]. Larger newborns are to be expected as adults grow larger since there is a correlation between size of the newborn and the size of the parents [3].

After World War II a temporary decline in weight and length at birth took place in Germany, France, Holland, Italy, Japan and Russia. Curiously, a similar drop also occurred in Switzerland which was a non-combatant. No significant change in birth weight and length was observed in Sweden between 1918 and 1945 [1].

Growth during the first year of life is also more rapid now than formerly. Length at one year has increased from 75.3 cm in the 70-year period between 1850-1909 and 1920-1941 [33]. In the 1890's New York infants at 1 year were about 72.5 cm long and weighed about 9.0 kg (Table 1) [22]. Forty years later [4] the average length of infants at one year whose care was specially supervised, had increased by almost 3.5 cm and the weight by 1.5 kg in boys, and by 1.3 cm and 0.9 kg in girls.

Table 1 also includes the measurements of infants at one year reported by Falkner [15] in 1962. These infants do not differ significantly from those who received good medical care in the 1930's. Although the

TABLE 1 *Comparison of the heights and weights of infants at 1 year in 1897, 1936 and 1962*

| Author | Year | Height (inches) | | Weight (pounds) | |
|---------------------|------|-----------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| | | Males | Females | Males | Females |
| Holt [22] | 1897 | 29.0 | 28.7 | 20.5 | 19.8 |
| Bakwin & Bakwin [4] | 1936 | 30.6 | 29.9 | 23.8 | 21.8 |
| Falkner [18] | 1962 | 30.2 | 29.4 | 23.3 | 21.7 |

weight of well looked after infants has not increased since the 1930's, it is probable that babies in general are larger now since more are receiving proper medical supervision.

Broman, Dahlberg & Lichtenstein [10] pointed out well marked accelerations in the growth of school children over the years. Between 1883 and 1938-1939 height increased by about 9% and weight by about 20%. They found no correlation between the duration of the nursing period and the height and weight after 1 year. Nor could a correlation be established between the age of the mother and the dimensions of the child.

Boysen & co-workers [9] deduced that in the group which they studied between the years 1911 and 1931 all the changes in growth had taken place during the pre-school years. However in the next decade 1931-1941 the acceleration did not begin until the early school years. A similar conclusion was reached by Melbin [31] in a study of Lapp children. He found that the improved diet and general environment at modern boarding schools failed to affect the children's development. He inferred that the main effect of the environment on children's growth and development takes place in the pre-school years (under 7 years).

In the study by Greulich [17] comparing the growth of native born and American born Japanese children well marked differences in height and weight were already present at 6 years of age when the earliest measurements were made.

In Fig. 1 the growth of children in the general population, measured in the 1930's, is compared with children measured recently [18]. Growth of the boys is about the same in the two periods up to 9 to 10 years after which the recently measured boys surpass those of the 1930's in both height and weight. Girls measured recently are larger than those in the 1930's from infancy. The discrepancy begins to widen at about 8 years.

Evidently an increase in the size of children in the general population is continuing.

In the 1930's we also measured children from private schools in New York City. These children, who presumably had received the best available care, were not only taller and heavier than the public school boys at that time (Fig. 2) they were also taller and heavier than the children recently reported by Reed & Stuart [21] and by Falkner [18].

All the children used in our study were white and with rare exceptions, were born in the United States. The children were

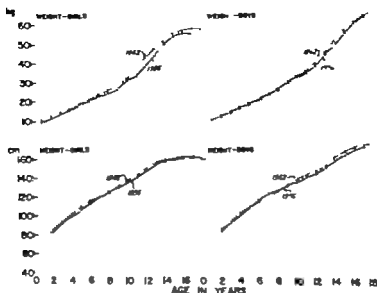


Fig 1. Comparison of weights and heights of children in the general population measured in 1936 and recently

divided by ethnic origin into four groups, North European Middle European, Mediterranean and Jewish (mainly eastern European)

The only consistent difference found was

that the children of Mediterranean background (mainly Sicilian) were somewhat shorter than the others.

The private school population was made up almost entirely of North European and

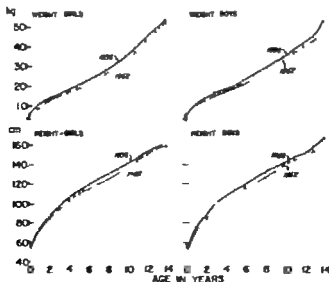


Fig 2. Comparison of heights and weights of private school children, measured in 1936, and children from the general population measured recently

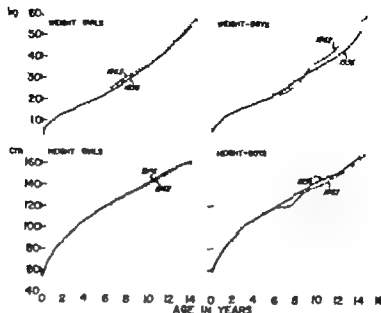


Fig 3 Comparison of heights and weights of private school children measured in 1938 and in 1902

Jewish children. No differences in growth were found between these two groups.

In 1902 we again measured children, ranging in age from 8 to 14 years from the same private schools used in the 1930's (Fig 3). No change in the selection of students has taken place at these schools during the past 30 years. The boys, measured in 1902, weighed more after 9 years of age than those measured in the 1930's; otherwise the heights and weights of the girls and the heights of the boys were if anything smaller than in the 1930's. Apparently by the 1930's the children who had received optimal care had reached their maximum size. Lens [3] points out that in Camerer's material which was collected during the last quarter of the 19th century among well-to-do German families the average size of 10 year-old males was 176.7 cm, the same as that of German students today.

We may, however, expect that the size

of the general population will continue to increase until they reach the size of the private school population.

Reasons for the More Rapid Growth

The reason or reasons for the more rapid growth are unclear. The factors affecting the rate of growth have been critically reviewed by Tanner [30, p. 94].

Illness. Though repeated infections have been found to be associated with retarded growth [20], it is not clear whether the frequent infections produce the growth retardation or whether the smaller children are more susceptible to illness. Tanner concludes that "most of the information on the effects of minor childhood illness tends to contradict the perhaps generally but vaguely held notion that illness interferes with normal development."

During a major illness growth may be retarded but recovery is accompanied by accelerated growth. Nephrosis is known to

retard growth but it is doubtful that the retardation is permanent.

Psychological factors Emotional tension influences appetite increasing it in some instances, depressing it in others.

Emotional deprivation in infants reduces appetite and slows growth even when food intake is adequate [5]. If the infant is removed to a favorable environment a prompt improvement in appetite and acceleration in growth ensue. The effect of long-standing emotional deprivation on growth, in the face of an adequate dietary intake, has not been studied.

Widdowson [4] was able to demonstrate that adverse psychologic conditions may retard growth during childhood. She studied the children in two orphanages in Germany during the difficult post war years. At one point the diets in one of the orphanages was supplemented, in the other it remained unchanged. Contrary to expectation, the children in the orphanage where the diet was supplemented grew less rapidly than the children in the orphanage where the diet remained unchanged.

The reason for this paradoxical result appeared to be that at the time the dietary improvement was made a new nurse was placed in charge of the orphanage where the diet was supplemented. This woman previously in charge of the other orphanage was an unusually severe disciplinarian who demanded implicit obedience. Moreover she often chose meal time to administer unjustified rebukes. This upset the children that they often left their food uneaten.

It is likely that strict disciplinary attitudes, prevalent during the 19th century and the early decades of this century, had an adverse effect on children's appetite.

A measure of the baleful influence of the rigid discipline during those years was the high suicide rate among children in certain parts of Germany, France, Russia and elsewhere.

Tanner quotes a considerable amount of evidence showing that school stress may influence physical growth adversely.

Miscellaneous factors That the number of children in a family is associated with growth changes is an old observation [7]. In less well-off economic groups the children in large families are on the average appreciably smaller than those in smaller families and menarche takes place later. This is not nearly as marked in the higher socio-economic groups. The difference in size between members of small and large families persists into adult life. In part at least, the retardation is socio-economic—that is, among the less well-off classes, the more children to care for, the less general care and food for each one. Tanner [20, p. 143] concludes that "the family size effect differs in no way from the general socio-economic class effects and is susceptible to similar explanations."

Exercise No clear cut relation between growth and exercise has been demonstrated.

Nutrition Undernutrition during childhood slows growth and delays the appearance of the adolescent spurt. This is unquestionably a retarding factor in a large part of the world where the food supply is short. Temporary periods of growth retardation have also been observed in European countries during times of famine subsequent to war. But this can hardly account for the secular trend in Western Europe and U.S. where prolonged, severe food shortages have not occurred during the past century.

At least three changes have taken place in the diet of American infants since the turn of the century: the widespread substitution of cow's milk for human milk in infant feeding; the routine supplementation of infants' diets with vitamin D; and the early introduction of solid foods.

Cow's and human milk differ from each other in innumerable respects. More important, the reaction of infants to the two milks is different. Observations made a number of years ago [14] showed that breast-fed babies grow differently from the artificially fed. The breast-fed babies weighed more during the early months of life but at 4 to 5 months they were surpassed by the artificially fed. Similar results were obtained in Sweden [32] in 1939 using modern feeding methods. May [30] has pointed out that the growth of breast-fed babies from birth to 6 months has remained unchanged in various studies reported since 1893.

Infants receiving cow's milk retain more calcium, phosphorus and nitrogen than do those on the breast. The blood lipids, which reflect the body lipids, also differ with the two types of milk [43]. The plasma level of vitamin C is lower and large amounts of C are necessary to raise the plasma level to that ordinarily found in the breast-fed baby. Other differences are the greater frequency of tetany (both newborn and D deficiency) and eczema in babies receiving cow's milk, the lesser resistance to respiratory infection, an altered reaction in the blood sugar level to lactose ingestion, a difference in the intestinal flora. Most of the infants in our study group were partially or completely breast-fed for from 3 to 6 months. All were given vitamin D supplement and orange

juice from the age of 3 weeks and solid food at about 3 months.

An acceleration in growth in height of infants has been observed with supplements of 340-400 units of D a day and with exposure to sunlight [37]. On the other hand, it was not possible to detect any differences in the growth of premature receiving various preparations of D in doses of 100 to 600 units daily [16].

The widespread practice of incorporating vitamin D into the diets of infants in temperate climates may have helped to promote growth. It is not known whether the accelerated growth due to added vitamin D persists after the first year.

For the last 30 or 40 years it has been customary in the United States to introduce solids into the diets of infants at about 3 months rather than at 6 months or later which was the earlier practice. More recently the time of feeding solids has been advanced so that many babies receive solids at a few days of age on leaving the obstetrical hospital. The very early feeding of solids does not seem to have affected the growth of infants since no change has been observed during the last 30 years.

Dietary intake varies in subtle and not always readily comprehensible ways. For example in U.S. the consumption of fluid milk has been falling since 1959 presumably due to the "cholesterol scare". The use of fluid cream has been diminishing since the early 1970's and in 1981 was only 68% of that in 1947-49. The consumption of butter has also been declining since the early 1950's and here factors such as the poor quality of American butter, the availability of adequate substitutes, the anti-cholesterol propaganda are considerations.

Per capita consumption of cheese and frozen dairy foods (including ice-cream) has increased.

The consumption of milk varies widely from country to country. Though fluid milk is drunk fairly freely in the United States, the consumption of milk and milk products is less than 50% that of Ireland, Finland and New Zealand.

How such variations in the consumption of milk and milk products affect human growth is not known.

Socio-economic status. There is speculation as to the reasons for the socio-economic difference in growth. In a Swedish study [2] slower growth in poorer families was found to be related not so much to income as to social status. The type of work in which the father was engaged proved to be a more important influence on the growth of children than his income. A good correlation could be demonstrated between the type of employment of the father on the one hand and the height and weight of the children on the other, while no correlation was found between the father's income and the size of the children.

A likely explanation is that parents doing a higher type of work, are more intelligent than those doing inferior work and are consequently better able to select a proper diet for their children. This is borne out by our experience. In the 1930's [4] it was possible to improve the growth of infants from an economically deprived group and bring it up to that of a middle income group simply by giving advice about the diet and general management.

Accelerated Maturation

A second developmental change which has been taking place during the past

century is the earlier appearance of puberty and adolescence. The characteristic growth spurt and menarche are appearing earlier and growth is completed at a younger age. In Norway [8, 18, 41] the age of menarche has declined from 17.2 years in 1850 to 13.5 years in 1930, a difference of 3.7 years. A similar decline has been observed in Finland, Sweden, England, Germany and U.S.A. [39]. The average age of girls at menarche in U.S. is between 12.5 and 13 years, varying somewhat with socio-economic status and region.

At the same time as the menarche is appearing earlier, the menopause is taking place later.

A number of environmental factors are known to influence the time and character of the adolescent process. More rapid growth and better nutrition are accompanied by earlier maturation. Thus obese children mature earlier than others.

Socio-economic status is an important factor. Girls from lower status families menstruate later than those from more favored families. In New York City menarche occurs about 11 months earlier among well-off negroes than in negroes in the southern states where the economic situation is much poorer [34].

There is a widespread belief that menarche appears earlier in underdeveloped peoples and in tropical climates. The data do not bear this out. The mean age of menarche in upper class Nigerian girls is actually higher than in England [13] and is just about the same as in Alaskan girls [28]. In New York City no difference was found between white and negro girls of similar socio-economic status [34]. A curious observation, made by two different

observers, is that menarche occurs later in darker haired children [8-27]

Not only are the adolescent spurt in growth and menarche appearing earlier maturity is reached at a younger age. Whereas maximal height was probably not reached in men until about 20 years some 50 years ago the age now in high socio-economic groups in United States and Western Europe is about 18 to 19 years in boys and two years earlier in girls.

Emotional development Marked changes in emotional reactivity are characteristic of adolescence. Basically these changes are determined biologically but they are profoundly influenced by cultural factors. Accompanying the marked growth in the size and activity of the sex organs, interest in the opposite sex is greatly increased. Increased activity of the adrenal hormones is believed to be related to increased aggressiveness and the drive for social dominance. Since the emotional development is so closely tied to the hormonal development it seems reasonable to assume that emotional development during adolescence is now taking place earlier than formerly.

Mental development It is difficult to determine whether a spurt in mental development takes place during adolescence owing primarily to the character of mental tests and how they have been set up. Eichorn & Bayley [12] on the basis of studies in a small group of children studied from birth, present data which strongly support the view that there is a spurt in growth of the head circumference during adolescence.

In their group the growth spurt took place at 11 to 12 years in girls and three years later in boys corresponding to the

years of maximum growth in height. The increase in head circumference was greater than could be accounted for by the increased thickness of the skull and soft tissues. The inference is, therefore that a spurt in growth of the brain takes place during adolescence. In view of the observation of Eichorn & Bayley the former view that a spurt in mental development does not occur during adolescence must be reassessed.

Body Composition

There is ample evidence that the body composition can be altered by changing the dietary constituents. The differences in the body composition of infants receiving human and cow's milk have already been described.

More recent studies have dealt principally with the response to alterations in the character of the fat in the diet. The composition of body fat (heart, liver, testis, cerebrum) has been profoundly altered in chickens by feeding diets containing different fats [20]. Changes in body lipids have been produced by feeding rabbits diets supplemented with cholesterol and certain combinations of fatty acids [38].

In man the composition of the adipose tissues has been changed by feeding diets rich in various fats for long periods of time [19]. The fatty acid content of breast milk has also been altered by dietary manipulations without affecting milk volume or milk fat output [43].

It is clear then that body composition can be altered by dietary manipulation. This opens up basic problems. Are some of the differences which we consider to be racial actually due to differences in the

foods eaten? Diets vary widely in different parts of the world. Are the changes in the brain lipids reflected in differences in mental functioning?

Discussion

What is the significance of these profound changes in growth and development? We can readily see how the increased size of children and adults will make necessary many adjustments. Growth standards for children must continually be altered if they are to be useful. Standard clothing sizes for children have already been revised upward. Seating arrangements in public places—schools, theatres, cinemas, trains, aeroplanes—will have to be adjusted for the greater comfort of a larger kind of man. Beds and bathtubs must be made bigger. More food will be necessary to support the larger individual.

Of more immediate importance to the physician is the earlier maturation of young people. Earlier maturation has prolonged the difficult period of adjustment between the time when drives for self-expression, social dominance, sex experience, economic independence appear and the time when these drives and desires can be satisfied. The interval has been further extended at the other end by the increased number of students who continue in high school and college and who consequently remain economically dependent on their parents. The trend towards specialization has still more lengthened the training period.

Must we revise downward our estimates of the proper time to terminate compulsory schooling, to choose a career, to enter military service, to marry, perhaps to vote?

Should we revise our attitude toward the age of responsibility? It is customary to exempt the young from responsibility for certain criminal acts and also for managing their own affairs, for example marriage, inheritance and the like. The law protects children from many special dangers such as the use of alcohol, imprisonment, premature marriage. Earlier maturation suggests that we loosen the reins earlier in matters of compulsory schooling, child labor laws, marriage and so on.

It may be argued that earlier maturation is not the only consideration in judging the age of responsibility. Childhood and adolescence are years of preparation for adult life. Earlier maturation means that the period of preparation has been shortened and that maturity is now being reached before the youth has had an opportunity to accumulate experience in the way his later maturing predecessors had.

Against this argument is the fact that opportunities for accumulating experience are much greater now than ever before. What with the trend toward urban life where the tempo is greatly accelerated over that in rural communities. Radio and television, too, are great forces in widening experience.

Summary

For the past 100 years or more children and adults have been growing taller and heavier. The increased size is probably due to changes in the character of the diet. It seems reasonable to assume that the end is in sight that the ultimate size reached will be that already achieved some years ago by well-looked-after individuals as represented by the private school population.

Adolescence is beginning earlier and maturity is being reached earlier. Earlier maturation poses many problems in management especially as psychological conflicts between parent and child appear earlier and last longer.

References

1. ABOLI, J. A. Weight and length of the newborn during the years 1918-1922 and 1935-1941. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh), Suppl* 135 III 1941.
2. ARAMKOV, E. and ERNEST, E. Height and weight of a Stockholm secondary school, 1940 and comparison with some earlier investigations. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 41 235, 1954.
3. BIRD, D. Social factors in obstetrics. *Lancet* 1 1079 1949.
4. BAKWY, H. and BAKWY, H. M. Growth of thirty-two external dimensions during the first year of life. *J Pediatr* 8 17 1934.
5. BAKWY, H. Lengths in infants. *Amer J Dis Child* 65 30, 1942.
6. BAKWY, H. and BAKWY, R. M. The importance of medical supervision during early infancy in the infant death rate. *N Y Jour Med* April, 1933.
7. BOAS, F. The growth of first born children. *Science (N.Y.)* 1 402, 1893.
8. BOLE, L. Untersuchungen über die Menstruation bei der niederländischen Bevölkerung. *Z Geburtsh Gynäk* 52 264 1938.
9. BOYCE, A. W. ATKIN, F. C. and LEITCH, L. Periodic changes in the weight and height of British children, etc. 1911-1933. *Nutr Abstr Rev* 27 1 1937.
10. BROMAN, B. DAHLBERG, O. and LICHTE, STEN, A. Height and weight during growth. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 20 1 1941.
11. COFFMAN, A. Quoted by BROCK, J. *Biologische Daten / des A. Advarst* 2nd Edition, Vol. 1 Springer Berlin, 1934 p. 130.
12. EICHORN, H. H. and LEV, L. Growth in head circumference from birth through adult hood. *Child Develop* 21 37 194.
13. ELLIS, R. W. B. Age of puberty in the tropics. *Brit Med J* 1 25, 1941.
14. FAGER, H. A. and RYTON, T. L. Statistical comparison of breast fed and not breast fed babies during first year. *Amer J Dis Child* 26 1163, 1934.
15. FALEXER, F. J. Some physical growth standards for white North American children. *Pediatrics*, 25 467 1940.
16. GLAZIER, H., P. SKELTON, A. M. and Hoffman, W. R. Comparative efficiency of standard D preparations in the prophylactic treatment of premature infants. *Amer J Dis Child*, 1 1 1949.
17. GRUBER, W. W. A comparison of the physical growth and development of American born and native Japanese children. *Amer J Phys Anthropol* 15 475 1937.
18. GURKE, H. U. Untersuchungen über die Pubertät bei Umwandlungs- und der Verfallsphase. Beitrag zur Frage: Menarche und Umwelt. *Z Mensch Ererb Konstit Leber* 1 29 1943.
19. HARVEY, D. M. WETNAM, C., GORDON, A. and ANDERSON, S. A. Effects of the composition of dietary fat upon composition of adipose tissue. *Amer J Clin* Vol 2 225 1940.
20. HARVEY, D. WETNAM, C. H. and ANDERSON, R. M. Oxford. Adult health and early effects of childhood ailments on skeletal development. *Brit J Prev Soc Med* 9 178 1953.
21. HENCK, J. FAROCH, J. W. ANDERSON, E. H. JR., PETERSON, M. L. and STORTEL, W. Studies of adipose tissue in man. *Amer J Clin* Vol 2 492 1940.
22. HOLT, L. E. *The Dorian of Infancy and Childhood* D. Appleton & Co., New York 1907 p. 98.
23. INCELL, W. JR., HIRSH, J. JAMES, T. and ANDERSON, E. H. JR. The fatty acids of human milk. II. Alterations produced by manipulation of caloric balance and excretion of dietary fat. *J Clin Invest* 22 81 1953.
24. KILL, V. M. Stature and growth of Norwegians from during the past 250 years. *Str Varde* 1 64 (reprinted 1933, no. 6).
25. LEV, L. In BROCK, J. *Biologische Daten für den K. Advarst* 2nd ed. Vol. 1 p. 54. Springer, Berlin, 1934.
26. LEVINE, A. E. Studies in physical anthropology III The age of onset of menstruation of the Alaska Eskimos. *Amer J Phys Anthropol* 9 11 1933.
27. LEV, L. Über die Menarche der Frau und ihre Beziehungen zur Pubertation: Untersuchungen an Schulkindern der Reich Mann Arch Gynäk 163 469 1934.
28. L. V. A. Das Gewicht der Frauenbarn vor 13 Jahren ergötzt mit der Organwert Paediatr Deutsch 1 26 1947.
29. MACLE, L. J. and GORDON, R. R. Effect of

- dietary fatty acids and cholesterol on growth and fatty acid composition of the chicken. *J Nutr* 7: 157, 1961.
20. M. Y. C. D. Determination and significance of dietary allowance of protein for infants. *Pediatrics*, 22: 334, 1959.
21. MELNIN T. The children of Swedish nomad Lapps. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, Suppl 131, 1963.
22. MELLANDER, H. VALQUIST B., MELNIN T. et al. Breast feeding and artificial feeding. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, Suppl 116, 1959.
23. MERRITT, H. and BROWN A. W. Growth in body weight during the first 10 days of postnatal life. *Human Biology* 11: 24, 1939.
24. MICKELSON, N. Studies on physical development of Negroes. *Amer J Phys Anthropol* N.S. 2: 161, 1944.
25. REED, R. B. and STUART H. C. Patterns of growth in height and weight from birth to eighteen years. *Pediatrics*, 24: 904, 1959.
26. SLVICK, F. et al.: Relationship between vitamin D intake and linear growth in infants. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*, 37: 499, 1957.
27. STAMMER, G. JEANS, P. C. and VANDERAR, V. Effect of vitamin D on linear growth of infancy. The effect of intakes above 1900 U.S.P. units daily. *J Pediatr* 9: 1, 1935.
28. SWELL, L. LAW M. D. SCHOOLS, P. E., JA and THREADWELL, C. R. Tissue lipid fatty acid change following the feeding of high cholesterol, essential fatty acid supplemented diets to rabbits. *J Nutr* 75: 181, 1961.
29. TANNER, J. M.: *Growth at Adolescence*. 2nd ed., C. C. Thomas, Springfield, Ill. 1962.
30. WALLAU F. Körperbaustypen und Menstruation. *ZN Gynäk*, 63: 1830, 1939.
31. WALLAU F. Über die Akkeleration der Menstruation. *ZN Gynäk*, 76: 615, 1952.
32. WIDDOWSON E. M.: Mental contentment and physical growth. *Lancet*, 1: 1316, 1961.
33. WIEBE, H. F. HANSEN A. E. and ADAM, D. J. D. Essential fatty acids in infant nutrition. I. Linoleic acid requirements in terms of serum di- and tetraenoic acid levels. *J Nutr* 66: 345, 1958.

Submitted April 29, 1963

Accepted May 17, 1963

Department of Pediatrics
Bellevue Medical Center
850 First Avenue
New York 16, N.Y.
U.S.A.

Acute Head Injuries in Children

by BO HJERN and INGVAR NYLANDER

(Supplement 152)

The material of this investigation comprises all the 303 children with acute head injuries in the age group 0-14 who were admitted to and treated in the Surgical Clinic at the Kroupprinsessan Lovisa Children's Hospital in Stockholm in one calendar year. The material confirms that acute head injuries in children as a rule are of a mild character and give rise only to rapidly disappearing somatic symptoms, with a low frequency of complications. A few days observation in hospital is recommended. The duration of confinement to bed shall be as short as possible and adjusted to the subjective and objective symptoms.

In all cases a careful and detailed traumatological anamnesis was recorded when the child was admitted. Its somatic and mental status were recorded on standardized forms. The material for the first half year was subjected in addition to an intensive psychiatric scrutiny. This scrutiny included on the one hand, the recording of a comprehensive anamnesis with parents and teachers furnishing the information and on the other a certain amount of psychotherapy for the parents. Six months after discharge from hospital the patients were followed up as regard the occurrence of neurological and psychiatric symptoms.

It was clear from the investigation that

inter alia the patients constituted a special selection. A remarkably large number came from homes with mentally ill or social parents, a remarkably large number had parents with anxious and grossly exaggerated fears of the sequelae of head injuries, a remarkably large number had already had head injuries previously or had been involved in other accident and a remarkably large number had already manifested pronounced symptoms of mental illness before the head injury.

At the follow up examination only a small percentage of the patients were stated to have had neurological sequelae of the head injury. Mental sequelae were reported in about 10% of the cases and invariably in children who came from an insecure home environment or who had already shown symptoms of mental illness previously. No child who came from a normal home environment and had previously been mentally healthy had had mental symptoms after the head injury. The children of the parents who did not receive psychotherapeutic treatment had a significantly higher frequency of psychiatric symptoms after the head injury than the children of the parents who received this treatment.

The results are discussed and practical steps for obviating mental sequelae in children with head injuries are indicated.

PROCEEDINGS OF PEDIATRIC SOCIETIES

Swedish Pediatric Society

Meeting Sept. 21 1963

Ralph Holman, John Lind and Lars Söderkvist Unsaturated Fatty Acids in Serum from Breast Fed Infants and Cow Milk Fed Infants

Using the alkali isomerization technique the content of dienoic, trienoic and tetraenoic acids in serum has been determined in newborn infants and in infant fed human milk and cow milk. In breast fed infants there is an increase in dienoic and tetraenoic acids with time whereas in serum from cow milk fed infants, the content of these unsaturated fatty acids remains low.

Åke Gyllenstein and Stig Malmström Exchange Transfusions at the Hospital in Boden

Boden is the center of Norrbotten county which covers one-fourth of Sweden, with about 260,000 inhabitants. At the hospital, there are about 4500 deliveries a year. In 1955-1962, 124 exchange transfusions were performed, 93 in Rh-immunizations. Eighty per cent refers to the last four years with about 30 exchange transfusions a year. Indications and technique are adapted to the general norms in Sweden. Delivery is induced in selected cases up to 4 weeks before expected time. The prenatal death-rate among the Rh-immunized during this period was about 10. Mortality and complications have been studied in detail, and follow-up examination performed. In the total series, the death-rate was 2 per transfusion and 3 per child. In the Rh-cases 4 and 5% respectively; no death occurred in immediate connection with the exchange transfusion and there have been no deaths during the last 2 years. No

significant complications have occurred during the transfusions since we stopped giving calcium through the catheter in 1960, which sometimes resulted in alarming bradycardias.

No cases of kernicterus have occurred either in the exchanged cases or in the Rh immunizations without exchange transfusions. The two cases of kernicterus included had hyperbilirubinemia without immunization and were not sent to us until the cerebral symptoms had started. The results tally closely with others and thus the exchange transfusion service in this hospital seems satisfactory especially when regarded from a geographical point of view.

Per Kåhlin and Sylwia Garna Hedman Experiences of Exchange Transfusions in Umeå

In a district in northern Sweden covering about 65,000 sq.km. some 4500 deliveries per year occur in 14 hospitals. All cases in which exchange transfusions may be necessary are admitted to the General Hospital at Umeå. In the years 1956 to 1963 93 cases were treated with 131 exchange transfusions and re-examined. Indications for exchange transfusions are: positive direct Coombs test a hemoglobin of 14 g. or less, and an indirect bilirubin of 3.5 mg. or more in cord blood. Asphyxia, prematurity or erythroblastosis in siblings indicate exchange even if the last two criteria are not completely fulfilled. Exchange is also performed if the increase in serum bilirubin exceeds 0.5 mg./hour during the first 36 hours. If the serum bilirubin exceeds 30 mg. for otherwise healthy mature infants, 23 mg.% for premature or asphyxiated infant

before the age of 7 days, exchange also has been performed.

Case A was the 6th child of a supposedly Rh(+) woman with six healthy children. Hyperbilirubinemia beginning on the first day increased to 3+ mg on the 3rd day when convulsions occurred. Three exchange transfusions were performed. The child is now mentally retarded, but without athetosis. The mother was found to be immunized. Child B was a post mature child of a primipara. Icterus started on the 3rd day with opisthotonus and athetoid movements. Admitted at the age of 7 days with a serum bilirubin of 37 mg. The child, now 3½ years old is mentally and physically retarded. Case C was the 2nd child of an Rh immunized diabetic mother delivered by caesarean section in the 32th week. As the child was severely asphyxiated he was not sent for exchange transfusion until the third day. Died on the 4th day from respiratory distress. Case D was the fourth child of an Rh-immunized mother. Exchange transfusion without complications. The infant was mongoloid with an atrial septal defect and died at the age of 6 weeks of cardiac failure.

Case E was a firstborn mature infant with a bilirubin of 22 mg on the second day. The mother was 4 immunized. As the icterus did not decrease in 1 day, an exchange transfusion was performed. Towards the end of the transfusion the child died from cardiac arrest. Case F had a bilirubinemia of 40 mg when admitted on the 8th day and died of kernicterus at the age of 3 months.

In our series of treated cases, the mortality is similar to other groups reported. The total number of Rh immunized pregnancies in the district is not known for this period. It is possible that some still births were not registered as erythroblastoses. Fifty-six per cent of the entire series are boys. Among the 18 crippled or dead infants, 12 were boys. Treatment has been successful in most cases. Complications are seen when patient are sent for exchange transfusion rather late after neurological signs are manifest. Better results might be expected after instruction

of all categories of hospital staff on the significance of early jaundice in newborn infants.

P-G Bergfors Sulphonamide Treatment Once Again

Penicillins are preferred perhaps too often to sulphonamides in the treatment of infections. Regarding both therapeutic safety and frequency of side effects, modern sulpha compounds are by no means inferior to penicillins. The cost of sulpha treatment is about one-third that of penicillin treatment. Recent research upon the pharmacokinetics of sulphonamides has demonstrated great discrepancies between different derivatives. It is necessary to use more individual dosage schemes than has hitherto been practiced. The initial dose must be sufficiently high to permit a safe plasma concentration of active sulpha from the 1st day of treatment. Unfortunately most recommendations by pharmaceutical manufacturers seem to be erroneous on this point. Also the maintenance doses now generally in use are too low for many sulphonamides. For some of the older ones, however, they seem to be too high. A new sulpha derivative 3-methoxy-sulphanilamidopyrazin (Kelfixin²) has some outstanding qualities which makes it a real improvement in this field. Its elimination is considerably slower than any other sulpha derivative in use. The binding to plasma proteins is very small in comparison with other long-duration sulphonamides. These and other properties of Kelfixin make it theoretically possible to use maintenance doses of only 50-100 mg once daily, about one-tenth of other modern sulpha compounds. Thanks to this low dose symptoms of intolerance will probably be still more uncommon. Our preliminary clinical studies on the effect of these low doses of Kelfixin² in cases of urinary infections are promising. In contrast to other long-duration sulphonamides, Kelfixin² probably can be used even in cases of bacterial meningitis, as it passes to the spinal fluid as good with less than 25-40% of the serum level.

Meeting Oct 11 1963

Bertil Hall Mongolism in Newborn Infants

With the object of evaluating different diagnostic criteria and thereby the possibility of diagnosing mongolism at birth, the author has for one year July 1961-June 1962, investigated all newborn infants in Southern Sweden suspected of mongolism with regard to clinical symptoms and chromosome pattern. During this period, 43 instances of suspected mongolism were referred for investigation. All were investigated according to a special formula. Of the 43 cases, 38 had the typical mongoloid chromosome pattern, trisomy 21 while the remainder were chromosomally normal. The number of confinements in this area is about 28,000 annually. The mongol frequency is therefore about 1/650 confinements, a frequency that corresponds well with the accepted value. Two of the 38 cases with normal chromosomes showed signs of mental retardation at the age of one year. In a third instance mental retardation was suspected, but the infant died before this could be established with certainty. Based on these observations, the

author selected 10 cardinal clinical signs of mongolism in newborn infants. Primarily signs that could be assessed or easily defined were chosen. These cardinal signs included: oblique palpebral fissures, iris spots, four finger crease, abnormal middle phalanx of 5th finger (5th index $< 70^\circ$ negative Moro reflex, protruding tongue, circumference of head less than 33.5 cm, abnormal ears, and hyperflexibility.

In this material mongoloid infants had 4-10 cardinal signs but most of them had 7-8. One of the chromosomally normal infants has 5 cardinal signs, including mongoloid type pelvis. These cases would also have been classified as mongolism, if one had chosen more subjective traditional signs as basis of comparison. Thus, it is not possible to recognize by these clinical signs all chromosomally normal infants, who give the impression of mongolism. Of the remaining chromosomally normal infants, none had

more than 3 cardinal signs. On the basis of these observations, one should be able to diagnose mongolism clinically in newborn infants with reasonable certainty if 6 cardinal signs occur. If fewer signs are positive a chromosome investigation should be carried out. The chromosomally normal infant with 5 cardinal signs showed signs of mental retardation at the age of one year. From a practical clinical point of view he must be regarded as mongoloid, but when he deviates in some respects, he should be classified as a paramongoloid.

Mariann Ohlsson, Göran Sörner and Sigrun Woloski Antibodies Against Respiratory Viruses Among Healthy Children

Sera from two groups of healthy children 1-3 years old (66 children) and 9-14 years old (74 children) were examined for complement fixing antibodies against respiratory viruses: adenovirus, parainfluenza 1-3, respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A and B. More than half of the school children had antibodies against adenovirus, parainfluenza 1-3, and respiratory syncytial virus; the small children, however, had antibodies against these viruses to a much smaller extent. Antibodies against influenza A and B were found only sporadically in these two groups.

G. Sörner, Mariann Ohlsson, S. Woloski, Margareta Gullmar and C. de Hervey Infections with Respiratory Viruses in Orphanage and Nursery

From October 1959-January 1960 stools and sera were collected from normal infants (3-12 months old) living in an orphanage and during February-March 1963 from children (1-3 years old) with mental retardation living in a nursery. The stools were examined for cytopathic agents. Only adenoviruses were recovered. Nine infants excreted adenovirus types 1, 5 or 7. Paired sera showed a rise (4 fold) in CF titre against adenovirus antigen in three children.

One of them (an infant) had a symptomless infection, the other two had acute respiratory illness. Sera from the orphanage and the nursery showed a CF antibody titre of 4 or higher in 60% and 90% respectively. Infections with adenoviruses seem to occur twice as often in children living in the orphanage and the nursery as in children (1-3 years old) living in their homes. The same proportion was valid even for infections caused by parainfluenza 1. One-third of the children in both groups had CF antibodies against parainfluenza 1 but none against parainfluenza 2. Only 1 infant showed antibodies against parainfluenza 3 compared with one third of the children in the nursery. Three infants had a significant

rise in CF antibodies against parainfluenza 1. One of them also had a rise in CF antibodies against parainfluenza 2. All of these last mentioned infant had been ill with acute respiratory illnesses during the study. Half of the children living in the nursery but none of the infant living in the orphanage showed a titre of 4 or higher of the CF antibodies against respiratory syncytial virus. Three of the children had an infection with this virus during the study. An outbreak of respiratory illness among the children with mental retardation just before the study started, was probably caused by respiratory syncytial virus. None of the children had detectable CF antibodies against influenza A and B.

Folger Lagergren, Stockholm

NEW BOOKS RECEIVED

Books received by the *Acta Paediatrica* are acknowledged under this heading. Selected books will be reviewed in subsequent issues as space permits.

H Loeb *Contribution à l'Étude du Métabolisme Énergétique de l'Enfant*. Editions Arscia, S. A. Bruxelles, 1963. Price Frs. B 350.

E Rossi (ed.) *Neue Probleme bei Infektionskrankheiten des Kindes*. Pädiatrische Fortbildungskurse für die Praxis. Vol. 10. S. Karger AG Basel-New York, 1963. Price S. Frs. 24.

F J W Müller R M E Seal and M D Taylor *Tuberculosis in Children*. J & A. Churchill, Ltd. London, 1963. Price £6 net.

H Opliz and F Schmid (Editors). *Handbuch der Kinderheilkunde*. Vol. V *Infektionskrankheiten*. Springer Verlag Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg, 1963. Price DM 280.

Frederic Spier (Editor) *The Allergic Child*. Hoeber Medical Division, Harper & Row Publishers, New York, Evanston, and London, 1963. Price \$16.50.

G Jentschura, E Margwarth and E M Rudel. *Behandlung und Versorgung bei Fehlbildungen und Amputationen der oberen Extremität*. Georg Thieme Verlag Stuttgart. Price DM 22.50.

Jan Landsten *The Nature and Origin of Chromosome Aberrations in Turner Syndrome*. Almqvist & Wiksell, Uppsala, 1963. Price Sw Kr 32.—.

First Inter American Conference on Congenital Defects, Los Angeles, California,

January 22-25 1963. J. B. Lippincott Company Philadelphia and Montreal 1963.

Seminar on the Prevention of Antenatal and Perinatal Cerebral Lesions. Centre International de l'Enfance Mai 1961. S. Karger Basel and New York, 1963.

F Unterharnscheidt *Die gedeckten Schäden des Gehirns*. Experimentelle Untersuchungen mit 1 maliger wiederholter und geplanter streuender Gewalteinwirkung auf den Schädel. Springer Verlag Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg 1963. Price DM 48.—.

Kinderpsychiatrie in der Praxis. Postgraduate Courses in Pediatrics, edited by E. Rossi. S. Karger Basel and New York, 1963.

F Gross (ed.) *Protein Metabolism I fluxes of Growth Hormone, Anabolic Steroids, and Nutrition in Health and Disease. A International Symposium*. Leyden, June 25-29 1962. Springer Verlag Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg, 1963. Price DM 27.50.

K Schreier (ed.) *Die angeborenen Stoffwechselanomalien*. Grundlagen, Klinik Therapie. Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart 1963. Price DM 59.—.

J Col & C Polonovski *Explorations Biologiques en Pédiatrie* 2^e édition. L'Expansion Editrice, Paris, 1963. Price F 174.

G Möller *Der pädiatrische Kindstod*. Pathologische Anatomie und Dynamik. Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, 1963. Price DM 29.70.

BOOK REVIEWS

H Opitz and F Schmid Handbuch der Kinderheilkunde Vol. V: Infektionskrankheiten

Springer Verlag Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg, 1962 Price DM 360

The editors say that the "Handbuch" will be published in nine volumes and will treat all subjects in the field of pediatrics and child health with the exception of pediatric surgery which is considered sufficiently covered in *Lehrbuch der Chirurgie und Orthopädie des Kindesalters* edited by A. Oberniedermayer. The two editors of the book reviewed here H. Opitz and F. Schmid, the former a well experienced editor of medical journals and books, have received contributions from 440 collaborators in Europe and U.S.A. The aim of the editors is to give a representative and exhaustive presentation of current pediatrics, emphasizing practical viewpoints. They hope that the whole series of volumes will be published within the next two years. In two of the volumes the interests of pediatricians in practice and in clinical work will be the "Leitmotive" in the disposition of the material and a comprehensive survey of diagnostics, treatment, social welfare, pediatric institutions and biostatistics will be given.

The present volume is number 5. Infectionskrankheiten and in this all infectious diseases common among children in temperate zones and the most important infectious diseases in the subtropics and the tropics are exhaustively treated. As an introduction more general points of view are given in two short chapters. The treatment of the various kinds of infectious diseases is conventional and the size of each separate chapter seems to be adequate. The largest section is given to tuberculosis (225 pages) and is divided in 10 subchapters with different authors. Otherwise there is only one author for each disease. In all this volume contains 1,59 pages with 418 partly colored figures.

To judge from the present volume the editors have succeeded fairly well in the aim and the volume tallies satisfactorily with the standard of the same volume in the old *Maundler-Schlossmann's Handbuch*. For the old generation of pediatricians the *Maundler-Schlossmann* played an important role and most pediatric practitioners have access to those volumes. It was also translated into English and published in the United States. It is a pity that the price of the volume under review (subscription for the nine all volumes will lower the price to DM 289) will make it almost impossible for pediatricians in soft-currency countries to buy it.

Claude Palenwski and Jean Calé Explorations biologiques en pédiatrie Deuxième édition

Expansion scientifique française Paris, 1962 Price 174 Fr

This volume of 1184 large-size pages contains three parts: one giving technical descriptions of procedures in clinical biochemistry, one dealing with tests of different functions of the human body and one describing how these tests are used in clinical investigations. In the last part are found descriptions of symptoms and signs of various syndromes together with diagnostic schemes, and in the latter two parts some clinical-physiological investigations and blood group serology tests are described. It goes without saying that even in a volume of this size all topics cannot be completely discussed. For example the descriptions of serum glucose, proteins and abnormal hemoglobins are not comprehensive but such important clinical investigations as those of bilirubin, hematocrit and pH in blood are only briefly discussed and no microchemical are mentioned. On the whole however the book contains a wealth of information and up-to-date references.

Lars Wernstedt, Uppsala

G. Fanconi and I. Wallgren: *Lehrbuch der Pädiatrie* 7th revised edition

Schwabe & Co Verlag Basel-Stuttgart 1963.

It is with great expectations that one opens the 7th edition of Fanconi-Wallgren text book of pediatrics. This book is characterized by its appearance in a new revised edition every second year and by the exchange of retired old authors by young specialized collaborators, giving the chapters always a modern and fresh content. One may however hope that the two outstanding editors in future, although retired, will continue to publish this textbook, which has well merited its present distribution all over the world in six different languages. The book is presented in a nice typographical form with many illustrations, tables, graphs and diagrams giving the reader a visual impression which facilitates the understanding and helps the memory.

While the 1st edition of 1930 contained 864 pages, the 7th edition has grown to 1143 pages. It is perhaps somewhat too big for undergraduat students, but on the other hand it will serve as a valuable handbook not only for pediatricians but also for general practitioners.

In a short review it is not possible to enter into details, but one should like to stress that it would be desirable in the next edition to give a more exhaustive description of poisoning in childhood, which plays such an important role in everyday practice.

No pediatric department should miss this textbook, in which it is easy to find the information one wants, thanks to a general index that covers 83 pages.

Carl Friderichsen, Copenhagen

Howells, J. G. *Family Psychiatry*

Oliver & Boyd, Edinburgh and London, 1963. Price 18 s.

Many are the projects which have been advanced in the field of social and pay particular activity for the prevention and cure of emotional disorders in children and adults.

The Department of Family Psychiatry in

Ipswich under Doctor Howells presents, however a new and excellent approach which aims to help the family as a whole by coordinating all the forces in the community. The clinic not only collects information from different key persons and community agencies but also gets the active cooperation of these instances in the treatment of the family. Each member of the family, no matter which one has applied for help, is dealt with individually according to need. In spite of this complicated procedure the result seems to be natural and organic so that each member as well as the family as a whole shows improvement. This is in contrast to other methods, where after therapy with only one member of a family the others as well as the family as a whole may show a deterioration in their situation. Doctor Howells' program would seem like an ideal mental hygiene prevention. Does he however really believe that even if we could prevent children during their development from coming in contact with unstable persons in key positions we might expect in a few generations a more emotionally stable population? Emotional disorder is unfortunately not a homogeneous concept and the solution can scarcely be so simple. Nevertheless the book is very stimulating, well written, clearly thought out, concisely expressed and so much better than we are accustomed to in this field. No individual who is interested in the "to be or not to be" of the modern family can afford to miss reading this book.

Elen-Brita Nordlund Stockholm

Tuberculosis in Children by Edith M. Lincoln and Edward M. Sewell with foreword by Arvid Wallgren.

McGraw Hill Book Company Inc New York, 463. Price \$11.95.

In 1922 Edith Lincoln began a clinical and pathological study of tuberculosis in the Pediatric Department of Bellevue Hospital in New York City. Between 1930 and 1941 1342 children with primary pulmonary tuber

BOOK REVIEWS

H Opitz and F Schmid: Handbuch der Kinderheilkunde Vol. V: Infektionskrankheiten

Springer Verlag, Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg, 1963. Price DM 360

The editors say that the "Handbuch" will be published in nine volumes and will treat all subjects in the field of pediatrics and child health with the exception of pediatric surgery which is considered sufficiently covered in *Lehrbuch der Chirurgie und Orthopädie des Kindesalters* edited by A. Obermarchmayr. The two editors of the book reviewed here H. Opitz and F. Schmid, the former a well experienced editor of medical journals and books, have received contributions from 440 collaborators in Europe and U.S.A. The aim of the editors is to give a representative and exhaustive presentation of current pediatrics, emphasizing practical viewpoints. They hope that the whole series of volumes will be published within the next two years. In two of the volumes the interest of pediatricians in practice and in clinical work will be the *Lehrbuch* in the disposition of the material and a comprehensive survey of diagnosis, treatment, social welfare, pediatric institutions and biostatistics will be given.

The present volume is number 5. In *Infektionskrankheiten* and in this all infections common among children in temperate zones and the most important infectious diseases in the subtropics and the tropics are exhaustively treated. As an introduction more general points of view are given in two short chapters. The diseases of the various kinds of infectious diseases are conventional and the size of each separate chapter seems to be adequate. The largest section is given to tuberculosis (223 pages) and is divided in 18 subchapters with different authors. Otherwise there is only one author for each disease. In all this volume contains 1,550 pages with 419 partly colored figures.

To judge from the present volume the editors have succeeded fairly well in their aim and the volume tallies satisfactorily with the standard of the same volume as the old Pfäundler-Schlossmann *Handbuch*. For the old generation of pediatricians the Pfäundler-Schlossmann played an important role and most pediatric practitioners had access to these volumes. It was also translated into English and published in the United States. It is a pity that the price of the volume under review (subscription to the nine all volumes will lower the price to DM 288) will make it almost impossible for pediatricians in soft-currency countries to buy it.

Claude Patau et al. and Jean Colin: Explorations biologiques en pédiatrie. Deuxième édition

Expansion scientifique française, Paris, 1962. Price 174 Fr.

This volume of 1194 large-size pages contains three parts: one giving technical descriptions of procedures in clinical biochemistry, one dealing with tests of different functions of the human body and one describing how these tests are used in clinical investigations. In the last part are found descriptions of symptoms and signs of various syndromes, together with diagnostic schemes and in the latter two parts some clinical-pathological investigations and blood group serology tests are described. It goes without saying that even in a volume of this size all topics cannot be completely discussed. For example the descriptions of serum glycoproteins and abnormal haemoglobins are very comprehensive but such important clinical investigations as those of bilirubin, haemoglobin and pH in blood are only briefly discussed and no calorimetry is mentioned. On the whole however the book contains a wealth of information and up-to-date references.

Lars Wren, M.D., Uppsala

noticed period of successive deterioration has preceded the onset of frank disease. It is reasonable to assume that the number of children with mild-moderate forms of protein-calorie malnutrition in a given community grossly exceeds that of the severe cases. In preventive health work and from the public health point of view it is of great interest to find some simple criteria of defining the children belonging to the former group.

Dr O Arroyave discussed "Biochemical signs of mild-moderate forms of PCM". Several authors have found that a low protein intake will diminish the ratio urea N/total N in the urine. Likewise the ratio urea N/creatinine is reduced. Single morning urine specimens can be used for a kind of screening procedure. The urea-N/creatinine is not infallible, since poor nutrition may also reduce the creatinine excretion. Analyses of individual amino acids in the blood plasma indicate a definite change in PCM with low levels for the essential amino acids but usually normal or even raised levels for the non-essential ones. So far only severely ill children have been studied.

Dr J C. Waterlow reviewed our knowledge of "Metabolic disturbances in PCM". In spite of much work we are unfortunately far away from having any good and early laboratory signs of the mild-moderate forms. It may well be that we must concentrate on trying to find and measure quantitative deviations that are still within physiological limits. As far as functional tests are concerned, since there is usually a large physiological reserve, positive results are more likely to be found if the function is loaded or stressed. This latter possibility was taken up by Professor R. F. A. Dean in his lecture on "Production and control of oedema". Surprisingly in studies with different supply of sodium and potassium it came out that under the given conditions (4 g protein and 100 cal/kg/day) an addition of 2 g sodium

chloride right from the beginning of treatment was therapeutically beneficial.

Professor W J Darby discussed "Adaptation to suboptimal nutrition with respect to protein and calories" and Dr F W Lowenstein "The vicious circle mechanism in the production of PCM". In the discussion Dean stressed the fact that "there is very seldom only one factor responsible for the malnutrition of the individual child. It is as though a few insults can be borne but when too many insults simultaneously arrive the child goes down hill".

Dr J Cravioto presented Mexican observations of "The influence of PCM on psychological test behaviour". They indicate a definite correlation between, e.g., IQ score and degree of malnutrition. Admittedly such correlations may be complex in interpretation but they are a challenge to continued studies along the same lines.

The prevention of PCM by utilization of protein-rich foods was discussed in some detail by Dr B. M. Nicol. With respect to short term prognosis the following discussion remark by Dean is of interest: "We have followed-up 300 children treated since 1954 and 30 of them are known to have died, confirming the rarity of recurrences. Recurrences in our experience occur almost exclusively in children who are the victims of unfortunate psychological circumstances. In the 30 children who died, the most common mode of death was to fall down dead without any warning."

Other valuable contributions dealing with PCM (by Professor E. J. Bigwood, Professor and Mrs. D. B. Jelliffe, Dr B. Friis-Hansen) are found in the volume. Furthermore also a short presentation (by Professors Agren-Mellander and Vahlquist) of the NTB project "Children Nutrition Unit in Ethiopia and information on "Methods for the Determination of Physical Capability" by Professor G. Ström.

Bo Vahlquist Uppsala

ANNOUNCEMENT

The IVth Middle Eastern Mediterranean Pediatric Congress

This Congress will be held in Athens from September 27 to 30, 1964 and will be sponsored by the International Pediatric Association and the local Pediatric Societies.

Information from Professor C. N. Chournis, President, Pediatric Clinic of Athens University and Dr. S. G. Hadjilakis, Secretary 29 Stadion Street Athens 122, Greece.

The XIV Nordic Pediatric Congress

The congress, under the presidency of Professor Rolf Zetterström, will be held in Stockholm June 21-4 1964. The principal subjects to be discussed are:

- 1 Neonatal jaundice
- 2 Care of premature infants.
- 3 Congenital malformations, including chromosomal aberrations.
- 4 Immunological anomalies.

For further information about the Congress, write to the General Secretary of the

Congress, Associate Professor C. G. Bergstrand, Kronprinsessan Lovnas Barnsjukhus, Polhemsgatan 30 Stockholm K.

In direct connection with the congress a *Nordic Refresher Course in Pediatrics* is planned for June 25-28. The principal themes are: *Pediatric Neurology and Pediatric Endocrinology*. Request for information regarding this course should be addressed to Associate Professor Rutger Lagercrantz, Department of Pediatrics, Karolinska sjukhuset Stockholm 60.

From the Department of Biochemistry Baroda University Baroda, India

Studies on Human Lactation

Part IV

*Lactic and Malic Dehydrogenases and Xanthine Oxidase in Breast Milk and their Variation with the Progress of Lactation and Dietary Vitamin Supplementation*by A. D. DEODHAR, R. RAJALAKSHMI,¹ and C. V. RAMAKRISHNAN

A number of enzymes have been detected in breast milk including lipase [1, 5], cid and alkaline phosphatases [2, 4, 5, 12, 13], and peroxidase [10]. Although lactic, malic, glutamic and alcohol dehydrogenases have been reported in goat milk [8], their presence has not yet been demonstrated in breast milk. Preliminary investigations on the presence of these enzymes in breast milk led to the detection of lactic and malic dehydrogenases and confirmed the presence of xanthine oxidase. Studies were made on changes in these enzymes with the progress of lactation and with dietary vitamin supplementation.

Experimental

The 90 subjects employed for these experiments were from amongst those used for investigations otherwise directed [3]. The collection of milk was done according to the procedure described elsewhere [3].

Chemicals

The chemicals used in the experiments were obtained from the following sources: diphospho-pyridine nucleotide from Sigma Chemicals, glacial acetic acid from E. Merck

& Co., cysteine hydrochloride from E. Merck & Co., l-lactat from La Roche, l-malic from L. Light & Co., toluene and 2,3,5-triphenyl tetrazolium chloride from British Drug House Ltd.

Assay system for lactic and malic dehydrogenases

The assay system employed for the determination of dehydrogenase activity was a modification of that used by Sreenivasamurthy and Swaminathan [11], and consisted of potassium phosphate buffer pH 7.5, 100 μ moles; substrate 50 μ moles; cysteine hydrochloride (neutralised), 20 μ moles; $MgCl_2$, 5 μ moles; di phospho pyridine nucleotide 100 mcg; 2,3,5 tri-phenyl-tetrazolium chloride 50 μ moles; enzyme preparation, 0.5 ml; and distilled water to a final volume of 3 ml. The system was incubated at 37° for 2 hours. The reaction was stopped by the addition of 2 ml of acetic acid. The formazan formed was taken in 5 ml of toluene and the colour intensity measured at 470 m μ on Klett-Summerson Photoelectric colorimeter. The blank contained all the components except the substrate.

A unit of enzyme activity is defined as the amount of enzyme which, under the conditions of the assay causes a reduction of 1 mcg of 2,3,5-triphenyl tetrazolium chloride in 2 hours.

TABLE 1 *Lactic dehydrogenase, malic dehydrogenase and xanthine oxidase contents of different fractions of milk*

| | Lactic dehydrogenase % | Malic dehydrogenase % | Xanthine oxidase % |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Top fatty layer | 5.0 | 22.0 | 40.0 |
| Middle supernatant layer | 5.0 | 77.0 | 60.0 |
| Bottom residual layer | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |

Assay of xanthine oxidase

The assay system was a modification of the one described by ZHILIS *et al.* [14]: 500 μ moles of phosphate buffer pH 7.5, and 1 μ mole of hypoxanthine solution were taken in 1.5 ml test tube and the volume made up to 1.5 ml with water dry nitrogen was bubbled through the reaction mixture for 5 minutes, 0.5 ml of milk added, and the nitrogen again bubbled through for another 5 minutes; 0.5 ml of 0.05 *M* 2,6-triphenyl tetrazolium chloride was then added and the final volume adjusted to 3.4 ml with water. The mixture was incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes and the reaction stopped by the addition of 5 ml of glacial acetic acid. Four ml of toluene were then added and the mixture shaken vigorously to extract the formazan.

The colour intensity of the toluene layer was read at 490 m μ . The blank contained boiled milk in lieu of fresh milk.

Preparation of milk sample for the determination of lactic dehydrogenase, malic dehydrogenase and xanthine oxidase activities

On centrifugation at 4000 *g* and 5°C for 30 minutes the milk sample was found to form three distinct layers: a top layer (fatty), a middle layer (supernatant), and a bottom layer (residual). The three layers were separated and the fatty layer suspended in 0.05 *M* phosphate buffer pH 7.5, the residual layer in 0.05 *M* phosphate buffer pH 7.5. All the three fractions were analysed for 4 hours at

TABLE 2 *Lactic and malic dehydrogenases and xanthine oxidase in breast milk at different stages of lactation*

| | Lactation period | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| | Days | | | | Months | | | |
| | 1-7 (10) | 7-14 (10) | 15-21 (10) | 22-30 (10) | 1-3 (10) | 3-6 (10) | 6-1 (10) | 1 (10) |
| Lactic dehydrogenase (units/ml) | 78.0 ±0 | 74.0 ±1.8 | 65.0 ±1.5 | 49.0 ±1.4 | 32.0 ±1.9 | 1.0 ±0.7 | 17.0 0.8 | 88 0.4 |
| Malic dehydrogenase (units/ml) | 54.0 11 | 45.0 10 | 48.0 ±1.0 | 30.0 ±0.8 | 10 ±0.7 | 18.0 0.8 | 12.0 0.9 | 38 0.3 |
| Xanthine oxidase (unit/ml) | 32.0 13 | 49.0 ±8 | 41.0 --- | 39.0 ±1.7 | 34.0 ±7 | 36.0 --- | 31.0 1.6 | 37.0 ±1.6 |

The values given are means of activity (units) per ml, with standard errors.

* The numbers in brackets under the number of subjects in each group.

TABLE 3 *Lactic and malic dehydrogenases and xanthine oxidase (units/ml) in breast milk at different periods of supplementation*

(The control groups received no supplementation.)

| | Prior to supple- mentation | Period of supplementation in months | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| | | I | II | III | IV | V | VI | VII | VIII |
| Lactic dehydrogenase | | | | | | | | | |
| Experimental | 33.0 ±1.3 | 33.0 ±1.3 | 29.0 ±1.0 | 26.0 ±0.9 | 22.0 ±1.0 | 18.9 ±1.0 | 14.0 ±0.9 | 14.0 ±1.0 | 14.0 ±0.9 |
| Control | 32.0 ±1.3 | 30.0 ±1.0 | 36.0 ±0.9 | 24.0 ±0.9 | 20.0 ±0.9 | 18.0 ±1.0 | 13.0 ±1.0 | 13.0 ±0.9 | 12.0 ±1.0 |
| Malic dehydrogenase | | | | | | | | | |
| Experimental | 24.0 ±1.0 | 23.0 ±0.8 | 22.0 ±0.9 | 21.0 ±0.9 | 21.0 ±0.9 | 19.0 ±1.0 | 15.0 ±1.3 | 14.0 ±0.8 | 14.0 ±0.8 |
| Control | 23.0 ±1.3 | 22.0 ±1.0 | 22.0 ±0.9 | 20.0 ±0.8 | 21.0 ±0.7 | 18.0 ±0.8 | 18.0 ±1.0 | 18.0 ±0.8 | 13.0 ±0.7 |
| Xanthine oxidase | | | | | | | | | |
| Experimental | 37.0 ±1.3 | 36.0 ±1.3 | 37.0 ±1.4 | 37.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.3 | 33.0 ±1.7 | 35.0 ±1.3 |
| Control | 33.0 ±1.3 | 34.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.4 | 35.0 ±1.3 | 34.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.1 | 33.0 ±1.3 | 35.0 ±1.3 | 34.0 ±1.7 |

0 against 0.02 M phosphate buffer pH 7.5 and tested for xanthine oxidase, and lactic and malic dehydrogenase activities. The supernatant fraction was found to show maximum enzyme activity (Table 1) and was therefore used in all subsequent experiments.

Results

The activities of the three enzymes at different stages of lactation are presented in Table 2, and in groups with and without vitamin supplementation, in Table 3. It can be seen that with regard to all the three enzymes studied, the level of vitamin intake shows no relation to enzyme activity. The activities of the two dehydrogenases are found to decrease steadily with the progress of lactation. That of xanthine oxidase however shows only initial decrease and remains at a steady level after the first month of lactation.

Discussion

The observation that the activities of the enzymes show no relation to vitamin intake raises the question as to whether the presence of these enzymes in milk is merely due to their association with certain microsomal particles secreted along with milk, the escape of such cytoplasmic components having been suggested as a possibility by Morton [7] and Richardson [9]. In other words, the question arises as to whether the enzyme levels in milk have any relation to those in mammary tissues.

On the other hand, the relatively higher activities of these enzymes soon after parturition and a gradual decline thereafter would appear to be consistent with the relatively higher rate of carbohydrate metabolism soon after parturition and a gradual decline thereafter in rat mammary tissue suggested by McLean's data [8].

Although the author infers a relatively stable level of oxidation of glucose-6- ^{14}C as compared to the oxidation of glucose-1- ^{14}C , the former increases from 0.8 in early pregnancy to 2.3 in early lactation and declines to a value of 0.6 at the termination of lactation these changes being statistically significant.

The significance of these observations is therefore far from clear and must remain a

matter for speculation till further investigations are made

Summary

The presence of malic and lactic dehydrogenases was detected and that of xanthine oxidase confirmed. The activities of all the three enzymes were found to decrease with the progress of lactation and to be unaltered by dietary vitamin supplementation.

References

1. ANDERSON M. WALKER, A. R. P. and FALCKE, H. C. An investigation of the rarity of infantile scurvy among the South African Bantu. *Brit J Nutr* 10 101 1956.
2. BELAVADY B. Xanthine oxidase and alkaline phosphatase activity in the breast milk of poor Indian women. *Ind J Med Res* 48 634, 1960.
3. DEODHAR, A. D. and RAMKRISHNAN C. V. Studies on human lactation (relation between the dietary intake of lactating women and the chemical composition of milk with regard to vitamin content). *J Trop Pediatr*, 8 44 1960.
4. GREL, R. V. The phosphatase of human milk. *J Physiol Chem*, 213 57 1956.
5. KAKHARKAR, M. G. and RAMKRISHNAN C. V. Relation between dietary fat content of milk and concentration of certain enzymes in human milk. *J Nutr* 69 974 1959.
6. M. LEAV. E. Carbohydrate metabolism of mammary tissue. I. Pathways of glucose metabolism in the mammary gland. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 30 303, 1958.
7. MORRIS, R. K. The lipoprotein particles in cow milk. *Biochem J* 57 931 1954.
8. NIELSEN O. Reducing properties of normal and abnormal milk and their importance in bacteriological grading of milk. *Bact Rev* 11 41 1956.
9. REICHARDSON K. C. Lactation. Function and product. Some structural features of the mammary gland. *Brit Med Bull*, 5 123, 1944.
10. ROTUNDETTICE, O. S. and DUNNETT, E. J. The oxydase reaction of human milk. *Arch Dis Child*, 11 61 1936.
11. SREENIVASAMURTHY V. and RAJAMATE M. Colorimetric determination of lactic glutamic butyric and choline dehydrogenase activities of rat liver using trypanol tetrazolium bromide. *Bull CPT I* 1 111 1954-55.
12. STEWART R. A., PLATON, E. and HELLY V. J. The alkaline phosphatase content of human milk. *J Biol Chem* 12 777 1954.
13. VITTO C. Sur le système phosphotransférase au cours du lait de femme et sur la corrélation à lactation d'p-aminophényl sulfamoyl. *Comp Rend Soc Biol* 149 223, 1948.
14. ZITTEL, C. A., DELLAMONICA, E. R., COTTER, J. H. and RUD, R. K. Determination of xanthine oxidase in milk with triphenyl tetrazolium chloride. *J Dairy Sci* 37 522, 1954.

Submitted May 1 1963

Accepted July 11 1963

Biochemistry Department
Faculty of Science
University of Baroda
Baroda
India

From the Department of Paediatrics, University of Amsterdam
Head: Prof. S. van Creveld, M.D.

The Effect of Parathyroid Extract on the Serum Concentrations of Calcium and Inorganic Phosphate in Active and Healing Rickets

by ROBERT STEENDIJK

Some years ago Harrison, Harrison & Park [3, 5] showed that administration of parathyroid extract to hypocalcaemic vitamin D-deficient rats had no effect on the serum concentrations of calcium and inorganic phosphate (serum-Ca and serum-P). When parathyroid extract was injected 48 hours after administration of vitamin D, serum-Ca rose and serum-P fell.

Jonxis [6] reported similar findings in children. In the normal child parathyroid extract caused a rise of serum-Ca and a fall of serum-P, whereas in the vitamin D-deficient child these concentrations were unaffected by parathyroid extract.

These studies led to the conclusion that vitamin D has a permissive action on the effects of parathyroid hormone.

The purpose of the study presented here was to follow the effect of parathyroid extract on serum-Ca and serum-P during the healing of severe vitamin D-deficient rickets with vitamin D in order to find out at which stage of the healing process a normal response to parathyroid extract could be elicited.

The subject was an 18-month-old boy with severe vitamin D-deficient rickets. He had been fed almost exclusively on milk and

porridge and had never received vitamin D. On admission to the hospital serum-Ca and serum-P were 8.3 and 1.9 mg per 100 ml respectively; alkaline phosphatase was 35 Bodansky units; the concentration of serum-proteins was normal. A radiograph of the wrist is shown in Fig. 1A.

Administration of 1 000 U.S.P. units of parathyroid extract (100 units twice daily for 5 consecutive days) failed to cause a consistent change in the levels of serum-Ca and serum-P (Fig. 2). Following this, treatment was started. This consisted of 3 000 I.U. of vitamin D orally per day during the first week. After the first week, the dosage was raised to 5 000 I.U. per day. In addition, 1 g of calcium gluconate was given by mouth every day. Three weeks after the beginning of treatment serum-Ca and serum-P had risen to 9.3 and 3.2 mg per 100 ml respectively. Radiographs showed typical lines of Mueller in the rachitic metaphyses (Fig. 1B). Administration of parathyroid extract in the same dosage as before resulted in a fall of serum-P to 3.7 mg per 100 ml. Serum-Ca did not change however (Fig. 3).

After another 4 weeks of continued treatment, serum-Ca was 10.3 and serum-P 5.4 mg per 100 ml. A third series of

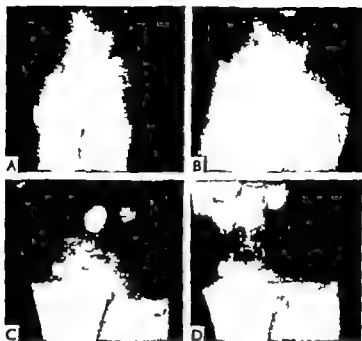


Fig. 1 Radiographs of the right wrist. A: On day 1 before treatment. B: On day 49, after 3 weeks of treatment. C: On day 56, after 7 weeks of treatment. D: On day 72, after 9 weeks of treatment.

injections of parathyroid extract again caused a significant fall of serum P but did not result in a change in serum-Ca (Fig 4). One week later radiographs showed advanced, though not yet complete healing (Fig 1C). The final attempt was made 8½ weeks after the beginning of treatment. Judged by the radiographs, healing was virtually complete at this moment (Fig 1D). This time serum-Ca rose from 10.4 to 12.0 and serum P fell from 5.9 to 4.1 mg per 100 ml after a total of 700 units of parathyroid extract.

The same batch of parathyroid extract was used throughout the study (Parathormone Lilly, lot number 1010-785405).

Discussion

The data show that in this child and with the moderate dose of parathyroid

extract used the phosphate lowering and calcium raising effects of parathyroid extract did not return simultaneously. Although the parathyroid glands probably secrete 2 hormones (2) it has been firmly established that only one hormone is responsible for causing hypophosphataemia—by decreased renal tubular reabsorption of phosphate—as well as hypercalcaemia—by a direct action on bone (8). Most likely therefore the data point to a difference in end-organ response. In this respect it is of significance that no structural change occurs in the kidney in rickets whereas bone structure is highly abnormal and is only beginning to be repaired when serum-Ca and serum P have resumed normal level as a result of treatment with vitamin D. As shown by the radiograph rickets was far from cured on day 49, not completely cured on day 56 whereas it was no longer

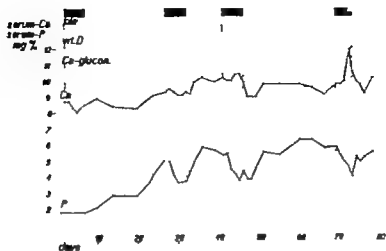


Fig. 2. Effect of administration of parathyroid extract on serum C and serum-P before and during treatment with vitamin D (see text).

visible on day 73. This may imply that the abnormal structure of the skeleton is a factor which prevents parathyroid hormone from causing hypercalcaemia.

Carnes [1] found in hypocalcaemic rachitic rats that the bone matrix could be resorbed regardless of its mineral content as a result of administration of large doses of parathyroid extract (250 U.S.P. units per day for 3 days). He noticed that the extent of the rise of serum-Ca following administration of parathyroid extract depended upon the degree of mineralisation of the skeleton, the higher the degree of mineralisation, the higher the rise in serum-Ca. In florid rickets in human beings mineralisation of bone is incompleet [9]. Therefore it is conceivable that the failure of serum-Ca to rise upon administration of parathyroid extract at a time when the skeletal lesions were still present, was due to quantitatively impaired resorption of incompletely mineralised bone. On the other hand in the x

periments of Harrison and his co-workers [3-4] a failure of parathyroid extract to elevate serum-Ca was found in vitamin D-deficient non-rachitic rats with apparently normal bone structure.

It must be concluded therefore that the mechanisms responsible for these observations are complicated and not properly understood at present. However the data presented serve to emphasize the intricacy of the interrelations between vitamin D and parathyroid hormone in bone metabolism [7]. Until more of the underlying mechanisms is revealed it is necessary to be cautious in ascribing certain metabolic phenomena in rachitic bone disease exclusively either to vitamin D or to parathyroid hormone.

Summary

The effect of administration of parathyroid extract to a patient with severe vitamin D-deficient rickets was investiga

ted. Before treatment parathyroid extract had no effect on serum-Ca and serum P. Upon treatment with vitamin D the hypophosphataemic action of parathyroid extract could be elicited at an earlier

stage of healing than the hypercalcaemic action.

The findings for which a proper explanation cannot be given at present are briefly discussed.

References

1. CARMY, W. H. The demonstration of an effect of parathyroid extract on bone matrix. *Amer J Path* 26 726, 1930.
2. COPE, D. H., CAMEROON, E. C., CHERRY, B. A., DAVIDSON, G. P. and HENKE, K. H. Evidence for calcitonin — A new hormone from the parathyroid that lowers blood calcium. *Endocrinology* 18 633, 1962.
3. HARRISON, H. E., HARRISON, H. C. and PARK, E. A. Vitamin D and citrat metabolism. Effect of vitamin D in rats fed diet adequate in both calcium and phosphorus. *Amer J Physiol* 192 422, 1958.
4. — Physiology of vitamin D I. *Bone as a Tissue* ed. A. Rodahl, J. T. Nicholson and F. M. Brown, p. 300, McGraw Hill New York, 1960.
5. HARRISON, H. E. Vitamin D and calcium and phosphat transport. *Pediatrics*, 23 431, 1961.
6. JOCKIM, J. H. P. Some investigations on rickets. *J Pediatr* 59 607, 1961.
7. NEUMAN, W. F. and DOWSE, C. M. Possible fundamental action of parathyroid hormone on bone I. "The Parathyroids" ed. R. G. Greep and R. V. Talmage p. 310, Thomas, Springfield, 1961.
8. RASMUSSEN, H. J. Parathyroid hormone. *Amer J Med*, 29 11, 1961.
9. STEENDJUK, R. On the pathogenesis of vitamin D-deficient rickets and primary vitamin D-resistant rickets. *Ned Landt Gene 17* 62, 1962.

Submitted July 1 1963
Accepted August 25, 1963

Pædiatric Clinic
Ninnesgasthuis
Amsterdam
The Netherlands

Possible Factors in the Incidence of Coeliac Disease

by J. A. BLACK

This paper is based upon a survey of the incidence of coeliac disease in children born in Glasgow between the beginning of 1941 and the end of 1955. In addition to the recording of the actual number of cases, a detailed analysis of the case records was made to see whether any genetic or environmental factors could be discovered which might affect the incidence of coeliac disease. The survey was finished in September 1961 though it would have been desirable to have continued longer in order to include as many cases as possible with a late onset, but as there were only 4 cases in the whole survey with an onset over the age of 6 years it is unlikely that many were omitted on this account. For more complete information on the trend in incidence a further figure was obtained for children born in 1856 which has not otherwise been considered in the analysis.

Few surveys of the incidence of coeliac disease have been made but Davidson & Fountain's [3] study and that of Carter, Sheldon & Walker [1] provide some evidence with which to compare the present results. Davidson & Fountain collected data from the special ration returns for cases of steatorrhea and coeliac disease during the war and the immediate post war period and concluded that there was

a higher incidence of coeliac disease in Scotland than in England and that the incidence was highest in the West of Scotland. Carter *et al.* gave an estimate of the incidence of coeliac disease in the London area during the period 1952-March 1958. In neither of these studies is a direct figure for the variations in annual incidence of the disease available. Davidson & Fountain gave figures for England and Wales for 1943-1948 and for Scotland for 1940-1948 but as the authors point out, it is probable that many factors, other than purely clinical ones, prompted the completion of a request for special rations for a case of coeliac disease so that the observed fluctuations in applications from year to year cannot be considered as reflecting genuine alterations in the incidence of the disease. Davidson & Fountain regarded the figures for 1946-1948 as being the most reliable and it is these figures which have been used in Table 1 in calculating the incidence for England and Wales, and for Scotland as a whole. The data of Carter *et al.* were analysed primarily from the point of view of family concentration and refer only to the overall incidence for the whole period studied, their estimate is an indirect one based upon comparison with the known incidence of pyloric stenosis.

TABLE 1

| Coeliac disease | Congenital heart disease (control group) | Legitimate live births (Illegit. + General Scotland (23)) |
|----------------------|--|---|
| Total number 120 | 140 | |
| Class I & II 43 | 1-3 | 148 |
| Class III 8 | 89.8 | 53 |
| Class IV & V 42.5 | 28 | 316 |

In many respects Glasgow is ideal for a survey of this kind with a population of over a million in which changes due to rehousing outside the city boundaries have been small and contributions to the population from Ireland and from the Highlands and Islands have remained fairly constant during the period under review (Miller & Tivy (11)).

Methods

From a study of the case records it was easy to exclude those living outside the city boundaries at the time of their first attendance at hospital; the discrepancy between the address at the time of birth and at the time of hospital attendance was considered to be small. Since there are only two main paediatric units in Glasgow it seemed reasonable to assume that practically all children with coeliac disease would have attended at some stage in their illness either at the Royal Hospital for Sick Children or at the Paediatric Unit, St Hill's General Hospital, and the record of these two hospitals only were examined.

An attempt was made to record all cases of coeliac disease occurring in children born between the beginning of 1941 and the end of 1955, and resident in Glasgow at the time of their first hospital attendance. The figures so obtained were then considered under the following headings: overall incidence for the

whole period of 15 years, and quinquennial incidence for the three 5-year periods (1941-45, 1946-50 and 1951-55), expressed as ratio to the total number of births for each year. The annual incidence of coeliac disease in children born in each year including 1944 for this purpose was expressed as the number of cases per 10,000 live births as this gave an easier comparison with other sets of figures (Fig. 1). Particular attention in the hospital histories was also paid to the recording of the father's occupation, the early feeding history, the age when mixed feeding was introduced, the age of onset of symptoms of coeliac disease and its relationship to the start of mixed feeding, and to the presence of any relative affected by coeliac disease or similar disorder. Similar data were obtained from a control group of children with congenital heart disease born in Glasgow over the same period from the records of the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Glasgow (Table 1). These control cases were randomly placed within groups according to their years of birth until three groups had been built up having the same numbers in each quinquennium as the cases of coeliac disease. In this way it was hoped to eliminate any bias in class structure due to an attendance at hospital.

As a diagnostic criterion a response to gluten free diet would have been desirable but it was clearly impracticable to subject so many cases (181 accepted cases) to a diagnostic period on a gluten free diet when this was no longer indicated, or where other patients had long since craved to attend hospital and were free of symptoms. It was therefore decided to accept as diagnostic criteria the following points: (1) clinical diarrhoea persisting for longer than 4 weeks, with accompanying anorexia, failure to gain or actual loss of weight during the same period and the usual physical findings of coeliac disease; (2) confirmation of the clinical criteria by any one of the following: (1) stool faecal fat content of 50% or more; (2) a fat retention by balance stool of less than 20%; (3) a vitamin A curve or cholemicron count considered typical of coeliac

COELIAC DISEASE AGE OF ONSET

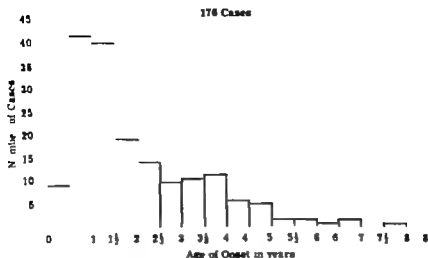


Fig. 1

disease (4) a response to a gluten free diet. The response was assessed by an acceleration of gain in weight and height continued during the giving of a gluten free diet for at least 6 months. Stool fat analysis had been done on 139 cases, fat balances on 2 cases, vitamin A curves and chylomicron curves on 3 cases each, and in the remaining 17 cases there was no biochemical confirmation but there was an acceptable response to a period on a gluten free diet. A gluten-free diet was in fact given an adequate trial in 71 cases and failure to respond was recorded in 9 instances in which there was considerable doubt as to adherence to the diet.

Results

Feeding history

The early feeding history was given in 177 cases, of which 37% were breast fed for 9 months or longer. In the control group (records in 140 cases) only 24% were breast-fed for the same length of time. It is probable that in this instance cases of congenital heart disease are inadequate controls as there is often difficulty in

feeding due to dyspnoea or early admission to hospital, either of which may interfere with the proper establishment of breast feeding. During the national enquiry into "Maternity in Great Britain" [9] a figure of 33% for breast feeding for 9 months or more was obtained for Glasgow so that it seems unlikely that the incidence of breast feeding in cases of coeliac disease was in any way unusual.

Age of onset (Fig. 1)

Of the 181 cases the age of onset was specifically recorded in 176 instances (3 cases had an indefinite onset and in 2 instances the age of onset was not recorded). Eighty-two cases (46%) developed continued symptoms between the ages of 6 months and 18 months and in only 9 cases was there a definite onset before the age of 6 months. There were thus 85 cases (48%) who developed coeliac disease relatively late after the age of 18 months. There was no significant

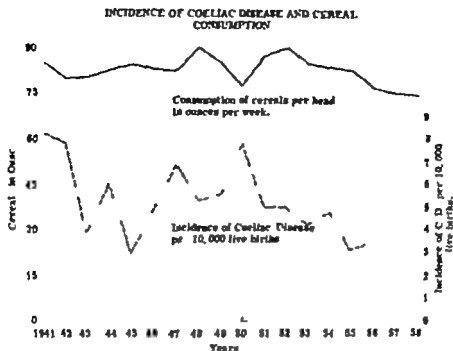


Fig. 2.

difference in the age of onset between the breast-fed and artificially fed groups between the boys and the girls.

Relation to mixed feeding

The average age at introduction of mixed feeding was 7.2 months (controls 6.4 month) the earliest being 2 months. Seventy three per cent of the children started mixed feeding between the ages of 6 months and one year. In 6 cases symptoms started before mixed feeding was introduced, but it is difficult in a retrospective survey to exclude the possibility that cereals were given in the bottle feeds.

Sex incidence

There were 92 males and 80 females giving a ratio of males to females of 1.03:1 which differs little from the expected

ratio of 1.00:1 for this period. The average age of onset was the same in both males and females.

Social class incidence

The data for the father's occupation were given in 130 cases. Where more than one case occurred in a family this was counted as one case. All cases where the only record was of war time service were excluded. The incidence in the different social classes (Registrar General's Classification, taking Classes I and II together and IV and V together) was compared with the control group of children with congenital heart disease which appears to be reasonable representative for the class structure of the total legitimate births for Scotland (Registrar General for Scotland [23]). The figures given above

TABLE 2.

| Region | Date | Incidence | Source |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| England and Wales | 1946-48 | 1 8120 | Davidson & Fountain [3] recalculated |
| London area | 1952-March | 1 2000- | |
| | 1938 | 1 6000 | Carter <i>et al.</i> [1] |
| Scotland | 1946-48 | 1 2584 | Davidson & Fountain recalculated |
| <i>Scottish regions</i> | | | |
| East | 1942-48 | 1 8176 | |
| North | 1942-48 | 1 14,826 ^a | Davidson & Fountain recalculated |
| S. East | 1946-48 | 1 3420 | |
| West | 1942-48 | 1 1851 | |
| Glasgow | 1941-55 | 1 1778 | |
| Glasgow | 1941-46 ^b | 1 1773 | |
| Glasgow 5-year periods | 1941-45 | 1 1734 | Present survey |
| | 1946-50 | 1 1608 | |
| | 1951-55 | 1 2061 | |

^a The numbers involved are too small to be significant.

^b Dates of birth as opposed to year of notification, for comparison with preceding figures for West of Scotland 1942-1948.

(Table 1) show a relatively low incidence of coeliac disease in Classes I & II and a high incidence in Classes IV & V.

Variations in annual incidence (Fig. 2)

The annual incidence expressed as cases per 10,000 live births showed the highest figures for 1941 with a slight falling off in 1943-45 then an increase for 1947-50 followed by a fairly steady fall till 1956 the last year recorded.

Since one of the major alterations affecting the civil population during the wars and immediate post war period was in the diet, the figures for the annual incidence of coeliac disease have been plotted on the same graph as those for the average weekly consumption of cereal products for each year (Ministry of Food [1-15]; Ministry of Agriculture Fisheries and Food [16-1]). There is, however, no good relationship between the two sets of figures, apart from the fact that both the

incidence of coeliac disease and the consumption of cereals are declining.

The incidence in Glasgow compared to that in other areas (Table 2)

The overall incidence for the period 1941 to the end of 1955 was 1 case per 1778 live births, or for each quinquennial period, 1941-45 1 case per 1734 live births 1946-50 1 case per 1608 live births and for 1951-55 1 case per 2061 live births. Since the only figures with which these can be compared are those given by Davidson & Fountain [3] for the ration returns for the West of Scotland for the years 1942-48 the survey figures have also been calculated, as shown in Table 2, for the period 1941-46, referring in this case to the years of birth. The two sets of figures show a reasonable correspondence suggesting that the methods used are probably reliable and that the very high incidence in the West of Scotland

TABLE 3. *Cereal consumption in ounces per head per week*

| Year | Class A | Class B | Class C | Class D |
|------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1931 | 71.9 | 63.5 | 86.8 | 83.5 |
| 193 | 4.2 | 82.1 | 60.9 | 88.4 |
| 1933 | 69.3 | 78.9 | 83.6 | 87... |
| 1934 | 70.4 | 78.3 | 81.0 | 84.5 |
| 1935 | 72.1 | 78.8 | 83.9 | 82.8 |
| 1936 | 69.1 | 75.3 | 79.4 | 77.6 |
| 1937 | 65.1 | 73.5 | 75.1 | 6.1 |
| 1938 | 63.4 | 71.9 | 73.7 | 74.4 |

1 These classes correspond roughly to the Registrar General's Classes follows, II(A), II(B), II(C), IV & V (D).

2. 1931-1932 (Ministry of Food, 1933 and 1934) 1933-1938 (Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, 1935-1936, 1937-1938-1939)

(Glasgow can be considered as representative of the West of Scotland) compared to other parts of Scotland and to England and Wales is correct.

The relatively low incidence in the Eastern part of Scotland makes this area more comparable to England and Wales and it is probably relevant that this is a wheat-growing area while in the West of Scotland and also in the North Western region of England wheat has never been grown in any significant amount and oats have always been the predominant cereal. This is considered further in the discussion.

Discussion

In this survey in contrast to most other series (Hardwick [6] Carter *et al* [1]) coeliac disease did not appear to be commoner in girls than in boys and it does not seem likely that sex differences are an important factor in the development of the disease. Nor was there evidence of any difference in the incidence or age of onset between those children who had been breast fed and those who had been artificially fed so that the type of feeding during infancy also seems unimportant.

In considering the great variation in the age of onset of coeliac disease it is clear that in many cases symptoms did not appear until some years after the introduction of wheat cereal products into the diet. There must therefore be other factors, apart from the consumption of wheat products which determine the development of coeliac disease at least in a proportion of cases. Infections, such as infantile gastroenteritis may play some part in precipitating the onset of coeliac disease but there is no direct evidence on this point though it is true that the incidence of infantile gastroenteritis has declined greatly since 1947 as judged from the number of reported deaths (Medical Officer of Health Glasgow [10]). In a retrospective survey it is in any case impossible to distinguish with any certainty between gastroenteritis and an onset of coeliac disease associated with severe diarrhoea and vomiting as in a coeliac crisis.

Another possible explanation for the cases of coeliac disease with a late onset is that some children can tolerate small amounts of gluten in their diet and develop symptoms only when they take large amounts. This suggests that there should be an increased incidence in a community which consumes large amounts of wheat products. The increased incidence in social classes IV & V which have a greater average consumption of cereal products than the higher income groups (Table 3) would tend to confirm this view though the classifications used by the Registrar General and the Ministry of Food are not strictly comparable and no figures are available before 1931.

Though the figures obtained in this

survey suggest a relatively high incidence of coeliac disease in the West of Scotland, there is as yet insufficient comparable information about other parts of Great Britain for one to reach any conclusions which would throw further light on the factors which may govern geographical variations in the incidence of this disease.

Summary

A survey of the incidence of coeliac disease in Glasgow between 1941 and 1950

is presented, and certain factors relating to the incidence and onset of coeliac disease are discussed.

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank Professor Stanley Graham, Professor J. H. Hutchison, Dr Ian Riley and Dr E. H. Fox for allowing me access to their case records. I am particularly indebted to Professor Graham and to Dr Cedric Carter for their help in the preparation of this paper.

References

1. CARTER, C., SWILDHAR, W. and WALKER, G.: The inheritance of coeliac disease. *Ann Hum Genet* 23 255, 1959.
2. CLARK, J. G. D. *Præstoria Europe: The Economic Basis* pp. 108-109 Methuen and Co, London, 1932.
3. H. VIDARSEN, L. B. F. and FORSTADT, J. R.: Incidence of the sprue syndrome with some observations on the natural history. *Brit Med J* 1 1187 1960.
4. DYCKE, W. K.: Coeliac disease: A study of the damaging effect of some cereals (especially wheat), caused by a factor outside of their starch, on the fat absorption of children with coeliac disease. *Int Congr Paediat* 1950 117.
5. DYCKE, W. K., WELSKER, H. A. and VAN D. HANDEL, J. H.: Coeliac disease II: the presence in wheat of factor having deleterious effect in cases of coeliac disease. *Acta Paediat* (Stockh), 43 34, 1953.
6. HANDEL, C.: Progress in coeliac disease: review of seventy-three cases. *Arch Dis Child*, 14 379, 1939.
7. HORDER, DODDS, C. and MORMANT, T. *The History of Bread*, pp. 4-5, Constable London, 1954.
8. KITCHER, A. H. and PARRISH, R. *The Scotsman's Food*, pp. 6 and 38, E.S. Livingstone Edinburgh, 1949.
9. MATERNITY IN GREAT BRITAIN Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists and the Population Investigation Committee Oxford University Press, 1948.
10. MEDICAL OFFICER OF HEALTH, GLASGOW. *Annual Reports*, 1941-1949 1955 and 1960.
11. MILLER, R. and TAYLOR, J. (editors): *The Glasgow Region*, p. 284 T & A. Constable Edinburgh, 1938.
12. MINISTRY OF FOOD: *First Report of the National Food Survey Committee. The Urban Working Class Diet 1940-1949* Table 12, p. 20 and Table 65, p. 53. H.M. Stationery Office 1951.
13. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1950* Appendix E, page 110. H.M. Stationery Office 1951.
14. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1951* Table 23, page 32, H.M. Stationery Office 1952.
15. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1952*. Table 19, page 30, H.M. Stationery Office, 1953.
16. MINISTRY AGRICULTURE, FISHERIES AND FOOD, Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1953*. Table 35, p. 37 1955.
17. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1954*. Table 30, page 38. H.M. Stationery Office 1954.
18. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1955* Table 18, page 25. H.M. Stationery Office, 1957.
19. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1956*. Table 19, page 32. H.M. Stationery Office 1958.
20. — Annual Report of the National Food Survey Committee. *Domestic Food Consumption and Expenditure 1957* Table 17, page 34. H.M. Stationery Office 1959.
21. — Annual Report of the National Food

TABLE 1 *Certain and probable cases of Pendred's syndrome reported in Hearing studies*

| Authors | No. of families | No. of cases |
|--|-----------------|------------------|
| Hanschler <i>et al.</i> (1961) | 1 | 3 |
| Batesakis & Nishiyama (1961) | 4 | 6 |
| Brain (1967) | 5 | 1 |
| Decourt <i>et al.</i> (1963) | 1 | 3 |
| Derackmaker (1956) | 1 | 3 |
| Elman (1958) | 1 | 4 |
| Fishman <i>et al.</i> (1960) | 1 | 4 |
| Fraser, Morgan & Trotter (1961) ^a | 7 | 113 |
| Friedlieb (1951) | 5 | 5 |
| Harnack von Horn & Lenz (1961) | 8 | 9 |
| Hopkins & Guikler (1949) | 1 | 8 |
| Johnson (1959) | | 12 |
| Kortaa <i>et al.</i> (1960) | 1 | 3 |
| Lindqvist (1945) | 1 | 18 |
| McGur, Hatch von & Clement (1959) | 3 | 5 |
| Pendred (1894) | 1 | 2 |
| Thieme (1957) | 1 | 4 |
| Thould & Reichen (1961) | 1 | 23 |
| | | 228 ^d |

Including four cases from 1 families earlier reported by Elman and Thieme respectively.

^b Including five cases from 12 families earlier reported by Brain.

^c Occurrence of goitre in large materials of congenital deafness.

^d Excluding cases reported twice.

But not extrathyroidal iodine (BPI) was done according to the method described by Man, Kydd & Peters (22).

Thyroid uptake test were done by the conventional technique. Ambersil, Ima Beam 400 was used for the separation in the determination of PBIU.

Perchlorate test (23) (or 123 on some occasion) was administered orally with the patient in the fasting state. The activity over the neck was measured during 5-min interval at interval of 10-15 min test. After one hour the subject was given 400-400 mg of potassium perchlorate dissolved in water and the thyroid activity was followed for a further hour. The values obtained were not corrected for extrathyroidal activity.

Pure-tone audiometry was performed with an Amplivox audiometer. The hearing defect was located with the aid of recruitment test including the stapedius reflex test and Bekesy audiometry.

Results

Incidence

In the medical examination of 90 deaf children at the three special schools mentioned above four (Cases 11-14) were found to have goitre, all being cases of Pendred's syndrome. In one (Case 9) the disorder had been known previously. These three schools serve the provinces of Skåne, Blekinge, Småland and Öland in southern Sweden with a total population of about 1.7 million, of which about 234 000 are of school age (7-15 years). The proportion of school children at special schools for deaf children is thus about 0.04%. The number of school children with hearing defects but attending ordinary schools is about three times as large as those at special schools; these children were not examined.

The number of known cases of Pendred's syndrome in school children is five including one (Case 8) the sister of Case 9 who is attending an ordinary school but in a special class for children with hearing defect. The minimum incidence of Pendred's syndrome in school children in this region is thus roughly 1/40 000.

Familial history

There were seven single cases and five familial cases; the latter distributed between two sibships (Table 3). The families with a single case were small with only one or two children in the family.

TABLE 2 Clinical data in 12 patients with goitre and hearing loss

| Case | Sex | Age in years | Height/ weight cm/kg | Age in years at recognition of | | Character of goitre | Hypothy- roidism | Course and remarks |
|----------|-----|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| | | | | Hearing defect | Goitre | | | |
| Y L. | F | 9 | 133/37 | Infancy | 9 | Moderate smooth | 0 | Diagnosed as Pendred' syndrome at 9 yrs. but cytological aspira- tion biopsy at 11 yrs. of age re- vealed lymphocytic thyroiditis as the cause of the goitre. < ther- apy yet. |
| L. S. F. | F | 13 14 | 146/33 144/38 | Infancy | 9 | Large nodular adenoma lobe | 0 + | Referred as (?) thyrotoxicosis. Six months later she felt tired and cold. Symptom-free and disap- pearance of goitre on 0.15 mg thy- roxin. |
| I. A. P. | F | 14½ | 164/44 | Infancy | 11 | Large nodular | 0 | Goitre disappeared on 0.3 mg thy- roxin but recurred yrs. later. Decrease of goitre on thyroxin 0.25 mg. |
| L. G. O. | M | 10½ 12 | 148/28 | Infancy | cong. | Moderate, a little nodular | 0 | Goitre revealed at follow up of neonatal goitre. Unchanged status for 2 yrs. without therapy. |
| S. A. A. | F | 16 24 | 168/0 | Infancy | 2 | Large highly nodular | 0 + | Strumectomy at 16, 22 and 26 yrs. of age. Myxedema after the last operation. On thyroxin no hypo- thyroid symptoms and no recur- rence of goitre. |
| G. S. S. | M | 16 22 | 162/63 | 2 | cong | Large nodular adenoma L. lobe | 0 + | Strumectomy at 15 and 24 yrs. of age. Hypothyroid after last operation, thyroxin was institu- ted, well since then. |
| T. A. S. | M | 14 21 | 172/64 | 2 | 2 | Large smooth | 0 | Strumectomy at 14 and 20 yrs. of age. Total thyroidectomy at 26 yrs. due to suspected malignancy. Histopathologic diagnosis of pa- pillary thyroid cancer. Is well on thyroxin 3 yrs. after operation. |
| V. R. W. | F | 11 | 142/39 | 2 | 1 | Large smooth | 0 | On thyroxin, regression of goitre. |
| M. W. | M | 8 | 124/28 | Infancy | 2 | Large smooth | 0 | Slight mental retardation, IQ 80. Abnormal EEG. Goitre regres- sion on thyroxin. |
| A. I. K. | F | 18 | 161/65 | 2 | 11 | Large smooth | + | Moderate hypothyroidism. Nor- mal skeletal age. Behavior ab- normal. IQ < 70. EEG abnormal. On 0.3 mg thyroxin no hypothy- roid signs and decrease of goitre. |
| L. I. P. | F | 18 | 152/47 | Infancy | 10 | Large slightly nodular | 0 | On 0.2 mg thyroxin regression of goitre but the thyroid still enlar- ged after treatment for one year. |
| B. R. | F | 14 | 135/50 | Infancy | 11 | Large nodular adenoma lobe | 0 | After 7 months on 0.3 mg thy- roxin only small adenoma in the right lobe palpable. |

TABLE 3 Family histories in 10 patients with goitre and hearing loss. Cases No. 1-10. Pendred's syndrome

| Family no. | Case No. | Sex | No. of sibs or other in sibship | Goitre and hearing loss | | Goitre only | | Hearing loss only | | Remark | | |
|------------|----------|-----|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------|-------------------|------|--------|--------|---|
| | | | | Parent | Other rela. | Sibs | Parents | Other rela. | Sibs | | Parent | Other rela. |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | 1 | F | 1 | - | - | - | + | + | - | - | ++ | The patient has known deafness. Mother given an iodine deficiency test. A maternal relative operated for thyrotoxicosis. Hearing defect in four maternal relatives. |
| II | | F | 1/2 | - | - | - | - | + | - | + | - | Parent 1 has known F. of hearing defect. Her mother. Paternal ear goitre. |
| III | 3 | F | 1/1 | - | - | - | - | ++ | - | - | - | Three maternal relatives goitre (1 thyrotoxicosis). |
| IV | 4 | M | 1/2 (half-sib) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | |
| V | 5 | F | 1/6 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | Brother died 18 yrs. of age in an accident; treated for thyroid disease but cause unknown. |
| | 6 | M | 5/6 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | |
| | 7 | M | 6/6 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | |
| VI | 8 | F | 1/1 | - | - | - | + | ++ | - | + | ++ | See special pedigree Fig. 1 |
| | 9 | M | 1/2 | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | |
| VII | 10 | F | 1/1 | - | - | - | + | - | - | - | - | Mother operated for thyrotoxicosis. |
| VIII | 11 | F | 1/1 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | |
| IX | 12 | F | 1/1 | - | - | - | - | ++ | - | - | - | One paternal relative and maternal relative operated for thyrotoxicosis. Two maternal relatives operated for hyperparathyroidism. |

The parents of one patient were first cousins. There was no endemic goitre in the area where the patient lived. The combination of goitre and deafness occurred in only one generation. On the other hand goitre without deafness was rather prevalent in previous generations and was present in five of the eight families with Pendred's syndrome, and several members of three of the families had goitre (Table 3). Thyrotoxicosis had been diagnosed in four and the other relatives probably had non-toxic goitres available

information was not sufficient to warrant a firm diagnosis. One of the single cases (Case 1) had not Pendred's syndrome but lympho-epithelial thyroiditis. The incidence of goitre in the family of this girl did not differ from that in the rest of the material.

Other types of hearing defect, otosclerosis and presbycusis, occurred in one family; the pedigree in Fig. 1. Apart from this family and a father with acquired hearing defect and belonging to another family there were no relatives of patients with Pendred's syndrome with known

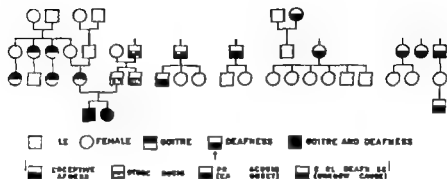


Fig. 1. Pedigree of Family VI.

hearing defects. On the other hand, maternal relatives of the girl with thyroiditis probably had a hereditary type of hearing loss, but the information was too meagre to be conclusive.

Hearing loss and hearing tests

The hearing defect was suspected during the first 2 years of life and was probably congenital. Judging from the histories of a few cases hearing had been somewhat better during the first year of life than later. Most of the patients had a limited vocabulary and speech difficulties.

The hearing loss was perceptive greater for high tones than for low ones. The results of the hearing tests are given in Table 4 and the audiograms in Fig. 2. The audiograms showed symmetrical lesions though with small side differences in some patients. Five of the Fendred cases were deaf. In some cases the hearing defect was almost complete on one side and partial on the other. The hearing defect in the three adult sibs was moderate but

with thyroiditis did not differ from that in the Fendred cases.

Recruitment was demonstrable in four cases.

Goitre and thyroid status

The goitre was often first noticed at about 10 years (Table 2). In two cases the goitre was visible at birth. In one of them the goitre regressed spontaneously during the first year of life and was thought to

TABLE 4. Hearing tests.

| Case | Average hearing loss in db at 500-2000 cps | | Recruitment |
|------|--|------|------------------|
| | right | left | |
| 1 | Deaf | Deaf | - |
| 2 | Deaf | 67 | + |
| 3 | 73 | Deaf | + |
| 4 | Deaf | Deaf | - |
| 5 | 21 | 43 | Not investigated |
| 6 | 25 | 30 | |
| 7 | 29 | 33 | |
| 8 | Deaf | 83 | + |
| 9 | 85 | Deaf | |
| 10 | Deaf | Deaf | |
| 11 | | | Not investigated |

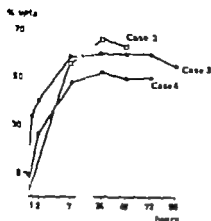


Fig. 3. Iodine uptake tests in Cases 1-3 showing the rapid accumulation of radiiodine.

of three cases with Pendred's syndrome. The accumulation of radiiodine was rapid and the maximal uptake abnormally large. The conversion rate in these three cases was high and PBI^{131} was raised in two and normal in one. A characteristic positive perchlorate response is illustrated in Fig. 4. The range of variation of the outcome of the perchlorate test was remarkably wide, the decrease in uptake ranging from about 40% (excluding the value of the patient not in fasting state) to 0% (average 3%). Perchlorate tests performed in the parents of the family VI were normal.

Pathology

The surgically removed goitres had a nodular character. Microscopically the follicle lining cells were high and of active appearance. The follicles were often small and contained scanty or no colloid. The epithelium sometimes showed nuclear polymorphism and papillary infoldings. However, a papillary tumor was not suspected except at the last tracheotomy in Case 1 when nodules of thyroid tissue

were found cranial to the thyroid mass. These nodules had mainly the same microscopic appearance as the goitre itself but the papillary changes were more pronounced. The nodules were interpreted as lymph node metastases of a highly differentiated papillary thyroid cancer (Fig. 5), but on check examination of the histopathologic section which was prompted by the clinical diagnosis of Pendred's syndrome the picture was considered not to be malignant. No blood vessel invasion could be seen. The epithelial cells had a high degree of maturity and showed no mitoses. No metastases were found in the numerous lymph nodes which were removed at the neck dissection.

Other signs and symptoms

Mild to moderate mental retardation of unknown cause was noted in two of the cases. The perinatal history was non-contributory. The electroencephalogram showed unspecific abnormalities.

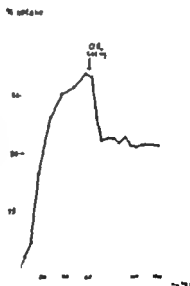


Fig. 4. A characteristic perchlorate response in Pendred's syndrome (Case 1).



Fig. 8. Histologic appearance of the goitre at the last strumectomy in Case 7. *A* The goitre has papillomatous structure similar to that of highly differentiated papillary thyroid carcinoma. *B* The epithelial cells have highly regular appearance as in papillary adenoma. 108.

Therapy and course

Substitution therapy was necessary in the sibs with recurrent goitres and in the

to prevent further growth of the goitres, such treatment was also indicated in the euthyroid subjects with an iodination

Individual data on the response to therapy and the further course of the disease are given in Table 2. Thyroxin led to a rapid and marked decrease of the goitres, some disappeared almost completely. In the adult sibs hearing was somewhat better than when they were in the severely hypothyroid state but otherwise thyroxin had no effect on the hearing ability.

Discussion

Diagnosis

In any area without endemic goitre the diagnosis of Pendred's syndrome should be considered in every patient with goitre and hearing loss. The presence of deafness combined with goitre in sibs strongly supports the diagnosis. In single cases the diagnosis has to be proved by a positive perchlorate test and a hearing test showing a perceptive type of hearing loss. It might otherwise be an incidental association of goitre of any cause and hearing loss as in Case 1 in which lymphocytic thyroiditis occurred in a girl with early deafness. However in view of the wide range of variation of the results of the perchlorate tests a negative perchlorate test would not exclude Pendred's syndrome with certainty. Frazer, Morgan & Trotter reported the decrease of thyroid activity to range from 15 to 80% and occasionally to give equivocal results [13]. A thyroid biopsy may sometimes be necessary to exclude the possibility of a coexisting hearing loss and Hashimoto's disease in which a positive perchlorate test may be encountered [4]. Pendred's syndrome is distinguishable from endemic cretinism with goitre and deafness by the absence of cretinoid signs by positive perchlorate test

and by its appearance as a recessively inherited disease in areas without endemic goitre.

There were seven single cases in the present material. Six of them had a positive perchlorate response and were diagnosed as Pendred's syndrome. The remaining case was at first interpreted as Pendred's syndrome but as the perchlorate response was normal thyroid biopsy was done and revealed diffuse lymphocytic thyroiditis. Since no thyroid biopsy was done in the other single cases and since no search was made for thyroid antibodies the diagnosis of Pendred's syndrome was not quite unobjectionable though very probable. There was, however, no reason to doubt the diagnosis in the girl with parental consanguinity and in the boy with neonatal goitre. The high incidence of single cases in our material seems to be due to the small number of sibs (Table 3).

Perchlorate tests were not performed in the three adult sibs because they were undergoing treatment with thyroid hormones. The early onset of goitre in sibs, repeated relapses of goitre after strumectomy and the microscopical appearance of the goitres were evidence of some disturbance of the synthesis of thyroid hormones, an error presumably of the same character as in other cases of familial nonendemic goitre and hearing loss.

Incidence

The incidence of four cases of Pendred's syndrome among 90 deaf school children stresses the necessity of careful examination of the thyroid in deaf children. The minimum estimate of the frequency of Pendred's syndrome in school children in southern Sweden roughly

1/50 000 is in good agreement with Trotter's assessment of 1.5-3.0 per 100 000 inhabitants.

Genetics

The inheritance of Pendred's syndrome is due to an autosomal recessive gene [8, 1, 37]. The occurrence of consanguinity between unaffected parents reported previously in three families [1, 8, 14] and in one family in the present material is consistent with this mode of inheritance. In Deromaker's family three out of 14 sibs were affected [8], an expected distribution for a recessive disorder. In two families the syndrome has appeared in more than one generation, but in these families both parents had the disease [12, 19]. The offspring of one family had congenital hypothyroidism [18], which is difficult to explain from a pure genetic point of view but might be ascribed to an aggravation of the condition by intrauterine factors secondary to the mother's thyroid dysfunction. In the Danish family reported by Johnsen [19] goitre and deafness appeared not only in the parents and their children, but also in two offspring of one of the children. This suggests the possibility of another mode of inheritance in this family which was atypical also in other respects, in that most affected members had low PBI levels and some were clearly hypothyroid.

The strong association of goitre and hearing loss in affected sibs has been taken as evidence for the existence of a single gene defect or of a closely linked double gene defect responsible for the thyroid dysfunction and the hearing defect [14, 37]. On the other hand, thyroid disease without hearing loss was fairly common

among relatives in earlier generations though nothing suggested that the thyroid dysfunction was of the same type. Perchlorate tests in presumed heterozygotes have been negative [13] as in the parents of one family studied in the present material. The occurrence of thyroid disorders in relatives is common also in other kinds of thyroid disease which indicates the existence of a genetic factor of varying and often reduced penetrance. However, Pendred's syndrome presents itself clearly as a recessive. It seems that the presence of such a recessive gene causing a distinct thyroid disorder in homozygotes would also favour the development of other kinds of thyroid disease in heterozygotes.

A positive perchlorate or thiocyanate test is characteristic of one particular type of familial goitrous cretinism [15, 26, 30, 33] in which almost all activity is discharged from the thyroid upon blocking of the thyroid trapping mechanism, and in which in contradistinction to Pendred's syndrome the thyroid has no ability to synthesize thyroxine [15, 34]. As both diseases are transmitted by recessive genes, their gene defects cannot be identical because of the clear clinical and biochemical differences between them.

Positive perchlorate tests have been found not only in Pendred's syndrome and in the familial goitrous cretinism discussed, but also in some cases of Hashimoto's thyroiditis [24], in deaf-mutes without goitre [1], and in some patients with colloid nodular goitre and a history of goitre in the family [8, 11]. The pathogenesis of the iodide discharge in Hashimoto's disease is obscure but is probably acquired. The response in deaf-mutes

without goitre need further investigation of their thyroid function and confirmation of the finding in other geographical areas.

The thyroid dysfunction in these goitrous patients with a strong family history of goitre and a positive thiocyanate test [6-11] cannot be distinguished from that in Pendred's syndrome. This may indicate that one and the same gene defect is responsible for the thyroid dysfunction in both conditions and thereby support the hypothesis of a double gene defect in Pendred's syndrome. However the biochemical processes necessary for the iodination in the thyroid are not properly understood [25] and there may be a variety of abnormalities capable of producing a positive perchlorate or thiocyanate test. In addition the thiocyanate test was positive in consecutive generations in one of the families reported [11] and in another family there was a substantial discrepancy between PBI and BBI [6].

Pathology

The often intense hyperplasia of the follicular epithelial cells has aroused suspicion of malignancy and thyroid carcinoma has sometimes been considered [9 and 33]. In his study of this problem Smith [34] however could not find reliable signs of carcinoma in any of these cases and looked there: till no case of Pendred's syndrome in which thyroid changes considered malignant has given rise to metastases. The difficulties in the histologic diagnosis is documented by the findings in Case 7 of the present material.

The intense follicular hyperplasia is probably due to an increased secretion of

in thyroid hormone synthesis. Indirect evidence of the goitre provoking effect of TSH is the rapid regression of goitre on substitution therapy with thyroid hormones.

The ear and larynx

The hearing defect was of the same type in all our cases but it varied in severity in that it was milder in family 3 than in the rest of the present material. This is in accordance with Fraser, Morgans & Trotter [1] who found the extent of the hearing loss to range from total deafness to losses which could be corrected by use of hearing aid.

The demonstration of the recruitment phenomenon in four cases indicates that the lesion in these cases is localized to the cochlea. In normal subjects or in patient with a hearing defect due to retrocochlear lesions the loudness with which the tone is perceived varies with the intensity of the tone. Cochlear lesion on the other hand are characterized by a disproportionately high increase of the loudness with intensity. This recruitment was demonstrable by means using the difference in the threshold level necessary for registration of changes in the intensity of the sound by Békésy audiometry and by examination of the efferent activity of the stapedius reflex. The recruitment test are unreliable in very severe hearing losses as in Cases 3 and 4. The pathogenesis of the cochlear lesion is unknown but it is apparently not secondary to thyroid hypofunction.

The vestibular organ also seem to be affected since the response to caloric stimulation has been found to be diminished [12, 13, 16, 19].

Thyroid function

In the normal thyroid anions such as ClO and SCN blocking the iodide-concentrating mechanism of the thyroid [38-39] causes no measurable decrease of thyroid radioactivity at radioiodine tests. The amounts of free iodide in the thyroid being very small owing to a rapid incorporation of iodide into organic linkage [5]. The perchlorate response in Pendred syndrome demonstrates an outflow of considerable amounts of labelled iodide from the thyroid. This means that the thyroid content of free iodide was abnormally large indicating that the rate of organic binding of iodine was abnormally low [25]. The underlying error is unknown. One theory supposes the existence of an extrathyroidal metabolic block leading to accumulation of substances interfering with both thyroid function and the auditory organ [14]. There is still no evidence for this theory [37] though the remarkably wide variation in the results of the perchlorate tests might be ascribed to differences in amounts of substances interfering with the iodination process. Another theory supposes a partial peroxidase deficiency [36], but a relative enzyme deficiency can hardly be accepted in homozygotes, especially as loss of peroxidase function satisfactorily explains the total inability to incorporate iodine into organic compounds in the familial goitrous cretinism discussed previously. A third theory assumes a deficiency of some other substance (enzyme?) influencing the rate of the iodination process.

Little is known about the turnover of iodine in the thyroid. In view of the relative defect in organic binding of iodine one might expect the conversion rates to

be subnormal. However the ability to accumulate iodine is not decreased but increased, as shown by the rapid and early increased uptake of iodine in radio-iodine tests. This is probably a thyrotropin effect. It leads to a rapid disappearance of iodine from the blood giving a high conversion rate in persons with only partial impairment of thyroxin synthesis. The few PBI₁₂₅ determinations have given normal or moderately increased values [16-20-23]. The latter indicate that the turnover of incorporated iodine is increased, probably owing to intrathyroidal iodine deficiency secondary to the defect in the organic binding of iodine. Another possibility implicates leakage of nonhormonal iodinated compounds from the thyroid, a mechanism probable in a few cases [16] but hardly usual in Pendred syndrome.

Summary

Twelve patients with goitre and hearing loss were studied. In one girl the goitre was due to chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis and her deafness was familial. The other cases were diagnosed as Pendred's syndrome. Eight cases were seen in children belonging to seven families, and three in adults from one family. The parents of one girl were first cousins. The goitre was neonatal in two but otherwise appeared in early or middle childhood. The hearing loss was detected during the first 5 years of life. It was perceptive in type and severe in six cases deafness was complete. Recruitment phenomenon was demonstrable in four cases suggesting a lesion of the cochlea. Thyroid function was characterized by a defect in the organic binding of iodine as shown by decreased

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head: Jørgen Flåmmand Christensen),
Odense County & City Hospital, Denmark

Metabolic Alkalosis in Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis: Clinical Significance and Treatment¹

by POUL KILDFBERG

The physiological neutrality regulating mechanisms operative under normal as well as pathological conditions tend to establish and secure level of extracellular and intracellular acidity within the range tolerated by the organism. Large pH deviations in either direction may cause the death of the individual possibly by interfering with enzymatic metabolism but in clinical cases it is usually not possible to ascribe to any specific disturbance of acid base metabolism a specific symptomatology, such disturbances being nearly always secondary phenomena accompanied by more or less complicated disorders of the whole water and electrolyte exchange.

However, one single outstanding exception to this rule is the constant hyperventilation of acrotic patients which for many years has proved a valuable diagnostic sign in the recognition of such conditions as coma diabeticum and uremia. Hyperventilation in metabolic alkalosis though since long recognized in infants suffering from hypertrophic pyloric stenosis [1-13, 14] is a clinically less conspicuous feature of neutrality regulation and has not until recently attracted special attention. However, the physiological significance of this phenomenon has been

amply verified [18-22] and it possibly bearing upon risk and prognosis in pyloric stenosis will be considered below. T-tetanic convulsion (gas tric tetany) often experienced under experimental conditions [11-22, 24] appears to be a relatively rare occurrence in clinical alkalosis. Further, more attempts have been made to define renal disorders due to metabolic alkalosis [4, 7, 23, 40], but no clear distinction appears to have been made between functional renal changes, secondary to an altered fluid-electrolyte status, and permanent renal damage and the question of specificity has mostly been left unanswered. In his large survey of clinical acid base abnormalities Miller [25] found no evidence suggesting that these disturbances should give rise to any particular clinical symptom except that a reduced pH is accompanied by hyperventilation.

Because of these relationships and because increasing severity of acid base disturbances is very often paralleled by increasing dehydration and corresponding aggravation of other electrolyte disorders, present it is difficult to evaluate the clinical

¹This investigation was supported by grants from "Fonden for Børns Sygepleje" and "Arbejdernes Faglige Udvalg".

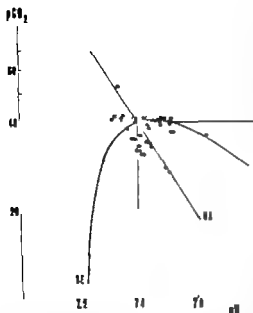


Fig. 1. Disturbances of neutrality regulation occurring in infants and children admitted because of vomiting.

Solid dots. Values obtained on admission from 29 infants with pyloric stenosis (diagnosis confirmed at operation in 24 cases).

Open circles. Values obtained on admission from 48 patients coming from other causes (including dyspepsia, pyuria, nephropathia, diabetic acidosis, cyclic vomiting, rumination, ad renal insufficiency, duodenal obstruction, ileus, epilepsy, encephalitis, and unidentified causes). The two patients showing the highest base excess values suffered from duodenal obstruction (malrotation).

BE = base excess, mEq/l. KA = normal CO_2 absorption line

cal significance of acid-base complications and to define strictly the indications for specific treatment. Whereas the bicarbonate treatment of metabolic acidosis has been a clinical routine measure for many years the treatment of metabolic alkalosis with ammonium chloride to be described below is probably not very commonly used.

In previous papers [18, 19] observations applying to the physiological aspects of

metabolic alkalosis were presented, based upon a study of 90 consecutive cases of hypertrophic pyloric stenosis admitted during the years 1961 and 1962 to the Pediatrics Department, Odense County and City Hospital. In the present article experience gained from this same case material (including 8 later patients) concerning the treatment with ammonium chloride as well as observations relating to other clinical problems will be described.

Methods and Case Material

The acid-base determinations were carried out using the Astrup micro equipment [23, 27, 28]. For a description of the analytical procedure and the case material, the reader is referred to the aforementioned paper [18] and to Table I.

To illustrate the course of acid-base parameters standard diagrammatic scheme was worked out according to the principle proposed by Siggaard Andersen [26] but modified in that the base excess is placed upon the linear scale instead of the pH. In this diagram, deviations of the pH from the line of neutrality approximately equal the sum of the simultaneous deviations of the base excess and the pCO_2 (cf. Fig. 2). Base excess (BE) denotes the titratable acid (negative values) or base of the blood. All base excess values have been recalculated according to the revised base excess curve published by Siggaard Andersen [27].

Results

Diagnosis

Fig. 1 gives acid-base data obtained on admission for 29 infants with pyloric stenosis and 48 patients vomiting conspicuously from other causes. All patients with pyloric stenosis presented with a positive base excess value. The figure demonstrates that metabolic alkalosis is by far more pronounced in pyloric stenosis than in the case of low obstruction or nonobstructive vomit

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head Jørgen Flåmønd Christensen),
Odense County & City Hospital, Denmark

Metabolic Alkalosis in Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis Clinical Significance and Treatment¹

by POUL KILDEBERG

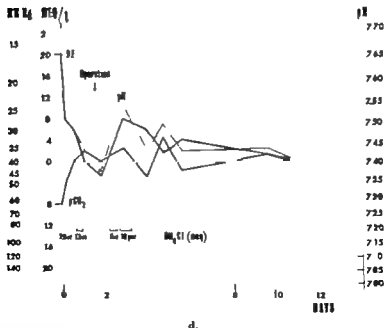
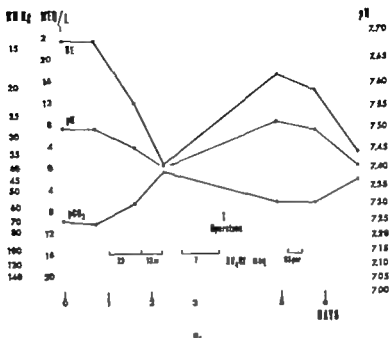
The physiological neutrality regulating mechanisms operative under normal as well as pathological conditions tend to establish and secure levels of extracellular and intracellular acidity within the range tolerated by the organism. Large pH deviations in either direction may cause the death of the individual, possibly by interfering with enzymatic metabolism, but in clinical cases it is usually not possible to ascribe to any specific disturbance of acid base metabolism a specific symptomatology such disturbances being nearly always secondary phenomena accompanied by more or less complicated disorders of the whole water and electrolyte exchange.

However one single outstanding exception to this rule is the constant hyperventilation of acidotic patients which for many years has proved a valuable diagnostic sign in the recognition of such conditions as coma diabeticum and uremia. Hypoventilation in metabolic alkalosis though since long recognized in infants suffering from hypertrophic pyloric stenosis [1 13 15] is a clinically less conspicuous feature of neutrality regulation and has not until recently attracted special attention. However the physiological significance of this phenomenon has been

amply verified [18 33], and its possible bearing upon risks and prognosis in pyloric stenosis will be considered below. Tetanic convulsions (gastro tetany) often experienced under experimental conditions [11 22, 24] appears to be a relatively rare occurrence in clinical alkalosis. Furthermore attempts have been made to define renal disorders due to metabolic alkalosis [4 7 23 40] but no clear distinction appears to have been made between functional renal changes, secondary to an altered fluid-electrolyte status, and permanent renal damage and the question of specificity has mostly been left unanswered. In his large survey of clinical acid-base abnormalities Møller [27] found no evidence suggesting that these disturbances should give rise to any particular single symptom except that a reduced pH is accompanied by hyperventilation.

Because of these relationships, and because increasing severity of acid base disturbances is very often paralleled by increasing dehydration and corresponding aggravation of other electrolyte disorders present it is difficult to evaluate the clinical

¹This investigation was supported by grant from Pøden for lægevidenskabeligt Arbejde i Fyens Stift.



b. Case 24. Not Efficient renal compensation during the first pre-operative day probably due to sufficient administration of sodium and potassium, cf. urine figures and discussion p. 140. XAE ~ net acid excretion in mEq.

Case 16. Note: Well-developed respiratory compensation and marked postoperative alkalosis.

d. Case 14.

TABLE 1

| Case | Sex | Age weeks | Birth weight kg | Weight on adm. kg | Dura- tion of vomit. weeks | Blood values on admission | | | | | Pyloro- tony |
|------|-----|--------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| | | | | | | Base excess mEq/l | Na-N mEq/l | Na-K mEq/l | Na-Cl mEq/l | S-Urrea mg/ 100 ml | |
| 1 | ♂ | 3 | 3.7 | 3.0 | 3 | +17.1 | 144 | 4.4 | 87 | | + |
| 2 | ♂ | 3 | 3.4 | 2.2 | <1 | +1.3 | 130 | 4.6 | 96 | | + |
| 3 | ♂ | 6 | —0 | 2.6 | <1 | +5.4 | 141 | 5.9 | 105 | | + |
| 4 | ♂ | 5 | 2.8 | 3.1 | <1 | +7.0 | 140 | 4.4 | 107 | | |
| 5 | ♂ | 4 | 2.9 | 2.7 | <1 | +2.9 | 143 | 4.6 | 106 | 37 | |
| 6 | ♂ | 8 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 4 | +6.1 | 137 | 3.7 | 106 | 41 | + |
| 7 | ♂ | 8 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3 | +4.9 | 137 | | 101 | | + |
| 8 | ♂ | | 2.8 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | ♂ | 5 | —7 | 2.3 | 2 | +9.5 | 133 | | 82 | | + |
| 10 | ♀ | 7 | 3.4 | 2.4 | 2 | +4.9 | 143 | 4.0 | 88 | 65 | + |
| 11 | ♀ | 8 | 2.2 | 3.0 | 1 | +19.1 | 142 | 3.3 | 4 | 114 | + |
| 12 | ♀ | 3 | 2.7 | 2.3 | 1 | +6.3 | 141 | 4.8 | 87 | 23 | + |
| 13 | ♂ | 5 | 2.8 | 2.3 | 1 | +6.3 | 136 | 4.3 | 88 | 34 | + |
| 14 | ♂ | 3 | 3.5 | 2.9 | | +20.1 | 136 | 3.3 | 78 | 31 | + |
| 15 | ♂ | 4 | 2.1 | —6 | 1 | +23.0 | 133 | 4.2 | 72 | | + |
| 16 | ♀ | 5 | 3.7 | 2.9 | 3 | +14.9 | 135 | 4.5 | 74 | 140 | + |
| 17 | ♂ | 12 | —6 | 4.7 | 6 | +17.9 | 131 | 2.7 | 76 | 47 | + |
| 18 | ♀ | 5 | 3.0 | 2.8 | 1 | +4.2 | 139 | 4.7 | 102 | 18 | + |
| 19 | ♂ | 10 | 4.0 | 3.1 | 4 | +15.0 | 139 | 3.5 | 83 | 58 | + |
| 20 | ♂ | 5 | 2.5 | 2.7 | 1 | +9.8 | 143 | 5.0 | 92 | 83 | |
| 21 | ♀ | 4 | 2.4 | 2.3 | 1 | +5.4 | 143 | 4.7 | 96 | | + |
| 22 | ♀ | 7 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 1 | +7.6 | 144 | 4.4 | 87 | | + |
| 23 | ♂ | 3 | 2.7 | —9 | 3 | +10.2 | 137 | 4.3 | 97 | | + |
| 24 | ♂ | 1 | 2.1 | 2.8 | <1 | +7.2 | 140 | 5.7 | | 53 | + |
| 25 | ♂ | 6 | 4.0 | 4.0 | | +17.6 | 146 | 3.4 | 95 | 70 | + |
| 26 | ♂ | 2 | 3.5 | 3.1 | 1 | +8.1 | 143 | 4.8 | 97 | | + |
| 27 | ♂ | 6 | 2.5 | 2.9 | 3 | +9.4 | 142 | 2.7 | 104 | 73 | |
| 28 | ♂ | 3 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3 | +2.9 | 138 | 5.7 | 111 | | + |

Remarks. Case 1 Convulsions, see text. Case 2. Postmature male infant, transferred from the nursery of the Obstetric Department. Symptoms developed during stay in hospital. The patient recovered without pylorotomy. Case 9 Morbus cordis congenitus (ventricular septal defect). Case 14 Cf Fig. 2d. Case 13 Cf Fig. 2e. Case 16. Continued hemorrhagic vomitings after pylorotomy. Death from sepsis 4th. day postoperatively. Autopsy showed, besides a hypertrophic pylorus and an inadequate pylorotomy a dilated, inflamed esophagus, a thin-walled esophageal diverticle (diameter 15 mm), and purulent phlebitis. Case 17 Complicating pyuria. Pyelograms normal Cf Fig. 2a. Case 25 Cf Fig. 2b.

ing Mild alkalosis may result from vomiting in dyspepsia, diabetic ketoacidosis, pyuria, duodenal obstruction or from cyclic vomiting. Vomiting in renal and adrenal insufficiency was associated with metabolic acidosis. Thus in the case of diagnostic difficulties, significant metabolic alkalosis may be taken as additional evidence in favour of pyloric stenosis, which

probably reflects the fact that only in the presence of gastric retention is protracted vomiting likely to remove from the organism a major fraction of the total gastric output of H

Rather severe secondary metabolic alkalosis has been found to prevail temporarily in patients recovering from compensated respiratory acidosis when the

fall in $p\text{CO}_2$ has preceded the renal adjustment, but this type of alkalosis is not likely to present special clinical problems and is as a rule easily recognized.

Symptoms

As pointed out in the introduction, it is difficult to evaluate clinical alkalosis in terms of specific symptoms in infants suffering alkalosis from continued vomiting. However the constantly occurring postoperative alkalosis, described previously [10], affords an opportunity to observe cases of approximately pure alkalosis in patients usually well hydrated and showing no other gross electrolyte abnormalities. The same applies to the residual alkalosis in patients recovering from respiratory acidosis mentioned above. On repeated occasions, the author has been impressed by the almost complete lack of clinical symptoms in such infants who may feed well, not vomit at all, and appear vigorous and well-being, — even though the pH may have reached 7.55. In most instances, however postoperative alkalosis does not reach severe degrees.

Whereas slight or moderate hypoventilation is very easily overlooked at the clinical examination more pronounced hypoventilation may be indicated by a shallow irregular type of breathing. In several of the patients studied here, hypoventilation was noted on admission, but it was not possible to estimate the level of $p\text{CO}_2$ from the clinical impression. Assessment of the respiratory rate may be possible only by means of the stethoscope but slow respiratory rates may signify hypoventilation.

On admission seven infants (25%) were described as somewhat hypertonic

with stiff movements and occasional twitches but without the signs of Chvostek and Trousseau. In one patient (Case 1 Table 1) two fits of tonic spasms were observed before pylorotomy was carried out. This patient presented with severe alkalosis, but before the first convulsion occurred the acid base status of the blood had become nearly normal (pH 7.45 base excess +6.1 mEq/l, $p\text{CO}_2$ 45 mm Hg). A review of the clinical records of additional 25 infants with pyloric stenosis, admitted during the period 1959–61 likewise failed to disclose any indisputable instance of latent or manifest gastric tetany.

In the author's experience, the alkalotic infant usually (pre- as well as postoperatively) looks pale, i.e. definitely more so than suggested by the actual hemoglobin value this pallor tending to disappear during specific treatment.

Treatment

In all cases of severe metabolic alkalosis and whenever pylorotomy was contemplated in the presence of significant alkalosis, a 167 mEq/l solution (0.9%) of ammonium chloride was administered. Sixteen infants received the ammonium chloride as intravenous infusions. The initial dose was calculated by the formula

$$\text{Dose (mEq)} = 0.3 \times \text{Body Weight (kg)} \times \text{Base Excess} \quad (i)$$

originally developed by Møllengaard & Astrup [25] to give the amount of bicarbonate required to neutralize the extracellular compartment in metabolic acidosis in adults. The calculated dose usually administered in a scalp vein infusion and often mixed with saline or

fluids containing glucose and potassium was infused continuously in the course of 8-20 hours after which residual alkalosis, as well as additional alkalosis due to continued vomiting was treated by further infusions. The response to this treatment has been uniformly prompt and satisfying (Fig. 2, a-d) and by this mode of administration without any side-effects.

In the presence of persistent vomiting and gastric retention administration of NH_4Cl by the oral route is obviously in expedient and usually without significant effect upon the alkalosis (Fig. 2e). Moreover in the patients studied here, oral feedings of NH_4Cl -containing fluids during the pre-operative period often resulted in increasing nausea and more frequent, blood tinged vomitings. Oral administration of NH_4Cl during the immediate post-operative phase should probably be abandoned too.

In auto-experiments, the author found the 167 mEq/l solution of ammonium chloride to be moderately irritating following subcutaneous injection while the addition of equal quantities of Ringer's solution diminished this effect considerably. Tissue damage following subcutaneous application of NH_4Cl in alkalotic infants was not observed. However where continued vomiting, dehydration, and alkalosis call for a safe and fairly short period of pre-operative rehydration and electrolyte therapy the intravenous route is much to prefer. Intraperitoneal injection of ammonium chloride was not attempted, as this is reported to cause severe local irritation in dogs [11].

The administration of calculated doses of ammonium chloride in continuous intravenous infusions covering several hours

was found to cause no harmful side-effects whatsoever. In one case however the intravenous injection of 3.3 mEq of NH_4Cl in the course of 5 minutes in an alkalotic infant (weight 2.5 kg base excess +10.0 mEq/l) resulted in sudden collapse, greyish pallor and irregular breathing. These symptoms subsided spontaneously within one hour and following pylorotomy the patient recovered uneventfully.

Obviously treatment of the alkalosis, as outlined above must be accompanied by correction of the existing losses of water, sodium, and potassium (cf. [10], and discussion p. 140). In the patients described here this was accomplished through the administration of glucose solution (5.5%), sodium chloride (154 mEq/l) and potassium chloride (51 mEq/l). In severely dehydrated patients NaCl , 2-3 mEq/kg/24 hours was infused intravenously during the pre-operative period. In most cases pylorotomy was undertaken 1-3 days after admission.

Discussion

It is an old clinical experience that infants with pyloric stenosis are particularly predisposed to the development of atelectasis and pneumonia and it is only natural to assume that compensatory hyperventilation in alkalotic patients contributes significantly to the pathogenesis of these pulmonary complications. This would mean that control of the alkalosis is important, especially in patients undergoing pylorotomy. Furthermore correction of the alkalosis will facilitate repletion of the body stores of potassium (cf. [1]).

Several studies on the use of ammonium chloride in the treatment of metabolic alkalosis are now available [5, 8, 10,

IE 14 20 39 42]. In 1943 Zintel and co-workers [4] suggested that parenteral administration of ammonium chloride might be used to combat severe metabolic alkalosis, and a few years later Forbes & Erganian [10], verifying this suggestion, pointed out that treatment with neutral saline infusions, advocated by earlier writers [11] with a view to enabling the kidneys to dispose of excess base, can at its best result in slow restoration of neutrality.

In view of the high pK of the ammonium ion (9.1) NH_4^+ can not be expected to engage directly with the blood buffers, but removal of NH_3 from the blood will cause reaction (ii) to proceed from left to right.



As shown by Flake & Karsner [9] and later workers, the liver is capable of removing large quantities of ammonia from the perfusing blood. In the liver ammonia is converted to urea, the over-all reaction being



and it is assumed [10] that reaction (iii) is rate-determining for the therapeutic effect of NH_4Cl in metabolic alkalosis.

With splanchnic blood flow of approximately 40% of the cardiac output [6] and a cardiac minute volume equal to the blood volume a hepatic clearance (per cent/minute) of ammonia of 20% would result if NH_3 were removed completely from the blood perfusing the liver. By means of the expression

$$S_t = 100(1 - C/t)$$

where S_t is the percentage of NH_3 remaining after t minutes and C the hepatic clearance of ammonia it can be calculated that for

$C = 8\%$ (implying a constant 25% removal of NH_3 from the portal blood) the liver will be able to convert one half of the infused NH_3 in nearly 15 minutes and about 80% in half an hour. In view of the results of Flake & Karsner [9] and the fact that in early infancy the cardiac output relative to the blood volume is considerably larger than in adults, a clearance of 5% is probably too low.

Thus, the influence of administered NH_3 upon the acid base status as demonstrated in Fig. 2 may be explained largely as a result of hepatic trapping of ammonia. Because only a small fraction of NH_3 will undergo spontaneous dissociation upon intravenous infusion, and because the Bunsen coefficient of NH_3 for plasma is exceedingly high [16], the resulting pNH_3 will be too low to permit of any significant escape of ammonia through the lungs. NH_3 gaining access to the intracellular compartment reacts with glutamic acid to form glutamine [3, 20]. Removal of ammonia by these means makes possible a quantitative utilization of NH_4Cl by reaction (ii).

The toxic effects of too rapid intravenous injection of ammonium chloride observed in one patient conform with those reported by Forbes & Erganian [10]. In view of the high pK_a of the ammonium ion, the promptness with which toxic symptoms may be produced [34] and the impressive demonstration by Karr & Hendricks [17] that ammonia toxicity depends upon the rate of injection rather than the dose given and bears no relationship to the resulting pH change, it seems fairly certain that the acute signs of ammonia toxicity must be attributed to toxic qualities of the NH_3/NH_4^+ system proper. Whereas gaseous ammonia readily

diffuses through the cell membranes the NH_4^+ ion does not [26], and furthermore it has been shown [41] that the toxicity of ammonia increases rapidly with rising pH of the blood which, according to the laws governing non ionic diffusion [26] facilitates the intracellular accumulation of NH_3 . Thus, the administration of ammonium chloride should probably be initiated with the greatest caution when the need for treatment is most urgent, i.e. in the presence of very high pH values. In view of the needs for simultaneous treatment with potassium, sodium chloride, and glucose, it might be wished to use solutions more concentrated than 167 mEq/l. The author has not found this necessary and the 167 mEq/l solution may be infused with no risk of toxic symptoms.

The formula of Møllergaard & Astrup [25] has proved a reliable guide to a suitable dosage of ammonium chloride but

no case did the initial infusion result in complete restoration of extracellular neutrality [cf. Fig. 1]. Although continued vomiting and the larger extracellular space in infancy partly account for this, the observations presented in Fig. 2b which include fairly complete urine data suggest that in pyloric obstruction the alkalotic volume is not confined to the extracellular compartment. Assuming a daily endogenous production of non-volatile acid of about 4 mEq (cf. postoperative NAE values in the presence of mild acidosis) the quantity of acid retained (and vomited) by this patient during preoperative therapy amounts to roughly 65 mEq i.e. about thrice the amount calculated by formula (1). Actually some vomiting did occur and at the time of operation the patient was slightly acidotic, but still it seems justified

to conclude that, prior to therapy a base existed inside as well as outside the cells.

Recently some interest has been focused on the relationship of chloride deficiency to metabolic alkalosis [2, 31, 33]. In view of current concepts of the renal handling of chloride (i.e. passive ionic transfer) it is difficult in terms of the Brønsted theory to account for any specific influence of chloride balance upon the acid base status. However if correction of a metabolic alkalosis is to occur without changes in the plasma osmolarity the excess bicarbonate must be replaced by reaction independent anion i.e. chloride and a lack of renal compensation of metabolic alkalosis in the presence of chloride depletion teleologically equals a protection of normo-osmolarity preferential to restoration of neutrality. In terms of tubular processes renal failure to correct metabolic alkalosis in a state of chloride depletion [2] as well as increased excretion (reduced reabsorption) of bicarbonate following intravenous infusion of sodium chloride [30] might be explained by the assumption of a proximal competitive reabsorption of Cl^- and HCO_3^- as thoroughly discussed by Krøgh [1]. In pyloric stenosis the concomitant depletion of potassium and sodium is probably equally important in maintaining a positive net acid excretion in spite of prevailing alkalosis [cf. 10].

Clinical consequences of the above considerations appear to be that the dangers of severe metabolic alkalosis may be rapidly and safely alleviated by the intravenous infusion of ammonium chloride whereas permanent recovery from alkalosis seems to depend upon rehydration and depletion of body stores of Na^+ & K^+ .

and Cl. Because specific clinical symptoms of metabolic alkalosis are few and not easily recognized, the acid base status of the blood should be followed closely during pre and postoperative treatment of hypertrophic pyloric stenosis.

Summary

The diagnostic significance and clinical symptoms of metabolic alkalosis in infancy

are discussed on the basis of acid base measurements and clinical observations of 28 infants with hypertrophic pyloric stenosis and a group of patients vomiting from other causes. Experience concerning specific treatment with ammonium chloride is presented, and the rationale of such therapy is discussed in detail.

References

1. AXEL, J. T. Jr and FORBES, H. B.: Congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. *Surgery*, 37 812, 1947.
2. ATKINS, E. L. and SCHWARTZ, W. B.: Factors governing correction of the alkalosis associated with potassium deficiency; the critical role of chloride in the recovery process. *J Clin Invest* 41 218, 1962.
3. HALDWIN, E.: *Dynamic Aspects of Biochemistry* Cambridge 3rd ed. 1957.
4. BRIGGS, E. H. and BRIGGS, M. W.: The status of the kidneys in alkalosis. *JAMA* 164 1282, 1952.
5. BODA EY, H.: Recent advances in parenteral fluid therapy with ammonium chloride and potassium. *Amer J Med Sci*, 218 567 1949.
6. BRADLEY, E. E., ISGELTIN ER, F. J. BRADLEY, H. P. and CRYST, J. J.: The estimation of hepatic blood flow in man. *J Clin Invest*, 33 860, 1953.
7. BURNETT, C. H., BURROWS, B. A. and CONNORS, R. R.: Studies of alkalosis. I. Renal function during and following alkalosis resulting from pyloric obstruction. *J Clin Invest* 29 180, 1950.
8. COOKE, R. E. and CROWLEY, L. G.: Replacement of gastric and intestinal fluid losses in surgery. *New Engl J Med*, 68 637 1932.
9. FINE, C. H. and KASPER, H. T.: The effect of acute destructive lesions of the liver on its efficiency in the reduction of the ammonia content of the blood. *J Biol Chem*, 18 281 1914.
10. FORBES, G. B. and ERGANTAN, J. A.: Parenteral administration of ammonium chloride for alkalosis of congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. *Amer J Dis Child* 12 849, 1916.
11. GAMBLE, J. L. and ROWE, S. G.: The factors in the dehydration following pyloric obstruction. *J Clin Invest* 4 402, 1925.
12. GRACE, W. J. and BARR, D. P.: Complications of alkalosis. *Amer J Med*, 4 331 1948.
13. GRAHAM, B. and MOORE, V.: Changes in the blood chemistry in congenital hypertrophic pyloric stenosis and their clinical significance. *Arch Dis Child*, 4 325 1929.
14. HANLEY, E. and RAMENETSKY, B. R.: Handling of Alkalosis med sendig Hentbik pas Arvovdelas af Ammoniumchlorid og Kalium. *Ugeskr Læg*, 116 771 1944.
15. HARTMAN, A. F.: Acidosis and alkalosis. *Pediatrics*, 9 554, 1948.
16. JACQUES, J. A., PORTER, J. W. and JELTICH, R.: Solubility of ammonia in human plasma. *J Appl Physiol* 11 235, 1950.
17. KARR, V. V. and HENDRICKS, E. L.: The toxicity of intravenous ammonium compounds. *Amer J Med Sci* 218 302, 1949.
18. KILDEBERG, P.: Respiratory compensation in metabolic alkalosis. *Acta Med Scand* 76 515, 1962.
19. KILDEBERG, P.: Metabolic alkalosis in hypertrophic pyloric stenosis. Its nature and quantitative aspects. *Dan Med Bull*, in print.
20. KREBS, H. A.: Metabolism of amino-acids: deamination of amino-acids. *Biochem J* 29 1650 1935.
21. KUCHROFF, P.: Handling of alkali mortalions by the kidney. In: Usinger, H. H., Kruhbiller P., Thayer, J. H. and Thore, V. A.: *The Alkali Metal Ions in Biology* Springer Verlag, Berlin 1950.
22. McCAULEY, W. O., LINTZ, J. VERMILYK, H. V. LEOGERT T. H. and BOAS, E.: Effect of pyloric obstruction in relation to gastric tetany. *Bull J Hopkins Hosp*, 31 1 1920.
23. McCANCE, R. A. and WIDDOWSON, E. M.:

- Alkalosis with disordered kidney functions; observations on case. *Lancet* *II* 347 1937
24. McCANN W. S.: A study of the carbon dioxide-combining power of the blood plasma in experimental tetany. *J Biol Chem*, 35 553 1918.
 25. MØLLERGAARD K. and ASTRUP P.: The quantitative determination of surplus amounts of acid or base in the human body. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*, 12 187 1960.
 26. MILNE, M. D., SCHREYER, B. H. and CRAWFORD M. A. Non-ionic diffusion and the excretion of weak acids and bases. *Amer J Med*, 24 709 1958.
 27. MØLLER, H. *The Hydrogen Ion Concentration in Arterial Blood. A Clinical Study of Patients with Diabetes Mellitus and Diseases of the Kidneys, Lungs and Heart.* Thesis. Aarhus 1959.
 28. NICOL, H. M.: The renal changes in alkalosis. *Quart J Med*, 9 91 1940
 29. OCKEN, M. Behandling v alkalose. *Nord Med* 44 1523, 1950.
 30. PITTS, R. F. and LOTTERBERG W. D. Bicarbonate and the renal regulation of acid base balance. *Amer J Physiol*, 147 138, 1946
 31. POLAK, A.: Role of chloride in correction of alkalosis associated with potassium depletion. *Lancet* *II* 1378, 1962.
 32. REEVE, J. L. and BROWN E. H. jr. Respiratory compensation: metabolic alkalosis in dogs: influence of high oxygen concentration. *J Appl Physiol* 13 179 1958.
 33. RIKSTAD, H. E.: Hypokalemia alkalosis during recovery from compensated respiratory acidosis. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*, 11 415, 1962.
 34. RIVET, K. H. H. and LUCKROW B. S.: The ammonium chloride treatment of azidophrenia. *J Ment Sci*, 84 575, 1942.
 35. SIGGAARD-ANDERSEN O. ENGEL, K., JENSEN K. and ASTRUP P. A micro method for determination of pH, carbon dioxide tension, base excess and standard bicarbonate in capillary blood. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 12 172, 1960.
 36. SIGGAARD-ANDERSEN O.: A graphic representation of changes of the acid-base state. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*, 12 311 1960.
 37. — The pH log pCO₂ blood acid-base nomogram revised. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 11 593, 1962.
 38. — *The Acid Base Status of the Blood.* Thesis. Copenhagen 1963
 39. STAUFFER, J. O. and SCHREIBER, B. H. Ammonia intoxication during treatment of alkalosis in patient with normal liver function. *Amer J Med*, 23 990, 1957
 40. STEINLE, J. M. Renal insufficiency developing during prolonged use of alkali. Report of case. *JAMA* 169 2049, 1956
 41. WARREN K. S.: Ammonia toxicity and pH. *Nature*, 195 47 1962.
 42. ZIMMEL, H. A., REYNOLDS, J. E. and RAVEN I. S.: The use of intravenous ammonium chloride in the treatment of alkalosis. *Surgery* 14 728, 1943.

Submitted August 14, 1963

Accepted August 27 1963

Department of Pediatrics
Odense Amts & Bys Hospital
Odense
Denmark

From the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, and the Swedish Medical Research Council Unit for Paediatric Haematology Uppsala

The Effect of Long Term Corticosteroid Therapy on Total Red Cell Volume and Haemoglobin Mass in Asthmatic Children

by K. N. AGARWAL and L. E. BRATTEBY

There are some indications that corticosteroids, in addition to their well-known effect on the leucocyte cell system especially lymphocytes and eosinophils, also have an effect on the red-cell system [1]. Fisher [9] reported an increase of total red-cell volume in rats after corticosteroid treatment. Studies of Finch *et al.* [8] have given some evidence of increase in total red-cell volume after corticosteroid therapy in patients with collagenosis.

In a previous study it was observed that after long term therapy with corticosteroids in asthmatic children there was an increase of red-cell count and haemoglobin concentration in the peripheral blood and evidence was presented to indicate that this effect was due to the drug itself [2]. This study presents the results of measurements of total red-cell volume (TRCV) and total haemoglobin (THB) in asthmatic children on long-term corticosteroid therapy.

This investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council and the International Atomic Energy Agency (Research contract 184/RB).

Fellow on Swedish government scholarship.

The patients were selected from the Sachs Hospital for Children, Stockholm; the Department of Paediatrics, Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm and the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala.

Adrenaline, aminophylline, ephedrine, potassium iodide and isoprenaline spray

Material

Test group: Seven asthmatic children (five boys and two girls) on corticosteroid therapy were selected for the TROY studies. These children were between 8-14 years old (mean 11 years and 2 months). They were maintained symptom-free (when not under special stress by heavy physical work or infection) on 0.05-0.10 (mean 0.10) mg of prednisolone per kg body weight per day for 1-9 years.

Control group: Eighteen children (nine boys and nine girls), maintained symptom-free on drugs other than corticosteroids, were selected as control material. They were in the same age group (8-14 years, mean 11 years). Care was taken to select cases who had not had any infection or any other illness recently. Both in test and control groups, the children had had asthma for at least 3 years. Clinically the subjects in both groups belonged to the same degree of severity (grade I-II) [10] when maintained on respective therapies.

Methods

Haemoglobin determinations were made with the cyanmethaemoglobin method [6].

Haematocrit determinations were made on an International Micro-capillary Centrifuge Model MB. The centrifugation time was 3 minutes. With this technique the volume of trapped plasma has been estimated to be about 1% [10]. In this study no correction has been made for this.

TABLE 1 Complete data for individual subjects

| Subjects | Age yrs./moth. | Sex | Wt. kg | Ht. cm | Sa. sqm | Hb g % | Hemat % | THB g | TH g/l | TBV l |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----|--------|--------|---------|--------|---------|-------|--------|-------|
| <i>Control group</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| R. W. | 8 1/12 | M | 24.5 | 127.0 | 0.84 | 12.4 | 34.0 | 161 | 45 | 15 |
| J. A. | 8 2/1 | M | 21.9 | 122.8 | 0.88 | 12.7 | 33.5 | 171 | 46 | 16 |
| J. G. | 9 1/12 | M | 27.8 | 140.5 | 1.06 | 14.3 | 43.0 | 225 | 43 | 17 |
| K. G. | 9 3/1 | M | 1.4 | 125.0 | 0.87 | 1.5 | 39.0 | 202 | 44 | 17 |
| J. J. | 9 5/12 | M | 23.2 | 133.0 | 0.95 | 12.3 | 38.0 | 149 | 47 | 17 |
| E. J. | 9 9/12 | F | 24.5 | 130.5 | 0.87 | 12.1 | 40.0 | 173 | 47 | 17 |
| S. R. | 10 6/12 | F | 25.5 | 132.5 | 0.97 | 14.5 | 41.0 | 223 | 47 | 18 |
| R. B. | 11 1/12 | F | 30.6 | 147.0 | 1.14 | 12.2 | 41.0 | 231 | 48 | 19 |
| S. F. | 11 3/12 | F | 28.5 | 141.5 | 1.08 | 13.0 | 42.0 | 245 | 48 | 19 |
| E. H. | 11 4/12 | F | 37.1 | 153.0 | 1.39 | 12.0 | 37.5 | 264 | 47 | 20 |
| S. O. | 11 9/12 | F | 36.8 | 150.0 | 1.34 | 12.2 | 41.0 | 239 | 48 | 20 |
| S. B. | 11 10/12 | M | 37.2 | 160.0 | 1.57 | 14.0 | 40.5 | 263 | 48 | 20 |
| K. S. | 12 0/12 | F | 40.9 | 164.5 | 1.36 | 12.6 | 42.0 | 226 | 47 | 21 |
| H. C. | 1 3/12 | M | 34.1 | 154.0 | 1.31 | 12.0 | 37.0 | 242 | 48 | 21 |
| L. S. | 1 4/12 | M | 45.7 | 149.0 | 1.37 | 12.8 | 30.0 | 305 | 47 | 21 |
| L. E. | 12 4/12 | F | 39.5 | 155.0 | 1.33 | 13.3 | 40.0 | 246 | 47 | 21 |
| A. J. | 13 10/12 | F | 36.0 | 153.0 | 1.35 | 12.4 | 46.0 | 255 | 47 | 22 |
| L. A. | 13 11/12 | M | 40.0 | 160.0 | 1.36 | 12.3 | 38.0 | 304 | 46 | 22 |
| <i>Test group</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| T. L. | 8 0/1 | M | 26.9 | 112.0 | 0.90 | 14.5 | 43.0 | 209 | 47 | 15 |
| L. S. | 9 4/12 | M | 22.4 | 124.5 | 0.89 | 12.6 | 42.5 | 181 | 48 | 16 |
| A. B. | 10 0/12 | F | 22.9 | 122.0 | 0.87 | 14.4 | 44.0 | 207 | 48 | 16 |
| O. A. | 12 0/12 | M | 24.8 | 124.0 | 0.97 | 13.2 | 41.5 | 221 | 48 | 17 |
| E. L. | 12 6/12 | F | 35.8 | 144.5 | 1.21 | 13.5 | 40.5 | 280 | 47 | 18 |
| F. C. | 13 0/12 | M | 38.2 | 142.6 | 1.23 | 16.3 | 48.0 | 313 | 47 | 19 |
| S. S. | 13 9/1 | M | 30.8 | 149.0 | 1.30 | 15.1 | 47.0 | 335 | 49 | 19 |

Sa. (Surface area) is calculated from the formula of Du Bois & Du Bois.

The RCv and THB were determined by a modified C⁵⁴ technique to be described in detail later (4). The activity of the sample was measured in a well-type scintillation crystal. Duration of counting was adjusted so that the statistical error was within 3%. The amount of C⁵⁴ given was 0.04–0.16 μ C/kg of body weight (mean 0.08 μ C/kg) which gave a total absorbed dose of 4–16 millirads to the critical organ, i.e. the blood. In the calculations of total blood volume (TBV) and total plasma volume (TPV), no correction was made for any difference between venous and body haematocrit.

Significance tests were performed according to standard methods (20).

Results

Table 1 presents all the data of both groups. The mean values of haemoglobin

and haematocrit in the control group were 12.0 g% and 39.8% respectively. The corresponding values for the test group were 14.4 g% and 43.8% showing a difference of 10.8% and 10% respectively. These differences are statistically highly significant ($P < 0.001$).

In Table 2, values of RCv, THB, TBV and PV per sqm of the body surface area are presented. It is evident that there is a difference of 10.6% in RCv between test and control groups. Similarly the difference with respect to THB is 11.1%. Since the scattering of the individual values in here is comparatively large, the observed differences are only possibly significant ($0.03 < P < 0.10$). The calculated PV

cts in the control and test groups

| HB g gqm | RCV ml | RCV ml/kg | ROV ml/sqm | TBV ml | TBV ml/kg | TBV ml/sqm | PV ml | PV ml/kg | PV ml/sqm | Prednisone mg/kg/day |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|---------------|----------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| 171 | 422 | 19.7 | 512 | 1262 | 51.5 | 1244 | 781 | 31.9 | 831 | |
| 199 | 511 | 24.1 | 608 | 1237 | 52.1 | 1262 | 826 | 38.0 | 960 | |
| 212 | 565 | 24.1 | 627 | 1567 | 57.0 | 1478 | 902 | 32.8 | 851 | |
| 222 | 621 | 29.5 | 728 | 1617 | 78.6 | 1839 | 986 | 46.1 | 1123 | |
| 187 | 422 | 18.1 | 444 | 1161 | 49.8 | 1222 | 736 | 31.7 | 778 | |
| 178 | 515 | 21.0 | 621 | 1207 | 53.3 | 1247 | 792 | 32.3 | 816 | |
| 220 | 622 | 24.4 | 641 | 1828 | 59.9 | 1575 | 908 | 33.5 | 834 | |
| 220 | 745 | 24.5 | 654 | 1800 | 62.0 | 1631 | 1115 | 37.2 | 978 | |
| 227 | 759 | 25.6 | 703 | 1648 | 64.8 | 1709 | 1067 | 38.1 | 1006 | |
| 228 | 892 | 24.9 | 697 | 2379 | 64.1 | 1839 | 1467 | 40.1 | 1182 | |
| 192 | 690 | 19.4 | 555 | 1742 | 48.9 | 1405 | 703 | 29.8 | 849 | |
| 220 | 801 | 24.0 | 702 | 2196 | 66.0 | 1729 | 1205 | 33.1 | 1028 | |
| 225 | 963 | 23.5 | 706 | 2228 | 58.8 | 1705 | 1260 | 32.3 | 1000 | |
| 261 | 1010 | 28.5 | 771 | 2790 | 72.9 | 2120 | 1780 | 45.8 | 1280 | |
| 222 | 845 | 20.7 | 680 | 2443 | 62.6 | 1754 | 1483 | 31.9 | 1064 | |
| 214 | 576 | 22.2 | 659 | 2167 | 64.8 | 1628 | 1291 | 32.7 | 971 | |
| 228 | 912 | 23.2 | 720 | 2241 | 65.0 | 2272 | 1429 | 39.7 | 1143 | |
| 224 | 949 | 22.7 | 698 | 2443 | 61.3 | 1804 | 1504 | 37.6 | 1106 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| 232 | 620 | 22.1 | 689 | 1442 | 52.6 | 1603 | 822 | 30.6 | 914 | 0.10 |
| 207 | 574 | 25.8 | 645 | 1250 | 60.2 | 1517 | 778 | 34.6 | 872 | 0.12 |
| 228 | 822 | 27.0 | 728 | 1429 | 62.8 | 1644 | 806 | 32.2 | 926 | 0.08 |
| 228 | 686 | 28.1 | 718 | 1677 | 67.6 | 1729 | 951 | 29.6 | 1011 | 0.07 |
| 221 | 841 | 22.5 | 606 | 2075 | 59.0 | 1714 | 1224 | 34.5 | 1021 | 0.05 |
| 224 | 950 | 24.9 | 772 | 1994 | 57.4 | 1821 | 1044 | 27.2 | 849 | 0.06 |
| 261 | 1002 | 25.1 | 771 | 2196 | 55.1 | 1691 | 1191 | 29.9 | 916 | 0.09 |

in the test group is 6.8% less than that of the control group. No statistical calculations for plasma volume have been made, as the values are obtained by an indirect method. The mean TBV was identical in the two groups.

Table 3 gives the corresponding values referred to body weight. The observations are in close agreement with those using surface area as a reference (Table)

Discussion

Only a few studies have been made to estimate RCV and TBV in childhood [5 14 18 19 1]. Furthermore different direct and indirect techniques have been

used so that they do not furnish fully comparable data. Only one study performed by Cr⁵¹-technique in children has been reported so far [1]. The material comprised mainly surgical cases of various types. On comparing six haematologically normal patients in the age group 6-14 years (R. D. M. T., D. S., W. D. D. H. and D. C.) with the control group of our study the values of the RCV in the two groups are in close agreement. There is of course a possibility that the control material does not represent values which are truly normal for the age. For the purpose of this study however the important point is that, on analysis, asthmatic children with and without steroid therapy

TABLE 2 Mean values for RCV, THB, PV and TBF in relation to surface area

| | n | Mean value | Difference of means | | SD | SEM | P |
|-----------------------|----|------------|---------------------|------------|------|------|-----------------|
| | | | Absolute | Relative % | | | |
| RCV ml/m ² | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 16 | 646 | | | 90.8 | 20.5 | |
| Test group | 7 | 717 | +69.0 | +10.6 | 46.7 | 17.5 | 0.05 < P 0.10 |
| THB g/m | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 16 | | | 27.6 | 6.35 | |
| Test group | 7 | 334 | +32.0 | +8.3 | 17.8 | 6.73 | 0.05 < P < 0.10 |
| PV ml/m ² | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 16 | 946 | | | — | — | |
| Test group | 7 | 990 | -68.0 | -6.8 | — | — | — |
| TBF ml/m ² | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 1647 | | | — | — | |
| Test group | 7 | 1647 | 0 | 0 | — | — | — |

do not differ in any major respect other than the therapy.

As indicated above the literature on RCV and THB in patients under corticosteroid therapy is extremely scanty [7].

In a study by Finch *et al.* [8] the effect of ACTH and corticosteroid therapy was examined in a group of 90 patients, mainly

adults afflicted with rheumatoid arthritis. Following a daily dose of 100 mg of cortisone in adults and 60 mg in children for 3 weeks, an increase in RCV was observed, but only in those patients who were previously anaemic. It should be noted that the number of initially nonanaemic patients was limited, duration of therapy

TABLE 3 Mean values for RCV, THB, PV and TBF in relation to body weight

| | n | Mean value | Difference of means | | SD | SEM | P |
|---------------|----|------------|---------------------|------------|------|------|-------------|
| | | | Absolute | Relative % | | | |
| RCV ml/kg | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 23.4 | | | 1.85 | 0.47 | |
| Test group | 7 | 23.4 | +0.0 | +8.6 | 1.85 | 0.70 | 0.05 P 0.10 |
| THB g/kg | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 7.83 | | | 0.86 | 0.21 | |
| Test group | 7 | 8.35 | +0.52 | +6.7 | 0.80 | 0.19 | 0.10 P 0.50 |
| PV ml/kg | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 34 | | | — | — | |
| Test group | 7 | 33.1 | 3.10 | -8.8 | — | — | — |
| TBF ml/kg | | | | | | | |
| Control group | 18 | 88.6 | | | — | — | |
| Test group | 7 | 89.3 | 0.3 | -0.5 | — | — | — |

relatively short and that the RCV was determined by an indirect technique (Evans blue dye). Furthermore no information was given regarding the number of children in their study. It is therefore difficult to compare the results of these two studies.

Corresponding more closely to the results presented in this paper are those of Fisher [9], who found an increase in RCV after administration of corticosteroids in rats, the maximum effect being observed with 2 mg/kg/day of hydrocortisone.

The results of the present study warrant the conclusion that corticosteroid therapy in man increases THB and RCV. This increase is not reflected in total blood volume. The increase in RCV in the test group is apparently compensated by a decrease in PV. This is in agreement with views usually held regarding the mechanism of regulation of the TBV [11, 17, 23].

The difference in RCV and THB between the test group and the control group is about 10%, and is quite similar to the differences of haemoglobin and haematocrit in the peripheral blood.

Neither the body weight nor the surface area represent an ideal reference for RCV and THB since the variability is larger than when lean body mass is taken as reference [13, 16]. Patients on corticosteroid therapy show increase in body weight mostly of "non-lean body mass" [23]. This increase in weight lowers the calculated RCV and THB with reference to body weight and surface area. Rabbits receiving 1 mg/kg/day of prednisolone showed an increase in peripheral haemoglobin of 6% and an increase in body weight of 6.7% [3]. This fact rein-

forces the view that the observed increase in RCV and THB (per sqm and kg) in the test group might have been larger had not therapy caused an increase in weight.

The test group includes only seven cases. Therefore it is not possible to evaluate whether the increase in RCV and THB is dependent upon size of dose or not. It is, however, evident, that some of the patients who showed a higher value for RCV and THB were receiving larger doses than the other patients. They also had clinical features of Cushing's syndrome. A dose-dependent response was evident in a previous study of peripheral blood values under corticosteroid therapy [3].

Summary

Total red-cell volume and total haemoglobin studies were performed by Cr⁵¹ technique on 35 selected asthmatic children. Seven children were under corticosteroid therapy (test group) and 18 children maintained on drugs other than corticosteroids (control group). Results of this study indicate that total red-cell volume and total haemoglobin mass increase after long term corticosteroid therapy.

Acknowledgements

The authors are greatly indebted to Associate Professor S. Krepplien and Doctors B. Bager and J. Bonnevier for their help in selecting the patients.

Our sincere thanks are due to Prof. B. Vahlquist and Associate Professors L. Garby and S. Björlin for their valuable advice and discussion. We are thankful to Mr. K. Narmodlin for helping in statistical calculations.

We also wish to thank Sisters M. Schultz, B. Amundson and B. Lundin and secretary L. Grandin for their technical help.

References

1. AGARWAL, K. N. The effect of corticosteroids on the blood cell values. *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 68 33 1963.
2. — The effect of long term corticosteroid therapy on haemoglobin, red-cell values and red-cell indices in children with bronchial asthma. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 63 149 1964.
3. — Unpublished data.
4. BRATTBY L. E. To be published.
5. BRIDGES, J. K., GIBSON, J. O. and KUNKEL, P. The blood volume in normal infants and children. *J Pediatr* 18 447 1941.
6. CROSSY W. H., MCVIE J. L. and FURTH, F. W. Standardizing a method for clinical hemoglobinometry. *U.S. Armed Forces Med J* 8 683, 1954.
7. ESCOBAR, M. A. and TAYLOR, E. E. Erythremia. *Med Clin N Amer* 46 53, 1962.
8. FINCH, S. C., CROCKETT, C. L., ROSE, J. P. and HAYLES, T. H. Hematological changes with ACTH and cortisone therapy of rheumatoid arthritis. *Blood*, 6 1034, 1951.
9. FISHER, J. W. Increase in circulating red cell volume of normal rats after treatment with hydrocortisone or corticosterone. *Proc Soc Exp Biol N Y* 97 502, 1958.
10. GARRY, L. and VILK, J. C. The amount of trapped plasma in a high-speed microcapillary hematocrit centrifuge. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 13 64, 1961.
11. GIBSON, J. C. Clinical studies of the blood volume. IV Changes in blood volume in pernicious anemia in relation to hematopoietic response to intramuscular liver extract therapy. *J Clin Invest*, 18 401 1939.
12. GREGGSON, M. J. and RAWSON, R. A. Blood volume. *Physiol Rev* 33 207 1953.
13. HYDE, R. D. and JONES, V. F. Red cell volume and total body water. *Brit J Haemat* 8 263, 1963.
14. KARLBERG, P. and LINN, J. Studies of the total amount of hemoglobin and the blood volume in children. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 44 17 1955.
15. KILBICKI, R., ENGBRÖM, L. and KARLBERG, P. Respiratory studies in children. II. Lung volume in symptom-free asthmatic children. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 47 379, 1958.
16. MULDOWNEY, F. P. The relationship of total red cell mass to lean body mass in man. *Clin Sci*, 16 153, 1953.
17. PEARCE, J. W. A current concept of the regulation of blood volume. *Brit Heart J* 21 66, 1961.
18. RICHIE, R. J. M. Blood volume studies in healthy children. *Arch Dis Child* 31 84, 1956.
19. SEAY, F. M. Blood volume studies in edematous children. *Indian Med Sci*, 15 109 1961.
20. S. S. EDWARDS, O. W. *Statistical Methods*, 4th ed. The Iowa State Press, Ames, Iowa, 1951.
21. SUKABOCHANA, K., PARKSLEY, L., TRAUTMAN, V. and HENDERWATER, W. H. Red cell mass determination in infancy and childhood with the use of radio-active chromium. *J Pediatr* 59 903, 1961.
22. WYTTA, R. M. Plasma and blood volume in anemia and the effect of transfusion. *Am J Med*, 6 192, 1956.
23. WILLIAMS, R. H. *Treatise of Endocrinology*, 2nd ed. Saunders, Philadelphia and London, 1962.

Submitted Aug 20, 1963

Accepted Sept 3, 1963

Department of Paediatrics
University Hospital
Uppsala
Sweden

group. In six out of 41 patients belonging to the test group, red-cell values are missing. These samples, taken on one and the same day, could not be analysed due to a temporary dysfunction of the Celloscope. The difference in mean haemoglobin values between the two groups is 1.4 g%, which is highly significant ($P < 0.001$). Mean values for haematocrit in the two groups differ by 5.3% and the red-cell counts by 0.48 mill/mm³ and these differences are again highly significant ($P < 0.001$). The difference in the means of the two groups for mean corpuscular volume (MCV), mean corpuscular haemoglobin (MCH) and mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration (MCHC) are not significant.

The haemoglobin values of the test group, arranged according to current corticosteroid dosage are presented in Table 5. It is evident that in each age group the mean haemoglobin values are higher than those of normal children (see Table 3). The difference between the groups on less than 0.49 and on 0.50–0.99 mg/kg/day of hydrocortisone is 0.90 g%, this difference being highly significant ($P < 0.001$). A similar difference exists between the groups on less than 0.49 and those on 1.00–1.99 mg/kg/day of hydrocortisone ($P < 0.001$). On the other hand no significant difference exists between the groups on 0.50–0.99 and 1.00–1.99 mg/kg/day.

Blood examinations were also carried out by the author on some children, who could be taken off corticosteroid therapy for some time. Table 6 presents values obtained from 2 weeks to 4 months (mean 1 month) after discontinuation of therapy. The difference between the mean haemoglobin value obtained during corti-

TABLE 3 *Haemoglobin values of normal children and the control group.*

| Age group yrs. | Haemoglobin g | | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| | Vahlquist (1949) | Gosset & Brown (1957) | Control group, present study |
| 1 | | 11.5 | |
| 3–4 | 1.3 | 1.1 | |
| 5–6 | | 1.4 | |
| 8 | 1.3 | 1.1 | 1.5 |
| 9–10 | | 1.9 | 13.0 |
| 11–14 | 13.0 | 12.1 | 1.7 |
| | | 12.8 | 12.1 |

costeroid therapy of these 13 children and that obtained after discontinuation of therapy is 1.7 g%, which is significant ($0.005 < P < 0.001$). The difference between the mean haematocrit values in the two groups 5.1% is highly significant ($P < 0.001$). The difference between the mean red-cell counts in the two groups is 0.22 mill/mm³ and is possibly significant ($0.100 > P > 0.050$). The differences in MCV, MCH, and MCHC are not statistically significant (Table 6).

In Table 7 are given the results of various additional examinations performed on the children belonging to the test group. On the whole they do not show any marked deviation from normal, the only exception being the eosinophils which in spite of prolonged corticosteroid therapy show values above normal. It should be noted that the reticulocyte values in this group do not show an increase. The bilirubin values do not differ from those obtained with the same method in the control group and the haptoglobin values are also within normal limits.

TABLE 1 *Distribution of age and sex in the two groups*

| Age group yrs. | Test group | | | Control group | | |
|----------------|------------|----|-------|---------------|---|-------|
| | ♂ | ♀ | Total | ♂ | ♀ | Total |
| < 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | — | — | — |
| 2-5 | 6 | 0 | 6 | — | — | — |
| 6-10 | 12 | 12 | 24 | 4 | 3 | 7 |
| 11-15 | 8 | 10 | 18 | 7 | 6 | 13 |
| Total | 27 | 23 | 50 | 11 | 9 | 20 |

values were determined in all patients: haemoglobin, red-cell count and haematocrit. In a selected number of cases in both groups serum bilirubin was also determined. Furthermore, in some of the children belonging to the test group analyses were made also of white cells (total and differential), thrombocytes, reticulocytes and serum haptoglobin.

All these analyses except for haptoglobin estimation were performed by the author himself.

Methods

Haemoglobin: The cyan-methaemoglobin method [5].

Haematocrit: International Micro-capillary centrifuge Model MIB 3 min centrifugation.

Red-cell count: Colloscope L. Ljungberg Ltd. Sweden.

Total leucocytes: Burkner chamber Türk solution.

Differential counts: Pappenheimer staining. 400 cells counted.

Reticulocytes: Brilliant cresyl blue staining 500 cells counted.

Serum bilirubin: According to Michaelsson [17].

Serum haptoglobin: According to Owen, Better & Hoban [18].

The haptoglobin analyses were performed at the Laboratory of Clinical Chemistry Uppsala.

Retrospective study

For comparison a tabulation was made also of haemoglobin values from the hospital

records of the 50 children belonging to the test group. These are the results of examinations by different technicians and to some extent also by different methods, and should therefore be evaluated with caution. Nevertheless, they deserve some attention, since they represent observations over long periods of time.

In order to make possible a comparison between different individuals irrespective of differences in age a correction has been made in this material for the haemoglobin values according to the following formula,

$$\frac{Hb}{100} \times \frac{100}{Hbn}$$

Hb = haemoglobin from the case sheet in g%.

Hbn = normal value for age in g (see Table 3).

The normal values for haemoglobin concentration in children of different ages used in this formula are taken from Goss & Brown [11] and given in Table 3. These values are almost identical with those obtained by Wahlquist [1] in a study of healthy Swedish children of three different age groups and also with those of the control material referred to above.

Results

Actual study

Table 4 gives the blood values and calculated indices of the test and the control

TABLE 2 *Duration of corticosteroid therapy in the test group*

| Duration of corticosteroid therapy yrs. | ♂ | ♀ | Total |
|---|----|----|-------|
| < 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1-2 | 7 | 8 | 15 |
| 2-3 | 6 | 2 | 8 |
| 3-5 | 5 | 11 | 16 |
| > 5 | 8 | 4 | 12 |
| Total | 27 | 23 | 50 |

TABLE 6 *Blood values during and after discontinuation of corticosteroid therapy*

| Investigations | n | Mean | SD | SEM | P |
|-------------------------------------|----|------|------|------|-------------------|
| Haemoglobin g % | 13 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 14.4 | 1.21 | 0.33 | 0.003 > P > 0.001 |
| Without therapy | | 14.7 | 1.06 | 0.31 | |
| Haematocrit % | 13 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 44.5 | 2.92 | 0.81 | < 0.001 |
| Without therapy | | 39.4 | —65 | 0.82 | |
| Red-cell count mil./mm ³ | 11 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 4.69 | 0.39 | 0.12 | 0.100 > P > 0.050 |
| Without therapy | | 4.67 | 0.34 | 0.10 | |
| MCV cu μ m | 11 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 91.8 | 7.12 | —14 | |
| Without therapy | | 90.7 | 6.90 | —04 | |
| MCHC % | 11 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 32.0 | 1.64 | 0.49 | |
| Without therapy | | 31.9 | 1.48 | 0.50 | |
| MCH g 10 ⁻¹² | 11 | | | | |
| During therapy | | 30.0 | 2.16 | 0.66 | |
| Without therapy | | 29.9 | 2.33 | 0.70 | |

Age of the 13 patients 4½–14 years and mean 9 years and 10 months.

year. In these mean values have been used.

Table 9 presents the haemoglobin values during different periods of the first year of therapy. The figures indicate that the maximal rise may already be achieved during the first three months. The differences in haemoglobin means for the various dosage levels are not significant.

Discussion

Previous experience including animal experiments and clinical observations, indicate that corticosteroids exert a stimulating effect on erythropoiesis [1, 16, 19]. So far no studies are available dealing with human beings on long-term corticosteroid therapy who have been free

TABLE 7 *Supplementary values of the test group*

| Investigations | n | Median | Range |
|---------------------------------------|----|--------|-----------|
| Total leucocyte count/mm ³ | 14 | 6000 | 4800–8700 |
| Neutrophils/mm ³ | 14 | | |
| Segmented cells | | 2750 | 1672–5794 |
| Stab cells | | 78 | 0–237 |
| Eosinophils/mm ³ | 14 | 690 | 183–1476 |
| Basophils/mm ³ | 14 | 70 | 0–321 |
| Lymphocytes/mm ³ | 14 | 3071 | 1032–4785 |
| Monocytes/mm ³ | 14 | 647 | 0–1044 |
| Thrombocytes 1000/mm ³ | 14 | 270 | 173–699 |
| Reticulocytes % | 15 | 1.00 | 0.50–1.00 |
| Haptoglobin mg % | 9 | 140 | 90–185 |
| Serum bilirubin mg % | | | |
| Control group | 10 | 0.29 | 0.10–0.50 |
| Test group | 14 | 0.31 | 0.10–0.54 |

TABLE 4 *Blood values of the control and test groups*

Mean values for "representative sample of children in age group 10 years (11):
 MCV = 81 ± 0.6 cu μ . MCHC = 34.3 ± 0.14 %. MCH = 27.8 ± 0.26 g $\times 10^{-12}$

| Investigations | n | Mean | Difference of means | SD | SEM | P |
|-------------------------|----|------|---------------------|------|------|--------|
| Haemoglobin g % | | | | | | |
| Control group | 20 | 14.0 | | 0.61 | 0.13 | |
| Test group | 41 | 14.3 | 1.4 | 1.00 | 0.16 | <0.001 |
| Haematocrit % | | | | | | |
| Control group | 40 | 39.3 | | 1.10 | 0.47 | |
| Test group | 41 | 44.8 | 5.3 | 2.84 | 0.44 | 0.001 |
| Red-cell count mil./mm | | | | | | |
| Control group | 40 | 4.23 | | 0.33 | 0.07 | |
| Test group | 35 | 4.71 | 0.48 | 0.41 | 0.06 | 0.001 |
| MCV cu μ | | | | | | |
| Control group | 20 | 92.7 | | 4.97 | 1.14 | |
| Test group | 35 | 93.1 | 0.40 | 4.39 | 0.81 | |
| MCHC % | | | | | | |
| Control group | 40 | 32.7 | | 1.50 | 0.34 | |
| Test group | 35 | 32.1 | 0.60 | 1.85 | 0.32 | |
| MCH g $\times 10^{-12}$ | | | | | | |
| Control group | 40 | 30.7 | | 1.80 | 0.33 | |
| Test group | 35 | 30.0 | 0.70 | 1.80 | 0.31 | |

P is the probability that the difference is due to random factors (calculated by student t-test)

Retrospective study

Table 8 shows haemoglobin levels obtained during the year prior to therapy and for each one of the following three years during corticosteroid therapy. It is evident that the rise in haemoglobin appears already during the first year of therapy. Not all of the children had been under corticosteroid therapy for the whole period of 3 years. Furthermore, for part of

the material haemoglobin determination was done irregularly and/or with long intervals. These two facts taken together explain why the number of patients in the different groups of Table 8 do not correspond to the total number of the patient in the group under study. In quite a few children on the other hand more than one haemoglobin determination sometimes 3-5 were made during one and the same

TABLE 5 *Haemoglobin values arranged according to current corticosteroid dosage*

Dose of hydrocortisone or hydrocortisone equivalents mg/kg/day

| <0.40 | | | | 0.80-0.99 | | | | 1.00-1.99 ² | | | |
|-------|-----------|------|------|-----------|-----------|------|------|------------------------|-----------|------|-----|
| n | Hb g mean | SD | SEM | n | Hb g mean | SD | SEM | n | Hb g mean | SD | SEM |
| 9 | 13.7 | 0.63 | 0.10 | 18 | 14.6 | 0.97 | 0.22 | 15 | 14.5 | 1.14 | 0.3 |

Conversion to hydrocortisone equivalent from other types of corticosteroid according to P. Rainoldo & Forsgren (6). ¹g 1 mg of prednisolone equivalent to 5 mg of hydrocortisone
² In two patients the dosage exceeded 2.0 mg/kg/day

with asthma treated with other drugs ("control group")

The haemoglobin and red-cell values of the control group correspond well with those observed in normal, healthy children [11]. The children in the control group showed an increase in MCV and a decrease in MCHC, such as has been observed in chronic emphysema.

The children in the test group represented more severe cases than those in the control group, but under therapy the situation in both groups with respect to the severity of symptoms was comparable. The type of corticosteroid preparation used varied from patient to patient and also with different periods in one and the same patient. In calculating the dosage per kg per day all dosages were transferred to hydrocortisone equivalents according to the table given by Dr Raimondo & Forsham [6]. Groups were subdivided with respect to dosage and duration of therapy.

From the results presented in Tables 4, 6 and 8 it is obvious that long term steroid therapy regularly gives rise to an increase in haemoglobin and red-cell values. This effect is observed also with a dosage below 0.49 mg hydrocortisone/kg/day (Tables 5 and 9) and often within 3 months of starting therapy (Table 9). An increase in dosage up to the range 1.00-2.49 mg hydrocortisone/kg/day does not give rise to any further increase in the values mentioned (Table 9). In animal experiments it has been shown that corticosteroids administered over weeks and months cause an elevation of haemoglobin and haematocrit values, but only if the dosage of corticosteroids does not exceed 10 mg hydrocortisone/kg/day. With higher

dosage the values again decline [7]. The red-cell indices in the test group do not differ from those of the control group (i.e. MCV raised and MCHC lowered). In some of the children a follow-up study was performed following cessation of corticosteroid therapy. After a time varying from 2 weeks to 4 months, the haemoglobin and red-cell values were again back to normal levels.

The changes in haemoglobin and red-cell values do not necessarily reflect the changes taking place with respect to total haemoglobin mass and total red-cell volume. However, in a separate study [] this problem has been analysed in some detail and this study has revealed that they do so fairly accurately in this situation.

The increase in haemoglobin values was also evident on scrutinizing the hospital records and the blood values registered there over the years (Tables 8 and 9). Admittedly such figures must be evaluated with great caution, nevertheless, it is of interest that the results collected in this way correspond well with the results of the studies by the author referred to above.

The rise of haemoglobin and red-cell values in corticosteroid treated asthmatic children could hardly be explained other than as a direct effect of the treatment. An indirect effect by improvement of the asthma situation *per se* could not be the explanation, since an amelioration of oxygen saturation should, if anything, induce a decrease in haemoglobin levels.

The explanation of the rise in haemoglobin and red-cell values under corticosteroid therapy is not clear and may be complex. Only glucocorticoids exert an effect, and not mineralocorticoids [9].

TABLE 8 *Haemoglobin values obtained from the hospital records*

| Group | n | Doses of hydrocortisone mg/kg/day | | Hb % | SD | MCV |
|----------------------------|----|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------|------|------|
| | | Mean | Range | | | |
| Prior to therapy | 40 | — | — | 98.7 | 7.41 | 143 |
| During 1st year of therapy | 23 | 1.56 | 0.20-2.50 | 104.4 | 5.29 | 99.1 |
| During 2nd year of therapy | 28 | 1.51 | 0.20-5.0 | 111.1 | 7.52 | 141 |
| During 3rd year of therapy | 40 | 1.35 | 0.20-10.0 | 107.7 | 7.57 | 143 |

from basic disorders of the blood and the blood forming organs. In this study the haematological effect of long term corticosteroid therapy has been studied in children with chronic bronchial asthma. The main emphasis is laid on haemoglobin, red-cell values and red-cell indices.

Bronchial asthma often gives rise to eosinophilia but does not as a rule affect the haemoglobin and red-cell values. In chronic bronchial emphysema, with markedly reduced oxygen saturation the red-cell indices show some alterations, mainly an increase in mean corpuscular volume (MCV) and a reduction of mean corpus-

cular haemoglobin concentration (MCHC). These changes usually balance each other so that the mean haemoglobin content of the erythrocytes (MCH) remains constant [10 12 13 20 23]. In contrast to the situation in reduced oxygen saturation due to high altitude where haemoglobin concentration and even more so total haemoglobin mass is raised, haemoglobin concentration usually remains normal in chronic emphysema [12 15 20]. The explanation for this difference is not clear.

In the present study 60 children with asthma treated with corticosteroids ("test group") were compared with 20 children

TABLE 9 *Haemoglobin values for the first year of corticosteroid therapy*

| Duration of therapy in months | Doses of hydrocortisone equivalent mg/kg/day | | | | | | Total | |
|-------------------------------|--|-------|-----------|-------|-----------------------|-------|---------|-------|
| | < 0.49 | | 0.50-0.99 | | 1.00-4.0 ^a | | Hb mean | SD |
| | Hb % | mean | Hb % | mean | Hb % | mean | | |
| Before therapy | — | — | — | — | — | — | 26 | 99.7 |
| 0-3 | 8 | 103.7 | 9 | 107.4 | 8 | 104.5 | 25 | 103.9 |
| 4-6 | 4 | 108.6 | 11 | 109.5 | 3 | 101.4 | 18 | 107.2 |
| 7-9 | 3 | 111.6 | 7 | 110.9 | 4 | 111.9 | 14 | 111.4 |
| 10-1 | 10 | 108.7 | 8 | 107.7 | 4 | 113.6 | 19 | 110.0 |
| n | 24 | | 32 | | 19 | | | |
| Mean | | 108.6 | | 108.6 | | 109.6 | | |
| SD | | 6.34 | | 17.0 | | 11.5 | | |
| MCV | | 1.59 | | 2.99 | | 2.61 | | |

Five values were obtained during therapy with dosage exceeding 2.5 mg/kg/day

References

1. AGARWAL, K. V.: The effect of corticosteroids on the blood cell values. *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 68: 22, 1962.
2. AGARWAL, K. V. and BRATTENY L. E.: The effect of long-term corticosteroid therapy on total red cell volume and hemoglobin mass in asthmatic children. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 52: 143, 1963.
3. BAKER, B., EVERTSÖD, I. and KRAEPPELBY S.: To be published.
4. BLODGETT F. M., BURGIN L., LEROUX D., GRIBETZ, D. and TALBOT T. D.: Effects of prolonged corticosteroid therapy on the structural growth, skeletal maturation, and metabolic status of children. *New Engl J Med*, 254: 636, 1956.
5. CROSBY W. H., MUEY J. I. and FURTH, F. W.: Standardizing a method for clinical hemoglobinometry. *U.S. Armed Forces Med J* 6: 662, 1951.
6. DI RAIMONDO, U. C. and FOSSEMAN, P. H.: Pharmacophysiology principles in use of corticoids and adrenocorticotrophin. *Metabolism*, 7: 2, 1958.
7. FISHER, J. W.: Increase in circulating red cell volume of normal rats after treatment with hydrocortisone or corticosterone. *Proc Soc Exp Biol* 57: 502, 1953.
8. FISHER, J. W. and CROOK, J. J.: Influence of several hormones on erythropoiesis and oxygen consumption in the hypophysectomized rat. *Blood*, 18: 557, 1962.
9. GORDON A. S., PILKRO, S. J. and LANDAU D.: The relation of the adrenal to blood formation in the rat. *Endocrinology* 49: 487, 1951.
10. GRANT J. L., MACDONALD, A., EDWARDS, J. R., STACEY R. R. and STUCKE, O. H.: Red cell changes in pulmonary insufficiency. *J Clin Invest* 37: 1166, 1956.
11. GUDY O. M. and BROWN E. W.: Erythrocytes and hemoglobin of the blood in infancy and childhood. *Amer J Dis Child*, 93: 496, 1957.
12. HANMARSTEN J. F., WHITECOMB, W. H., JOHNSON P. C. and LOWELL, J. R.: The hematological adaptation of patients with hypoxia due to pulmonary emphysema. *Amer Rev Tub* 73: 391, 1955.
13. HARRY R. M., FISHER, M. L., RICHARDS D. W., JR. and COFFMAN, A.: Influence of chronic pulmonary disease on the heart and circulation. *Amer J Med*, 19: 719, 1955.
14. KRAEPPELBY, S., EVERTSÖD, I. and KARLSSON, P.: Respiratory studies in children. II Lung volume in symptomfree asthmatic children. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 5: 399, 1955.
15. LEROUX W. S.: A study of the effect of chronic pulmonary disease on the volume and composition of the blood. *Ann Int Med*, 3: 430, 1929.
16. LITMAN J. W. and BETHELL, F. H.: *Factors Controlling Erythropoiesis*. Charles C. Thomas, Publisher Springfield, Illinois, U.S.A., 1960.
17. MICHAELSSON, M.: Bährin determination in serum and urine. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 13: 5: 54, 1961.
18. OWEN J. A., BETTER, F. C. and HONAR J.: A simple method for the determination of serum hemoglobin. *J Clin Path*, 12: 163, 1960.
19. RECKE, W.: *Die hämatische Steuerung der Erythropoese*. Springer Verlag, Berlin-Göttingen, 1963.
20. TYRA, S., POLLYCOVE, M. and GELF, P. A.: Erythrocyte and iron kinetics in patients with chronic pulmonary emphysema. *J Vet Med*, 2: 110, 1962.
21. VÄRLQVIST B.: Normalvärden för hemoglobin, röda blodkroppar och blodens viskositet i baksta tal för olika åldrar. *Svensk Laborat*, 51: 1, 1948.
22. VAN MEYER, T. E. and PINKERTON, H. L. JR.: Growth suppression in asthmatic children receiving prolonged therapy with prednisolone and methylprednisolone. *J Allergy* 30: 103, 1959.
23. WILSON R. H., BOWEN C. W. and ECKERT R. V.: Adaptation to anoxia in chronic pulmonary Emphysema. *Arch Int Med*, 88: 551, 1951.
24. WHITECOMB, M. M.: *Clinical Hematology* 8th ed. Lea & Febiger Philadelphia, 1961.

Submitted Aug. 30, 1963

Accepted Sept. 3, 1963

Department of Paediatrics
University Hospital
Uppsala
Sweden

Several observations indicate that corticosteroids activate erythropoiesis. In pure red-cell anaemia and also in other types of aplastic anaemia corticosteroids often induce a response with marked reticulocytosis and rising haemoglobin values. Correspondingly in animal experiments reticulocytosis and increased Fe^{59} incorporation has been noted under corticosteroid therapy [8]. The relative increase in erythropoiesis need not be very large in order to produce the 10% increase in haemoglobin concentration and total haemoglobin mass [2] observed in our studies. This may explain why possibly increased erythropoiesis might not reflect itself in raised reticulocyte values. On the other hand it may be that the survival time of the erythrocytes is influenced by the corticosteroid therapy. If there is an increased survival time this may be the whole or partial explanation of the increase in haemoglobin and red-cell values observed. For the time being though data are lacking with respect to red-cell survival under corticosteroid therapy.

Part of the corticosteroid treated asthma material was examined for a number of other data i.e. leucocyte counts, thrombocyte counts, smears, reticulocyte counts, serum bilirubin, serum haptoglobin. The only abnormality was an eosinophilia with eosinophil counts still after years of therapy remaining high, the median level being 680 cells/mm³ as compared with a normal value of some 200 cells/mm³ [24].

Summary

A group of 50 children with asthma under prolonged corticosteroid therapy showed a significant increase in haemoglobin and haematocrit values. This increase was confirmed in three ways: a comparison between two groups of asthma children, with or without corticosteroid therapy (author's own values); a follow-up study of part of the corticosteroid treated children after postponement of therapy (author's own values); and finally a study of the pertinent values in one and the same group of children, before and during corticosteroid therapy (values from hospital records).

There was no evidence that corticosteroids will influence the various red-cell indices (MCV, MCHC and MCH).

Acknowledgements

The author is greatly indebted to his social Professor H. Kraepelin and Doctors H. Bagge and V. Heisterström for their help in selecting the patients. My sincere thanks are due to Prof. B. Vahlquist for his valuable guidance. I also wish to thank Associate Professors L. Garby and A. Nilmarck for going through this manuscript. I especially wish to thank Sisters L. Pettersson, D. Schultz, U. Christmann and the members of the nursing staff in the Pension Board Hospital. Also I am grateful to Mr. E. Naalund for helping me in statistical calculations and secretary L. Grandin and B. Hagquist for technical help.

the serum bilirubin level under 15 mg/100 ml, were not included in the material. The eleven infants were thus seriously ill and despite repeated blood exchanges the highest serum bilirubin level in two of them was 25 mg/100 ml and 40 mg/100 ml, respectively and in a further six it exceeded 20 mg/100 ml. All had normal birth weight.

6. Thirty-eight infants with so-called idiopathic hyperbilirubinaemia, where the highest serum bilirubin value varied between 15 mg/100 ml and 20 mg/100 ml. Five infants were premature by weight (2000 to 2500 g). The others were fullterm.

7. Twenty-nine newborns with idiopathic hyperbilirubinaemia, where the highest serum bilirubin value varied between 20 and 30 mg/100 ml. Two were premature with birth weight of 1660 and 2240 g respectively. The others were mature. Three underwent exchange transfusions.

Method

The reaction $L\text{-leucyl-}\beta\text{-naphthylamide} + H_2O \rightarrow \text{leucine} + \beta\text{-naphthylamine}$ is catalyzed by aminopeptidase. The amount of $\beta\text{-naphthylamine}$ is determined spectrophotometrically after diazotization with diazotized 3-chlor-4-nitraniline. The method has been used according to the process described in Biochemica (Boehringer) and with its reagents. It is based upon investigations by Green & co-workers [8] and Braun Falco & co-workers [2].

Procedure

Two point five ml of a solution of $L\text{-leucyl-}\beta\text{-naphthylamidehydrochloride}$ (6 mg/ml) and 0.05 ml serum are pipetted into 10 ml centrifuge tube. Mixed and incubated at 37°C in a waterbath after which 0.5 ml 6% perchloric acid is added. Mixed well and centrifuged for 5 minutes at 3000 rpm. From the supernatant 1.0 ml is pipetted into a 10 ml centrifuge tube to which is added 1.0 ml diazotized 3-chlor-4-nitraniline (1 mg/ml). Mixed and allowed to stand at room temperature for 10 minutes, after which 5 ml acetone ether is added. The tubes are sealed with cork stoppers, shaken vi-

gorously and centrifuged for period of 3 minutes at 3000 rpm. The red-coloured supernatant is put into a cuvette and the extinction is read in Beckman DU spectrophotometer at 490 mμ against a blank prepared in the same manner but without serum.

With known amounts of $\beta\text{-naphthylamine}$ a standard curve was plotted, and the amount of $\beta\text{-naphthylamine}$ in the serum test was calculated.

The enzyme activity is expressed in units, where 1 leucine aminopeptidase-unit is defined as the amount of enzyme contained in 1 ml serum that releases 1 gamma $\beta\text{-naphthylamine}$ in 1 hour at 37°C.

Serum bilirubin is determined according to a micro-method based upon With modification of the method of Jendrasek & Grof [13].

Results

For the three normal groups: newborn infants where tests were taken from umbilical cord blood, children and non-icteric newborn infants, the mean value, the range and the 2 sigma value are shown in Table I.

The results of the determinations in serum from the icteric newborn infants are given in Fig. 1-4, where along the abscissa the age in days and along the ordinate leucine aminopeptidase activity in units are given. From one and the same patient, except in 7 instances two or more determinations have been made. Where the aminopeptidase value has on some occasions exceeded 441 units, the patient's values have been connected by a line in these diagrams.

In Table I it can be seen that the umbilical cord blood and serum from newborn infants show somewhat higher aminopeptidase activities than serum from children.

In the following leucine aminopeptidase

Department of Pediatrics (Former Head: Professor Blure Srce),
University Hospital, Lund, Sweden

Serum Leucine Aminopeptidase in Icterus of the Newborn

by BENGT KJELLMAN

Leucine aminopeptidase is a proteolytic enzyme that hydrolyzes amino acid amides, dipeptides and polypeptides as well as genuine albumins [20]. The enzyme could be shown to occur in most tissues and body fluids [12]. Increased serum activity is established in intra- or extra-hepatically conditioned bile steats [1, 10, 11, 16] and moderately increased values can be demonstrated in liver parenchymal disease [1, 7, 13, 16, 22].

Most authors are of the opinion that the clinical value of this enzyme determination is comparable to the determination of α -phosphatase [10, 13, 14, 15], whereas others find the serum aminopeptidases more often and earlier increased than alkaline phosphatases in cholestatic conditions [1, 9, 16].

In pregnancy serum leucine aminopeptidase values rise gradually and reach their peak in partus [3, 10]. The enzyme activity in umbilical cord blood has been found to be somewhat higher than in serum from adolescents but lower than that of the mother [4, 8].

A group of American researchers in 1961 and 1962 presented reports concerning the determination of serum leucine aminopeptidase as a differential diagnosis between neonatal hepatitis and biliary atresia [17, 18]. The authors considered that the

test was a very sensitive index of cholestasis.

The purpose of the present work was to study the level of leucine aminopeptidase in serum of newborn infants with different type and degree of icterus. As comparison the normal values in children in cord blood and in normal newborn infants were established.

Material

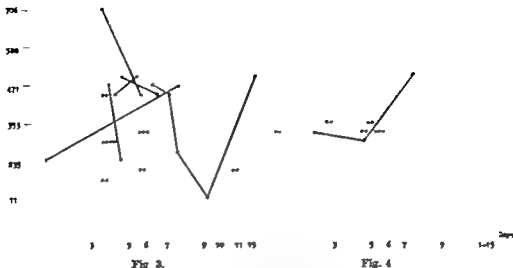
1. Fifty children (age 1-15 years) without biliary or hepatic cord lesions.

— Forty normal, newborn infants. The test was taken capillary on the 2nd day of life up to and including the 8th day.

2. Blood from the umbilical cord of 41 normal, newborn infants.

4. Eight newborn infants with icterus caused by ABO immunization. The diagnosis was established by demonstrating immune antibodies in the blood of the mother. Highest serum bilirubin value for the 8 infants was: 15.5, 18.0, 18.0, 20.0, 20.5, 21.0, 22.0, 29.0 mg/100 ml, respectively. All had normal birth weight. Exchange transfusion was given in one instance.

5. Eleven newborn infants with hemolytic condition caused by Rh immunization. The diagnosis was established by positive Coombs' test in the blood of the infant and by demonstrated immune antibody titer in the blood of the mother. The titers varied between 1:16 and 1:1024. Those children where the hemolytic element was slight or where the blood exchange transfusion kept

LST/our
and less

were 4.57 ml./mm³ Serum transaminases were SGO-T 15 units (Karmen) SGP T 10 units (Karmen) Serum leucine aminopeptidase was 206 units. A third blood exchange was made and serum bilirubin was 20 mg/100 ml the following day Reticulocytes 5.5% of 4.5 ml./mm³ red corpuscles. On the fifth day of life serum bilirubin was 11.0 mg/100 ml with negative direct reaction, leucine aminopeptidase 647 units, thymol 0.03. The child appeared to be well without any neurologic signs deviating from normal. It had normal colored stools. It was sent home at age 6 days.

In the newborn infants group—with idiopathic hyperbilirubinemia and where the highest serum bilirubin did not exceed 19.9 mg/100 ml, one infant had a leucine aminopeptidase value of 500 units and the rest had 441 units or less. The

group was composed of 38 infants on whom 66 determinations of serum leucine aminopeptidase was made.

One of the newborns in the group with idiopathic hyperbilirubinemia where the highest serum bilirubin value was 20 mg/100 ml or more had a pathologic aminopeptidase value (706 units); three infants reached 500 units. The group was composed of 29 infants on whom 60 enzyme determinations were made. The infant with the high leucine aminopeptidase value of 706 units had the following clinical data. It was born in normal delivery and had the birth weight of 4180 g. At age 3 days, serum bilirubin was 30 mg/100 ml with negative direct reaction, hemoglobin was 18.0 g/100 ml, and red corpuscles were 4.5 ml./mm³ The following day serum bilirubin was 22 mg/100 ml, hemoglobin was 17.4 g/100 ml. Exchange

value exceeding 500 units is regarded as clearly pathological.

Among the 8 newborns with ABO-immunizing conditions, normal enzyme activity is found in all 22 determinations.

One of the 11 Rh immunized newborn infants showed on the 5th day of life a clearly pathologic leucine aminopeptidase value (647 units). This infant had the following clinical data. The mother belonged to blood group A Rh neg; the infant to A Rh pos. The immunization titer was 1:32. The infant was born by normal delivery with a birth weight of 3410 g. Immediately after partus it was somewhat listless. In umbilical cord blood bilirubin was 9.9 mg/100 ml with direct reacting bilirubin 0.9 mg/100 ml. Hemoglobin was 13.8 g/100 ml, red blood corpuscles 3.9 mil./mm³ and white blood corpuscles 17 000/

TABLE 1 Serum leucine aminopeptidase from cord blood nonicteric newborns and children. The activity of the enzyme is reported in units the definition of which is stated in text

| Patients | No. | Mean | Range | 2 s-value |
|------------------------------|-----|------|---------|-----------|
| Cord blood | 64 | 293 | 147-500 | 145 |
| Normal newborns 2-8 days old | 40 | 463 | 89-800 | 194 |
| Children 1-18 years old | 80 | 231 | 59-471 | 190 |

mm³. Coombs test was positive. Blood exchange transfusion was performed immediately but had to be repeated when 12 hours later serum bilirubin was 4.6 mg/100 ml. On the second day of life serum bilirubin was 3.5 mg/100 ml, hemoglobin was 15.0 g/100 ml, red blood corpuscles

UAP per
unit test

706

594

471

353

275

0

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Fig. 1



Fig. 2

Fig. 1 Serum leucine aminopeptidase from 8 newborns with ABO-Immunization. Maximal serum bilirubin was 15.5-29 mg/100 ml.

Fig. 2 Serum leucine aminopeptidase from 11 newborns with Rh-Immunization. Maximal serum bilirubin was 16.0-40.0 mg/100 ml.

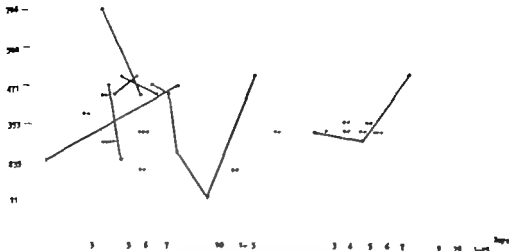
LST/our
ml/100


Fig. 3

Fig. 4.

Fig. 3. Serum leucine aminopeptidase from 29 newborns with idiopathic icterus. Maximal serum bilirubin was > 20 mg/100 ml.

Fig. 4. Serum leucine aminopeptidase from 33 newborns with idiopathic icterus. Maximal serum bilirubin was 15.0–18.89 mg/100 ml.

were 4.57 ml./mm³ Serum transaminases were SGO-T 15 units (Karmen) SGP T 10 units (Karmen) Serum leucine aminopeptidase was 206 units. A third blood exchange was made and serum bilirubin was 20 mg/100 ml the following day Reticulocytes 5.5% of 4.5 ml./mm³ red corpuscles. On the fifth day of life serum bilirubin was 11.0 mg/100 ml with negative direct reaction, leucine aminopeptidase 647 units thymol 0.03. The child appeared to be well without any neurologic signs deviating from normal. It had normal colored stools. It was sent home at age 6 days.

In the newborn infants group,—with idiopathic hyperbilirubinemia and where the highest serum bilirubin did not exceed 18.9 mg/100 ml, one infant had a leucine aminopeptidase value of 500 units and the rest had 441 units or less. The

group was composed of 28 infants on whom 66 determinations of serum leucine aminopeptidase was made.

One of the newborns in the group with idiopathic hyperbilirubinemia where the highest serum bilirubin value was 20 mg/100 ml or more, had a pathologic aminopeptidase value (706 units); three infants reached 500 units. The group was composed of 29 infants on whom 60 enzyme determinations were made. The infant with the high leucine aminopeptidase value of 706 units had the following clinical data. It was born in normal delivery at the birth weight of 4180 g. At age 3 days, serum bilirubin was 20 mg/100 ml with negative direct reaction, hemoglobin was 18.0 g/100 ml, and red corpuscles were 4.5 ml./mm³ The following day serum bilirubin was 22 mg/100 ml, hemoglobin was 17.4 g/100 ml. Exchange

transfusion was not made. Leucine aminopeptidase in serum was 706 units at age 4 days and two days later 441 units. The infant appeared consistently well and had normal and colored stools.

Discussion

The leucine aminopeptidase activity is usually expressed in units but the unit definition varies: different substrates and method modifications and different types of colorimeters have been used. It is therefore often difficult to compare the results of different authors. It is usual to define an enzyme unit as the activity that releases one gamma naphthylamine from the substrate during 2 hours incubation at 37 C. In the present work, one hour incubation was used but because the rate of the enzyme process during the first hour is calculated to be constant [8, 13] the doubled values of the author are comparable. Goggel and co-workers [9] have for normal adults a mean value of 483 units/ml with the upper limit of 664 units for men and 740 for women. Gohr [7] indicates the upper normal limit as 750 units/ml. Nikkilä [15] also finds similar normal values but 3 of the 28 cases investigated by the latter have the values about 1000 units/ml.

The mean values given in Table I of the present work correspond to those of the mentioned authors and to those given by Müller [14]. A tendency to higher normal values in tests from umbilical cord and from normal newborns than in tests from children can be traced in the authors' results which also corresponds to results of other researchers.

Pineda & co-workers [1] maintain that

at "physiologic" icterus or hemolytic conditions in the newborn infant the leucine aminopeptidase activity in serum should be normal. Two of the 80 newborn infants with hyperbilirubinemia investigated in the present work had pathological serum values. The increase of the enzyme was clear but not up to the very high level, which is reported to exist in biliary atresia or sometimes in different conditions of choledochus obstruction [18].

One of these two patients was included in the group idiopathic hyperbilirubinemia and had the highest serum bilirubin value in its group (30 mg/100 ml) and the other belonging to the Rh hemolytic diseased infants had the next highest serum bilirubin value (25 mg/100 ml) among these.

At hyperbilirubinemia conditions in newborn infants so-called inspissated bile syndrome is sometimes found as a complication and at Rh hemolytic disease frequency figures of 8-10% have been stated [6, 21].

Whether the increased serum aminopeptidase values in the two patients must be interpreted as expressions for an early subclinical cholestatic condition of similar type as inspissated bile syndrome is unclear. Otherwise the infants had no signs of cholestasis. They had thus consistently normal and colored stools and negative direct reaction at bilirubin determination. Also after discharge from hospital they showed no complications.

Summary

The normal values for serum leucine aminopeptidase using the method of Green *et al* and Braun-Falco & Salléhl have been established in normal newborn

From the Swedish Medical Research Council Unit for Paediatric Haematology and the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, Sweden

Studies on Erythro-Kinetics in Infancy

V Estimations of the Life Span of Red Cells in the Newborn

by LARS GARBY STIC SJÖLIN and JEAN-CLAUDE VUILLE

The life span of normal red cells in adults is well known, but the life span of the red cells formed during foetal life and during the new born period is still a matter of considerable dispute since published estimates are both approximate and conflicting [1, 2, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12, 13, 15]. The present communication deals with an analysis of data obtained in previous studies [4, 5] concerning the kinetic behaviour of radio-iron injected during the neonatal period. The estimates obtained on the basis of these data although approximate indicate that the life span of red cells formed during foetal life and during the neonatal period is significantly shorter than that of adult normal red cells.

The life span of red cells formed during the foetal period

In a previous publication [4], data were presented concerning the relative rate of synthesis of HbF and HbA during the first 20 weeks after birth. As will be shown below these data provide a basis for an estimate of the life span of red cells formed during the latter part of intra uterine life.

This investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council and by grants (Research Project 184/RB) from the International Atomic Energy Agency Vienna.

Let S and S^A be the rates of synthesis of HbF and HbA at any time t , and let D^F and D^A be the rates of destruction of the two haemoglobins at the same time. If M and M^A are the amounts of HbF and HbA circulating in the blood at time t

$$S^F - D^F = \frac{dM}{dt} \quad (1a)$$

$$\text{and} \quad S^A - D^A = \frac{dM^A}{dt} \quad (1b)$$

Let $S/S^A = R$ and substitute M for $C^F \Gamma$ and M^A for $C^A \Gamma$ where C^F and C^A are the concentrations of HbF and HbA respectively and Γ is the blood volume. On dividing equations (1) we have

$$R = \frac{\frac{dC^F \Gamma}{dt} + D^F}{\frac{dC^A \Gamma}{dt} + D^A} \quad (2)$$

Destruction coefficients q and q^A are defined thus,

$$q^F = D^F/M = D^F/C^F \Gamma \quad (3a)$$

$$q^A = D^A/M^A = D^A/C^A \Gamma \quad (3b)$$

By substitution,

- BARO J. A., LEVITAN R., GELIN S. S. and SILVERBERG M.: Serum leucine aminopeptidase. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 47 1962.
19. SIEGEL, I. A.: Leucine aminopeptidase in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynec*, 14 488, 1959
20. SMITH, E. L.: The specificity of certain peptidases. *Advances in Enzymology Inter science* N Y 12: 196, 1951
21. STENFELT, R., BROMAN B., FLORENCIO, E. E. and KESTERHEDEN R. Obstructive jaundice complicating hemolytic disease of the newborn. *Pediatrics*, 17 471 1954.
22. WISENBERG, B. H. and CARAY TL. C. M. The clinical usefulness of the serum leucine aminopeptidase. *South Med J* 54 39 1961.
23. WITT, T. K.: Bestimmung von Bilirubin in kleinen Blutmengen (Citratblut). *Z Physiol Chem* 278 120, 1942.

Submitted May 16, 1963
Accepted August *6, 1963

Department of Pediatrics
Lamarckstr
Lund
S. eden

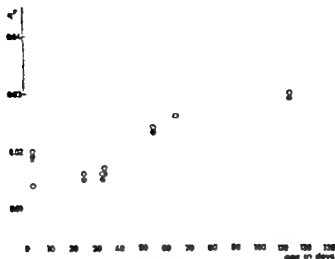


Fig. 1 The destruction coefficient q^r plotted as a function of age. Each infant is represented by three points, ● ○ and ◐ corresponding to assumptions of the magnitude of the destruction coefficient q^A of 0.00, 0.003, and 0.02 respectively

of q^r . Since the relation (5) contains two unknowns, both values of q^r and q^A will remain unknown unless a value for one or the other can be given in advance. Now since the two quantities are related, as shown in eq. (5) (i.e. an increase in q^A must give a corresponding increase in q^r), it is obvious that a minimum estimate of q^r is obtained by simply letting $q^A = 0$. Larger values of q^A will only give larger values for q^r . Fig. 1 shows clearly that q^r increases with increasing age. This fact is understandable since the fraction of HbF containing cells reaching the age of death must increase with the infant's age and indeed become infinitely large towards the time when the last produced HbF-containing cell dies. It can also be seen from Fig. 1 that the estimated value of q^r during the first month of life is between 0.01 and 0.025 depending on the value assigned to q^A . Since the value of q^A cannot be accurately estimated, the value of q^r remains unknown within the

given limits but it seems difficult to escape the conclusion that it must exceed 0.01 per day. Since at the time of birth, the population is skew with a preponderance of young cells the above estimate of q^r is a minimum estimate of the q^r value corresponding to the hypothetical steady state. Thus, the mean cell life span of the HbF-containing cells present at birth and formed during the latter part of intra-uterine life must be shorter than $1/0.01 = 83$ days.

The life span of red cells formed during the neonatal period

In a previous publication [5] data were presented concerning the long term behaviour in circulating foetal and adult haemoglobin and in the faeces of radiolabelled HbF injected intravenously. It was found that the amount of radioactivity in circulating HbF usually showed definite signs of falling starting at about 60–80 days after injection. Also there were definite indica-

$$R = \frac{\frac{dC^O}{dt} \Gamma + q^O C^O \Gamma}{\frac{dC^A}{dt} + q^A C^A \Gamma} \quad (4)$$

and

$$q^O = \left[R \left(\frac{dC^A}{dt} + q^A C^A \Gamma \right) - \frac{dC^O}{dt} \Gamma \right] / C^O \Gamma \quad (5)$$

Values of R at different ages from 11 to 20 weeks of life were obtained by Garby, Bjölin & Vulle [4]. At the same time values for C^O and C^A were obtained, so that there remains only three unknown quantities in eq (5). The blood volume Γ however can be roughly predicted in each individual from the data of Bjölin, Velle & Cutbush [8], and of Elsson *et al.* [14]. It is a specific property of eq (5) that systematic errors in these predicted blood volumes will have only a slight effect on the values of q^O and q^A . We are thus left with a relation containing two unknowns. Some interesting properties of the two unknowns, q^O and q^A will now be considered and it will be shown that these properties can be used to reveal some non trivial facts about the unknowns and also about the life span of the red cell formed during the latter part of intrauterine life.

Equations (3) are exactly valid at any one time but since the absolute destruction rates D^O and D^A are unknown functions of time no general physiological significance can be attached to the quantities q^O and q^A . However in one specific situation, the quantity q has a specific physiological significance namely in the steady state where $S = D$ and $dM/dt = 0$. In this situation

$$D = M/T \quad (6)$$

where T is the mean cell life span of the red cells. From (3) and (6) it follows that

$$q = 1/T \quad (7)$$

Thus, the q 's are equal to the reciprocals of the mean cell life span of the red cells

in the steady state. In non-steady states such as we are dealing with at this period of life the age distribution of the circulating red cells is constantly changing. The number of cells reaching the expected age of death is therefore also constantly changing although there may be a constant and definite life span for each red cell. As a corollary the destruction coefficients q will also change with respect to time and if the age distribution is skew because of the non steady state the reciprocal of q will not be identical to the mean cell life span. For instance since the amount of circulating HbA increases during the period before birth it can be safely assumed that the age distribution of this haemoglobin at birth is such that its mean age is much less than it would have been in the corresponding steady state. The same argument is valid also in the case of the circulating HbF although the age distribution of this type of molecule at birth is presumably somewhat less skew. In fact simple calculations on the age distribution of the red cells at birth on the basis of the total haemoglobin content of the foetus during the months before birth show that regardless of the approximate nature of the data involved, the age distribution will always be skew with a dominance of young cells. Thus at the time of birth the values for both q^A and q^O are in all probability smaller than the same values obtained under the corresponding hypothetical steady state. An estimate of T (T^A and or T^O) on the basis of q -values during this period will thus always be an overestimate.

The data obtained on the values of E , C^A , C^O and I at different ages after birth [4] have been used to calculate the value

downward slope of the curve and by plotting the values of the differentials as a function of time. Since however there is a considerable time-lag in the incorporation of radioiron into the cells (of the order of 15-20 days, cf. Fig. 2) the downward slope of the curve is too slight to give correct values by the method indicated above. Also, since it has been shown [4] that some synthesis of HbF occurs during this age period, some reutilization of radioiron into HbF must have taken place. This phenomenon will also tend to lessen the slope of the downward part of the curve. Since the extent of re-utilization is not known, the appropriate correction for this phenomenon cannot be made. However even if it is assumed that no re-utilization at all takes place the data show that some 30% of all the HbF-containing cells survive only for 60-100 days. Thus, it seems that quite a considerable fraction of the cells formed during this period of life survive only for some 60-100 days.

The data on the faecal excretion of radioiron are in close accordance with this conclusion. The peak of excretion starts about 0 days after injection, and reaches a maximum at about 90-100 days. In order to interpret the timing of the excretion data in terms of the life span of the labelled cells, the excretion data must be corrected for the three phenomena that tend to delay the appearance of the radioiron in the faeces. In the first place there is delay caused by emptying of the bowel, this is probably only of the order of one day however. In the second place there is delay due to chemical processing of the haemoglobin to yield iron, the data presented by Garby & Noyes [3] on the fate of injected haemoglobin labelled with iron and the findings

of Noyes, Bothwell & Finch [11] on the fate of damaged red cells labelled with iron indicate that this time-lag is of the order of a few days. Finally since there is delay in the labelling of the cells (cf. above) all values after the start of the peak should be corrected for this delay: the "true" excretion peak must therefore be narrower than that found experimentally. It thus seems clear that, to judge from the excretion data, the bulk of the cells formed during the neonatal period survive only for some 65-100 days, a conclusion tallying with the one reached above.

Discussion

The analysis of the data given in this paper supports the idea that the mean cell life span of the red cells formed during foetal life and during the neonatal period is shorter than 120 days (which is the mean life span of red cells in adults). This conclusion is in agreement with that of some previous investigators, but is at variance with the conclusion reached by other workers.

Mollison [9] transfused placental and adult red cells simultaneously to newborn infants, and followed the fate of the transfused cells by differential agglutination. The results showed that the placental cells disappeared at a somewhat faster rate than the cells from the adult donor. The conclusion that the mean life span of the placental cells must be shorter than that of adult red cells is reinforced when it is borne in mind that the placental red-cell population contains a greater proportion of young cells.

Seeleman [12] transfused placental red cells to four infants aged 11 days and 6, 8, and 10 weeks respectively and found by the method of differential agglutination that the transfused cells disappeared by a constant fraction of roughly 0.8% per day. The disappearance rate varied considerably and no

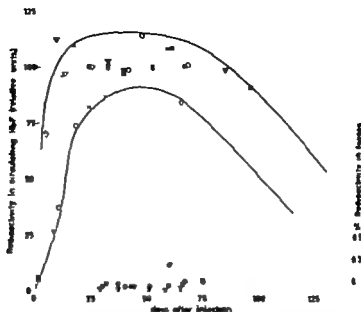


Fig. 2. The time course of the relative amount of radioiron in HbF and in faeces in infants after intravenous injection of radioiron during the neonatal period. Radioactivity in circulating HbF: Case Li, \square Case Bl, \circ Case Sj, $+$ Case Ls and Case Ja. Radioactivity in faeces: Case Bl, \blacksquare Case Ja, \bullet Case Sj and Case Ja.

tions that the amount of radioiron found in the faeces increased at about the same time. The data obtained in the five cases of that study (Li, Bl, Sj, Ls and Ja) are represented in a slightly different manner in Fig. 2. The amount of radioactivity present in circulating HbF in each case has here been normalized in order to facilitate a graphical comparison; each value for the percentage of the injected dose in circulating HbF was multiplied by a factor to make the relatively horizontal part of the curves between the 0th and 60th day coincide. The excretion of radioactivity in the three cases studied (Bl, Sj and Ja) was calculated as the percentage of the non-haemoglobin radioactivity in the body.

The data on the relative amount of radioactivity in HbF shown in Fig. 2

indicate very strongly that at least some of the HbF-containing cells formed during the first weeks after birth have a life span that is shorter than that of normal red cells of adults, i.e. shorter than 120 days. In fact some of them must have a life span of the order of 60–70 days only. The mean cell life span of the population of cells formed during this period of life cannot be evaluated with any precision, but the following considerations indicate very strongly that the mean cell life span is considerably shorter than 120 days. If there were immediate and complete incorporation of the radioiron into the red cell at the time of injection and if there were no re-utilization of radioiron in HbF, then the mean cell life span and the distribution of individual life spans about this mean value could be obtained by differentiation of the

hypothesis that the mean life span of these cells is shorter than the mean life span of adult red cells.

It is pointed out that if some of the

earlier work is reinterpreted, all data so far published are in favour of the hypothesis that the red cell life span is shorter during this period of life

References

1. DANCY, J. DAN IV B., KARRERER, J. and HALL, M. E. Haemoglobin metabolism in the premature infant. *J Pediatr*, 54 748, 1959
2. FOCORI, S. and SÖDERIN B. Survival of Cr^{51} -labelled red cells from newborn infants. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 5 suppl 117 18 1959
3. GARRY, L. and VOTER, W. D. Studies on hemoglobin metabolism II. Pathways of hemoglobin iron metabolism in normal man. *J Clin Invest*, 33 1484, 1959.
4. GARRY, L., SÖDERIN, B. and VOTER, J.-C. Studies on erythrokinetics in infancy II. The relative rate of synthesis of haemoglobin F and haemoglobin A during the first months of life. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 46, 1962.
5. GARRY, L., SÖDERIN, B. and VOTER, J.-C. Studies on erythrokinetics in infancy IV. The long-term behaviour of radioiron in circulating foetal and adult haemoglobin and its faecal excretion. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 53 33, 1964.
6. HOLLINGSWORTH, J. W. Lifespan of fetal erythrocytes. *J Lab Clin Med*, 45 409 1955.
7. KAPLAN, E. and HSU, K. S. Determination of erythrocyte survival in new-born infants by means of Cr^{51} -labelled erythrocytes. *Pediatrics*, 27 334, 1961.
8. MOLLISON P. L., VALL, V. and CUTTICK, M. Red cell volume and plasma volume in infants. *Arch Dis Child*, 25 1., 1950
9. MOLLISON P. L. *Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine*. Blackwell, Oxford, 1951
10. MOLLISON P. L. *Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine* 2nd ed., Blackwell, Oxford, 1956.
11. VOTER, W. D., BOTHWELL, T. H. and FIDON, C. A. The role of the reticulo-endothelial cell in iron metabolism. *Brit J Haemat*, 6 42, 1960
12. SCHWIMAN, I., SMITH, C. H. and STEIN, G. S. Studies on the anemia of prematurity. *Amer J Dis Child* 54 567 1954.
13. SEELIGER, K. Untersuchungen über die Erythropoese beim Neugeborenen und jungen Säugling. *Z Kinderheilk*, 74 189 1954.
14. SHAWY, T. B. C., LUND, C. J., WHEALEY, L. E. and TELFER, A. The blood volume of infants. I. The full term infant in the first year of life. *J Pediatr* 55 183, 1959.
15. VOTER, M. Physiologie und Pathologie des Neugeborenen. *Bibl Paediatr*, Fasc. 66. B. Karger Basel, 1959

Submitted June 6, 1963
Accepted June 29 1963

(S.S.) Department of Paediatrics
Akademiska sjukhuset
Uppsala
Sweden

corrections were made for possible changes in blood volume. Seeleman interpreted his results as indicating that the life span of the placental cells was 111 days, i.e. the reciprocal of the daily fractional disappearance but failed to note that this mode of calculation requires that the age distribution of the transfused cells be uniform. His results must probably be taken to signify that the mean cell life span of the placental cells is shorter than 111 days.

Vest [15] used the same technique in four premature infants, and found that the average disappearance fraction was in all cases greater than 0.9% per day. If it is assumed that the blood volume in these infants did not change appreciably and bearing in mind the non-uniformity of the transfused population, it must be concluded that Vest's results also indicate that the mean cell life span of the placental cells is shorter than that of adult red cells.

Several investigators (Hollingworth [6], Vest [15], Focconi & Sjölén [] and Kaplan & Ku Shin Hsu [7]) have labelled cord blood cells with radioactive chromium, and traced the disappearance of chromium activity in such cells after transfusion. If it is assumed that the "elution" of chromium *in vivo* is the same in adult and placental red cells, these studies indicate that the mean cell life span of placental cells is shorter than that of adult cells.

Schulman & Smith [1] estimated the total circulating number of red cells in premature infants during the first weeks of life from the plasma volume as measured by dye dilution. The decrease in the number of total circulating red cells during the first 5-6 weeks was between 11 and 13% per day in four premature infants. The reciprocal of this value i.e. 77-98 days is a maximum estimate of the mean cell life span in these infants, since it is calculated by assuming that no haemoglobin synthesis takes place during the period, and by assuming a uniform age distribution of the cells.

Dancis, *et al.* [1] followed the fate of ^{59}Fe administered orally as ammonium chloride or glycine in circulating haemoglobin in

three premature infants. They interpreted the data as showing that the life span of the red cells formed in these infants was "normal" i.e. about 120 days. An inspection of their findings however would seem to show that in two infants, ROM and ROL, the decrease in total circulating haemoglobin Δ already started at about 70-80th day for the administration of the label. Corrections for the delay in labelling and for re-utilization of the labelled nitrogen will reinforce the conclusion that the mean cell life span of the labelled cells is in fact considerably shorter than 120 days, unless a quite remarkable speed in individual life span is assumed. In the third infant TOR, an acute episode of haemolysis during the second month of life made any interpretation impossible.

Summing up the results of previous investigators it thus seems that all data so far collected favour the hypothesis that the mean cell life span of the red cells in the newborn whether these cells are formed before or after birth is shorter and possibly considerably shorter than 120 days. This conclusion is in good agreement with the findings now presented.

Whether the shorter mean cell life span during this age period is a result of a shorter potential life span or whether it is a result of external, more or less random, influences cannot be said at present although the data of Hollibon [9] rather favour the former view.

Summary

Data obtained in previous studies concerning the behaviour of radioiron in circulating foetal adult haemoglobin and the pattern of excretion of radioiron are analysed in terms of the life span of red cells formed during foetal life and the neonatal period.

The results are compatible only with the



Fig. 1. The patient at 11 days of age.

There is no history of illness, drug ingestion, exposure to X-ray or known toxins during the pregnancy. She did receive an injection of poliomyelitis vaccine during the first month. The mother has no past history of serious illnesses.

Clinal findings

The infant boy was delivered three weeks prematurely by Caesarean section performed because of maternal bleeding which began the previous day. His birth weight was 3300 g and his birth length was 50 cm. He was cyanotic and in respiratory distress immediately after delivery but there was improvement after oxygen administration. It was noted that the umbilical cord contained only

one umbilical artery. Because of an omphalocele and anal atresia the child was immediately transferred to the Pediatric Surgery Department, Karolinska Sjukhuset, Stockholm. He had a marked micrognathia with macroglossia and in an attempt to improve the airway the tongue was sutured before the transfer for surgery.

The child had surgical repair of the omphalocele and anal atresia on the day of birth. The omphalocele was described as being egg-sized and the pedicle was 1.5 cm in diameter. A portion of the small intestine was inside the omphalocele and it was found to be incarcerated and discoloured. Only one umbilical artery the right was found. A marked diamiasis recti was observed. The anal atresia was of the membranous type. There was thread-like perineal fistula from which meconium was obtained after probing. The external genitalia were normal.

Post-operatively the patient's general condition was poor and he continued to have respiratory distress with subcostal and sternal retractions but with no cyanosis. The thoracic cage was soft.

At 11 days of age the child (Fig. 1) was transferred from the Surgery Department of the Pediatric Clinic to the Medical Department. Physical examination revealed the following significant features in addition to those already described:

Scaphocephaly with premature synostosis of the sagittal suture; anterior fontanel (3.3 cm) with normal tension; pronounced micrognathia, a high-arched palate macroglossia; slight hypertelorism; very small palpebral openings; absence of epicanthic folds; and low-set malformed ears with folding-over of the upper border of the helix so that the upper margin formed a right angle with the descending part of the helix. There was mild scoliosis in the lumbar region. The thoracic cage was soft with respiratory retractions, but auscultatory findings of the chest were normal. There was no hepato-splenomegaly. The fingers and toes were unusually long and there was a distinct gap between the first and second toes. There was no simian line.



Fig. 2. Pneumoencephalogram showing marked dilatation of the ventricular system.

Neurological examination showed generalized hypotonia with hyporeactive Moro reflex and deep tendon reflexes. The stepping and walking reflexes were low.

Ophthalmological examination revealed blepharophimosis and colobomata of the irides on the nasal side in the lower half of each eye. The eye grounds were normal centrally but were not visualized peripherally.

The head circumference which measured 37 cm at birth, increased to 46 cm at two months of age and at the time of death when the patient was 3½ months old, the head circumference measured 50 cm.

A bone marrow aspirate was obtained after immature, atypical, vacuolated mononuclear

cells were noticed in the peripheral blood. The marrow contained a large number of vacuolated mononuclear cells but was otherwise normal.

An X-ray of the skull and a pneumoencephalogram showed synostosis of the sagittal suture and marked dilatation of the ventricular system (Fig. 2). Other radiographic examination showed the presence of a hiatus hernia, malrotation of the small intestine and dilatation of the left renal pelvis. The results of special investigations are summarized in Table 1.

At the age of two months, the infant (weighting 34.0 g) was transferred from the Paediatric Clinic, Hattimäki Spjukhuset to a

TABLE 1 *Summary of special investigations of the patient*

| Examination | Age of patient (days) | Results |
|---|-----------------------|---|
| X-ray | | |
| Skull | 13 | Skull abnormally long and narrow. Premature synostosis of sagittal suture. Other sutures abnormally wide. Fontanelle open. |
| Pneumoencephalography | 27 | Marked dilatation of ventricular and cisternal system. Impression marked central atrophy of the brain (Fig. 2). |
| Chest | 13 | Thorax slightly deformed with an increase in the AP diameter. Lungs and heart shadow normal. Diaphragm low. |
| Spine | 16 | No anomalies of vertebrae. Slight scoliosis in the lumbar region. |
| Pelvis | 16 | Iliac index normal, 96. |
| Barium swallow esophagus | 16 | Esophagus curving which is explained by a sliding hiatus hernia. |
| Cine-roentgen of mouth and pharynx during swallow | 17 | Smaller than normal space between the root of the tongue and the posterior wall of the pharynx. |
| GI series | 20 | Malrotation of small intestine. Hiatus hernia. |
| Barium enema | 18 | Anus normal at rest and during defecation. |
| IVP | 16 | Normal excretion on left side. Moderate dilatation of left pelvis. Left ureter normal. Right renal pelvis not visualized. |
| Urethrocytography | 17 | Reflex during micturition to right ureter and right pelvis. Slight dilatation of right ureter and pelvis. No reflex on the left side. A dilated utricle in proximal urethra was demonstrated. |
| EEO | 21 | Normal. |
| Serum creatinine | | 1.3 mg %. |
| NPV | | 37 mg %. |
| Spinal fluid | | Normal. |
| Hgb | | 15.9 g %. |
| WBC | | Varying between 14,000 and 42,000. |
| Platelets | | Varying between 480,000 and 990,000. |
| Urinary sediment | | Normal. |
| Urinary proteins | | Slightly positive. |
| Phenylpyruvic acid | | Not found in urine. |

local hospital where the child's general condition remained poor until he died at 2½ months of age.

Cytological studies

The analysis of the patient's chromosomes was based on the study of cell cultures derived from one bone marrow and two skin biopsies. Four primary cell cultures and their subcultures were examined from each biopsy material and the technique developed in this laboratory [5] was used throughout. A total of 102 undamaged cells in mitotic metaphase were counted, including 76 from skin and

26 from bone marrow. Fourteen metaphase plates from skin and one from bone marrow were studied in detail by enlarged photomicrographs. In each instance the karyotype contained only four small acrocentrics and one chromosome which could not be matched. This odd chromosome was submetacentric and had about the same length as chromosome 18. The long arm appeared to be the same length as the short arm of number 4 or 5, and the short arm had about the same length as the long arm of number 21 or 22.

In most of the plates one of the small acrocentric chromosomes was identified as a

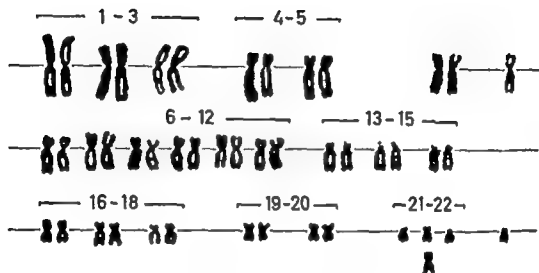


Fig. 3. Karyotype of the index case. There are only three chromosomes in the 21-22 group and one unpaired chromosome (placed below group 21-22) with submedian centromere.

X chromosome because of the morphological features of straight chromatids which were more parallel than in the other three acrocentrics and the presence of a terminal centromere. The number of satellited small chromosomes never exceeded three in any of the preparations. The karyotype is shown in Fig. 3. Cells derived from skin and bone marrow by culture were negative for sex chromatin.

Chromosome studies on the parent were carried out on cultures derived from skin biopsies. Analysis of the cells from the father revealed a normal male karyotype. Analysis of 81 undamaged cells derived from the mother showed a chromosome number of 46. Sixteen metaphases were studied in detail by

enlarged photomicrographs. There were only three small acrocentric chromosomes. In addition to the same unusual chromosome present in the karyotype of her son, one of the chromosomes in group 4-5 lacked the short arm (Fig. 4). Typical sex chromatin was found in 45% of the interphase nuclei of skin. The results of the chromosome analyses are summarized in Table 1.

The most likely interpretation of the chromosome abnormality in the mother is a translocation involving a chromosome of group 4-5 and a member of group 1-22. The translocation chromosome with submedian centromere was transmitted to her son, who probably was effectively trisomic for the short arm of a chromosome 4 or 5.

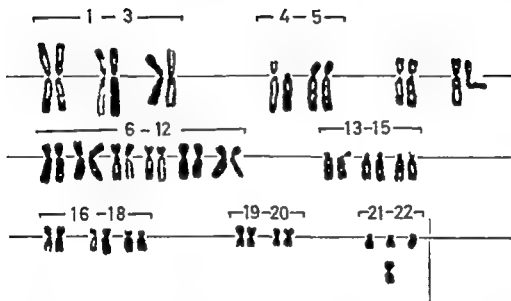


Fig. 4. Karyotype of the mother showing lack of the short arm of member of group 4-5, absence of member of group 21-22, and presence of unpaired chromosome similar to that found in the index case.

Discussion

The translocation found in the present family is probably reciprocal. Theoretically an individual heterozygous for a reciprocal translocation can produce many kinds of gametes. The behaviour of reciprocal translocations in plants [8] and in the mouse [7] indicates that the gametic output consists mainly of four types. In the family under discussion these four types of gametes produced by the mother and the corresponding zygotes resulting after fer-

tilization with a normal sperm are illustrated in Fig. 5. The first type of gamete shows the translocation chromosome and a normal chromosome no 4 or 5. The zygote formed by the union of this gamete and a normal male gamete has the same chromosome constitution as the index patient, who is effectively trisomic for most of the short arm of no 4 or 5. The second type of gamete is normal. The third type of gamete contains a chromosome no. 4 or 5 with loss of most of the short arm and the

TABLE 2 *Summary of chromosome analyses of the patient and his parents.*

| | Chromosome counts | | | | Karyotype interpretation |
|----------------|-------------------|----|----|----|---|
| | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | |
| <i>Patient</i> | | | | | |
| Skin | 1 | 74 | 3 | 0 | 4-5/21-22 translocation |
| Bon marrow | 1 | 24 | 1 | 0 | 4-5/21-22 translocation |
| <i>Mother</i> | | | | | |
| Skin | | 49 | | | 4-5/21-22 translocation Lack of the short arm of a chromosome (4-5) |
| <i>Father</i> | | | | | |
| Skin | | 15 | | | Normal karyotype |

translocation chromosome. The zygote formed by the union of this gamete and a normal male gamete would have the same karyotype as the mother and would probably develop into a phenotypically normal individual. This individual would however again produce gametes of the same four types. The fourth type of gamete shows a chromosome no. 4 or 5 with loss of most of its short arm and a normal chromosome 21. The corresponding zygote resulting from the union with a normal male gamete would be grossly deficient and perhaps inviable.

Some cases other than mongols, with multiple congenital malformations associated with translocations have been reported. Edwards *et al* [9] described two families in each of which the father was presumed to have an autosomal reciprocal translocation as a result of which both children in one family and one of three children in the other showed mental retardation and multiple malformations. The translocations were probably between chromosomes nos. 9 and 4 in the

first family and chromosomes nos. 1 and 6 in the second family. A case of 18-trisomy resulting from a translocation of most of the long arm of a no. 18 to a chromosome in the (13-15) group was reported by Brodie & Dalkaire [4]. The translocation was also present in the clinically normal mother. Another case with the clinical signs of trisomy 18 syndrome due to a translocation was recently reported [18].

A mother who had had one abortion and three other children who died in early infancy was found to be a carrier of a translocation between a small acrocentric from the group (21-22) and a chromosome of group (17-18) [19].

It is possible that, in the family under discussion, the two embryos lost by miscarriages were chromosomally unbalanced. Some mothers who are heterozygous for a 13-15/21 translocation and have produced children with mongolism carrying this translocation have been found to have a high frequency of miscarriages [13, 20, 23].

Abnormalities in growth and development of about the same severity as found

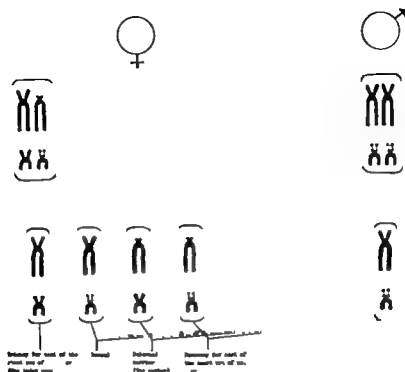


Fig. 5. Schematic drawing showing the four main types of zygotes resulting from the mating between normal father and mother who is carrier of the translocation chromosome.

in this patient are also seen in the (13-15)-trisomy syndrome and the 18-trisomy syndrome.

None of the three established autosomal syndromes, that is, 21 trisomy (13-15)-trisomy or 18-trisomy have the malformation syndrome of this case although some of the features of the present case are a common finding in them. Muscular hypotonia, low-set malformed ears, colobomata of the irides and small palpebral openings are common findings in the (13-15)-trisomy syndrome and micrognathia, a high-arched palate, low-set malformed ears, renal anomaly and unusually long fingers in the 18-trisomy syndrome. Muscular hypotonia, macrognathia, a high-arched palate, ears with an

angular folded upper helix and a distinct gap between the first and second toes which are common findings in mongolism were also found in this patient.

The finding in the present case of a missing umbilical artery is interesting because of the association between absence of one umbilical artery and malformations [2, 11].

The abnormalities in the cases with absent umbilical artery are mostly multiple and not confined to any particular system but obstructive lesions or lesions of the gastrointestinal and urinary tracts are common. There is no definite indication of the cause of the absence of the umbilical artery or of its exact role in the frequent association with malformations. Absence

of one umbilical artery has been found in cases of 18 trisomy [14-18] in (13-15)-trisomy [1] and in mongolism [Gustavson, unpublished data].

Summary

Cytogenetical and clinical observations of a child with multiple congenital malformations are reported. Some of the features present are found regularly in patients with established autosomal syndromes, but many others present in this patient are not common to them. Le marked hydrocephalus, malrotation of the small intestines, absence of one umbilical artery, omphalocele and anal atresia.

Chromosome studies showed a chromosome number of 46 and an XY sex chromosome constitution. There were only three chromosomes in group (1-22) and

there was an odd small submetacentric chromosome which could not be paired. The mother who was phenotypically normal, had a chromosome number 46. An odd small submetacentric chromosome similar to that found in the karyotype of her son was present and in addition, one of the chromosomes in group (4-5) lacked the short arm. The paternal karyotype was normal. The most likely interpretation of the chromosome abnormality in the mother is a reciprocal translocation involving a chromosome in group (4-5) and a member of group (21-22). This translocation chromosome was transmitted to her son who was effectively trisomic for the short arms of a member of group (4-5).

Notes added in proof: Further studies have revealed the maternal grandfather of the proband to be carrier of the same translocation found in the cells of his daughter and grandson.

References

1. ATKINS, L., O'SULLIVAN M. A. and PRYLES, C. V. Mongolism in three siblings with 46 chromosomes. *New Engl J Med* 266: 622, 1962.
2. BOURNE, G. L. and BRETHERICK, K. J. Absent umbilical artery: review of 113 cases. *Arch Dis Child*, 35: 824, 1960.
3. BRAY P. F. and MUKHERJEE, D. H. A chromosome anomaly in an infant with a degenerative disease of the central nervous system. *J Pediatr* 63: 230, 1963.
4. BROUKE, H. R. and DALLAIRE, L. The E syndrome (trisomy 17 18) resulting from a maternal chromosomal translocation. *Canad Med Ass J* 87: 559, 1962.
5. BÖCK, J. A., RANTERÖO, B. and ZETTER, QUIST P. Association between congenital heart malformation and chromosomal variations. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 50: 217, 1961.
6. CARTER, C. O., HANSTON J. L., POLANI, P. E., GUWALY A. and WELLES, S. D. V. Chromosome translocation as cause of familial mongolism. *Lancet* 2: 678, 1960.
7. CARTER, T. C., LYON M. F. and PHILLIPS, R. J. C. Further genetic studies of eleven translocations in the mouse. *J Genet*, 55: 462, 1956.
8. DALLINGTON O. D. *Recent Advances Cytology* 2nd ed., Churchill, London, 1937.
9. EDWARDS, J. H., FRACCARO M., DAVIES, P. and LYON, R. B. Structural heterozygosity in man: analysis of two families. *Ann Hum Genet* 26: 163, 1962.
10. EDWARDS, J. H., HAREDEX, D. G., CANNON, A. H., CROSER, V. M. and WOLFE, O. H. A new trisomic syndrome. *Lancet*, 1: 767, 1960.
11. FAIRMAN, E. Significance of one umbilical artery. *Arch Dis Child*, 35: 385, 1960.
12. FRACCARO, M., KANER, K. and LINDSTEDT, J. Chromosomal abnormalities in father and mongol child. *Lancet* 1: 724-727, 1960.
13. GERMAN J. L., DE MAYO A. P. and BEAR, A. G. Inheritance of an binomial chromosome in Down's syndrome (mongolism) with leukemia. *Amer J Hum Genet* 14: 31, 1961.
14. GERMAN J. L., RANKIN J. K., HANSTON, P. A., DOZOVAN D. J., HOGAN, W. J. and BEAR, A. G. Autosomal trisomy of group 16-18 chromosome. *J Pediatr* 69: 503, 1961.
15. GUSTAVSON K. H. Chromosomal translocation in a mongoloid girl with some atypical features. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 51: 337, 1962.
16. HENRY F., BRYANT J., ARAKAKI, D., KAYLAN E., GENTILE, G. Trisomy 16 syndrome due to a new translocation. *Lancet*, 1: 114, 1963.
17. LERNMARK, U. and FORSMAN H. Chromosome complement in a mongoloid mother, her child, and the child's father. *Lancet*, 1: 498, 1960.

18. LEWIS, A. J. Autosomal trisomy *Lancet* 1 880, 1962.
19. D. LOHME, C. O. and VALKENBURG, J. J. A case of translocation 21 22/17 18. *Lancet*, 1 1108, 1963.
20. MACINTYRE, M. N., STAPLES, W. J., STEINBERG, A. G. and HENKEL, J. M. Familial mongolism (trisomy 21 syndrome) resulting from "15-21 chromosome translocation in more than three generations of a large kindred. *Amer J Hum Genet*, 14 335, 1962.
21. MILLER, J. Q., ALKAY, M., PICARD, E., WARNER, B. and GERALD, P. S. A specific congenital defect of brain associated with 13-15 trisomy. *Amer J Dis Child*, 104 532, 1962.
22. PATAU, K., SMITH, D. W., THIRSK, E., INGRAM, S. L. and WAGNER, H. P. Multiple congenital anomaly caused by an extra autosome. *Lancet*, 1 790, 1960.
23. PEDROSE, L. S. and DELEANTY, J. B. A. Familial Langdon Down anomaly with chromosomal fusion. *Ann Hum Genet*, London, 25 43, 1961.
24. PEDROSE, L. S., ELLIS, J. B. and DELEANTY, J. D. A. Chromosomal translocations in mongolism and in normal relatives. *Lancet*, 2 409, 1960.
25. POLANI, P. E., BRIDGES, J. H., FORD, C. E., CLARK, C. M. and BIRN, J. M. A mongol girl with 46 chromosomes. *Lancet* 1 71 1960.

Submitted July 1, 1963

Accepted July 8, 1963

The Institute for Medical Genetics
University of Uppsala
V Agatan 4
Uppsala
Sweden

CASE REPORT

Choroid Plexus Papilloma and Infantile Hydrocephalus

by IRÈNE SJÖGREN GUNNAR GROTTÉ and LARS OLDING

From the Departments of Paediatrics, Paediatric Surgery and Pathology I University of Uppsala, Sweden

Choroid plexus papilloma were described for the first time in 183^o by Guérard in Paris. Up to now a total of 160 cases has been described [1 25]. Among Cushing's 9000 cases of verified intracranial tumors [5] 12 were cases of choroid plexus papilloma giving a frequency of 0.6%. Other investigations of their frequency give similar information [1 12, 25]. Choroid plexus papilloma occur more frequently in women than in men [1]. In children they are more common than in grown ups [19 24 25] and occur with a frequency of 3.9% of all intracranial tumors [4]. In 4 cases choroid plexus papilloma have been described in newborns [2 7 13 17].

In a Swedish material of 25 cases [1] of choroid plexus papilloma 15 were localized in the fourth ventricle 2 in the third and 8 in the lateral ventricles, usually in the left [10 24]. In children they are generally localized in the lateral ventricles. One case with tumors in both lateral ventricles at the same time has been reported [20]. Metastatic seeding has been observed in 11 cases out of 86 [19].

The symptoms are generally non specific with headache dizziness, nausea

and vomiting. Depending upon the localization and size of the tumor paresis of the eye muscles, protrusion of the papilla, impairment of vision, ataxia and tinnitus may occur. In half the cases hydrocephalus occurs, and this is practically always the case in children [19].

The cerebrospinal fluid is usually xanthochromous and shows a rise in protein content (100-500 mg %) [1 13, 17 18, 23, 25], although low total protein contents may also occur [9 20].

X ray investigations often show enlargement of the skull, distension of the sutures, reduced thickness of the skull bones and sometimes calcium deposits inside the tumor [4].

With respect to the pathological anatomy [5 8 19 23], the papilloma may show a considerable variation in size from the size of a pea to that of a mandarin orange. They are often soft, plastic and able to adapt their forms to that of the ventricles. Sometimes, though, they may erode and protrude into the cerebral parenchyma, which gives an impression of malignant infiltrating growth. But even if there is clinical malignity most choroid plexus papilloma show a benign histologi-

cal picture, in principle in accordance with the ordinary structures of the choroid plexus. In a Swedish material of 11 cases [21], only one case is reported with definite criteria of histological malignancy in the form of infiltrative growth. Hemorrhagic edema and cysts are common in choroid plexus papilloma. Calcifications may sometimes occur to such an extent that the papilloma is visible in X ray pictures.

The choroid plexus tumors should be treated by surgical excision [14, 25]. Treatment with X rays is of very little value for these in general cellular benign tumors. Cerebrospinal fluid-shunt operations may be of temporary value when the tumor obstructs the aqueduct [25]. The mortality in these operations reaches a total of about 50% and for papilloma in the lateral ventricles about 25%. Of Matsuoka & Crofton's operated cases, 4 out of 15 died, 4 are reported to be retarded and 7 quit normal [18].

It is of importance for the prognosis that the choroid plexus papilloma should be diagnosed and extirpated in time. It has long been questioned whether hydrocephalus can be the result of over production of cerebrospinal fluid alone [22]. For this reason we consider ourselves justified in presenting and discussing an unusual case which began in the newborn period and which illustrates, firstly the difficulties of diagnosing choroid plexus papilloma in advanced hydrocephalus secondly that overproduction of cerebrospinal fluid alone seems to have been responsible for the hydrocephalus in this case and finally that the flow capacity of the Spitz Holter valve is insufficient when the production of cerebrospinal fluid is increased.

Case Report

The patient, a 3-month-old boy was admitted to hospital on account of rapidly progressing hydrocephalus. There was nothing of interest in his hereditary history. His mother was healthy. She had been exposed to German measles during the first three months of pregnancy but had probably had the disease as a child, so she was not taken ill. The birth, at the Luleå Maternity Clinic was normal, by vertex presentation at the calculated time. Birth weight 3730 g. Skull circumference at birth 35 cm. H was lively at normally and developed normally for the first two months. Then his parents observed the "sunset phenomenon" as the first symptom and thereafter increasing skull growth. When 3 months old, he was found to be a clear case of expansive hydrocephalus at the Child-Welfare Clinic and was admitted to the Children's Hospital in Boden. The circumference of the skull was then 49 cm. His psycho-motor development was retarded. He could fix his gaze but not grasp things. Neurologically there was clear spastic diplegia with clonus of the feet etc. Lumbar cisternography showed communicating hydrocephalus with very much enlarged lateral ventricles. The thickness of the brain parenchyma was measured as a little over 1 cm frontally as well as occipitally. Enlargement of the third ventricle was observed. The passage through the aqueduct was free. The cerebrospinal fluid was normal, no increase in cell content, and protein content was 55 mg%. Blood counts normal. Wasserman and toxoplasmosis titers negative.

When 4 months old, he was operated on at the Children's Surgical Clinic in Uppsala with a ventriculo-caval shunt with normal-pressure valve of medium Spitz Holter and was given antibiotics. The skull growth continued nevertheless, and in spite of several revisions and a shunt operation on the other side at the age of 6 months there was no sign of diminishing skull growth. The circumference was then 60 cm. At 7 months a new revision was performed at

CASE REPORT

Choroid Plexus Papilloma and Infantile Hydrocephalus

by IRÉNE SJÖGREN GUNNAR GROTHE and LARS OLDING

From the Departments of Pediatrics, Pediatric Surgery and Pathology I, University of Uppsala, Sweden

Choroid plexus papilloma were described for the first time in 183^o by Guérard in Paris. Up to now a total of 160 cases has been described [1-25]. Among Cushing's 2000 cases of verified intracranial tumors [5], 12 were cases of choroid plexus papilloma giving a frequency of 0.6%. Other investigations of their frequency give similar information [1, 12, 25]. Choroid plexus papilloma occur more frequently in women than in men [1]. In children they are more common than in grown ups [10, 24, 25] and occur with a frequency of 3.9% of all intracranial tumors [4]. In 4 cases choroid plexus papilloma have been described in newborns [3, 7, 13, 17].

In a Swedish material of 25 cases [1] of choroid plexus papilloma 15 were localized in the fourth ventricle, 2 in the third and 8 in the lateral ventricles, usually in the left [19, 24]. In children they are generally localized in the lateral ventricle. One case with tumors in both lateral ventricles at the same time has been reported [20]. Metastatic seeding has been observed in 9 cases out of 86 [10].

The symptoms are generally non-specific with headache, dizziness, nausea

and vomiting. Depending upon the localization and size of the tumor paresis of the eye muscles, protrusion of the papilla, impairment of vision, ataxia and tinnitus may occur. In half the cases hydrocephalus occurs, and this is practically always the case in children [10].

The cerebrospinal fluid is usually xanthochromous and shows a rise in protein content (100-500 mg %) [1, 13, 17, 18, 22, 25], although low total protein contents may also occur [9, 20].

X-ray investigations often show enlargement of the skull, distension of the sutures, reduced thickness of the skull bones and sometimes calcium deposits inside the tumor [4].

With respect to the pathological anatomy [5, 8, 19, 23], the papilloma may show a considerable variation in size, from the size of a pea to that of a mandarin orange. They are often soft, plastic and able to adapt their forms to that of the ventricles. Sometimes, though, they may erode and protrude into the cerebral parenchyma which gives an impression of malignant infiltrating growth. But even if there is clinical malignancy most choroid plexus papilloma show a benign histologi-

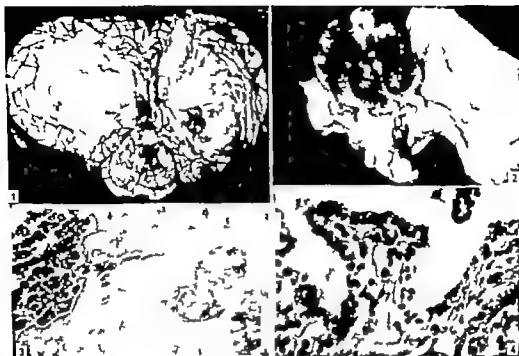


Fig. 1 Hydrocephalic brain with plexus papilloma protruding from the bottom of the wide right hand, lateral ventricle.

Fig. 2 The section surface of the tumor

Fig. 3. Microphotograph of the tumor tissue with extensive necrosis and vascular thrombosis. Weigert van Gieson, $\times 25$.

Fig. 4 Higher magnification of papilloma structure Weigert van Gieson, $\times 500$.

phalus progressed, however in spite of the fact that the shunt functioned well, as was verified at a later operation. Similar observations have been made by others [16] and motivated an investigation of the flow capacity of the Spitz Holter valve at different pressure gradients.

The Holter valve is manufactured in three different types [11] intended to hold a "restriction pressure" of 10 mm H_2O (subdural valve) .5 mm ("medium") and 4 mm ("normal"). With a pressure gradient of 170 mm the "medium valve" gives 200 ml fluid in 4 hours but with a reduction of the pressure gradient to 70 mm it gives only 43 ml

during the same period. The valve is thus very pressure-sensitive i.e. small variations in pressure can produce very large variations in flow. The pressure difference varies furthermore with the pressure on the outlet, in the superior caval vein and in the right atrium, where it is reported to vary between +100 and -50 during rest. For a more detailed discussion of these problems, see some recent papers by Forrest [10] and Macnab [16]. Neither the variations in volume of the normal cerebrospinal flow nor its upper limit under pathological circumstances are known at present. The data cited above concerning the flow capacity of the valve

give reason to suspect that it may in some cases be below the cerebrospinal fluid production and that the combination of increasing hydrocephalus and functioning valve may thus be explained.

In secondary infection with persisting bacteremia in a functioning Holter valve one may be forced to exteriorize the caval catheter. These cases might provide a clue to the volume of cerebrospinal fluid production and its variations. The case discussed above can be considered to show that choroid plexus papilloma contribute to an abnormally raised cerebrospinal fluid production and that the Holter valve does not then always give adequate drainage.

Summary

Choroid plexus papilloma occur with a frequency of less than 4% of all intracranial tumors in childhood. In children they usually give hydrocephalus and xanthochromous cerebrospinal fluid with a rise in protein content. A case is presented illustrating the difficulties of diagnosing choroid plexus papilloma in advanced hydrocephalus. Over production of cerebrospinal fluid seems to have been responsible for the hydrocephalus in this case. Insufficient flow capacity of the Holter valve when the production of cerebrospinal fluid is increased, is discussed.

References

1. BOHM, E. and STRAUSS, R.: Choroid plexus papilloma. *J Neurosurg* 18 493, 1961.
2. BRAUNSTEIN, H. and MARTIN, F.: Congenital papilloma of choroid plexus. Report of a case with observations on pathogenesis of associated hydrocephalus. *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chicago)*, 88 478, 1955.
3. O'CONNELL, J. E. A.: Intracranial meningiomas associated with other tumors involving the central nervous system. *Br J Surg* 48 373, 1960.
4. CHURTON, F. D. and MATSON, D. D.: Roentgenologic study of choroid plexus papillomas in childhood. *Amer J Roentgenol* 84(1) 479 1960.
5. CUSHING, J.: *Intracranial Tumors*. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, 1932.
6. DAVIS, L. E. and CUSHING, H.: Papillomas of the choroid plexus. *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chicago)*, 13 681 1932.
7. DRECHSLER, G. A.: Papillary tumor of the choroid plexus in a newborn. *Arch Path (Chicago)*, 21 390, 1939.
8. DUREK, H.: Zur Frage des primären Carcinoms des Plexus choroideus. *Zbl Allg Path*, 100 138, 1938.
9. FAIRBURN, R.: Choroid plexus papilloma and its relation to hydrocephalus. *J Neurosurg* 17 164, 1960.
10. FURBER, D. M.: Flow characteristics of the Spitz-Holter valve. *Develop Med Child Neurol*, 4 295, 1962.
11. GRANHOLM, L.: Operativ behandling av hydrocephalus. *Acta orthopæd*, 1 4, 1962.
12. HERRICK, R. L.: Papilloma of the choroid plexus. *Arch Surg* 4 755, 1941.
13. HARTZ, L.: Papillom des Plexus choroideus eines Neugeborenen. *Zbl Allg Path*, 78: 497 1961.
14. LAURENCE, K. M.: The pathology of hydrocephalus. *Ann Roy Coll Surg Engl*, 21 355, 1938.
15. LAURENCE, K. M. and COATES, S.: The natural history of hydrocephalus. *Arch Dis Child*, 3 348, 1961.
16. MACFAR, G. H.: A comparison of the amount of cerebrospinal fluid formed in 24 hours with the amount delivered through the Holter valve. *Develop Med Child Neurol*, 4 992, 1962.
17. MATSON, D. D.: Hydrocephalus in premature infants caused by papilloma of the choroid plexus. *J Neurosurg* 10 418, 1953.
18. MATSON, D. D. and CHURTON, F. D.: Papilloma of the choroid plexus in childhood. *J Neurosurg* 17 1002, 1960.
19. POORE, L. C.: Papilloma of the choroid plexus. *Arch Path* 34 911 1911.
20. RAY, B. K. and PECK, F. C.: Papilloma of the choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle causing hydrocephalus in an infant. *J Neurosurg* 13 403, 1935.
21. RINGDENA, N. and RYDMARK, A.: Ependy-

- nomas and choroid plexus papillomas. *J Neuropath Exp Neurol* 8 355, 1949
22. ROBERT, H. S. *Observations on the Pathology of Hydrocephalus*, p. 6. H.M. Stationery Office, London, 1949.
23. SOUMAKIAN, P. A case of hydrocephalus in infancy caused by choroid papilloma. *Ann Med Intern Fenn*, 36 679, 1947
24. VAY WAGENEN W. P. Papillomas of the choroid plexus. Report of two cases, one with removal of tumor at operation and one with "seeding" of the tumor in the ventricular system. *Arch Surg* 90 199, 1920.
25. WILKINS, H. and RUTLEDGE, B. J. Papillomas of the choroid plexus. *J Neurology* 18 14, 1961.

Submitted August 8, 1963
Accepted August 8, 1963

(L. S.) Department of Pediatrics
(G. G.) Department of Pediatric Surgery
(L. O.) Department of Pathology I
University Hospital
Uppsala
Sweden

PROGRESS IN PEDIATRICS

Congenital Neutropenia A Report of Five Cases

by J. B. MacGILLIVRAY, J. V. DACIE, J. R. K. HENRY, L. S. SACKER and J. P. M. TIZARD

Postgraduate Medical School / London

In 1950 Kostmann [13] described in a remarkable publication what he considered to be a new disease which he named *Infantile Genetic Agranulocytosis*. Fourteen cases were observed in an isolated community in North Sweden and detailed studies were made of six cases in which adequate material was available. In the other eight cases the diagnosis was assumed from the children's history.

The children Kostmann observed were the off-spring of nine families, in five of which the parents were related. Of the six cases studied, four died at an early age; two were alive at the time of reporting aged 5 and 4½ years of age respectively. The presenting feature was skin sepsis at 1 week, 3 weeks, 1½, 2½, 3 and 5 months. There was persistent severe neutropenia and the bone-marrow showed arrest of neutrophil granulopoiesis at the promyelocyte and myelocyte stage. Other features described in some of the cases were an increased number of eosinophils in the bone marrow, an eosinophilia and monocytosis in the peripheral blood, a high platelet count and a raised serum gamma globulin. As a result of family studies Kostmann concluded that the condition was inherited

as an autosomal recessive, the high incidence in the population he studied being due to intermarriage.

Since Kostmann's original description, a number of cases showing similar features have been reported (see discussion).

In recent years five children suffering from neutrophil agranulocytosis or severe persistent neutropenia of unknown aetiology and showing many of the features described by Kostmann have been seen in this hospital. Three died in infancy, two are alive in early adolescence but are still neutropenic. One of our cases, Case 1, was reported briefly by Henry [9].

Case 1 A.S.

Female child born 8th August, 1954 died 29th August 1955.

She was the second child of healthy unrelated parents. The first child is alive and well. Pregnancy and delivery were normal.

She was first admitted to the Hammer-smith Hospital on 20th November 1955.

Past History. At the age of 8 days she developed a septic right thumb and navel umbilical sepsis which took 5 weeks to heal in spite of treatment with chlorotetracycline and penicillin.

Subsequently she was admitted to another hospital at the ages of 7 weeks, 11 weeks,

4 months, 5 months, 11 months and 15 months. All the admissions were for pyogenic infections which included otitis media, multiple septic spots, tonsillitis and an infected vaccination site with cellulitis. She was treated for these at varying times with penicillin, chlorotetracycline, erythromycin and streptomycin. The first full blood count when she was 5 months old showed:—haemoglobin, 10.1 g/100 ml; leucocytes, 8100/mm³ with only 4% neutrophils (34/mm³). Serum proteins, electrophoretic pattern, and X-rays of long bones were normal. Examination of the bone-marrow showed orange cellularity with a striking reduction of cells of the neutrophil granulocyte series and considerable increase in monocytes. A acute monocytic leukaemia was diagnosed.

Her condition deteriorated with loss of weight, persistent fever, anaemia and hepatomegaly. She was transfused twice and on the 8th April 1955 she was started on cortisone. The initial effect of this was striking; her temperature subsided and she gained weight. When discharged 3 weeks later she was at birth and much improved. A blood count at this time showed:—haemoglobin, 11.7 g/100 ml; leucocytes, 14,800/mm³; 1 eosinophil (176/mm³), 78 monocytes (3830/mm³), 82 lymphocytes (9200/mm³).

There were two more admissions (at 11 months and 15 months) for tonsillitis and otitis media. Examination of her blood during these admissions showed the appearances to be substantially unchanged. X-rays of the skeleton at the age of 11 months showed no bony abnormality. She was continued on cortisone 3 mg daily apart from a 10 day period when ACTH 3 units daily was substituted.

She was admitted to the Hammersmith Hospital, aged 15 months, for a further opinion. She was found to be poorly nourished and to weigh 7.9 kg. There was an offensive serous discharge from the right ear, her mouth was dry and there was marked hypertrophy of the gums. The fauces were inflamed and there were small firm

lymph nodes palpable in both posterior cervical triangles, both axillae and inguinal regions.

The abdomen was protuberant, the liver was enlarged 9 cm below the costal margin in the midclavicular line; the spleen was just palpable. Other systems were clinically normal. A blood count showed a moderately severe anaemia: haemoglobin 4 g/100 ml, total leucocytes, 4000/mm³; 9% eosinophils (1800/mm³), 1 basophil (40/mm³), 57% lymphocytes (11,400/mm³), 33 monocytes (6600/mm³).

Before further investigations the cortisone was stopped. She was transfused with 200 ml of packed cells and following this her haemoglobin rose to 11.9 g/100 ml. During the entire 5 weeks admission her temperature varied between 36.1 and 40°C. This was not affected by tetraeviline given to cover a bone-marrow puncture which was carried out in the operating theatre. This showed normal erythropoiesis but very depressed neutrophil granulopoiesis. Eosinophils were relatively conspicuous (Table 1). There was no ill effect from this bone-marrow puncture and she was discharged.

Both parents had normal blood counts and her mother showed a normal rise in her neutrophil count after injection of T.A.B. vaccine.

A diagnosis of congenital agranulocytosis was made and it was felt wisest to restrict attempts at therapy to the use of antibiotics required, and blood transfusion.

She was seen in the out-patient department in February and March 1956, and on both occasions her condition was fairly satisfactory. On the latter visit she was found to have gained weight (8.9 kg).

She was readmitted into Hammersmith Hospital in May 1956 aged 15 months. She had remained fairly well until 2 weeks previously when she had caught cold. Since then she had been irritable, anorexic and had run a continuous temperature.

On examination she had watery discharge from her right ear and nose and moderate enlargement of cervical, axillary and in

TABLE 1 Bone-Marrow Findings in Five Cases of Congenital Neutropenia

| C. no. | 1 A.B. % | 2 S.H. % | 3 R.H. % | 4 O.P. % | 5 S.H. % |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Reticulum cells | | | 8 | | 8.8 |
| Myeloblast | 4 | 0 | 2 | 4 | 2.4 |
| Promyelocytes | 2 | 3 | | 1.9 | 4.6 |
| Myelocytes | | | | | |
| neutrophil | 1 | | | 9 | 9.8 |
| eosinophil | 4 | 4 | 2 | 0 | 7.8 |
| Metamyelocytes | | | | | |
| neutrophil | | | | 0.3 | 2.8 |
| eosinophil | 3 | 8 | | 2.0 | |
| Polymorphonuclears | | | | | |
| neutrophil | 0.3 | | | 1 | |
| eosinophil | 18 | 18 | | 4 | 18.3 |
| Lymphocytes | 30 | 48 | 65 | 41 | 19.8 |
| Monocytes | 13 | | 10 | 2 | |
| Plasma cells | 1.7 | 1 | | 1 | 4.6 |
| Normoblasts | 28 | 15 | 15 | 4 | 37 |

ginal lymph nodes. The bilomen was protuberant and tympanitic and the liver and spleen were enlarged as on the previous admission. Her chest was clinically clear. The heart was not enlarged but there was a short grade-II systolic murmur loudest at the base.

Culture of the discharge from the ear yielded *P. pyocyanea*; the organism was sensitive to sulphathiazole and partly sensitive to tetracycline and she was treated with a combination of penicillin and tetracycline. Six days after admission signs of consolidation developed in the upper zones of the right lung and a chest X-ray showed consolidation of the right upper lobe and apical segment of the lower lobe. A laryngeal swab grew *Staph. pyogenes* sensitive to erythromycin only.

Her serum proteins totalled 8.8 g/100 ml albumin 3.0 g/100 ml globulin 5.8 g/100 ml. Electrophoresis showed a marked increase in the gamma globulin (Fig. 1). She was transfused with 200 ml of fresh blood. Few if any of the donated neutrophils circulated; only 1 in 200 of the leucocytes was a neutrophil 2 hours after the transfusion and none was seen in 500 cells 18 hours post transfusion.

Three weeks later the signs in the right lung were still present and she had developed marked clubbing of her fingers and toes. She was extremely wasted and anorectic and refused to take any solid food, but in spite of this her caloric intake was maintained at about 1,500 calories per day by using milk fortified with glucose. Complic

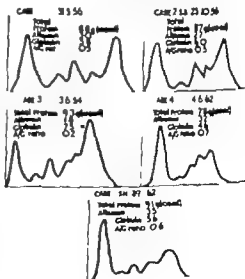


Fig. 1. Filter paper electrophoresis of serum proteins.



Fig. 2. Case 1 A.S. X-ray of chest showing extensive consolidation of the right lung.

and Cardian. She was also given 10 mg. of Androsalones daily in an effort to improve her nutrition. This had no side-effects, but on the other hand there was no gain in weight.

The chest condition became progressively worse and the chest X ray showed the right upper and lower lobes to be consolidated (Fig. 2). Her abdomen was distended and the liver remained enlarged. Cultures from her skin, nose etc. repeatedly grew *Staph. pyogenes*. Combinations of antibiotics were used but there was no clinical improvement. She finally died on 25th August 1958, aged 2 years.

Post Mortem Examination

She was a pale emaciated child with heavy and thickened limb bones.

There was consolidation of the right upper lobe with numerous abscesses up to 3 cm in diameter containing thick yellow material. The apical segment of the right lower lobe was similarly affected (Fig. 3). Sections showed interstitial fibrosis and areas of necrosis with a surrounding cellular infiltrate consisting mainly of numerous plasma cells.

The liver weighed 944 g and the sinusoids were congested. In the kidneys there were

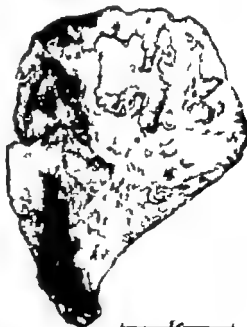


Fig. 3. Case 1 A.S. Right lung showing large necrotic bronchus.

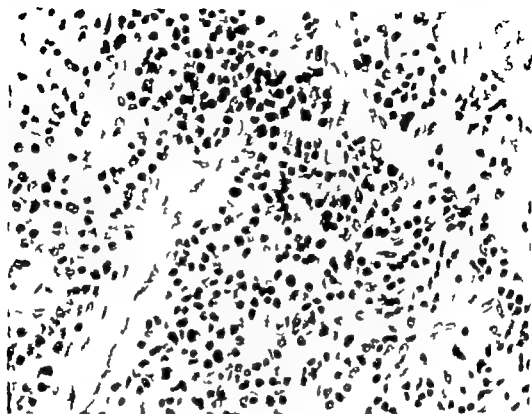


Fig. 4 Case 1. A.R. Section of gum showing cellular infiltration in which plasma cells are conspicuous (H. and E. 500)

Small wedge-shaped subcapsular collections of lymphocytes, plasma cells and occasional eosinophils. The spleen weighed 40 g. The Malpighian bodies were of normal size. The pulp was fibrotic and contained large amounts of haemosiderin and many plasma cells. The liver, spleen and kidney showed a negative reaction on testing for myeloid. There was moderate generalized lymph node enlargement. The nodes contained large amounts of haemosiderin and many plasma cells in the medullae. The femoral, tibial and vertebral marrow was cellular and contained numerous eosinophils, but no neutrophils were identified. The gums were hypertrophied and heavily infiltrated with plasma cells (Fig. 4).

The right femur and tibia were removed. Both were greatly thickened due to the for-

mation of a thick layer of subperiosteal bone the appearance being that of gross secondary (pneumonic) hypertrophic osteoarthropathy (Fig. 5 and 6).

Case 2 S.B.

Female infant. Born 1st XI v 1936, died 11th January 1937.

Mother unmarried. Normal full-term delivery; birth weight 3 kg.

At the age of 14 days the infant developed a serous discharge from the left ear, profuse nasal discharge and bilateral conjunctivitis. She was admitted to Hammer-smith Hospital on 10th May 1936.

On examination she was seen to be sick infant; her temperature was 38.3 C. There were few abnormal physical signs. However, the posterior cervical lymph nodes were en-

larged, the umbilicus was moist and there was profuse watery discharge from the nose and left ear.

Investigations

Haemoglobin, 16.3 g/100 ml; total leucocyte count 2000/mm³; neutrophils 1% (80/mm³); eosinophils 27% (2160/mm³); lymphocytes 41% (3280/mm³); monocytes 3% (2490/mm³).

Cultures taken from the throat, left ear and nose grew *Staph. pyogenes* sensitive to penicillin.

A chest X-ray was normal.

Puncture of the tibia showed an almost complete absence of neutrophil granulocytes, a small increase in blast and an increased number of eosinophils and eosinophil precursors (Table 1).

A diagnosis of congenital agranulocytosis was made and symptomatic treatment commenced with intramuscular penicillin, 250 000 units 8-hourly. The discharging left ear slowly dried up. However after about 3 weeks septic spots appeared over the left parauricular region, followed by enlargement of the left submandibular gland. At this time umbilical sepsis also developed. Cultures grew *E. coli*, *Strept. faecalis* and a *Proteus*.



Fig. 5. Case 1. A.S. Femur, tibia and fibula showing very marked subperiosteal new bone formation.



Fig. 6. Case 1. A.S. Section of the tibia showing very marked subperiosteal new bone formation (H. and E., 6.2).

TABLE 2 *Haematological Data in Five Cases of Congenital Neutropenia*

| Case | Haemoglobin Minimum, g/100 ml | Erythrocytes Maximum, % R/100 ml | Total Leucocytes Range, mm ³ | Neutrophils range | | Eosinophils range | | Baso- phil " | Lymphocytes range | | Monocytes range | | Plate- lets mm ³ |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|---|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| | | | | " | mm ³ | " | mm ³ | | " | mm ³ | " | mm ³ | |
| A.B. | 71 | 3 | 4,000- 90,000 | 0-3 | 0- 40 | 4-34 | 850- 8,780 | 0-3 | 28-84 | 2,800- 14,500 | 7-44 | 500- 6,600 | 53,000- 70,000 |
| B.B. | 77 | | 2,000- 8,000 | 0- | 0- 100 | 8-44 | 380- 3,820 | 0-3 | 41-88 | 200- 7,000 | 1-31 | 50- 2,400 | 70,000 |
| R.H. | 74 | | 2,000- 12,000 | 0-4 | 0- 2,100 | 0-14 | 0- 1,058 | | 54-82 | 2,780- 10,200 | 2-4 | 80- 1,820 | - |
| G.P. | 86 | - | 2,000- 8,600 | 1-34 | 64- 1,564 | 1-13 | 33- 938 | 0-1 | 34-97 | 1,380- 7,000 | 2-43 | 200- 2,480 | 90,000 |
| B.H. | 96 | III | 2,400- 3,100 | 0-1 | 0- 384 | 0-6 | 0- 144 | | 64-88 | 1,600- 20,000 | 11-33 | 80- 880 | 33,000- 70,000 |

The *Strept faecalis* was sensitive to chloramphenicol and erythromycin and the *Proteus* to streptomycin, chloramphenicol and sulphathiazole.

She then developed cellulitis of the right side of the front of the neck around the site of vein puncture. The general condition worsened, she appeared toxic and developed a high temperature. The swelling in the neck was incised and some thick greenish yellow material released. *Staph pyogenes* sensitive to penicillin was grown. On direct examination only a few monocytes and no pus cells were found. Following incision of the swelling her condition improved and the septic lesions cleared up. She was discharged on the 14th August, 1956 weighing 5.4 kg. Apart from penicillin she had received the following antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents: chlorotetracycline, sulphafurazole, streptomycin, tetracycline and erythromycin. Chloramphenicol, infant and papain, 0.5% in starch were applied to the umbilicus.

The child continued to attend hospital because of continuous and resistant umbilical sepsis. At this time her urinary amino acids were found to be of a normal pattern; her serum proteins totalled 6.5 g/100 ml, albumin 2.3 g, globulin 3.9 g. Electrophoresis showed

a marked increase in the gamma globulin (Fig. 1).

She was readmitted on the 26th September 1956 with acute tonsillitis and umbilical sepsis. No organisms were grown from a throat swab, but a culture from the umbilicus grew *Strept faecalis* sensitive only to chloramphenicol. She was therefore treated with chloramphenicol, 30 mg 4-hourly. She responded well to this, her temperature subsided and she was discharged on the 4th October 1956. However the umbilicus was still severely infected and she continued to be seen as an out patient. An ulcer on the left side of the cheek was treated with tetracycline.

Acute tonsillitis and an abscess of the right buttock necessitated two further admissions before the final admission on the 21st December 1956. She then had an abscess on the right side of the neck and more chronic infection of the left cheek. X-ray of long bones showed no periosteal reaction. She was given courses of streptomycin, erythromycin, chloramphenicol, novobiocin and signamycin. Her condition, however deteriorated and massive cellulitis of the left groin developed which extended down to the left labia and perineum; she

ran a high fever and died on the 17th January 1957.

At no time during the course of her illness had there been more than 100 neutrophils per mm. On many occasions no neutrophils were seen. The eosinophil count was continuously raised, the highest recorded count being 3520/mm. The monocyte count fluctuated widely (Table 3).

Post Mortem Examination

She was a pale child with inflamed areas over the left cheek, right side of the neck, left iliac crest and perineum.

There were widespread haemorrhagic areas in both lungs, with the shape and consistency of recent infarcts. Sections showed focal areas of intense intra-alveolar haemorrhage containing clump of gram-positive cocci with very little surrounding inflammatory reaction. There was slight plasma-cell infiltration round the bronchioles.

Both kidneys were pale. There was periglomerular plasma-cell infiltration and a more diffuse infiltration of the interstitial tissue with plasma cells. The spleen weighed 50 g; the Malpighian bodies could be seen macroscopically. Section showed numerous plasma cells in the pulp.

There was moderate generalized lymphadenopathy and sections of one of the nodes showed large amounts of haemosiderin and many plasma cells in the medulla.

The bone-marrow was cellular with many eosinophils and numbers of plasma cells. No neutrophils were seen. Section of the skin from the perineum showed ulceration and necrosis, with virtually no inflammatory reaction and many gram-negative bacilli on the surface.

Case 3 R.H.

Male infant, born August 1933, died 23th August 1934. Birth weight 3.5 kg; the infant was delivered by Caesarean section for disproportion.

The infant's father was healthy; the mother suffered from petit mal, but did not take any anticonvulsants or sedatives dur-

ing her pregnancy. She had had one previous miscarriage and one ectopic gestation. One sibling died at the age of 3 months of "bronchopneumonia." Repeated blood counts on both parents were normal.

The infant had suffered from continuous episodes of sepsis since the seventh day of life. These took the form of a discharge from the umbilicus in the neonatal period, boils and small subcutaneous abscesses on the scalp and body and paronychia. At the age of 7 months he developed bilateral otitis media. This was complicated 1 month later by right-sided mastoiditis which required operation. *Staph. pyogenes* was isolated from all these septic lesions and over the course of time the organism became increasingly resistant to the various antibiotics used in treatment.

The first blood count was performed at the age of 7 weeks. The total leucocyte count was normal, but only 1% of the cells were neutrophil polymorphs. Numerous subsequent blood counts showed the same pattern, usually no neutrophils were present but there was one count of 4% (100/mm³). A marrow puncture at the age of 8 months was reported as showing a marked depression of neutrophil granulopoiesis but otherwise no abnormality and the diagnosis remained in doubt.

The infant was admitted to Hammer-smith Hospital in June 1934 at the age of 10 months. On admission he did not appear gravely ill. His weight was 5.5 kg. Numerous (approximately 50) furuncles and subcutaneous abscesses were present over the back, buttocks, both thighs and scalp. There was a discharging sinus over the right mastoid scar. The regional lymph glands were enlarged. The spleen was palpable 2 cm below the costal margin.

Investigations

Haemoglobin, 9.5 g/100 ml; total leucocyte count 4000/mm³; eosinophils 6 (480/mm³); lymphocytes 70% (5600/mm³); monocytes 4 (1020/mm³).

Serum proteins: total 9.3 g/100 ml; albumin 4.8 g; globulin 7.5 g. Electrophoresis

TABLE 2 Haematological Data in Five Cases of Congenital Neutropenia

| Case | Haemoglobin Minimum, g/100 ml | Hct/centocytes M x 1000 | Total leucocytes Range/mm ³ | Neutrophils range | | Eosinophils range | | Baso- phils % | Lymphocytes range | | Monocytes range | | Plat/ Range mm ³ |
|--------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| | | | | % | mm ³ | % | mm ³ | | % | mm ³ | % | mm ³ | |
| I.A.B. | 71 | 3 | 3,000- 70,000 | 0-3 | 0-420 | 4-34 | 540- 5,780 | 0-3 | 38-84 | 2,660- 14,300 | 7-44 | 840- 8,800 | 130.0 130.0 |
| I.B.B. | 77 | | 3,000- 8,000 | 0-2 | 0-100 | 8-44 | 380- 3,820 | 0-3 | 41-88 | 2,200- 7,000 | 1-31 | 80- 2,480 | 130.0 |
| I.R.H. | 74 | | 3,000- 12,000 | 0-4 | 0-2,100 | 0-14 | 0- 1,036 | | 84-92 | 2,760- 10,300 | 2-11 | 80- 1,920 | - |
| I.G.P. | 86 | | 2,700- 8,600 | 1-24 | 84- 1,564 | 1-13 | 33- 936 | 0-1 | 24-87 | 1,380- 7,000 | 2-43 | 200- 2,430 | 140.0 |
| I.S.H. | 9.6 | 0.8 | 2,400- 2,100 | 0-12 | 0-384 | 0-6 | 0- 144 | | 64-96 | 1,800- 2,070 | 11-33 | 240- 896 | 252.0 170.0 |

The *Strept faecalis* was sensitive to chloramphenicol and erythromycin and the *Proteus* to streptomycin, chloramphenicol and sulphathiazole.

She then developed cellulitis of the right side of the front of the neck around the site of vein puncture. The general condition worsened, she appeared toxic and developed a high temperature. The swelling in the neck was increased and some thick greenish yellow material released. *Staph. pyogenes* sensitive to penicillin was grown. On direct examination only a few monocytes and no pus cells were found. Following incision of the swelling her condition improved and the septic lesions cleared up. She was discharged on the 14th August, 1956 weighing 5.4 kg. Apart from penicillin she had received the following antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents: chlorotetracycline, sulphafurazole, streptomycin, tetracycline and erythromycin. Chloramphenicol ointment and papain 25% in starch, were applied to the umbilicus.

The child continued to attend hospital because of continuous and resistant umbilical sepsis. At this time her urinary amino acids were found to be of a normal pattern; her serum proteins totalled 6. g/100 ml, albumin 2.3 g, globulin 3.9 g. Electrophoresis showed

a marked increase in the gamma globulin (Fig. 1).

She was readmitted on the 26th September 1956 with acute tonsillitis and umbilical sepsis. No organisms were grown from a throat swab, but a culture from the umbilicus grew *Strept faecalis* sensitive only to chloramphenicol. She was therefore treated with chloramphenicol 30 mg 4 hourly. She responded well to this, her temperature subsided and she was discharged on the 4th October 1956. However the umbilicus was still severely infected and she continued to be seen as an out patient. An ulcer on the left side of the cheek was treated with tetracycline.

Acute tonsillitis and an abscess of the right buttock necessitated two further admissions before the final admission on the 21st December 1956. She then had an abscess on the right side of the neck and a more chronic infection of the left cheek. X ray of long bones showed no periosteal reaction. She was given courses of streptomycin, erythromycin, chloramphenicol, novobiotin and streptomycin. Her condition however deteriorated and massive cellulitis of the left groin developed which extended down to the left labia and perineum; she

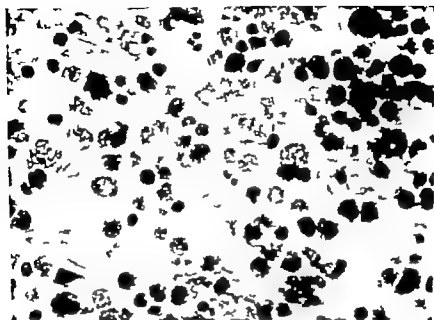


Fig. 7 Case 2, R.H. Post mortem section of bone marrow showing numerous eosinophils (H&E, 90x)

clear but she was still pyrexial. PAR 0.5 g t.i.d. was given and this was increased to 1 g t.i.d. after 1 month but was stopped shortly after. During this period she developed a septic blister on the foot which was treated with penicillin. She then developed an attack of acute tonsillitis which was treated with sulphamerazine. A leucocyte count after commencing this drug showed 5400 cells/mm³ with 9% neutrophils (480/mm³). In view of the neutropenia the sulphamerazine was stopped after 7½ g had been given. The aternal marrow was reported showing arrest of neutrophil granulopoiesis. Folic acid and pyridoxine were given without effect.

Tonsillectomy was carried out on the 3rd August 1950 under penicillin cover. One pint of blood was given post-operatively and she was discharged in satisfactory condition. Blood count on discharge showed the neutropenia to be persisting (Table 1).

She was seen on the 1st April, 1951 by one of us (J.V.D.). The presence of neutropenia was confirmed and bone-marrow

puncture was carried out (Table 1). This showed depression of neutrophil production accompanied by active erythropoiesis. There appeared to be no evidence of leukaemia and diagnosis of congenital neutropenia of unknown origin, 2nd year of life, was made.

Blood count carried out on 1st April 1951 showed 5400 cells/mm³ with 9% neutrophils, and on her birthday 2nd April 1951, 5400 cells/mm³ with 9% neutrophils, and no leukaemia was found in films.

Further Progress

This is summarized in Table 1. In 1951-1954 several further attacks of infection occurred in aetiology of which were shown bilateral abscesses of right and left tonsils at Otolaryngology Hospital at pyrexia and cough. There was opacity in the right lung which responded to treatment with penicillin and erythromycin. She also had a leucocytosis after and used gamma globulin.

On the 2nd Dec.

1951 1954 several further attacks of infection occurred in aetiology of which were shown bilateral abscesses of right and left tonsils at Otolaryngology Hospital at pyrexia and cough. There was opacity in the right lung which responded to treatment with penicillin and erythromycin. She also had a leucocytosis after and used gamma globulin.

mitted to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street, under the care of Dr A. P. Norman. Physical examination then showed a thin girl of 11 yrs. 3 months with bilateral cataracts. Her weight was 23 kg, her height 138.9 cm. There were no other physical signs of note. X ray of chest showed infiltration and possible cavitation of the right upper lobe and the apical region of the lower lobe, probably secondary to staphylococcal pneumonia.

The blood picture and bone-marrow appearances were as before (Tables I and). The serum proteins totalled 7.7 g/100 ml on electrophoresis the α and α_2 globulins were increased and the gamma globulin was markedly increased. She was discharged on the 40th December 1958.

She has had no illnesses since this time apart from an occasional cold and had a normal menarche at the age of 13. She has seldom been absent from school and is making good progress with her work. Her father states that small pustules on her face which formerly produced a wide area of reddening and no "head" now show a pocket of pus. However the most recent blood count (4th June 1962) showed that she was still markedly neutropenic (Table). Electrophoresis revealed a raised serum globulin content, particularly β and γ globulins (Fig. 1).

Case 5 S.H.

A female born 21st October 1951. She is the second child of non-consanguineous parents. Pregnancy was uneventful and delivery normal and full term. The birth weight was 3.1 kg.

As an infant she was quite well until about 3½ months old when she began to have crops of boils on her perineum. She was then admitted to Oldchurch Hospital under the care of Dr T. Savage for investigation and was found to have a marked neutropenia. She remained well until 8 months, when she developed blister like lesions on her tongue, the inside of her cheeks and on her lower lip. These were filled with clear non-purulent fluid and have subsequently reappeared at

4-6 weekly intervals ever since. She also had minor infections of the eyelids, tonsils and skin. Steroids and most of the known haematinics were tried without effect. In 1955 she was found to have a serum protein level of 9 g/100 ml; albumin, 4.1 g; globulin 4.9 g, with a raised content of gamma globulin. A bone-marrow examination in 1960 was reported as showing very scanty mature granulocytes. She remained well, however in spite of numerous septic episodes and made an uneventful recovery from chickenpox, whooping cough and measles. Routine vaccinations and inoculations were performed without complications.

She was admitted to Harmermonth Hospital on the 28th January 1962.

Physical Examination She was a pleasant co-operative child, below the 3rd percentile for height and just on the 3rd percentile for weight. Her teeth were carious and discoloured, the gums hypertrophic and receding with extensive gingivitis. Her tonsils were huge and the crypts contained white material, the anterior cervical lymph nodes were slightly enlarged. There were scars of skin lesions on the neck, back and thighs but no other physical findings of note.

X rays of chest, skull and long bones were normal.

Laboratory Findings

The results of blood counts are summarized in Table 1, the most striking feature being the severe and sometimes total neutrophil granulocytopenia. At no time has her absolute neutrophil count been higher than 284/mm³. The highest percentage of monocytes counted had been 23% (890/mm³) and eosinophils 6% (144/mm³). She has always had a mild normochromic anaemia and a haemoglobin of about 10 g/100 ml. Her platelet count on several occasions has been in the region of 700 000/mm³.

Her father, mother and 15-year-old sister had normal blood counts.

The serum proteins totalled 9.1 g/100 ml; albumin 3.5 g, globulin 5.6 g, and electrophoresis showed a raised gamma globulin.

Tests were kindly carried out by Dr K. L.

□ Goldenfith of the Lister Institute for leucocyt or platelet antibodies but none were demonstrated. Dr E. A. Herbert of the Bernhard Baron Institut of Pathology The London Hospital, examined her chromosomes, which showed a normal pattern.

There was a slight general increase in urinary amino acids.

Bone-marrow examination showed a hypereellular marrow with normal erythropoiesis, but with relative depression of neutrophil granulopoiesis. There was on the other hand an increased number of eosinophils and eosinophil precursors (Table 7).

Further Progress

She was referred to the Dental Department (Miss Whitehead) for treatment of the gingivitis. While in hospital she developed an ulcer on the lower lip similar to those she had in the past. No pus formation was noted and the ulcer healed slowly. She was discharged on the 22nd February 1962.

Discussion

"Idiopathic" neutropenia is a rare condition at any age. It is certainly rare in infancy and childhood although a number of varieties have been described.

Transient granulocytopenia in the newborn was described by Slobody, Abramson & Loizeaux [21]. Stefanini, Mele & Skinner [23] reported two similar cases; the mothers of the children were neutropenic and in one case leuco-agglutinins were demonstrated in the blood of the mother. In the cases reported by Brown *et al* [4] maternal leucocyte antibodies were also found.

Cyclic neutropenia has also been noted in the first year of life [17, 18, 19].

Stahlie [22] who described a case of *chronic benign neutropenia* occurring in an 8-month-old female child collected 16 sim-

ilar cases from the literature. Thirteen of the children later developed normal counts. One however died of tuberculosis and in two cases the granulocytopenia persisted. The children had a lowered resistance to infection and bone marrow examination when performed showed an increased number of stab cells and myelocytes often not apparent until a differential count was done.

A benign form of *familial neutropenia* has been described among members of eleven families of Yemenite Jews [6]. Bone marrow examination, when done did not show any evidence of maturation arrest and the condition was asymptomatic.

Kostmann's cases clearly differ from the above in their chronicity, the high mortality and in the marrow appearance of depression of granulopoiesis.

Since his original description a number of cases showing similar features have been reported, some occurring in siblings. Lethal congenital neutropenia with eosinophilia was described by Andrews, McClellan & Scott [2] in two siblings who died at the ages of 4 and 5 months; they suggested a recessive inheritance. Bjure Nilsson & Plum [3] reported two boys aged 2 and 7 in a family of four who were neutropenic and prone to infections. Two siblings with neutropenia were reported by Rowman & Hummer [20], one died aged 9 the other was alive aged 20 at the time of reporting; their cases lack some of the features described by Kostmann, and A.C.T.H. injection produced a temporary rise in neutrophils in their surviving case.

Single fatal cases similar to Kostmann with no evidence of hereditary aetiology have been described by a number of

authors [1 8 12 14] McLean [15] reported a case in 1937 this child is alive and well (196-) although still neutropenic [10]. In none of the cases was there any evidence of consanguinity.

Finally a family was described by Hitzig [10] in which the neutropenia appeared to be inherited as a dominant. The father aged 30 son aged 8 and daughter aged 4 were all neutropenic. The blood and marrow findings were similar to those in Kostmann's cases, although clinically severe infections were not a feature.

The five cases described in this paper have many features in common both from the clinical and haematological points of view. It seems reasonable to attribute the children's inability to combat the coral infections to the severe and sometimes total neutropenia and it is interesting to contrast with this the fact that one at least, of the children (S.H.) managed to make satisfactory recoveries from whooping cough chickenpox and measles.

The raised levels of serum gamma globulin, which all the children showed, are probably a response to the long continuing infection.

It is likely that our patients have suffered from congenital severe and persistent neutropenia. Although the earliest blood counts were not done until 2 weeks of age it is reasonable to assume that this was present since birth. In Case 4 the first count showed 1504 neutrophils/mm³ and on two subsequent occasions the total neutrophil count was apparently within normal limits. It is possible that the neutropenia in this child was drug induced. On this hypothesis it is remarkable that the neutropenia has persisted for 13 years subsequently. In other respects, al-

though less severely affected, she showed similar features to the others.

Our cases provide no evidence as to a possible hereditary aetiology but as already mentioned, they strongly resemble both clinically and haematologically the cases described by Kostmann in which inheritance as an autosomal recessive seemed probable.

As will be emphasized below four out of the five patients had persistently raised eosinophil counts and the fifth patient a normal eosinophil count despite a marked neutropenia or absence of circulating neutrophils. Kostmann's title 'infantile genetic agranulocytosis' is thus a misnomer and 'infantile genetic neutrophil granulocytosis (or neutropenia)' is preferable.

The blood and bone marrow pictures of all our patients have been similar although varying in degree and they have been markedly similar to those of Kostmann's cases. The typical blood film showing marked rouleaux formation, paucity or absence of neutrophils, excess of eosinophils and monocytes and possibly of platelets too provides an unmistakable picture. Few if any abnormal cells (myelocytes promyelocytes or blasts) circulate and the blood picture should not be confused with that of leukaemic leaemia is frequent and may be moderate in degree. It seems likely that this can be attributed to the effects of chronic infection.

The post mortem findings in the three fatal cases illustrated the consequences of chronic skin and pulmonary sepsis. Sections showed a complete lack of neutrophils in the lesions and an excess of plasma cells. The extreme degree of secondary (pulmonary) hypertrophic osteoarthritis

pathy in Case 1 was a notable feature (Figs 5 and 6)

In Case 5 superficial scarification of the skin over the flexor aspect of the forearm was carried out so that the tips of the dermal papillae were just exposed. In 3 hours, only scanty mononuclear cells were found in the exudate compared with numerous neutrophils found in a normal control after the same time

In the fatal cases of our series recurrent surface infections (boils and otitis media) dominated the clinical picture from early infancy. A striking feature was that the discharge from boils and middle ear infections was clear and watery rather than purulent. Later some of the children developed internal infections, particularly chronic pneumonia and it is interesting to compare the sites of primary infection with those commonly found in agammaglobulinaemia in which although skin sepsis may be present internal infections such as recurrent pneumonia, arthritis and meningitis are often early manifestations [5-11].

The exact mechanism of this type of congenital neutropenia has not been established. As it appears to be inherited as a simple autosomal recessive character presumably there is a single enzyme defect.

The rise in eosinophil and monocyte counts, which is so characteristic of most of these patients, is an interesting phenomenon. Possibly the cells can play some part in combating infection, although presumably less effectively than do neutrophils, and the eosinophilia and monocytosis may thus be a response to the infection. Alternatively it is a possible hypothesis that the cells are formed in excess simply because their precursors

being unable to carry out the normal transformation to neutrophils differentiate along alternative lines. An analogy might be drawn with another autosomal recessive disease—the adrenogenital syndrome—in which the failure of synthesis of hydrocortisone leads to excess production of ACTH with consequent stimulation of the adrenal to produce androgenic hormones. It is possible that the negative feed back control of a hormone concerned in the production of both neutrophils and eosinophils is provided by a metabolic product of neutrophils alone. It would be of interest to measure the eosinophil count of patients with congenital neutropenia transfused with neutrophil polymorph. The high platelet counts seen in all of our patients where counts are available may well be the automatic consequence of a block of the pathway which the bulk of the myeloid cellular activity normally develops.

In one of the two cases reported by Björre Nilsson & Plum [3] transfusion of fresh plasma caused a temporary rise in the number of neutrophils from 2×10^9 (236 mm^3) to 4×10^9 (3400 mm^3) in eight days. In both their cases the addition of fresh plasma to cell cultures of the bone marrow produced an increase in granulopoietic activity. The addition of erythrocytes had no effect.

They suggest that deficiency of a plasma factor was responsible for the neutropenia.

In contrast Plum (quoted by Koetsmann [13]) who studied cultures of the bone marrow of one of Koetsmann's patients reported that signs of granulocyte maturation could be detected when the patient's marrow cells were grown in normal serum and that maturation was more

marked when cysteine was added. Similar findings were reported by Hedenberg [8] who like Kostmann [13], concluded that the disease was due to a congenital inability to utilize S-containing amino-acids. Treatment with cysteine however was ineffective in both Kostmann's and Hedenberg's patients.

The blood-cysteine level was estimated in Cases 1 and 2 of our series. The levels were 3 mg and 2.5 mg/100 ml respectively. A normal control gave a level of 1.85 mg/100 ml. The significance of these figures is uncertain and might only indicate poor liver function. Case 2 was treated with cysteine 0.5 g t.d.s. by mouth for 2 weeks with no effect on the neutrophil count.

All the known haematinics have been tried in this condition without any observable benefit. Treatment at present therefore consists in combating infections as they arise with suitable antibiotics. It seems probable that in the past before the introduction of antibiotics children with this disease died before a diagnosis was made.

Summary

Five cases of severe neutropenia of probable congenital origin are described. Severe skin sepsis was a prominent clinical

feature. The peripheral blood often showed a monocytosis, eosinophilia and sometimes a raised platelet count. The bone-marrow findings were depression of neutrophil granulopoiesis and prominence of eosinophils. All the cases had a raised serum gamma globulin. Three died in early infancy, two are alive in early adolescence but are still neutropenic.

The clinical and haematological features were similar to "infantile genetic agranulocytosis" as described by Kostmann.

The condition varies in severity and some patients given suitable antibiotic therapy may survive into adolescence.

Acknowledgements

We are indebted to the following colleagues for referring patients to us and allowing us to quote from their case records: Drs I. M. Anderson, P. B. Barker, Ursula James, A. P. Norman, T. R. Savage and H. R. E. Walsh. Drs J. R. H. Pinkerton and P. W. W. Griffiths kindly provided haematological data in Case 4. We are grateful to Professor C. V. Harrison, Professor I. Doniach and Drs B. E. Heard and W. I. Leslie for the post-mortem findings and material. We should also like to thank Dr J. R. Laws for the photograph of the X-ray and Mr W. H. Brackenbury for taking the photomicrographs.

References

1. AARAKOO, D. Infantile genetic agranulocytosis. *Arch Dis Child* 38 511 1961.
2. ANDREWS, J. P., MCCLELLAN, J. T. and SCOTT, C. H. Lethal congenital neutropenia with eosinophilia occurring in two siblings. *Amer J Med*, 29 358, 1960.
3. BYRNE, J., EILSSON, L. R. and FLEM, C. M. Familial neutropenia possibly caused by deficiency of plasma factor. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 51 497 1962.
4. BROWY, E. H., BUCKWOLD, A. E., ENSON, H. E. and RUSSELL, A. V. Familial neonatal neutropenia with maternal leukocyte antibodies. *Blood* 16 1 45, 1960.
5. BRUNON, O. C. Agammaglobulinemia. *Pediatrics*, 9 123, 1952.
6. DIALDETH, M., JOSHUA, H. and KALDERON, M. Familial leucopenia-neutropenia in Yemenite Jews. Observations on eleven families. *Bull Res Centre Israel (Exp Med)*, 25 4, 1961.
7. GOOD, R. A. Studies on agammaglobulinemia. *J Lab Cl Med*, 44 187 1955.
8. HEDENBERG, F. Infantile agranulocytosis

- of probably congenital origin. *Acta Paediat (Stock)*, 48 77 1959
9. HENRY J R. K. Congenital agranulocytosis. *Proc Roy Soc Med*, 50 2, 329-330, 1957
 10. HITIRO, von W. H. Familiäre Neutropenie mit dominantem Erbgang und Hypergammaglobulinämie. *Helv Med Acta*, 26 779 1959
 11. JANEV Y C. A. and OTTLEY D. The gamma globulins. *Advanc Paediat*, 9 65, 1957
 12. KATZKE, W. T. and PAXON, T. C. Idiopathic infantile agranulocytosis with hypergamma globulinemia. *Amer J Dis Child*, 95 849, 1957
 13. KORMAN R. Infantile genetic agranulocytosis. *Acta Paediat (Stock)*, Suppl 105 1958.
 14. LURIE A. L., SPIKER, F. D., LEE, R. and SHAPIRO, A. D. Congenital genetic agranulocytosis. *Amer J Dis Child*, 96 882, 1957
 15. McLEAY M. M. Chronic neutropenia. *Arch Dis Child*, 32 481, 1957
 16. McLEAY M. M. Personal communication. 1962
 17. PAGE, A. R. and GOOD, R. A. Studies on cyclic neutropenia. *Amer J Dis Child* 91 632, 1957
 18. REIMANN H. A. Periodic disease: Observations on old cases and report of new cases and of therapeutic trials. *Arch Intern Med* 92 494 1953.
 19. REIMANN, H. A. and D. BERARDINO, C. T. Periodic (cyclic) neutropenia, an entity. *Blood* 4 1109, 1949.
 20. ROSSMAN P. L. and HUMMER, H. J. Chronic neutropenia in siblings. The effect of steroids. *Am Intern Med*, 58 242, 1960.
 1. SLOBODY I. R., ABRAMSON H. and LOE KRAUX, I. B. JR. Agranulocytosis in the newborn infant. *JAMA* 142 25, 1950
 2. STANLEY, T. D. Chronic benign neutropenia in early childhood. Report of case with review of the literature. *J Paediat*, 48 710, 1954
 23. STEFANYI, M., MELLÉ, R. H. and SKINNER, D. Transitory congenital neutropenia, new syndrome. *Amer J Med*, 25 749 1958.

Submitted Aug. 5, 1963

Accepted Sept. 12, 1963

(J.B.M.G.) Westminster Medical School
Hornsey Road
London, N.W. 1
England

BOOK REVIEWS

R. Hanbirk Klinisch Röntgendiagnostik innerer Krankheiten I Thorax.

Springer Verlag Berlin-Göttingen Heidelberg 1963, 708 pages and 1365 illustrations, 220 D Mark.

This volume which is part of a series of monographs in medical radiology deal with the normal and pathologic roentgen findings of the heart and great vessels, the lungs, pleura, mediastinum, and the diaphragm. It gives an extensive but concise review of modern knowledge and also includes discussions of the currently dynamic and rapidly expanding aspects of diagnostic radiology. The different methods of investigation are excellently described and the chapters on normal roentgen anatomy deserve special praise for their clarity. It is noteworthy that the roentgen findings are correlated with appropriate clinical data, and that the results of some laboratory investigations, particularly cardiac catheterization, are given in reference to the text. The volume is richly illustrated and the illustrations are as a rule of a high quality, some of them being superb. From the viewpoint of the pediatrician or the pediatric roentgenologist more adequate coverage for diseases of children would be desirable but perhaps its omission is unavoidable in a text of this type. However the chapter on tuberculosis of the lung is the most rewarding. Ample illustrations support the clear and informative text. The pathology of the lung is otherwise only sparingly dealt with. The section on congenital heart lesions, although splendid in some respects, is not of the same general high standard as many of the other chapters. The roentgen description is often being unnecessarily defined by terms which are influenced by old clinical concepts. Also with some excellent exceptions the angiocardigrams have not been reproduced well. In several of these it would have been advantageous to supplement the angiocardigrams with explanatory drawings.

The overall standard of this volume is, however high and the limitations mentioned should not detract from the fact that it represents a valuable contribution to modern

to have been selected with great care. The book can be warmly recommended even to the experienced roentgenologist.

Ulf Rudén

Minimal Cerebral Dysfunction, Ed. by M. Bax & R. McKeth.

Published by the National Spastics Society Medical Education and Information Unit in association with W. Heinemann Medical Books Ltd London 1963. Price 17.6s.

The concept of minimal brain damage or minimal cerebral dysfunction has caused considerable confusion with many different interpretations. Under this heading varying categories of neuropsychological abnormalities have been listed such as cases of slight cerebral palsy mainly choreo-athetosis and taxic learning difficulties, perceptual disorders and a syndrome of disturbed behavior in children characterized by hyperactivity, distractibility, emotional lability and inconsistency of intellectual function. A large proportion of these children do not have any neuroanatomical sign of cerebral lesion nor have any evidence of an exogenous cerebral injury as an etiological factor in the association of these disorders with a "brain damage" is not always justified. Various aspects of this controversial topic were discussed at one of the recent meetings of the international study group in Oxford and these reports and the group discussions are presented in this volume. The conference seems to have come to the conclusion that the concept of "minimal brain damage" should be discarded. The symptoms should instead be specified as far as possible and for this purpose many of the papers contain valuable information on methodology and technique of investigation. It would have been of value to have included some critical comments by an experienced electroencephalographer as many of these children are sent for an EEG examination, which used as a routine method of diagnostic work-up seems to have very limited practical value. In general the present volume conforms well to the high standard one is used to from previous monographs of this series.

D. Halliday

From the Department of Pediatrics, Central Hospital, Kristianstad, the Department of Surgery County Hospital, Hålsjöholm, and the Department of Endocrinology Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden

Primary Aldosteronism due to an Adrenal Adenoma in a Three-year old Child

by B. CAVELL, E. SANDEGÅRD and B. HÖKFELT

The clinical syndrome due to an aldosterone-secreting adenoma was first described some 8 years ago by Conn [9], who called it primary aldosteronism. It is characterized by potassium depletion, hypertension and increased aldosterone excretion. More than one hundred cases of primary aldosteronism have been reported, and it has become evident that Conn's syndrome is a symptomatic curable form of hypertension [10-14]. Early recognition of the condition is therefore important. In 70% of the published cases of Conn's syndrome the diagnosis was made in patients aged 30-49 years [10]. The youngest patient so far reported was 15 years old [10]. That an aldosterone-producing adenoma can appear also quite early in life is illustrated in the following 3½ year-old patient in whom not only the classical symptoms were noted, but also stunted growth and possibly excessive hairiness.

Case report

History. H. M. N., girl, born August 16, 1928, was first admitted in December 1961 at the age of 3 years and 4 months, because of increasing polyuria and polydipsia. She

was number 3 of 3 siblings; her parents and siblings were healthy; several of her relatives had diabetes mellitus. At birth the patient was normally developed (length 49 cm, weight 3000 g) and development during the first year of life was normal. From 1 month of age she was able to control urination during the day time but not at night. From about 18 months of age nocturnal polyuria increased and the last few months before admission to hospital she voided once or twice an hour. Apart from loss of appetite the patient had no symptoms. She was not abnormally tired, she showed no evidence of muscular weakness or tetany and did not complain of headache. During the last 6 months before hospitalization the mother had observed that the patient had fine downy hair over the entire body but she did not know whether this increased lanugo had tended to progress. On perusal of the patient's record of routine medical inspection it was found that she had ceased to grow from about 2½ years of age (Fig. 1).

Physical findings. The patient was small for her age: height 83 cm (mean for her age 97 cm, range 80-105 cm), weight 10.5 kg (mean for her height 12.0 kg, range 10.5-14 kg). The musculature was reduced and the abdomen was tympanitic. There were no signs of Cushing's syndrome (see Fig. 2). The body was covered with down, especially the arms and shoulders. There was no hypertrophy of the thymus. Physical examination of the heart revealed no pathologic signs.

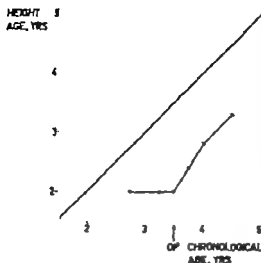


Fig. 1 Height vs versus chronological age. Not growth arrest before operation.

The blood pressure in the left as well as in the right arm was 180/110 mm Hg. The femoral pulsation and the ocular fundi were normal. The tendon reflexes were somewhat accentuated, but Chvostek's sign and Trousseau's sign were negative.

Laboratory studies

Methods. Sodium and potassium in the serum and urine were determined by flame photometry (Eppendorf). Aldosterone and other steroid hormones were determined in 24-hour urinary specimens collected without preservative. Aldosterone was measured by a double-isotope derivative technique [17]; 17-ketosteroids by a modification of the Zimmermann reaction [18]; and 17-ketogenic steroids according to the method of Appleby *et al.* [1]. The steroid-hormone content of the adrenal adenoma (aldosteroma) [4] was assessed after incubation of tumor tissue with ^3H progesterone in a pH 7.4 saline phosphate buffer containing 200 mg glucose per 100 ml. The steroids were extracted, purified and separated principally according to Neher [19]; the positions of compounds were determined by scanning for radioactivity on a Baird Atomic strip

scanner. Further characterization and quantitation was achieved by the application of UV absorption, soda fluorescence, tetrazolium blue, Porter-Silber and Zimmermann reactions. Urinary catecholamines were determined according to the fluorometric procedure of Euler & Lohajko [12]. Standard clinical methods were used for routine clinical tests.

Findings. Pertinent laboratory data are given in Table 1. Pre-operative studies showed hypokalemia and hypernatremia but normal serum bicarbonate. There was a markedly increased secretion of urine (Fig. 3) with a specific gravity varying between 1.003 and 1.006, the

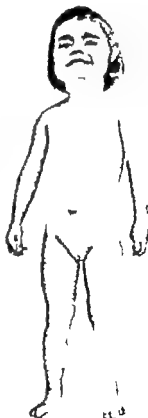


Fig. 2. Patient B. M. A. Physical appearance before operation.

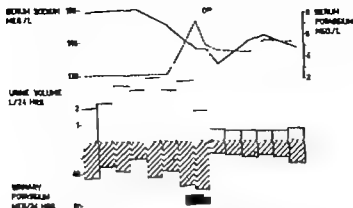


Fig. 3. Serum sodium (continuous line), serum potassium (interrupted line), urine volumes and urinary potassium. Urinary figures represent 8-day periods. Black area indicates administration of Aldosterone (200-150 mg/day).

latter value obtained following a concentration test Pitresin failed to increase the specific gravity of the urine. The urine was neutral or slightly alkaline and contained at most traces of protein. Despite the low serum potassium the 4-hour urinary potassium varied between 33 and 59 mEq. A strict balance study was prevented by the young age of the patient, her potassium intake on an ordinary diet was, however estimated at about 35 mEq per day which would imply a slightly negative potassium balance (Fig 3). The existence of kaliopenia was supported by the electrocardiographic findings, namely T vector of low magnitude prolonged Q-T interval and occasional prominent U waves. The combined administration of extra potassium and an aldosterone antagonist (spironolactone) resulted in a positive potassium balance, as judged by both serum and urinary potassium values (Fig 3) and a marked fall in the serum sodium.

Hb 13.8 g/100 ml. White blood cells 6200 per mm with a normal differential

count. Fasting blood sugar varied between 0.076 and 0.094 g/100 ml and the curve obtained for an oral glucose tolerance test was normal. The plasma calcium and phosphorus were normal (10.0 mg/100 ml and 4.4 mg/100 ml respectively) and alkaline phosphatase was within normal limits. The 24 hour excretion of aldosterone in the urine was 19-44 μ g. Although only limited data are available on the urinary excretion of steroids in early childhood, it is obvious that the urinary aldosterone was markedly elevated in our patient. In two normal children, aged 18 months and 4 years, we have found 4 hour urinary aldosterone values of 2 and 5 μ g respectively and the upper limit of the normal adult range as determined by the procedure used in the present investigation, is about 15 μ g/24 hours. The urinary excretion of 17 ketosteroids varied between 1.2 and 2.5 mg/24 hours, which is slightly above normal, compared with a mean of 0.78 mg/24 hours for children aged 1-5 years published by Prout & Sneath [22] who used the same procedure. In children,

TABLE 1 *Serum and urine electrolytes and hormonal assays before and 5 weeks after operation (ordinary diet)*

| | Before op. | After op. |
|----------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Serum sodium (mEq/L) | 143-160 | 123-142 |
| Potassium (mEq/L) | 4-5 | 4.3-5.6 |
| Chlorid (mEq/L) | 102-103 | — |
| Standard bicarbonat (mEq/L) | 23 | 23 |
| Urine volume (ml/24 hrs) | 900-3700 | 450-725 |
| Specific gravity | | |
| at concentration test | 1.006 | 1.051 |
| after Pitressin | 1.003 | 1.014 |
| Protein | 0-trace | 0 |
| | amounts | |
| Sediment | 0 | 0 |
| Reaction | Neutral-alkaline | Acid-alkaline |
| Sodium (mEq/24 hrs) | 35-50 | 14-29 |
| Potassium (mEq/24 hrs) | 33-39 | 1-20 |
| Aldosterone (μ g/24 hrs) | 10-44 | 0.1-0.6 |
| 17 ketosteroids (mg/24 hrs) | 1.2-5 | 0.4-0.5 |
| 1-ketogenic steroids (mg/24 hrs) | 4-6.1 | 1.3-1.9 |
| Adrenaline (μ g/24 hrs) | —0 | — |
| Noradrenaline (μ g/24 hrs) | 7.1 | — |

aged 3-4 years, we have found the urinary excretion of 17 ketogenic steroids to vary around 2-4 mg/24 hours. It is thus obvious that the excretion of 17-ketogenic steroids in our patient (2.4-0.1 mg/24 hours) was normal to slightly elevated. The urinary excretion of adrenaline was 2.1 and noradrenaline 7.1 μ g/24 hours, which are normal values, and most likely excluded the possibility of a pheochromocytoma as the cause of hypertension.

X-ray. The laboratory findings reported above made the diagnosis of primary aldosteronism likely and an intravenous renogram suggested the presence of an abnormal mass above the right kidney. The appearances of the sella turcica, heart and lungs were normal.

Treatment and postoperative course

During pretreatment with extra potassium (40 mEq/day) and spironolactone

(Aldactone 900 mg/day) the serum potassium rose sharply to 7.2 mEq/L and the ECG showed signs of hyperkalemia. After reduction of extra potassium to 6 mEq/day and Aldactone to 150 mg/day the serum potassium promptly returned to normal. At operation the right adrenal was explored by the transabdominal route and a cortical adenoma 3 cm in diameter was found and removed. The tumor weighed 15 g; it was well encapsulated and its cut surface was golden-yellow. Microscopically the adenoma consisted of well-differentiated cells of benign structures, in some areas reminiscent of zona glomerulosa, in other areas, of the fasciculata and reticularia. There was no evidence of malignancy.

Analysis of incubated slices of the adenoma showed that the growth could produce not only aldosterone and corticosterone but also considerable quantities

TABLE — Steroid hormone content ($\mu\text{g/g}$ tissue) following incubation of the aldosteroma.

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| Cortisol | 7.3 |
| Cortisone | 0.3 |
| Aldosterone | 0.3 |
| Corticosterone | 1.3 |
| DOC | — |
| 17-ketosteroids | 2.5 |

of cortisol as well as compounds reacting with the Zimmerman reagent probably 17 ketosteroids (Table 2).

The postoperative course was uneventful. The concentrations of the blood electrolytes promptly became normal as did the output and the pH of the urine (Table 1). The blood pressure fell to 100/80 mm Hg almost immediately after the operation. The marked decrease in potassium excretion probably reflected a positive potassium balance (Fig 3). Urinary aldosterone fell to subnormal levels, while the urinary 17-ketosteroids and 17 ketogenic steroids were within the lower normal range (Table 1).

On examination 6 and 11 months after the removal of the adrenal tumor the patient felt well. Thirst and urine output were normal, she was growing at a normal rate (Fig 1) and her hirsutism had disappeared. The blood pressure was normal and there was no electrolyte metabolic disturbance. Steroid hormone excretion was normal 11 months after operation: aldosterone 2.4–3.4 $\mu\text{g}/24$ hours, 17 ketosteroids 0.5–0.6 $\text{mg}/24$ hours and 17 ketogenic steroids 2.6–6.0 $\text{mg}/24$ hours.

Discussion

The patient was brought to the doctor because of pronounced polyuria and polydipsia, and these symptoms in combi-

nation with retarded growth suggested a hypophysial tumor. This possibility was however soon excluded by a normal roentgen appearance of the sella turcica and the occurrence of pitressin resistant polyuria. Other symptoms of diagnostic value were the occurrence of hypertension and hypokalemia, combined with marked excretion of potassium in the urine. These findings suggested Conn's syndrome and for this reason the patient was studied regarding the production of aldosterone.

In retrospect, the patient's history argues the overproduction of aldosterone for at least 18 months and the disease had probably resulted in considerable potassium deficiency. Since potassium seems to be essential for normal growth, both in animals and in man [5–5], the retardation of growth was probably due to kaliopenia. Retarded growth has also been observed in young patients with aldosteronism without adrenal tumor presenting all the clinical and biochemical manifestations typical of Conn's syndrome but with malignant hypertension [7–10]; this type of aldosteronism has been tentatively designated by Conn as "congenital aldosteronism" [10]. Further more growth retardation was found in two of the three patients recently reported by Bartter *et al* as a new syndrome characterized by hypokalemic alkalosis, overproduction of aldosterone and hyperplasia of the juxtaglomerular complex, but with normal blood pressure [3–21]. Dwarfism was also present in another recently described entity with congenital hypokalemia of presumably renal origin without involvement of aldosterone; also these patients had normal blood pressure [8].

Hypertension is one of the earmarks of Conn's syndrome [10-14] and the presence of hypertension in young patients with hypokalemia and aldosteronism is thus of importance in differentiating aldosteronoma from the kind of aldosteronism described by Barter *et al* and referred to above [3]. The latter group possibly differs from Conn's syndrome also by having a rather low serum sodium in spite of normal capacity to conserve sodium on the kidney level. It is not clear why there is hypertension in Conn's syndrome but not in the patients described by Barter *et al*. But the prompt normalization of the blood pressure following the operation on our patient indicates a close interrelationship between the adenoma and hypertension.

It seems possible that the two above mentioned patients with congenital hypokalemia [8] are in some way related to the normotensive cases of aldosteronism described by Barter *et al* [3]. In the former cases the authors ascribed the potassium wasting to a renal rather than an adrenal defect but no thorough study seems to have been performed with respect to aldosterone production. Thus in one of the patients no aldosterone measurements were reported in the other urinary aldosterone was determined once and then found to be slightly elevated this elevation was considered secondary to changes in electrolyte intake.

Before the operation the entire body of the patient showed slight lanuginosity. This type of hairiness may occur normally but in our patient it was probably due to a slight overproduction of 17 ketosteroids by the tumor since incubation of the latter produced, among

other things, substances which reacted with Zimmermann's reagent. On the other hand, both clinical and laboratory findings excluded the possibility of any substantially increased production of androgens.

On incubation the tumor also produced a considerable amount of cortisol. It is therefore possible that the tumor also secreted a certain amount of cortisol *in situ* but this secretion can hardly have been substantial, since the patient showed no clinical signs of Cushing's syndrome, and the excretion of 17 ketogenic steroids was, as a rule normal, though slightly elevated values were occasionally noted. If the production of cortisol by the adenoma *in situ* had been considerable it would have inhibited the secretion of ACTH by the hypophysis with consequent atrophy of the contralateral adrenal. This in turn would have caused adrenocortical insufficiency after removal of the adenoma that this did not occur is obvious from the fact that the patient did not require corticosteroid substitution therapy after the operation.

The observation that an aldosteronoma can produce a number of steroid hormones besides aldosterone on incubation is new. It is not new. Such production was first reported by Leher [19] and has since been found in several cases of aldosteronoma [6-15]. *In vitro* studies are markedly influenced by the incubation medium used, as well as by other external factors. The demonstration of the synthesis of certain steroids in such assays therefore only shows that the tissue in question contains the enzyme systems necessary for such production but does not exclude the possibility that the tissue was also able to produce other hormones *in situ*, even

though no such hormones were demonstrable after incubation of the tissue. Neither do *in vitro* studies warrant any conclusions as to which hormone is produced in largest amounts by an adenoma *in situ*.

Histological examination of the adenoma showed varying types of cells but did not suggest that the adenoma had originated in any particular zone of the adrenal cortex. The occurrence of different types of cell appears to agree well with the capacity of the adenoma to synthesize a number of steroid hormones. If the adenoma had produced only aldosterone, one might have expected it to be built up exclusively of the type of cells present in the zona glomerulosa, since aldosterone is normally probably produced only in this zone []. Moreover the gross and macroscopical appearance of the tumor in our patient resembled that seen in several cases of Conn's syndrome [10-14]. The microscopical appearance did not suggest malignancy; an observation likewise in agreement with other published cases of aldosteromas. In this connection it might be relevant to recall that in childhood benign cortical tumors are less commonly the cause of Cushing's syndrome than are malignant neoplasms [24], even though Cushing's syndrome in association with adrenal virilism due to a presumed benign adrenocortical adenoma has been reported [23].

Decreased tolerance to carbohydrate in the form of glycosuria and a diabetic glucose tolerance curve [13] have been reported in several cases of primary aldosteronism. The decreased glucose tolerance can be corrected by administration of

potassium and, in some cases also by spironolactone [11]. It is therefore remarkable that the patient did not show a decreased glucose tolerance despite kaliopenia and heredity for diabetes. Other symptoms ascribed to kaliopenia are muscular weakness and hyporeflexia or areflexia sometimes flaccid pareses. Like children with hypokalemia and aldosteronism of "congenital type" [10], our patient had none of these symptoms.

Summary

A girl, aged 3½ years, was admitted to hospital because of polyuria, polydipsia and retarded growth. On examination she was found to have moderate hypertension and slight hirsutism. Laboratory studies revealed hypokalemia combined with potassium wasting in the urine, slight hypernatremia and high urinary aldosterone excretion. The urinary 17 ketosteroids were slightly elevated, whereas the 17 ketogenic steroids were normal or slightly elevated. Administration of spironolactone was followed by an increase of the serum potassium and a decrease of the serum sodium. An aldosteroma (Conn's syndrome) was diagnosed and successfully removed. On incubation the adrenal adenoma produced considerable quantities of aldosterone, cortisol and 17 ketosteroids.

Promptly after removal of the adenoma, the urinary aldosterone dropped to below normal, the blood electrolytes became normal, and polyuria, polydipsia and hypertension disappeared. When seen one year after operation the girl was perfectly healthy and growing at a normal rate.

References

1. AFFENY J. I., GIBSON G., MONTENBERG, J. K. and BRONN, R. D. Indirect analysis of corticosteroids. *Biochem J* 68 433, 1955.
2. AYRES, P. J., HECHESTER, G., SARA, D., SIVKOV, S. A. and TIT J. F. Intermediates in biosynthesis of aldosterone by caprine strippings of ox adrenal gland. *Biochem J* 65 22, 1955.
3. BARTTER, F. C., PROSSER, P., GILL JR., J. R., MACCABDIE, R. C. and DILLER, E. Hyperplasia of the juxtaglomerular complex with hyperaldosteronism and hypokalaemic alkalosis. *Amer J Med* 33 811, 1962.
4. BERNSTEIN, R. E. Chemical and clinical endocrinology of aldosterone. *B Afr Med J* 33 422, 1956.
5. BLOCK, D. A. H. Current concept of potassium metabolism. *J Pediatr* 58 214, 1960.
6. BRONN, R. D., GRANT J. K. and STRICKER, T. A biochemical and pathological investigation of adrenal tumours from patients with Conn syndrome. *Acta Endocr* 41 411, 1962.
7. BUCHANAN, V. R. P., DOUGLASSON, H. and ELLING, H. S. Conn syndrome caused by adrenocortical hyperplasia: Pathogenesis of the signs and symptoms. *Acta Endocr* 3 313, 1956.
8. CAVELL, A. M. and BISHARD, R. M. Congenital hypokalaemia of probable renal origin. *Amer J Dis Child* 105 535, 1962.
9. COVE, J. W. Primary aldosteronism: A new clinical syndrome. *J Lab Clin Med* 46 6, 1955.
10. COVE, J. W. Aldosteronism and hypertension. *Arch Intern Med (Chic)*, 107 813, 1961.
11. DOUGLASSON, H., COVE, J. W. and VARELSKITT, V. F. Effect of aldosterone antagonists on the disturbance of carbohydrate metabolism in primary aldosteronism. *Acta Endocr* 3 suppl 51 185, 1960.
12. ELLER, U. B. V. and LARSSON, F. Improved technique for the fluorimetric estimation of oestrobolamines. *Acta Physiol Scand* 51 345, 1961.
13. HENLETT, J. R., McCULLAGH, E. P., FARREL, H. L., DUNNAN, H. P., POUTASKE, K. F. and PROSSER, W. L. Aldosterone-producing tumours of the adrenal glands. Report of 3 cases. *JAMA* 164 719, 1957.
14. HÖCKELT, H. Das primäre Aldosteronismus. *Fortschr. Deutsch. Ges. Inn. Med.* 82, Leipzig, p. 618 J. F. Bergmann, München, 1957.
15. HÖCKELT, H. Primary aldosteronism. Studies on electrolyte and aldosterone excretion and aldosterone content of tumours. *Fortschr. Med. Neurol.* 41 23, 1962.
16. KARLSSON, P., PERMAN, A. and LARSSON, R. A Swedish growth chart. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 5 suppl 117 137, 1959.
17. KILMAN, H. and PETERSON, R. E. Double isotope derivative assay of aldosterone in biological extracts. *J Biol Chem*, 235, 1959, 1960.
18. Medical Research Council committee on clinical endocrinology. Proposed standard method of 17 ketosteroid determination. *Lancet* 2 433, 1951.
19. MEYER, R. J. Aldosterone and Other Adrenocortical Hormones in Human Adrenal and Adrenal Tumors. An international comparison on aldosterone. *J. & A. Churchill Ltd., London*, p. 11, 1954.
20. ORSDAHL, H., HÖCKELT, H., LUTSKY, E. and HOGAN, B. Two cases of primary aldosteronism. *Acta Med Scand*, 165 444, 1958.
21. PROSSER, P., MACCABDIE, R. C. and BARTTER, F. C. Aldosteronism, hypokalaemia and a unique renal lesion in a young old boy. *Acta Endocr* 3 suppl 51 187, 1960.
22. PROUT, M. and BRATTON, A. H. Urinary excretion of 17 ketosteroids in children. *Arch Dis Child* 23 361, 1958.
23. PUTTMANN, D. L. and BUCHHEIT, F. C. Adrenocortical adenoma with Cushing's syndrome and virilism in 8-year-old child. *J Pediatr* 60 326, 1962.
24. RIGALL, E. H., LEE, C. M., KENNEDY, F. M. and CLARK, L. O. Functioning adrenal tumour in childhood. *Amer J Dis Child*, 66 723, 1963.
25. WELSH, L. G., HOLLANDER, JR., W. and BRYNER, W. H. The consequences of potassium depletion. *J Chron. Dis* 11 212, 1959.

Submitted Oct. 1, 1963

Accepted Oct. 20, 1963

(B.C.) Dept. of Pediatrics
Central-sjukhuset
Kristianstad
Sweden

From the Department of Metabolic Research (Head: Dr H. Boström), the Wenner-Gren Institute University of Stockholm, the Department of Medicine (Head: Prof. G. Björck) Serafimerläsaret, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm, and the Children's Hospital Barnavärdshuset (Head: Dr L. Ström), Stockholm, Sweden.

Cystinuria in Sweden

VIII. A Case of Coeliac Disease Associated with Cystine-Lysinuria

by LEIF HAMBRÆUS and GEORG DE HEVESY

Introduction

Osborne & Mendel [21] were the first to demonstrate that the amino acid lysine was essential for growth in rats, and 27 years later Albanese and collaborators [3] showed it to be indispensable for growth in human beings. Several workers have investigated the 24 hour requirement of lysine in the human being. For healthy young adults the latter has been reported to vary between 300 mg and 900 mg per day [8, 19-24] and for the growing infant it has been found to range between 90 mg and 400 mg per kg body weight per day [1-20]. In a study of healthy infants, Albanese *et al.* [2] found that the nutritional value of many infant foods could be improved by small addition of lysine. The part played by lysine in the nutrition of the human being has recently been extensively reviewed by Jansen [18].

Studies of the lysine balance in patients with increased urinary excretion of lysine such as homozygous cystinurics, whose daily output of lysine may be as high as 10 g per day [28], have so far not been carried out to the best of the authors' knowledge. Some authors have observed

that patients with homozygous cystinuria are slightly below average in height and have expressed the view that this might be due to deficient nutrition in infancy and childhood caused by the excessive excretion of lysine [4-9].

In this paper the case of an infant with excessive urinary excretion of lysine and cystine associated with clinical signs of malnutrition is reported. Bearing in mind the important part which lysine plays in protein metabolism, quantitative studies of the patient's intake and output of lysine were carried out.

Dietary Experiments

During five periods, each of about 14 days duration, the patient was given different diets some being supplemented with varying doses of lysine.

During the first period a diet was given (standard diet No. 1 providing about 850 calories and consisting of 120 g carbohydrates, 20 g fat and 35 g protein) which largely corresponded to the diet the patient had been given at home. During the second period this diet was supplemented with oral lysine. Thereafter the caloric and protein levels in the diet were increased (standard diet No. 2 providing about 1400 calories and

consisting of 185 g carbohydrate, 30 g fat and 40 g protein). This diet was gluten-free and was given during the third, fourth and fifth periods, being supplemented with lysine during the fourth period.

Throughout each period samples of 24 hour feeds and 4 hour samples of urine and faeces were collected for analysis.

The samples of the feeds and faeces were homogenised in a Waring type blender. Thereafter these together with the samples of urine were stored (in a freezing-chamber) at -20°C . Prior to analysis the homogenised samples were hydrolysed in 6 N HCl at 100°C for 24 hours.

Analytical Methods

The following analytical methods were used:

(1) *Broad's test* [7]. This test was used for the demonstration of increased excretion of cystine.

(2) *Two-dimensional paper chromatography*. Ascending paper chromatography in two dimensions according to the method described by Dent [11] was used for semi-quantitative amino acid analyses, phenol water (500 g phenol + 1.5 ml aq. dest.) in ammonia atmosphere and lutidine-water (400 ml lutidine + 100 ml aq. dest.) in a methylamine atmosphere being the first and second solvent respectively. The paper chromatograms were allowed to dry in a stream of hot air for two hours and were then developed by dipping them momentarily in a 0.2% solution of ninhydrin in acetone. They were allowed to dry and then heated in an oven at $+70^{\circ}\text{C}$ for a few minutes.

(3) *High voltage paper electrophoresis*. High voltage paper electrophoresis according to the method described by one of us [14], was used for separation and semi-quantitative studies of the basic amino acids excreted in the urine.

(4) *Ion exchange chromatography*. A modified Spackman, Stein & Moore automatic amino acid analyser [37] for quantitative studies on the amino acids was used [18].

Case Report

K.R., a boy born in 1960. He was the third child, weighing 2800 g at birth. His mother's obstetric history was evidently normal. He was fed on breast milk alone for six weeks. Thereafter supplementary infant's food was given. He developed normally in weight. At seven months he weighed 7.3 kg.

When he was a few months old he developed a mild eczema on his face which was thought to be due to hypersensitivity to foodstuffs, particularly tomatoes. At the age of six months he was admitted to hospital with pneumonia on the right side. His condition was critical because of threatened respiratory failure. However he gradually improved and after a month he was discharged. After his discharge he did not gain sufficiently in weight despite unimpaired appetite. There was nothing noteworthy about the faeces. The patient's general condition deteriorated. He did not play with his siblings as he previously had done, he cried easily and was irritable and querulous. He vomited periodically with resultant progressive loss of weight.

At the age of fifteen months he was admitted to hospital for study of his failure to thrive. On admission he was found to be poorly nourished; his arms and legs were extremely thin and his abdomen was distended. He weighed 7000 g. The liver and spleen were not enlarged. There was nothing noteworthy about the lymph glands, heart and lungs, and there were no signs of rickets.

The full blood count, and differential, the haemoglobin and the micro-E.S.R. were normal. The serum concentration of sodium and chloride was increased, the increase being interpreted as due to dehydration. At later follow up examination the serum electrolytes were found to be normal. The phosphatase, transaminase and thyroxine turbidity values were within the normal range. Serum cholesterol was 138 mg% and the total serum lipids was 800 mg%. Micro-N.P.N. was 25 mg%. Routine urinalysis did not reveal anything noteworthy.

TABLE 1 Findings on which a presumptive diagnosis of coeliac disease was based

| Examination | Findings |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Physical examination | Emaciation; distended abdomen, Weight 7.5 kg at the age of 15 months |
| Glucose tolerance test | Linear curve |
| Xylose excretion test | Linear curve |
| Vitamin A tolerance test | Suboptimal response suggesting malabsorption |
| Fat content of faeces | 4.0 g per day corresponding to 21 % of the fat ingested |
| Amylase and trypsin determination | Normal |
| Small intestine biopsy | Atrophic intestinal mucosa showing inflammatory changes |

Brand's test [7] revealed the urinary excretion of cystine to be increased and two-dimensional paper chromatography showed that the pattern of urinary amino acid excretion deviated markedly from normal inasmuch as the cystine and lysine levels were abnormally high.

The patient was put on a standard diet which largely corresponded to the feeds he had received at home but was insufficient for an infant of his age (standard diet N 1). After two weeks supplementary lysine (2.5 g lysine monohydrochloride) was given by mouth in addition. This diet did not result in weight gain or improvement in his general condition. Towards the end of this trial period, while still in hospital, the patient developed nosocomial enteritis and parotitis.

The glucose tolerance test (2 g glucose per kg body weight) and xylose excretion test [23] produced a nearly linear curve. This together with the result of the vitamin A tolerance test [22] and the demonstration of 20% of the ingested fat in faeces suggested malabsorption. Small intestine biopsy showed signs of atrophy and inflammatory changes. On the basis of these findings together with the clinical picture a presumptive diagnosis of coeliac disease was made (Table 1).

For further investigation the patient was put on a gluten free diet. The protein level in the diet was slightly increased (from 35 g to 40 g per day), and to meet more adequately the nutritional requirement of the pa-

tient the number of calories was increased to 1200 per day (standard diet No 2). He was on this diet for three weeks (period N 3) and thereafter it was supplemented with lysine, giving 3.5 g lysine monohydrochloride per day (period N 4). The weight curve (Fig. 1) showed that the standard diet N 2 alone resulted in weight gain. His general condition improved markedly; he had gained 1.4 kg in weight over six weeks and was well covered. There was also a marked improvement in his mental condition. The laboratory findings confirmed the clinical improvement. The values of the xylose excretion test had reverted to normal and the results of the vitamin A tolerance test were almost normal.

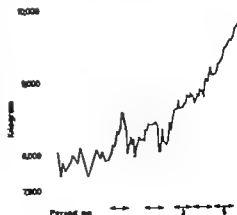


Fig. 1 Weight curve showing the patient's gain in weight during different periods



Fig. 2. Paper chromatograms of samples of urine. Two-dimensional paper chromatography according to Dent [11] on a specimen of urine from a healthy child of the same age as the patient (on the left) and from the patient himself (on the right).

However investigation of the pattern of urinary amino acid excretion did not reveal any improvement and the patient continued to excrete abnormal quantities of lysine. Supplementary lysine did not appear to have played a part in the patient's improvement as he continued to gain weight after its withdrawal (period No. 8).

At the follow up examination four months later when the patient was two years old, he appeared to be normally developed. His general condition was good, he was well equipped and the development of his muscles corresponded to his age. According to the information given by his mother he did not show any psychological abnormalities and had a good appetite. He had progressively gained in weight weighing then 11.4 kg.

Results

Fig. 2 shows two paper chromatograms: the one on the left illustrates the findings in a sample of urine obtained from a healthy child of the same age as the patient, and that on the right those in a sample of urine obtained from the patient. In the latter chromatogram two spots are seen which are not visible in the former. The position of the dense spot in the lower left corner corresponds to that of the basic

amino acids. The position of the small dense spot to the right corresponds to that of cystine; the latter for technical reasons, being demonstrated in the form of cystic acid [10].

Fig. 3 shows the electropherogram of specimens of urine obtained from the patient (specimens Nos. 1 and 7) of 1 specimen from each of his parents (specimens Nos. 2 and 3) and 1 specimen from each of his two brothers (specimens Nos. 4 and 6). Specimen No. 4 is derived from a standard mixture of the amino acids arginine, lysine and ornithine which are visible in the form of dense discrete spots. On the conventional paper chromatogram these amino acids do not appear as discrete spots. It is seen that the lysine concentration in the patient's urine is markedly raised, the values of the concentration of the basic amino acids lysine, arginine and ornithine in the specimens of urine obtained from his relatives being within the normal range.

Analysis of samples of urine obtained from a further fourteen relatives of the patient did not reveal an abnormal pattern.

ARG LYS ORN

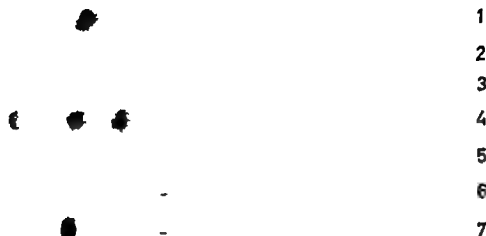


Fig. 2. *Electropherogram of samples of urine* High voltage paper electrophoresis according to Hambræus [14] on two specimens of urine from the patient (Nos. 1 and 7), one specimen from each of his parents (Nos. 2 and 3), and each of his two brothers (Nos. 4 and 5). A standard mixture of the amino acids arginine (ARG), lysine (LYS), and ornithine (ORN) is included as comparison (No. 4).

of urinary amino acid excretion in any individual case

Quantitative analysis of the amino acids in the specimen of urine obtained from the patient on admission, using an automatic amino acid analyzer, revealed the presence of grossly abnormal quantities of lysine (230 mg per day or 1840 mg per g creatinine) and an increased output of cystine (48 mg per day or 370 mg per g creatinine), arginine (5 mg per day or 37 mg per g creatinine) and ornithine (18 mg per day or 141 mg per g creatinine). Six months later analysis of the urinary specimen obtained from the patient at the follow-up examination showed that the output of arginine had increased (23 mg per day or 100 mg per g creatinine) the

excretion of the other three amino acids being practically unchanged (Table 2).

Table 3 shows the results of the quantitative studies of the lysine intake and output in the different trial periods. It is seen that the urinary excretion of lysine per day was the same while the patient was on the standard diets 1 and 2 despite the fact that the lysine content of the latter was about 30% higher than that of the former. When these diets were supplemented with lysine the lysine excretion per day increased, about 10% of the supplementary lysine being lost in the urine.

The concentration of lysine in the urine varied but the variation did not seem to be related to the total quantity of lysine ingested.

TABLE 2 *Quantitative determinations of the amino acids cystine lysine arginine and ornithine in specimens of the patient's urine obtained on admission and at follow-up examination*

| Amino acid | Urinary excretion | | | |
|------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| | On admission | | At follow-up | |
| | mg per day | mg per g creatinine | mg per day | mg per g creatinine |
| Cystine | 48 | 380 | 43 | 400 |
| Lysine | 250 | 1940 | 308 | 1380 |
| Arginine | 8 | 40 | 23 | 100 |
| Ornithine | 18 | 140 | 20 | 80 |

The amount of creatinine excreted in the urine per day was roughly the same in the different trial periods. This observation confirmed that the 24 hours samples collected were in fact the true total 24 hour urinary output.

Discussion

The diagnosis of coeliac disease was based on.

- (1) the almost linear curves obtained at the xylose excretion test and glucose tolerance test;
- (2) the impaired absorption of fat in the gut
- (3) the results of the vitamin A tolerance test,
- (4) the findings on small intestine biopsy (Table 1)

There are two feasible explanations of the patient's amino aciduria. Firstly it may have been caused by the coeliac disease *per se*. Secondly two different diseases may have co-existed, viz. coeliac disease and amino aciduria of another origin.

The co-existence of amino aciduria and coeliac disease has been observed by several workers. Bickel & Souchoff [6] carried out semi-quantitative studies of the pattern of urinary amino acid excretion associated with steatorrhea and coeliac disease and found that a mild form of generalised amino aciduria was usually present which resembled that associated with

TABLE 3 *Quantitative studies of lysine intake and output.*

| Trial Period No. Standard Diet No. | 1 I | 2 I | 3 II | 4 II | 5 II |
|---------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| Protein content (g per day) | 28 | 25 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| Urinary output (ml per d y) | 800 | 770 | 210 | 280 | 300 |
| Creatinine excreted (mg per day) | 180 | 160 | — | 160 | 180 |
| <i>Lysine intake (mg per day)</i> | | | | | |
| In food | 1930 | 1970 | 2680 | 2980 | 2750 |
| Supplementary | — | 2000 | — | 2800 | — |
| Total | 1930 | 3970 | 2680 | 5780 | 2750 |
| <i>Lysine output (mg per day)</i> | | | | | |
| In urine | 210 | 410 | 240 | 420 | 180 |
| In faeces | — | 240 | 410 | 220 | 380 |
| Total | — | 650 | 650 | 640 | 560 |

N data available

hepatic disease. This observation was confirmed by Snyderman [25] and Ghadimi & Shwachman [13].

The pattern of urinary amino acid excretion observed in the case presented differed from that which has been reported to co-exist with coeliac disease inasmuch as the excretion of lysine, cystine, arginine and ornithine only was increased. Moreover the defect was quite severe because excessive quantities of lysine were excreted. We are therefore inclined to believe that two different diseases co-existed in the case reported, viz. coeliac disease and a specific amino aciduria similar to that of classical cystinuria.

The patient appeared to have maintained a positive lysine balance despite the lysine losses as the lysine requirement of a child of the patient's age has been reported to be 1 g- g per day [1 '60]. However it should be pointed out that no reliable method for the determination of lysine loss in the gut due to bacterial catabolism of lysine is yet available. According to Millne *et al.* [5 '60] bacterial catabolism of lysine occurs to a considerable degree in healthy individuals and to a marked degree in patients with cystinuria. For these reasons no definite conclusions can be drawn from the results of the present study. However the findings suggested that the quantities of lysine excreted in the urine were not sufficiently large to cause lysine deficiency. The clinical course of the disease substantiated this assumption.

Although the 4 hour excretion of creatinine is lower in infancy and in childhood than in adult life it was considered to be of interest to determine the lysine/creatinine ratio in the case presented. On

comparing the values obtained with those published by Harris *et al.* [16 '17] and Fowler *et al.* [1] it was found that they were abnormally high and of the same magnitude as those obtained in cases of classical cystinuria, even following correction for age variation in creatinine excretion.

The cystine/creatinine ratio and arginine/creatinine ratio also appeared to be abnormal but were within the range of the average values given for homozygotes and heterozygotes with cystinuria [17]. As no data are available on the pattern of urinary amino acid excretion in cystinuric patients of the same age as our patient nothing definite can be said about the type of his cystinuria, i.e. whether it was heterozygous or homozygous.

Summary

A case of failure to thrive associated with excessive excretion of cystine and lysine in a male infant of fifteen months is described. Quantitative studies of the patient's lysine intake and output suggested that the increased lysine excretion *per se* was not the primary cause of the malnutrition. On the basis of the clinical and laboratory findings a presumptive diagnosis of coeliac disease associated with classical cystinuria was made.

Acknowledgements

The authors' thanks are due to Professor Gunnar Björck and Dr Lars Ström for their kind interest in this work, to Dr Harry Boström for valuable advice and constructive criticism, and to Miss Anita Fléron for technical assistance.

This study was supported by grants from Karolinska Institutets Reservationsnäd and Svenska Sällskapet för Medicinsk Forskning.

References

1. ALBANESE, A. A. Protein and amino acid requirements of children. In: *Protein and Amino Acid Nutrition* ed. A. A. Albanese Acad. Press Inc. New York 1959.
2. ALBANESE, A. A., RIGGONS, R. A., HYDE, G. M. and ORTO, L. Biochemical and nutritional effects of lysine-reinforced diets. *Amer J Clin Nutr* 3 121 1955.
3. ALBANESE, A. A., HOLT JR., L. E., BRUMBACK JR., J. E., HAYES, M., KAJDI, C. and WANDERER, D. M. Nitrogen balance in experimental lysine deficiency in man. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 48 728 1941.
4. ANDREWS, J. C. The place of cystinuria in human disease. *N Carolina Med J* 13 186, 1955.
5. ARATOOK, A. M., LACEY, B. W., LONDON, D. R. and MILNE, M. D. Amino acid metabolism in cystinuria. *Cyt Sci* 22 385, 1962.
6. BRUCKEL, H. and BOUCHON, P. Die Papier chromatographie in der Kinderheilkunde. *Arch Kinderheilk Suppl* 31 117 1955.
7. BRAD, E., HARRIS, M. M. and BRIDGES, S. Cystinuria. The excretion of cystine complex which decomposes in the urine with the liberation of free cystine. *J Biol Chem* 86 315, 1930.
8. CLARK, H. E., MEYER, E. T., KUNO, E. H., HOWE, J. M. and DeLONG, D. C. Amino acid requirements of men and women. I. Lysine. *J Nutrition* 62 71 1957.
9. COLLIER, J. E., LEVI, A. J. and MILNE, M. D. Stature and nutrition in cystinuria and Hartnup disease. *Brit Med J* 1 890, 1963.
10. DEYR, C. E. The aminoaciduria in F neonatal syndrome. A study making extensive use of techniques based on paper partition chromatography. *Biochem J* 41 240 1947.
11. DEYR, C. E. A study of the behaviour of some aliphatic amino acids and other ninhydrin reacting substances on phenol-cellulose filter paper chromatograms with notes on the occurrence of some of them in biological fluids. *Biochem J* 45 189 1951.
12. F. WILK, D. I., VORTON, P. M., CHOCOMA, M. W. and PRATT, E. L. Observations on the urinary amino acid excretion in man: the influence of age and diet. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 68 452, 1957.
13. GRADINI, H. and SEWEMAN, H. Evaluation of amino-aciduria in infancy and childhood. *Amer J Dis Child* 89 487 1960.
14. HAMMARLUND, L. Influence of temperature on the separation of basic amino acids by high voltage paper electrophoresis. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 13 4, 1961.
15. HAMMARLUND, L. A modified automatic amino acid analyzer. *Scand Kemi Tidskrift* 73 628, 1963.
16. HARRIS, H. and WARREN, F. L. Quantitative studies on the urinary cystine in patients with cystine stone formation and in their relatives. *Ann Exptl* 18 125, 1963.
17. HARRIS, H., MITCHELL, U., ROBERT, E. B. and WARREN, F. L. Phenotypes and genotypes in cystinuria. *J Hum Gen* 29 61, 1955.
18. JAKOBY, G. R. Lysine in human nutrition. *J Nutrition* 76 S suppl part II, 1962.
19. JOYCE, E. M., BACHMAY, C. A. and RAYKOLA, M. B. Nitrogen balance of women maintained on various levels of lysine. *J Nutrition* 60 549 1956.
20. MILNE, M. D., ARATOOK, A. M., EDWARDS, K. D. G. and LOUGHEED, L. W. The intestinal absorption defect in cystinuria. *Can J* 3 323, 1961.
21. OSBORN, T. B. and MENDEL, L. B. Amino acids in nutrition and growth. *J Biol Chem* 17 323, 1954.
22. PATERSON, J. O. S. and WIGGERS, H. B. An estimation of plasma vitamin A and the vitamin A absorption test. *J Clin Pathol* 7 56, 1954.
23. ROSE, J. H. and RICE, E. W. A photometric method for the determination of free proline in animal tissues. *J Biol Chem* 175 967 1948.
24. ROSE, W. C., BORMAN, A., COOT, M. J. and LAMBERT, G. F. The amino acid requirements of man. X. The lysine requirement. *J Biol Chem* 214 579 1955.
25. SYDENHAT, S. E. Metabolism of amino acids. A review. *Pediatrics* 21 117 1958.
26. SYDENHAT, S. E., VORTON, P. M., FOWLER, D. I. and HOLT JR., L. E. The essential amino acid requirements of infants: human. *Amer J Dis Child* 97 175 1958.
27. STRICKMAN, D. H., STRICK, W. H. and MOORE, S. Automatic recording apparatus for use in the chromatography of amino acids. *Ann Chem* 30 1180 1958.
28. STRICK, W. H. Excretion of amino acids in cystinuria. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 74 703, 1951.

Submitted Oct. 1 1963

Accepted Oct. 5, 1963.

Dept. of Metabolic Research
Wenner-Gren Institute
Stockholm
Sweden

From the Children's Hospital, University of Helsinki (Chief Prof. Nello Hallman, M.D.)

The Cardiovascular Component of Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia (Presentation of Three Cases)

by PABLO JIMENEZ BRUNDELET and JOHANNA SUCKSDORFF

Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (usually left-sided) associated with hypoplasia of the lung situated on the same side as the hernia (usually the left one) constitutes a very well-known entity [1-7]. What appears to be less well-known, is that the heart and the great vessels of these patients present a characteristic picture consisting of a variable hypoplasia of the left heart, a variable hypertrophy of the right heart, plus an enlarged ductus arteriosus. The description of the following three cases in which the "triad" left-sided diaphragmatic hernia, pulmonary hypoplasia and the above-mentioned abnormalities of the heart and great vessels were observed at autopsy will emphasize in detail the cardiovascular anomalies.

Case 1

The first case was the second child of 28 years old mother. The first child is healthy. Emesis gravidarum was present during early pregnancy. Six weeks before delivery acute hydramnion developed needing to be punctured once to remove the excess of fluid. It was a term delivery in cephalic presentation and the amniotic fluid was clear. During delivery the heart sounds

became slow (90 to 120 per minute); a prolapsed umbilical cord was found, the vacuum extractor was used at once but the heart stopped during this procedure and a dead male infant measuring 56 cm in length, and weighing 4000 g was delivered.

Autopsy. On external examination there was a moderate degree of cyanosis of nail beds and lips. On internal examination the abnormal findings were mainly present in the thoracic cavity. The left hemidiaphragm presented a large opening (about 4 cm in diameter) one side of it being directly formed by the posterior costal wall (Bochdalek hernia). Through this diaphragmatic opening abdominal organs had herniated into the left pleural cavity: the stomach, the jejunum, the ileum, the caecum and part of the ascending colon, the spleen and part of the left lobe of the liver were present in the left pleural sac. A hernial sac was found. The left lung (Fig. 1) was very small, clearly hypoplastic and was compressed against the mediastinum which was itself shifted towards the right hemithorax. The right lung was moderately smaller than normal due to compression against the chest wall by the mediastinal shift. The combined weight of both lungs was 10 g after formalin fixation. After opening the pericardium, the heart (weight 23 g) showed a moderately enlarged (hypertrophied and dilated) right ventricle (thickness 2 mm) and right atrium (Fig. 2); making a striking contrast the left ventricle (thickness 1 mm) and the left atrium were very small, compared with

The words left heart and right heart are used here in broad sense including the afferent and efferent blood vessels.



Fig. 1 Shows the marked hypoplasia of the left lung (only a small part of it, indicated, by the broken line was taken for histological examination).

what they should be at birth in a normal infant at term; they were therefore clearly hypoplastic (Fig. 3); the pulmonary veins, anatomically normally situated were also very small, and so were the ascending aorta and the aortic arch. The ductus arteriosus was not only patent but enlarged, its calibre being slightly wider than the calibre of the left pulmonary artery and about the same as the calibre of the right pulmonary artery at their point of origin from the common pulmonary trunk which was itself enlarged. Due to the hypoplasia of the aortic arch, the main pulmonary arterial trunk was giving the impression of being, through the ductus arteriosus, in direct continuity with the descending aorta (Figs. 2 and 3). The foramen ovale was anatomically patent. No other intra-cardiac abnormality was present. The remaining organs showed no striking abnormalities of interest.



Fig. 2. Shows the right ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation, and the opened ductus arteriosus.

Case 9

The patient was a two days old male infant. H. was the third child of a 23 years old mother. The pregnancy and delivery were normal, except for extent of amniotic fluid noticed at delivery time. Birth weight 2180 g. The infant was noticed to be cyanotic from birth; his breathing was intermittent, and the heart sounds were heard displaced in the right hemithorax. A radiography of the chest confirmed the presence of a large left-sided diaphragmatic hernia with a marked mediastinal shift towards the right side. An operation performed on the same day revealed a diaphragmatic defect in which the posterior part was directly formed by the posterior costal wall (Bochdalek hernia), and through which three fingers could be inserted. Through this opening, the stomach, the spleen, the left lobe of the liver, a large part of the small intestine and part of the colon were herniated into the left pleural cavity.

without any obvious hernial sac present. The organs were replaced back into the abdomen, and the diaphragmatic opening was closed with a suture. The left lung was noticed to be small, but it seemed to re-expand partially at the end of the operation. A stormy post-operative course followed: the breathing was intermittent; air was found first in the left pleural sac, and later on, in the right one needing to be aspirated first with a syringe and a needle, and later on, by inserting rubber tube into each pleural cavity and applying a continuous suction with negative pressure aspiration. In spite of all these measures, the patient died the day after the operation.

Necropsy. On external examination cyanosis of pallor of face and lips was present; a recent surgical incision was present in the left hypochondrium, and a rubber tube was inserted in each pleural cavity. On internal examination, the interesting findings were mainly in the thoracic cavity. The left lung was small, clearly hypoplastic although slightly less than in the first case and was not filling the left pleural sac even after inflation with formalin. The left pleural space was partly occupied by blood clots. The mediastinum was still moderately shifted towards the right side and the right lung was compressed against the chest wall and partially collapsed. Inflation with formalin prevented investigation of the weight

of the lungs. The diaphragmatic defect was surgically repaired and in good condition. The heart (weight 17 g) showed moderately enlarged right ventricle (thickness 3 mm) and right atrium, although slightly less than in the first case; making a moderate contrast the left heart was moderately hypoplastic; small left atrium, small left ventricle (thickness 3 mm), small pulmonary veins, small ascending aorta and small aortic arch; the ductus arteriosus was not only patent but also enlarged, its diameter being of the same size as the diameter of the right and left pulmonary arteries at their point of origin from the common pulmonary trunk. The common pulmonary trunk was itself wider than normal. The foramen ovale was anatomi-



Fig 3. Shows the small left atrium, the small left ventricle, the small ascending aorta, and the enlarged ductus arteriosus.

cally patent. No other intracardiac abnormality was present. In the peritoneal sac, the abdominal organs were showing no evidence of infarction, but the stomach presented a curious trilobulated appearance alongside the greater curvature (probably the result of partial herniation through the diaphragmatic opening), and the part of the left lobe of the liver which was previously herniated, had a somewhat deformed shape. The remaining organs showed no obvious abnormality.

Case 3

The third case was the first child (weighing 3150 g and measuring 48.5 cm in length) of a 20 years old mother. The pregnancy and delivery were normal. The amount of amniotic fluid was reported to have been about normal. When a few hours old the infant was noticed to have respiratory difficulties,

and on medical examination a left-sided diaphragmatic hernia was diagnosed. An operation performed by abdominal route revealed a Bochdalek hernia with an opening admitting about two fingers. The posterior border of the hernia was partly formed by the costal wall and partly by the left kidney which was very highly situated, having its upper half in the thoracic cavity. The stomach, the entire small intestine and part of the colon were present in the left pleural cavity. These organs were easily pulled back into the abdomen but the diaphragmatic opening proved to be very difficult to close due to the size of the hole and the degree of stretching of the left hemi-diaphragm when closure was attempted. However with four separated linen stitches (two using the 15th rib and two using the anterior perirenal tissue) the diaphragmatic defect was finally successfully closed. A stormy postoperative course followed: the following day a tension pneumothorax occurred producing a marked mediastinal shift towards the right side and in spite of the insertion of a rubber tube in the left pleural cavity and continuous aspiration, two days after the operation the heart stopped and the patient died.

Autopsy. On external examination, cyanosis of lips and nail beds was present, as well as a recent abdominal incision, and a rubber tube inserted in the left pleural sac. On internal examination the findings of importance were in the thoracic cavity. There was a dehiscence of the two more externally situated linen stitches, with a resulting partial recurrence of the diaphragmatic opening (about 1 cm in diameter) through which the left splenic part of the colon and part of the transverse and descending colon had herniated. This herniated part of the colon had become irreducible by meconial accumulation inside it. The two more medially situated linen stitches (uniting the diaphragm to the anterior perirenal tissue) were in good condition. The left kidney was situated higher than normal its upper half being in the left thoracic cavity. The left adrenal was also situated in the thoracic cavity. The left lung was moderately small,

hypoplastic (but not as much as in the two previous cases) appearing "collapsed" against the mediastinum, and remaining small even after formalin inflation. The mediastinum was shifted towards the right side. The right lung was slightly smaller than normal, being moderately compressed between the chest wall and the displaced mediastinum. Inflation with formalin prevented investigation of the weight of the lungs. After opening the pericardium, the heart appeared small (weight 14.5 g), showing a mild enlargement of the right atrium and right ventricle (thickness 3 mm). The left atrium, left ventricle (thickness 4 mm), and pulmonary veins were slightly smaller than normal. The ascending aorta and the aortic arch were slightly small and narrower than the main pulmonary arterial trunk which was itself slightly enlarged. The ductus arteriosus was enlarged of about the same size as the left or right pulmonary artery at their point of origin from the common pulmonary arterial trunk. It has to be emphasized that the anomalies in this case were of mild degree and that the more apparent ones were the smaller left chambers.

Discussion

As is apparent from the above descriptions the three cases presented respectively a marked a moderate and a mild degree of the same condition. They had in common not only a left-sided diaphragmatic hernia (Bochdalek type) of importance (several or parts of several abdominal organs being present in the thorax, and occupying most of the left pleural cavity), a hypoplasia of the left lung of marked degree a mediastinal shift towards the right side producing a moderate degree of compression hypoplasia of the right lung and an identical group of cardiovascular anomalies. It was not always easy to decide if the slightly small right lung was the result of only collapse due to compression

or if there was associated some minor degree of hypoplasia as well. Inflation of the lungs with formalin, performed in the last two cases, produced a limited re-expansion of the left lung which was still very hypoplastic after the inflation, the right lung, on the contrary seemed to re-expand to an approximately almost normal volume (mainly in the third case) giving the impression that the compression-collapse played a substantial role and that if hypoplasia was present as well, it appeared rather mild. On account of this slightly undecided and possibly variable factor we use the word compression hypoplasia to refer to this possible mixed state of the right lung. The cardiovascular anomalies consisted in the three cases of a relative hypoplasia of the left heart that is, a small left ventricle, a small left atrium, small pulmonary veins, small ascending aorta and a small aortic arch were present; the right heart on the contrary showed a relative enlargement (mixture of hypertrophy and dilatation) of the right atrium and ventricle; the common pulmonary arterial trunk was also wider than normal, finally an enlarged ductus arteriosus was present with a lumen of about the same size or wider than the size of the lumen of the right or left pulmonary artery at their point of origin from the common pulmonary arterial trunk. The heart weight was in the first two cases within the lower part of the normal weight range ($3.8 \text{ g} \pm 5.3$ for the first case; $20.7 \text{ g} \pm 5.3$ for the second case) probably because the right heart hypertrophy was relatively compensating the decrease in weight due to the left heart hypoplasia, but in the third case the heart weight was almost 1 gram below

the normal weight range ($40.7 \text{ g} \pm 5.3$) and this in spite of the mild right heart hypertrophy which was not enough to compensate the decrease in weight due to the left heart hypoplasia [3].

The pathogenesis of the cardiovascular component of these multiple congenital abnormalities appears to be partly the result of the marked hypoplasia of the left lung and of the variable compression hypoplasia of the right lung. The resulting reduction of the pulmonary volume prevents the normal development of the pulmonary vascular bed, the amount of blood circulating through the lungs being therefore small. Due to the small pulmonary vascular capacity the blood circulating through the pulmonary artery not only finds a route of escape via the ductus arteriosus which is open during intra-uterine life but also produces an enlargement of its lumen and prevents its normal closure. Also due to the smaller amount of blood circulating through the reduced pulmonary vascular bed, the pulmonary veins are themselves less developed, hypoplastic; less blood is reaching the left atrium and therefore also the left ventricle explaining why these chambers of the left heart are less developed than they should normally be. In other words why they are hypoplastic. There is, however, an additional factor which we believe is also responsible at least partly in preventing the normal development of the left heart. That is the direct compression of the left side of the heart by the abdominal organs which are present in the left pleural cavity. If these herniated organs are able by their presence to prevent the normal development of the left lung, there is no reason why they should not prevent up to some

extent, the normal development of the left heart which normally occupies a place partially situated in the left hemithorax.

The right heart hypertrophy is probably best explained by the fact that most of the blood which should normally pass into the left heart via the foramen ovale can no longer do so not because of the hypothetical closure of the foramen ovale which is not present in these cases but because of the compression of the left heart which prevents the left chambers to expand sufficiently. Most of the blood reaching the right atrium passes therefore into the right ventricle which receives more blood than usual and which has also to send more blood into the common pulmonary arterial trunk. The result is that a very small amount of blood circulates through the left heart and the lower circulation, while a larger amount of blood circulates through the right heart. The left heart hypoplasia and its accompanying circulating hypovolemia are probably simultaneous phenomena but it appears that it is the circulating hypervolemia in the right heart which is responsible for the right heart hypertrophy. This explains also why some cases (Case 1) show a marked right heart hypertrophy while others (Case 3) show only a minimal right heart hypertrophy depending on the reduction in volume of the left chambers: the more hypoplastic the left heart is the more hypertrophied will the right heart be and vice versa, a mild left heart hypoplasia will be accompanied by a minimal right heart hypertrophy. The exact anatomical situation of the cardiovascular system in these cases is well summarized by saying that there is a left heart hypoplasia, a right heart hyper-

trophy and an enlarged ductus arteriosus.

If we now replace the cardiovascular anomalies within the pathogenesis of the other congenital abnormalities, it appears that they may be considered as a sequence of events in which the primum movens is the diaphragmatic defect. It is the diaphragmatic opening which allows the presence of abdominal organs in the left pleural cavity preventing the development of the left lung (which remains very hypoplastic) compressing the left side of the heart, shifting the mediastinum towards the right side causing a mild to moderate compression hypoplasia of the right lung, and producing as result of all these changes a hypoplasia of the left heart first, a secondary hypertrophy of the right heart and a persistence of an enlarged ductus arteriosus as a derivation route.

These three cases presented what has been called a hypoplastic left heart syndrome [9]. Although differing in many cases some common findings this syndrome shows on careful examination intra-cardiac anatomical differences which are probably due to different causal mechanisms. Therefore, even if the grouping together of several pathological entities under the common name of hypoplastic left heart syndrome is at first sight very attractive it is nevertheless necessary to divide them in sub-groups according to the associated anomalies and also according to the etio-pathogenesis in cause. Furthermore, the right heart hypertrophy is also a part of the typical heart of congenital diaphragmatic hernia even if it is secondary to the left heart hypoplasia and perhaps not always so striking. In the three cases reported here, the characteristic grouping of

cardiovascular anomalies is the result of a common cause and mechanism and we believe that any left-sided diaphragmatic hernia of importance enough to produce a marked hypoplasia of the left lung and a mild compression hypoplasia of the right lung will also present the described cardiovascular findings which are partly secondary to the lung changes and partly secondary to the direct compression of the left heart.

To the best of our knowledge the past literature about this condition is rather scanty. The first case appears to have been published by Raeburn in 1931 and was thought to be produced by a premature closure of the foramen ovale due to pressure of the diaphragmatic hernia [5]. The association of this characteristic heart with congenital diaphragmatic hernia has also been mentioned in an excellent paper [4] studying the general problem of the hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Unfortunately no details are given in this paper about the cases and no mention is made

about the state of the lungs. Finally in another previous paper [6] in about three-quarters of patients with congenital diaphragmatic hernia (22 cases) the autopsy revealed definite (10 cases) or questionable (4 cases) cardiovascular malformations which were of many different types without any particular pattern. Few details are given about these cardiopathies and no details are given about the state of the lungs or the importance of the diaphragmatic hernia. Without denying the possibility of congenital diaphragmatic hernia being associated with more complex types of cardiac defect like the ones mentioned in the literature we believe that even in the absence of these complex car-

diao defects, there is a typical heart associated with left-sided diaphragmatic hernia of importance.

It is not unduly surprising that the characteristic cardiovascular component of congenital diaphragmatic hernia has not been more frequently reported, because in the cases successfully operated, if the pericardium has not been opened, the heart configuration is not visible at operation. The only noticed abnormality is the

small left lung which is very well known to "grow" spontaneously up to its normal size during the following weeks, provided the left pleural cavity is kept free from air and fluid [7]. In these cases, when the lungs grow developing their vascular bed, and when the previously existing compression of the left heart has disappeared, there is the possibility for the hypoplastic left heart to grow that is to develop up to its normal volume; this also includes the possibility for the ascending aorta and the aortic arch to develop, and for the enlarged ductus arteriosus to close down when need for its patency does no longer exist. In this respect, only the cardiologic study of the patients successfully operated on would permit to know more about the evolution of the hypoplastic left heart and also

about the evolution of the enlarged ductus arteriosus. It is more surprising that from autopsy material more cases have not been reported. We think that some cases (like our Case 3) are showing only a mild degree of the cardiovascular component and there is the possibility for such cases to pass unrecognized unless the pathologist is especially aware of this condition.

This typical "heart associated with congenital diaphragmatic hernia of im-

portance is not explained by any of the three usually mentioned theories (premature closure of the foramen ovale enlarged ductus arteriosus, true malformation). Patency of the foramen ovale in our three cases excludes the first cause. Although an enlarged ductus arteriosus was present in all three cases this one was not the cause of the cardiovascular anomalies, but the consequence of the pulmonary hypoplasia therefore not a primary phenomenon but a secondary one. Finally it does not appear to be a true malformation "per se" because even if not directly proved yet, we are inclined to believe (as already mentioned above) that the hypoplastic left heart will probably develop after the surgical repair of the diaphragmatic hernia. That would not happen to a true malformation, and this points out to the lung and heart anomalies as being only secondary phenomena to a diaphragmatic hernia of importance. They could be considered as examples of deficient development due to a primary lack of space and unacceptable of a delayed development on the normal space for it is restored. In this syndrome the diaphragmatic opening constitutes the primary abnormality or true malformation.

Finally the presence of an excess of amniotic fluid at the end of the pregnancy in two out of the three cases presented

here, ■ to be emphasized. It has been found to occur in cases of congenital diaphragmatic hernia [8]. A disturbance in the normal circulation of the amniotic fluid through the fetal alimentary tract (↑ obstructive factor) is perhaps responsible for it.

Summary

Three autopsy cases with the triad left-sided diaphragmatic hernia, pulmonary hypoplasia and left heart hypoplasia-right heart hypertrophy plus enlarged ductus arteriosus are presented. The probable etiology and pathogenesis of the cardiovascular component of this pathological entity are given, and it is believed that even in the absence of any other associated congenital abnormalities (intracardiac or extracardiac), any left-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia of importance enough to produce pulmonary hypoplasia, will be associated with a typical "heart" showing a variable (from mild to marked) hypoplasia of the left atrium, left ventricle pulmonary veins, ascending aorta and aortic arch contrasting with a variable enlargement of the right atrium and right ventricle an enlarged common pulmonary arterial trunk and finally an enlarged ductus arteriosus as a derivation route.

References

1. CAMPANALE, R. P. and HOWLAND, R. H.: Hypoplasia of the lung associated with congenital diaphragmatic hernia. *Am. Surg.* 112: 176 1955.
2. LEV, M.: Pathologic anatomy and interrelationship of hypoplasia of the aortic tract complexes. *Lab. Invest.* 1: 31 1952.
3. GRUNSWALD, P. and MOER, H.: Evaluation of body weights in perinatal pathology I. Normal standards derived from autopsies. *Amer. J. Clin. Path.* 34: 247 1960.
4. VOOGHAN, J. A. and NADAR, A. S.: The hypoplastic left heart syndrome. *Pediatric Clinics of North America*, November 1959, 1959.

5. RAKBURN, C.: A cardiac abnormality in the foetus, apparently resulting from premature closure of the foramen ovale due to pressure of diaphragmatic hernia. *J Pathol Bact*, 63 100, 1951.
6. RICHARDS, M. R., MERRITT K. K., SAMUELS, M. H. and LAUFMAN, A. ■ Congenital malformations of the cardiovascular system in a series of 8,883 infants. *Pediatrics* 15 12, 1955.
7. ROX, B. B. and STEPHENS, H. B. Congenital diaphragmatic hernia and hypoplastic lungs: clinical evaluation (followed by discussion) *J Thor Surg* 32, 379 1956.

Submitted Aug. 1 1963

Accepted Sept. 2, 1963

Children Hospital
University of Helsinki
11 Stenbäck Street
Helsinki
Finland

From the Departments of Bacteriology, Obstetrics and Pediatrics, Karolinska Hospital,
Stockholm, Sweden

Infections and Staphylococci in Maternity Wards II

by B CEDERGREN, H LAGERGRANTZ and B NYSTRÖM

In an earlier investigation hospital infections probably caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* (*S. aureus*) were registered in 11% of mothers and infants in the maternity wards of Karolinska Hospital [1]. *S. aureus* were cultured from 82% of the infants, 64% of the mothers and 64% of the staff. Phagegroup III strains (particularly those of phage type 47) seemed to cause infection more often than other strains (including strains of phage-type 80/81).

The frequency of probable hospital infections and of carriers was considered relatively high. In an attempt to lower this, ordinary soap for hand washing for mothers and staff was replaced with pHisoHex (Wyeth) as this has been reported a valuable hand disinfectant [2, 3]. To evaluate the effect of pHisoHex it was introduced only in the delivery rooms and in one ward while ordinary soap for hand washing was still used in the other wards. The result of a study of rates of infections and carrier states is presented in this paper.

Material, methods and definitions

pHisoHex instead of ordinary soap for hand washing for mothers and staff was

used in the delivery rooms and in Ward no I for two weeks before and during the investigation, which lasted one month. In the other two wards ordinary soap was used as before. No other changes in the ward routine were made since the earlier investigation.

Infections in mothers and children were registered during their stay at hospital. Infected patients were isolated. On discharge the mothers received questionnaires concerning infections in mothers, babies or other members of their families. These questionnaires should be returned one month after delivery. Missing or incomplete answers were completed by telephone call.

As probable hospital infections were registered:

In infants: periphagus neonatorum, conjunctivitis, sties, umbilical infections and mastitis.

In mothers and infants: upper respiratory tract infections with onset in hospital or during the first three days after discharge.

In mothers: mastitis (fever, swelling and pain in the breast) and in other members of the family: furunculosis, skin abscesses and sties.

Cases where it could not be decided whether conjunctivitis and skin rashes were of infectious or toxic-allergic origin were registered as possible hospital infections, as were cases with breast symptoms without fever (pain with or without rhagades).

During the first, second and fourth week nose swabs were taken from all members of

TABLE 1 Incidence of probable and possible hospital infections in mothers and children first month after delivery Number within brackets percent

| Year | 1959 | 1960 | 1961 | 1959 | 1960 | 1961 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------|--------|-------|
| N of individuals Site of infection | 228 | 172 | 270 | 228 | 172 | 270 |
| | Probable hospital infection | | | Possible hospital infection | | |
| Child | | | | | | |
| upper resp. tract. | 1 | — | — | — | 1 | — |
| eye | 8 | 3 | 13 | 2 | 4 | 4 |
| skin | 10 | 6 | 7 | 4 | 3 | — |
| breast | 1 | — | — | — | — | — |
| Mother | | | | | | |
| upper resp. tract. | 3 | 1 | — | 3 | — | — |
| breast | 8 | 9 | 11 | 7 | 11 | 8 |
| Sum | 31(13) | 19(11) | 33(12) | 18(6) | 24(14) | 12(4) |

the staff. Nose swabs from mothers were taken during their first day in hospital and the day before discharge (as a rule five or six days after delivery). On this latter day swabs were also taken from the mothers' nipples and from the infants' noses and groins.

Swabs were kept in moist serum tubes until cultured on blood agar plates. These were incubated for 18 hours at 37°C. They were then read, and suspected *St. phylococcus* colonies were tested with tube coagulase test. Coagulase positive *St. phylococcus* were registered as *S. aureus*. They were tested against the usual antibiotics according to the paper disc method for quantitative sensitivity tests described by Ericsson *et al.* (4). Strains were registered as sensitive if they were inhibited by the following concentrations: sulphonamide 10 mg., penicillin 2 IU/ml, tetracycline 4 mcg/ml, chloramphenicol 16 mcg/ml and erythromycin 6 mcg/ml. Phage typing of *S. aureus* was made at the Swedish State Bacteriological Laboratory.

Results

Infections. Table 1 shows the number of infected individuals in this and our earlier investigations. (Reports were avail-

able in 96% of all families.) Probable hospital infections were in this investigation observed in 14% per cent of patients in Ward no 1 and in 10% of those in the other two wards. There is no statistically significant difference between these values.

In six cases the symptoms first appeared in hospital (within the first week after delivery), in twelve during the second or third week after delivery and in the remaining cases in the fourth week. Cases of pemphigus neonatorum were mild, only one child had to be readmitted to hospital. In this case the strain of *S. aureus* isolated from a blister was identical as to phage type and antibiogram to the strain isolated from the child's nose during its first stay in hospital. Maternal mastitis was more serious, as 4 cases required incision.

***S. aureus* carriers.** The frequency of nose carriers of *S. aureus* was as high in this investigation as in the earlier ones (Fig. 1 and 2) and no significant difference was found in carrier frequency between Ward no 1 where pHiseHex was used, and the other two wards.

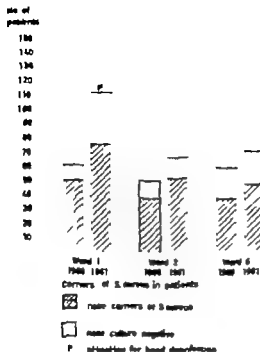


Fig. 1. Carriers of *S. aureus* in patients of the maternity ward in Karolinska Hospital.

Relation between *S. aureus* and hospital infection. *S. aureus* was isolated in 1° of 32 individuals with probable hospital infection and in 143 of 204 without *S. aureus*

was not isolated in a statistically significant higher frequency in infected than in healthy patients. Most of the strains that could be typed belonged to phage group I or III. Strains of phage type 80/81 occurred in 18.5% of infected patients and in 7.5% of not infected patients. This difference is statistically significant on the level $0.05 < p < 0.01$. No other phage group was represented in a statistically significant higher frequency among infected than among uninfected patients. Thirty-seven per cent of the isolated strains of *S. aureus* were not typeable. Strains from different sites are compared in Table 3. Table 4 relates the carrier state in the mothers at admittance with the occurrence of hospital infection. In 8 cases of probable hospital infection a strain could be isolated from the mother's nose at admittance and on discharge. In five of these a change of phage type was observed. In 26 cases without hospital infection a strain could be isolated twice and in 14 of these a change of type was registered.

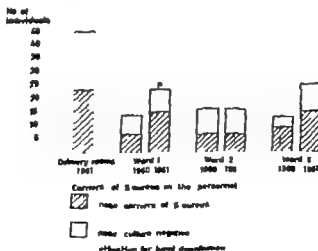


Fig. 2. Carriers of *S. aureus* in the personnel of the maternity wards of Karolinska Hospital.

TABLE 2. *Strains of S aureus isolated from individuals with probable possible and no hospital infection grouped according to phage pattern*

| Individuals with | S. aureus phage pattern | | | | | Non typeable |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-----------|--------------------------|--------------|
| | Total | Group I | Group II | Group III | | |
| | | With 80/81 in pattern | | Total | With 47 in phage pattern | |
| | | | | | | |
| Probable hospital infection | 15 | 8 | 6 | 14 | 8 | 19 |
| Possible hospital infection | 2 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 8 |
| No hospital infection | 38 | 9 | 22 | 43 | 19 | 47 |

TABLE 3. *Comparison of strains from different site phage type similar / phage type dissimilar*

| | Mother nose | Mother nipples | Child nose |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| Mother nipples | 13/13 | | |
| Child nose | 16/18 | 22/14 | |
| Child groin | 11/8 | 11/9 | 18/14 |

Nose carriers among the staff Among 115 members of the staff 48 (41%) were nose carriers on some occasion (Fig. 2). In 35 members of the staff *S. aureus* was isolated twice. In 13 of these cases a change of phage type was observed. One children's nurse in Ward no. 1 who during the pre-

vious investigation was a nose carrier and probably a spreader of *S. aureus* and who had prior to this later investigation been treated once daily for two fortnightly periods with a nasal cream (Nebocefin, Lundbeck) containing neomycin and bacitracin, still was a carrier of *S. aureus* in this investigation, with a strain of the same phagetype and antibiogram as in previous investigations. Of the other 11 children's nurses—working full time in the nursery—5 were carriers on at least two occasions. The strains from the staff seemed similar as to phage groups and antibiograms to those of the patients.

Phage types and antibiograms of all strains isolated in this investigation are compared in Table 3.

TABLE 4. *Incidence of hospital infections in mother and child related to mother's carrier state at admittance*

| Clinical condition in mother and child | Mother carrier of <i>S. aureus</i> at admittance | Mother not carrier of <i>S. aureus</i> at admittance |
|--|--|--|
| Probable hospital infection | 3 | 9 |
| Possible hospital infection | 2 | 7 |
| No hospital infection | 33 | 76 |

TABLE 5. Comparison between patterns of resistance and phage. (*Strep* from patients and personnel)

| Phage group | Patterns of resistance | | | |
|--------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| | Sensitive in all tests | Resistant to penicillin | Resistant to or more sensitive | Others |
| I | 40(12) ^a | 14(8) ^b | 15(8) ^a | 1(1) ^a |
| II | 23 | 8 | — | — |
| III | 53(24) ^b | 19(6) ^b | 1(1) ^b | 3 |
| Non typeable | 60 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| Sum | 175 | 40 | 16 | 5 |

^a Number within brackets:

with phage type 80/81 in pattern

^b with phage type 47 in pattern

Discussion

The hands of the personnel is considered a main source of infection in the maternity wards [8]. For hand disinfection pHisoHex has been proved more effective than soap [2, 3]. Introduction of pHisoHex for hand washing for staff and mothers did not significantly reduce the numbers of carriers or infection rate (Tabl. 1 Figs. 1 and 2). In most other studies on methods to lower infection and carrier rates other measures besides hand washing with pHisoHex (i.e. more strict hygiene washing of children with hexachlorophene disinfection of navels) were taken at the same time which makes it difficult to evaluate each measure [6]. In this investigation the introduction of pHisoHex for hand washing was the only new measure taken to reduce carrier and infection rate and this measure was taken in only one ward, while in the two other wards no new measure at all was taken. This makes the value of hand washing with pHisoHex easier to evaluate and unfortunately this

measure did not a single decrease the carrier frequency or the frequency of hospital infections. This of course can be explained in several ways. As mentioned one of the children's nurses in the ward where pHisoHex was used was a chronic carrier of *S. aureus*. Forty-two per cent of the personnel were carriers. The staff could not wash their hands between handling of each infant (they stated that it would be too irritating to the skin). In the wards L to 16 children were placed in one room. The traffic in the corridor was intense. All these factors must be considered when discussing methods to decrease infection and carrier frequency.

Have hospital strains of *S. aureus* really caused the cases registered as probable hospital infections in this investigation? Unfortunately from most infections occurring at home no cultures could be obtained. From what is known of the epidemiology of *S. aureus* it seems, however probable that most of these cases are caused by hospital infection [1, 5]. As in

many other studies there was no significant correlation between carrier state and later infection—some unknown factor seems to influence the host-parasite balance.

Mothers carrying *S. aureus* in their noses as admittance to the hospital were not protected against hospital infections (Table 4) or colonization with hospital strains.

Breast feeding being the rule during hospital stay a resemblance between strains from mothers' nipples and children's noses was expected and found (Table 3). Differences are, however, not uncommon and can be explained by direct spread from staff to mothers and through airborne strains.

The phage type patterns and antibiograms are similar to those observed at the earlier investigations in this hospital. However phage type 47 did not this time seem to cause infection more often than other phage types. Even if strains of phage type 80/81 were isolated more often from infected than from healthy patients they did not cause any severe infections. Neither were they more resistant to antibiotics than other strains. The relatively high incidence of sensitive strains and the almost entire absence of completely resistant ones reflects the restricted use of antibiotics in the wards.

Is the observed incidence of infections and carriers tolerable? Lower as well as higher figures have been reported [1, 6, 8]. The infections have mostly been mild. No home or hospital epidemic occurred. The environment is however strongly colonized and should an epidemic strain appear the situation might easily turn critical.

New steps to reduce the contamination should be considered. It seems important

that these are taken one at a time (if the purpose is to study the effect of one measure) and controlled in clinical and bacteriological investigations.

Successful therapy of carriers is difficult [5]. To force the staff to use a nasal cream as a routine is hardly practicable. Too strict or uncomfortable rules tend to be neglected. Disinfections of the navels of the babies must be considered as well as the use of a disinfecting nasal cream or skin powder for the babies. We have hitherto hesitated to bath the children in some sort of disinfectant, as we have good experiences with the "conservative" skin care recommended by the American Academy of Pediatrics. We refrain from using antibiotics in prophylaxis, as this would probably induce resistant strains. The new penicillinase stable penicillins could be considered less dangerous from this point of view [7]. However if these penicillins are effective against *S. aureus* they could lead to a situation, where a gram negative flora of true penicillin resistant bacteria took over the role as hospital infectants. The risk of sensitizing patients and personnel should also be kept in mind.

Summary

pHisoHex for hand washing did not materially reduce hospital infection or carrier states with *S. aureus* in the maternity ward of Karolinska Hospital. Hospital infections probably caused by *S. aureus* were registered in about 13% of mothers and infants during the month after delivery. They were mostly mild. Five to six days after delivery 70% of the infants were nose carriers of *S. aureus*, mothers were carriers in 22% of cases on admission.

TABLE 5 *Comparison between patterns of resistance and phage (Strains from patients and personnel)*

| Phage group | Patterns of resistance | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| | Sensitive in all tests | Resistant to penicillin | Resistant to 2 or more antibiotics | Others |
| I | 40(13) ^a | 14(5) ^a | 12(6) ^a | 1(1) ^a |
| II | 25 | 5 | — | — |
| III | 53(4) ^b | 10(6) ^b | 1(1) ^b | 3 |
| Non typeable | 60 | 3 | 3 | 1 |
| Sum | 178 | 0 | 16 | 5 |

Number within brackets:

^a with phage type 80/81 in pattern

^b with phage type 471 pattern

Discussion

The hands of the personnel is considered a main source of infection in the maternity wards [8]. For hand disinfection pHisoHex has been proved more effective than soap [2-3]. Introduction of pHisoHex for hand washing for staff and mothers did not significantly reduce the numbers of carriers or infection rate (Tabl. 1 Figs 1 and 2). In most other studies on methods to lower infection and carrier rates other measures besides hand washing with pHisoHex (i.e. more strict hygiene washing of children with hexachlorophene disinfection of navels) were taken at the same time, which makes it difficult to evaluate each measure [8]. In this investigation the introduction of pHisoHex for hand washing was the only new measure taken to reduce carrier and infection rate and this measure was taken in only one ward, while in the two other wards no new measure at all was taken. This makes the value of hand washing with pHisoHex easier to evaluate and unfortunately this

measure did not a single decrease the carrier frequency or the frequency of hospital infections. This of course can be explained in several ways. As mentioned one of the childrens nurses in the ward where pHisoHex was used was a chronic carrier of *S. aureus*. Forty two per cent of the personnel were carriers. The staff could not wash their hands between handling of each infant (they stated that it would be too irritating to the skin). In the wards 1- to 16 children were placed in one room. The traffic in the corridor was intense. All these factors must be considered when discussing methods to decrease infection and carrier frequency.

Have hospital strains of *S. aureus* really caused the cases registered as probable hospital infections in this investigation? Unfortunately from most infections occurring at home no cultures could be obtained. From what is known of the epidemiology of *S. aureus* it seems, however probable that most of these cases are caused by hospital infection [1-6]. As in

many other studies there was no significant correlation between carrier state and later infection—some unknown factor seems to influence the host parasite balance.

Mothers carrying *S. aureus* in their noses at admittance to the hospital were not protected against hospital infections (Table 4) or colonization with hospital strains.

Breast feeding being the rule during hospital stay a resemblance between strains from mothers' nipples and children's noses was expected and found (Table 3). Differences are however not uncommon and can be explained by direct spread from staff to mothers and through airborne strains.

The phage type patterns and antibiograms are similar to those observed at the earlier investigations in this hospital. However phage type 47 did not this time seem to cause infection more often than other phage types. Even if strains of phage type 80/81 were isolated more often from infected than from healthy patients they did not cause any severe infections. Neither were they more resistant to antibiotics than other strains. The relatively high incidence of sensitive strains and the almost entire absence of completely resistant ones reflects the restricted use of antibiotics in the wards.

Is the observed incidence of infections and carriers tolerable? Lower as well as higher figures have been reported [1, 6, 8]. The infections have mostly been mild. No home or hospital epidemic occurred. The environment is, however, strongly colonized and should an epidemic strain appear the situation might easily turn critical.

New steps to reduce the contamination should be considered. It seems important

that these are taken one at a time (if the purpose is to study the effect of one measure) and controlled in clinical and bacteriological investigations.

Successful therapy of carriers is difficult [5]. To force the staff to use a nasal cream as a routine is hardly practicable. Too strict or uncomfortable rules tend to be neglected. Disinfections of the navel of the babies must be considered, as well as the use of a disinfecting nasal cream or skin powder for the babies. We have hitherto hesitated to bath the children in some sort of disinfectant as we have good experiences with the "conservative" skin care recommended by the American Academy of Pediatrics. We refrain from using antibiotics in prophylaxis, as this would probably induce resistant strains. The new penicillinase stable penicillins could be considered less dangerous from this point of view [7]. However if these penicillins are effective against *S. aureus* they could lead to a situation where a gram negative flora of true penicillin resistant bacteria took over the role of hospital infectants. The risk of resistant patients and personnel should not be kept in mind.

Summary

pHisoHex for hand washing did not materially reduce hospital infections or carrier states with *S. aureus* in the maternity ward of Karolinska Hospital. Infections probably caused by *S. aureus* were registered in about 10% of mothers and infants, during the first six days after delivery. They were most often caused by strains isolated from the mothers. Six days after delivery 2% of the mothers were nose carriers of *S. aureus*. 20% of the infants were carriers in 20% of the cases.

and in 57% of cases on discharge. Forty two per cent of the personnel were carriers, many probably chronic. Strains of phage type 80/81 were more common in individuals who later developed infections

than in healthy persons. Most strains were sensitive to ordinary antibiotics. Measures to prevent infections and colonization with *S. aureus* are discussed.

References

1. CEDERROSE B., LAGERCRANTZ, R. and VONCK L.: Infections and Staphylococci on the maternity ward. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, Suppl 135 65 1962.
2. CEDERROSE, T. C. et al. Disinfection action of pHisoHex containing three per cent hexachlorophene on the skin of the hands. *Surgery* 28 812, 1950.
3. KJELLSTRÖM, J. and VONCK B. Förstärkning av syntetisk reaktionsmikrofilm (pHisoHex) för kirurgisk preoperativ handdesinfektion. *S. Läkartidn*, 57 1807 1960.
4. RICHMOND H., HOGAN O. and WICKMAN K.: A paper disc method for determination of bacterial sensitivity to bacteriostatics and antibiotic agents. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 6 Suppl 2 21 1953.
5. LAURELL, H. and LINDBOM, H. Från en infektion i öronen till svårare infektion i ett vildsvins öron. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 58 1076, 1961.
6. FLEISCHMAN, V. D.: The Staphylococcus and the newborn child. *Brit Med J* 11 423, 1961.
7. SONNENFELT, A., GREENMAN, M. and KALLER, P.: Methicillin in staphylococcal infections in surgery. *J Paediat* 61 361, 1962.
8. WOLSKEL, E., LIPSTEIN, P., MORTIMER, E. and RANDELLKAMP C.: Acquisition of staphylococci by newborns direct versus indirect transmission. *Lancet*, 11 820, 1960.

Submitted Sept. 9 1963
Accepted Oct. 6, 1963

(R.L.) Department of Paediatrics
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

the Microchemical Laboratory for Low Birth Weight Infants, Dept. of Pediatrics,
Columbia University, New York, N.Y.

Arterial Blood Sampling in Small Infants

by AGNETE THOMSEN *Reg. Techn.*

Introduction

The conventional methods for obtaining blood samples from very small infants are often difficult and sometimes risky. One practical difficulty concerns the method by which negative pressure is applied to the collecting system. Use of a glass syringe for this purpose requires a second person to apply and maintain the proper amount of pressure in order that blood will flow readily and the vessel will not collapse. Use of a propipette as advocated by Lopez Banus [2], while providing a means of controlling negative pressure exerted in this system has the disadvantage of requiring a cumbersome array of equipment (tubing, needles, tubes and for tepe) and still requires a second person to assist.

A second difficulty with existing methods is the choice of site for sampling. Femoral arterial or venous puncture carries a definite risk of deep infection [1] or thrombosis. Capillary blood obtained by heel stick also carries a significant risk of infection. In addition, in infants with poor circulation so-called "arterialized" capil-

lary blood may not be truly representative of arterial blood.

The use of the temporal artery [3] as a site of blood collection has the advantages of providing arterial blood and of reducing the risk of serious complications. In this report we wish to describe the details of a procedure which has been developed in the Premature Nursery of the Babies Hospital by which arterial blood has been obtained from this site by a single unassisted operator.

The method involves use of a scalp vein set with negative pressure being applied to the system by means of a gas-tight syringe. This technique has the advantage that a single operator can apply any given degree of negative pressure to the system by withdrawal of the plunger and this pressure will be maintained by the frictional forces between barrel and plunger of the syringe.

Procedure

Table I shows the equipment required for temporal arterial puncture and the suggested sources of supply. Proper illumination is essential and for this purpose we have found the Tensor lamp to be

This work was supported by the Health Research Council of the City of New York, under contract U 1118.

TABLE 1 *Materials needed for temporal arterial puncture.*

| Materials | Vendor |
|---|--|
| Winged scalp vein infusion set N 1 or 23 gauge needle Hamilton gas-tight syringe* capacity 1 ml Tensor lamp, Model 5973 | Abbott Laboratories, North Chicago, Illinois The Hamilton Company Inc. Whittier, California Tensor Electric Company Inc. 1873 Eastern Parkway Brooklyn 23, New York Connaught Med. Research Lab. Toronto, Canada Ruson Laboratories, Inc (Ore- gon) Portland 2, Oregon |
| Heparin sodium solution 1000 U.S.P. Units Vitrex | |
| Backshot No. 5 (Flattened with a hammer) | |

The teflon tip of the syringe plunger shown should be cut off in order to reduce the dead space

quite satisfactory. The steps of the procedure are as follows (Fig. 1)

1 Prepare the syringe by removing the plunger and inserting the flattened backshot in the barrel, replacing the plunger and

filling the dead space of the syringe with the heparin solution.

2 Attach the scalp vein set to the syringe.

3 Shave the temporal area and clean it thoroughly with Vitrac solution (1:2 dilution) followed by 70% ethylalcohol. The area should be left moist since the pulsations of the artery are more easily visualized under these conditions.

4 Insert the needle into the artery preferably against the direction of flow of blood, although this is not essential.

5 With the Hamilton syringe create slight negative pressure in the system (equivalent to withdrawing the plunger to about the 0.25 ml mark)

6 A successful entry of the artery will be revealed by the flow of blood into the plastic tubing. As the blood reaches the end of the tubing, the syringe is rapidly disconnected, the air in it discharged, and the syringe reconnected and filled with blood. During filling a slight withdrawal of the plunger is usually necessary to ensure continuous flow.

7 Remove the needle from the vessel and apply sustained pressure over the area for several minutes until hemostasis is complete.

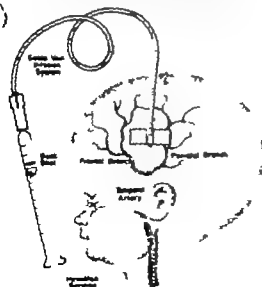


Fig. 1 Puncture of a temporal artery utilizing the equipment described in the text.

8. Disconnect the syringe from the tubing, cap it and invert it several times to insure complete mixing. Samples for determination of various acid-base parameters may be taken directly from the syringe into the Radiometer ABE 1 instrument.

The above procedure has been in continuous use in the Premature Nursery of the Babes Hospital for the past year. The author has performed nearly 1 000 arterial punctures with an overall successful average of 70-80%. Most of the unsuccessful attempts occurred in newly born infants in whom facial edema obscured the vessel. However this usually diminished to the point where a successful puncture could be carried out after a period of 1 to 24 hours after birth. Repeated punctures of the artery (up to 35 times) have been carried out on some infants and infants with weights as low as 580 g have been successfully sampled.

The importance of arterial versus so-called "arterialized" capillary blood analysis with respect to acid base parameters

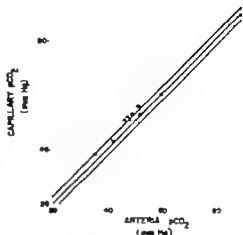


Fig. 2. Comparison of simultaneous arterial and capillary values for plasma $p\text{CO}_2$. The shaded area represents the estimated error of the method used.

is illustrated by data shown in Fig. 2 and 3. The data represent comparisons of blood pH and plasma $p\text{CO}_2$ obtained on simultaneous arterial and arterialized capillary blood samples from an unselected group of premature infants. In both figures an appreciable number of points show a deviation from the line of identity and these deviations are outside the range of error of the method (indicated by the shaded region). Hence 10 of 16 pH values showed a significant but variable lowering of capillary pH compared to arterial values while 9 of the 14 $p\text{CO}_2$ values showed significantly higher capillary values than were obtained in arterial samples. In most instances, these discrepant results were obtained from infants in whom the circulation to the extremity was judged to be poor by clinical criteria. It is of course in this group of infants that acid-base studies are likely to be of value and such findings therefore emphasize the need for reliable arterial samples.

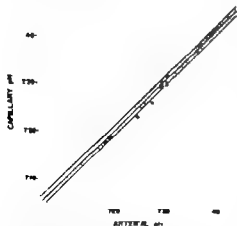


Fig. 3. Comparison of simultaneous arterial and capillary values for whole blood pH. The shaded area represents the estimated error of the method used.

Summary

An easy safe method is described for the sampling of blood from the temporal artery of small infants. Acid base studies

of temporal arterial blood have revealed a number of instances where arterial blood gave significantly lower values for pCO_2 and higher values for blood pH than did simultaneous samples of capillary blood.

References

1. HOWARD R. J. Sepsis in normal and premature infant with localization in the hip joint *Pediatrics* 20 278 1937
2. LOPEZ BAXTER, V. J. A simple method to obtain venous blood from premature and newborn infants, *Amer J Dis Child*, 51 31, 1957
3. REARDON H. B., GRAHAM, B. D. WILSON, J. L., BAUMANN M. L., TRAO, M. U. and MURAYAMA, M. Studies of acid base equilibrium in premature infants, *Pediatrics*, 4 753 1950.

Submitted Sept 8 1962

Accepted Oct 20, 1962

Dept. of Pediatrics
College of Physicians and Surgeons
Columbia University
630 West 168th Street
New York 32, N Y
U.S.A.

Institut for the Care of Mother and Child (Pediatric Head: Dr K. Poláček)
Prague Czechoslovakia

Some Parameters of Respiratory Metabolism in the First 3 Days After Birth

by K. ZNAMENÁČEK and H. PRIBYLOVÁ

Profound changes in adaptive processes occur in the newborn infant in the first 3 days of extra uterine life particularly with regard to respiratory metabolism. We have followed the developments in oxygen consumption, respiratory rate and rhythm and body temperature during this period, as well as the course of blood glucose lactate and pyruvate levels, the ratio of the two latter and the calculated excess lactate in capillary blood. This report concerns findings in healthy newborn infants up to 3 days of age following normal pregnancies and births.

Methods

Biochemical tests were carried out on blood from the umbilical vein (time 0) and subsequently on capillary blood taken at 3, 6, 12, 24, 48 and 72 hours of age. The infants were given small amounts of water during the first 24 hours and then put to the breast. Oxygen consumption was measured in a closed-system met. bolometer (Fig. 1), by a method modifying that described by Karlberg [5]. Since oxygen consumption reacts rapidly and sensitively to bodily activity and crying consumption was calculated only from periods of quiet during the hour-long determinations in the met. bolometer. Environmental temperature within

the apparatus was maintained at 24–25°C. The infant was dressed lightly with pneumographic cuffs lightly fixed about the thorax to record thoracic and abdominal breathing.

Capillary blood samples (heel prick) were used for ultra-micro determinations of glucose [6], lactate and pyruvate [3]. Ultra-micro modifications of these methods were worked out by Novák [7]. Excess lactate was calculated using the formula of Huckabee [4]: $XL = (L_u - L_o) - (P - P_o)$. L_u/P_u , L_o and P in this equation were taken as average values in healthy newborns with uncomplicated deliveries and following normal pregnancies, as determined at 7 hours of age. In a large series $L = 19.04 \text{ mg\%}$ and $P = 1.95 \text{ mg\%}$ appeared to be valid normal values for L_o and P_o , resulting in an L/P ratio of 9.97.

Results

Table 1 summarizes findings in infants from birth to 72 hours of age: oxygen consumption (VO_2), respiratory frequency (f), body temperature (t), blood glucose (G), pyruvate (P), lactate (L), the L/P ratio and excess lactate (XL).

Oxygen consumption fell from birth to 3 hours, some 10.5 ml/kg/hr and then rose gradually but significantly to reach its highest level at 24 hours of age (363.5 ml/kg/hr). The respiratory rate fell during

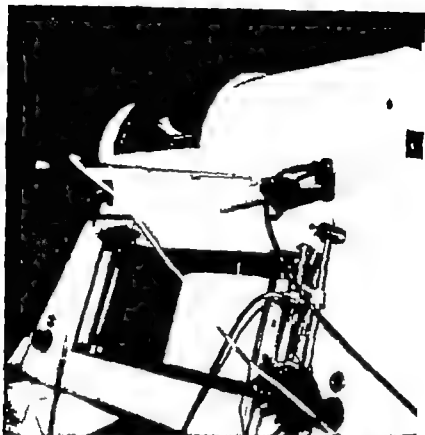


Fig. 1. Closed-system metabolimeter (Czechoslovak manufacture) for determination of oxygen consumption. This apparatus simultaneously records the respiratory movements, cry and bodily activity and controls the air temperature thermostatically.

the first 6 hours after birth from 54 to 46 per minute on the average and did not change significantly later during the period of observation. Rectal temperature fell about 0.5 during the usual nursing procedures in healthy full term newborns up to 3 hours of age, returned to original levels by 1.5 hours, and thereafter remained at about 36.5. The blood-glucose level at birth decreased abruptly to an average of 55 mg%, during the first 12 hours, and then gradually rose to a normal neonatal level of about 70 mg%. Blood lactate exceeded normal values only within the first 3 hours after birth and subsequently fell

slightly over 3 days. On the other hand, blood pyruvate showed a sharper fall during the first 6 hours and its level tended slowly to return to normal newborn levels—2 mg%—by the end of the third day. During the first 3 hours the L/P ratio increased slightly and a tendency to fluctuation in equilibrium between blood lactate and pyruvate was apparent. Excess lactate decreased continuously during the first 3 days of life and virtually disappeared by the third day (1.3 mg% calculated XL).

Several of the relationships found are illustrated graphically. In Fig. 1 the

TABLE 1 Oxygen consumption ($\dot{V}O_2$) respiratory rate (f) body temperature (T) blood glucose (G) lactate (L) and pyruvate (P) ratio of the latter (L/P) and calculated excess blood lactate (XL) in normal newborn infants without abnormal ties of pregnancy or labor measured from birth (time 0) to 3 days after birth

| Age in hours: | | 0 | 3 | 6 | 12 | 24 | 48 | 72 |
|---------------------------|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| $\dot{V}O_2$ (ml/kg/h) | N | 44 | 44 | 44 | 44 | 44 | 31 | 23 |
| | M | 325.45 | 314.95 | 321.77 | 333.90 | 368.48 | 345.94 | 341.61 |
| | SE | 6.72 | 9.96 | 10.83 | 10.67 | 10.16 | 9.94 | 11.06 |
| f (/min) | N | 33 | 41 | 43 | 41 | 43 | 30 | 1 |
| | M | 54.87 | 46.66 | 46.28 | 47.93 | 49.14 | 47.44 | 47.04 |
| | SE | 2.99 | 1.09 | 1.09 | 1.90 | 1.84 | 1.20 | 2.23 |
| T (°C) | N | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 42 | 34 | 23 |
| | M | 36.0 | 35.63 | 35.80 | 36.14 | 36.40 | 36.44 | 36.49 |
| | SE | 0.11 | 0.08 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.1 | 0.10 | 0.10 |
| G mg % | N | 4 | 7 | 65 | 64 | 65 | 35 | 81 |
| | M | 83.90 | 87.34 | 84.34 | 85.81 | 88.78 | 63.62 | 69.14 |
| | SE | 2.41 | 2.19 | 2.06 | 1.83 | 1.96 | 1.61 | 2.87 |
| L mg % | N | 74 | 72 | 65 | 64 | 64 | 35 | 50 |
| | M | 32.82 | 33.41 | 31.18 | 31.84 | 31.75 | 20.05 | 19.54 |
| | SE | 1.10 | 0.65 | 0.66 | 0.0 | 0.75 | 1.20 | 0.80 |
| P mg | N | 74 | 73 | 63 | 64 | 65 | 34 | 50 |
| | M | 2.82 | 1.96 | 1.61 | 1.86 | 1.81 | 1.90 | 1.85 |
| | SE | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.11 | 0.06 |
| L/P | N | 70 | 68 | 63 | 63 | 61 | 35 | 50 |
| | M | 13.48 | 14.50 | 13.55 | 13.31 | 12.06 | 10.93 | 9.97 |
| | SE | 0.39 | 0.39 | 0.47 | 0.4 | 0.40 | 0.44 | 0.33 |
| XL mg | N | 73 | | 63 | 64 | 63 | 33 | 49 |
| | M | 9.18 | 7.94 | 5.99 | 4.85 | 4.48 | 1.70 | 1.75 |
| | SE | 0.90 | 0.55 | 0.60 | 0.34 | 0.46 | 0.64 | 0.79 |

analogous course of falls in respiratory rate and body temperature during the first day of life are shown. It is interesting that the highest incidence of periodic breathing (usually periodic hyperpnea) was found during the first 24 hours after birth. During the period of most rapid change the blood levels of lactate and pyruvate were determined at frequent intervals (5 15 30 60 and 120 minutes after birth) in order to examine their relationship more closely (Fig 3). In order to facilitate comparison of curves, all values are expressed in millimoles, the initial levels being those

found in maternal venous blood drawn at the end of the second stage (crowning of the head). Stable equilibrium between lactate and pyruvate appeared between 48 and 72 hours (in the L/P ratio). Disturbances in this ratio were found 15 minutes after birth and disappeared between 3 and 1 hours.

Fig 4 illustrates the course of blood glucose levels and calculated excess lactate. The latter reached maximal levels 15 minutes after birth simultaneously with the end of the abrupt postnatal fall in blood glucose and subsequently the

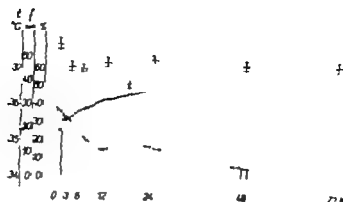


Fig. 2. The course of body temperature (*t*), incidence of periodic breathing (*r*) and respiratory rate (columns) during the first 3 days after birth.

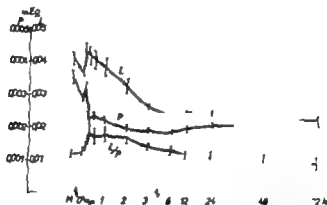


Fig. 3. Lactate (*L*) and pyruvate (*P*) in capillary blood of normal newborn infant the first 3 days of life. The lower curve shows the ratio of these (*L/P*)

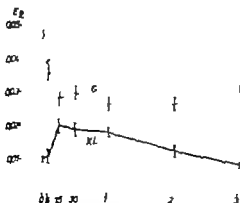


Fig. 4. Blood glucose (*G*) and excess lactate (*XL*) in normal infants during the first 3 days of life.

two curves generally pursued a mirror image course.

There was a transient decrease in oxygen consumption during the first 3 hours after birth and in the following hours a slight increase. (Table 1) The highest values for oxygen consumption in normal newborn infants were found at 24 hours of age (363.5 ml/kg/hr) at a time when *XL* average levels were 4.5 mg%. The highest values of *XL* (9.2 mg%) were determined immediately after birth when oxygen consumption was some 43 ml/kg/hr lower

(325 ml/kg/hr) The relationship between oxygen consumption and excess lactate in the blood will be examined more closely in a further report for it is in this relationship that one would expect to find reflected any significant degree of anaerobic metabolism or even oxygen debt in the newly born infant

Discussion

At definite time intervals following birth one can recognize metabolic deviations, presumably concurrent with the course of postnatal adaptation to extra-uterine life. Thus, by 15 minutes after birth a sharp fall in blood glucose and pyruvate was found, together with an increase in the ratio of blood lactate and pyruvate and a rise in the calculated excess lactat in the blood. One may assume that such changes reflect a predominance of anaerobic metabolism at this period. Metabolic balance is not stabilized even by 3 hours after birth when a transient fall in oxygen consumption is found, hypoglycemia persists, body temperature reaches its low point and the L/P ratio and calculated excess lactate are still not at normal levels. During the same period, respiratory rate is lowest and periodic breathing is observed with maximum frequency. Under normal conditions, it is only at the end of the third day that the L/P ratio reaches equilibrium levels, blood glucose rises to normal values, excess lactate virtually disappears and other physiological and biochemical criteria approach stable normal newborn values. The relative fall in blood pyruvate during a period of presumably predominant glycolytic processes immediately after birth and its relative

rise after 11 hours of life seem to indicate improvement in oxidative processes. This conclusion is confirmed by the concurrent fall in the L/P ratio and increase in oxygen consumption. The time relationship with frequent appearance of periodic breathing is also clear and interesting.

The various relationships reported here are undoubtedly associated with a variety of neonatal adaptations—metabolic, hemodynamic and so on. Reliable criteria for evaluation of the effectiveness of postnatal adaptation to extra-uterine respiration, both qualitatively and quantitatively are as yet lacking. Our findings indicate that the equilibrium between lactate and pyruvate appearing in the blood, theoretically directly dependent upon tissue oxygenation, may be such a criterion. Friedmann *et al* [2] considered the L/P ratio as a measure of the relation of overall physical stress in usual daily activity. Huckabee [4] has summarized the available data on average L/P ratios, 13.4 [Baumberger 1939], 13.3 [Friedmann 1945], 9.3 [Bueding 1942], 10.6 [Bay 1944]. Štembera & Hodr [8] found that the L/P ratio during normal labor varied between 5.3 and 6.6 while during prolonged labor (over 20 hours) it rose to 12. In our data, in normal newborn infants following a normal pregnancy and delivery the L/P ratio rose and stabilized at 9.07 only at 4 hours.

An equally important criterion of tissue oxygenation in the newborn infant should be the excess of blood lactate over pyruvate as calculated by Huckabee. His formulation takes account of the entire overall summation of influences on the lactate-pyruvate system. Štembera & Hodr [8] who investigated the effect of labor

upon blood levels of glucose lactate and pyruvate found that during normal labors calculated excess lactate did not exceed 4 mg% but during protracted labor the XL might rise to 35 mg%.

In newborn infants calculating excess lactate by Huckabee's formula our results indicate that every normal birth associated with uterine activity is responsible for the appearance of some excess lactate in the infant. To what extent this excess lactate is due to placental transfer or arises from the infant's own metabolic activity is now under investigation. The extent to which excess lactate is related to respiratory capability in the infant also requires

further study as does the role played by renal excretion in the time course of excess-lactate disappearance particularly when it is abnormally delayed.

Summary

The relationships between the neonatal courses of oxygen consumption, respiratory rate and rhythm body temperature and blood levels of glucose lactate and pyruvate have been investigated during the first 3 days of life. The data indicate that the L/P ratio and the calculated excess of lactate in the blood may be suitable criteria for the overall effectiveness of postnatal respiratory adaptation.

References

1. BARBER, S. B. and SUMMERSON W. H. The colorimetric determination of lactic acid in biological material *Biol Chem* 143 535, 1941.
2. FRIEDEMANN T. E. Pyruvic acid, *J Biol Chem*, 147 673, 1945.
3. HORENÍ, S. Základy chemického vyšetřování v lékařství, St. adra. nakl., Praha 1957.
4. HUCKABEE, W. E. Relationships of pyruvate and lactate during anaerobic metabolism. *J Clin Invest* 37 pp 244 256, 264, 1958.
5. KARLBERG P. Determinations of standard energy metabolism (basal metabolism) in normal infants, *Acta Paediat (Stock) Suppl* 59 1952.
6. NIELSEN N. A photometric adaptation of the Somogyi method for determination of glucose, *J Biol Chem* 143 375, 1944.
7. VOŘÍK, M. Ultramikrometody k stanovení některých biochemických ukazatelů křivořetě, diastolického glycidového metabolismu v krvi. *Českosl Fyziol* 10 423, 1963.
8. STRECHTAK, Z. K. and HORN, J. Přehledné studie kyselického dýchání rodilky. *Českosl Gynak* 26 501 1960.

Submitted June 30 1963

Accepted Oct. 20, 1963

Institut for the Care of Mother and Child
Prague-Podolí
Czechoslovakia

From Clinic I and the Clinical Physiological Laboratory of the Stockholm Hospital for Infectious Diseases

Pertussis with Pulmonary Complications—A Follow Up Study

by HANS JERNELIUS

The object of the present study has been to ascertain the incidence of bronchiectasis and of disturbances of selected parts of the lung function in the follow up of pertussis patients with pulmonary complications who have received adequate hospital treatment, including careful supervision and antibiotic therapy. Bronchiectasis is often contracted during early childhood [14]. Infections, especially pneumonia and pertussis, are considered an important causative factor [14-17, 23]. But the majority of studies on which this view is based have been retrospective and very few follow up studies have been made of pertussis cases.

Lees in 1950 made a radiographic study of 150 patients with pertussis [16]. Atelectasis of generally limited extent and brief duration was found in 45 cases. Six patients developed atelectasis which persisted more than 6 months. The atelectasis cases were studied by repeated bronchography which revealed reversible bronchodilatation in the affected lobes in 9 cases. Permanent bronchiectasis developed in one case.

Bjerring followed up 61 children with pertussis complicated by pneumonia or bronchitis who had been treated at the Blegdam

Hospital in Copenhagen in 1938 and 1939 [8]. The study was made nine years or more after the illness. One case of bronchiectasis was discovered.

Williams & O'Reilly [4] followed up 37 children, who had had bronchopneumonia and simultaneous atelectasis, over periods of four to ten years. Pertussis had been the cause of the atelectasis in 11 cases. Bronchiectasis developed in 21 children.

No trace can be found in the literature of studies of the lung function in children with pertussis or in its aftercourse. The pathological picture is characterized chiefly by peribronchial inflammation and by areas of small atelectases and compensatory emphysema [1]. From this starting point it is not improbable that persistent, radiographically invisible small atelectases and lesions of the bronchial walls

accompanied by bronchodilatation and/or bronchoconstriction, may cause disturbances of the lung function. That bronchiectasis produces lesions which can be detected by spirometry has been demonstrated by Strang *et al* [22]. They examined 30 children and found that in the majority the forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁) was diminished. The appearance of the spirogram was generally of the type seen in bronchial obstruction.

This study has been supported by grant from the Swedish National Association Against Heart and Lung Diseases.

Material

The present study covers all children with pertussis complicated by bronchopneumonia and/or atelectasis who were treated in the Stockholm Hospital for Infectious Diseases in the years 1951-1953. The total number was 58, 20 of whom with radiographically proved atelectasis. The number of admissions of pertussis cases in the same period was 602. All patients were X-rayed at least once during their time in hospital. Of the 58 children, 9 have not since been traced. The remaining 49 of whom 17 with atelectasis, were examined seven to ten years after the acute illness. When taken ill, 5 of the children were less than one year of age. The atelectasis children were repeatedly X-rayed during the acute phase. The atelectasis was located in the right middle lobe in all except one child, in whom it was located in the left lower lobe. Atelectasis persisted for periods of 1-9½ weeks, in five cases more than 7 weeks.

Of the 49 children traced, 9 had left Stockholm. Enquiries as to their health were made by correspondence. In no case were there symptoms calling for medical examination. The remaining 40 cases were all examined by the author. The examination comprised health history, physical examination, measurement of height and weight, and X-ray of lungs. No case exhibited symptoms requiring bronchography.

Methods and Procedure

In 19 cases measurements were made of the forced vital capacity (FVC), forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁), FEV₁% (FEV₁/FVC) and maximum breathing capacity (MBC). In 18 of them the lung volumes were determined. In 5 cases, furthermore the intrapulmonary gas mixing was studied by the nitrogen wash-out method (9, 18). Half of the cases consisted of children with atelectasis of long duration or severe pertussis, the remainder were selected from the material at random. None of the subjects had had a recurrence of pneumonia since the pertussis.

Dynamic lung volumes, FVC, FEV₁ and MBC, were measured with a spirometer made by Hifa, Stockholm, constructed on the principles described by Bernstein (3). A 1 cm movement of the spirometer bell represents a volume of 500 ml. All determinations were made in the sitting position. All volumes were corrected to body temperature and atmospheric pressure at the water vapor saturation pressure (BTPS). The MBC is read at three selected breathing rates—40, 60 and 80 breaths a minute—with the patient following a metronome, and also at a free rate of breathing. The patients were instructed to breathe as deeply as possible for 15 seconds. Two readings were made at each rate, and the highest value was used. The readings of FVC and FEV₁ were repeated so as to obtain at least three representative curves. The curve was used which gave the highest values of FEV₁. FEV₁% was expressed as per cent of the highest value found for FVC. The normal values of FVC and FEV₁ were predicted with height as coefficient of correlation from tables given by Strang (21), he used the same type of spirometer. The standard deviation for FVC is, according to Strang, 0.28 litre for boys and 0.30 litre for girls. The normal values of MBC were calculated from the formula $y = -9.45 + 21.84 H$ for boys and $y = -5.11 + 23.40 H$ for girls given by Björk (6) (H height in metres). His study were made with the same type of spirometer. The normal values for MBC were also calculated by the method described by Ferris *et al.* (12, 13) and Engström *et al.* (11). The former authors used spirometer of a different type, the latter employed the Douglas bag technique.

Measurements of the static lung volumes (BTPS): total lung capacity (TLC), vital capacity (VC), functional residual capacity (FRC) and residual volume (RV) were made with a closed system spirometer using helium as test gas (15, 19). The helium concentration was read every minute with a Carolidge helium katharometer. The volume of the apparatus with the spirometer bell in its lowest position was 2.33 litres. The readings

were taken with the patient in the sitting position. Only one recording was made of the FRC, but three of the VO the highest value was used. The RV was calculated by subtracting the expiratory reserve volume from the FRC. The normal values have been calculated by means of regression equations given by Engström, Karlberg & Jansson who employed the same method in their work. Height was used as correlation factor.

The intrapulmonary gas mixing was examined by means of nitrogen wash-out graphs during oxygen breathing (9, 18). The nitrogen concentration was monitored with a Lilly meter and Esterline Angus recorder. The time for nitrogen wash-out at a concentration of % was measured.

Results

In no case the health history or physical examination has given suspicion of bronchiectasis. The lung X rays were normal in all subjects. In four cases symptoms of bronchial asthma appeared shortly after the pertussis, but probably without causal relationship. Two of the cases exhibited other allergic manifestations as well. Four patients had had a recurrence of bronchopneumonia since discharge from hospital. One patient with severe pertussis and bronchopneumonia at one year of age developed epileptiform attacks some weeks after discharge, which continued for six years. Ten children had had symptoms of bronchitis for periods of one to several months after the acute phase two of them up to three years. They had thereafter been asymptomatic, however and appeared to be fully healthy in the follow up.

Only one patient was slightly below the normal height and weight (7).

When examined by static spirometry the majority had values rather below the

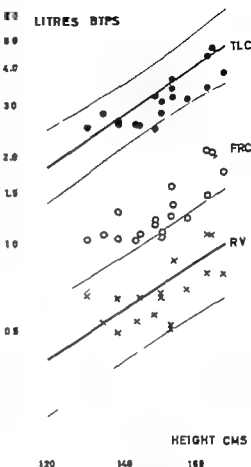


Fig. 1 Relationship between static lung volumes, litres, BTPS, and body height centimeters, in 18 children after pertussis. Regression lines with 95 per cent confidence intervals taken from Engström *et al.* *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 48: 277, 1959.

predicted values for RV, FRC and TLC and at least half had rather lowered VC (Table 1 and Fig. 1). With one exception the findings were above the lower normal limit ($\pm 95\%$ confidence interval). One child had a vital capacity immediately below the lower limit for the normal variation. The mean of the differences between observed and predicted values was for RV -0.09 ± 0.03 litre BTPS ($0.02 > p >$

Material

The present study covers all children with pertussis complicated by bronchopneumonia and/or atelectasis who were treated in the Stockholm Hospital for Infectious Diseases in the years 1951-1953. The total number was 58, 20 of whom with radiographically proved atelectasis. The number of admissions of pertussis cases in the same period was 602. All patients were X-rayed at least once during their time in hospital. Of the 58 children, 9 have not since been traced. The remaining 49 of whom 17 with atelectasis, were examined seven to ten years after the acute illness. When taken ill, 5 of the children were less than one year of age. The atelectasis children were repeatedly X-rayed during the acute phase. The atelectasis was located in the right middle lobe in all except one child, in whom it was located in the left lower lobe. Atelectasis persisted for periods of 2½-9½ weeks, in five cases more than 7 weeks.

Of the 49 children traced, 9 had left Stockholm. Enquiries as to their health were made by correspondence. In no case were there symptoms calling for medical examination. The remaining 40 cases were all examined by the author. The examination comprised health history, physical examination, measurement of height and weight, and X-ray of lungs. No case exhibited symptoms requiring bronchography.

Methods and Procedure

In 19 cases measurements were made of the forced vital capacity (FVC), forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁), FEV₁% (FEV₁/FVC) and maximum breathing capacity (MBC). In 18 of them the lung volumes were determined. In 5 cases, furthermore, the intrapulmonary gas mixing was studied by the nitrogen wash-out method [9-18]. Half of the cases consisted of children with atelectasis of long duration or severe pertussis; the remainder were selected from the material at random. None of the subjects had had a recurrence of pneumonia since the pertussis.

Dynamic lung volumes, FVC, FEV₁, and MBC, were measured with a spirometer made by Hifa, Stockholm, constructed on the principles described by Bernstein [3]. A 1 cm movement of the spirometer bell represents a volume of 500 ml. All determinations were made in the sitting position. All volumes were corrected to body temperature and atmospheric pressure & the water vapour saturation pressure (BTPS). The MBC was read at three selected breathing rates—44, 60 and 80 breaths a minute—with the patient following a metronome and also at a free rate of breathing. The patients were instructed to breathe as deep as possible for 15 seconds. Two readings were made at each rate and the highest value was used. The readings of FVC and FEV₁ were repeated so as to obtain at least three representative correct. The curve was used which gave the highest values of FEV₁. FEV₁ was expressed as per cent of the highest value found for FVC. The normal values of FVC and FEV₁ are predicted with height as coefficient of correlation from tables given by Strang [21], he used the same type of spirometer. The standard deviation for FVC is, according to Strang 0.23 litre for boys and 0.20 litre for girls. The normal values of MBC were calculated from the formula $y = -9.40 + 34.44 H$ for boys and $y = +5.21 + 23.40 H$ for girls given by Bjurs [6] (H —height in metres). His study were made with the same type of spirometer. The normal values for MBC were also calculated by the method described by Ferris *et al.* [1, 12] and Engström *et al.* [11]. The former authors used a spirometer of a different type the latter employed the Douglas bag technique.

Measurements of the static lung volumes (BTPS) total lung capacity (TLC), vital capacity (VC), functional residual capacity (FRC) and residual volume (RV) were made with a closed system spirometer using helium as test gas [15-19]. The helium concentration was read every minute with a Cambridge helium katharometer. The volume of the apparatus with the spirometer bell in its lowest position was 2.33 litres. The readings

were taken with the patient in the sitting position. Only one recording was made of the FRC but three of the VC, the highest value was used. The RV was calculated by subtracting the expiratory reserve volume from the FRC. The normal values have been calculated by means of regression equations given by Engström, Karlberg & Kraepelien who employed the same method in their work. Height was used as correlation factor.

The intrapulmonary gas mixing was examined by means of nitrogen wash-out graphs during oxygen breathing (9-18). The nitrogen concentration was monitored with a Lilly γ meter and Easterline Angus recorder. The time for nitrogen wash-out to a concentration of 2% was measured.

Results

In no case the health history or physical examination has given suspicion of bronchiectasis. The lung γ rays were normal in all subjects. In four cases symptoms of bronchial asthma appeared shortly after the pertussis, but probably without causal relationship. Two of the cases exhibited other allergic manifestations as well. Four patients had had a recurrence of bronchopneumonia since discharge from hospital. One patient with severe pertussis and bronchopneumonia at one year of age developed epileptiform attacks some weeks after discharge which continued for six years. Ten children had had symptoms of bronchitis for periods of one to several months after the acute phase two of them up to three years. They had thereafter been asymptomatic however and appeared to be fully healthy in the follow up.

Only one patient was slightly below the normal height and weight [7].

When examined by static spirometry the majority had values rather below the

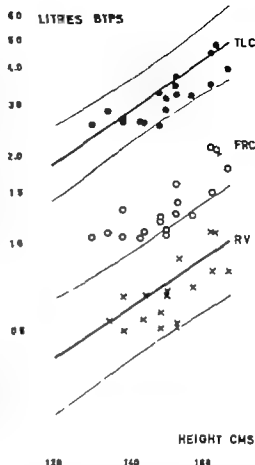


Fig 1 Relationship between static lung volumes, litres, BTPS, and body height, centimeters, in 18 children after pertussis. Regression lines with 95 per cent confidence intervals taken from Engström et al. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 44: 77, 1956.

predicted values for RV, FRC and TLC, and at least half had rather lowered VC (Table 1 and Fig 1). With one exception the findings were above the lower normal limit ($\pm 95\%$ confidence interval). One child had a vital capacity immediately below the lower limit for the normal variation. The mean of the differences between observed and predicted values was for RV -0.09 ± 0.03 litre BTPS ($0.02 > p >$

TABLE 1 *Anthropometric data and static lung volumes litre BTPS in 18 children after pertussis*

| Case No. | Age years | Sex | Height, cm | RV | | FRC | | VC | | TLC | |
|-----------------|-----------|-----|------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| | | | | Observed value | Difference from predicted v | Observed value | Difference from predicted v | Observed value | Difference from predicted v | Observed value | Difference from predicted v |
| 1 | 9 | F | 144 | 0.66 | -0.03 | 1.16 | -0.31 | 1.63 | -0.49 | 3.12 | 0.34 |
| 2 | 10 | F | 150 | 0.65 | -0.13 | 1.17 | -0.37 | 2.33 | -0.39 | 3.12 | 0.15 |
| 3 | 11 | M | 148 | 0.57 | -0.17 | 1.36 | -0.13 | 2.73 | +0.06 | 3.29 | -0.19 |
| 4 | 10 | F | 130 | 0.67 | +0.14 | 1.06 | +0.04 | 1.89 | +0.03 | 2.66 | +0.12 |
| 5 | 13 | M | 163 | 0.63 | -0.37 | 1.63 | +0.03 | 3.17 | +0.30 | 3.69 | 0.83 |
| 6 | 13 | M | 163 | 0.51 | -0.28 | 1.26 | -0.34 | 1.94 | +0.07 | 3.45 | 0.29 |
| 7 | 15 | M | 163 | 0.75 | -0.18 | 1.47 | -0.48 | 2.70 | -0.78 | 3.48 | -1.01 |
| 8 | 11 | F | 157 | 0.70 | -0.17 | 1.44 | -0.31 | 3.44 | -0.70 | 3.14 | -0.94 |
| 9 | 8 | M | 138 | 0.85 | +0.03 | 1.30 | +0.09 | 2.09 | -0.11 | 2.74 | 0.23 |
| 10 | 9 | F | 148 | 0.81 | -0.33 | 1.19 | -0.29 | 2.01 | -0.66 | 2.52 | 0.84 |
| 11 | 10 | F | 158 | 0.68 | -0.09 | 1.07 | -0.47 | 3.19 | -0.80 | 2.87 | 0.73 |
| 12 | 15 | F | 169 | 0.79 | -0.24 | 1.83 | -0.35 | 3.09 | 0.75 | 3.88 | 1.11 |
| 13 | 13 | F | 165 | 1.09 | +0.10 | 2.10 | +0.08 | 3.63 | +0.03 | 4.71 | +0.83 |
| 14 | 8 | F | 130 | 0.50 | -0.13 | 1.06 | -0.15 | 2.23 | +0.03 | 3.73 | 0.14 |
| 15 | 10 | M | 163 | 0.88 | +0.07 | 1.36 | -0.37 | 2.33 | -0.80 | 3.20 | 0.47 |
| 17 | 10 | M | 143 | 0.55 | -0.13 | 1.05 | -0.29 | 2.17 | -0.26 | 3.72 | -0.45 |
| 18 | 10 | M | 134 | 0.84 | -0.03 | 1.10 | -0.02 | 2.28 | +0.25 | 2.83 | 0.18 |
| 18 | 16 | F | 163 | 1.09 | +0.13 | 2.13 | +0.21 | 3.40 | -0.06 | 4.49 | 0.53 |
| Mean difference | | | | -0.09±0.03 | | -0.18±0.05 | | -0.36±0.05 | | -0.41±0.10 | |
| p | | | | 0.03>p>0.01 | | 0.01>p>0.001 | | 0.01>p>0.001 | | p<0.001 | |

p 0.01) for FRC -0.18 ± 0.05 ($0.01 > p > 0.001$) for VC -0.26 ± 0.09 ($0.01 > p > 0.001$) and for TLC -0.41 ± 0.10 ($p < 0.001$) litre BTPS. The standard deviation for normal standards is 19.7% for RV 15.4% for FRC 12.6% for VC, and 12.2% for TLC, if the height is used as correlation factor [10].

In dynamic spirometry (Table 2) the FVC of 8 children was below the normal limit (-2σ). The mean of the differences between observed and predicted values was -0.41 ± 0.10 litre BTPS ($p < 0.001$). The mean FEV_{1.0} ratio (FEV_{1.0}/FVC) for the entire material was 86%. Strang gives the normal value for boys as $85 \pm 5\%$ and for girls $80 \pm 5\%$ [21]. Only one patient

showed a definitely lowered FEV_{1.0} ratio of 71%.

In 13 out of 18 subjects the maximum breathing capacity (MBC) proved to be below the lower limit for the normal variation reported by Bjure [8]. The mean difference between observations and predicted values was -4.0 ± 5 litres BTPS/min which is significant ($p < 0.001$). If the observations of MBC are instead compared with predicted values according to Ferris *et al* [10, 13] or Engstrom *et al* [11], low values are found only in two cases. These two children, however, achieved a normal MBC at a rate of 80 breaths per minute in time with a metronome. The mean difference between observations and

TABLE 2. *Results from dynamic spirometry in 19 children after pertussis*

| Case No. | FVC, l BTPS | | FEV ₁ /FVC % | | MBC, l BTPS | | |
|-----------|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | Observed value | Difference from predicted v | Observed value | Difference from predicted v | Observed value | Difference from predicted v F | Difference from predicted v B |
| 1 | 1.98 | -0.60 | 92 | -6 | 77 | +3 | -2. |
| 2 | 1.80 | -0.69 | 92 | 4 | 54 | -18 | -34 |
| 3 | 2.45 | -0.45 | 93 | +12 | 83 | -29 | -50 |
| 4 | 1.93 | +0.15 | 90 | +4 | 52 | -8 | -18 |
| 5 | 2.79 | 0.16 | 86 | 0 | 6. | -20 | -59 |
| 6 | 2.92 | -0.28 | 90 | -4 | 85 | -1 | -39 |
| 7 | 3.91 | -0.74 | 69 | -3 | 136 | +11 | -44 |
| 8 | 2.84 | -0.84 | 71 | -16 | 66 | -29 | -61 |
| 9 | 2.83 | +0.03 | 84 | -2 | 77 | -9 | +23 |
| 10 | 2.20 | -0.68 | 78 | 8 | 63 | -15 | -44 |
| 11 | 2.26 | -0.74 | 98 | +1 | 67 | -23 | -44 |
| 12 | 2.92 | -1.1 | 98 | 12 | 102 | -5 | -54 |
| 13 | 3.50 | -0.42 | 84 | 2 | 89 | -45 | -87 |
| 14 | 2.26 | -0.09 | 76 | 8 | 83 | -19 | -35 |
| 15 | 2.42 | -0.84 | 93 | 7 | 74 | -12 | 63 |
| 16 | 4.29 | +0.51 | 79 | - | 163 | +36 | -26 |
| 17 | 3.20 | -0.80 | 78 | 8 | 74 | -8 | -35 |
| 18 | 3.37 | +0.06 | 85 | -1 | 84 | +15 | +1 |
| 19 | 3.41 | -0.4. | 88 | 2 | 87 | -16 | -54 |
| Mean diff | -0.41 ± 0.10 | | 0.4 ± 1.7 | | -8 ± 8 | | $-4. \pm 5$ |
| P | <0.001 | | >0.05 | | >0.05 | | <0.001 |

F predicted values from Ferris *et al* [12, 13].

B predicted values from Bjure [6].

predicted values according to Ferris *et al* was -8 ± 5 litres BTPS/min. (non-significant) and according to Engström *et al* $+5 \pm 5$ litres BTPS/min. In a smaller series of 40 healthy schoolchildren examined at the hospital with a Bernsten spirometer [4] the values of MBC were very much lower than those found by Bjure but in close agreement with those of Ferris *et al*. It seems best therefore to compare the MBC of the pertussis cases with the standard values of Ferris *et al*.

The intrapulmonary gas distribution was examined in five cases (four had had atelectasis and one bronchopneumonia). All exhibited rapidly falling wash-out curve and a nitrogen concentration below

in expiratory air was attained in less than 10 minutes, indicative of a homogeneous mixture of gases in the lungs [1].

Discussion

The static lung volumes have proved to be on an average slightly lower than the predicted normal values in the group studied. The diminished total lung capacity is due to a lowering both of the residual volume and of the vital capacity. The difference between observed and predicted values is statistically significant but the absolute figures are small and lie within the normal variation. The changes are so small that one is not justified in drawing

any conclusions as to their implication. In all cases but one the individual values are within the normal variation. The one exception, a 10-year-old girl of slender build had a vital capacity immediately below the lower normal limit. In the follow up she exhibited no clinical symptoms of pulmonary disease.

The results of the dynamic spirometry have shown normal $FEV_{1.5}$ ratio and there is thus no increased resistance to breathing. Eight children had a pathologically low FVC. Seven of them, however, had a normal vital capacity when examined with a helium spirometer. Their low FVC are probably due to the fact that it is more difficult to get children to cooperate in this test than in tests of ordinary vital capacity. One of the children was reported by her mother to become short of breath during exertion. She also had a lowered $FEV_{1.5}$ ratio of 71%. In this case the lowered values were probably due to extrapulmonary factors. Functional tests showed a low working capacity ($W_{1.18}$) [90] probably due to muscular factors. Exercise electrocardiogram showed no abnormality. The remainder of the patients were entirely free from symptoms in the follow up.

The MBC values are normal if compared with our own small standard material and with predicted normal values according to Ferris *et al.* [1*, 13] and Engström *et al.* [11], but are mostly abnormal if compared with Björk's [6] standards. The very much higher level of Björk's figures is probably due to the fact that in his study the children chose or were instructed to breathe at a quick rate of between 80 and 90 breaths per minute. In our material the children breathed at an average of 50 breaths per minute.

To sum up it may be concluded that children who have had pertussis with pulmonary complications have on an average smaller static lung volumes than normal children. However the difference is small and might be explained by a slight systematic disparity of the materials, as the number of patients in the present study is small. Signs of increased resistance to breathing are absent, and the maximum breathing capacity is within normal limits.

The study appears to show that pertussis complicated by bronchopneumonia or atelectasis, if adequately treated, does not predispose to bronchiectasis or pulmonary diseases. The result of this study is in good agreement with those of Lees [16] and Biering [5] who found that the risk for bronchiectasis after pertussis was small. The reversible bronchiectasis reported by Lees [16] in cases of pertussis with atelectasis might explain the protracted symptoms of bronchitis after the acute phase in some of the present cases. The conception that pertussis is a common cause of bronchiectasis in children is based on retrospective studies and seems not to be correct. Repeated infections in bronchi and lungs to a great degree facilitate the origin of bronchiectasis. It is possible that late complications were more common in the past, when children's resistance against infections was smaller and antibiotics were not available. The risk for late complications will probably increase if the treatment is neglected. Therefore it is still important that pertussis patients with pulmonary complications are adequately treated with antibiotics, and cases with atelectasis should be kept under careful observation and as much as possible protected from infections.

Summary

Forty nine children with pertussis complicated by bronchopneumonia or atelectasis were examined seven to ten years after the acute illness. The examination comprised health history physical examination and X ray of the lungs. Static and dynamic spirometry was also performed in 19 cases, and the intrapulmonary gas mixing was examined in 5 cases.

No case of bronchiectasis or other sequelae was found. The static lung volumes in the group studied were on an average lower than the predicted normal values. The difference was small but significant.

With a single exception, however the individual values were within the normal variation. The result of the dynamic spirometry showed there to be no increased resistance to breathing. The maximum breathing capacity and the intrapulmonary gas mixing showed normal values.

Acknowledgements

The author is greatly indebted to Professor Carl Wegelius for help in interpreting the X-rays, and to the staff of the Clinical Physiological Laboratory and Radiological Department of the Stockholm Hospital for Infectious Diseases for technical assistance.

References

1. BUCK, L. O., MURRAY, J. A. and OLDHAM, H. V. Evaluation of lung volumes and intrapulmonary gas mixing in diseased and normal children. *Dis Chest*, 39: 23, 1961.
2. BUCHHART, G. v., FREY, W. and SCHWEDER, H. *Handbuch der inneren Medizin I für Hausärzte*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg, 1952.
3. BERNSTEIN, L., D'SILVA, J. L. and MAX, H. II. The effect of the rate of breathing on the maximum breathing capacity determined with new spirometer. *Phonetica* 7: 255, 1962.
4. BERNY, H. Personal communication, 1960.
5. BERNY, A. Childhood pneumonia, including pertussis pneumonia, and bronchopneumitis. A follow-up study of 151 patients. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 4: 348, 1966.
6. BURK, J. Spirometric studies in normal subjects. IV. Ventilatory capacity in healthy children 5-17 years of age. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 52: 323, 1963.
7. BRODY, H., DAHLBERG, G. and LICHTENSTEIN, A. Height and weight during growth. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 53: 1, 1964.
8. COMBES, J. H. JR., FORSTER, R. E., DUBOIS, A. B., BRIDGES, W. A. and CARLSON, E. *The Lung Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests*. The Year Book Publishers, Inc., Chicago, 1955.
9. DAHLBERG, R. C., COURVAND, A. and RICHARDS, D. W. Studies on the intrapulmonary mixing of gases. III. An open circuit method of measuring residual air. *J Clin Invest* 19: 600, 1940.
10. ENGBRÖM, L., KARLBERG, P. and KRANKE, L. S. Respiratory studies in children. I. Lung volumes in healthy children 6-14 years of age. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 46: 277, 1956.
11. ENGBRÖM, L., KARLBERG, P., KRANKE, L. S. and WETZLER, G. Respiratory studies in children. V. Maximal breathing capacity in healthy and symptom-free asthmatic children, 7-14 years of age. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 47: 560, 1958.
12. FERRY, JR., B. G., WHITTAKER, J. L. and GALLAGHER, J. R. Maximum breathing capacity and vital capacity of male children and adolescents. *Pediatrics* 9: 686, 1952.
13. FERRY, JR., B. G. and SMITH, C. W. Maximum breathing capacity and vital capacity of female children and adolescents. *Pediatrics*, 12: 341, 1953.
14. FIELD, E. L. Bronchiectasis in childhood. I. Clinical survey of 160 cases. *Pediatrics*, 4: 21, 1949.
15. HOLMGREN, A. Determination of the functional residual volume by means of the helium dilution method. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest*, 4: 131, 1954.
16. LEES, A. W. Atelectasis and bronchiectasis in pertussis. *Brit Med J* 11: 1123, 1940.
17. LINDERG, G. E. and HUBBEL, L. An analysis of 18 cases of bronchiectasis. *Surg Gynec Obstet*, 100: 812, 1955.
18. LUFT, U. C., ROHRBACH, E. H. and MACQUIG, R. E. Pulmonary nitrogen clearance as criteria of ventilatory efficiency. *Amer Rev Tuberc*, 71: 465, 1955.
19. MEYER, R. and KALTREIDER, V. L. The volume of the lung determined by helium

- dilation. Description of the method and comparison with other procedures. *J Clin Invest* 28 129 1949
20. SÖDERSTRAND T.: Changes in the respiratory organs of workmen at an ore smelting works. *Acta Med Scand Suppl* 196, 1947
21. STRANG, L. B. The ventilatory capacity of normal children. *Thorax* 14 305 1959
22. STRANG L. B. and COURT S. D. M.: Studies of lung function in children. *Postgrad Med J* 36 376, 1960.
23. STRÖM, J. Bronchiektasier hos barn. *Nord Med* 12 1749, 1926.
24. WILLIAMS, H. and O'REILLY R. X. Bronchiectasis in children; its multiple clinical and pathological aspects. *Arch Dis Child*, 34 192, 1959

Submitted Sept. 9 1963

Accepted Oct. 5 1963

Epileptisjukhuset
Stockholm
S. eden

From The Children's Hospital, Gothenburg, Sweden, and The Middlesex Hospital, London, W 1, England

Auto-Immune Thyroiditis in Children and Adolescents I. Clinical Studies

by LARS R. NILSSON and DEBORAH DONIACH

In a study of adolescent goitre under taken in Gothenburg in 1959 several children were found to have unusually firm goitres. Using thyroid biopsies and immunological tests for thyroid antibodies, these cases were shown to have lymphoid thyroiditis. The application of these methods was then extended to most other cases of non-toxic goitre seen at the Gothenburg Children's Hospital September 1959-February 1963 and it became evident that auto-immune thyroiditis is a common cause of thyroid enlargement in children and adolescents, in western Sweden. The results of the cytological aspiration biopsies will be reported (Nilsson & Persson, 1964). The present paper is concerned with clinical and thyroid function studies in 25 cases of juvenile lymphocytic thyroiditis and a further communication will include the detailed result of auto-antibody investigations in the patient and their parents (Doniach, Nilsson & Roitt 1964).

The term "auto-immune thyroiditis" has been adopted to cover lymphocytic lesions of varying severity and extent. Classical Hashimoto's disease or struma

lymphomatosa is unusual in young subjects and many have a milder variant of the disease. A few patients with juvenile myxoedema having no thyroid enlargement were included since this type of thyroid atrophy has been shown in adults to be closely related histologically and immunologically to the goitrous variants of lymphoid thyroiditis.

Material and Methods

Patients. The series includes 29 cases studied in Gothenburg and 6 patients similarly investigated in London. The total group consisted of 6 boys and 29 girls aged between 7 and 17 at the time of study. Table 1 gives detail of all the patients included in the present report. Table 2 shows the incidence of lymphocytic thyroiditis among all thyroid patients aged 0-16 seen at the Gothenburg Children's Hospital during the period of this study.

Methods. Cytologic aspiration biopsies with fine needle were performed in Cases 1-26; Cases 29, 31, 33 and 34 had histological needle biopsies performed with the Turner Warwick biopsy instrument (El Kabir *et al.* [19]) and the remaining cases had no goitre at the time of study.

¹³¹I thyroid uptakes were performed in the

TABLE 1 Clinical data in 47

| Init. | Sex | Age on admission | Known duration | Goitre | | | Clinical thyroid status | Metabolism | | Pct |
|-------|-----|------------------|----------------|--------|-------------|-----------|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----|
| | | | | Size | Consistency | Surface | | BMR (+15 to -15) | PMV 7 (4-8 yrs) | |
| LF | F | 1 | 1 year | M | firm | boscel. | eu | +2 | 7 | 25 |
| RG | F | 9 | 3 yrs | M | firm | boscel. | eu | +2, -5 | 67 | 10 |
| EN | F | 9 | 1 year | M | firm | smooth | eu | -4, -6 | 75 | 10 |
| IF | F | 10 | 1 mth | M | mod. | nod. lobe | eu | -3 | 81 | 10 |
| SLE | M | 11 | 1 mth | M | firm | boscel. | eu | -7, -11 | 61 | 10 |
| YT | F | 11 | 1 year | M | firm | smooth | eu | +2, -8 | 66 | 10 |
| KO | F | 11 | 1 year | M | mod. | smooth | eu | - | 43 | 2 |
| KW | F | 11 | 2 mths | S | mod. | smooth | eu | -3 | 91 | 10 |
| LA | F | 11 | 1 mth | L | firm | boscel. | eu | -2, +12 | 75 | 10 |
| MA | F | 12 | 8-9 yrs | M | firm | boscel. | hypo | +3, -4 | 103 | 10 |
| AMH | F | 1 | 1 year | M | mod. | smooth | eu | +16, +7 | 74 | 10 |
| BB | F | 12 | 1 mth | S | soft | smooth | eu | -3 | 80 | 10 |
| YH | F | 13 | 1 mth | M | mod. | smooth | eu | +18, +1 | 61 | 10 |
| BP | F | 13½ | 2-3 yrs | L | firm | boscel. | hypo | -10 | 49 | 10 |
| MO | F | 13½ | 6 mths | M | mod. | boscel. | eu | +1 | 75 | 10 |
| IO | F | 14 | 1 mth | L | firm | boscel. | eu | -4 | 79 | 10 |
| KL | F | 14 | 1 mth | S | mod. | smooth | eu | -6 | 123 | 10 |
| CL | M | 14 | 6 mths | M | soft | smooth | eu | -1 | 35 | 10 |
| RO | F | 14 | 3 yrs | M | mod. | boscel. | eu | -10, 8 | 80 | 10 |
| DH | F | 14½ | 3 years | L | firm | boscel. | eu | - | 66 | 10 |
| AQ | F | 15 | years | M | mod. | boscel. | eu | -5 | 76 | 10 |
| BME | F | 15 | 1 year | S | soft | smooth | eu | -6 | 63 | 10 |
| BH | F | 15 | 3 mths | M | mod. | smooth | eu | -8 | 74 | 10 |
| LJ | F | 15 | 1 year | L | firm | boscel. | eu | -12, 14 | 84 | 10 |
| BG | F | 15½ | 1½ yrs | L | mod. | nod. | eu | -12 | 79 | 10 |
| RB | M | 16 | 1 year | M | soft | smooth | eu | -2, 6 | 85 | 10 |
| KB | F | 17 | 2-4 yrs | M | soft | smooth | hypo | -22, 10 | 8 | 10 |
| SB | F | 18 | | | N goitre | | hypo? | -10 | 61 | 10 |
| MO | M | 7 | 1 mth | M | mod. | smooth | eu | - | 89 | 10 |
| RO | F | 10 | 4 yrs | S | mod. | smooth | myx | | 11 | |
| PB | F | 14 | 2 yrs | L | firm | smooth | eu | 8, -10 | 61 | |
| CH | M | 14 | 1 year | | N goitre | | myx | | | |
| UH | F | 14 | 6 mths | M | mod. | smooth | eu | 1 | 102 | 10 |
| PD | F | 16½ | 1 mth | M | firm | boscel. | eu | 12, 9 | 100 | 10 |
| AM | M | 14 | | | N goitre | | myx | 23 | 16 | 10 |

Normal values in brackets.

+ Fluorescent test for colloid and/or eye plasma positive TRC 0-2500.

++ Thyroid complement fixation curve 0-1/32 and TRC up to 25,000.
 +++ Thyroid complement fixation 1/512 with or without TRC

pread / fraction tests

| [¹²⁵ I] uptake tests | | | PBI ₁₂₅ 48 hrs. (0-0.3%/L) | V ₁₂₅ 9% (0.9-1.0%) | Thyroid antibody titres (all negative) ^a | Remarks |
|----------------------------------|------------------|------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| X | N ₁₂₅ | N ₁₂₅ | | | | |
| ex. opt. 20-60 %) | | | | | | |
| very low (exogen. influences?) | | | | 1.3 | + | |
| 39 | 47 | 47 | 0.83 | 1.4 | +++ | |
| 48 | 81 | 47 | 1.03 | 1.8 | + | |
| 36 | 83 | 28 | 1.35 | 1.1 | +++ | Diabetes since age of 9 |
| 48 | 88 | 8. | 0.86 | 1.3 | + | |
| 59 | 88 | 80 | 0.26 | 1.6 | Neg → + | Aspiration cytology doubtful thyroiditis but clinically suggestive |
| 4 | 75 | 76 | 0.38 | 1.8 | ++ | Subacute onset with painful goitre, 1 year later hypothyroid |
| 59 | 84 | 83 | 1.8 | 1.3 | + | Short stature, no improvement with T |
| 32 | 42 | 39 | 0.86 | 1.8 | ++ | Joint pains |
| 22 | 16 | 11 | 1.57 | 1.8 | + | Retarded growth and delayed puberty |
| 47 | 86 | 84 | 0.30 | 1.7 | ++ | 1 year later goitre knobby |
| 49 | 81 | 85 | 0.8 | 1.9 | + | 1 year later goitre firmer |
| 30 | 40 | 37 | 0.36 | 1.3 | ++ | |
| 29 | 30 | 24 | 1.71 | 1.8 | ++ | X-ray tracheal compression |
| 4 | 35 | 36 | 0.53 | 1.8 | ++ | |
| 19 | 26 | 25 | 0.23 | 1.9 | ++ | |
| 70 | 87 | 80 | 1.87 | 1.7 | + | Exacerbations and remissions of goitre |
| 50 | 89 | 47 | 1.38 | 1.4 | - | Anxiety and nervousness, increased tenderness of goitre |
| 24 | 83 | 83 | 0.16 | 2.0 | + | Constitutionally underweight with abnormal fingers and toes |
| 35 | 30 | 27 | 0.82 | 2.0 | ++ | 1 year later mild hypothyroidism |
| y low (exogen. influences) | | | | 1.1 | +++ | |
| 31 | 43 | 42 | | 1.3 | ++ | 6/12 later became hypothyroid |
| 30 | 36 | 40 | 0.16 | 1.4 | - | 6/12 later became hypothyroid |
| 43 | 49 | 46 | 0.18 | 1.8 | - | Goitre size fluctuating, later firm |
| 33 | 43 | 44 | 0.13 | 1.9 | ++ | Painful colloid goitre with superimposed thyroiditis. Perchlorate discharge neg. |
| 34 | 34 | 23 | 0.4 | 1.4 | ++ | Breathless on exertion, palpitations |
| 50 | 48 | 38 | 1.9 | 2.2 | +++ | Fluctuating goitre regressed spontaneously with onset of mild hypothyroidism. |
| 31 | 41 | 43 | 1.2 | 1.3 | - | Mentally retarded, dysplastic habitus |
| 37 | (12%) | | | normal | - | Enuresis and muscle pains, goitre symptomless. 2 yrs. later goitre firm, patient euthyroid. |
| | | | | raised | + | Profound myxoedema 2 yrs. Bone age 8.9 yrs |
| 21 | 30 | | 0.86 | raised | +++ | Over next 4 yrs. goitre progressively larger and patient mild hypothyroid |
| | | | | raised | ++ | Floral myxoed. rapid onset following upper respiratory infection |
| 29 | 81 | | 0.1 | raised | ++ | After 2 yrs. goitre larger and firmer patient still euthyroid AB titre increased |
| index | 80 (high) | | 0.62 | raised | --- | Became myxoedematous 4 yrs. after painful onset |
| 4 | 2 | 2 | 0.16 | 1.3 | - | Diabetes at 6, growth retard. from age of 9-10 yrs. severe myxoedema at 13 yrs. |

TABLE 2 *All cases of thyroid disease seen at the Gothenburg Children's Hospital September 1959 to February 1963*

| Diagnosis | Both sexes | Girls | Boys |
|--------------------------------------|------------|-------|------|
| Lymphocytic thyroiditis | 31 | 34 | 3 |
| Thyroiditis following thyrotoxicosis | 1 | 1 | — |
| Thyrotoxicosis | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| Juvenile myxoedema | 3 | 1 | 1 |
| Congenital myxoedema | 1 | 1 | — |
| Iodide goitre | 1 | 1 | — |
| Isaen thyroid dyshormonogenesis | 5 | 2 | 3 |
| Cystic colloid goitre | 3 | 3 | — |
| Simple goitre | 32 | 31 | 1 |
| Total number | 90 | 71 | 9 |

conventional manner using a scintillation counter with a tracer dose of 10–20 μ C. The protein bound radioactivity in 48 hour plasma samples was separated on Amberlite Resin Ia 400 FBI[®] was determined with a modified Barker method (Skene & Hadenot [35]). BMR was calculated from the oxygen consumption in a Laidlaw spirometer model II using the standards given by Lewis *et al.* [22]. The serum proteins were estimated by the biuret method and separated by paper electrophoresis; strips were scanned on a Chromoscan (Aronson & Grönvall [1]).

The results of immunological tests for thyroid gastric non-organ-specific AICP antibodies and for anti-nuclear and rheumatoid factors will be reported separately.

Results

Onset and symptoms

Goitre was the presenting sign in 31 cases, myxoedema in three and symptoms suggestive of hypothyroidism in one girl without thyroid enlargement. Age distribution at known onset is illustrated in Fig. 1; the youngest age was 3 years. The disease became manifest before the menarche in 59% of the girls (Table 3).

The goitre was first noted at school health examinations or consultation for

other complaints in nine patients. In one case it developed rapidly with local pain, heat, intolerance, nervousness and general malaise. A further two girls had a rapid onset but the history was more vague. In the remaining cases the patients or their parents had become aware of the neck swelling accidentally in two instances during an upper respiratory infection. A few patients complained of sweating, nervousness or tiredness as the first symptoms of the disease.

Symptoms attributed to the disease and

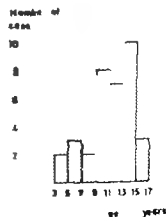


Fig. 1 Age distribution of known onset of thyroid disease (31 cases).

TABLE 3. *Thyroiditis in relation to onset of menstruation in 29 girls*

| | No. of patient | Age at onset of menstruation in years | | Remarks |
|--|----------------|---------------------------------------|------------|---|
| | | Median | Range | |
| Thyroiditis onset before menarche | 1 | 1... (10 cases) | 11-12.6 | Seven not yet menstruating of whom two aged 14... and 14.6 delayed menarche |
| Thyroiditis onset before menarche | 3 | 13.0 | 11-14 | |
| after menarche | 9 | | | |
| Controls with adolescent colloid goitres | 25 | 1 | 10... 14.3 | |

their frequency are shown in Table 4. Thirteen patients had no general complaints and most of the other cases had mild disturbances which could not always be attributed to the thyroiditis. Two types of general symptoms were recognizable as indicating hypo- or hypermetabolism: feeling cold, tired and dull were conspicuous in the myxoedema cases but similar milder symptoms were present in about one-fourth of patients who were not obviously hypothyroid. The other group of symptoms included sweating, moderate heat intolerance, nervousness and general lassitude. These appeared at the onset in some cases or in connection with obvious exacerbations with increase in goitre size. Slight mental changes such as

irritability and restlessness are difficult to evaluate and were noted in Table 4 only when the parents stressed their recent onset or distressing nature. Intestinal upsets were not reported. A few girls had mild menstrual irregularities which could not be referred with certainty to the thyroid disease.

Nine patients complained of heaviness or pressure in the neck on swallowing, three also having neck pain at the onset or during exacerbations and one had dysphagia with tracheal compression. However in 23 of 32 cases the goitre was symptomless. Apart from true exacerbations, the size of the goitre was said to fluctuate in some cases with physical effort, mental stress and menstruation, or without apparent cause.

TABLE 4. *Symptoms in 35 cases of juvenile auto-immune thyroiditis*

| | |
|---|----|
| Neck pressure or pain | 8 |
| Increased sweating | 7 |
| Cold sensitivity | 11 |
| Fatigue and dullness | 1 |
| Behaviour changes | 6 |
| Breathlessness and palpitations on moderate physical exertion | 2 |
| Mild neck symptoms only | 2 |
| No symptoms | 11 |

Clinical signs

Goitre. Individual findings are shown in Table 1 and are summarized in Table 5. Small goitres were easily palpable but only visible on careful inspection. Medium-sized goitres were visible and estimated to be 2-3 times larger than the normal gland. Large goitres were quite obvious with a vertical lobe height of 5-7 cm. Increased

TABLE 5 The character of goitre in 35 patients with auto-immune thyroiditis

| Size | Consistency | | | Surface | | | Total |
|-----------|-------------|----------|------|---------|----------|--------|-------|
| | Firm | Moderate | Soft | Nodular | Bombated | Smooth | |
| Large | 8 | 1 | — | 1 | 8 | 1 | 7 |
| Medium | 7 | 10 | 3 | 3 | 8 | 11 | 40 |
| Small | — | 3 | 3 | — | — | 5 | 8 |
| N goitre | | | | | | | 2 |
| Total No. | 15 | 14 | 5 | 5 | 15 | 1 | 25 |

consistency of the gland was classified as moderate or firm but none of these young patients had the really hard or rubbery goitres seen in adult Hashimoto patients. Surface irregularities classed as bombated in 13 cases could be granular uneven or lobular and only two patients had definite nodules. Seventeen patients had smooth diffuse goitres, two of them vascular and reminiscent of Graves disease. All goitres were freely mobile. Pre-sized lymph nodes were palpable above the upper poles of the thyroid in some instances. Slight compression of the trachea was found on X-ray in only one girl with a large goitre causing dysphagia.

Somatic growth. The height of the patients was compared with standard values according to a Swedish growth chart (Karlberg & Igglöm [70]). Eight girls and two boys were clearly taller than the mean height for the corresponding age but only two girls fell above the 95% confidence limit. Six children were shorter than the mean four of them below the 95% limit of whom three had myxoedema. The fourth had small parents and some anomalies indicating a genetically determined short constitution. One other short girl had moderate hypothyroidism she failed to have the normal growth spurt at 13

years of age but grew again after institution of thyroid hormone. However this is of doubtful significance since her mother also had a late puberty. There were no significant deviations from the normal weight except for the myxoedema case who were all overweight. Median age at menarche is shown in Table 3. There was some suspicion of delayed puberty in two girls aged 14½ and in a boy of 14 who was myxoedematous.

Associated diseases. Two patients had diabetes mellitus diagnosed before the thyroid disease. One girl had abnormalities of fingers and toes, short broad hands and feet and was constitutionally undersized. Another had doughy soft tissues, hyperextendable joints and subnormal intelligence. There were no associated rheumatic or allergic conditions except for one girl who complained of intermittent pains in the left wrist increasing with weather changes, one boy with muscle pains, and one girl who had repeated attacks of bronchitis which may have included an allergic component.

Laboratory investigations

Basal metabolic rate was measured in 31 patients and gave abnormally low result only in patients with myxoedema two

TABLE 6. I^{125} values in 31 cases of juvenile auto-immune thyroiditis

| Maximum peak uptake % | % of patients |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| < 20 | 1 |
| (Normal range) 20-40 | 11 |
| 41-50 | 8 |
| > 50 | 10 |
| 48 hr PBI^{125} %/litre | |
| (Normal range) < 0.20 | 8 |
| 0.20-0.40 | 8 |
| > 0.40-1.00 | 7 |
| > 1.00 | 9 |

girls with mild hypothyroidism had borderline readings, and all other patients gave normal results.

Protein-bound iodine. Seven patients had PBI values of 8-12.3 $\mu\text{g}/100$ ml without a corresponding rise in $BMIR$ or symptoms of thyroid overactivity. The myxoedema cases had very low values of 1.1 and 1.5 μg but in all other patients PBI values lay between 4 and 8 $\mu\text{g}/100$ ml.

Radioiodine tests. Individual findings are given in Table 1 and summarized in Table 6. There was a marked tendency to high uptake values. Twelve patients had maximum thyroid uptakes of 50-76% and the mean uptake for the group was 46% excluding the myxoedematous cases. The 48 hour PBI^{125} was markedly raised in 16 of 21 cases (0.51-1.9%/litre) and only 5 patients had values below 0.2%.

Serum protein electrophoresis. Total protein values were all within normal limit but 16 of 21 patients had raised γ -globulin values (1.7-2.2 g/100 ml in 12/20 cases estimated quantitatively).

Erythrocyte sedimentation rate and serum cholesterol. The ESR (1 hour Westergren) was measured in 33 patients. It was less

than 10 mm in 23 cases, between 10 and 40 mm in 9 and 25 mm in one boy with myxoedema and diabetes. The serum cholesterol was raised above 300 mg/100 ml only in the three children with advanced myxoedema.

Clinical course and effects of treatment

Twenty four cases have been observed for over a year and some for 2-4 years before institution of replacement therapy. The observations on change in goitre size and thyroid status are summarized in Table 7. In seven patients the goitre slowly increased in size, firmness and irregularity of the surface including four cases who had small soft thyroid swellings diagnosed as typical adolescent goitres when first seen. In nine patients the goitre showed marked variations in size and in one girl the swelling disappeared spontaneously while she became hypothyroid. A few patients complained of alternate periods of feeling cold and sweating. Apart from the three cases with myxoedema and four who presented with mild thyroid deficiency hypothyroidism developed in six patients during the follow-up. In three cases this occurred within 1-2 years of the known onset of disease while in the other three patients thyroid function declined more slowly over several years.

Treatment with thyroid hormone has been instituted in 15 of the patients. The initial dosage was 0.1 mg of L-thyroxine later increased to 0.2 mg daily in some cases. The duration of treatment has been rather short in most cases exceeding one year in only seven. The myxoedematous patients improved to full health on therapy. Of nine patients considered mildly hypothyroid, seven girls felt much better

TABLE 7 *Course and prognosis in 35 cases of juvenile thyroiditis.*

| | Number of patients |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. <i>Goutre (before treatment)</i> | |
| Regression spontaneously | 1 |
| Increase in firmness and vasculation | 5 |
| Progressive increase in size and firmness | 7 |
| No change in size and consistency after 1-3 years | 9 |
| Follow-up less than 9 months | 10 |
| No thyroid enlargement at any time | 3 |
| Total | 25 |
| 2. <i>Thyroid status</i> | |
| Hypothyroid at diagnosis | 7 |
| Later became hypothyroid | 6 |
| Remained euthyroid without therapy | 10 |
| Euthyroid when treatment started | 1 |
| Total | 25 |

on thyroid hormone a change also noticed by their parents. One girl grew well during twelve months of therapy. The mentally retarded girl experienced no clear improvement on treatment. With respect to

its size information is available in 18 cases. An obvious decrease in size was found in nine cases of which four had been treated for only 3-4 months. In five patients no clear regression of the goitre could be registered but four of these had been on therapy for only three months. The remaining patient had an unexpected and marked doughy swelling of her goitre when seen two months after starting treatment but this later regressed and her goitre became rather small.

Incidence of thyroiditis in children and adolescents

In a goitre survey carried out on school children aged 10-16 examination of 519 boys and 595 girls revealed definite goitres in two girls and doubtful thyroid enlarge-

ments in four while all the boys had normal glands. As seen in Table 1 of a total of 72 cases of non-toxic goitre seen at the Children's Hospital in 3½ years, no fewer than 31 suffered from thyroiditis. This high proportion of 40% was found in a selected group examined in hospital and it may be presumed that this includes the more prominent goitres or those giving rise to unpleasant symptoms and that the proportion of thyroiditis cases among all thyroid enlargements is probably lower. The number of children examined was too small to draw conclusions about the incidence of goitre in the entire school population of Gothenburg which was estimated to be of the order of 32,000 for this age group.

Discussion

Hashimoto's disease has long been considered rare in childhood [6, 20, 31]. However Gribetz, Talbot & Crawford [18] reported six cases of lymphocytic thyro-

ditis in girls and stated that this disease was responsible for about one-third of their cases of non-toxic goitre among preadolescent and adolescent girls. Recently this series was extended and followed up (Saxena & Crawford [33]). Loboef *et al.* [21] found thyroid antibodies in 77 of 31 children and adolescents with simple goitre in Philadelphia. Clayton & Johnson [7] reported the occurrence of struma lymphomatosa in 12 euthyroid children aged 7-16 years. Berglund *et al.* [6] studied five cases of lymphadenoid goitre in children of whom three had definite signs of hypothyroidism. In addition to these studies, cases of Hashimoto's disease in children have been reported singly or in small groups [4, 10, 4, 32] or mentioned in connection with the disease in adults [23, 25, 36, 38].

The recent papers quoted above and our own investigations point to a higher incidence of auto-immune thyroiditis among children with non-toxic goitre than was hitherto realized and it is remarkable that this was of the order of 40% in Boston and Gothenburg in spite of possible geographical variations. The striking increase in the reported incidence of this disease in all parts of the world since the advent of radiiodine and immunological tests is more likely to be the result of an increased awareness rather than reflect true increase in the frequency of this condition. It is a common experience that rare diseases become less unusual when especially looked for.

Clinical aspects

The clinical manifestations of auto-immune thyroiditis in childhood and adolescence may be considered in three

main groups representing different degrees of intensity in the auto-immune process and different stages in the evolution of the disease: (1) subacute onset of goitre with pseudothyrotoxic symptoms, (2) hypothyroidism with or without goitre, (3) non-toxic goitre without symptoms or with mild general complaints. There are transitional forms between these. The first type is seldom seen and may perhaps be regarded as an unusual variant of the disease. Juvenile myxoedema and classical Hashimoto goitre with hypothyroidism are also uncommon. In these first two groups the auto-immune process appears to be particularly intense, leading to destruction of the thyroid gland in a relatively short time. Symptomatic non-toxic goitre appearing insidiously is the commonest expression of chronic thyroiditis in children. However, when these patients are followed up over a period of years, a proportion become hypothyroid with or without compensatory increase in the size of the goitre. An 8-10 year follow up of the Boston series by Saxena & Crawford [33] showed that 17 of their 32 cases had become hypothyroid. In the present study 12 of 25 patients are mildly or severely hypothyroid before reaching adult age and in many there has been an increase in the firmness and bonyelation of the goitre pointing to a progression of the disease. It is therefore likely that most patients will develop hypothyroidism sooner or later although the process may become quiescent for many years in some instances [12].

The symptoms of mild hypothyroidism were often vague and the only complaint directly pointing to hypometabolism was feeling cold. Other symptoms such as

TABLE 7 *Course and prognosis in 35 cases of juvenile thyroiditis*

| | Number of patients |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. Goitre (before treatment) | |
| Regressed spontaneously | 1 |
| Increase in firmness and consistency | 5 |
| Progressive increase in size and firmness | 7 |
| No change in size and consistency after 1-3 years | 9 |
| Follow-up less than 9 months | 10 |
| No thyroid enlargement at any time | 3 |
| Total | 25 |
| 2. Thyroid status | |
| Hypothyroid at diagnosis | 7 |
| Later became hypothyroid | 6 |
| Remained euthyroid without therapy | 10 |
| Euthyroid when treatment started | 12 |
| Total | 25 |

on thyroid hormone a change also noticed by their parents. One girl grew well during twelve months of therapy. The mentally retarded girl experienced no clear improvement on treatment. With respect to goitre size information is available in 15 cases. An obvious decrease in size was found in nine cases of which four had been treated for only 3-4 months. In five patients no clear regression of the goitre could be registered but four of these had been on therapy for only three months. The remaining patient had an unexpected and marked doughy swelling of her goitre when seen two months after starting treatment but this later regressed and her goitre became rather small.

Incidence of thyroiditis in children and adolescents

In a goitre survey carried out on school children aged 10-16 examination of 519 boys and 595 girls revealed definite goitres in two girls and doubtful thyroid enlarge-

ments in four while all the boys had normal glands. As seen in Table 1 of a total of 72 cases of non-toxic goitre seen at the Children's Hospital in 3½ years, no fewer than 31 suffered from thyroiditis. This high proportion of 40% was found in a selected group examined in hospital and it may be presumed that this includes the more prominent goitres or those giving rise to unpleasant symptoms and that the proportion of thyroiditis cases among all thyroid enlargements is probably lower. The number of children examined was too small to draw conclusions about the incidence of goitre in the entire school population of Gothenburg which was estimated to be of the order of 3,000 for this age group.

Discussion

Hashimoto's disease has long been considered rare in childhood [6, 31]. However Gribetz, Talbot & Crawford [18] reported six cases of lymphocytic thyr-

and release of iodinated peptides from the colloid due to acinar injury by sensitized immunocytes or cytotoxic antibodies or both. There is no doubt that in the advanced form of Hashimoto's disease seen in adults, reduction of the iodine pool is the more important and indeed it represents the transitional stage of low thyroid reserve which precedes overt hypothyroidism. However in young patients, especially those with high uptake values, histological examination of the thyroid shows fairly good colloid stores and in the early stages of the disease it is probable that acid continually break up and regenerate with leakage of iodinated proteins into the circulation. This process is mirrored in the disproportion between the serum protein-bound iodine (PBI) and its butanol extractable fraction (BEI) which is a notable feature in juvenile thyroiditis [7 18 33]. The estimation of BEI presents technical difficulties which prevent the use of this valuable test in many clinical laboratories. In auto-immune thyroiditis a normal PBI does not exclude the existence of mild hypothyroidism nor can a raised PBI level be used as sole evidence of thyroid hyperactivity. Owing to the appreciable amount of butanol insoluble iodine circulating the PBI levels in children with lymphoid goitres tend to be on the high side of normal and in our series no fewer than six patients had plasma iodine values in the thyrotoxic range ($9.4-1.3 \mu\text{g}/100 \text{ ml}$). It is noteworthy that four of these six girls also had extremely high PBI¹²⁵ levels (1.33-1.57 % per litre). Usually these children are euthyroid or hypothyroid and the question of thyrotoxicosis does not arise. However it is important to rule out a

Graves constitution" by carrying out a triiodothyronine suppression test [41] in patients with a raised I¹²⁵ uptake especially in view of the frequent familial association of thyroiditis with thyrotoxicosis.

The γ -globulins do not parallel the auto-antibody levels closely and there are patients with raised globulins who have very low titres of detectable antibodies (cf. Case 19). The ESR and serum cholesterol appear to be much less commonly raised in young subjects than in comparable adults with Hashimoto's goitres and were only abnormal in children with profound myxoedema.

Cases of auto-immune thyroiditis with subacute onset may be difficult to distinguish clinically from de Quervain's disease but the low or absent iodine uptake and negative thyroid antibody tests in the latter disease separate it from auto-immune thyroiditis. Mild chronic thyroiditis may be confused with colloid goitre iodine deficiency goitre and euthyroid dysaeromonogenetic goitre: antibody tests and radiiodine results allow a firm distinction to be made in most cases.

The histological criteria of chronic thyroiditis have been discussed by many authors [19 23 37 41] and special emphasis has been placed on the use of needle biopsies [8 11 39]. The diagnostic reliability of cytologic aspiration biopsies has been studied by Nilsson & Persson [28].

The auto-immune aspects will be discussed in the second part of this study but it may be mentioned here that thyroid antibody titres were far lower than in adult patients (see Doniach & Roitt [13]). Thyroglobulin precipitin tests were nega-

tive in all cases and the highest tanned red cell titre was 1/25 000—CFT titres were moderate or high in less than one-third of the patients and in nine cases only the fluorescent tests were positive

Treatment

The treatment of choice for auto-immune thyroiditis at any age is thyroid hormone preferably L-thyroxine in full physiological dosage of 0.1–0.3 mg daily. The indication for replacement therapy is absolute in cases with hypothyroidism or those with large goitres causing pressure symptoms though opinions may differ about the institution of thyroxine treatment in every euthyroid patient with thyroiditis since it is not yet known how often the lymphadenoid process remains of low grade or goes into a quiescent phase after the first attack. In our clinic treatment was started chiefly in cases with large goitres or when the thyroid swelling became progressively firmer and irregular but also in patients with small goitres and reduced thyroid reserve as evidenced by their raised 48 hour PBI¹²¹. In view of the auto-immune character of this disease adrenal steroids have been tried in some cases and have produced a reduction in goitre size (2, 3, 20). However the disadvantages of prolonged therapy with these potent agents for a condition which in no way life threatening exclude this form of treatment except under special circumstances for a short time. Thyroidectomy is contra indicated in children and adolescents with thyroiditis as it accelerates the complete loss of thyroid function.

Summary

Thirty five cases of juvenile auto-immune thyroiditis proved by needle biopsies have been evaluated and followed up clinically and studied with radioiodine and other tests of thyroid function as well as by immunological methods. The condition is more frequent than was formerly realized. In some cases it may be diagnosed from the firm character of the goitre and the presence of hypothyroidism, but useful laboratory tests are the 48 hour plasma protein bound radioactivity after administration of I¹³¹ and antibody tests. Thyroidectomy is contra indicated in children and the treatment of choice is L-thyroxine in full replacement doses. The incidence of mild or severe hypothyroidism at the time of diagnosis is of the order of 20% but it is probable that progressive thyroid destruction will occur in the majority of patients followed up for many years.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Prof Sir Charles E. Dodds and A. C. Keele and H. Zetterlin for their encouragement. Our thanks are due to Mr R. T. Turner Warwick for carrying out thyroid biopsies in four of the London cases and for a generous supply of thyroidectomy specimens. We are pleased to acknowledge the skilled technical assistance of M. H. G. Couchman, F.I.M.L.T. and Miss Joan Lea.

This work was supported by grant from the Medical Research Council and the Mary Harries Charitable fund.

References

1. ABONDO T and GOSVALL, A.J. Improved separation of serum proteins in paper electrophoresis—a new electrophoresis buffer. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 335, 1957.
2. BERGLUND G., BROCKBERG O and KETTER STRÖM, R.: Hashimoto disease in childhood. A clinical and immunological study of 51 cases. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 49 663, 1960.
3. BLIZZARD, R. M., HAY, W., CRANFORD, R. W., ACEVO, JR. T. KYLE, M. and WENSHUP T.: Hashimoto thyroiditis. Clinical and laboratory response to prolonged cortisone therapy. *Brit Med J* 207 1015, 1962.
4. BROWN H. and MCCARTHY W. C.: Chronic thyroiditis in childhood. *JAMA* 177 118, 1959.
5. BUCHANAN, W. W., KOTLAR, D. A., ALEXANDER, W. B., CHOOKE, J., RICHMOND M. H., M. DONALD E. M. and WAYNE, E. J.: Iodine metabolism in Hashimoto's thyroiditis. *J Clin Endocr* 21 806, 1961.
6. BUCKLEY R. W.: Thyroid disease in childhood. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 17 8-82, 1957.
7. CLAYTON, G. W. and JOHNSON C. M.: Struma lymphomatosa in children. Report of 15 cases. *J Pediatr* 57 410 1960.
8. CRILE, G., Jr.: Thyroiditis. *Ann Int Med* 37 810, 1952.
9. CRILE, G., JR., and HAZARD J. B.: Classification of thyroiditis with special reference to the use of needle biopsy. *J Clin Endocr* 11 1123, 1951.
10. DAVIS, H. C. and HANSEN, E. A.: Hashimoto disease in childhood. *Amer J Dis Child* 90 173, 1955.
11. DOVIAK, D. and HEDGECOCK R. V.: Hashimoto disease: diagnostic and biochemical aspects. *Brit Med J* 4, 67, 1957.
12. DOVIAK, D., HEDGECOCK R. V. and ROETT I. M.: Human auto-immune thyroiditis: clinical studies. *Brit Med J* 4, 365, 1960.
13. DOVIAK, D. and ROETT I. M.: The chemical application of thyroid auto-antibody test in Clinical Aspects of Immunology p 611. (ed. P. G. H. Gell and R. R. A. Coombs), Blackwell, Oxford, 1962.
14. DOVIAK, D., VILSON L. and ROETT I. M.: Auto-immune thyroiditis in childhood and adolescence: II Serum antibodies in patient and parents. In preparation.
15. ELLIOTT H. H. G. and DOVIAK D.: Auto-immune thyroiditis with raised ¹³¹I uptake. *Proc Roy Soc Med*, 56 283, 1963.
16. EL KAST, D. J., DOVIAK, D. and TURNER WARWICK, R.: Serum content of thyrotropic hormone in human thyroiditis: low TSH levels with high radioiodine uptake. *J Clin Endocr* 23 810 1963.
17. FURE, W. E. and CRILE, G. J.: Lymphomatous: clinical manifestations and response to therapy. *J Clin Endocr* 1934.
18. GINSBERG, H., TALBOT N. H. and CRILE, G. J.: Goiter due to lymphocytic thyroiditis: its occurrence in preadolescent and adolescent girls. *N Engl J Med*, 250 533, 1954.
19. HAZARD J. B.: Thyroiditis: review. *J Clin Pathol*, 16 399 1963.
20. KARLBERG P. and JOHANSSON, B.: A Swedish growth chart. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 5 pp 177 137 1959.
21. LEBOWITZ O., BOYTSOVANET, A. M., STEINER, D. D. and EISENBERG W. R.: Immunologic and thyroid function studies in euthyroid children with goiter. *J Pediatr*, 58 477 1961.
22. LEWIS, R. C., DYVAL, A. M. and LIPP, A.: Standards for the basal metabolism in children from 1 to 18 years of age. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1943.
23. LINDHAY S., DARLEY M. E., FRIEDLANDER, J. YEE, O. and BOLLEY M. H.: Chronic thyroiditis: clinical and pathologic study of 254 patients. *J Clin Endocr* 13 1578, 1942.
24. LYDA, R. O.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto disease) in children. *Amer J Surg*, 94 417 1957.
25. MARSHALL, R. F. and MEISNER, W. A.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto disease). *J Surg* 151 737 1953.
26. MAYER L. P. C.: Effect of prednisolone on Hashimoto thyroiditis. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1959.
27. MCCRAY I. P. C. and MCCRAY, E. M.: Radioactive iodine studies in the diagnosis of Hashimoto thyroiditis. *Brit Med J* 4, 835, 1960.
28. NISSEN L. R. and PIERCE, P. B.: In preparation.
29. NORRIS, W. J. and POLLOCK, W. F.: Nodular goiters in children. *Amer J Surg* 90 345, 1955.
30. OWEN, C. A., JR., and MCCORMACK W. M.: An unusual iodinated protein of the serum in Hashimoto thyroiditis. *J Clin Endocr* 16 1870, 1956.
31. PIERCE, W. J. and BLACK, B. M.: Symposium on surgical lesions of thyroid goiter in children. *Surgery* 90 345, 1955.
32. RICCA J. J., MORGAN, T. G. and ADER, H.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto disease). Report of cases in thirteen-year-old boy. *Amer J Dis Child* 92 56, 1956.
33. RAKEN, K. M. and CRAWFORD, J. B.: Juvenile lymphocytic thyroiditis. *Pediatrics* 20 91 1962.

34. SKENAUER, D. A., HAZARD, J. B. DONIACH D and ROITT I. M.: Lymphoid thyroiditis: histopathologic and serologic correlations. *Amer J Path.* In press.
35. SKANKE, B. and HEDGECOCK, L.: The determination of serum protein bound iodine by alkali incineration. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 7 291 1955.
36. NEILLER P. O. CHALK, G. JR., McCULLAGH, E. P., HAZARD J. B., LEWIS, L. A. and BROWN H.: Struma lymphomatosa: primary thyroid failure with compensatory thyroid enlargement. *J Clin Endocr* 16 35, 1956.
37. STALKER, L. E. and WALTHER, O. D.: Thyroiditis. *Amer J Surg* 82 381 1961.
38. STANTLAND H., WASERMAN M. M. and VICKERY A. L.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto's struma). Review of fifty-one cases with a discussion of the endocrinologic aspects. *Arch Intern Med*, 81, 630, 1951.
39. VICKERY A. L. and HANLEY E., JR.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto's thyroiditis): observations on repeated biopsies in 16 patients. *New Engl J Med*, 264, 226, 1961.
40. WAYNE, E. J.: Clinical and metabolic studies in thyroid disease. *Brit Med J* 1 76, 1960.
41. WERNER, S. C. and BROOKER, M.: A new and simple test for hyperthyroidism employing L-triiodothyronine and the twenty four hour I^{131} uptake method. *Brit Med J* 40 137 1955.
42. WOOLNER, L. D., MCCOWANET W. M. and BRANKE, O. H.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto's thyroiditis and related thyroidal disorders). *J Clin Endocr* 19 52, 1959.

Submitted Sept. 16, 1963

Accepted Oct. 8, 1963

Department of Paediatrics
Barnsjukhuset
Göteborg
Sweden

Erythropoietin Levels in the Amniotic Fluid Particularly in Rh Immunized Pregnancies

by PER HAAVARDSHOLM FINNE

The existence of a humoral erythropoietic regulatory mechanism is now generally accepted. Hypoxia anemic or hypoxic is the primary stimulus for the production of the humoral factor erythropoietin (ESF) which again acts upon the bone marrow. The precise nature, site of production and physiological effect of the erythropoietic factor is not quite clear. Probably erythropoietin is mainly produced in the kidneys [5, 11, 18].

The relationship of erythropoietin to anemia can be elucidated to some extent by measuring the erythropoietin content in plasma [8, 9, 14, 22]. However there is some difficulty in demonstrating normal or moderately increased erythropoietin levels with the assay methods used today and not all anemic patients are found to have increased amounts of erythropoietin in their plasma [22]. The erythropoietin level and the corresponding anemia shows some difference between patients with various types of anemia [9]. Patients with a hypoplastic marrow tend to show a higher erythropoietin content than those with a hyperactive marrow. This has been taken in favor of the hypothesis that erythropoietin may be utilized by active

erythropoietic tissue. There is some disagreement between various investigators concerning the relationship between the increase in erythropoietin level and increasing severity of anemia. Some authors have found an abrupt rise in plasma erythropoietin content when the hemoglobin dropped to less than 5 g [2, 21]. But most investigators find increased erythropoietin levels also at higher hemoglobin levels [9].

It has previously been documented that erythropoietin is excreted in the urine [9, 15, 22] and there seems to be a distinct relationship between the content of erythropoietin in plasma and urine [6, 20]. It appears that when erythropoietin is detectable in urine its amount is always lower than simultaneous serum levels suggesting a renal threshold for erythropoietin excretion [9, 22].

It is well known that in Rh immunized pregnancies, in spite of greatly increased erythropoietin, the fetus may suffer hemolytic anemia, in many cases of severe degree. The anemia may be the cause of death either ante or postnatally. The prenatal diagnosis of the severity of the hemolytic disease has assumed increasing importance since it has been shown that

induction of labor before term in selected cases may be essential in reducing the mortality rate from erythroblastosis. Recent studies have shown that since the introduction of exchange transfusions in the treatment of erythroblastosis, the most outstanding problem in hemolytic disease of the newborn is that of stillbirth [21]. This makes it necessary to find indices which can give information regarding the severity of the disease. Maternal antibody titer has been used for a long time but this does not give much information as to fetal anemia. However it is a useful guide. The bilirubin and protein contents of the amniotic fluid have been proposed as useful guides, but fail in many cases [2, 24] and additional indices therefore would be of value.

Studies on cord blood from normal and anemic infants indicate that the humoral regulatory mechanism of erythropoiesis is intact also during the last part of intruterine life [3]. In erythroblastotic anemic infants highly elevated erythropoietin levels have been found in cord blood [7].

There is general agreement that the fetus passes urine into the amniotic fluid. If there is an increased erythropoietin content in the blood this may also reach the amniotic fluid when the erythropoietin level in the blood increases above the suggested renal threshold. Erythropoietin may possibly reach the amniotic fluid by other routes, perhaps through fetal membranes as this way of transport is indicated for other proteins [3, 4].

The purpose of the present paper is to report investigations carried out in an attempt to answer the questions whether anemic erythroblastotic infants excrete erythropoietin in the urine whether ery-

thropoietin occurs in the amniotic fluid in Rh immunized pregnant women, whether erythropoietin is transferred through the urine or through fetal membranes and whether the erythropoietin level in amniotic fluid has any relationship to the anemia of the fetus and the severity of erythroblastosis.

Some preliminary data concerning these problems have been published elsewhere [8].

Materials and Methods

Amniotic fluid from normal and Rh-immunized pregnant women was collected, either by transabdominal amniocentesis before term, or by rupturing the membranes during delivery or during cesarean section. Blood contaminated samples were discarded. Cord blood and blood withdrawn during the first part of exchange transfusions performed shortly after birth on erythroblastotic infants was collected, as were blood samples withdrawn shortly before delivery from some of the mothers of erythroblastotic infants. The blood samples were centrifuged immediately after collection and the plasma pipetted off. All samples were examined shortly after collecting or frozen and kept at -20°C until studied.

The erythropoietin content in plasma, urine and amniotic fluid was determined using transfusion induced polyerythremia as recipients, and the Fe^{59} incorporation into red cells as parameter. Six to 8 weeks old white mice were transfused by intraperitoneal injections of packed homologous red cells, with a hematocrit of about 80% on days 1 and 3, according to the directions by Wendell & Rowe [19]. On days 3 and 4 the test material was injected subcutaneously. Amniotic fluid and urine in daily doses of 1 ml and plasma in daily doses of 0.5 ml. On day 5 approximately 0.1 microcurie Fe^{59} dissolved in saline was injected intravenously into a tail vein. On day 8 (in a few cases day 7) the mice were anesthetized and blood was withdrawn by heart puncture pipetted

off in glass tubes and weighed. The tubes were filled with distilled water to the 3 ml mark in order to hemolyse the red cells. In each mouse the hematocrit was determined using the microhematocrit method. Each mouse was weighed at the end of the experiment and the blood volume calculated as 8% of the body weight. Mice with hematocrits below 55% were excluded.

A π II type scintillation counter (8C Autoscaler Tracerlab, Inc. Boston, Mass. USA) with an efficiency of about 1-10% p.m. per microcurie of ^{59}Fe at a background of less than 180 c.p.m. was used.

The ^{59}Fe incorporation was expressed as the total erythrocyte uptake in per cent of the injected dose and calculated as follows:

^{59}Fe per cent uptake

$$= \frac{\text{Body weight} \times 8 \times \text{sample count} \times 1000}{\text{Sample weight} \times 100 \times \text{counts injected}}$$

In a few cases the reticulocyte response curve was determined. The mice were made polycythemic in the same way as for the ^{59}Fe incorporation assay. Five days after the last blood injection, when there were no reticulocytes in peripheral blood, the test material was injected in a dose of 2 ml subcutaneously (day 0) and preparations made for reticulocyte counts on days 0, 2, 4 and 6. The reticulocytes were stained with Nile blue. Ten thousand red cells were counted in each slide. In one group of mice 1.5 ml amniotic fluid was injected and reticulocyte counts performed on days 0, 2, 4 and 6.

Results

Table 1 shows the mean ^{59}Fe incorporation in 10 polycythemic mice injected with saline and the ^{59}Fe uptake in mice injected with amniotic fluid from normal pregnancies. From the table it will be seen that no erythropoietic activity was detected in most of the samples, whilst a slight activity was possibly present in two of them.

TABLE 1 *The ^{59}Fe per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with normal saline and amniotic fluid from normal pregnancies*

| Test material | Name | ^{59}Fe uptake % \pm s.e. | No. of mice | Mean hematocrit |
|----------------|------|---|-------------|-----------------|
| Saline | | 0.6 ± 0.09 | 19 | 72 |
| Amniotic fluid | W1 | 0.4 ± 0.1 | 4 | 74 |
| | H6 | 0.9 ± 0.2 | 3 | 64 |
| | Lu | 0.5 ± 0.1 | 4 | 66 |
| | Da | 1.3 ± 0.3 | 5 | 61 |
| | F | 0.7 ± 0.3 | 5 | 67 |
| | Sh | 0.6 ± 0.2 | 4 | 70 |
| | Th | 0.8 ± 0.1 | 4 | 74 |
| | Lo | 0.8 ± 0.09 | 5 | 73 |
| | H | 0.4 ± 0.1 | 4 | 70 |
| | M1 | 1.3 ± 0.1 | 4 | 69 |

The results of the assays on amniotic fluid from Rh-immunized pregnant women and some clinical data concerning the mothers and infants, are shown in Table 2. These data indicate that erythropoietin is transferred to the amniotic fluid and that the highest erythropoietin levels are found when the fetus is most severely anemic. In two cases (Rik³ B6⁴) there was no demonstrable erythropoietin in amniotic fluid in spite of severe anemia of the newborn infant. These cases will be discussed later. This table shows the patient material on which the present and following investigations have been performed. The names of the patients in this table correspond to those in the other tables.

Table 3 shows the erythropoietin levels in cord blood, amniotic fluid and the first urine passed after birth in some of the cases. The infants' hemoglobin and reticulocyte values are also listed. It must be kept in mind that the injected dose of

TABLE 2. The percentage Fe^{59} erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid from Rh-immunized pregnant women. Some clinical data concerning the mothers and infants are also tabulated

| Name | Anti Rh titre | | Cord Hb (g) | Capillary | | Gest. age (weeks) | No. of exchange transf | Fe^{59} uptake % | No. of mice |
|-----------------|---------------|---------|----------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| | Coombe | Albumin | | Hb (g) | Ret. % | | | | |
| Pe | 1/256 | 1/256 | | 10.7 | 160 | 39 | 2 | 34.2 ± 2.8 | 5 |
| OP ^a | 1/1024 | 1/2048 | | | | 38 | | 19.2 ± 0.9 | 4 |
| Ha | 1/512 | 1/1024 | 3.5 | 5.9 | 310 | 38 | 2 | 14.5 ± 2.4 | 5 |
| Pr | 1/1024 | 1/512 | | 9.4 | 41 | 38 | 1 | 10.0 ± 2.4 | 4 |
| Ba | 1/128 | 1/128 | 4.4 | 7.5 | 280 | 36 | | 4.1 ± 0.8 | 3 |
| Joh | 1/4096 | 1/4096 | 6.3 | 12.4 | 61 | 35 | 2 | 4.0 ± 0.5 | 6 |
| J | 1/64 | 1/32 | 14.1 | 19.2 | 33 | 40 | 0 | 3.5 ± 0.9 | 4 |
| Ba | 1/256 | 1/128 | 12.3 | 16.8 | 50 | 36 | 1 | 2.8 ± 1.8 | 4 |
| Sk | 1/1024 | 1/512 | 16.3 | 19.2 | 32 | 38 | 0 | 2.7 ± 1.9 | 4 |
| Ga | 1/1024 | 1/512 | 8.3 | | | 36 | 3 | 6 ± 2.1 | 3 |
| Hj | 1/512 | 1/256 | | 12.8 | | 37 | | 2.1 ± 0.5 | 3 |
| Kv | 1/2048 | 1/512 | 12.6 | 18.0 | 78 | 37 | 3 | 2.3 ± 0.7 | 3 |
| Chr | 1/128 | 1/128 | 10.0 | 14.1 | | 40 | 1 | 2.2 ± 0.2 | 5 |
| Kr | 1/256 | 1/128 | 10.7 | 14.1 | 134 | 40 | 1 | 1.6 ± 0.3 | 3 |
| La | 1/512 | 1/512 | 14.6 | 14.8 | | 40 | 0 | 1.8 ± 0.1 | 3 |
| Lauv | 1/1024 | 1/1024 | 7.1 | | 133 | 36 | 1 | 1.8 ± 1.2 | 4 |
| Kro | 1/8 | 1/8 | 19.2 | 19.0 | | 40 | 0 | 1.4 ± 0.4 | 4 |
| B | 1/2048 | 1/512 | 14.6 | 19.0 | 50 | 37 | 1 | 1.3 ± 0.7 | 5 |
| My | 1/1024 | 1/1024 | | 12.6 | 123 | 40 | 2 | 1.2 ± 0.1 | 4 |
| Ba | 1/1024 | 1/512 | 12.2 | 19.2 | 199 | 40 | 1 | 1.0 ± 0.2 | 3 |
| Vi | 1/1024 | 1/128 | 12.1 | 14.1 | 90 | 40 | 1 | 1.0 ± 0.1 | 3 |
| Ly | 1/1024 | 1/128 | 14.6 | 19.9 | 41 | 40 | 1 | 1.0 ± 0.5 | 3 |
| Ba | 1/1024 | 1/512 | 11.7 | 16.3 | | 38 | 4 | 0.9 ± 0.2 | 3 |
| Joh | 1/1024 | 1/1024 | | 10.3 | | 38 | 2 | 0.9 ± 0.2 | 2 |
| Ki | 1/512 | 1/256 | 16.2 | 19.9 | | 40 | 2 | 0.6 ± 0.1 | 4 |
| Ba ^b | 1/1024 | 1/1024 | 9.7 | | | 39 | 6 | 0.8 ± 0.3 | 3 |
| Ny | 1/256 | 1/256 | 12.1 | 18.1 | 45 | 38 | 1 | 0.4 ± 0.1 | 3 |
| Sk ^b | 1/2048 | 1/512 | 6.0 | 7.1 | 280 | 37 | 3 | 0.4 ± 0.01 | 2 |

^a Died before blood samples were collected.

^b Meconium discharged before delivery

urine and amniotic fluid was double that of plasma. In one case (Sk^b) there was a high erythropoietin titer in cord blood and urine but no demonstrable erythropoietin in amniotic fluid. With the exception of this case there is good correlation between the erythropoietin levels in amniotic fluid, urine and cord blood.

Table 4 shows the erythropoietin content in cord blood and amniotic fluid, and the hemoglobin levels in the infants at birth. It is seen that the highest erythro-

poietin levels in both cord blood and amniotic fluid were generally found in cases with the lowest hemoglobin levels, but that the erythropoietin content may vary considerably from case to case at the same hemoglobin level.

In 5 cases the erythropoietin content in cord blood, amniotic fluid and maternal blood at birth was determined (Table 5). It is seen that the erythropoietin content in cord blood and amniotic fluid is much higher than in maternal blood.

TABLE 3 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with cord plasma amniotic fluid and urine. The hemoglobin values and reticulocyte counts are also listed. Numbers in brackets indicate the number of recipient mice. The samples are taken from Rh immunized pregnancies.

| Mice | Cord Hb (g) | Capillary | | Fe^{59} uptake % | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | | Hb (g) | Reticulocytes % | Cord plasma | Amniotic fluid | Urine |
| Ha | 2.5 | 5.8 | 310 | 19.3 ± 2.9 (5) | 14.1 ± 1.4 (3) | 22.6 ± 2.9 (2) |
| Ba | 4.4 | 7.5 | 280 | 2.5 ± 0.2 (8) | 4.1 ± 0.6 (3) | 1.6 ± 0.4 (7) |
| Sk ^a | 6.6 | 7.1 | 380 | 22.1 ± 2.1 (4) | 0.4 ± 0.01 (6) | 18.7 ± 1.3 (4) |
| Len | 1 | — | 138 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.8 ± 1.2 (4) | 0.8 ± 0.1 (2) |
| P | — | 10. | — | 26.8 ± 3.3 (6) | 34.2 ± 3.8 (3) | $26.0 \pm$ (1) |
| Ma | 8.3 | 12.1 | 123 | 3.3 ± 0.3 (2) | 1.2 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.0 ± 0.1 (2) |
| Kr | 10. | 14.1 | 134 | 13.0 ± 0.2 (3) | 1.0 ± 0.2 (3) | 1.4 ± 0.2 (2) |
| Ky | 1.1 | 18.1 | 48 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.4 ± 0.1 (2) | 0.2 ± 0.0 (4) |
| Vl | 12.1 | 14.1 | 90 | 4.4 ± 0.6 (2) | 1.1 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.6 ± 0.1 (4) |

Meconium discharged before delivery.

Table 6 shows the reduction of erythropoietic activity in amniotic fluid after it had been incubated at $40^{\circ}C$ for 20 hours with meconium, compared with another specimen of the same amniotic fluid incubated for the same time but without meconium. Although the numbers of recipient mice are small the data indicate that meconium inhibits the erythropoietic activity of amniotic fluid.

Table 7 shows the erythropoietin content in amniotic fluid from two pregnant women with antibodies persisting from earlier Rh immunized pregnancies, who gave birth to Rh-negative infants in the

pregnancies from which the samples were taken.

Fig 1 shows the reticulocyte response in polycythemic mice injected with saline amniotic fluid from normal (W) and from Rh immunized pregnant women who gave birth to erythroblastotic anemic infants (Ha, Pr). The figure illustrates that the reticulocytes reach a peak on day 3 (Ha 1.6 ml) and that this peak corresponds to that seen when standard erythropoietin is injected.

Fig 2 shows the correlation between the erythropoietin content in cord blood and the hemoglobin level in the infant. Fig 3

TABLE 4 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with cord plasma and amniotic fluid from Rh immunized pregnant women. Hemoglobin levels and reticulocyte counts are also tabulated. Numbers in brackets indicate number of recipient mice.

| Name | Capillary | | | Fe^{59} uptake % | |
|------------------|-------------|--------|--------|--------------------|--------------------|
| | Cord Hb (g) | Hb (g) | Ret. % | Cord plasma | Amniotic fluid |
| Ha | 3.5 | 5.8 | 310 | $19.3 \pm .9$ (5) | $14.1 \pm .4$ (5) |
| Bm | 4.4 | 7.4 | 290 | 3.5 ± 0.3 (5) | 4.1 ± 0.6 (5) |
| Sk ^a | 6.6 | 1 | 300 | 23.1 ± 2.1 (4) | 0.4 ± 0.01 (6) |
| Joh | 9.3 | 12.4 | 81 | 6.3 ± 1.1 (7) | 4.0 ± 0.3 (6) |
| Lau | 1 | — | 136 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.8 ± 1 (4) |
| Fr | — | 0.4 | 41 | $27.1 \pm .5$ (4) | 10.0 ± 1.0 (4) |
| Joh | — | 10.3 | — | $.7 \pm 0.2$ (4) | 0.8 ± 0.1 (5) |
| Pe | — | 10.7 | — | 96.6 ± 3.3 (5) | 34.5 ± 3.8 (3) |
| Gu | 8.3 | — | — | 15.2 ± 3.7 (4) | $.8 \pm .1$ (3) |
| My | 8.3 | 12.1 | 123 | 3.3 ± 0.3 (3) | 1.3 ± 0.1 (4) |
| B6E ^a | 9.7 | — | — | 23.5 ± 0.7 (4) | 0.8 ± 0.2 (3) |
| Hj | — | 12.9 | — | 1.3 ± 0.3 (5) | $.1 \pm 0.3$ (3) |
| Kr | 10. | 14.1 | 134 | 15.0 ± 0.3 (5) | $.0 \pm 0.3$ (3) |
| Vi | 1.1 | 14.1 | 90 | 4.1 ± 0.6 (6) | 1.0 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Nyb | 12.1 | 15.1 | 45 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.4 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Kr | 12.2 | 16.0 | 8 | 3.9 ± 1.5 (5) | $.3 \pm 0.7$ (3) |
| Bk | 12.9 | 19. | 129 | 2.6 ± 0.6 (4) | 1.0 ± 0.2 (3) |
| Bör | 13.7 | 16.8 | 50 | 3.4 ± 1.4 (4) | 2.8 ± 1.6 (4) |
| Jo | 14.6 | 19. | 33 | 10.7 ± 4.7 (3) | 3.6 ± 0.9 (4) |
| Lav | 14.6 | 14.8 | — | 0.4 ± 0.1 (4) | $1.8 \pm 0.$ (3) |

Moonham discharged before delivery

TABLE 5 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid, cord plasma and plasma from the mothers in 5 Rh immunized pregnancies. The hemoglobin levels of the infants and the mothers are also shown. Numbers in brackets indicate number of recipient mice.

| Infant | Fe^{59} uptake % | | | | | |
|--------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| | Cord Hb (g) | Cap. Hb (g) | Cord plasma | Amniotic fluid | Mother plasma | Mother Hb (g) |
| Ha | 3.5 | 5.8 | 19.3 ± 1.9 (5) | 14.1 ± 2.4 (5) | $0.3 \pm 0.$ (4) | 11.5 |
| Sk | 6.6 | 7.1 | $23.1 \pm .1$ (4) | 0.4 ± 0.01 (6) | 3.1 ± 0.8 (3) | 11.1 |
| Gu | 8.3 | — | 15.2 ± 3.7 (4) | 3.6 ± 2.1 (3) | 0.7 ± 0.2 (3) | 11.1 |
| My | 12.1 | 15.1 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.8 ± 0.1 (6) | 12.5 |
| Fr | — | 0.4 | $27.1 \pm .5$ (4) | 10.0 ± 1.1 (4) | 1.1 (1) | 11.5 |

TABLE 6 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid from a Rh-immunized pregnant woman who gave birth to an anemic infant (Pr) and one who gave birth to a non affected infant (X). To the last sample standard erythropoietin was added (Armour Pharmaceutical Company) in dose of 0.05 ml per ml amniotic fluid. To a specimen from both samples meconium was added. All samples were incubated for 20 hours at 20°C. Numbers in brackets indicate number of recipient mice.

Fe^{59} % uptake after incubation

| Name | Without meconium | With meconium |
|------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Pr | 5.3 ± 0.2 (3) | 0.8 ± 0.1 (2) |
| X | 22.8 ± 7.1 (4) | 3.2 ± 2.9 (2) |

demonstrates the relationship between the erythropoietin content in amniotic fluid and the hemoglobin level of the infant. The figures are based on the data presented in Tables 2 and 4.

Discussion

The present investigation has demonstrated the presence of increased erythropoietin levels in cord blood from anemic erythroblastotic infants. Further urine

Ha 2 ml.
Pr 15
W 2
Sal 2

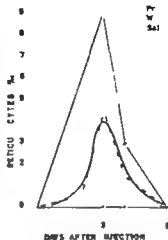


Fig. 1 The reticulocyte response in polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid from normal (W) and Rh-immunized pregnant women (Pr). Polycythemic mice injected with normal saline were used as controls. Reticulocytes were counted on days 0, 2, 4 and 6 after injection of the test material, but one group of mice had additional reticulocyte count on day 2. The curved line plotted on the figure shows the reticulocyte response curve in mice injected with standard erythropoietin [4].

produced antenatally has been found to contain erythropoietin in fetuses which had raised erythropoietin levels in cord blood. The transfer of erythropoietin to the amniotic fluid in pregnancies with anemic erythroblastotic fetuses is also

TABLE 7 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid from women with persisting Rh-antibodies from earlier Rh-immunized pregnancies, who gave birth to Rh-negative infants in the pregnancies from which the sample were taken. Husbands were Rh-positive heterozygotes.

| Name | Anti-Rh titre | | Cord Hb (g) | Capillary | | Gest. age (weeks) | Fe^{59} uptake % |
|------|---------------|---------|----------------|-----------|--------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| | Coombs | Albumen | | Hb (g) | Ret. % | | |
| M | 1/2048 | 1/1024 | — | 18.6 | 34 | 1.2 ± 0.1 (4) | |
| F | 1/256 | 1/128 | 18.7 | 19.9 | 40 | 0.7 ± 0.1 (18) | |

TABLE 4 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with cord plasma and amniotic fluid from Rh-immunized pregnant women Hemoglobin level and reticulocyte counts are also tabulated Numbers in brackets indicate number of recipient mice

| Name | Cord Hb (g) | Capillary | | Fe^{59} uptake % | |
|------|-------------|-----------|--------|--------------------|--------------------|
| | | Hb (g) | Ret. % | Cord plasma | Amniotic fluid |
| H | 3.5 | 5.8 | 310 | 19.3 ± 2.9 (5) | 14.1 ± 2.4 (5) |
| Ba | 4.4 | 7.4 | 390 | 2.5 ± 0.2 (5) | 4.1 ± 0.6 (5) |
| Sk | 6.6 | 7.1 | 380 | 23.1 ± 2.1 (4) | 0.4 ± 0.01 (4) |
| Joh | 6 | 12.4 | 61 | 6.3 ± 1.1 (7) | 4.0 ± 0.6 (6) |
| Len | 7.1 | — | 138 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.8 ± 1.2 (4) |
| Pr | — | 9.4 | 41 | 7.1 ± 2.6 (4) | 10.0 ± 1.0 (4) |
| Joh | — | 10.3 | — | 7.7 ± 0.3 (3) | 0.6 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Pe | — | 10.7 | — | 26.8 ± 3.3 (6) | 34.7 ± 3.8 (3) |
| Gu | 8.3 | — | — | 18.3 ± 2.7 (3) | 7.8 ± 1.1 (3) |
| Mv | 8.3 | 12.1 | 123 | 2.3 ± 0.3 (3) | 1.7 ± 0.1 (4) |
| BoE | 9.7 | — | — | 22.5 ± 0.7 (4) | 0.6 ± 0.2 (3) |
| Hj | — | 12.8 | — | 1.3 ± 0.3 (3) | 1.1 ± 0.3 (3) |
| Kr | 10.7 | 14.1 | 124 | 15.0 ± 0.3 (3) | 7.0 ± 0.2 (3) |
| Vi | 12.1 | 14.1 | 90 | 4.1 ± 0.6 (6) | 1.0 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Nyh | 12.1 | 15.1 | 45 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.4 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Kv | 12.8 | 18.0 | 78 | 3.9 ± 1.6 (2) | 3.7 ± 0.7 (3) |
| BA | 12.9 | 19.2 | 120 | 2.6 ± 0.6 (4) | 1.0 ± 0.1 (3) |
| Bör | 13.7 | 16.8 | 60 | 2.4 ± 1.4 (4) | 2.6 ± 1.9 (4) |
| J | 14.6 | 19.3 | 35 | 10.7 ± 4.7 (3) | 2.5 ± 0.8 (4) |
| Lav | 14.6 | 14.8 | — | 0.4 ± 0.1 (4) | 1.8 ± 0.1 (3) |

Meconium discharged before delivery

TABLE 5 The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake of polycythemic mice injected with amniotic fluid, cord plasma and plasma from the mothers in 5 Rh-immunized pregnancies The hemoglobin levels of the infants and the mothers are also shown Numbers in brackets indicate number of recipient mice

| Infant | Fe^{59} uptake % | | | | |
|--------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| | Cord Hb (g) | Cap. Hb (g) | Cord plasma | Amniotic fluid | Mother plasma |
| Ha | 3.5 | 5.8 | 19.3 ± 2.9 (5) | 14.1 ± 2.4 (5) | 0.8 ± 0.2 (4) |
| Sk | 6.6 | 7.1 | 23.1 ± 2.1 (4) | 0.4 ± 0.01 (4) | 2.1 ± 0.5 (3) |
| Gu | 8.3 | — | 18.3 ± 2.7 (3) | 2.6 ± 2.1 (3) | 0.7 ± 0.2 (3) |
| Ny | 12.1 | 15.1 | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.4 ± 0.1 (6) | 0.6 ± 0.1 (6) |
| Pr | — | 9.4 | 7.1 ± 2.6 (4) | 10.0 ± 1.1 (4) | 11 (1) |
| | | | | | Mother Hb (g) |
| | | | | | 11.5 |
| | | | | | 11.1 |
| | | | | | 11.1 |
| | | | | | 12.5 |
| | | | | | 11.5 |

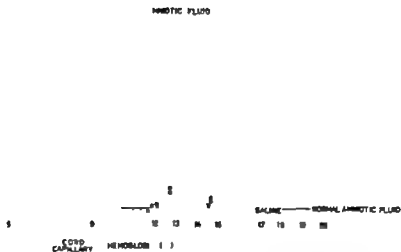


Fig. 3. The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake in polyethers mice injected with amniotic fluid from Rh-immunized pregnant women and the corresponding hemoglobin value of the newborn infant (cord or capillary blood). The figure is based on the data presented in Table 2.

Even with a definite anemia it happens that no erythropoietin can be detected by the assay methods in use today. Because of the relationship between the erythropoietin content in cord blood and amniotic fluid, one thus might expect to find variable erythropoietic activity of amniotic fluid at the same hemoglobin level in the fetus. The fetus may sometimes suffer some degree of anemia when normal or only slightly elevated erythropoietin levels in the amniotic fluid are found (appears from Fig. 3). The data concerning the question at which hemoglobin level in the

fetus with hemolytic disease one might expect increased erythropoietic activity in the amniotic fluid, are relatively few. They indicate however that the amniotic fluid may contain moderately increased amount of erythropoietin at hemoglobin level down to 10-11 g and greatly increased amounts when the hemoglobin level of the fetus drops below 10 g (Fig. 3).

In conclusion one can say that distinctly elevated erythropoietin levels in amniotic fluid indicate a fetal anemia, but moderate

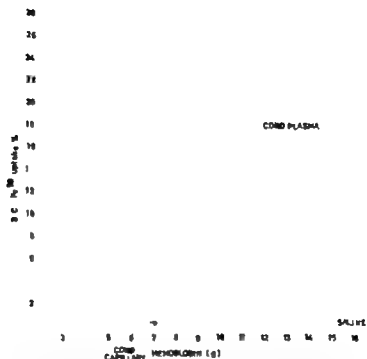


Fig. 2. The Fe^{59} per cent erythrocyte uptake in polyerythremic mice injected with cord plasma from erythroblastotic infants and the corresponding hemoglobin level in cord or capillary blood. The figure is based on the data presented in Table 4.

documented. Thus, in the fetus, as well as after birth, erythrocyte production is regulated by humoral factors.

Table 1 and Fig. 1 show that amniotic fluid from normal pregnancies contains no or only slight erythropoietic activity as measured with the polyerythremic mice method. The slight erythropoietic activity found in some cases fits in well with the observation that small amounts of erythropoietin may be demonstrable in cord plasma from normal pregnancies [7]. This is in accordance with the lively erythropoietic activity of the blood producing organs during fetal life.

There seems to be a good correlation between the erythropoietin levels in cord blood, urine and amniotic fluid (Table 3)

and also some correlation between the levels and the anemia of the infants. This means that specimens of amniotic fluid taken ante-natally by amniocentesis may give an idea of the anemia of the fetus in Rh immunized pregnancies.

In amniotic fluid from different pregnancies, variable amounts of erythropoietin are found even when hemoglobin content in fetal blood is the same. Previous investigations in adults on the relationship between the degree of anemia and the corresponding erythropoietin content in the plasma show that one may find marked differences in erythropoietin content in persons having the same hemoglobin level [9-22]. The differences are more pronounced in hemolytic than in aplastic anemia.

tion, or transfer of erythropoietin from the mother to the fetus, since no or only little erythropoietin was found in blood from mothers in whom the amniotic fluid showed a high erythropoietin content. The erythropoietin found in cord blood and amniotic fluid is of fetal origin. This is in agreement with the observations of Jacobson *et al.* [12]. They found that the embryo of the transfusion induced polycythemic mouse had the capacity to initiate and maintain erythropoiesis, even though no erythropoietin seemed to be available for the maternal circulation.

The site of formation of erythropoietin is not quite clear. Some investigations point to the kidneys as the most important erythropoietin producing organ, but it has also been shown that the kidneys are not the only site of formation [5, 10, 18]. In fetuses with renal agenesis, there is no anemia at delivery. In these infants other organs may probably produce erythropoietin, since the present and other investigations [12] seem to indicate that erythropoietin does not pass from the mother to the fetus although one can not entirely exclude the possibility that in these cases maternal erythropoietin may be responsible for the stimulation of fetal erythropoiesis.

The good correlation between the erythropoietin level in cord blood, urine and amniotic fluid indicates that erythropoietin is of the same origin in all these fluids. It must however be remembered that the injected dose of plasma is half that of urine and amniotic fluid. This means that the erythropoietin content in cord blood is always greater than in urine and amniotic fluid, and that the plasma erythropoietin is the source of that

in urine and amniotic fluid. This is also in agreement with previous investigations and the suggested renal threshold [9, 22].

Fig. 1 shows the reticulocyte response in polycythemic mice injected with saline and with amniotic fluid from normal and Rh immunized pregnant women. It is seen that the reticulocyte response is identical to that found when standard erythropoietin is injected, with the peak reached on day 3 and 4 in accordance with the 72 hours Fe^{59} uptake used in the present work, and the increased Fe^{59} uptake corresponds to elevated reticulocyte counts in peripheral blood.

Since hypoxia be it anemic or hypoxic is the stimulus for erythropoietin production, and the fetus normally lives in an environment of lower oxygen tension than the infant after birth [17, 20] one might also expect slightly increased erythropoietin formation in normal pregnancies. As mentioned before the present and previous investigations [7] on erythropoietin levels in cord blood fits in well with this. However hypoxia during fetal life for reasons other than fetal anemia may cause increased erythropoietin formation. Maternal anemia and placental dysfunction may also exaggerate the low oxygen tension and give rise to measurable erythropoietin content.

Previous investigations have shown a reduction in the oxygen carrying capacity of the red cells in erythroblastotic infants, been so of antibody coating on erythrocytes [1, 3]. This means that the anemic erythroblastotic infant may suffer a more severe anemic hypoxia than the hemoglobin level indicates, and one could expect higher erythropoietin levels in ane-

Tables 2 and 3 show that the erythropoietin content in cord blood seems to be higher than in urine and amniotic fluid in specimens obtained simultaneously. The plasma dose injected was only half that of urine or amniotic fluid. This supports the view that erythropoietin is excreted to the amniotic fluid through the urine and that there is a renal threshold for excretion. It may be concluded that the higher the erythropoietin level in amniotic fluid the more likely is it that the fetus will be anemic. The detection of small amounts of erythropoietin in amniotic fluid from some normal and Rh immunized pregnant women without any fetal anemia indicates a lively erythrocyte production in agreement with the lively erythropoiesis during fetal life. In immunized pregnancies without fetal anemia this may probably also indicate an increased rate of erythrocyte production compared with the normal fetus, sufficiently great to compensate for a supposed mild hemolytic use with increased red cell destruc-

erythropoietic activity and thus no active hemolytic disease in the fetus.

In two cases there was not demonstrable erythropoietin content in amniotic fluid in spite of severe anemia of the fetuses and highly elevated erythropoietin levels in cord blood and urine (Tables 4 and 4-B⁰ Sk²). In both cases the meconium had been discharged before delivery. Probably the meconium with its proteolytic ferments, had destroyed the erythropoietin. Proteolytic activity of the meconium was also demonstrated in gelatine tubes. Table 6 shows that incubation for 40 hours with meconium destroys the erythropoietic activity of amniotic fluid. It is known that trypsin destroys erythropoietin [13], and trypsin in meconium may perhaps account for the lack of erythropoietin in the amniotic fluid.

It is not quite clear how the erythropoietin is transferred to the amniotic fluid. However the urine is obviously one of the routes. It is known that the fetus passes urine into the amniotic fluid and it has been shown that fetal urine may contain erythropoietin. There are some reasons for assuming that the placental and cord surface may be actively involved in the passage of protein [23]. It is therefore possible that also erythropoietin may pass from fetal blood to amniotic fluid by this route. The presence of erythropoietin in amniotic fluid demonstrates that at least some of the proteins in amniotic fluid are of fetal origin. The source of the amniotic fluids is not clear. It seems to be of both fetal and maternal origin. The great amounts of erythropoietin found in amniotic fluid make it seem unlikely that there is any exchange of erythropoietin between the amniotic fluid and maternal cir-

The demonstration of increased erythropoietic activity of the amniotic fluid may be of particularly great value in cases where the mother has been immunized during earlier pregnancies, with persisting antibodies in maternal serum and where the father is heterozygous. From a practical point of view these cases are often difficult to handle as illustrated in Table 7. The table shows the data concerning two pregnancies which gave birth to normal non-affected Rh negative infants though greatly elevated antibody titres were demonstrated in maternal serum. The corresponding erythropoietin content in amniotic fluid indicates only a normal

- E. ■ Studies on erythropoiesis. XII The effect of transfusion induced polycythemia in the mother on the fetus. *Blood*, 18 644, 1960
12. LOWY P. H. and BERSOOK, H.: *Preparation and Properties of Erythropoietin Concentrates from Rabbit Plasma and Human Urine Erythropoietins*. Edited by L. O. Jacobson and M. Doyle. Grune & Stratton, New York and London, 1962.
 13. NOTES, D. W., DORR, B. M. and WILLIS, L. C. Regulation of erythropoiesis. I. Erythropoietin assay as a clinical tool. *Blood*, 20 9 1962.
 14. PILKES, S. J., MEDDEL, P. T., PASNEY B., LEVINE A. L. and GORDON A. S.: Erythropoietic stimulating extracts from anemic human subjects. *Proc Soc Exp Biol (N Y)*, 21 302, 1956
 15. PRETICE, T. C. and MIRAND E. A.: Some aspects of the relationship between plasma and urine erythropoietin. *Proc Soc Exp Biol (N Y)*, 109 414 1962.
 16. ROCKEY S. L., KANEOKA, T. and GABEK, P. V.: Perinatal oxygen tension in umbilical cord blood and amniotic fluid of normal term newborn infants. *Amer J Obstet Gynec* 84 5 1962.
 17. ROSEK, W. F. and WALDMAN T. A.: The role of the kidney in the erythropoietic response to hypoxia in parabiotic rats. *Blood*, 10 73, 1962.
 18. ROSEK, W. F., WALDMAN T. A. and HOWSON D. E.: Erythropoietin assay using iron⁵⁹ incorporation into blood and spleen of the polycythemic mouse. *Proc Soc Exp Biol (N Y)*, 109 853, 1962.
 19. SMITH, C. A. and KAPLAN E.: Adjustment of blood oxygen levels in neonatal rat. *Amer J Dis Child*, 64 843, 1961.
 20. STUNDAL, A.: Erythroblastosis foetalis. A survey of 491 consecutive cases of Rh immunization in pregnancy. *Acta Paediat (Stock)*, 52 63, 1963.
 21. VAN DYKE, D. C., LATIMER, M., LAWRENCE, J. H., GARCIA, F. J. and POLLYCOTT, M.: Relation between severity of anemia and erythropoietin titer in human fetals. *Blood*, 15 167 1961.
 22. WILD, A. E.: The association between protein and bilirubin in liquor amnii. *Clin Sci*, 21 221 1961.

Submitted Aug. 28, 1963

Accepted Oct. 2, 1963

Department of Pediatrics
Rikshospitalet
Oslo
Norway

REVIEW ARTICLE

Congenital Hypoplasia of the Exocrine Pancreas

by MARTIN BODIAN † WILFRID SHELDON and REGINALD LIGHTWOOD

The Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street, London, W.C. 1

Introduction

The purpose of this paper is to report two cases of congenital hypoplasia of the exocrine pancreas.

These cases together with those that we have collected from the literature offer a distinctive clinical picture of the condition. Pancreatic biopsy affords a means of establishing the diagnosis during life.

Case 1 G.T.

This boy was born on the 14th August 1959. He is the only child of healthy parents. There was nothing of relevance in the family or.

At 9 weeks of age he was admitted to Oldchurch Hospital, Essex, because of failure to thrive from the first days of life associated with the passage of frequent offensive motions. In examinations showed absence of tryptic activity in the stools; a normal glucose tolerance curve; and a specimen of duodenal juice contained no trypsin. It was considered that he had fibrocystic disease of the pancreas, and treatment with pancreaticin was instituted.

At the age of 27 months the boy was admitted to The Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street under the care of R.C.L. on account of diarrhoea with offensive stools, and failure to thrive. Since the original diagnosis he had had occasional respiratory infections, but these had not led to any persistent disease of the lungs.

On admission, his height at 80 cm and weight at 8780 g were both below the 10th percentile. He had slight clubbing of the fingers. Syndactyly between the 2nd and 4th toes of the right foot was noted, and the helix of each pinna was unfolded. The spleen was not palpable. The stools were pale, greasy and very offensive. The appetite was poor, partly accounted for by dental caries.

Investigations included the following.

Radiology. No persistent pulmonary changes, slight delay in development of osseous ossification centres.

Blood. Haemoglobin 69%, P.C.V. 23%, reticulocytes 0.4%, W.B.C. 4100 per mm³ with polymorphonuclears 9%, lymphocytes 90%, Platelets 70,000 per mm³. A low platelet count, and a very low proportion of polymorphs in a low total white count proved to be a persistent feature. Fuller details of the haematological data throughout the course of the disease are given in Table 1.

Bone marrow. (Slightly hypercellular.) Of 300 cells counted there were polymorphs 3, band cells 0%, metamyelocytes 4, myelocytes 4%, promyelocytes 0%, lymphocytes 28%, normoblasts, unidentified primitive cells 14%. The appearances indicated a failure of maturation of granulocytes.

Effect of treatment. When pancreaticin with a hypocellular bone marrow had been fused several therapeutic agents were tried, including folic acid, intravenous H.L., anabolic steroid and Proinsulone; only the last named seemed to have any beneficial effect on blood cell production (Table 1).

TABLE 1 *Haematological records of Case 1*

| Date | Hgb. % | P.C.V. C.L. | W.B.C. | P | L | E | M | Plate- let | Retics |
|------------------------------------|-----------|----------------|--------|----|----|---|----|---------------|--------|
| 17.11.61 | 60 | 32 | 4100 | 9 | 90 | | 1 | 70,000 | 0.4 |
| 21.11.61 | 63 | | 3000 | 8 | 90 | | 5 | 84,000 | |
| 30.11.61 | 61 | | 2780 | 5 | 89 | | 6 | 13,000 | 1.1 |
| 11.1.62 | 59 | | 2400 | 3 | 89 | | 9 | 71,000 | 0 |
| 19.2.62 | 66 | | 2500 | 15 | 88 | | 17 | 28,000 | |
| 26.2.62 | 64 | | 2900 | 23 | 88 | | 18 | 34,000 | 1.4 |
| Prednisone 10 mg b.d. | | | | | | | | | |
| 29.3.62 | 47 | | 4700 | 8 | 90 | | | 85,000 | 4.0 |
| 4.6.62 | 54 | | 4800 | | 89 | | | 101,000 | 1.9 |
| 12.6.62 | 53 | | 3700 | 12 | 83 | | 5 | 117,000 | 1.0 |
| 20.6.62 | 67 | | 4900 | 1 | 70 | | 9 | 117,000 | |
| 10.7.62 | 69 | | 4400 | 29 | 88 | | 11 | 123,000 | 5.0 |
| Prednisone 5 mg b.d. | | | | | | | | | |
| 1.8.62 | 64 | | 4000 | 37 | 43 | | 40 | 17,000 | 1.9 |
| 23.8.62 | 73 | | 4200 | 39 | 51 | | 8 | 94,000 | — |
| 10.9.62 | 67 | 33 | 3850 | 23 | 64 | | 1 | 123,000 | 1.3 |
| 22.10.62 | 64 | 33 | 4200 | L | 78 | | 9 | 120,000 | 1.8 |
| Prednisone 15 mg on alternate days | | | | | | | | | |
| 19.11.62 | 64 | 33 | 3400 | 14 | 77 | | 7 | 90,000 | 1.1 |
| 19.12.62 | 62 | 34 | 3400 | 19 | 74 | | 7 | 164,000 | 1.1 |
| 23.2.63 | 78 | | 3500 | 22 | 70 | | 8 | | |
| 4.1.63 | 87 | | 2000 | 49 | 35 | | 16 | 120,000 | 1.1 |

Serum proteins—total 8.8 g per 100 ml.

Glucose tolerance curve showed a rise of 110 mg% from a fasting level of 73 mg%.

Urine amino-acid pattern normal.

Stool showed no tryptic activity. A 5-day fat balance gave an absorption of 64%.

Duodenal juice showed no tryptic digestion: a dilution of 1 in 6; lipase 4.6 units/100 ml, amylase 156 Somogy units/100 ml.

Duodenal biopsy showed a normal mucosa.

Analysis of sweat electrolytes was carried out on two occasions and gave normal results: Na, 19 and 26 mEq/l; K, 16 and 14 mEq/l; Cl, 16 and 27 mEq/l.

It was found to be subject to respiratory and skin infections.

On 27.5.63 a biopsy of the pancreas and of the liver was carried out by Mr Harold Nixon, after consultation of R.C.L. and M.B.

On gross examination there was lipomato-

sis of the pancreas with sharply defined margin and relatively large lobules. Microscopy revealed a largely fatty stroma in which there were scanty groups of islets of Langerhans with small numbers of pancreatic ducts and a few exocrine acini. The ducts showed no evidence of mucous distension (no acinar).

The liver appeared firm, yellow fatty and on microscopy mainly perlobular macroglular fatty infiltration was observed. A slight degree of reticular fibrosis spread from the portal areas but did not surround the lobules.

Case 2 C.O.

This boy was born on May 1st 1955 at full term; birth weight 3060 g. His parents are healthy. The mother is Rh. negative. Her first pregnancy (1947) terminated in a miscarriage at 3 months. A daughter born in

1940 has remained in good health. A boy born in 1950 died at three weeks of anaemia, for which three blood transfusions had been given. He was Rh. positive; a direct Coombs test was negative. The hospital where he died reported that at autopsy the bone marrow was aplastic, but no further details are available. A second daughter born in 1932 has a congenital complete heart block, but is otherwise normal.

Christopher was first seen when 8 weeks old because of anaemia which had been noticed for two weeks. "Physiological" jaundice had lasted for 10 days. On admission the infant was pale and drowsy. The spleen was easily palpable. Investigations showed Blood group O Rh. negative-haemoglobin 36%; red cells 1.5 million per mm³ W.B.C. 6700/mm³ with polymorphonuclears 13%, lymphocytes 83%. Reticulocytes 11%. Serum bilirubin 0.8 mg per 100 ml. Bone marrow hyperactive with normoblastic erythropoiesis; there appears to be a trace of micromyelocytes, and the cells do not develop beyond the metamyelocyte stage. Fragility tests on the infant and his family were normal.

Following transfusion the haemoglobin fell 114%, but a month later had fallen to 50% rising slowly to 70% under treatment with ferrous gluconate 300 mg daily and folic acid 600 mg daily over a period of 6 weeks. However a low total white count and a poor production of polymorphs, which varied between 3 and 23% persisted through the first two years.

At five months of age the stools were persistently loose and offensive. A fat balance over a 10-day period showed fat absorption to be down to 60%, and examination of the duodenal juice showed complete absence of tryptic activity.

From that date the child has received Pancreatin with his meals.

Duodenal intubation was repeated at nine months and at sixteen months, and on both occasions there was no tryptic activity and lipase and amylase were present only in traces.

The sweat electrolytes were investigated

at nine months and at twelve months, and gave normal results (sodium 45 mEq/l and 58 mEq/l, chlorides 44 mEq/l and 51 mEq/l).

Other investigations included the following: gastric secretion; free HCl 38 mEq/l; total HCl 36 mEq/l. A glucose tolerance curve was normal, the blood sugar rising from a fasting level of 63 mg per 100 ml to 123 mg per 100 ml one hour later.

The total serum proteins (at 2½ years of age) were 5.8 g per 100 ml; the electrophoretic pattern of the serum proteins was normal, as was that of the haemoglobin and of the urinary amino-acids.

W. H. and M. B. saw the child together in consultation when he was 18 months old, and considered that in view of the history of severe anaemia at birth, the persistent splenomegaly, the normal sweat electrolytes and the absence of any lung pathology diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas could not be ruled in, although therapy with pancreatin was clearly indicated. A biopsy of the pancreas was considered to be necessary for a final diagnosis, but would have to wait until the child's general condition had improved.

The subsequent progress of the child has been one of very slow improvement, often interrupted by respiratory infections chiefly in the upper respiratory passages. These have not given rise to any permanent lung disease and, according to the mother have been no more frequent in the patient than in his sisters. Following the initial anaemia, the haemoglobin has ranged between 6 and 80%. Further haematological data are given in Table 2. The spleen remained palpable until four years of age. Although with pancreatin therapy the fat absorption has risen to between 80 and 90%, and in the intervals between respiratory infections the appetite has been at times voracious, growth remains unsatisfactory so that at 8 years of age the height at 112 cm is below the 2nd percentile and the weight at 19.5 kg is at the 5th percentile.

When the boy was 7 years of age he was considered fit enough to undergo a pancreatic biopsy and this was successfully undertaken.

TABLE 2. *Haematological records of Case 2*

| Date | Hgb. % | R.B.C. | C.I. | W.B.C. | P % | L % | E % | Monon. % | Plate- lets | Reticu- % |
|----------|-----------------|--------|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| 17.8.53 | 96 | 1.56 | 11 | 6.7 | 13 | 85 | | 2 | | |
| 4.7.53 | 116 | | | | | | | | Ample | |
| 7.7.53 | 114 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12.7.53 | 112 | | | | | | | | Rather scanty | |
| 16.7.53 | 108 | | | | 13 | 75 | 1 | 11 | Ample | |
| 19.7.53 | 104 | | | | | | | | | |
| 23.7.53 | 96 | | | | | | | | | |
| 27.8.53 | 80 | | | 5.7 | 27 | 68 | | 3 | | 1.8 |
| 2.9.53 | 60 | | | 6.0 | 7 | 91 | | 2 | Normal | |
| 12.9.53 | 78 | | | 5.8 | 8 | 89 | | 4 | | 2 |
| 27.9.53 | 83 | | | 7.9 | 22 | 78 | | | Normal | |
| 4.10.53 | 72 | | | 7.8 | 15 | 84 | | 1 | | |
| 18.10.53 | 70 | | | 9.4 | 28 | 87 | | 1 | Normal | |
| 24.10.53 | 76 | | | 7.3 | 21 | 83 | | 6 | | 1.5 |
| 7.11.53 | 83 | | | 4.8 | 7 | 89 | | 4 | Scanty | |
| 14.11.53 | 82 | | | 3.0 | 8 | 93 | | 2 | Normal | 0.5 |
| 21.11.53 | 80 | | | 4.1 | 4 | 95 | | 1 | | 0.5 |
| 18.12.53 | 94 | | | 4.8 | 9 | 84 | | 7 | Normal | |
| 28.12.53 | 84 | | | 6.8 | 9 | 96 | | 1 | | 1.7 |
| 17.1.54 | 80 | | | 6.2 | 10 | 87 | 1 | 2 | Normal | |
| 1.2.54 | 80 | | | 9.1 | 12 | 80 | | 8 | Abund. | |
| 5.2.54 | 77 ^a | | | 7.4 | 40 | 52 | 1 | 4 | Normal | |
| 16.2.54 | 68 | | | 4.9 | 71 | 18 | | 10 | 187 000 | 1.2 |

Aged 4½

by Mr Harold Nixon. The pancreas, on gross examination, was of yellow fatty appearance with sharp margins and large lobules. The liver appeared normal. The pancreatic biopsy consisted mainly of fat, in which there were several isolated but normal islets of Langerhans and humps of small duct without large ducts. One small collection of pancreatic acini was seen.

Review of the relevant literature

Prior to the publication of our two cases, 111 histologically confirmed cases of this condition have been recorded in the world literature all of whom have died. We shall follow on with references to 18 more children from the literature who are alive and on whom the diagnosis was made on clinical grounds without histological confirmation. Our two present cases are the

first instances (to the best of our knowledge) in which the diagnosis has been established histologically during life.

(A) The histologically confirmed cases

Case 1

A male aged 12 years, recorded by Opie in 1910 [11], in a moderate nutritional state without steatorrhoea or diabetes, who ultimately died of septicaemia. At autopsy the pancreas was lipomatous with a few exocrine acini. Islets of Langerhans were present. Hepatic cirrhosis was also present.

Case 2

A male who died at 11 years old of septicaemia, was recorded by Römle in 1921 [12]. The child had repeated attacks of jaundice, infections, and steatorrhoea without evidence of glycosuria. At necropsy the pancreas was lipomatous with small groups of



Fig. 1 Photomicrograph of pancreatic biopsy of Case 1-60 showing the lipomatous and exocrine hypoplasia.

Isolated exocrine acini and isolated pancreatic ducts. The islets of Langerhans appeared normal. Fatty infiltration and moderate cirrhosis of the liver were also observed.

Case 3

A male who succumbed to secondary infection at 4 years was reported by Clark &

Headfield in 1944 [3]. He suffered from gastroenteritis from the age of 5 months but there was no diabetes. At necropsy there was lipomatosis of the pancreas and fatty infiltration of the liver. No exocrine acini were found but islets of Langerhans appeared to be increased in number.

Case 4

Gross in 1926 [6] reported a male child who died of pneumonia at the age of 19 months. The infant was marasmic with respiratory infections, steatorrhea, without diabetes. The clinical diagnosis was coeliac disease. At autopsy however lipomatosis of the pancreas was found with normal islets of Langerhans but apparently complete absence of exocrine tissue.

Case 5

Hant Imann reported in 1931 [7] a boy who died at 9 years from Hodgkin disease. He had no steatorrhea nor diabetes, but was treated for tuberculous peritonitis, jaundice and Hodgkin disease. At autopsy a normally shaped but enlarged and grossly lipomatous pancreas was found which contained rare groups of exocrine acini and normal appearing islets. The presence of Hodgkin disease with renal and splenic amyloidosis was confirmed.

Case 6

The child reported by Sive in 1930 [15] died from bronchitis at the age of 2 years. This prematurely born child was marasmic and from six months of age had had severe steatorrhea with much neutral fat in the stools. Severe rickets was also present. There was no diabetes. At necropsy the enlarged pancreas was lipomatous with rare acinar clumps, with normal islets of Langerhans but without interstitial fibrosis. The head of the pancreas was incompletely developed. There was early portal cirrhosis and fatty infiltration of the liver but no emphysema or bronchiectasis were found.

Case 7

Davie [4] in 1938 described the case of a mentally deficient girl who died at the age of 4 years and 4 months. Her stools were never bulky or greasy and she suffered from habitual constipation. She had a voracious appetite. During the last two weeks of her life she had had two attacks of bronchopneumonia with diarrhea and vomiting. At autopsy she was found to have bronchopneu-



Fig. 2. Clinical photograph of Case 2 with control of same age.

monia with numerous abscesses in both lungs, and marked fatty infiltration of the liver. The pancreas was somewhat larger than normal and lipomatous. Both main pancreatic ducts were patent. Histologically the pancreas consisted mainly of adipose tissue in which were embedded a few small groups of exocrine acini and many islets of Langerhans. Pancreatic ducts and branch ducts were present.

Case 8

One of the two cases described by Whimber & Zollinger in 1945 [16]. A boy who gained well at 6 weeks. He had a slight cough at 2 weeks, then developed mucous diarrhoeal stools. Again at 5 weeks he had cough and fever and was admitted to hospital with bronchitis and loss of weight. He stayed in hospital for over one year during which time he had recurrent respiratory infections, frequent abnormal motions, failure to thrive

and intercurrent erysipelas. He died at 14½ months with the clinical diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas. At autopsy there was found chronic interstitial pneumococcal pneumonia with purulent bronchitis and pulmonary atelectasis, but without bronchiectasis. There was hepatic cirrhosis, steatorrhea and pancreatic lipomatosis, with islets of Langerhans and few remnants of acini. Some fibrous myocarditis was also found.

Case 9

The second case mentioned by Wimler & Zollinger was a girl with two older healthy siblings. She developed a cough at 4½ months as well as vomiting and diarrhoea. All three children developed pertussis and the girl was admitted to hospital with pneumonia. There the presence of fatty and malolorous stools were observed, for which she was treated. At one year of age she developed another attack of pneumonia and a fortnight later she died with the clinical diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas. At autopsy there was bronchopneumonia in both lower lobes, without bronchiectasis. The liver was fatty and the pancreas showed lipomatosis with marked trophy of acini and hyperplasia of the islets of Langerhans, the ducts being normal or increased in number.

Case 10

A 12-year old girl was labelled Case 3451 Mass. Gen. Hospital 1948 (2), and quoted by Vezelos & Watch in 1961 (10). She died from pulmonary infection having had repeated attacks of pneumonia for three years, steatorrhea from birth, abdominal pain, failure to thrive, osteoporosis and retardation of bone development. At autopsy there was emphysemas, bronchitis, hepatic steatosis, biliary cirrhosis, pancreatic lipomatosis with complete trophy of exocrine acini and normal islets of Langerhans.

The present authors have a slight reservation in accepting this case as a genuine pancreatic exocrine hypoplasia since the absence of mucosis was not definitely recorded.

Case 11

Hoover (8) in 1949 described a boy who was normal to the age of 6 months. He had virtually doubled his birth weight in 6 months. He developed nasopharyngitis there were bulky malolorous stools with fat floating on the surface. The clinical diagnosis was of coeliac disease and he was treated accordingly. At one year he aspirated food, collapsed and died. At autopsy the bronchi were obstructed by food remnants and there was oedema of both lungs. The pancreas was three times the normal weight pale and of normal shape. The exocrine acinar tissue was completely replaced by fatty tissue. The excretory ducts of the pancreas were normal and so were the islets of Langerhans.

Case 12

Bodian (1) in 1953 reported two cases of this condition. The first was a female who died at the age of 10 months. Two siblings were well, but two infants had died respectively at 8 months with gastro-enteritis and at 6 months with pneumonia. The child was admitted to hospital 8 days before her death with marked oedema, a scaly rash, enlarged liver and a marked anaemia (R.B.C. 30 000, haemoglobin 50%). She had thrived well in the first 6 months but then failed to gain and became pale with frequent malolorous motions. Terminally she received a blood transfusion, developed jaundice and died. At autopsy there was some fatty change of the liver with slight portal fibrosis. The lungs showed patchy collapse and oedema, but no mucositis. Death was from acute enteritis. The normally sized pancreas with large lobules showed groups of islet tissue, several main ducts and collection ductules, but very few exocrine acini.

Case 13

The second case reported by Bodian in 1953 (1) was a boy aged 9 years at death. He had bronchopneumonia at two weeks and was in hospital for two months. His motions were always offensive and lumpy. He failed to thrive and was almost moribund backward. A second attack of bronchopneumonia

monia occurred in the last fortnight before his death, and the clinical diagnosis was fibrocystic disease of the pancreas. At autopsy his brain was unduly small and firm. The lungs showed right-sided bronchopneumonia, no emphysema and no mucoid. The pancreas was large, lipomatous, with sharp edges and smooth surfaces. Histologically the organ consisted mainly of adipose tissue in which were scattered small islands of islets of Langerhans with few exocrine acini, normal large ducts but only few ductules. There was no pancreatic fibrosis. Both the main and accessory pancreatic ducts were serially sectioned and found to be freely patent. There was minimal fatty change of the liver, slight cortical nephrocalcinosis and no evidence of mucositis elsewhere in the body.

Case 14

Lamb & Beattyman [9] reported two cases in 195. These were of particular interest as they were siblings. Their first case, a girl, died at 9 months from sulphonamide anuria following a respiratory infection. The child was admitted to hospital aged 1 month, with the diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas. She had pneumonia, anaemia, oedema and bulky stools with steatorrhea. Trypsin was absent both from stools and duodenal juice. At autopsy the pancreas was lipomatous with complete absence of exocrine acini but normal islets and normal exocrine ducts. Liver and lungs were normal and there was no evidence of mucositis.

Case 15

This little boy (also reported by Lamb & Beattyman [9]) was the second in the same family as Case 14, born 23 months later. He was admitted to hospital as a case of imperforate anus with recto-urethral fistula. A colostomy was carried out but he died at 6 days. At autopsy there was no grossly recognizable pancreatic tissue but histological sections revealed the presence of normal pancreatic main ducts, very rare ductules and exocrine acini, some mesenchymal parenchyma with embryonic fat cells and intermediate Laquesse-Benard communications between islets and acini.

Case 16

Seifert in 1936 [13] recorded a female who died at 19½ months. There was failure to thrive from birth, and fatty stools appeared at 8 months. The child was admitted to hospital with bronchopneumonia and hemiplegia and the diagnosis was made of congenital heart disease with cerebral embolism. At autopsy there was lipomatous of the pancreas with normal islets of Langerhans, hypoplastic exocrine ducts and few exocrine acini without fibromatous of the pancreas. There was also cardiomegaly, diffuse myocardial fibrosis, steatosis and some fibrosis of the liver and cerebral softening.

Case 17

Finally Venezol & Watchi [10] reported two more cases in 1961. Their first child, male, died at 9½ years from monocytic leukaemia. He started with diarrhoea, steatorrhea, anorexia, vomiting and failure to thrive at 6 months. The duodenal juice revealed low values of lipase, amylase and trypsin. The sweat test yielded normal values. In the absence of pulmonary signs, and since the sweat test was normal, the diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas was rejected and that of an isolated pancreatic insufficiency probably due to agenesis of exocrine pancreas was made. The child was accordingly treated with pancreatic extracts and vitamins. At ½ years, however, the alimentary symptoms were overshadowed by those due to blood changes. There was a severe anaemia of 1,170,000 R.B.C. and a neutropenia of 1800. Marrow examination revealed the presence of a leukaemia. Finally the peripheral blood was invaded by monocytic leucoblasts. Remissions were obtained with Cortisone and 6-Mercaptopurine but finally after another two years, the child died with disseminated haemorrhages at 8½ years. At autopsy there was lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly and splenomegaly with widespread leukaemic infiltrations. The enlarged pancreas was entirely lipomatous with adequate numbers of islets of Langerhans and only rudimentary exocrine acini.

and ductules without apparent interconnections.

Case 13

The second case recorded by Vezelof & Watchi [10] was of a severely cachectic boy who died at 9 months of cardiac failure. He showed severe failure to thrive from a few weeks old diarrhoea and anorexia. Severe osteomalacia with several fractures of ribs developed. Because of a normal sweat test the diagnosis of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas was rejected. There was a slight hypochromic anaemia with 4,200,000 R.B.C. and 80% haemoglobin as well as a moderate leucocytosis of 10,000 W.B.C's with 51% polymorphonuclear leucocytes. One older sister had died at 13 months after a clinically similar syndrome with cachexia and terminal convulsions. An autopsy was not performed. There was no consanguinity of the parents.

Our present cases constitute Nos. 10 and 11 of all the histologically confirmed cases which we have been able to find in the literature.

(B) Review of the literature of probable cases of exocrine pancreatic hypoplasia without histological confirmation

Freudenberg [5] in 1934 reported 3 cases.

Case 1

A boy who developed diarrhoea, steatorrhea, failure to thrive and a tendency to rectal prolapse from the age of 6 months. Duodenal enzymes were twice estimated and found to be absent. He developed fairly well without pancreatic substitution therapy. He had no respiratory symptoms and no radiological evidence of pulmonary involvement. The glucose tolerance curve was abnormally high. At 20 ears of age he was relatively well with slight digestive trouble and some muscular weakness. Mentally he was normal.

Case 2

A 1 months old girl was admitted to hospital because of flat bulk, stool from

early infancy. There was a good appetite but abdominal enlargement and failure to thrive. Three months previously she suffered transiently from a cough. Duodenal enzymes were absent. The glucose tolerance curve was high and there was some glycosuria. She was observed for 4 months. There was no evidence of respiratory infection or of bronchiectasis.

Case 3

A 4 year old boy was seen on account of attacks of abdominal pain and vomiting, bulky and malodorous stools, and pancreatic achilia except for low values of amylase. He was observed for 4 months and had never shown any respiratory symptoms or signs.

These three children were diagnosed clinically by Freudenberg as instances of hypoplasia of exocrine pancreas, and reported by him as such. Histological proof of this diagnosis was not obtained.

Shwachman, Diamond, (Chick) and T. B. Khaw [14] reported on "Pancreatic Insufficiency and Bone Marrow Dysplasia, A New Clinical Entity" at the 27th Annual Meeting of the American Pediatric Society Inc. in May 1963, an abstract of which has been published. They here recorded previously unreported syndrome consisting of pancreatic insufficiency failure to thrive neutropenia and galactosuria observed in five children, two of whom were siblings. The original diagnosis was fibrocystic disease of the pancreas, but the lack of jaundice in involvement and repeated normal sweat test excluded this disease. The duodenal fluid showed no activity for trypsin, lipase or amylase but its viscosity was normal. The children, two females and three males ranged in age from 7 months to 9 years. The disease manifested itself initially between 5 and 10 months of life. There was diarrhoea, failure to gain weight, pancreatic achilia and leucopenia as a constant haematological manifestation, being noted on the first day.

Life in one patient. Bone marrow examinations revealed hypoplasia of all bones in varying degrees, the oldest children showing the most marked changes. These children had



Fig. 3 Photomicrograph of pancreatic biopsy of Case 60 showing similar features to Case 1

thrombocytopenia and in one there was mild anaemia. Serum iron, folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ levels were normal. Galactose was present in the urine in traces, but galactose tolerance curves were normal. None of the patients demonstrated steatorrhoea despite the absence of pancreatic lipase. Duodenal mucosal biopsies revealed normal histological findings. Pancreatic replacement therapy

has resulted in satisfactory weight gain only in two of the patients. Therapy with Cortisone, vitamin B₁₂, B₆, folic acid, vitamin E, fresh plasma, riboflavin, methionine, tryptophan and pancreatic extract have not corrected the haematological abnormalities.

One patient, 18 months old male who has an affected brother aged 6, has in addition to pancreatic insufficiency and neutro-

penia, eczema, thrombocytopenia and recurrent infections.

Shwachman and his collaborators state that "the inter-relationship of the pancreatic insufficiency, the neutropenia and the galactosuria remains obscure, but it seems to the present authors that pancreatic biopsy might well have shown the presence of pancreatic exocrine hypoplasia.

Conclusions

The literature of histologically established cases of congenital pancreatic lipomatosis with hypoplasia of exocrine elements appears to consist of 13 cases, to which we have added another two—the first children in whom the diagnosis has been established during life by means of pancreatic biopsy. All the other cases had come to autopsy.

We have also collected from the literature another 8 cases that clinically correspond to this entity but in them there is no histological confirmation.

The clinical diagnosis is suggested by digestive troubles from early in life comparable to those that occur in fibrocystic disease of the pancreas and the finding of pancreatic achylia. The sweat test is, however, normal and there are often no respiratory troubles. Sometimes however these children have episodes of pneumonia, very rarely with any residual emphysema and at autopsy there is no evidence of mucoids.

There is a curious association, which is optional but not obligatory, with haematological disturbances of varying severity including anaemia, thrombocytopenia and

neutropenia associated in some instances with evidence of hypoplasia in the bone marrow of the corresponding cellular elements. The clinical onset of these haematological changes may sometimes date from birth or it may appear later in life.

There is a tendency to a familial incidence in siblings. This has been established in two siblings and suspected in two more pairs of siblings. Bearing this in mind, and on account of the early clinical onset of symptoms, and the absence histologically of any evidence of regression or reactive changes to regression in the pancreas, the explanation may perhaps lie in a congenital malformation of the pancreas on a genetic basis. This may in some cases be coupled with a relative failure of various bone marrow elements.

The prognosis would appear to be better than that of fibrocystic disease of the pancreas, with which the condition is most likely to be confused.

We would like to emphasize that the decision taken at operation to perform a biopsy should be determined by the presence or absence of a lipomatous on gross examination. We think that a biopsy of such a lipomatous pancreas is without undue danger since the development of a fistula in the absence of enzymes is unlikely.

Acknowledgement

We wish to express our thanks to Mr Harold Nixon for performing the biopsies on our two cases, and to Mr Derek Martin and his staff for the illustrations.

References

1. BODIAN M.: *Fibrocystic Diseases of the Pancreas*. Heinemann Ltd. London, 1933.
- Case Records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 2481., *New Eng J Med*, 39 973, 1948.
2. CLARKE, C., HADSFIELD, G. Congenital pancreatic disease with infantism. *Quart J Med*, 17 358, 1944.
3. DAVIS, T. H.: Massive replacement of the pancreas by adipose tissue. *J Path Bact*, 44, 473, 1932.
4. FREUDENBERG, E.: Zur Frage der Hypoplasie des Pankreas. *J Pediatr*, 183 321 1954.
5. GROSS, F. *Jb Kinderheilk* 112 350, 1925.
6. HANTELHANN W. Frittsucht und Atrophie der Bauchspeicheldrüse bei Jugendlichen. *Firsch Arch Path Anat* 242 830 1931.
7. HOTER, A.: Lipomatous pseudohypertrophy of the pancreas with correlative lesions of exocrine tissue. *J Path Bact* 61 93, 1949.
8. LUCHS, G. and BRATTMAN W.: Hypoplasia of the exocrine tissue of the pancreas. *J Path Bact* 64 879 1952.
9. KREKOTYK CW and WATCHEL, M. L.: Hypoplasia congenitale hypomatosa du pancreas exocrine chez l'enfant. *Arch Franc Pediatr* 11 1133, 1961.
10. OTTE, E. L.: *Diseases of the Pancreas Its Causes and Nature*. Ed. — J. B. Lippincott Co. Philadelphia. 1910.
11. RÖSSLER, R.: Beitrag zur Kenntnis der gesunden und der kranken Bauchspeicheldrüse. *Beit Path Anat* 69 163, 1911.
12. SCHIFFERT G.: *Die Pathologie des kindlichen Pankreas*. Verl. Georg. Thieme, Leipzig 1950.
13. SHW CHAN H., DIAMOND L. H., ORKI, F. A. and KRAW KOK TAY: *Annals Pathol Soc, Ind.* 73rd Annual Meeting May 1963. Abstracts.
14. STWE, S. A.: Über die exokrine Funktion des Pankreas und die Folgen ihres Wegfallens: ein Fall von fast totaler Agamie der exokrinen Teile des Pankreas. *Deutsch Arch Klin Med*, 173 339 1933.
15. WISSELER, H. und ZOLLINGER, H. U.: Die familiäre kongenitale Pankreasfibrose mit Bronchiektasen. *Helv Paediat Acta Suppl* 1 1 2, 1945.

Submitted Sept 16, 1963

Accepted Oct 9 1963

The Hospital for Sick Children
Great Ormond Street
London, W.C.1.
England

PROCEEDINGS OF PEDIATRIC SOCIETIES

Finnish Pediatric Society

Meeting October 26 1962

C. E. Räihä The possibilities of reducing perinatal mortality

Published in *Acta Paediatr Fenn* 9 18, 1963

M. Lelang (Paris, France) Generalized cytomegalic inclusion disease in the newborn infant

Published in *Ann Paediat Fenn* 9 112, 1963

Meeting February 23 1963

A. Halla The need of pediatricians in Finland in the near future

There are fewer physicians in Finland than in the Scandinavian countries, 1 to 1400 inhabitants. This indicates an obvious shortage of physicians in this country. There are 115 pediatricians in Finland 80% of which are men. Sixty of those (43%) are in Helsinki and only 6 (38%) live outside the three biggest cities of Helsinki, Turku and Tampere.

Of the pediatricians 3 are engaged in hospital work 3 in preventive medicine and 13 are mainly engaged in private practice. There are at present 6 training posts in university hospital and the period of required training between 3 to 4 years. In addition to this complete training program is provided by the Helsinki City Pediatric Hospital (Aron) and the biggest of the central hospitals, that is Tampere. Partial training can be obtained at some central hospitals when the number of pediatric beds exceed a certain minimum and the chief pediatrician fulfills requirement of academic standing. Of such partial training posts there are at present 15. To complete their pediatric training physicians from these places have to serve for some time at a university pediatric department. Before final certification everybody has to pass an examination.

Under present circumstances 6 to 7 pediatricians qualify yearly. When the possibilities of the partially training hospital are fully used an additional 3 will qualify yearly. At the moment 18 pediatric posts are vacant and several new ones will be established in the near future. Presumably that as before 1/3 of pediatricians will go into hospital work these vacant posts can be expected to be filled after about 5 years. Considering all factors the number of working pediatricians in Finland in 1980 should be about 350, which would be enough to fulfill the needs of the hospitals but not of the other sectors of pediatrics not at least within the present scope of training programs.

I. I. Laksanen Social pediatrics

History The first to examine the relationship between society and medicine was J. P. Frank in 1780. J. Guérin, in 1819, was the first to use the concept of social medicine. In 1911 M. Morel and G. Torgler published a comprehensive study of social medicine. Though some work on social pediatrics was published after the First World War it was not until after the Second World War that social pediatrics has evolved as an independent branch of investigation. The first study based on a social pediatric aspect was published by F. Grundy in 1919.

Definition: Social pediatrics is concerned with all the environmental factors which influence the health of children and applies the results of its investigations to further the health of children. Social pediatrics thus includes both the pediatric and social components. In social pediatrics social factors are found to be in causal relationship to the illness of children: social etiology.

Methods of investigation. The medical part employs all the methods of medicine which at bottom are based on empirical methods of physics and chemistry. The sociological part uses sociological methods like statistical and scalar measurements. The methods of medicine and sociology are coming closer to each other nowadays because medicine employs statistical methods to an increasing degree and sociology strives towards empirical methods of study.

Formation of theory: This is done in social pediatrics much in the same way as in other branches of science based on empirical research. Intuition provides hypotheses on

which a plan of investigation is based. According to this experiments are performed to verify the hypothesis. From the experiment rule is obtained by way of induction. Rules are formed into theory from which new rules are deduced. These in turn give rise to new experiments. Research thus becomes cumulative: each study is linked to a theory and adds to its stability. In this way a single study grows in scope.

Own investigations: As an example of a study in relation to theory the author's investigation of social factors affecting hospitalization of children was shortly reviewed (*Acta Paediatr Fenn* 1963).

Importance of social pediatric research in present-day society: Improvement of public health has become an increasingly important goal of social politics. In striving for this public health officials need the help of social pediatrics to provide them with the factual information on which to base their action in improving the conditions for healthy development of children.

Meeting March 28 1963

E. Rossi (Bern Switzerland): Disturbances of protein metabolism in childhood

Meeting May 11 1963

E. Lorkonen: Nutritional needs of children

R. L. Takkunen: Diet and state of health of rural Finnish children

Results are presented of a field study carried out in a rural community of southern Finland where 11 the mothers (127) were interviewed and all their children under the age of 15 (30%) were examined. The interviews were conducted so as to find out the consumption of various foods within the families and the eating habits of the children as well as the level of social enlightenment and susceptibility to dietary reform of the mothers. Information on consumption revealed that the caloric intake of this rural population was adequate but the diet was not varied enough. Conspicuous were the abundant use of wheat foods and grain the

spare use of vegetables. When the mean supply of trace elements and vitamins were calculated, it appeared that the iron supply was barely sufficient for the adult but insufficient for the children. Also the supply of vitamin-C was scarce. Fault were found in the eating habit of the children, sparse breakfast consisting mainly of carbohydrates may impair the efficiency of school-age children. Even the meals provided at school were one-sided and deficient in calories.

The physical growth of the children within normal limits. In the few instances where a child was retarded in growth no nutritional causes could be detected. Anemia was frequent: in 46% of preschool-aged and 20% of school-aged children. Its presence was distinctly correlated to bad eating habits and a sparse iron content of the food.

Only half of the children had received vitamin D prophylaxis. In spite of this only 18 showed sign of past or present rickets. In many children who were in a phase of rapid growth and approaching puberty an elevated alkaline phosphatase was found.

Finally sociological factors influencing the health of the children were discussed.

O Wass Håckert Nutrition of secondary school pupils

H Acrelius Iron-deficiency anemia

J Viikari Prophylaxis of ricket

To be published in *Doedra* in 1961

Meeting June 8 1963

R. Lagercrantz (Stockholm Sweden) Ulcerous colitis in children and adolescents

During the last 12 years 400 children with ulcerous colitis have been treated or examined at the *Children's Clinic of Karolinska Sjukhuset* in Stockholm. In a part of these Broberger & Perlmann found both humoral and to lymphocytes bound autoantibodies against antigen from sterile mucosa of the colon. Investigation of the relationship of this antigen to bacterial antigen and the presence of "conventional antibodies" in the (usually elevated) serum γ -globulin of the patients is in progress. Allergic symptoms are frequent in these children and their relatives, some of the patients are allergic against foods, half of them have had symptoms in organs other than the digestive tract most commonly joints, skin, liver, kidneys and mucous membranes. Most of these improve with corticosteroid treatment. The disease is therefore regarded rather as an allergic than an infectious one possibly an "immunopathy". Infection nevertheless probably influences the course of the disease primarily as well as secondarily.

Medical therapy today is manifold and makes improvement possible in most cases. Well-controlled studies have proved corticosteroid-treatment valuable in systemic as well as local administration. Acute fulminant cases (about 5% in our material) and chronic invalidating cases with protracted dry loquency (about 15%) require surgical treatment. When the duration of the disease exceeds about 10 years the risk of a complicating cancer of the colon is high in a selected material of 45 cases 8 developed this cancer and 7 of them died. Thirty five of our patients have had colectomy 10 (with only slight rectal involvement) had an ileorectal anastomosis performed in addition the rest a permanent ileostomy which they have tolerated surprisingly well. One patient died in connection with the operation the others are all rehabilitated.

S. Ohman A case of mercury poisoning caused by a skin ointment

H Hallola Hypercalcemia as a cause of dystrophy

L. Kastero Hietala

The Pediatric Society of Southern Sweden

Meeting October 6 1963

S. Widel Neonatal Paroxysmal Tachycardia with Pre-Excitation

A 14-day-old boy who is now 3 years old suddenly became dyspnoic and cyanotic. Examination revealed pronounced tachycardia. The heart was soon normal and the patient became symptom-free. The ECG showed marked P wave in lead II but was otherwise normal for his age. The patient was given digitalis and the pulse fell to a

normal rate. The heart was soon normal and the patient became symptom-free. The ECG showed marked P wave in lead II but was otherwise normal for his age. The patient was given digitalis and the pulse fell to a

At the same time the ECG showed pre-excitation, i.e. shortening of P-Q time and QRS complex with delta wave. This persisted even after the digitalis was discontinued. One week later the patient had a new attack of tachycardia and labial cyanosis. The ECG showed a ventricular rate of 320 and the intervals between the ventricular complex in leads II and III exhibited undulating deformations as in atrial flutter. H was given digitalis and after a few hours the pulse became normal. The ECG showed pre-excitation as before. The patient received digitalis for 6 months. A soft systolic murmur was heard now and then in the left I I near the sternum. The size and form of the heart were normal roentgenologically. Even after discontinuance of the digitalis the patient remained symptom free except for a brief attack of tachycardia at 8 months of age. This caused only little pallor and exhaustion.

In the case of Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome the pre-excitation did not appear before the patient had his first attack of paroxysmal tachycardia (p.t.), but thereafter it has remained unchanged. It is known that digitalis facilitates the occurrence of pre-excitation, whereas quinidine counteracts this. On account of the high heart rate it is difficult to determine from the ECG whether this is a case of atrial flutter without heart block or p.t. of another type. Atrial flutter is rare in p.t. but more common the younger the patient. Prenatally diagnosed p.t. has in more than half of the cases been proven to be atrial flutter. Therapy, prognosis and probably also etiology are the same in both conditions.

H. Heidebrand. Turner Syndrome with Unimpaired Ovarian Function

A 10-year-old girl exhibited many malformations characteristic of Turner syndrome. She had normal menstruation and some development of secondary sexual characteristics after the menarche at 11 years of age. From 18 years of age she has had amenorrhea. Hormone analyses of the urine

after the onset of amenorrhea showed low total gonadotropin values and estrogen in biologically measurable amounts. Antex gonadex tolerance gave very high values of estrogens in the urine determined according to chemical method, indicating that she had functioning ovarian tissue and moreover produced menstruation. The background of her amenorrhea is thus probably hormonal insufficiency at high level for some obscure reason. The patient had been treated about 5 years ago under the diagnosis of meningo-encephalitis. She was judged bromatin positive. However chromosome determination revealed 46 chromosomes and normal female karyotype.

The question of whether she belongs to the classical Turner syndrome depends on how this is defined. If one means by this women dwarf growth without any known cause and with a varying number of somatic malformations, then among these there are individuals with fully or partially unimpaired ovarian function. In the few such cases described chromosomal aberration has usually been present. However in our patient we cannot completely exclude mosaicism or non-identifiable defects in the X chromosomes.

S. Wiedell. Idiopathic Hypoglycemia (McQuarrie syndrome)

A twin boy with birth weight of 2479 g who is now 3½ years old, had at 2 and 3 days of age repeated attacks of cyanosis and convulsions, each lasting about 5 minutes. At 10 days of age bleeding was observed in the tress of both eyes. Gradually bilateral impairment in sight developed. At 11 months of age the boy had a convulsion in connection with nasopharyngitis with fever. The following year similar attacks occurred with intervals of 1-4 months some at the same time as acute infections others without any such connection. The EEG was normal for his age. Treatment with anticonvulsant drugs did not have any noticeably preventive effect against these attacks. At 2½ years of age the blood sugar during an attack was found to be 0.01/100 ml. The fasting blood

sugar during the following days was 0.06. Glucose tolerance and adrenalin test gave normal elevation of the blood sugar. In peroral leucine tolerance test no decrease in the blood sugar occurred. In insulin tolerance test the blood sugar fell from 0.06 g/100 ml to 0.014 g and lay at 0.017 g even after hours. Thus there was probably some relative insufficiency among the normal insulin antagonist in the adrenals.

The patient's convulsions occurred mostly in the morning before he had got anything to eat. At bedtime he had q. i. c. regularly been given sweets. It seems probable that this increased the risk of post-hyperglycemic fall in the blood sugar thereby being a concomitant cause of the convulsions. A protein-rich meal without sweets was prescribed as well as an extra meal immediately upon awakening in the morning. With this regimen the patient has been free from attacks for about one year. The patient's psychic and motor development has been delayed in comparison to that of his twin brother. During the past year some improvement has occurred.

S. Hildell: Calcified Cerebral Aneurysm

An 11-year-old boy who for several years had had attacks of nausea and unpleasant sensations of smell became ill with pains over the right eye, nausea, vomiting and a temperature of 38.5°C. Roentgen examination revealed two calcifications in the middle lobe, the larger one about 2 cm. The liquor contained 16 mononuclear cells/mm³ after two weeks this number was reduced to 6. The symptoms disappeared after about one week. Encephalography showed that the calcification came from a tumor in the upper anterior part of the temporal lobe. Here the A. cerebri media dexter was occluded. On operation the larger calcification was found deep in the lower 8th lobe. It

was considered inextirpable. Toxoplasmosis examination showed no admittance to the hospital. The test 1/30 weeks later was 1/250. Complement fixation test was negative. Echinoscoccus test was also negative. Possibly there had been an aneurysm which had ruptured and calcified. The patient was given phenanthol and has been symptomatically.

S. Hildell: Eosinophilic Granuloma

A 1-year-old boy developed in connection with a blow on the right side of the head swelling of the forehead which lasted for 3 months. Roentgen examination showed destruction here and a similar smaller area on the left side. The skeleton was otherwise quite normal. On biopsy it was shown to be an eosinophilic granuloma. After 3 months the changes had almost completely disappeared.

J. Carlsson: Celiac Disease in Diabetes Mellitus

A 10-year-old girl who had developed diabetes mellitus at 4 years of age had attacks of unconsciousness with convulsions. The serum calcium was 1.1 mEq/l. The girl excreted with the feces 45 g fat/24 hr (normally less than 4 g). Xylose tolerance test showed excretion of 2.7 g (normally 4.5 g). Film test showed the presence of triphasic film. She was treated with a gluten-free relatively low fat diet. The steatorrhea disappeared, but the patient lost weight and the serum calcium remained low. Later hemorrhage occurred which proved to be due to A-splenic anemia. — The girl is now free from high amounts of unsaturated fat in her feces and condition is much better than it has been for a long time. The serum calcium has become normal.

Per Karlén and Valdemar

BOOK REVIEW

Jan Lindsten. The Nature and Origin of X Chromosome Aberrations in Turner Syndrome

Almqvist & Wiksell Stockholm, Göteborg Uppsala, 1963 167 p

A baby girl presenting oedema of the feet and perhaps some minor malformations may represent the first indication of a profound biological alteration manifested later in life as Turner syndrome. An examination of the buccal smear will in most cases reveal that the sex chromatin body normally expected in a female is lacking and karyotyping will show the typical XO sex chromosome constitution. In Dr Lindsten's material comprising 57 patients with the clinical diagnosis of Turner syndrome, the cytogenetic findings were as mentioned in 35 cases. It could be shown by studies of X-linked characters that the single X chromosome may be either maternal or paternal in origin. Sex chromatin positivity on the other hand, does by no means indicate normal sex chromosome constitution, since there is wide variation in type and distribution of the chromosomal abnormality. Mosaicism may be present, indicating disturbance in one or more post-conceptual cell divisions. Moreover one X chromosome may be structurally altered. In the monograph three types of such abnormal X chromosomes are described, and a close relationship is shown in the area and DNA content of the sex chromatin body to the size of the abnormal X. In one of the cases no deviation from an apparently normal female karyotype could be demonstrated. This might seem somewhat disturbing at first glance and brings up some problems of definition and selection of patients. Cases of this type may indicate from one aspect that the clinical Turner syndrome and the

existence of grossly defective X chromosome pair do not exactly cover each other. The converse situation, in which one X is normal or lacking in an apparently normal woman with or without menstrual irregularity is one which could perhaps be elucidated by a large scale study on unselected patients, as the author points out. In addition to the many contributions to the cytogenetics of Turner syndrome, Dr Lindsten has attempted to present as complete as possible clinical account of his case material. The result is that he has accumulated information valuable not only for research workers in gynaecological endocrinology but also for clinicians in different fields concerned with this general category of patients. Among these the paediatrician should be particularly familiar with the different varieties of Turner syndrome and their manifestations in different pre-pubertal age groups. In Dr Lindsten's monograph the interested paediatrician will find all the necessary information in an enjoyable logical and scholarly presentation which includes an abundance of excellent illustrations.

Per Zetterqvist, Bromma

Congenital Defects

The International Medical Congress, Ltd Lippincott, Philadelphia and Montreal, 1963 261 pages.

The volume gives a record of the first Inter American conference on congenital defects in 1961, with contributions from excellent scientists and clinicians. Improvement in the care of inborn errors is an important problem. Knowledge about their causes and the possibilities of their prevention is still more important. A campaign against congenital defects must begin with the study of developmental biology. In summarizing

what we know about genetic and structural defects or in other words, how little is known, a conference like this intends to stimulate scientists and clinicians. In this volume the scientific studies of some defects and their clinical manifestations are excellently reviewed. A few clinical papers are of less value. Especially the presentations of the molecular basis of genetic defects, abnormal hemoglobins, galactosemia, gargoylism, defects in amino acid metabolism and chromosomal abnormalities are of great interest also to clinicians.

N. O. Eriksson Stockholm

E. Rassi (Ed) *Neue Probleme bei Infektionskrankheiten des Kindes*. S. Karger Basel, New York, 1964 DM 24.—

This is a report from a Swiss postgraduate course in pediatrics. Most chapters are written in German. The first one deals with cur-

rent views on humoral and cellular immunity. O. Gærell reviews the classification of human viral diseases. Other chapters deal with respiratory infections caused by adenovirus alone or associated with bacteria. H. Bloch discusses the best prophylaxis against tuberculosis. He recommends BCG vaccination; the reviewer is not surprised. The loss of the tuberculin test as a diagnostic tool is once more said to be a serious drawback of general BCG vaccination. Is this seriously endangered a child's health? In a chapter on staphylococcal infections in childhood O. Tins deals mostly with severe pulmonary infections. The epidemiology and other clinical syndromes are hardly mentioned. The concluding two chapters deal with brucellosis and some uncommon infectious diseases of childhood. This book can be recommended for the postgraduate teaching of pediatricians and general practitioners.

Rutger Lagercrantz, Stockholm

ANNOUNCEMENTS

The Second Afro-Asian Congress of Pediatrics

The Second Afro-Asian Congress of Pediatrics will be held in Jakarta, Indonesia, from the 10th to the 14th of August 1964. All communication regarding the Congress

should be addressed to: Dr Sutetjja, Pediatric Department Medical School University of Indonesia, 6, Salemba, Jakarta, Indonesia.

International Congress of Paediatric Surgeons

The British Association of Paediatric Surgeons will be holding the 11th International Congress under the Presidency of J. J. Mason Brown, at Rotterdam, the Netherlands, from 21 August to 4 September 1964. All corre-

spondence in connexion with the Congress should be addressed to the Secretariat of the 11th I.A.P.S. Congress, Holland Organizing Centre, H. Lange Voorhout, The Hague, the Netherlands.

Institute for the Care of Mother and Child (Pediatric Head, Dr. K. Poláček)
Prague, Czechoslovakia

The Significance of Blood 'Excess Lactate' in the Newborn Period

by K. ZNAMENÁČEK and H. PRIBYLOVÁ

On the basis of investigation of certain parameters of respiratory metabolism in healthy newborn infants during the first 3 days of life [6] we concluded that blood "excess lactate" calculated by a method modified from Huckabee [1], represents a suitable criterion for the adequacy of postnatal respiratory metabolism. Similar determinations were carried out in newborn infants following complications of pregnancy or delivery and asphyxia, in order to verify the significance of blood excess lactate.

Methods

The methods used were those previously described [6]. Determinations of lactate and pyruvate in capillary blood, oxygen consumption, blood glucose and respiratory rate were carried out in several groups, as well as in individual infants from birth to 3 days of age. Chief attention was directed to blood lactate, calculated excess lactate and oxygen consumption.

Results

It was confirmed that the level of lactate in cord blood is dependent upon the length of labor and the further course of blood lactate was followed in three groups of newborn infants differing in manner of delivery and postnatal clinical condi-

tion. Six infants born by selective Cesarean section (before onset of uterine contractions) and 10 infants delivered by section on the indication of fetal distress were compared with a control group of 45 infants with normal deliveries (Fig. 1).

Blood lactate levels fell relatively rapidly in the control group. Lactate in these infants was assumed to be primarily exogenous, transferred transplacentally from the mother. Infants delivered by selective section in the course of the first 3 days were never found to have increased lactate levels. In contrast, infants in whom signs of intra-uterine hypoxia led to emergency section tended to have persistently high blood lactate which slowly returned to normal. Blood lactate in these infants was taken to represent endogenous sources, resulting from metabolic activity of the hypoxic infant pre- and postnatally as would be indicated by the work of Vedra [4].

Direct evidence for the endogenous origin of blood lactate was obtained during the course of two periods of gross hypoxia: a newborn infant with a severe irreparable congenital malformation (Fig. 2) At the height of the asphyctic attack oxygen was given in high concentration. It was possible to observe the entire



Fig. 1 Lactate level in capillary blood of healthy newborns after normal delivery and pregnancy (thick line), after selective Cesarean section (thin line) and after Cesarean section for fetal distress (dashed area) in the first 3 postnatal days (P = birth). Values from maternal venous blood (II) obtained at the height of the 2nd stage of birth.

course of lactate and pyruvate blood levels with the onset and regression of hypoxia during periods of cyanosis gasping respiration and eventual apnea. The

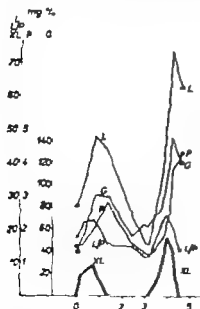


Fig. 2 The changes in blood lactate (L), glucose (G), pyruvate (P), the lactate:pyruvate ratio (L/P) and excess lactate (XL) during two apneic crises in a newborn over the course of 5 hrs. At the height of the crises (max. XL, circ.) oxygen was given by mask.

attacks were terminated by oxygen inhalation. Blood lactate rose to frankly anoxic levels and pyruvate rose but persisted at high levels for some time after oxygen administration and decrease in lactate. As can be seen in Fig. 2, the absolute level of lactate which even outside the discrete frankly asphyctic episodes tended to be at "hypoxic" levels was not in itself in close correlation with the clinical condition while the L/P ratio and excess lactate reacted rapidly and sharply to the hypoxic state and returned to normal promptly with oxygen administration.

It is of interest that in infant born by selective Cesarean section in whom excess lactate was low significantly lower respiratory rates were found (Fig. 3).

Comparisons were made between the levels of excess blood lactate and oxygen consumption. Observations in three groups of infants with different levels of excess lactate showed that high values of excess lactate were significantly associated with low oxygen consumption. Fig. 4 shows three groups of infants with extremes of excess lactate level: 6 infants born by selective Cesarean section 4 hours after birth 45 infants immediately after normal birth and 60 infants with various complications of pregnancy and delivery with various degrees of postnatal hypoxia. A similar comparison is shown in Fig. 5, which illustrates the time course of excess lactate and oxygen consumption in 10 premature infants (average birth weight 913 g). For comparison similar data are given for two other groups: control infants following normal birth and infant delivered by selective Cesarean section. Again an inverse relation between excess



Fig. 3. Change in lactate in newborns after elective Caesarian section (interrupted line) in comparison with control values (thick line). Respiratory rate of newborns after primary Caesarian section (black columns) in comparison with the increased respiratory rate in the controls (cross-hatched columns). Period from birth to 3 days.

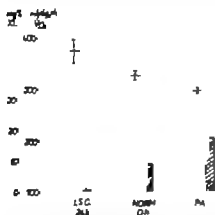


Fig. 4. Oxygen consumption (VO_2 , empty columns) and excess lactate (XL, cross-hatched columns) in three groups of newborns 24 hrs after elective Caesarian section (I.S.C.) immediately after normal birth (norm.) and at various times following pathological birth (path.).

lactate and oxygen consumption was found.

The data presented here suggest that excess lactate is a criterion of overall oxygen supply in the newborn and to a certain extent, of the proportion of aerobic metabolism occurring. This conclusion was confirmed by attempts to influence the relationship between excess lactate and oxygen consumption by ad-

ministration of a source of energy in the form of glucose (Fig. 6). A group of 10 newborn infants immediately after birth and a second group of 10 infants 48 hours old were given 0.5 g of glucose per kg, as 20% glucose intravenously. In comparison with control infants receiving no glucose the younger infants showed a significant fall in oxygen consumption and a rise in excess blood-lactate levels.

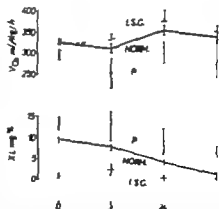


Fig. 5. Oxygen consumption (VO_2) and excess lactate (XL) in the first 2 postnatal days of healthy newborns after normal birth and preeclampsy (norm.), after elective Caesarian section (I.S.C.) and in premature after induced labour (P).

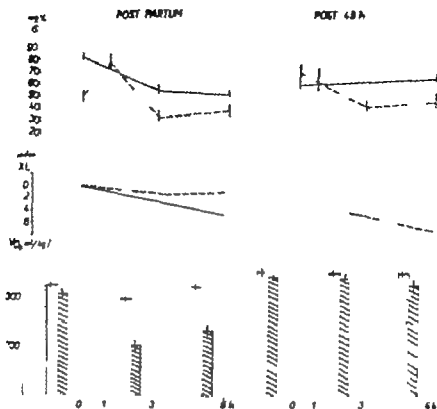


Fig. 2. The relation between blood glucose (G), excess lactate (XL) and O_2 consumption (VO_2) newborns just after delivery (left) and at age 48 hrs (right) after LV glucose administration.

The older infants on the other hand, showed no change in oxygen consumption and decreases in excess lactate. We conclude that excess lactate reflects the total aerobic and anaerobic processes during the limited period after birth under the influence of maternal metabolism, the birth process, and the intrinsic metabolic process of the fetus and newborn infant.

Discussion

Observations on the significance of excess lactate in the newborn period in relation both to pregnancy and delivery and the condition of the newborn infant

have been supplemented by data on the course of the components of excess lactate—blood lactate and pyruvate—and the ratio between the two. We have confirmed the findings of Huckabele that the source of excess lactate is a disturbed ratio between lactate and pyruvate occurring under conditions of hypoxia or rather oxygenation of the organism as a whole manifest in a decrease in oxygen consumption. Huckabele maintains that every appearance of an excess of lactate is a reflection of the presence of tissue hypoxia or oxygen debt. Knuttigen [] has disagreed with this concept on the grounds that an oxygen debt

can be incurred without lactate accumulation. He concluded that significant lactate accumulation appears only after a certain critical level of hypoxic stress. Knuttgen's work again directs attention to the older concept of the nature of "oxygen debts" as formulated by Margaria, Edwards & Dill [3] in 1933. They divided oxygen-debt manifestations into an alactic acid and a lactic acid phase, and believed that the latter followed only severe grades of hypoxia, with the appearance of lactate in the blood.

As yet we cannot compare our results with any work dealing with a so-called oxygen debt in the newborn period, as expressed by the appearance of excess lactate in the blood. Our findings indicate that lactate in the newborn may be acquired passively transplacentally and that high levels disappear without difficulty within 3 days of birth. Persistently high levels may be found in the presence of metabolic disturbance or a variety of primary neonatal pathological conditions. Excess lactate may then actively accumulate as a result of tendency to maintain the ratio between lactate and pyruvate (Huckabee). For this reason it has been suggested that blood pyruvate is a more sensitive indication of the trend of carbohydrate metabolism than lactate [8]. We have confirmed Huckabee's opinion that errors inherent in taking lactate alone as a measure of tissue hypoxia are considerably reduced by calculating the "excess" of lactate appearing.

The possibility of differentiating between early and late asphyxia or rather intra uterine hypoxia and postnatal respi-

ratory inadequacy has great clinical significance as does a biochemical indicator of the proportions of aerobic and anaerobic glycolysis of carbohydrate metabolism. Procedures designed to influence carbohydrate metabolism which is probably decisive for the point of view of energy sources in the postnatal period, may be reflected in changes in both components of carbohydrate metabolites, as shown by administration of glucose to newborn infants. The important matter of the timing of therapeutic interference with carbohydrate metabolism remains in order to ensure support for the utilization of the energy sources in the neonatal period without aggravating neonatal acidosis.

Summary

The significance of excess lactate in the newborn period has been studied, as an indication of overall tissue oxygenation. While blood lactate does not express reliably changes in oxygenation, calculated excess lactate may indicate the proportion between aerobic and anaerobic processes of carbohydrate breakdown and may be used to differentiate between hypoxia of intra-uterine or postnatal origin.

Relationships have been found between excess lactate and oxygen consumption and respiratory rate. Glucose administration was followed by an increase in excess lactate and significant fall in oxygen consumption in the first few hours after birth, but not by the second day indicating that the time after birth influences the relative roles of aerobic and anaerobic metabolic processes in the newborn period.

References

1. HUCKABER, W. E.: Relationships of pyruvate and lactate during anaerobic rest bolus. *J Clin Invest*, 37 pp. 244-255, 1958.
2. KRUTTORF, H. G.: Oxygen debt, lactate, pyruvate and excess lactate after muscular work. *J Appl Physiol* 17: 639, 1962.
3. MARRAS, R., EDWARDS, H. T. and DILL, B. H.: The possible mechanism of contracting and paying the oxygen debt and the role of lactic acid in muscular contraction. *Amer J Physiol* 188: 639, 1952.
4. VEDRA, B.: Acidosis and anaerobiosis in full term infants. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 48: 60, 1959.
5. YANOF, Z. A.: Effect of exercise on blood pyruvic acid. *Arch Intern Med*, 73: 229, 1912.
6. ZNAMENÁČEK, K., and PRISYLOVÁ, H.: Some parameters of respiratory metabolism in the first three days after birth. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, in press.

Submitted June 20, 1963

Accepted Oct. 20, 1963

Institute for the Care of Mother and Child
Prague-Podolí
Czechoslovakia

(From the Paediatric Clinic and the Department of Clinical Bacteriology University of Gothenburg Gothenburg and the Maternity Hospital, KK II Sahlgrenska Sjukhuset Gothenburg)

Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood

II Quantitative Estimation of Bacteriuria in Unselected Neonates with Special Reference to the Occurrence of Asymptomatic Infections

by K. LINCOLN and J. WINBERG

Urinary tract infections appearing during the first week of life may if untreated, have a serious prognosis [3, 4, 5, 9, 10, 12]. In spite of this the interest in the neonatal form of this disease has been little judging from the number of papers, which are few compared to the overwhelming literature concerning infections appearing later in life. Swedish experiences suggest that the diagnosis is made fairly seldom. Thus in 1961 the compulsory annual report to the National Board of Health concerning diseases of the newborn included only seven cases of urinary tract infections (those of the present study excluded) among the 70,000 newborns which were under direct paediatric supervision in maternity hospitals. This low incidence of diagnosis—0.1% of all live births—may be due to the fact that the disease is rare. Another explanation may be that it is often overlooked. Some observations actually speak in favour of the latter explanation. Thus after scattered reports by different authors in the twenties [

5, 1^o] Craig [1935 (3)] was able to collect 61 cases of his own and in 1939 James [6] reported 32 infants less than 2 weeks old with urinary tract infection, an incidence of 1.5% of all live births in the hospital during the period under review. Kenny, Medearis, Drachman, Gibson & Klein [8] have reported on an epidemical outbreak of pyelonephritis in male infants 2-7 weeks old. Furthermore Stansfeld [14] in 156 children with pyelonephritis found the age of onset of symptoms to be under one year in 90 cases and under one month in 20 cases. The personal observation of a couple of patients acutely ill with pyelonephritis for the first time at the age of some months, although a lifelong history of vague symptoms suggested a neonatal origin of the disease still more increased the suspicion of a not infrequent overlooking of the disease in neonates.

Because of these experiences a thorough search for urinary tract infections was started in a maternity hospital with the aim of obtaining a material permitting a close description of the spectrum of the clinical characteristics of the neonatal

infection. Thus the urinary excretion of cells and bacteria was estimated in patients showing even the slightest symptoms that might have been due to infections. In spite of a good bacteriological technique we got a heavy growth of bacteria in so many urines that it seemed improbable to assume the presence of a urinary tract infection in all these patients. It was thus obvious that a study of neonatal pyelonephritis had to begin with a systematic study of bacteriuria in a material of unselected neonates to define the limits of significant and insignificant bacteriuria in this age group.

The results reported in this paper indicate that unless special cleaning measures of the genital tract are undertaken the values for pathologic bacteriuria given by Aas [] and by Pryke, Löder & Allan [11] cannot be applied to neonates. The urinary cell counts in the normal neonates will be dealt with in a following paper. Most interesting was however the demonstration of urinary tract infections in 8 of about three hundred unselected male neonates whereas no girl of about 300 seemed to be affected.

Material

Almost 100 of the deliveries in Gothenburg took place in maternity hospitals. There was no special accumulation of complicated deliveries in the hospital where the investigation took place.

The material consisted of 584 neonates: 298 boys and 286 girls. The patients were strictly selected at random. Prematures and patients with severe asphyxia or visible malformations were, however, excluded. A pilot study of 40 patients was performed during the period February-March 1960. The other patients were born during the periods December 1960-March 1961 and September 1961-January 1962.

The urine was examined one or several times during the first seven days of life when the child was in the hospital. In some patients urine was examined also during the days 8-15.

Methods

1 Bacteriological methods

All urine samples were brought to the laboratory in screw capped 10 ml test tubes placed in containers with ice cubes and cultured within 8 hours after voiding. Serial tenfold dilutions were made in sterile saline with 1% meat extract broth. One-tenth ml of urine and dilutions were spread on the whole surface of each of a blood agar plate, a lactose bromthymolblue (Drigaloid) agar plate and a sodium azide sorbitol bromthymolblue agar plate. After drying, the plates were incubated aerobically at 37°C for 20 hours, read, reincubated for another 24 hours and read finally two days after seeding with the aid of Quebec colony counter and a mechanical counting device. The three different solid media permitted a good quantitative estimation of the number of each bacterial species present in the urine. During one period of the investigation the blood agar plates were incubated in closed plastic jars, and an additional blood agar plate was streaked with a standard loop of urine and incubated anaerobically for five days.

The term coliform bacteria, or coliforms, were used for all gram-negative large rods growing well on Drigaloid agar which either fermented lactose rapidly or were shown not to belong to the groups *Salmonella*, *Arizona*, *Shigella*, *Proteus*, *Providencia*, *Pseudomonas* or *Alcaligenes*. It includes *Escherichia*, *Citrobacter*, *Klebsiella* and *Clonox* (Aerobacter). Eight strains of coliform bacteria isolated from cases with probable infection were serologically investigated at the *Escherichia* Center of the Statens Serum Institut, Copenhagen.

The leucocytes and other formed elements in the urine were counted in uncentrifuged urine in a Fuchs-Rosenthal counting chamber.

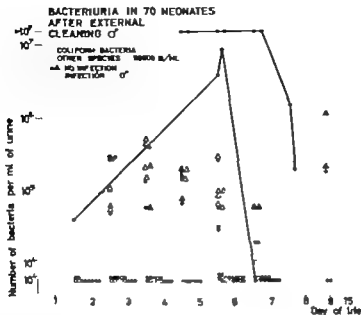


Fig 1 Bacterial counts in 123 urine specimens from 70 males during the first 15 days of life; external genital cleansing with soap and water. For each urine sample the coliform count is indicated by one circle. Other species are indicated by triangles, when the count was 50,000 or more bacteria per ml.

A bacterial count of 100,000 or more bacteria per ml of urine was found in 43 specimens from 24 boys. Only in two patients the bacteriuria was accompanied by leucocyturia.

- ○ Coliform bacteria.
- △ △ Other bacterial species when $\geq 50,000$ bacteria per ml.
- △ Bacteriuria accompanied by insignificant leucocyturia.
- △ Bacteriuria accompanied by marked leucocyturia.

II Clinical methods

Patient Group A Before attaching sterile glass container to the infant the genital tract and surrounding area of the skin was thoroughly cleaned with an abundance of soap and water and then dried by a piece of gauze.

Patients Group B Two urine specimens were saved, the first one after cleansing described under A, the second one after irrigation of prepuce and vulva respectively two times with 5 ml of physiologic saline each time. Also the irrigation fluid was saved for culture.

Patients Group C Boys. The prepuce was irrigated twice with 10 ml of 5% bichloroform solution of soap, gentle massage

of the prepuce was performed followed by thorough cleaning of the whole genital tract as described under A. Then the prepuce was again irrigated four times with 10 ml of sterile lukewarm water each time. At last the whole genital tract was washed with water and dried with a pad of gauze.

In the girls corresponding irrigation and cleansing was performed, placing the tip of the syringe near the clitoris. Special care was taken to irrigate the folds between minor and major labia.

After the cleansing procedure sterile glass container was fitted to the patient who was then watched continuously. Usually immediately after voiding but not more than 15 minutes thereafter the urine was transferred from the glass container to a

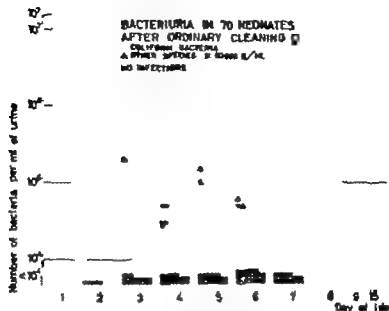


Fig. 1. Bacterial counts in 132 specimens from 70 females during the first 8 days of life; external genital cleansing with soap and water (Symbol as in Fig. 1)

A bacterial count of 100,000 or more bacteria per ml of urine was found in 5 specimens from 5 girls, none accompanied by leucocyturia.

sterile screw-capped 10 ml tube by means of a sterile syringe and needle. The tube was immediately placed in a jar with ice cubes in which it was transported to the laboratory. If the container fitted to the patient was used by faeces the specimen was discarded.

Results

Group 4 Seventy males and 70 females. Urine obtained after thorough cleansing of the genital tract with soap and water.

One hundred and twenty three specimens were obtained from 0 boys and 122 specimens from 70 girls. A bacterial count of 100 000 per ml or more was found in 43 specimens from 24 boys and in 5 specimens from 5 girls (Fig. 1 and Fig. 2). The strains of bacteria observed in these urines were—except coliforms—enterococci and staphylococci (coagulase positive and negative).

With standards used in adults [7] and older children [11] a bacterial count of 100 000 bact per ml would suggest a urinary tract infection. It seemed, however improbable that about one third of apparently healthy newborn males would have a urinary tract infection. Since there was a marked difference between boys and girls as regards the frequency of high bacterial counts, an error of the bacteriological technique could be excluded. The apparent sex difference suggested that the bacteria might have originated from the prepuceal sac or formed by the attachment of the prepuce to the glans and not amenable to routine methods of cleansing.

In two boys only (black symbols, Fig. 1) the bacteriuria was accompanied by a marked leucocyturia, Table 1 (Cases 1 and 2). There were in these two patients

TABLE 1 *Patients with bacteriuria and leucocyturia.*

| N | Patient | Day of life | Type of bacteria | Bact. per ml of urine in millions | Leucocytes per mm ³ of recent voided urine | Symptoms during the first 7 days of life |
|---|-------------|-------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | 600211 R. ♂ | 6 | <i>E. coli</i> 048nH32 | 10 | 1,000 | Slightly pale one day |
| 2 | 600303 O. ♂ | 3 | <i>E. coli</i> 048nH5 | 100 | 3,000 | Slight weight instability |
| 3 | 601116 D. ♂ | 7 | <i>E. coli</i> (048) (0129) (0135)nH6 | 2 | 300 | Crying. Otherwise none |
| 4 | 601119 E. ♂ | 6 | <i>E. coli</i> Neg (01-0146)nH neg ^a | 10 | 3,000 | None |
| 5 | 600107 W. ♂ | 7 | <i>E. coli</i> Neg (01-0146)nH6 | 10 | 150 | None |
| 6 | 610307 G. ♂ | 7 | <i>E. coli</i> 065nH7 | 100 | 600 | Slight weight instability |
| 7 | 610317 O. ♂ | 8 | <i>E. coli</i> 065nH4 | 2 | 100 | None |
| 8 | 611129 E. | 7 | <i>E. coli</i> | 50 | 70 | None |
| | | 8 | Enterococci | 1 | | |
| | | 8 | <i>E. coli</i> (07) 028nH neg | 100 | 30,000 | |
| 9 | 611118 O. ♀ | 6 | Alfa-streptococci | 0.2 | 600 | None |
| | | 7 | Enterococci | 0.2 | 175 | |

Neg (01-0146): the O-antigen did not belong to any of the known 146 O-types.

no or only slight symptoms, the significance of which are difficult to evaluate for the moment

Group B Six males and four females.

To test the above hypothesis urine was collected after ordinary cleaning. After this the prepuce was irrigated two times with 5 ml of physiological saline each time. The irrigation fluid was collected and cultured. After this procedure urine was collected again and new urine culture performed. The same procedure was employed in the girls, placing the tip of the syringe at the base of clitoris. The results are given in Tables 2 and 3. These studies indicated that irrigation of the prepuce would reduce considerably the risk of contamination of the urine by prepuce bacteria. Also in girls irrigation seemed to reduce the risk for contamination

Group C Two hundred and twenty eight males and 216 females. Urine obtained after cleaning of the genital tract and irrigation of prepuce or vulvar region as described in methods.

After the initial studies a total of 444 neonates were investigated with regard to

TABLE 2. *Effect of prepuce irrigation in six patients*

| Day of life | Urine | | Irrigation fluid | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|---------|
| | Before irrig. | After irrig. | | |
| | | | I | II |
| 3 | 280,000 | 2,000 | 500,000 | 300 |
| 4 | 100,000 | 50 | 100,000 | 40,000 |
| 5 | 350,000 | 2,000 | 180,000 | 15,000 |
| 6 | 200,000 | 2,400 | 1,500,000 | 131,000 |
| 8 | 90,000 | 8,000 | 2,000,000 | 121,000 |
| 6 | < 10 | 500 | 50,000 | 40 |

TABLE 3 *Effect of cutlar irrigation in four patients*

| Day of life | No. of bacteria per ml of | | Irrigation fluid | |
|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|------------------|-------|
| | Urine | | | |
| | Before irrig | After irrig | I | II |
| 3 | 4,000 | < 100 | 3,000 | 800 |
| 5 | 100,000 | < 100 | 100,000 | 8,000 |
| 5 | 1,300 | < 40 | 1,000 | 100 |
| 6 | 240,000 | 800 | 170,000 | 700 |
| 6 | 10,000 | 100 | 8,000 | 1,500 |
| | 2,000 | No culture | 900,000 | 8,000 |
| | 15,000 | < 10 | 3,000 | < 100 |

the bacterial count of the urine to get an idea of the normal values in this age. Three hundred and ninety four specimens were obtained from 228 boys and 335 specimens from 210 girls. A bacterial count of 100 000 or more per ml of urine

was found in 27 specimens from 19 boys (Fig. 3) and in 5 specimens from four girls. The types of bacteria excreted are given in Fig. 3 and 4. All patients with more than 50 000 coliforms per ml urine and absence of leucocyturia, were checked repeatedly during the first few weeks of life. The bacteriuria vanished spontaneously in all. Leucocyturia exceeding 25 per mm³ uncentrifuged urine and usually reaching very high values was found in 6 boys with bacteriuria (coluria in all) black symbols, Fig. 3 and Table 1. Cases 2-8. One of the girls with pronounced bacteriuria—excreting alfa-streptococci and enterococci—had a leucocyturia exceeding 50/mm³ of uncentrifuged urine (Fig. 4 and Table 1 Case 9). Infection was judged as questionable in the girl but highly probable in the six boys, although they had no or only

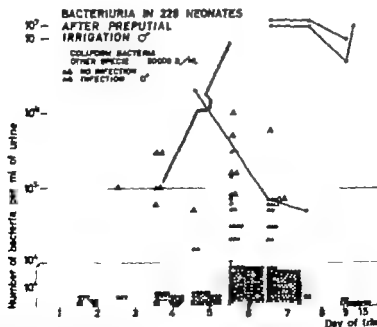


Fig. 3. Bacterial count in 394 specimens from 228 males during the first 15 days of life. External genital cleaning and preputial irrigation with soap and water (Symbols as in Fig. 1.) A bacterial count of 100,000 bacteria per ml or more was found in 27 specimens from 19 boys. In six boys bacteriuria was accompanied by leucocyturia.

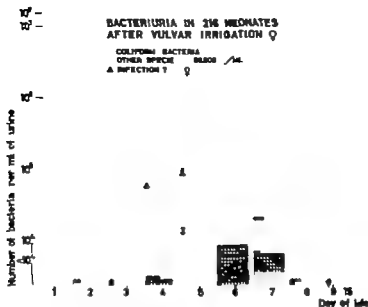


Fig. 4 Bacterial counts in 333 specimens from 216 females during the first 15 days of life. External genital cleansing and vulvar irrigation with soap and water.

A = Questionable infection. (Symbols otherwise as in Fig. 1.)

A bacterial count of 100,000 bacteria per ml or more was found in 4 specimens from 4 girls, only in one accompanied by leucocyturia.

questionable symptoms pointing to an infection.

The eight patients with a probable infection (Table 1) will be presented in detail in a forthcoming paper on neonatal pyelonephritis. Suffice it to say here that there were no indications of obstructive malformations and that in some of the patients the urinary findings disappeared spontaneously while in others they persisted until treatment was instituted. In two untreated patients definite symptoms of infection appeared at the age of 6 weeks and 1 week respectively. Urine culture was found to be positive in both. Serological typing showed the bacteria isolated at onset of symptoms to be of the same type (009/0120/0133) H6 as those isolated

in the neonatal period, in one of the patients (Case 3 Table 1). In the other (Case 5) both strains had an O-antigen that did not belong to any of the known 146-types, while the H-antigen was identical (neg 01-0146) H8 (Table 1). Thus also in this case it is possible that it was the neonatal infection that persisted at onset of symptoms with the age of 6 weeks. Infection was rapidly eradicated with treatment in both cases and repeated cultures and sediments during the first year of life were negative. It is of interest that an intravenous urograph performed at the age of one year in Case 5 showed the left kidney to be markedly smaller than the right one.

Comment

The introduction of quantitative estimation of bacteriuria has greatly increased the accuracy of diagnosis of urinary tract infections. When this technique was applied to a study of neonatal pyelonephritis it was soon found that normal values for adults and children were not applicable to neonates, especially not to boys where very high bacterial counts were often found without a concomitant pathologic leucocyturia. It has been shown in this investigation that the praeputial folds, not amenable to ordinary cleaning in neonates may harbour great quantities of bacteria. These can be washed out by the urinary stream and may cause a bacterial count in the urine which by adult standards would be judged as significant for a urinary tract infection. The investigation has shown that this error can be overcome by praeputial irrigation. In boys such an irrigation seems to be necessary before any valid conclusions can be drawn from a bacteriuria between 100 000 and 1 million bacteria per ml. In girls ordinary cleaning of the vulvar region with soap and water reduces the risk of contamination of the urine by the vulvar flora considerably. Irrigation of the vulva seems to reduce this risk still further. When irrigation of the praeputial sack or vulvar region was performed before the collection of urine the bacterial counts were of the same magnitude as in adults or children.

The most interesting finding in this investigation was that among 208 boys selected at random there were 8 with a combination of pronounced leucocyturia and coluria. With all probability a diagnosis of urinary tract infection is justified in

these patients. In 236 girls there were no such cases with the exception of a questionable one. Since there were 2 infections in the 70 nonirrigated patients and 6 infections in the 228 irrigated ones there is no indication that infection was introduced into the urinary tract by the irrigation procedure.

The preponderance of males has been observed also in other series of pyelonephritis and/or sepsis during early life [1, 8, 10, 13]. This sex difference is not well understood, but seems not to be explained on the basis of the sex difference in frequency of obstructive malformations [1, 8, 10, 13].

The nature of the disease in the present material is uncertain. Hypothetically it may be due to a bacteraemia. This would be in accordance with the observations by Kenny *et al.* [8] who found a positive blood culture in 8 out of 11 small infants with symptomatic urinary tract infections. The eight infections of our series were caused by 6 or possibly 7 different strains of *E. coli*. Thus there was no suspicion of an epidemic caused by a special nephropathogenic strain, as suggested in another investigation [8].

Newborns with pyelonephritis will be discussed in detail in a forthcoming paper. Here will only be mentioned that the investigation suggests that the infection may be completely asymptomatic and that infections which give the first clinical symptoms during the first few months of life may have originated in the neonatal period.

The demonstration of a unilateral small kidney one year after the infection in one of the patients leaves the question open whether positive urinary findings in

asymptomatic neonates may signal a chronic pyelonephritis, leading to kidney contraction.

With regard to the high frequency of asymptomatic infections in this study and the possible serious significance of neonatal infections [2 4 5 8 9 10 12 13] the question may be raised whether a routine examination of the newborn's urine would be recommendable.

Summary

The urinary bacterial excretion was determined in 584 unselected neonates after different kinds of external genital cleaning. The investigation has shown that after ordinary cleaning of the external genitals: 4 of 70 males and 5 of 70 females showed a bacterial count of 100 000 bacteria/ml or more.

The prepuce folds and, to a lesser extent, the vulvar region were shown to harbour great quantities of bacteria

causing significant contamination of the urine even after thorough external cleaning. This error can be overcome by irrigation of the prepuce folds or vulvar region. When this measure was undertaken the bacterial counts were of the same magnitude as in children or adults.

The most interesting finding was that among 298 boys selected at random there were 8 with a probable infection, while there in 286 girls were none with one possible exception. In one of the patients in whom infection persisted for six weeks a unilateral small kidney was demonstrated at the age of one year. Whether this was the result of congenital malformation or infection is open to discussion.

Acknowledgements

The authors are indebted to Drs Friis and Ida Orskov, International Escherichia Center Statens Serum Institut Copenhagen, for serological typing of bacteria.

References

1. BREWSTER, J. and BROWN, A. K.: Sepsis and jaundice in early infancy. *Pediatrics* 29: 873, 1952.
2. CONRAD, G. E.: Congenitally acquired pyelitis. *Amer J Dis Child* 31: 253, 1946.
3. CRAIG, W. B.: Urinary disorders occurring in the neonatal period. *Arch Dis Child* 10: 337, 1935.
4. DE LA ETY, W. E.: Neonatal ophthalmitis and pyelonephritis. *J Pediatr* 34: 36, 1939.
5. ORSKOV, R. H.: A report of six cases of pyelitis in the newly born infant. *Amer J Med Sc.* 179: 401, 1925.
6. JAMES, U.: Urinary infection in the newborn. *Lancet* II: 1801, 1950.
7. KAM, E. H.: Bacteriuria and the diagnosis of infections of the urinary tract with observations on the use of methionine as urinary antiseptic. *Arch Int Med*, 100: 709, 1957.
8. KERRY, J. F., MEDFORD, J. H. V., DRACHMAN, R. H., GIBSON, L. E. and KLEY, R. W.: An outbreak of urinary tract infections and septicemia due to *Escherichia coli* in male infants. *Amer J Dis Child* 104: 461, 1962.
9. NEWMAN, C. G. and PRYLER, C. V.: Pyelonephritis in infant and children. *Amer J Dis Child*, 104: 218, 1962.
10. PORTER, K. A. and GILES, H. M. C.: A pathological study of five cases of pyelonephritis in the newborn. *Arch Dis Child* 31: 393, 1956.
11. PRYLER, C. V., LUDERS, D. and ALKAM, M. K.: A comparative study of bacterial cultures and colony counts in paired specimens of urine obtained by catheter versus voiding from normal infants and infants with urinary tract infections. *Pediatrics* 27: 17, 1961.

12. SAUER, L. W.: Neonatal pyelitis. *JAMA* 85 227 1925.
13. SPARK, H., TRAVIS, L. B., DODGE, W. F.,
H. KOCKER, C. Wm Jr. and HORT, H. C.:
The prevalence of pyelonephritis in children
a study. *Pediatrics*, 20 737 1962.
14. STANFIELD J. M.: Chronic pyelonephritis
in children. *Proc Royal Soc Med*, 47 631,
1954.

Submitted Jan. 1 1964

Accepted Febr 6 1964

(J. W.) Paediatric Clinic
Barnsjukhuset
Gothenburg
Sweden

From the Medical Research Council Department of Experimental Medicine University of Cambridge, England

Artificial Placenta¹

A Progress Report

by L. LAWN and R. A. McCANCE

Lawn & McCance [14] described an apparatus which they proposed to develop as an artificial placenta. Before that time there had been two publications on the preservation of mammalian foetuses outside the body in a viable state [19, 20] but neither of these preparations seemed to be suitable for physiological work. Since 1902 a group at Edmonton in Canada has also been trying to develop an artificial placenta to use for resuscitation or in respiratory distress [2, 3, 4]. An unborn lamb has been successfully delivered by these authors after being maintained for 40 minutes in their apparatus. Since then Nixon, Britton & Alexander [16] have described an apparatus by which 3 full term foetal lambs were maintained alive without pulmonary respiration for about 60 minutes on the bench and subsequently delivered.

In the present studies pig foetuses were used.

Apparatus and Methods

Place No. 4²

The original apparatus, now designated placenta A consisted of three oxy-

¹This article is based upon lectures presented at a joint meeting of the Danish Society for Gynaecology & Obstetrics and the Danish Society for Clinical Chemistry and Clinical Physiology Copenhagen, September 12th, 1963.

genator or "gas-exchanger" which was primed with about 250 ml of blood from the mother or another sow. To this the foetal heart pumped the blood against gravity through cannulae inserted into the two umbilical arteries. The blood was returned to the umbilical vein by gravity through a dialysing system, but this was not essential for periods of survival up to 7 or 8 hours and was often omitted. The arterial and venous flow rates were monitored by drop counters.

Although it was possible to keep pig foetuses alive for 6 to 9 hours with placenta "A" even without a dialyser the apparatus had many physiological and technical shortcomings. The arterial and venous pressures for example had to be set at arbitrary levels for the best ones were not known. The blood in the gas exchanger was directly exposed to the atmosphere or the selected gas mixture and it was difficult to keep the blood in it and the return to the foetus at the correct physiological temperature. The drop counters, moreover recorded accurately enough flow rates up to 40 ml/min but not beyond. Further more changes in the flow rate could only be detected during an experiment by counting the dots on the tracing, and after the experiment was over a considerable amount of work had to be done to make a continuous record of the flow. A new flow meter based upon better principles has now been constructed and a description of it is in press [18].

In almost all the experiments the foetus deteriorated in a characteristic way and the

cause of death was usually the same. When first set up after cannulation the foetus looked perfectly normal. It often displayed considerable activity and usually died if it was made anoxic. As time went on small ecchymoses appeared here and there and the foetus gradually became more and more congested until finally the whole venous and capillary system became full of blood. In spite of this the output of the heart began to fall and after death the heart muscle was as congested as the rest of the body. In spite of the value of this placenta it was decided to make another one which would provide for the gas exchange and if possible dialysis in a different way.

Placenta B

The blood in the umbilical arteries is pumped by the foetal heart to the gas exchanger as before but in it there is no direct contact between the blood and the gas mixture. The extra-corporeal circulation is entirely enclosed and the blood is not returned to the foetus by gravity or by an external pump. In this system the gas exchange must take place through some material which is permeable to oxygen and carbon dioxide but not permeable to red blood cells. Several membranes have been investigated for this purpose. Cellulophane is slightly permeable to oxygen. Teflon or PTFE is more so and silicone rubber membranes are more permeable still, but unfortunately the latter membranes have been found to be very prone to pin hole failure. It was found to be difficult to support any of these membranes in such a way that the resistance to the flow was low and constant and to ensure that a change of gas pressure on one side did not affect the blood volume on the other. They have now been replaced by rigid plates made of sintered nickel. The characteristics of these plates can be controlled but the ones we use are not yet on the market. They are about 1.5-1.5 cm with an effective area of about 110 cm², a porosity of 40 and a mean pore size of 2.5 μ . The porosity is a measure of the space between the

metal particles, and the "pore size" of the diameter of these spaces. Since the blood corpuscles have a mean diameter of 8-7 μ they do not pass through the plates. The plates are however permeable to gases and liquids and in fact to particles whose size does not exceed 3 μ . The amount of oxygen taken up by the blood can be controlled to some extent by varying the pressure of the gas mixture but if this is made too high bubbles form in the blood stream and cannot be collected in a trap. The original exchanger consisted of a pack of 8 plates in 4 pairs. The plates in each pair were separated by 1.60 mm and through this space the blood circulated freely. Each pair was separated by 2.5 mm and through this space the gas mixture passed. The whole pack, which was mounted with the plates vertical, rotated on a horizontal axis through 360° and then returned to the starting position. This kept the blood moving on the plates and prevented any sedimentation. This gas exchanger had a total effective plate area of 880 cm² and through this it was possible to pass about 0.5 ml of oxygen per minute without bubble formation. A 80 day foetus requires rather more than this and we could only keep larger ones oxygenated by raising the O₂ pressure and trapping the bubbles. A full description of this apparatus as modified and enlarged is being prepared.

Since the extra-corporeal circulation is entirely enclosed in placenta "B" only the blood leaving the foetus can return to it and all it must do so. The rate of the circulation is determined by the activity of the foetal heart, the systemic blood pressure of the foetus and the resistance of the exchanger but this last can be varied either on the arterial or the venous side by a screw clip and the pressures recorded on manometers.

The pressure flow arrangements in placenta B are quite different from those in placenta A. In particular (1) the volume of blood outside the body is much smaller and it is fixed, (2) the venous return does not depend upon a force of gas distension fixed by the inotropic pressure (3) it is not

THE EFFECT OF CHANGES OF GAS MIXTURE

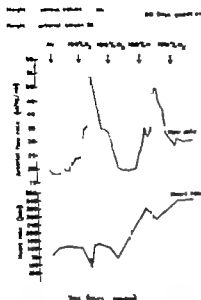


Fig. 1

possible for the foetus to become slowly congested by the imperceptible additions of blood from the exchanger to the venous side of the heart.

In consequence of these and possibly other characteristics, the experiments with placenta B have tended to take a different course from those with placenta A and the results so far obtained with it will be described later than those for placenta A.

Results and Comments

Placenta A

Fig. 1 shows one of the earlier experiments when the recording technique was rather limited. The gas mixture was changed from air to nitrogen then through oxygen to nitrogen again and finally back to oxygen. On both occasions on which it was made the change to N_2 more than doubled the flow rate in the umbilical circulation and this reverted to its original

THE EFFECT OF CHANGES OF GAS MIXTURE

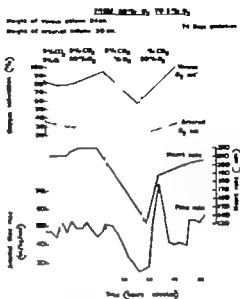


Fig. 2

rate in the interval. The pulse rate did not change appreciably when N_2 was substituted for air and was rising to a new plateau before during and after the second exposure to N_2 . This figure shows that the change in the gas mixture took some minutes to produce its results and the peak of the response was not observed till after the mixture had been changed again. This delay is due to the time taken for equilibration in the gas exchanger and for the blood to reach the foetus. The length of the tubing on the venous side, the inclusion or not of a dialyser in this part of the circuit and the flow rate all make a difference to it.

Fig. 2 shows the effects of a gas change from 20% O_2 , 5% CO_2 and N_2 to 5% O_2 , 5% CO and N_2 and back again. The blood saturations, the heart rate and the flow rate are given. The foetus was about the

THE EFFECT OF CHANGE OF GAS MIXTURE

FROM 20% TO 100% O_2 Height of pressure column 25 cm H_2O Height of arterial column 25 cm H_2O

21 Days gestation

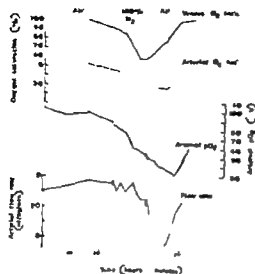


Fig. 3.

THE EFFECT OF CHANGE OF GAS MIXTURE

20 Days gestation

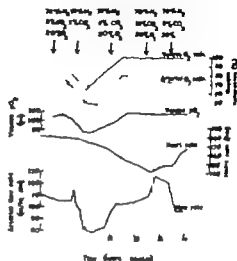


Fig. 4.

same age as the one which gave the previous record but the effect of reducing the concentration of O_2 in the gas mixture was different. The heart rate fell and with it the flow rate and both recovered in the after period. This is the effect on the flow rate which has nearly always been obtained.

Fig 3 shows another record of a change from air to N_2 and in this experiment a return to air. The O_2 saturation, the pO_2 in the umbilical artery and the flow rate are given. This time the change to N_2 reduced the flow rate almost to nothing and the heart rate probably fell but the flow rate improved afterwards. The timing of the lowest point on each of the 4 records is instructive. The arterial pO_2 was the last to improve.

Fig 4 shows the effects of changing the gas mixture in a younger foetus from 20%

O_2 , 5% CO_2 and N_2 to 5% CO_2 and N_2 only and then through the first mixture again to 20% O_2 , 10% CO_2 and N_2 and finally back to 20% O_2 , 5% CO_2 and N_2 . The first change produced a questionable rise of flow rate at first followed by a fall without any change in heart rate. During the recovery period the heart rate fell slowly while the flow returned to its original rate. The change from 5 to 10% CO_2 in the gas mixture raised the flow rate without materially affecting the heart rate.

There are several comments to be made on these records.

1) It was hoped that in an isolated system such as this one reproducible results would be obtained but this has clearly not always been so any more than it has been so with the placental circulation intact [1-17]. Hypoxia produced inconsistent effects on the flow rate and it is not yet

possible to say why. According to Dawes [7] both the degree of hypoxia and the stage of gestation must be taken into account but in spite of this it is difficult to integrate our experiences with those of Cox [6] and there is evidently more work to be done in this field to clear up the matter.

2) In these experiments the heart rate has been no guide to the flow rate. It may remain the same while the flow rate alters considerably as in Fig. 1 and 4 or it may vary with the flow rate and appear to initiate the change (Fig. 2).

3) Greenfield, Shepard & Whelan [11] found the flow rate in a non viable human foetus of 93 days gestation to be 45 ml/kg min. Dawes [7] reported that the flow rates found by himself and his colleagues in the intact mature sheep foetus were of the order of 132-260 ml/kg min. The flow rates in our isolated pig foetuses may be too low and Callaghan and his associates [3] are worried about theirs for the same reason. Ours have varied with this placenta from 20 to 110 ml/kg min and may not yet be physiological. They are certainly very variable.

It was difficult to make satisfactory long term metabolic observations while the gas tensions were being varied at short intervals, but placenta "A" is quite suitable for such work and Fig. 5 is a record of the pH, lactic acid, glucose and fructose in the circulating blood of a 61 day foetus taken over a period of 3½ hours. No changes were made to the foetus or the circulation once it had been satisfactorily established. It is hard to maintain

foetus as young as this in physiological state for long and after about one hour the pH of the circulating blood began to

Fig. 5. Physiological changes during an experiment in the placenta $PLCO_2$ and 80% O_2 atmosphere perfused with cow's pig's blood to which 100mg glucose had been added per 100 ml.

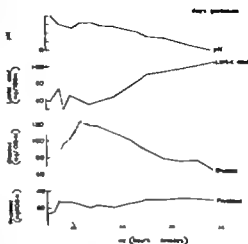


Fig. 5.

fall steadily and the concentration of lactic acid to rise. There was no dialyser in the circuit to correct this. The level of glucose in cow's blood has usually been found to be about 60 mg/100 ml and it was customary to raise this level by 100 mg/100 ml at the beginning of an experiment and again later if this was thought necessary. In the experiment shown in Fig. 5 after the initial rise of glucose, the concentration of this sugar fell steadily and this has been assumed to be due to its utilisation. The rise in fructose shown in Fig. 5 has frequently been observed and has been interpreted in the light of the experiments of Huggett [13] as being due to diffusion out of the foetal tissues, but more work on this subject is being planned.

Fig. 6 shows the way in which a foetus deteriorates towards the end of an experiment. After a steady period of 2 to 3

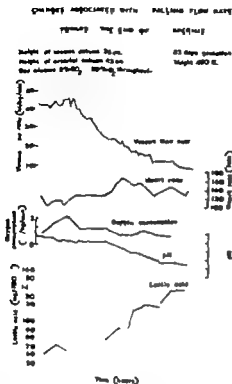


Fig. 6.

hours the flow rate fell over the next 4 hours from about 40 ml/kg min to about 10 ml/kg min while the heart rate remained about the same (120-130 beats/min), and the oxygen consumption was reasonably well maintained. Nevertheless the pH of the

blood began to drift downwards and the lactic acid rose. The concentration of other metabolic acids may also have increased [18] but this was not investigated.

Fig. 7 shows a record made on a Grass Recorder of the effect of spontaneous foetal movements on the arterial and venous pressures. The movements were mostly flexures of the trunk and limbs and each was followed by a rise in venous pressure and immediately afterwards a small spike in the arterial pressure.

Placenta B'

When a pig foetus is first cannulated the flow rates in the umbilical vessels may be 100-200 ml/kg min and the blood pressure 20-30 mm Hg. These are much higher flow rates in the umbilical vessels than have ever been achieved with placenta A. Within half to three quarters of an hour however the blood pressure may have fallen to a low level. At this stage the foetus is highly sensitive to the volume of blood on the venous side of the heart. The removal of a small sample of blood for analysis may lead to a sudden fall of blood pressure as registered on the arterial manometers and the sudden death of the foetus.

THE EFFECT OF POSTAL MOVEMENTS ON BLOOD PRESSURE IN THE UMBILICAL CIRCULATION



Fig. 7

OCCURRENCE OF THE UMBILICAL BLOOD PRESSURES

AND FLOW RATE IN THE CIRCULATION

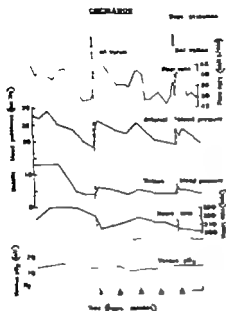


Fig. 8.

The addition of a small volume of plasma to the venous side may re-establish a vigorous circulation after what had appeared to be imminent failure. Fig. 8 illustrates this. As the venous and arterial pressures fell from their initial levels of 28 and 13 mm Hg over the first half hour the flow rate also fell. At the first vertical line 5 ml of plasma was added to the venous side of the circulation. There was an immediate rise of arterial and venous pressures and of the flow rate and the heart rate fell. When the arterial pressure had fallen lowly again 5 ml of saline were added to the circulation with a similar but more ephemeral effect. In another experiment with a pig foetus of 84 days gestation and approximately 100 g weight the arterial blood pressure 10 minutes after catheterization was 40 mm Hg and the umbilical flow

rate very high at 187 ml/kg min. During the next five minutes the blood pressure and the flow rate began to fall. At this point instead of adding plasma the blood pressure was raised to the original level of 40 mm Hg by adjusting the screw clamp on the polythene tube leading from the umbilical arteries to the gas exchanger. There was a slight initial rise in flow rate but after about 10 minutes the flow rate fell to about 100 ml/kg min. During the next 50 minutes the flow rate and blood pressure remained steady though there was a slight rise in blood pressure to 22 mm Hg. A gradual fall in both blood pressure and flow rate then set in so that at the end of another 50 minutes the blood pressure was 15 mm Hg and the flow 81 ml/kg min. It may therefore be necessary not only to keep up the filling pressure from the venous side but also to maintain a reasonably high blood pressure in the external circuit by mechanical means, and we shall have to investigate this.

Discussion

The progressive engorgement of the foetuses in placenta "1" is probably one aspect of the oedema and the engorgement which is well known to be the fate of all perfused organs. The present set-up shows that it is not due to the absence of cardiac pulsation or movements as has been suggested and one must think of some other cause. The difficulty in establishing a permanent circulation in placenta "II" is certainly an example of the delicate adjustments now known to be necessary if it is proposed to maintain physiological pressures, flow rates and blood volumes in any system involving an extra-corporeal circulation [5, 8, 9, 1].

present studying these problems. The difficulties should not be insurmountable if it is proposed to use a placenta of either type for short periods of time only as a resuscitation measure but difficulties will have to be overcome before foetuses can be maintained in a physiological state for long periods of time.

Since the two placentae give such different results a comparison of the pressures and flow rates given by them in the extra-corporeal circulation has now been initiated and is yielding valuable information. The effects of varying the umbilical arterial and venous pressures and of raising and lowering the amniotic pressures are being studied first and these will be reported in a short time.

Summary

- 1) Some of the results obtained with pig foetuses surviving in the artificial placenta, previously described are shown.
- 2) The shortcomings of the original in-

strument, its evolution and the incorporation of the recording gear are illustrated by the records.

3) A new type of instrument is described which involves different principles, is more physiological and gives rather different results.

4) Comparisons are drawn between the two instruments and this work is being continued.

Acknowledgements

We are very grateful for the help we have had from Drs. M. Purves, Catherine Rintoul and Faith Turner, Mr Spira, Mr Cowen and others, without whom this work would have been impossible. The sintered nickel plates were obtained through the Research Department of the International Nickel Company (Mond) Limited, and we would like to acknowledge this valuable assistance. A large part of the expenses have been provided by the Society for the Aid of Crippled Children in New York. Their faith in our being able to obtain a result of some value to paediatrics has been a great inspiration.

References

1. BIKTIAK, J. and REYNOLDS, S. R. M.: Haemodynamic changes in the ewe affecting fetal heart rate in utero. *Amer J Physiol*, 198 123 1960.
2. CALLAGHAN J. C. ANGLIER, J. BORACCIA, B., FINE, L. and HALLGREN R.: Studies of the first successful delivery of an unborn lamb after 40 minutes in the artificial placenta. *Canad J Surg* 6 199 1963a.
3. CALLAGHAN J. C. ANGLIER, J., BORACCIA, B., FINE, L. and HALLGREN R.: Studies in the development of an artificial placenta: The possible use of long term extracorporeal circulation for respiratory distress of the newborn. *Circulation*, 27 686, 1963b.
4. CALLAGHAN J. C. CARDOSO, D. BORACCIA, B. and ALKEMITEK, A.: Study of prepuerpal bypass in the development of an artificial placenta for prematurity and respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn. *J Thorac Surg* 44. 600 and 623, 1962.
5. CLOWES, G. H. A.: Extracorporeal maintenance of circulation and respiration. *Physiol Rev* 40 826, 1960.
6. COLE, L. W.: Fetal anoxia. *Lancet*, ii, 841, 1962.
7. DE WEE, G. B.: The umbilical circulation. *Amer J Obstet Gynec*, 44 1634 1962.
8. GALLETTI, E. M.: Indications et limites des circulations assistées. *J Suisse Med* 82. 1201 1962.
9. GALLETTI, E. M., BARBER, G. A., HOFF, M. A. and BRITFIELD, D.: Problems of venous pooling and edema in assisted circulation. *Metabolism: Perinatal Vascular. Congenital Res IV Congress Internat d'Angiologie Praha*, pp. 251 1961.
10. GIBSON J. H.: The Conner Lecture. Maintenance of cardiorespiratory function by extracorporeal circulation. *Circulation* 19 422, 1959.
11. GREENFIELD, A. D. M., SHEPARD, J. T. and WHELAN, R. F.: The rate of blood flow in the umbilical cord. *Lancet*, ii, 422, 1951.

12. HOFF M. R. and GALLUPPI, P. M. Balance of blood flow and gas exchange during partial heart-lung bypass. *J Appl Physiol* 18 281 1963.
13. HUMBERT, A. Et G. Carbohydrat metabolism in the placenta and foetus. *Brit Med Bull*, 17 122, 1961.
14. LAWF L. and McCANCE, R. A. Ventures with an artificial placenta. I. Principles and preliminary results. *Proc Roy Soc B* 158 800, 1963.
15. LAWF L., STICKES, R. A. and WHITWORTH, T. II A simplified thermistor flowmeter and thermocouple *J phys.*
16. KIDDO D. A., BRITTON H. G. and ALEXANDER, D. P. Perfusion of the viable sheep foetus. *Abstracts*, 199 183, 1963.
17. REYNOLDS, R. R. M. and PAUL, W. M. Relation of bradycardia and blood pressure of the fetal lamb in utero to mild and severe hypoxia. *Amer J Physiol*, 193 249 1958.
18. ROOTH, G. Fetal respiration. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 42 22, 1963.
19. THOMAS, J. A., SALOMONSON MMR. L. and LAMT F. La survie experimentale aseptique des grands foetus de Mammiferes. *C R Acad Sc*, 268 966, 1949.
20. WESTER B. KRYGER, R. and ENGBERG O. A technique for perfusion of the pre-viable human fetus. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 47 339, 1958.

Submitted Jan. 13, 1964

Accepted Jan. 14, 1964

Department of Experimental Medicine
Tennis Court Road
Cambridge
England

Changes in Plasma Fibrinolytic Activity of Newborn Infants during First Hour after Birth

by LARS ENGSTRÖM and LARS KÄGER

The occurrence of fibrinolytic activity in plasma from umbilical cord blood has been established by several authors [2, 3, 6, 7]. The fibrinolytic activity is not transferred from mother to infant but arises independently in the fetus or placenta. The initiating factors are unknown.

In a previous study [8] it was shown that in most healthy fullterm infants a significant fibrinolytic activity is found in the plasma within one hour after birth. Blood from vena porta or inferior vena cava was analysed using the method described by Blomback [5]. It was even observed that the fibrinolytic activity was more pronounced if the *in vitro* incubation was performed at a lower pH (6.3) than at a higher pH (7.1). Also in a similar investigation (in patients suffering from liver cirrhosis) increased fibrinolytic activity at a lower pH was observed explained by the authors as possibly due to an enhanced activation of plasminogen to plasmin at a lower pH than at a higher one [4].

The differences in fibrinolytic activity between the single individuals in our previously presented investigation [8] may be caused by blood sampling at different points of time during the first hour after birth. Berglund [3] has shown that the fibrinolytic activity of plasma disappears

completely during the first three days after birth and it is possible that the diminution is considerable already within the first hour.

In order to evaluate how fast the diminution in fibrinolytic activity is during the first hour after birth following investigation was performed.

Material and Methods

Eleven healthy fullterm infants were examined. The iliac artery was catheterized through one of the umbilical cord arteries and sample of blood was drawn within the first minute after delivery. The catheter was left in the same position and two more blood samples were taken, one after 10 minutes and one after 60 minutes. The fibrinolytic activity was determined according to Blomback [5]. The plasma was incubated at pH 6.3 and double tests were performed. A reduction of fibrin of at least 300 µg during one hour incubation was calculated as a significant fibrinolytic activity [8].

Results

The results are presented in Table 1.

In all cases there was a significant lytic activity either in sample 1 or in sample 2. However in only two cases a significant lytic activity was detected in sample 3. In both these cases the activity was significantly lower than in sample 2.

TABLE 1 Fibrinolytic activity in plasma of iliac artery at 1 minute, 10 minutes and 60 minutes after birth.

| Case No. | Fibrinolytic activity (ug/hr) | | |
|----------|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------|
| | 1 minute | 10 minutes | 60 minutes |
| 1 | 272 | 1 03 ^a | 310 |
| 2 | 800 | 0 | — |
| 3 | 1300 ^a | 1330 ^a | 400 |
| 4 | 873 | 1220 ^a | 0 |
| 5 | 330 | 318 | 0 |
| 6 | 0 | 670 | 0 |
| 7 | 801 | 1630 ^a | 0 |
| 8 | 1432 ^a | 1820 ^a | 0 |
| 9 | 840 | 1870 ^a | 0 |
| 10 | 1870 ^a | 1800 ^a | — |
| 11 | 1080 ^a | 1130 ^a | — |

Complete lysis.

^a Coagulate also due to hemolysis. Not significant lytic activity.

Discussion

Fibrinolytic activity in plasma seems to be a normal finding in healthy infants at delivery. The activity however decreases rapidly and in most cases it is not possible to detect any activity in the arterial blood one hour after birth.

This change of the activity may depend on the circulatory and respiratory adaptation to extrauterine life which takes place after delivery. Before onset of respiration the blood in the iliac and umbilical arteries is venous while the blood in the umbilical vein represents the most arterialized blood of the infant. When a normal pulmonary gas exchange is established the oxygen saturation of the blood in the iliac artery increases. By means of repeated analyses during the first hour after birth the following changes were found in O₂ and CO₂-tension in iliac artery and in venous port (9) in the iliac artery. P_{O₂} rose within a few minutes from an initial value of 10-40 mm Hg to about 40-80

mm Hg and then continued to rise or slowly P_{O₂} increased rapidly during the first minutes from about 40 mm Hg to 60-80 mm Hg but then it decreased to a level of 40 mm Hg in about 45 minutes.

If the fibrinolytic activity in plasma from the iliac artery in newborn infants is compared with the previously reported activity in venous plasma at approximately one hour of age the fibrinolytic activity seems to be more pronounced in the venous iliac artery and definite conclusions as to a decrease in fibrinolytic activity between arterial and venous blood cannot be drawn since a simultaneous analysis could not be performed. Some support for this thesis may be given by Berglund and others (8) according to their results on venous femoral catheters. The fibrinolytic activity was found to be about 30% of the control value 2-4 hours after birth. This result may be using another control for the fibrinolytic activity.

The pH of the plasma in the iliac artery converting plasma to fibrin (fibrinogen) was found to be increased at a lower pH. The state of the plasma is also affected by a number of factors, including the infant's condition and the more pronounced changes in the Gerdner's study. The pH of the plasma and the fibrinogen content were found to be increased in the venous port.

The pH of the plasma and the fibrinogen content were found to be increased in the venous port. The pH of the plasma and the fibrinogen content were found to be increased in the venous port.

umbilical and arterial venous umbilical forms & mild moderate or severe. the first indication was activity of the cord, the fibrinogen neither to or in the

lytic activity known the umbilical clamping of the arterial of the the pre-fibrin blood

(full very

Summary

Eleven healthy newborn infants were investigated concerning the degree of plasma fibrinolytic activity in the iliac artery during the first hour after birth. Samples were drawn within the first minute after birth after ten minutes and after one hour. The activity was estimated according to Blombäck

Significant fibrinolytic activity was established in all cases during the first ten minutes after birth. After one hour there was virtually no fibrinolytic activity remaining

A possible relationship between the fibrinolytic activity and the changes in blood gases and acid base balance after birth is discussed.

References

1. ASTROM T and MÖLLERSTEDT, B.: The fibrin plate method for estimating fibrinolytic activity. *Arch Biochem* 48 346, 1952.
2. BEILER, F. K.: *Das Gerinnungsverhalten bei der Schwangerschaft und beim Neugeborenen*. Johann Ambrosius Barth Verlag, Leipzig, 1957.
3. BERGQVIST, G.: The fibrinolytic activity in the newborn. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 47 511 1958.
4. ENOSTRÖM L., BLOMBÄCK, B. and KÄGER L.: Studies on the plasma fibrinolytic activity in a case of liver cirrhosis. *Acta Medica Scand*, 163 291 1960.
5. BLOMBÄCK, B.: On the properties of fibrinogen and fibrin. *A N Kemi* 18 99, 1958.
6. CHAPMAN H.: Observations on fibrinolysis in umbilical cord blood. *Clin Sci*, 12 111 1954.
7. CIOTTA, U. and LORANCHI, G.: L'attività fibrinolitica del siero di sangue del funicolo ombelicale. *A Ostet Ginec*, 18 407 1964.
8. ENOSTRÖM, L. and KÄGER, L.: Fibrinolytic activity in plasma of newborn infants. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* in press.
9. ENOSTRÖM, L., KARLSSON, P., ROOS, G. and TUNELL, R.: The influence of the onset of respiration on the blood-gases and the acid base balance. Xth International Congress of Paediatrics, exhibition 2., Lisbon 1962.

Dept. of Obstetrics and Gynaecology
Karolinska Sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

Submitted Nov 8, 1963

Accepted Dec 12, 1963

From the Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology Karolinska Sjukhuset
Stockholm, Sweden

Fibrinolytic Activity in Plasma of Newborn Infants

by LARS ENGSTRÖM and LARS KÄGER

Fibrinolytic activity—that is the ability to dissolve fibrin—is a property of the plasma which occurs when the proenzyme plasminogen is activated and converted into plasmin. Fibrinolysis is observed in many conditions such as long operations, exercise injections of adrenaline etc [1, 2, 7, 13].

During normal pregnancy and delivery no fibrinolytic activity is found in the maternal blood. On the other hand in cases of premature separation of the placenta, amniotic fluid embolus or intrauterine death (if the fetus has been dead for about six weeks before delivery) fibrinolysis may involve maternal risks. Fibrinolysis in these cases is secondary to intravascular blood coagulation caused by free thromboplastin (thrombokinase) in the blood. Both placenta and amniotic fluid contain large amounts of thromboplastin.

There have been several investigations of fibrinolytic activity in umbilical cord blood of healthy normally delivered infants. Beller [4] found that in 70-80% of infants fibrinolysis occurs in the cord blood whilst at the same time no fibrinolytic activity is present in the mother's blood. Cullen *et al* [10, 11] found 96% of infant to have some fibrinolytic activity in the cord blood and stated that the activity was more pronounced in premature and stillborn infants. Chaplin [9] com-

pared the fibrinolytic activity in umbilical artery and umbilical vein blood, and found fibrinolysis in 90% of the arterial blood samples and in 24% of the venous blood samples.

Berglund [6] investigated the umbilical cord blood in 143 cases using the fibrin plate method described by Astrup & Milbertz [3]. She found a weak or moderate fibrinolytic activity in half of the cases. The activity disappeared during the first three days after birth. No correlation was found between the fibrinolytic activity of the mother's blood and that of the cord. Thus it appears that the fibrinolytic principle is not transferred from mother to child, but arises independently in the fetus in the placenta.

The factors provoking fibrinolytic activity in the cord blood are not yet known. In earlier investigations as a rule the umbilical cord blood was taken after clamping of the cord, giving a mixture of arterial and venous blood after cessation of the placental circulation. The aim of the present investigation was to study the fibrinolytic activity in the circulating blood of the infant shortly after birth.

Material and Methods

The material consists of 25 healthy full term infants. Within one hour after delivery

was made on 25 healthy fullterm infants within one hour after birth. Significant fibrinolytic activity was observed in most cases. The lytic activity increased as the pH decreased from 7.1 to 6.3. Plasma

fibrinogen concentration was not influenced by the amount of fibrinolysis. Fibrinogenolytic activity could not be established in any case.

References

1. ASTRUP, T.: The biological significance of fibrinolysis. *Lancet*, **II** 565 1956.
- The haemostatic balance. *Thromb Diath Haemorrh*, **3** 347 1958.
3. ASTRUP, T. and MULLERTZ, S.: The fibrin plat method for estimating fibrinolytic activity. *Arch Biochem*, **48** 246, 1955.
4. BELLER, F. K.: *Die Gerinnungsverhältnisse bei der Schwangerschaft und beim Neugeborenen*. Johann Ambrosius Barth Verlag, Leipzig, 1957.
5. BERGSTRÖM, G.: The fibrinolytic activity in the newborn. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, **47** 611 1958.
6. BERGSTRÖM, K., BLONKICK, B. and HÄGER, I.: Studies on the plasma fibrinolytic activity in case of liver cirrhosis. *Acta Med Scand* **168** 791 1960.
7. BIGGS, R. and MACFARLANE, R. G.: *Human Blood Coagulation and its Disorders*. Blackwell, Oxford, 1957.
8. BLONKICK, B.: On the properties of fibrinogen and fibrin. *A lae kemi*, **18** 96, 1959.
9. CHAPLIN, H.: Observations on fibrinolysis in umbilical cord blood. *Clin Sci*, **12** 111 1954.
10. CIULLA, U. and LOMASCHI, G.: Lattiva fibrinolitics del siero di sangue del feto e del neonato. *Ann Ostet Ginec*, **78** 307 1954.
11. CIULLA, U. and SANTONI, G.: La determinazione del fattore VII del sangue fetale. *Ann Ostet Ginec*, **78** 1103, 1953.
12. ENGSTRÖM, L. and KAGER, L.: Concentration of fibrinogen in the plasma of healthy and of erythroblastotic and hyperbilirubinemic newborn infants. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, **50** 561 1961.
13. KAGER, L.: Das fibrinolytische System des Blutes. *Wien Klin Wochschr* **71** 439 1959.
14. MORASOV, P. R.: Preparation and properties of serum and plasma proteins. IV. Some factors influencing the quantitative determination of fibrinogen. *J Amer Chem Soc*, **69** 2722, 1947.

Submitted Nov. 6, 1963

Accepted Dec. 12, 1963

Dept. of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

From the Departments of Pediatrics and Internal Medicine I, University of Gothenburg, Sweden

Cytological Aspiration Biopsy in Adolescent Goitre

by LARS R. NILSSON and P. SIGVARD PERSSON

Adolescent goitre is generally regarded as a special kind of goitre appearing in prepuberal and puberal age. The typical adolescent goitre is small, soft and diffuse. The goitre is regarded by many as due to compensatory hyperplasia of the thyroid elicited by endocrine changes during puberty [13-27], but the underlying goitrogenous factors are unknown. It is, however, known that goitre in adolescence as in other periods of life may be a manifestation of various thyroid disorders. Thus, in Boston [21] and Philadelphia [14] lymphocytic thyroiditis is common among adolescent girls with goitre and iodine deficiency was the probable cause in a Danish series of juvenile atoxic goitre [15]. Environmental and hereditary factors are probably responsible for differences in type and incidence of thyroid dysfunction at puberty.

Needle biopsy of the thyroid gland to obtain tissue for histological examination is useful in the differential diagnosis of thyroid disease in adult [2, 6, 7, 11, 23-26] and in children [8, 14, 21]. A simpler method introduced in Sweden by Söderström [4] is the thin needle biopsy with cytological examination of the aspirated material [4, 9, 17, 24]. This technique was used in the differential diagnosis of adolescent goitre in the present investigation.

Material

Thyroid disease was diagnosed in altogether 80 children living in Gothenburg and seen at Gothenburg Children's Hospital (the only children's hospital in the city) from September 1959 to February 1963. Gothenburg is a seaport with somewhat more than 400,000 inhabitants and situated on the west coast of Sweden, where nothing suggests dietary iodine deficiency. The present investigation was limited to children aged 10 to 16 years with non-toxic goitre. This category consisted of 60 girls and 20 boys. Of these 8 had no palpable thyroid gland at the follow-up for needle biopsy; one had undergone operation for thyroid adenoma and one for thyroid cyst. In 5 biopsy was refrained from mainly for psychological reasons. In the remaining 48 patients needle biopsies were performed. In the beginning of this study both large (for histological examination) and small bore biopsy needles were used, but later only small ones because the aspiration of material for cytological study is much simpler. In 9 cases both large and small needles were used; in 39 a thin needle only.

In most cases the goitre was asymptomatic and detected at routine medical examination. The girl operated upon for thyroid cyst was the only sister of a girl with cystic thyroid, which had been punctured with a thin needle.

Methods

Biopsy specimens of the thyroid were obtained with a small-bore needle in the way described by Söderström [23]. The needle

has an outer diameter of 0.7 mm. It is fitted to the syringe with a Luer lock so that it may be manipulated with one hand [10]. Local analgesia was used in only a few cases. Specimens were obtained from both thyroid lobes, often from several areas. The needle was repeatedly moved to and fro during continuous aspiration. The aspirated material was ejected onto a glass slide and several short thin smears were prepared without delay. The smears were air-dried, stained by the May-Grunwald-Giemsa method and examined by one (S. P.) of us.

Thick needle biopsy specimens were obtained with a corkcrew type of instrument [3].—These biopsies were performed by Dr P. Heimann and the pathological examination of the specimens was done by Dr L. H. Schmitzer.

The sera were studied (Dr Deborah Doniach, London) for thyroid antibodies. The methods and results will be reported in a separate paper [8]; here the serological findings will only be studied for any correlation with the cytological diagnoses.

Results

The cytological diagnoses are given in Table 1. In 4 patients biopsy was repeated in order to get representative material, but even then the material obtained in one case was not sufficient to warrant a firm cytological diagnosis though the cells found suggested thyroiditis. The procedure was tolerated well and was not attended by bleeding or other complications.

1 The cytological picture of the normal thyroid gland

Smears of aspirated material from normal-sized thyroid glands of healthy adults contain thyroid follicular epithelial cells, small amounts of thyroid colloid and a varying quantity of peripheral blood (unpublished observations). The follicular epithelial

cells are of fairly uniform appearance. They have round nuclei with rather loose chromatin structure. Cellular outline is usually not distinct. The cytoplasm has bluish tint and contains vacuoles and paravacuolar granules (Fig. 1). A few lymphocytes from the peripheral blood are seen.

2 The cytological picture of chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis

The cytological abnormalities in our young patients with thyroiditis were the same as those known to occur in adults with Hashimoto's disease. A detailed report of the cytological findings in this disease will be published elsewhere [10], here only the main features will be mentioned.

All smears except one were rich in tissue cells of mainly two types: lymphocytes-reticular cells and follicular epithelium (Fig. 2). The diagnosis was based on the presence of lymphocytes and reticular cells. The lymphocytes were predominant. Reticulo-endothelial cells with signs of marked phagocytic activity (histiocytes, macrophages) were common. Plasma cells were occasionally seen (Fig. 3). In fact in many cases the picture closely resembled that of chronic non-specific lymphadenitis.

There were no specific changes of the follicular epithelium cells, which were often of normal appearance. A varying degree of pleomorphism was observed in some cases with a wide range of variation in size, shape and staining properties of the nuclei (Fig. 4). This pleomorphism was often accompanied by a reduction or disappearance of the paravacuolar granules. Debris material was engulfed in some cells,

and in a few the cytoplasm had undergone foamy vacuolization. Only 3 smears contained appreciable amounts of colloid. No fibrous or vascular elements were observed. Most smears contained only a small admixture of blood.

3. The cytological picture of colloid goitre

All cases in which the smears contained colloid and thyroid follicular epithelium cells but no accumulation of lymphocytes or reticular cells were assigned to this group. The colloid was often the most striking feature. As a rule the follicular epithelial cells looked normal, but in some preparations the cell nuclei varied in size and staining properties and contained large nucleoli (Fig. 5). These proliferative changes suggested an increased cell activity. Foamy phagocytes were encountered in 2 cases only.

4. The cytological picture of cystic goitre

This cyst fluid was aspirated in 2 cases. In one of them the gross appearance of the fluid suggested an old haemorrhage in the cyst. Microscopically foamy phagocytes represented the dominant type of cell (Fig. 6). The follicular epithelium cells were scanty and poor in detail.

Cytological and histological diagnoses

Nine specimens were studied cytologically and histologically. The cytological findings were invariably typical of chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis. The histological features were consistent with the diagnosis of chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis in 4 cases. In one case the very small specimen consisted mainly of ordinary thyroid follicles with colloid, but contained some inflammatory cells in the margin, where

the tissue was too severely damaged to allow evaluation. The remaining 4 specimens contained no demonstrable thyroid tissue.

Cytology and serology

The cytological evaluation and the serological studies were performed separately by independent examiners. A good correlation was found between the cytological diagnoses and the occurrence of thyroid antibodies (Table 2). The clinical and serological findings in the patients with juvenile lymphocytic thyroiditis will be reported in detail in separate papers [8-18].

Cytology and type of goitre

The type of thyroid disorder could not be recognized with certainty by palpation of the goitre. In only about half of the patients with cytological evidence of thyroiditis had this diagnosis been suggested by the palpatory findings. In most patients with a small soft and diffuse goitre the cytological diagnosis revealed colloid goitre.

Discussion

Historical data and clinical findings are rarely sufficient to establish a differential diagnosis in non-toxic goitre in children. In some cases radiiodine studies may yield useful information. Demonstration of thyroid antibodies suggests an autoimmune disease of the thyroid. But the presence of thyroid antibodies in a low titre is not conclusive evidence of diffuse lymphocytic thyroiditis, at least not in adults, for thyroid antibodies may appear also in patients with other kinds of thyroid disease. In patients with diffuse collagen disease without overt thyroid disease and even in healthy subjects [1-11].

TABLE 1 Cytological diagnoses based on thin needle aspiration biopsies in 48 juvenile patients with non-toxic goitre

| | Both sexes | Girls | Boys |
|---------------------------------|------------|-------|------|
| Chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis | 46 | 23 | 2 |
| Prob. chron. lymph. thyroiditis | 1 | 1 | — |
| Colloid goitre | 19 | 19 | — |
| Cystic goitre | — | — | — |
| Total | 66 | 43 | 3 |

20 with further ref., 22] Absence of thyroid antibodies as judged by the tanned red cell agglutination and complement fixation tests does not rule out thyroiditis [18]. It would therefore appear that thyroid biopsy is often indicated in the investigation of thyroid disease.

Thyroid tissue for histological examination can be obtained by open surgery or with a large bore puncture needle while a small needle is sufficient for aspirating material for smears to be studied cytologically. The histological methods have certain advantages over the cytological procedure: they provide information on the general appearance of the lesion, the degree of involvement of different elements and the anatomical relations between different types of cells and fibrous and vascular structures. As to the cytological procedure it allows examination of the structure of the individual cells and the proportions between different types of cells, preparation of the material is simple and the cells can be studied under the microscope after a short interval. Patients are more willing to consent to small needle biopsy in the examination room than to large needle biopsy in the operating theatre.

The cytological method seems to give reliable results. Thus, in their study of thyroid cancer Ekholm & Franzen found no false positive cases, but in 4% of the whole series the method failed to reveal signs of malignancy seen at subsequent operation. In the present series all cases with a significant titre of thyroid antibodies were diagnosed as chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis by cytological aspiration biopsy (Table 2). The patients with colloid goitre had no demonstrable thyroid antibodies apart from 3 with antibodies against the second colloid antigen, the significance of which is uncertain. The number of patients examined with both the histological and the cytological methods was too small to warrant any comparison, but in a large material of adults with Hashimoto's disease the histological and cytological findings were in almost complete agreement [19].

The cytological picture of chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis was largely characteristic and allowed a positive diagnosis without hesitation. Negative smears do not however exclude the possibility of lymphocytic thyroiditis. The cytological picture was characterized by usually abundant lymphoid cells and changes, though sometimes slight, in the morphology of the epithelial cells. The findings thus resembled the histological characteristics of juvenile lymphocytic thyroiditis [21-28]. However it may sometimes be difficult to distinguish lymphocytic thyroiditis from thyrotoxicosis from the cytological appearance alone but this problem is beyond the scope of the present investigation. Goitres with lymphocytic thyroiditis and colloid goitres differed considerably in colloid content of the smears. Thus, colloid

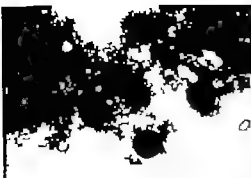


Fig. 1

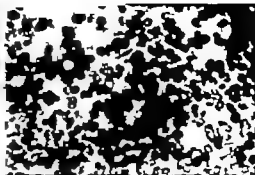


Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4

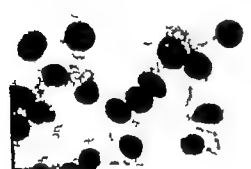


Fig. 5

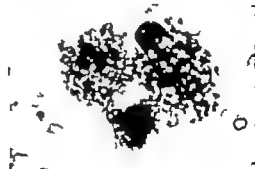


Fig. 6

E PL A T T

PLATE

Fig. 1 The normal thyroid gland. Follicular epithelial cell with para acinar granules. (1) capsule borders not identifiable (4).

Fig. 2 Chronic lymphocytes in thyroiditis low power view. A group of follicular epithelial cell in the center surrounded by lymphocytes and plasma cells (100).

Fig. 3 Chronic lymphocytes in thyroiditis (low power view). A group of follicular epithelial cell in the center surrounded by lymphocytes and plasma cells (100).

Fig. 4 Chronic lymphocytes in thyroiditis. Follicular epithelial cell in the center surrounded by lymphocytes and plasma cells (100).

Fig. 5 Colloid goitre. Proliferating follicular epithelial cell and thin colloid (4).

Fig. 6 (1) negative Papanicolaou smears (4).

TABLE ... *Cytological diagnosis and thyroid antibodies*

Two patients with thyroiditis and one with colloid goitre were not studied for antibodies.

| | No. of pat. | Microsomal antigen | | Thyroglobulin TRC- titre | | Iod. colloid antigen (CA2) pos. | No. thyroid antibodies |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| | | CFT pos. | CFT neg. cyto pos. | 1/25,000 | 5-250 | | |
| Chronic lymphoc. thyroiditis | 24 | 15 | 5 | 1 | 8 | 4 | 0 |
| Prob. chron. lymphoc. thyroiditis | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Colloid goitre | 16 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 (weak +) | 16 |
| Cystic goitre | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| Total | 45 | 15 | 6 | 1 | 9 | 25 | 17 |

CFT = complement-fixation test.

TRC = tanned red cell agglutination.

was demonstrated in the smears of only 3 of the patients with thyroiditis but in all of the smears from patients without cytological and serological evidence of thyroiditis. The cytological appearance of the colloid goitres was sometimes indistinguishable from that of the normal thyroid gland, but the colloid content was often larger and epithelial cell changes were sometimes seen.

The high incidence of lymphocytic thyroiditis in the present largely random selection of adolescent goitres and the reports from Boston [21] and Philadelphia [14] show that the condition is much more common in children than widely supposed. Before the present study had been started no cases of thyroiditis had been diagnosed at this hospital which suggests that "the increasing occurrence of thyroiditis" [16] is not true but only apparent and due to the increased attention now being given to the disease.

Summary

Thin needle biopsies with cytological examination was used in the differential diagnosis of non toxic adolescent goitre. During a period of three and a half years 63 children (10-16 years) with non toxic goitre were studied. Biopsies were performed in 48 of them. Chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis was found in 4 cases, colloid goitre in 19 and cystic goitre in 2 cases. The procedure was well tolerated by the patients and no complications were observed. Almost complete agreement was found between cytological diagnosis and presence of thyroid antibodies. The cytological characteristics of the chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis: the abundance of lymphoid and reticular cells, was easily recognized and allowed a firm diagnosis. Chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis is apparently more common among adolescent with goitre than widely supposed.

References

1. ANDERSON J R, GOODER, R B, GRAY K G and BUCHANAN W W: Antibody to thyroglobulin in patients with collagen diseases. *Scot Med J* 6 449, 1961.
- ✓ 2. BRANES, O H, WOOLNER, L B, ENOHL, S, and MCCONAHAY W M: Needle biopsy of the thyroid gland and management of lymphocytic thyroiditis. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 116 634, 1962.
3. HEDERLUND H L: New biopsy needle. Report on a new type instrument for obtaining tissue specimens. *Amer J Surg* 91 678, 1957.
4. CRIVELLO, J M, PARENTO, P, GROSSE, O F and MACIARULO, J J: La exploración citológica de la glándula tiroidea; sus correlaciones anatómicas. *An Fac Med Montev* 47 128, 1962.
5. CLAYTON G W and JOHNSON C M: Struma lymphomatosa in children. Report of 12 cases. *J Pediatr* 57 420 1960.
6. CRILE, G, JR. and HAZARD J B: Classification of thyroiditis with special reference to the use of needle biopsy. *J Clin Endocr* 11 1122, 1951.
7. CRILE, G JR. and VICKERY A L: Special use of the Silverman biopsy needle in office practice and operations. *Amer J Surg* 83 83, 1952.
8. DONIACH D, NILSSON L R. and ROYCE I M: Auto-immune thyroiditis in children and adolescents: II. Serum antibodies in patients and parents. In preparation.
9. ENOHL, S. and FRANKS S: Thin-needle biopsy in the diagnosis of thyroid disease. *Acta Radiol (Stockh)* 53 321 1962.
- ✓ 10. FRANKS S, ENOHL, S. and LARSEN, J: Cytological diagnosis of prostatic tumours by transrectal aspiration biopsy: preliminary report. *Brit J Urol* 38 193, 1960.
- ✓ 11. HANLEY E. JR. and VICKERY A L: Needle biopsy of the thyroid gland. *New Eng J Med* 264 742, 1960.
12. HILL, O W: Thyroglobulin antibodies in 1,297 patients without thyroid disease. *Brit Med J* 1 1793, 1961.
13. HUBER, D: Thyroid disorders in childhood. *Brit Med J* 1 675, 1956.
14. LEONOV G, BOGOROVANNI, A M., STICKER, D D and ENKELIN W R: Immunologic and thyroid function studies in euthyroid children with goiter. *J Pediatr* 58 477 1961.
15. MATTHIASON J E: Juvenile toxic struma. *Analyse af 46 8 års material. Uppsal. Lary* 123 1166, 1948.
16. MCCONAHAY W M., KRATIN, F R, JR., BRANES, O H. and WOOLNER, L B: On the increasing occurrence of Hashimoto thyroiditis. *J Clin Endocr* 22 54., 1962.
17. MYER J and RIVKINSON E: Thin-needle biopsy of the thyroid gland in the diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis. *Acta Endocr (Copenhagen)* 39 421 1962.
18. NILSSON L R. and DONIACH, D: Auto-immune thyroiditis in children and adolescents. I. Clinical studies. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*. In press.
- ✓ 19. PERSSON P. A., HEDMANN P., RUSSELL, L. and SCHULTZ, L B: Thin needle aspiration biopsy of bronchial thyroiditis. In preparation.
20. ROYCE I M. and DONIACH D: Thyroid auto-immunity. *Brit Med Bull* 16 152, 1960.
21. SAKKVA, K M. and CRAWFORD J D: Juvenile lymphocytic thyroiditis. *Pediatrics* 38 917 1962.
22. SKANJE, B. and NILSSON S B: Thyroid antibodies in hypergammaglobulinemia. *Acta Med Scand* 179 599, 1961.
23. SKILLERUP P G, CRILE, H JR., MCCULLAGH, E P., HAZARD, J B., LEWIS, L A. and BROWN H: Struma lymphomatosa: primary thyroid failure with compensatory thyroid enlargement. *J Clin Endocr* 16 33, 1956.
- ✓ 24. SÖDERSTRÖM, V: Puncture of goiters for aspiration biopsy. *Acta Med Scand* 111 227 1952.
- ✓ 25. — Identification of normal tissues and tumours by cytologic aspiration biopsy. *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 63 63, 1958.
26. VICKERY A L. and HANLEY E, JR.: Struma lymphomatosa (Hashimoto thyroiditis). Observations on repeated biopsies in sixteen patients. *New Eng J Med* 261 228, 1961.
27. WILKINS, L: *The Diagnosis and Treatment of Endocrine Disorders in Childhood and Adolescence*. C. C. Thomas, Springfield, Ill. 1957.
28. WOOLNER, L B., MCCONAHAY W M. and BRANES, O H: Struma lymphomatosa and related thyroidal disorders. *J Clin Endocr* 19 83, 1959.

From the Surgical and Pediatric Departments, Kronprinsessan Lovisas Barnsjukhus,
Stockholm, Sweden

Late and Early Operations for Cryptorchism

by C. G. BERGSTRAND and O. QVIST

During previous follow up studies [3] of boys treated for cryptorchism the impression was gained that orchiopexy performed at an early age i.e. during the first few years of life, gave a less satisfactory final result with regard to the position and size of the testis than prepuberal operations. As the problem of the best time of operation is still open to debate it was thought of interest to study a series of boys operated upon at an early age in comparison with a series treated during the prepuberal years. If early orchiopexy could be demonstrated to give less satisfactory results, this would be an argument in favour of postponing the operation.

Materials and Methods

Three series of patients were studied. The first comprised all boys who had undergone orchiopexy before the age of six years during the period 1933 through 1957. In all, 52 cases had been operated upon and with a few exceptions all had demonstrated an inguinal hernia, which had been the immediate cause of operation. None had been treated with hormones.

For comparison we used a second group of patients who had been operated upon during the same period but at the age of 10 to 14 years and who had had a hernia diagnosed before the operation. The total number of patients in this group was 41. The age distribution of operation in both groups is given in Fig. 1.

Of the 52 patients of the first group, 51 were re-examined and the corresponding figure for the second group was 40. The re-examination was made 1 to 9 years after the operation. In one case in the younger age group and one in the older information was obtained from the parents, as an examination was not possible and in a few cases the examination was carried out in other hospitals. In both groups re-operations were performed on 7 and 5 patients respectively and in these the result after the second operation was considered as the final result. In both groups there were cases with bilateral cryptorchism (10 and 4 respectively) and as in these patients the operation was not always performed on both sides, the results will be presented with regard to the number of testes operated on and re-examined rather than with regard to the patients treated. In the first group 53 testes were operated on and re-examined and in the older group 43. As the follow-up examination the size, consistency and position of the testis was evaluated and the result of the operation was considered as good when these criteria were found to be normal.

A third group of patients was also included in the material. This group consisted of 102 boys operated upon during the same period before the age of 6 for an inguinal hernia without cryptorchism. These patients were selected at random from the case files for each of the years 1933 to 1957. The number for each year was roughly the same and the age distribution corresponded with that of the first group. To the parents of these patients was sent a questionnaire. When the information obtained was not satisfactory i.e. the parents were uncertain

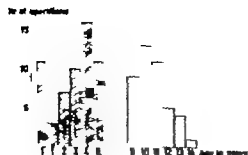


Fig. 1 Age distribution at the time of operation in groups 1 and 2.

about the result or considered it as unsuccessful the patients were called to the hospital and re-examined. For different reasons no information was available about 6 patients. Of the other 96 patients 7 were re-examined in person.

The operation methods were the same throughout the relevant period.

Results

The primary result of the orchiopexy according to the available case notes was satisfactory in group 1 and 2 in about 78 % of the operations. It was stated that the testis had been of normal size and had been placed in the scrotum. In the younger age group the operation had been unsuccessful in 12 cases out of 58 one patient had a testicular aplasia on the operated side and in one patient the case notes did not give any details of the result. In the older age group 9 operations gave an unsatisfactory result and in two patients the testis was found to be smaller than normal.

Both groups were found to be comparable with regard to the testicular position before the operation. Between 60 and 70 % of the testes were situated in the neighbourhood of the external ring a smaller number was found in the canal

and in both groups only a few had an abdominal position.

At the follow-up examination 41 testes of the 58 operated in the younger age group were found to be normal with regard to size consistency and position. The corresponding figure for the older group was 27 out of 41. Expressed in percentages, the result was satisfactory in 77 and 63 % respectively. In both groups the rest of the testes showed an abnormal position and/or a more or less pronounced atrophy. In the younger age group one testis was already missing at the operation, an extrascrotal position with or without demonstrable atrophy was found at the follow up in 8 cases and 10 testes were atrophic with or without an abnormal position. In all 12 testes (23 %) were in some way or other abnormal in this group. In the older age group 16 testes (37 %) were atrophic but two of these had been found smaller than normal already at the operation. In this group no testis was found in an abnormal position without being smaller than normal.

In the third group of 96 re-examined patients who had been operated upon for

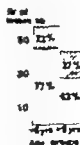


Fig. 2. Comparison of 1st results in groups 1 and 2. Unsatisfactory results (hatched bar). Good results (solid bar). Number of testes operated in younger age groups 58. Number of testes operated in older age groups 41.

an inguinal hernia before the age of 6 years, 1 patient with testicular abnormality was found. This patient had a definite testicular atrophy on the operated side.

Discussion

The results of the present investigation do not substantiate the original impression that orchiopexy performed in infancy or early childhood gives a less satisfactory final result than operations in the prepuberal years. On the contrary the figures rather point in the opposite direction. Hallman *et al.* [7] found the same tendency in their follow up study. In the older age group of the present investigation unsatisfactory results were recorded at the follow-up examination in 37% of the operated testes compared with 23% in the younger group. The difference is not very large but significant. There are however other factors to be taken into consideration when the groups are compared. There is little doubt that the two groups of patients with undescended testes are comparable with regard to the pre-operative position of the testis and the existence of an inguinal hernia. The immediate operative results were also the same in both groups and are in fair agreement with the results of large series of operated undescended testes [5, 6]. When two different age groups are compared, as in the present investigation, it must be kept in mind that an older group in a sense may be an unfavourably selected one. Patients whose testes eventually would have undergone spontaneous descent are necessarily included in a younger age group and may be more favourable

objects of operation. It is well known and has recently been confirmed by Rundle & Sylvester [8] that the testes increase little during childhood. The more pronounced and rapid growth occurs at puberty. This implies, and it is emphasized by Hallman *et al.*, that a testis congenitally defective or damaged at an early operation may be found definitely hypoplastic or atrophic only after the patient has reached puberty. For this reason it is necessary to draw the conclusions of the present results very cautiously. In the younger age group only a small minority of the patients had reached puberty whereas most of the older patients were adolescents at the time of the follow up. To get a quite comparable figure the younger age group ought to be followed at least to puberty and the present investigation does not warrant the conclusion that prepuberal operations give less satisfactory final results. Even if, on the other hand, it cannot be wholly excluded it seems very unlikely that a re-examination of the younger age group during or after puberty would so change the figures that it could be shown that early orchiopexy gives a less satisfactory result than prepuberal operations.

The third group of patients who had been operated upon for an inguinal hernia not combined with undescended testis was selected to serve as control group if the early operations (first group) yielded a high incidence of primary failures. It is known that surgical repair of inguinal herniae in childhood is in a certain number of cases followed by testicular atrophy. According to Andreassen & Lindenberg [1] this incidence is very high when the operations are performed in departments

of general surgery and not by paediatric surgeons. This statement is not confirmed by a recent investigation by Fahlström *et al* [4], who found an incidence of testicular atrophy of 1% following hernial repair in young boys. Bauer & Hesse [2] give the incidence of testicular atrophy after hernia operations as 3.1%, but this figure apparently concerns adults. In the present investigation about 1% of testicular abnormalities were found. The figure is, for obvious reasons, not entirely reliable. In two-thirds of the material the evaluation of the results was based only on observations by the parents. Even if such information according to Hallman *et al* is fairly accurate it seems wiser not to draw too extensive conclusions. It must also be kept in mind that most of these patients had not reached puberty. In spite of the uncertainty of the results, it seems unlikely that the figure for testicular damage following the surgical repair of inguinal hernia can be very much higher in the present material than the 1% given.

Summary

A group of 52 children, who had been operated upon before the age of 6 years for an inguinal hernia combined with undescended testis, was re-examined with regard to their testicular status. It was possible to get reliable information on all except one. This group was compared with a group of 41 patients who had undergone surgery for the same combination in the prepubertal years. In the latter group 40 patients were re-examined. The primary operative results were the same in both groups. The final results were slightly better in the younger age group, but it is pointed out that most of the patients in this group had not reached puberty. Testicular damage may not be apparent before this time and for this reason the two groups were not entirely comparable.

A third group of 102 infants and children of the same age as the first group operated upon for an inguinal hernia, was also followed up and it is concluded that the incidence of postoperative testicular damage was probably about 1%.

References

1. ANDREASSEN, M. and LINDENBERG, J. Ekubktion i the VIII Nordis Paediatric Congress, Copenhagen, 1961.
2. BAUER, A. M. and HESSE, F. Hodenatrophie nach Leistenbruchoperationen. *Arch Woch* 41 921 1957.
3. BERGSTRAND, O. G. and QVIST, O. Treatment of the undescended testis. *Acta Paediat* (Stockh), 49 760, 1960.
4. FAHLSTRÖM, G. HOLMSTRÖM, L. and J. HANSSON, H. Atrophy of the testis following operations upon the inguinal region in infants and children. *Acta Chir Scand* 126 00, 1963 (in press).
5. GROSS, R. and JEWETT, Th. C. Surgical experience from 1-23 operations for undescended testis. *JAMA*, 166 634 1954.
6. GROSS, R. and REYNOLDS, R. L. Treatment of the undescended testis. *Pediatrics* 24 266, 1963.
7. HALLMAN, N., HJELT, L., PAATILA, M. and SALLANEN, M. Undescended testis. *Acta Chir Gynaec Fenn*, 46 22, 1957.
8. RUNDLE, A. T. and SYLVESTER, P. P. Measurement of testicular volume. *Arch Dis Child*, 37 819 1962.
9. SNYDER, JR., W. H. and CRAFTY, L. Surgical management of undescended testes. *JAMA* 157 120 1953.

Submitted Oct. 25, 1963

Accepted Oct. 31, 1963

(C.G.B.) Department of Pediatrics
Kronprinsessan Lovisas Barnsjukhus
Pölstergatan 20
Stockholm
Sweden

Institute for the Care of Mother and Child and Institut of Physiology Czechoslovak Academy of Sciences, Prague Czechoslovakia

Free Fatty Acid and Glucose in the Blood of Various Groups of Newborns Preliminary Report

by V. MELICHAR, M. NOVÁK, P. HAHN and O. KOLDOVSKÝ

Immediately after birth, changes in the RQ indicate a preferential utilization of lipids [1-6]. Van Duyne & Havel [2] and Novák *et al.* [4] showed that immediately after birth the blood-glucose level falls, while the free fatty acid (FFA) content of the blood increases. The intravenous administration of glucose prevents this rise in FFA content [4]. It has been also shown [3] that the relationship between FFA and glucose contents in the blood is different in the newborn than later in life.

In the present paper this relationship has been studied in more detail.

The blood levels of FFA and glucose were determined about 12 hours after birth in several groups of newborn infants (Table 1). Fig. 1 shows that in full-term normal infants there is a negative correlation between these two indicators. In hypotrophic infants (born at term but

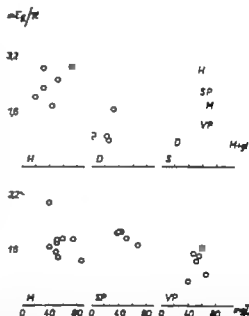


Fig. 1 Relationship between blood glucose (abscissa) and free fatty acid (ordinate) content in newborn infants. M - full term infants, 0.623, $p < 0.03$, SP - slightly premature infants, - 0.93, $p < 0.02$, VP very premature infants, H hypotrophic infants, D infants from diabetic mothers, S summary. Infants given glucose load are also shown - M gl (20 ml of 10% glucose solution into the umbilical vein and 80-110 ml of 10% solution (a crage 103 ml) by mouth in first 8 postnatal hours - 6 healthy newborn babies). St statistical significance of differences in summary: () In blood-glucose levels in different groups: () lower than all other groups, $p < 0.01$; M gl higher than all other groups, $p < 0.001$; (b) In FFA level: M SP $p < 0.03$, M VP $p < 0.02$; M H, $p < 0.002$; M D $p < 0.002$; VP H, $p < 0.001$; VP SP $p < 0.001$; SP H, not signif.

TABLE 1 Distribution of newborn infants

| | Body weight (g) | Gestational age (weeks) |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Slightly premature | 1800-2400 | 34-37 |
| Very premature | 1240-1730 | 28-32 |
| Hypotrophic | 1350-2310 | 38-41 |
| Diabetic mother | 3150-4580 | 32-37 |
| Full term | 2850-4200 | 38-41 |

weighing much less) a low level of glucose and a high level of FFA were found. In newborn infants of diabetic mothers both levels were very low. Premature infants all ways had low levels of glucose [5, 6, 7], those born between weeks 28 and 32 showing very low levels of FFA, while those born between weeks 33-36 had high FFA levels.

These differences indicate either differences in the amount of stored fat or a

different utilization of carbohydrates and fats. The second possibility is indicated by the fact that in full term normal infants and slightly premature infants there is a significant correlation between glucose and FFA content (as is usual for adults), while in other groups this is not the case. It is hoped that further data may help us to define "hypotrophic" infants more exactly.

References

1. BAZÁK, E.: Animal respirometry and calorimetry IV. Thermal regulation in newborn—in Czech. *Respiratory Costs Academic*, 19: 39, 1961.
2. VAN DUYNE, C. M. and HAVEL, R. J.: Plasma UFA concentration in fetal and neonatal life. *Proc Soc Exp Biol (N Y)*, 192: 590, 1969.
3. MELICHAR, V., NOVÁK, M., HANŮŠ P., KOLDOVSKÝ O., and ZEMAN L.: Changes in the blood levels of lipid metabolites and glucose following a fatty meal in infants. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51: 481, 1962.
4. NOVÁK, M., MELICHAR, V., HANŮŠ P., and KOLDOVSKÝ O.: Levels of lipids in the blood of newborn infants and the effect of glucose administration. *Physiol Bohemoslov* 19: 435, 1961.
5. SIVIERI, F., DARRI, O. and COPPOLA, M. G.: Glicemia e curva glicemica da carico nel neonato, *Laborat*, 31: 457, 1960.
6. SMITH, C. A.: *The Physiology of the Newborn Infant*. Carbohydrate, fat assimilation and metabolism. III. Edition Chicago 1959.
7. ZETTERSTEDT, R.: *Genetic Stability of the Newborn*, Ciba Found. J. Churchill Ltd. p. 69, 1961.

Submitted Sept. 9, 1963

Accepted Oct. 30, 1963

Institut for the Care of Mother and Child
Karlův Městec 157
Praha 4 - Podolí
Czechoslovakia

From the Department of Pediatrics, Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm, Sweden

Respiratory Studies in Children. VII

Serial Studies of Mechanics of Breathing Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Provoked Asthmatic Attacks¹

by INGA ENGSTRÖM

Among the diagnostic procedures to which asthmatic patients have to submit the provocation test is of major importance. The aim of the test is to assess whether a suspected allergen may elicit asthmatic symptoms on inhalation. In children in whom specific and polyvalent allergies are common [13] this test is repeatedly performed in the same patient to distinguish between latent and manifest allergies [3, 7, 14].

Inhalation of allergen to which the patient is sensitive leads to airway obstruction with increased pulmonary flow resistance [8, 15], decreased flow of air as assessed by measurements of forced expiration [1, 14, 16] and uneven ventilation as assessed by measurements of nitrogen wash-out during oxygen breathing [4].

However, our knowledge of the duration and degree of airway obstruction during provoked attacks is limited. Nor is it known whether the airway obstruction adds to the hyperinflation often met in asthmatic children.

This study provides further information

concerning the immediate effect of a provoked asthmatic attack upon the mechanics of breathing lung volumes and ventilatory capacity as well as concerning the duration of this effect. The results are also compared with those obtained in spontaneous attacks.

Material

Nine asthmatic children between the ages of 6 and 14 were studied, 8 boys and 1 girl. The children were selected among those attending the Allergy Out Patient Clinic at the Pediatric Department of Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm.

The clinical characteristics of the children are summarized in Table 1. The duration of disease varied from months to 11 years. In three children the duration was less than one year. The frequency of asthmatic attacks during the year prior to study assessed in the same way as in a previous study of spontaneous attacks [11], varied between 1 and 16. The severity of the asthmatic attack was judged subjectively as in the previous study with group 1 as the slightest and group 5 as the most severe [11]. The majority of the children had slight and only two children very severe attacks. No child was or had ever been on corticosteroid therapy.

¹Aided by grant from the Swedish National Association against Heart and Chest Diseases.

TABLE 1 *Chemical data on children studied*

| | Age | Height cm | Duration of disease years | Number of attacks last year | Intensity of studied attack | Allergen |
|-------|------|--------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| B. A. | 6.8 | 128 | 6 | 5 | 5 | Horse epithelium 1/10 000 |
| G. B. | 12.5 | 156.5 | 0.3 | 3 | 1 | Horse epithelium 1/10 000 |
| E. L. | 9.8 | 143 | 8 | 10 | 1 | Timothy pollen 1/100 |
| F. M. | 8.0 | 128.5 | 2 | 1 | 1 | Birch pollen 1/10 000 |
| G. O. | 12.8 | 143 | 3 | 16 | 5 | Horse epithelium 1/1000 |
| L. B. | 10.8 | 139.5 | 0.5 | 10 | | Cat epithelium 1/100 |
| G. S. | 14.3 | 149 | 9 | 14 | 1 | Mould 1/10 |
| R. T. | 11.8 | 154 | 0.3 | 3 | | Alder pollen 1/100 |
| P. W. | 14.4 | 180 | 13 | 12 | 2 | Timothy pollen 1/10 |

Methods and Procedure

The children in this study were investigated during the same period as the children with spontaneous asthmatic attacks previously reported [11]. The same methods were applied. Pulmonary flow resistance (R) and dynamic compliance (C) were obtained by simultaneous recording of intrasophageal pressure changes and respiratory volume changes via a "reverse plethysmograph" system previously described [9, 11]. The static lung volumes were measured by spirometry and the closed circuit helium dilution technique and the timed vital capacity by spirometry with a fast moving kymograph.

All children were first examined at symptom-free status with measurements of lung volumes, forced vital capacity and mechanics of breathing consecutively. In 7 children this examination was performed immediately before provocation, and in two children 5 days before provocation. During the time interval the children were in a stable symptom-free status without symptomatic therapy. The attacks were provoked by inhalation of nebulized allergen solutions

to which the patients previous history and skin tests indicated that they were sensitive. The inhalations were performed with a Pari Optimal inhalator which nebulizes 1 ml allergen solution in around 5 minutes, the majority of the droplets being 0.5–5 μ . The symptoms started within 5–30 minutes after provocation and the recording of the pulmonary function took place immediately after the symptoms became manifest. The mechanics of breathing were determined first and after that the lung volumes and the forced vital capacity. As the symptoms gradually diminished during the test they were much less pronounced during recording of lung volumes and forced vital capacity than during recording of mechanics of breathing. In some children no dyspnoea or rhonchi remained at the end of examination. This change in clinical status was reflected in a significant difference between duplicate determinations of the static lung volumes. The mean difference in V_{FRC} was -0.230 l and in V_{VC} 0.246 l. In view of these differences the mean of duplicate determinations was not used in the calculations of V_{FRC} , V_R , V_{VC} , V_{TLC} and the ratios

TABLE 2 *Pulmonary function data*

| Case | Day of study | V _{FRC} l | V _A l | V _{VO} l | V _{TLO} l | FEV ₁ | V _{VO} forced l | C ml cm H ₂ O | R cm H ₂ O/l/ sec |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| H. A. symptom-free | -5 | 0.90 | 0.46 | 2.04 | 2.50 | 1.26 | 1.82 | 45 | 18.3 |
| | 1 | 1.40 | 1.20 | 1.11 | 2.31 | — | — | 24 | 53.0 |
| | 1 | 1.19 | 0.93 | 1.54 | 2.47 | 0.72 | 1.28 | — | — |
| | 2 | 0.83 | 0.60 | 1.92 | 2.42 | 1.46 | 1.93 | 65 | 15.9 |
| | 4 | 0.80 | 0.46 | 2.02 | 2.48 | 1.83 | 1.96 | — | — |
| G. B. symptom-free | -5 | 1.51 | 0.90 | 2.78 | 3.57 | 2.45 | 2.86 | 70 | 5.9 |
| | 1 | 1.61 | 1.43 | 2.45 | 3.78 | — | — | 24 | 37.5 |
| | 1 | 1.37 | 0.86 | 2.70 | 3.56 | 2.29 | 2.80 | — | — |
| | 2 | 1.43 | 0.68 | 3.04 | 3.2 | 2.58 | 3.03 | 70 | 3.9 |
| | 6 | 1.47 | 0.99 | 3.10 | 3.79 | 2.48 | 2.99 | 78 | 4.6 |
| E. L. symptom-free | 1 | 0.96 | 0.33 | 2.26 | 2.68 | 1.78 | 2.10 | 41 | 8.8 |
| | 1 | 1.26 | 0.66 | 1.96 | 2.62 | — | — | 24 | 20.6 |
| | 1 | 1.09 | 0.47 | 2.14 | 2.62 | 1.57 | 2.06 | — | — |
| | 2 | 1.03 | 0.38 | 2.22 | 2.60 | 1.96 | 2.17 | 30 | 8.0 |
| | 3 | 1.03 | 0.39 | 2.26 | 2.68 | 1.75 | 2.13 | 44 | 7.3 |
| P. M. symptom-free | 4 | 1.06 | 0.48 | 2.22 | 2.70 | 1.66 | 2.16 | 37 | 8.5 |
| | 1 | 0.90 | 0.41 | 1.66 | 2.27 | 1.87 | 1.85 | 35 | 6.8 |
| | 1 | 1.01 | 0.74 | 1.20 | 1.94 | — | — | 18 | 44.2 |
| | 1 | 1.00 | 0.73 | 1.49 | 2.22 | 1.06 | 1.63 | — | — |
| | 2 | 0.83 | 0.60 | 1.31 | 1.91 | 0.71 | 1.15 | 26 | 20.4 |
| G. O. symptom-free | 2 | 0.78 | 0.42 | 1.61 | 2.03 | 1.08 | 1.44 | 22 | 9.3 |
| | 4 | 0.80 | 0.29 | 1.74 | 2.13 | 1.20 | 1.67 | 43 | 6.6 |
| | 1 | 1.62 | 0.84 | 2.62 | 3.27 | 1.88 | 2.60 | 78 | 9.1 |
| | 1 | 1.80 | 1.62 | 0.66 | 2.11 | — | — | 24 | 97.0 |
| | 1 | — | — | — | — | 0.29 | 0.49 | — | — |
| L. H. symptom-free | 2 | 1.49 | 0.88 | 2.31 | 3.29 | 1.46 | 2.22 | 65 | 14.2 |
| | 3 | 1.84 | 1.21 | 2.57 | 3.78 | 1.96 | 2.63 | 89 | 10.2 |
| | 4 | 1.66 | 1.02 | 2.67 | 3.66 | 1.67 | 2.54 | — | — |
| | 1 | 1.24 | 0.67 | 2.62 | 3.19 | 2.63 | 2.66 | 63 | 8.8 |
| | 1 | 1.50 | 0.91 | 2.22 | 3.22 | — | — | 47 | 13.1 |
| G. H. symptom-free | 1 | 1.29 | 0.63 | 2.62 | 3.23 | 1.20 | 2.02 | — | — |
| | 2 | 1.42 | 0.61 | 2.77 | 3.26 | 2.16 | 2.62 | 77 | 8.4 |
| | 3 | 1.48 | 0.66 | 2.82 | 3.41 | 2.17 | 2.68 | 70 | 4.1 |
| | 1 | 2.13 | 1.28 | 3.04 | 4.22 | 2.01 | 2.82 | 129 | 7.2 |
| | 1 | 2.20 | 1.78 | 2.10 | 2.85 | — | — | 62 | 15.7 |
| R. T. symptom-free | 1 | 2.06 | 1.44 | 2.27 | 3.91 | 1.31 | 2.46 | — | — |
| | 2 | 2.10 | 1.19 | 2.90 | 4.09 | 1.68 | 2.84 | 109 | 4.8 |
| | 3 | 2.17 | 1.19 | 3.16 | 4.35 | 1.99 | 3.11 | 137 | 8.3 |
| | 1 | 1.89 | 0.90 | 2.96 | 3.88 | 1.96 | 2.90 | 124 | 8.4 |
| | 1 | 2.12 | 1.41 | 2.57 | 3.98 | — | — | 45 | 22.5 |
| P. W. symptom-free | 1 | 1.81 | 1.00 | 2.86 | 3.95 | 1.00 | 2.29 | — | — |
| | 2 | 2.09 | 1.22 | 2.67 | 3.87 | 1.26 | 2.57 | 73 | 9.8 |
| | 3 | 1.72 | 0.77 | 3.04 | 3.81 | 1.67 | 2.82 | 95 | 6.4 |
| | 4 | 1.78 | 0.72 | 3.06 | 3.80 | 1.86 | 3.08 | 110 | 8.8 |
| | 1 | 1.88 | 0.78 | 2.62 | 3.44 | 2.17 | 2.89 | 120 | 3.0 |
| P. W. symptom-free | 1 | 2.02 | 1.84 | 0.83 | — | — | — | 76 | 22.6 |
| | 1 | 1.65 | 1.43 | 91 | 2.44 | 0.67 | 1.10 | — | — |
| | 2 | 1.86 | 0.85 | 2.48 | 3.23 | 1.90 | 2.49 | 65 | 2.8 |
| | 3 | 1.61 | 0.75 | 2.66 | 3.44 | 2.26 | — | 126 | 4.6 |

TABLE 4. *Pulmonary function dimensions during attack in per cent of individual symptom free pre-attack values*

| | Mean | SE | SD | Range |
|-----------------|-------|------|-------|----------|
| V_{F50} | 117 | 5 | 15.5 | 108-155 |
| V_A | 167.6 | 13.3 | 39.9 | 137-261 |
| V_{T50} | 91.3 | 4.5 | 14.0 | 63-106 |
| $FEV_{1.0}$ | 89.6 | 8.4 | 3.1 | 15-93 |
| V_{50} forced | 70.1 | 5.0 | 4.0 | 20-100 |
| C | 48.6 | 6.6 | 19.5 | 22-83 |
| R | 540.8 | 94.1 | 293.3 | *06-1060 |

as slight (degree of severity 1 and 2). Only two children had severe attacks (degree of severity 5) and none had attacks labeled as 3 or 4. The distribution of children according to intensity of attack was thus very uneven, and no close relationships between the pulmonary function aberrations and this factor were found.

The lack of relationship between bronchial obstruction, as reflected in the increase in R, and the disability of forced ventilation, as reflected in the decrease of $FEV_{1.0}$ and $FEV_{0.5}$ may be due to the differences in clinical status. R measured in the beginning of attack when the symptoms were most marked might not be representative of the bronchial obstruction one hour later when $FEV_{1.0}$ was measured and the symptoms were lesser or nonexistent. The same factor may be responsible for the poor relationship between bronchial obstruction and hyperinflation as manifested in a probably significant relationship between R and the ratios but none between R and V_{F50} .

The day chosen for cross-sectional analysis at symptom free status after attack was the one with the lowest pulmonary flow resistance determined. This day was ob-

tained early one to three days after attack and all pulmonary function values were by then almost identical to pre-attack values.

Longitudinal study

For evaluation of the change induced by attack the values were analysed as a percentage of symptom free pre-attack values. Table 4 gives the means with SD SE and range for the different pulmonary function measurements. Fig. 2 illustrates the individual change in pulmonary function during and after attack.

The marked increase in R during attack returned to pre-attack level one to two days after attack. Only in one child (P. M.) was R still markedly increased on the day after attack and did not return to pre-attack level until 3 days after attack.

C decreased at attack and returned to pre-attack level one to three days after attack.

Forced vital capacity and $FEV_{1.0}$ decreased at attack, the latter regularly more than the former. The return to pre-attack levels however followed the same pattern and was similar to that for C which is visible from the figure. The child (P. M.) with a high R of longer standing than the other children had a lower forced V_{50} and $FEV_{1.0}$ on the second day of observation than immediately after provocation, and the values were still low 3 days after attack. An observation one week later showed values close to pre-attack level.

V_{F50} was increased at the first determination during attack, but had decreased at the second determination to values closer to those before provocation (91-133% of pre-attack value). On the day

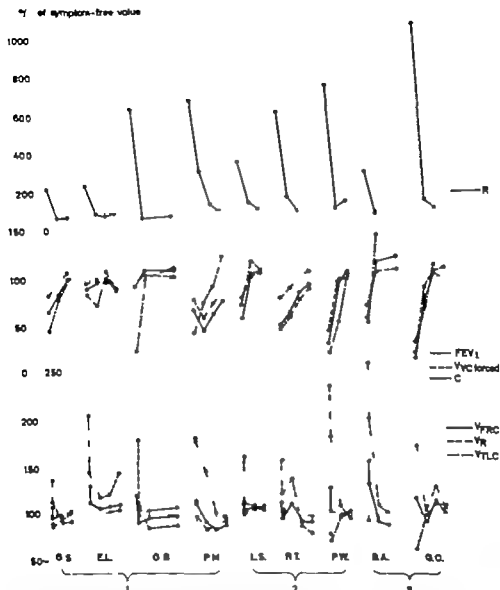


Fig. 10. Pulmonary function measurements during and after provoked asthmatic attacks, indicated as percentage of individual pre-attack values. Numbers 1, 2, and 3, indicate degree of severity of attack as judged clinically.

after attack V_{PRC} was in all children again close to pre-attack level (mean 99%).

V was also markedly increased at the first observation during attack and had decreased at the second observation

20 minutes later. The values at this moment however were still rather high (109–206%). The pre-attack level was reached one to two days after attack except in one child (E. L.). (The pre-attack

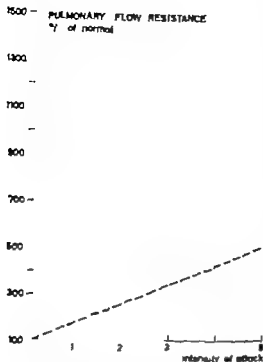


Fig. 3. Pulmonary flow resistance at attack in relation to intensity of attack as clinically judged. — regression line for the same relationship in spontaneous attacks.

V_A was only 58 per cent of predicted normal. Hence in per cent of predicted normal the value was normal already by the second day.)

V_{TLC} was fairly unchanged during and after provocation in 5 children. In 4 children V_{TLC} decreased moderately at attack but increased to pre-attack level within the same period as the other lung volumes.

Comments

It is evident that all pulmonary parameters change at the provoked attack and that a rapid return to pre-attack level in general takes place after attack. Occasionally however the pulmonary function may remain abnormal for several days after provocation even if only minor

symptoms such as rhonchi remain one day after provocation (P. M. R. T.).

There is a tendency to discrepancy in normalization rate between R and $FEV_{1.0}$, with a time lag for the latter. The most rapid return occurs in V_{FRC} , which in some cases is normal already within the first hour after provocation.

The rate of normalization in the different pulmonary function parameters does not seem to be correlated to the degree of deviation at attack.

Comparison between pulmonary function in provoked and spontaneous attacks

The change in pulmonary function in provoked attack is similar to that in spontaneous attacks [11], though the degree of change in each particular dimension may differ between the two forms of attack. An estimate of the probable difference must take the intensity of attack into consideration.

When R in provoked attacks is plotted against intensity of attack (Fig. 3), all values but one are above the regression line for the same relationship in spontaneous attacks. This suggests a difference between the two materials. Plotting of the other pulmonary function dimensions into corresponding diagrams of spontaneous attacks does not disclose a difference like the one in R. The majority of values mingle with those in spontaneous attacks. This holds true also for $FEV_{1.0}$ which was registered when the symptoms had declined and in some patients totally disappeared.

The probable difference in R between the two materials was tested by comparing the mean values in per cent of symptom free values in the 7 children with night

TABLE 5. Mean of individual pulmonary flow resistance and functional residual capacity as per cent of symptom free values in provoked attacks severity group 1 and 2 compared to correspond *g* mean values in spontaneous attacks, severity groups 1-3 and 4-5 respectively

| | | Mean | Difference | Significance of differences |
|-----------|------------------------|-------|------------|-----------------------------|
| R | Spontaneous attack 1-3 | 287.1 | 13.9 | $P < 0.01$ |
| | Provoked attack 1-2 | 301.0 | | |
| | Spontaneous attack 4-5 | 496.6 | | |
| V_{FRC} | Spontaneous attack 1-3 | 11.6 | 8.6 | $P > 0.05$ |
| | Provoked attack 1-2 | 117.6 | | |
| | Spontaneous attack 4-5 | 133.9 | | |

symptoms (degree of severity 1 and 2)¹ Comments

in the provoked attacks with the corresponding values in the 10 children with slight to moderate symptoms (degree of severity 1, and 3)² in the spontaneous attacks and in the 11 children with severe attacks (degree of severity 4 and 5) separately [11]. The results are shown in Table 5

The analysis of the difference in increase of R and V_{FRC} in provoked and spontaneous attacks thus shows that the provocation of an asthmatic attack tends to elicit a more marked bronchial obstruction than does spontaneous asthmatic attacks, however without a comparable increase in V_{FRC} . Thus there is a discrepancy between bronchial obstruction and hyperinflation in the provoked attacks compared to spontaneous attacks which suggests that the pulmonary reaction in provoked attacks is not identical to the one in spontaneous asthmatic attacks, also when disregarding the rapidly changing status during a provoked attack. However by simultaneous registration of airway resistance and lung volume by means of body plethysmograph technique [2, 6] it would be possible to make a more relevant evaluation of probable differences in pulmonary reaction.

R was significantly higher in the slight provoked attacks than in the slight to moderate spontaneous attacks the increase being as high as in the severe spontaneous attacks.

As a correlation was found in the spontaneous attacks between the increase in V_{FRC} and R [11], V_{FRC} was compared in the two materials in the same way as R (Table 5)

There was no difference between the mean increases in V_{FRC} in the light provoked attacks and in the slight to moderate spontaneous attacks but there was a significantly lower V_{FRC} in the provoked attacks than in the spontaneous attacks with severe symptoms

Discussion

The provocation test is expected to give reliable information about bronchial allergy without simultaneous harmful effect upon the pulmonary function. To avoid or minimize the hazards of impairing the

¹ Four children belonged to severity group 1 and 3 to severity group 2.

² One child belonged to severity group 1-3 to severity group 4, and 6 to severity group 3.

pulmonary function by provocation, only minimal symptoms should be elicited by using allergens in appropriate dilutions.

As previously found, signs of bronchial obstruction can be detected by an increase in pulmonary flow resistance when symptoms are minimal or even in the absence of symptoms [8]. The provocations in this study were performed with the aim of eliciting only minor symptoms. This was achieved in seven children. In two however the allergen solutions chosen provoked severe asthmatic symptoms.

A marked bronchial obstruction was induced in all children. Pulmonary flow resistance increased even more than is usually observed in spontaneous asthmatic attacks although the latter regularly show more clinical signs and symptoms [11]. The attacks, even when accompanied by severe symptoms, were of short duration clinically. Most of the signs and symptoms had disappeared within an hour to an hour and a half. On this account all pulmonary function dimensions were not measured at the same clinical status. The hanging clinical status is reflected in particular in the measurements of the static lung volumes. The first determination, performed immediately after the measurement of R and C , showed high functional residual capacity. Twenty minutes later this volume was close to normal again. Thus a hyperinflation is induced in a provoked attack, but of very short duration.

It is probable that the obstruction of the airways diminishes at the same time as the lung volumes normalize and the symptoms decline. However still one to one and a half hours after provocation, there are signs of impaired ventilatory ability

with a low $FEV_{1.0}$ and a low forced V_{90} . Thus, even if the bronchial obstruction is not prominent enough to maintain a hyperinflation during quiet breathing obstruction of the airways may exist forced breathing.

It seems that a pulmonary reaction induced by allergen inhalation can be easily recognized by increase in R and decrease in $FEV_{1.0}$ even if only minor symptoms are present. The bronchial obstruction during quiet breathing as reflected in a high R is usually of short duration but may occasionally remain a few days, even if the immediate symptoms are mild. A hampered ability to forced ventilation with decrease in $FEV_{1.0}$ and forced V_{90} may remain one or several days after the induced attack even if no symptoms are present.

The marked increase in R with only a moderate increase in V_{FRC} immediately on provocation of mild asthmatic symptoms is contrasting to the findings in spontaneous attacks [11], in which an equivalent increase in R is consistent with a clinically very severe attack and often accompanied by a more marked increase in V_{FRC} . The short duration of hyperinflation is also in contrast to the findings in spontaneous attacks in which hyperinflation may remain also when R has returned to normal.

It seems probable that the shortstanding bronchial obstruction in a provoked attack does not influence the ultimate end expiratory level and thus does not add to the hyperinflation often met in asthmatic children. However the possibility can not be excluded that repeated induction of severe attacks may affect the end expiratory level.

Summary

Asthmatic symptoms were provoked by allergen inhalations in 9 children with bronchial asthma.

Mechanics of breathing lung volumes and ventilatory capacity were registered before during and after provocation. Pulmonary flow resistance functional residual capacity and residual volume increased in all children, and vital capacity forced expiratory volume in 1 sec. decreased. Total lung capacity was uninfluenced or decreased.

Pulmonary flow resistance increased to a higher value than is usually reached in spontaneous attacks of the same clinical degree of severity. The deviations of the other pulmonary function dimensions were similar to those in spontaneous attacks. The increase of pulmonary flow resistance usually was of short duration. The decrease of FEV₁, sometimes remained one or several days after attack. The hyperinflation induced was of very short duration.

References

1. BRIDGEMAN G. L. and BRIDGER, J. H. The use of the three second vital capacity in the direct testing of bronchial allergy. *J Allergy* 28 344, 1957.
2. BRIDGEMAN, W. A. and DUBOIS, A. B. The relationship between airway resistance, airway conductance and lung volume in subjects of different age and bodysize. *J Clin Invest*, 37 1479 1958.
3. COLLIDAN, H. A study of provocation tests on patients with bronchial asthma. III. The interpretation of the provocation tests and the value of the tests for allergy diagnosis and treatment. *Acta Allergol* 8 164, 1952.
4. COLLIDAN, H. and LUNDQVIST H. Ventilatory studies of the lungs in asthma. *Acta Allergol*, 8 37 1952.
5. COLLIDAN, H., YMSKILL, O. RIFE, E. and S. ANDERSSON, Y. Studies of the registration of provocation test for the etiological diagnosis of bronchial asthma. *Acta Allergol*, 18 293, 1960.
6. DUBOIS, A. B., BOTELHO, S. T. and CONNOR, J. H. J. A new method for measuring airway resistance in man using body plethysmography. Values in normal subjects and in patients with respiratory disease. *J Clin Invest*, 35 327 1956.
7. ENOSTRÖM, I. and KRAEPELIN, S. Specific desensitization in bronchial asthma in childhood. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 46 81, 1957.
8. ENOSTRÖM, I., KARLBERG, P., HÖCK, G. and KRAEPELIN, S. Use of analysis in mechanics of breathing in provocation test in bronchial asthma. Preliminary report. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 47 441 1958.
9. ENOSTRÖM, I., KARLBERG, P. and SWARTZ, G. L. Respiratory studies in children. IX. Relationships between mechanical properties of the lungs, lung volumes and ventilatory capacity in healthy children 7-15 years of age. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 68, 1962.
10. ENOSTRÖM, I. and KARLBERG, P. Respiratory studies in children. X. Lung changes in relation to ventilatory capacity and mechanical properties of the lungs in symptom-free asthmatic children. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 829 1962.
11. ENOSTRÖM, I. *Respiratory Studies in Children. XI. Mechanics of Breathing Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Asthmatic Children from Attack to Symptom free Status.* *Acta Paediatr (Stockh) Suppl* 143, 1964.
12. JENSEN DANFELT, C. On the significance of exposure and provocation tests in allergic diagnosis. *Acta Med Scand* 133 B suppl 239 320 1940.
13. KRAEPELIN, S. Essai par exposition et par "provocation" dans l'asthme bronchique chez l'enfant. *Séminaire Hép Paris* 37 226, 1956.
14. LOWELL, F. C. and SCHILLER, S. W. Measurement of changes in vital capacity as means of detecting pulmonary reactions to inhaled aerosolized allergenic extracts in asthmatic subjects. *J Allergy* 19 100, 1948.
15. SCHENKER, M., KOWTAL, A., WITKELNIEWSKI, H., SCHMIDT, F. and GERTZ, H. A. Zur Pathophysiologie des provozierten bronchialasthmatischen Anfalls. *Int Arch Allergy* 9 65, 1954.
16. TIEFFENAU, R. *Krassen Pulmonaire de l'Asthmatique*. Masson et C^{ie} Edit. 1937.

Submitted March 18, 1964

Accepted March 23, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Karolinska Rydhuset
Stockholm 60
S. edén

The Department of Pediatrics and the Central Laboratory Ullevål Hospital,
Oslo Norway

Late Manifesting Variant of Branched Chain Ketoaciduria (Maple Syrup Urine Disease)

by RAGNHILD KILL and TORGEIR ROKKONES

In 1954 Menkes, Hurst & Craig [7] described a new syndrome, later shown to be due to an inborn error in the metabolism of leucine, isoleucine and valine, which were excreted in pathological amounts in the urine [6]. This branched-chain amino-aciduria was associated with a peculiar odor of maple syrup of the urine. The disease is therefore commonly called maple syrup urine disease. The first report comprised 4 cases out of 6 siblings, and later reports have added 11 cases distributed in 7 families [12]. Symptoms usually developed within the first week of life with seizures, intermittent rigidity and loss of Moro's reflex as early manifestations. The disease was in most cases rapidly fatal. In those living longer mental deficiency was the most prominent symptom except in two cases treated with a diet low in branched-chain amino acids [10, 11].

Assuming that only gross metabolic errors would manifest itself in the neonatal period, one might expect the existence of a variant of the disease being due to a partial enzyme deficiency or other minor metabolic error. This variant might either give rise to less distinct symptoms or manifest itself only under special provocative conditions. Little is known about the

symptomatology and occurrence of this variant since only a single case previously has been described [8]. This was a girl who since the age of 16 months had recurrent periods of ataxia and semicoma, when the urine had the typical odor and contained large amounts of leucine, isoleucine and valine. Morris *et al.* [8] believed that this was an apparently nonfatal variant.

In the present report two additional cases with a slightly different symptomatology are described. It is shown that this variant has a familial occurrence that it may manifest itself for the first time as late as in the 8th year of life as an acute, fatally ending disease.

Case Reports

Case 1

U F a girl born June 1961 and the second child of unrelated and healthy parents, both 38 years old and without any previous history of illness. The child was born at term after a normal pregnancy. Weight at birth 3900 g., length 53 cm. Because of cyanosis and respiratory distress, presumably caused by pethidine given to the mother during delivery she was admitted to the Pediatric Department where she recovered within a few hours. Since the

of 6 months she several times developed otitis media bilaterally. Spontaneous perforation usually occurred after a few hours. During these attacks, often associated with high fever she never had any neurologic symptoms or signs. Her next stay in the Pediatric Department was in Sept 1967. Three days prior to admission she developed bilateral otitis media with fever (39°C) and spontaneous perforation. The next day she was afebrile but suddenly developed attacks of 2-4 minutes duration when the body became stiff in opisthotonus. In the course of the day she had more than twenty attacks and became more and more lethargic.

On admission she was 18 months old, well-nourished, well-developed with fair skin, blue eyes and very blond hair. She was afebrile but unconscious, only responsive to painful stimuli. There was purulent secretion from the right ear through a dull thickened tympanic membrane with small perforation. Electroencephalogram showed slow activity without any focal signs. The cerebrospinal fluid contained no cells and the concentration of total protein (13 mg/100 ml) was normal. She had metabolic acidosis with total-CO in serum 7 mEq/L. Chloride levels were normal. There was a slight hyponatremia with 2.9 mEq/L as the lowest recorded value. Blood sugar, uric acid, sedimentation rate, leucocyte count, hemoglobin, sodium, calcium and phosphorus determinations showed normal values. The urine contained protein. Rothera and Gerhardt reactions were positive. In the days after admission a strong, peculiar odor was noticed and described as reminding of curry. Chromatogram of the urinary amino acids showed increased excretion of leucine and valine. There was also present a spot in the chromatogram believed to be due to methionine? She remained unconscious for three days and had during this time several attacks of tonic and clonic convulsions with torsion spasms of the extremities.

She was treated with luminal and chloral for her convulsions. She received intravenous infusions of saline, glucose and sodium lactate which resulted only in a slight increase in

total CO₂. She was no longer comatose after three days and the peculiar odor of the urine disappeared. The first 10 days in the hospital she received no antibiotics, but was later treated with sulfonamides and penicillin on account of pyuria with growth of *E. coli* in the urine. Two days after discharge she was readmitted with symptoms of otitis media bilaterally (39°C). The course was uncomplicated and the urine was without any peculiar odor.

She is now 28 months old, physically well developed and of normal weight and length. Her ocularity is larger than usual for her age and psychological examination using the Terman Merrill and Gear tests suggest that the child is normally developed. Since her stay in hospital the parents have three times noticed a slight odor of the urine when she had normal temperature. At two occasions she had infections with temperature to 40°C without any peculiar smell of the urine. Chromatography of the urine at several occasions have showed no pathological findings. The mother has been told to restrict the intake of milk and to withdraw milk during periods of fever. A synthetic diet low in branched-chain amino acids [9] is in store if the child should go into a new period of illness.

Case 2

B. F., born March 1955, the 6-year-old brother of the preceding case was born at term after an uncomplicated pregnancy. Birth weight 4060 g. He was admitted to the Pediatric Department at 8 months of age on account of vomiting, diarrhoea and fever. At admittance the temperature was 38.6°C both tympanic membranes were injected and paracentesis was performed on both ears with the emptying of a small amount of pus containing *Staph. aureus* from the right ear. The cerebrospinal fluid contained a normal number of cells whereas the total protein concentration was definitely increased (99 mg/100 ml). Except vomiting there were no other signs or symptoms suggesting involvement of the central nervous system. EEG findings were normal.



Fig. 1

Fig. 1. Chromatogram of amino acids in the serum of the 8-year-old boy (Case 3) 1 leucine-leucine 2: valine



Fig. 2

Fig. 2. Chromatogram of amino acids in the serum from a healthy boy

Before discharge two weeks later a second puncture revealed normal cerebrospinal fluid with total protein 18 mg/100 ml.

He was admitted January 1963 to the Epidemic Department under suspicion of meningitis. With the exception of a few periods in wintertime of acute bronchitis,

the last one more than a year ago he had

been healthy and developed normally physically

and mentally. By his schoolteacher he

was considered one of the brightest boys in

the class. Three days before admission he

complained of pain in the head and the

stomach, and the temperature rose to 39°C.

In the course of the following days he vomited

repeatedly and had no intake of food. He

became increasingly lethargic.

On admission he was a nearly 8 year-old

well-developed boy with blue eyes, fair

skin and very blond hair. He was lively

with frequent respiration. The pupils were

dilated, but reacted to light. He was semi-

comatose with high pitched cries. There

were frequent tonic spasms of the extre-

mities. EEG examination showed slow

activity over all regions without any focal

signs. The cerebrospinal fluid contained 11/3

cells, total protein 48 mg/100 ml and sugar 48 mg/100 ml. There was no growth in culture and viral studies were negative. He had metabolic acidosis with total CO₂ in serum 9 mEq/L, chloride 100 mEq/L, sodium 140 mEq/L, potassium 5.1 mEq/L and calcium 5.6 mEq/L. Sedimentation rate 6 mm/1 hour, hemoglobin 14.1 g/100 ml, leucocyte count 6800/mm³ with normal distribution, blood sugar 84 mg/100 ml, urea 47 mg/100 ml. The urine was negative for protein, sugar and blood but strongly positive for acetone (Rothera's reaction). There was a strong curry-like smell of the urine reminding of the odor of the urine of his sister when she was comatose 4 months previously.

Serum amino acids. A blood sample was drawn on the day of admission. The serum was deproteinized by mixing serum-ethanol (1-4). An aliquot corresponding to 60 µl serum was chromatographed on thin layer (Silica gel G Merck) using CHCl₃-CH₃OH (17% NH₄, 2:1 w/w) and Phenol-H₂O (75-25, w/v) as running solvents. Fig. 1 shows the amino acid chromatogram which is characterized by excessive amount of

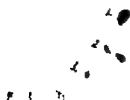


Fig. 3.

Fig. 3. Case 2. Chromatogram of amino acids in the urine from Case 2. 1 leucine-isoleucine; 2 valine; 3 histidine; 4 cystine.



Fig. 4.

Fig. 4. Chromatogram of amino acids in the urine from Case 1 in normal period.

valine and leucine-isoleucine. The last two amino acids were not separated with the system used. Fig. 3 shows a typical serum amino acid chromatogram from a healthy boy.

Amino acids in the urine. An amount of urine containing 20 μ g of creatinine was chromatographed on silica gel thin layer. Fig. 3 gives the amino acid chromatogram. This shows a massive excretion of leucine-isoleucine (not separated). Valine excretion is also considerably increased. The excretion of histidine is low, whereas the excretion of cystine is relatively high. Fig. 4 shows a normal amino acid chromatogram of urine recently obtained from the sister of the patient (Case 1).

Keto acids in the urine. Keto acids were determined in the same urine sample as that one used for amino acid chromatography but after 9 months' storage in the deep freeze. Using the method of McArdle [4], modified by Dent & Westall [2] (the 3,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones of the keto acids were extracted and chromatographed on silica-gel thin layer using as running solvent butanol-ethanol 0.5 N H₂OH (7:1 v/v). Fig. 5 shows the

chromatogram of 3,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones from the urine of the boy. For comparison the corresponding chromatograms from two healthy boys are also presented. The chromatogram from the urine of the patient shows two very strong spots which had the same R_f as the two hydrazone-isomers of ketoisocaproic acid (the keto acid of leucine). The thin layer with the two spots was scraped off, eluted in 3 ml of a mixture of 10% N₂O and 5% N₂O₂ (1-1) measured at 440 m μ in spectrophotometer and recorded as ketoisocaproic acid. The urine contained 143 mg ketoisocaproic acid/g creatinine. Because of overlapping on the chromatogram between two of the hydrazone-isomers of ketoisocaproic acid and pyruvic acid, the total extinction of the hydrazones in the R_f area of these two substances was also measured and corresponded to 188 mg/g creatinine. Control values in 10 healthy boys ranged from 5.6 to 32.5 mg/g creatinine, whereas the amount of ketoglutaric acid/g creatinine amounted to at the lower end of the normal range, possibly on account of long-time storage. In order to get more certain identification, the mixed hydra-



Fig. 5. Chromatograms of the 2,4-dinitrophenyl hydrazones of the ketosides in urine from 2 healthy boys (A and B) and from Case 2 (C).

zones from 0.5 ml of urine were dissolved in 2 ml of glacial acetic acid, 3-4 drops of 2 N HCl were added and the hydrazones electrolytically hydrogenated to the corresponding amino acids in a desalting apparatus [5]. The chromatogram of these amino acids showed large amounts of leucine-isoleucine whereas valine was not found. There was less glutamic acid (from α -ketoglutaric acid) and less alanine (from pyruvic acid) than usually found in normal urine. The findings indicate the presence of either α -ketoisovaleric acid (from leucine) or/and α -keto- β -methylvaleric acid (from isoleucine).

In summary the serum concentration of the branched amino acids leucine and/or isoleucine and valine was greatly raised when the boy was comatose and these amino acids were excreted in excessive amounts in the urine. The ketosides correspond-

ing to leucine/isoleucine were also found in high concentration in the urine.

Clinical course. He was treated with infusions of glucose and sodium lactat but lapsed shortly after the admission into coma. He had frequent convulsions lasting 10 minutes or more and responded poorly to anticonvulsive treatment. It became increasingly difficult to keep his airways free. He was intubated and put on artificial respiration using an AGA respirator after a considerable period of respiration stop when he became deeply cyanotic. Later a tracheotomy was performed. In addition to respiratory failure there was also a cardiovascular failure with dropping blood pressure and he had the last two days of his life to be kept on Aramine which was added to the infusion fluids. He died 5 days after admission.

Autopsy. No significant findings were made in any organ except the brain, which was edematous and weighed 1780 g. No gross focal lesions were observed in the grey or white matter. Microscopical examination showed a considerable spongy degeneration of the deep layers of the cortex (Fig. 6) whereas the nerve cells were fairly well preserved. The hippocampus showed no lesions. The most impressive changes were found in the cerebellum. Here the molecular and Purkinje-cell layers were well preserved while there was a pan necrosis of the entire

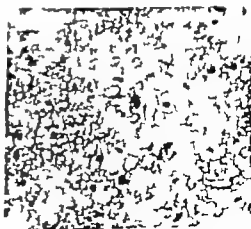


Fig. 6. Spongy degeneration in the deep layers of the cerebral cortex (Case 2).

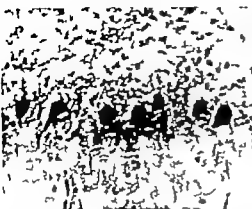


Fig. 7

Fig. 7 Section from cerebellum showing necrosis of granule cells and preservation of other layers. Weill stain (Case 2).



Fig. 8

Fig. 8. Detail of preceding picture showing preserved molecular and Purkinje cell layers and necrotic granule cells.

granule cell layer (Fig. 7 and 8). There was also considerable nerve cell loss in the pontine nuclei and in substantia nigra. There were no glial or vascular changes. The white matter of the cerebrum and cerebellum was normal.

Discussion

Most cases of maple syrup urine disease previously reported developed their symptoms within the first months of life. The symptoms of the two children described in this report appeared for the first time when they were 15 months and nearly 8 years old. Together with the 16-month-old girl described by Morris *et al.* [8] these cases evidently represent a late manifesting variant. In none of these cases has there been a progressive neurologic deterioration which is so characteristic when the disease starts in the neonatal period. The peculiar urinary odor has only been present for short periods, usually when clinical symptoms developed. The acute attacks have much in common with those of the neonatal type, the main

symptoms being ataxia, lethargy, respiratory distress and coma associated with high blood levels and increased urinary excretion of leucine, isoleucine and valine and the ketoacids of these branched chain amino acids.

Normally the branched-chain amino acids are transaminated to the corresponding α -ketoacids. Through oxidative decarboxylation the ketoacids are converted into the next lower fatty acid. Since the branched-chain amino acids and ketoacids accumulate together in maple syrup urine disease it is assumed that the metabolic defect is localized to the oxidative decarboxylation step [13]. In the late manifesting variant reported in this paper only the branched-chain amino acids were determined in the serum. The question therefore arises whether the metabolic block of this late manifesting variant is localized to another metabolic step. The excessive metabolic acidosis and the large amounts of ketoacids excreted strongly suggests that the defect

is not localized to the transamination step. A block further down in the metabolic pathway would lead to the accumulation of fatty acids in the blood. Since the step of oxidative decarboxylation is irreversible it is unlikely that the branched chain amino acids would accumulate if the block was to the right of the keto acids. It is therefore assumed that the metabolic defect has the same localization as in the more common variant with onset in the first months of life. Dancis *et al.* [1] suggested on account of leucocyte studies that the disease is due to a defect in an enzymatic step common to all three branched-chain ketocoids in their degradative pathway. Since the children with the late manifesting variant have lived without symptoms for years and developed physically and mentally in a normal way one might believe that the block is at the same enzymatic step but that the enzyme deficiency is less complete. Another possibility which is not yet ruled out is that the early and late manifesting variants of the disease are due to deficiency of two different enzymes involved in the oxidative decarboxylation.

A partial enzymatic defect might only give rise to symptoms when the amount of substrate is highly increased either when unusual catabolic stress supervenes or when the dietary intake of the branched chain amino acids is high. High endogenous protein break-down is likely to occur during occasional childish ailments, especially when associated with fever and hunger. In the girl the onset of the acute attack had a clear connection to the appearance of otitis. She has however had high fever in connection with otitis media without the manifestation of clinical

symptoms or the peculiar odor of the urine. Recently the curry-like odor was noted at two occasions without any association with illness. Chromatography showed only traces of branched-chain amino acids. In connection with the ordinary childhood diseases the boy had higher fever than at the ailment which started the fatally ending disease. In the girl reported by Morris *et al.* [8] the recurrent episodes of ataxia possibly were associated with periods of teething according to the parents. No apparent correlation was found between the total protein intake and the excretion of keto acids in the random specimens examined.

This girl and the two cases reported here have many features in common. All were fair-haired, fair skinned and blue-eyed children. This syndrome in the same way as phenylketonuria (Folling's disease) [3] may therefore be associated with lack of pigment. Important differences in symptomatology however also exist. In the case described by Morris *et al.* [8] episodes of ataxia recurred from the age of 16 months until the case was reported when the child was 41 months old. In contrast coma for three days has been the single episode in the girl. In the boy the fatally ending disease was the first attack. Since this metabolic error may give rise to a fatally ending disease at the age of 8 years maple syrup urine disease should be seriously considered in all cases of acute acidosis, coma, convulsions and fever of unknown etiology throughout childhood. Since the urine odor may be absent even in a fatally ending case [1*], the search for branched-chain ketonaciduria should possibly not be restricted to the cases with a peculiar odor of the urine.

The electrolyte aberration may be of importance in the diagnosis of such cases. The characteristic finding was a pronounced metabolic acidosis with normal sodium and chloride levels. This would suggest the presence of high levels of anions not determined. Having ruled out uremia and more common metabolic disorders such as diabetes mellitus, the normo- or hypo-chloremic acidosis would most likely be due to the presence of organic anions ordinarily not determined in the clinical routine laboratory.

A diagnosis was not made when the children lapsed into coma. One might therefore in retrospect wonder whether such severe attacks might be influenced essentially by a change of treatment. In fusion of glucose and NaHCO_3 were in both cases started immediately after the admission but the clinical symptoms progressed. This refractoriness to treatment was probably not due to morphological cerebral damage since the girl was comatose for three days and has completely recovered. A reduction of the blood levels of branched-chain amino acids and ketoacids would probably lead to an improvement of the conditions. Since the molecular weight of these substances are slightly more than one hundred, they probably are highly dialyzable. Treatment with artificial kidney should therefore be considered. Respiratory distress and circulatory failure were the immediate causes of death in spite of all efforts.

On account of the severe respiratory and circulatory difficulties during his last days, the pathologic anatomic picture is difficult to interpret. Obviously cerebral changes due to anoxia might be expected. The cerebral edema and the spongy de-

generation of the deep cortical layers might be due to such a cause. However the Purkinje cells and the pyramidal cells of the hippocampus were surprisingly well preserved. On the other hand there was a marked necrosis of the cerebellar granule cells and of several brain stem nuclei. The latter structures are usually preserved even in severe anoxia. Attention should therefore be focussed on these areas of the brain in future cases of the late manifesting type of this disease.

Summary

With 5 months interval two previously healthy siblings, a girl and a boy developed acute metabolic acidosis with cerebral symptoms, coma, tonic and clonic convulsions and respiratory distress. The girl, 15 months old, recovered completely mentally and physically after being comatose for three days. The boy, 8 years old, died on account of respiratory and circulatory failure after 4 days coma. During the comatose periods urine of both patients had a peculiar curry-like odor. Increased concentrations of leucine/isoleucine and valine were present in the serum of the boy. Chromatograms of the urine in both cases revealed increased excretion of these amino acids as well as of the branched-chain ketoacids. The attacks were therefore apparently due to a late manifesting variant of the branched-chain ketoaciduria or maple syrup urine disease. Autopsy of the boy revealed marked necrosis of cerebellar granule cells and of several brain stem nuclei, structures which usually are well preserved even in severe anoxia.

Acknowledgement

The authors wish to express their gratitude to Dr med A. Torvik, Department of Pathology Ullevål Hospital, for his careful histological examinations of the brain.

References

1. DANCIS, J., HUTCHES, J. and LEVINE, M.: Metabolism of leucocyte in maple syrup urine disease. *Pediatrics* 22 234, 1963.
2. DENT, C. E. and WESTALL, R. G.: Studies in maple syrup urine disease. *Arch Dis Child*, 36 259 1961.
3. JERVIS, G. A.: Phenylpyruvic oligophrenia (phenylketonuria). *Res Pub A Nerv & Ment Dis*, 33 259 1964.
4. McARDLE, B.: The quantitative estimation of pyruvic and α -oxoglutaric acids by paper chromatography in blood, urine and cerebrospinal fluids. *Biochem J* 66 144 1957.
5. MINKOFF, A. and ARNDSDORF, P. A.: Chromatography of alpha-ket acid 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones and their hydrogenation products. *Ann Chem* 35 171 1966.
6. MINKOFF, J. H.: Maple syrup urine disease; isolation and identification of organic acids in the urine. *Pediatrics*, 22 343, 1959.
7. MINKOFF, J. H., HURST, P. L. and CRAIG, J. M.: A new syndrome: Progressive familial infantile cerebral dysfunction associated with an unusual urinary substance. *Pediatrics* 14, 462, 1954.
8. MORRIS, M. D., LEWIS, B. D., DOOLAN, P. D. and HARTER, H. A.: Clinical and biochemical observations on an apparently new fetal variant of branched-chain keto-aciduria (maple syrup urine disease). *Pediatrics*, 22 918, 1961.
9. SNYDERMAN, S.: Personal communication.
10. SNYDERMAN, S., DANCIS, J., NORTON, P. and HOLZ, L. E., JR.: Treatment of a case of maple syrup urine disease. *Am J Dis Child*, 100 633, 1960.
11. WESTALL, R. G.: Dietary treatment of child with maple syrup urine disease (branched chain ketoaciduria). *Arch Dis Child*, 35 485, 1963.
12. WOODY, N. C., WOODY, H. B. and TILLEY, T. D.: Maple syrup urine disease in negro infant. *Amer J Dis Child*, 105 381 1963.
13. WOOLF, L. L.: Maple syrup urine disease. In F. Linnemann (Ed.): *Erbliche Stoffwechselkrankheiten*, p. 199. Urban & Schwarzenberg, Munich, 1962.

Submitted Nov. 8, 1963

Accepted Jan. 27 1964

(R.K.) Department of Pediatrics
Ullevål Hospital
Oslo
Norway

From Dronning Louises Childrens Hospit 1, Copenhagen. Head. Professor Oluf Andersen

Familial Sex Linked Thrombocytopenia

by B VESTERMARK and S VESTERMARK

Essential thrombocytopenia may in rare instances occur as a familial disease coming on within the first year of life and persisting throughout childhood. The familial form is limited to boys, in contrast to the non familial essential thrombocytopenia which occurs equally often in boys and girls [20]. In a single report on familial essential thrombocytopenia the haemorrhagic diathesis was the only sign [18]. In all other cases the familial thrombocytopenia seems to have formed part of Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome. This syndrome first described in 1936 [1] and "rediscovered" in 1934 [2], includes in addition to the haemorrhagic diathesis a tendency to eczema and to infection [2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 11, 18, 15, 22]. Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome also exists as a non familial disease however and its signs may vary somewhat in intensity. In rare cases of familial thrombocytopenia female relatives have also been found to be affected. In two families where persistent thrombocytopenia was diagnosed in boys the mothers of these likewise suffered from the disease but in a very mild degree compared with that in the boys [7, 10]. In two other families where both boys and girls were affected with thrombocyto-

penia, the haemorrhagic diathesis did not manifest itself till the age of three years or later [16, 23]. In cases of neonatal thrombocytopenia the mothers may also occasionally have the disease. However this neonatal form is neither hereditary nor essential being due to transplacental transmission of platelet agglutinins from the mother [10]. The thrombocytopenia will, in fact subside spontaneously within few months [14].

Below an account will be given of a family with sex linked essential thrombocytopenia, which in a few cases was associated with mild tendencies to eczema and infection. The family relations are illustrated in Fig 1.

Case Reports

No. 1 was born in 1924. Throughout childhood he had a pronounced tendency to bruises and haematomas, but there was no haemorrhagic diathesis after the age of puberty. He had no predisposition to eczema or infections, though possibly recurrent otitis media in childhood. No treatment had been given. Examination in 1962 revealed blood type A, Rh-positive anti B titre 1:128. Direct Coombs test was negative. No cow milk precipitins were present in serum. Electrophoretic serum protein fractionation

showed a slightly raised beta fraction (17%) but no other abnormality. Leucocyte count and differential count: normal. Eosinophils 3%. Clinically well but later he has been admitted to hospital on account of anaemia and thrombocytopenia.

A 2 was born in 1941. Throughout childhood he had a tendency to bruises and epistaxis, and has been subject to abnormal bleeding in relation to dental extractions. There was no tendency to eczema or infections, though he possibly had recurrent otitis media. In 1958 thrombocytopenia was demonstrated. Coombs test was negative. Leucocyte count and differential count normal. No eosinophilia. During steroid therapy the number of platelets rose transiently. The bone marrow displayed a normal megakaryocyte content. Splenectomy was done in 1959. Microscopic examination of the spleen revealed reticular hyperplasia. After the splenectomy he became symptom free with normal platelet counts. Examination in 1963 disclosed blood type A Rh positive, anti-B titre 1:128. Direct Coombs test negative. No cow milk precipitins in the serum. Electrophoretic serum protein fractions normal. Leucocyte count and differential count showed no abnormality. Platelets 166,000. Clinically well.

A 3 was born in 1953. The first few years of life he had a tendency to eczema of the face and the posterior surfaces of the knees, as well as to bruises. In 1956 he had pyarthrosis. The platelet count was then 88,000. On examinations during the following years the platelet counts varied from 36,000 to 100,000. In 1960 skin test was found to be positive for egg but an elimination diet and steroid therapy did not improve the thrombocytopenia. No antibodies against platelets were found in the serum. Direct Coombs test was negative. Blood type A, Rh positive (Analysis for iso-agglutinin titre was not performed.) Electrophoretic serum protein fractionation showed a raised alpha₁ fraction (19.4%) a slightly reduced beta fraction, and a greatly reduced gamma fraction (5.3%). In July 1960 splenectomy was done. The platelet count then returned

to normal, and the boy became symptom free. In June 1961 he died suddenly about 4 hours after a minor injury. Necropsy revealed bilateral supracardiac haemorrhage. Reticular hyperplasia and various eosinophils were seen in the lymph nodes. The bone marrow showed pronounced erythropoiesis and myelopoiesis and a normal megakaryocyte content but only few plasma cells.

No 4 was born in 1961. He has always had a tendency to bruises and haematomas as well as to epistaxis. In addition he has shown a predisposition to catarrhal conditions, having had pneumonia four or five times within the first two years of life. In 1963 he was admitted to the Dronning Louises Children's Hospital (21/63). During the entire stay he had very frequent bruises, petechiae and haematomas, as well as twice purulent otitis media, twice pneumonia, and often asthmatic respiration. The skin of the face and limbs was dry, red and itching. The general condition was good all the time. The infections were treated with antibiotics. Laboratory analysis: haemoglobin 11 g/100 ml, platelets 4,000-124,000-60,000. Mild eosinophilia. Thymol, transaminase and prothrombin tests normal. Cow's milk precipitins were not demonstrated. Electrophoretic serum protein fractionation repeatedly showed a low gamma content (0.46-0.47 g/100 ml—about 7%). Immune-electrophoresis showed reduced gamma-globulin, beta 2 A-globulin and beta 2 M-globulin fractions and increased beta 1 A-globulin, alpha 2-macroglobulin and alpha 2-haptoglobulin fractions. Subsequently normal beta 2 A-globulin content and a raised beta 2 M-globulin content were found. Blood type A Rh-positive anti-B titre 1:16. No antibodies against platelets. No LE cells. The diphtheria antitoxin titre was below 10 IU unit despite three previous vaccinations, but after revaccination against diphtheria the titre rose normally. The tetanus antitoxin titre and the poliomyelitis antibody titre were normal. The bone marrow showed an excessive number of megakaryocytes and an increased number of eosinophils. The spleen

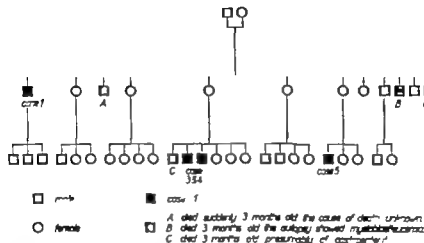


Fig. 1.

constantly presented a positive benadidine reaction.

An elder brother had died three months old after 8 days of vomiting and diarrhoea. No information is available on tendency to infection, haemorrhage or eczema. No post mortem examination was undertaken.

The mother of Nos. 3 and 4 has displayed no tendency to infection, haemorrhage or eczema. Her platelet count was normal on examination in 1963. Iso-agglutinin titres: anti A 1/512 and anti B 1/128. No anti bodies against platelets. Electrophoretic serum protein fractionation showed slightly raised alpha₂-globulin, bet₂-globulin and gamma-globulin content. Immuno-electrophoresis showed raised beta A-globulin and gamma-globulin fractions.

No. 5 was born in 1958. At the age of one year he had eczema of the face and round the genitals. He was treated with hydrocortisone ointment with good response. He has had no eczema since but repeatedly on the media. He has always been predisposed to bruises. Examination in 1963 revealed blood type O Rh-positive, anti A titre 1/128, anti A₂ titre 1/128, and anti B titre 1/16. Platelet 64 000. Platelet agglutinin titre very weakly positive. Serum electrophoresis showed slightly raised alpha

fractions. No cow milk precipitates were detected. The diphtheria antitoxin titre was below 0.01 unit despite course of vaccinations four years previously whereas the tetanus antitoxin titre was 0.13 units. The general condition was good all the time.

As the mother had had a tendency to eczema but not to haemorrhage nor to infections. In 1963 her platelet count was found to be normal. No cow milk precipitates. Blood type A, Rh-positive with anti B titre 1/128.

Discussion

In this family as shown in Fig. 1 thrombocytopenia occurs solely in boys and seems to be inherited from the mothers. The disease thus presents itself as a recessive sex linked disorder as in the family described by Aldrich *et al.* [1].

The disease manifests itself in early infancy but the clinical picture varies. The only common feature is that of thrombocytopenia with associated haemorrhagic diathesis. In the first two cases reported above the haemorrhagic diathesis was rather pronounced, but the disease ran

covered spontaneously about the age of puberty while the other became symptom free in response to splenectomy. None of them had had eczema or an unquestionable tendency to infections. These two patients presented, in other words, a picture consistent with that described by Schaar [18]. The third patient had both thrombocytopenia and a tendency to eczema, but no history of a tendency to infections. In Nos. 4 and 5 the haemorrhagic diathesis was associated with a tendency to infection and a slight tendency to eczema. The clinical pictures presented by the three latter patients were thus consistent with Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome, except that the general condition remained good all the time.

The pathogenesis is obscure. The tendency to eczema and the eosinophilia suggest an allergic factor but neither eczema, eosinophilia, nor positive skin tests were constant findings in the family reported above. No decisive proof can be given of an allergic pathogenesis. The same is true of Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome [4]. Patient No. 3 had hypogammaglobulinaemia while No. 4 had slightly reduced gamma-globulin and transiently reduced beta-2 A globulin and beta * M globulin concentrations in serum suggesting a very mild form of dygammaglobulinaemia as a possible cause of the tendency to infection. A very low iso-agglutinin titre has been demonstrated in several cases of Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome [9, 11, 12, 17]. As the iso-agglutinins constitute part of the beta-2-M fraction, a low titre may be taken to indicate dygammaglobulinaemia. In our family no remarkably low iso-agglutinin titres were demonstrated. However a normal titre does not militate

against dygammaglobulinaemia or Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome. Thus, in a case of congenital immunoparalysis, where the patient lacked the beta-2-M fraction, fairly great iso-agglutinin titre variations were observed [5] and we have ourselves had occasion to notice a rise of the titre from 1:2 to 1:64 in a typical case of Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome. The very low diphtheria antitoxin titre in two of our patients who had previously received the normal series of vaccinations seemed strange, considering the normal tetanus antitoxin titres of the same two patients. One of these was revaccinated and obtained a normal rise of the diphtheria antitoxin titre. The thrombocytopenia seemed to be independent of the infections. The bone marrow was normal in the three cases examined, and no platelet agglutinins were detected. However a histologically normal bone marrow does not preclude a functionally hypoplastic marrow. Seip [19] found a normal lifetime of platelets and histologically normal bone marrow in a patient with familial thrombocytopenia. The thrombocytopenia must therefore have been due to a reduced thrombocytopoietic activity of the bone marrow.

Splenectomy was performed in two cases. One of these patients was then grown up and had never displayed a tendency to infections. He has been symptom-free since the splenectomy. The elder brother who presented the same clinical picture became symptom-free spontaneously about the age of puberty. The other patient became symptom-free in response to splenectomy at the age of 7 years but died suddenly one year later of suppurative haemorrhage, without preceding infection.

Of course no conclusion can be drawn from these two cases. It is well known, however that splenectomy can improve the thrombocytopenia in Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome [8, 11], but that the patients may nevertheless die of suprarenal haemorrhage [8, 11]. Patient No. 4 has been treated with antibiotics against infection, with a favourable result each time so far. The general condition has hitherto been so good that steroid therapy has been unnecessary. Patient No. 5 had previously had eczema treated with steroid ointment but had been given no other treatment. His general condition is likewise good.

The prognosis seems to be good in our family similarly as in the family reported by Schaar [18]. The prognosis of Wiskott-Aldrich's syndrome was formerly regarded as hopeless. However several reports are

now available on patients who are still alive even after several years of illness.

Summary

A family is described with sex linked, essential thrombocytopenia in two generations. In two of the patients the haemorrhagic diathesis was the only sign. Of these one became symptom-free spontaneously about the age of puberty while the other became symptom-free in response to splenectomy at the age of 18 years. The three other patients had, in addition to haemorrhagic diathesis a mild tendency to infection and eczema. One of these became symptom-free after splenectomy but died later of suprarenal haemorrhage while the two others were alive and in good general condition at the time of investigation.

References

1. ALDRICH, R. A., STENBERG, A. G. and CAMPBELL, D. C.: Pedigree demonstrating a sex-linked recessive condition characterized by draining ears, eczematoid dermatitis and bloody diarrhea. *Pediatrics*, 33, 122, 1934.
2. BUCHNER, C. and HAMMOND, D.: Familial sex-linked thrombocytopenia. *Chin. Res.*, 7, 5th 1939.
3. CHURCH, L., SHARER, W., LEVENSON, S. and GERTTLY, L.: Aldrich syndrome in twins. *Amer J Dis Child*, 98, 679, 1959.
4. GELBER, J. and GAWICK, C.: Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. *Helv Paediat Acta*, 16, 17, 1961.
5. GORDON, A. and SCHNIDDOBER, J. J.: Kongenitale Leukopenie bei Fehlen spezifischer Beta₂-Globuline und quantitativ normalen Gamma-Globulinen. *Helv Paediat Acta*, 17, 241, 1957.
6. GORDON, R. R.: Aldrich syndrome: familial thrombocytopenia, eczema and infection. *Arch Dis Child*, 35, 239, 1960.
7. HATCHER, F.: Über hereditäre und symptomatische congenitale Thrombopenie. *Ann Paediat.*, 171, 36, 1948.
8. HUSTLEY, C. C. and DEER, S. C.: Eczema associated with thrombocytopenic purpura and persistent otitis media. *Pediatrics*, 19, 231, 1957.
9. KILDEBERG, B.: The Aldrich syndrome. Report of a case and discussion of pathogenesis. *Pediatrics*, 27, 342, 1961.
10. KRIVIT, W.: Purpura: diagnosis and treatment. *Pediat Clin N Amer*, 9, 533, 1960.
11. KRIVIT, W. and GOOD, R. A.: Aldrich syndrome (thrombocytopenia, eczema, and infection in infants). *Amer J Dis Child*, 97, 13, 1959.
12. LUNDEN, T. and PALMBERG, B.: Wiskott-Aldrich-Syndrom: Thrombocytopenie Eksem sowie Neigung zu Infektionen. *Arch Kinderheilk*, 186, 164, 1962.
13. MILLER, S. D. and WINKELMANN, R. K.: Eczema, thrombocytopenic purpura and recurring infections. *Arch Derm (Chicago)*, 79, 466, 1959.
14. MOWAT, M. B.: Thrombocytopenic purpura in the newborn. *Arch Dis Child*, 39, 3, 1964.
15. RIVERA, A. M. and BIERMAN, F. C.: Aldrich syndrome. *J Pediat*, 57, 86, 1960.
16. ROBERTS, M. H. and SEITZ, M. H.: Thrombocytopenic purpura. *Amer J Dis Child*, 79, 840, 1950.

17. ROOT A. W. and SPRICKER, C. E.: The trial of thrombocytopenia, eczema, and recurrent infections (Wiskott Aldrich syndrome) associated with milk antibodies, giant-cell pneumonia, and cytomegalic inclusion disease. *Pediatrics* 31 444 1963.
18. SCHAAR, F. E.: Familial idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *J Pediatr*, 62 546, 1963.
19. SKIR, M. Hereditary hypoplastic thrombocytopenia. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 52 370, 1963.
20. SMITH C. H. *Blood Diseases of Infancy and Childhood*. C. V. Mosby Company St. Louis, 1960.
21. WISKOTT A.: Familiärer angeborener Morbus Werlhoff? *Monat Kinderheilk* 61 12, 1937.
22. WOLFE J. A. and BARNARD, M. A sex linked genetic syndrome in negro family manifested by thrombocytopenia, eczema, bloody diarrhea, recurrent infection, anemia, and epistaxis. *Amer J Dis Child*, 91. 4 1957.
23. WOOLLEY E. J. G.: Familial idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Brit Med J* 1 440, 1956.

Submitted Dec 15, 1963

Accepted Jan. 27 1964

Dronning Louises Children Hospital
Copenhagen
Denmark

CASE REPORT

Diverse Chromosomal Anomalies in Two Siblings

by K. H. GUSTAVSON, L. ATKINS and I. PATRICKS

From the Institute for Medical Genetics, University of Uppsala, and the Carlsson Institution for the Mentally Retarded, Stockholm, Sweden

A number of examples of different chromosomal anomalies occurring in siblings have been reported. Most of these have been the result of multiple instances of nondisjunction occurring in the same family [1, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 15, 17, 18]. The present paper concerns two siblings with chromosomal abnormalities. One of them is a mentally retarded boy with epilepsy and microcephaly associated with an extra small metacentric chromosome. His sister is a typical case of mongolism with trisomy of one of the small acrocentric chromosomes.

Case Records

Family history. The patient's father was born in 1920 and died at the age of 42 of alcoholic cirrhosis. The mother was born in 1919 and is in good health. A paternal

uncle died of aplastic anemia at the age of 35. \ instances of mongolism, congenital malformations or mental retardation have been recorded among the near relatives of the parents. There is no parental consanguinity nor is there consanguinity in paternal or maternal grandparents. The mother gave no history of serious illness or abortions. She has had only two pregnancies.

Case 1 the first child, a female, was born in 1944 after an uncomplicated pregnancy and delivery. She was born 16 days before term. The birth weight was 2750 g. Typical mongoloid features were noted at birth. At 10 years of age psychological testing (Ter-man Merrill) revealed an IQ of 30, and at the age of 12 the IQ was 31. At the present time she has short stature, brachycephaly, highly oblique palpebral fissures, Brushfield spots, and a epicanthic eye fold on the left. The ears are low-set, small and prominent. The mouth is usually open and there is macroglossia. The lips are furrowed. The alignment of the teeth is irregular and the palate is high-arched and narrow. A loud systolic murmur is audible over the base of the heart. The muscles are hypotonic, and the joints are hyperflexible. The hands are short and broad, and the fifth fingers are short and incurved. She has small feet with marked gap between the first and second toes. The palm and finger dermal ridge patterns are typical of mongoloids with a maximum arch angle of 84° for the left and right hands. Secondary sex characteristics are normal.

Part of research program supported by grants to Professor Jan A. Björk from the Swedish Medical Research Council, the Foundations Fund for Research in Psychiatry (New Haven, Conn., U.S.A.) and the U.S. National Institutes of Health (Research Grant No. B-4320) and to Dr. K. H. Gustavson from the Prenatal Research Fund of the Stockholm newspaper Expressen.

The investigation was also supported by Public Health Service Fellowship No. 13,006, awarded to Dr. L. Atkins from the Division of General Medical Sciences, U.S. Public Health Service.

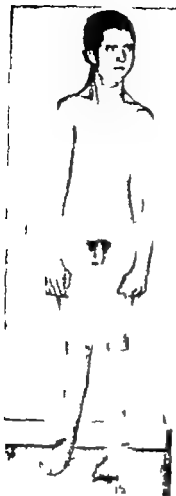


Fig. 1. Case 2 at 16 years of age.

Case 2 the second child, a boy was born in 1947 after a normal pregnancy and delivery at term. The birth weight was 3810 g and the birth length 50 cm. At birth the head, which was noted to be small with a peculiar shape had a circumference of 33 cm. The facial features, especially the mouth, were small. The head circumference was 34 cm. During the first three days of life he was sluggish and frequently vomited. On the fourth day after birth there was one episode of vomiting and a small amount of brown vomitus was noted. Platelets were normal ($0.4,000/\text{mm}^3$) and the prothrombin time was 10 minutes (normal $10-30$ sec). A stool guaiac test was negative. The hemo-

globin and red-cell count were normal. The white-cell count was $12,900/\text{mm}^3$.

Because of marked mental retardation, he was admitted to an institution for mental defectives at the age of 7 years. Physical examination at that time showed an asthenic physique with long arms and sloping shoulders. The testes were undescended. Quick stereotyped movements of the arms and hands were noted. Psychological testing (Bühler Hotzer) revealed a development quotient of 22. He was characterized as destructive, very restless and autistic. In February 1955, at the age of 8 years, he had two seizures of ~ 3 minutes duration with facial twitching and decreased consciousness. An EEG showed a generalized, moderately dysrhythmic pattern with abundant paroxysmal convulsion activity breaking through. With Dilhydant (Phenytoin) therapy he became free of fits. In December 1956 the left testis was found to be descended and in February 1960 both testes were palpable in the scrotum. At this time it was noted that in states of anxiety there was increased muscular tension in the arms and legs which were kept in different stereotyped positions. In December 1960, physical examination again showed an asthenic physique with slender bone structure (Fig. 1). The height was 160 cm and the weight 41.4 kg. Craniometry gave the following results: circumference 51 cm, anteroposterior length 18.6 cm, width 12.6 cm and cephalic index 88. The palpebral fissures were straight but somewhat narrow. No epicanthic eye-folds or Brushfield spots were present. The mouth was very small and usually open. The tongue was normal. The palate was high-arched and narrow. The teeth were normal. The ears appeared normal. There was a slight thoracic kyphosis. Otherwise the chest was normal. Examination of the heart was negative. The abdomen was normal. The testes appeared smaller than normal. There was a slight amount of pubic hair and no axillary hair was present. The muscular tone in the arms and legs was slightly increased. The elbow joints were hyperflexible.

TABLE 1. Analysis of dermal ridge patterns of Case 2 (according to Beckman *et al* [2])

| Digit | Types of finger-tip patterns | | Occurrences of patterns in different palmar areas | | |
|-------|------------------------------|-------------|---|------------|-----------|
| | Right hand | Left hand | Pattern areas | Right hand | Left hand |
| I | whorl | radial loop | Hypothenar | + | - |
| II | radial loop | radial loop | Thenar and I | - | - |
| III | radial loop | whorl | II | - | - |
| IV | whorl | whorl | III | + | - |
| V | radial loop | ulnar loop | IV | - | + |
| | | | Maximal dist angle | 85 | 45 |
| | | | Four finger lines | - | - |

X-ray films of the skull revealed slight thickening of the calvarium. Films of the other bones and the chest were negative.

The hemoglobin was 12.4 g%, and the white-cell count was 7700/mm³ with a normal differential count. The platelet count was 253,000/mm³.

Testing of the clotting factors (prothrombin, proconvertin, Christmas factor and Stuart Prower factor) with the thrombotest (11) showed a coagulation activity of 44% (normal range 70-130%).

Urinalysis was negative. A test for the presence of phenylpyruvic acid was negative and two-dimensional paper chromatography for urinary amino acids was normal.

Analyses of palmar and finger dermal ridge patterns (Table 1) showed high dist angle on the right palm, a radial loop on the left thumb and on the right fifth finger. These findings are uncommon in normal individuals. The dermal configurations were not of the type found in mongolism or 17-18 trisomy syndrome [2, 13, 16].

Since admission to the institution, he has become quieter and has had better contact with his surroundings. He cannot talk but understands simple commands. He can feed himself but is unable to dress or undress, and he has fecal incontinence and enuresis.

Cytological observations

Karyotypes were obtained from cultured leucocytes from both siblings and the mother. The technique employed was a modification of the method of Moorhead *et al* [10]. In addition skin cells were cultured from a biopsy specimen obtained from Case 2 according to the technique used in this laboratory [5]. The maternal karyotype was normal. The results obtained from both siblings are summarized in Table 2.

The leucocytes from Case 1 showed a

TABLE 2. Summary of chromosome analyses of the patients and their mother

| | Chromosome counts | | | | Karyotype interpretation |
|---------------|-------------------|----|----|----|------------------------------------|
| | 43 | 46 | 47 | 48 | |
| Case 1: Blood | | 3 | 33 | 33 | Trisomy 21 |
| Case 2: Blood | | 1 | 46 | 46 | Extra small metacentric chromosome |
| Case 2: Skin | | 1 | 36 | 36 | Extra small metacentric chromosome |
| Mother: Blood | | | 43 | 43 | Normal karyotype |

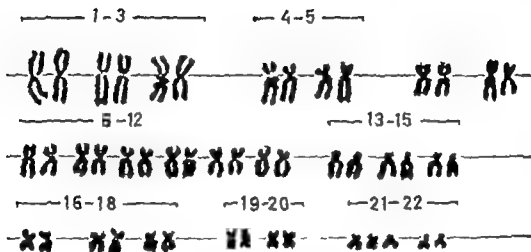


Fig. 2. Karyotype of Case 1. There are 47 chromosomes, including a trisomy in the 1st group.

modal number of 47 with trisomy in group 21-22 (Fig. 2). Both the leucocytes and skin cells of Case 2 showed a chromosome number of 47 with an extra small metacentric chromosome that appeared to be slightly smaller than the small acrocentrics (Fig. 3).

Both the buccal mucosa cells and cultured skin cells of Case 2 were negative for sex chromatin.

Discussion

Case 1 is a typical case of mongolism, and the chromosomal abnormality has

probably occurred as a result of non-disjunction in one of the parental gametes.

The origin of the odd chromosome in Case 2 cannot be determined with certainty from its morphological appearance or from clinical evidence. The clinical findings in the present case do not fit into any of the previously described syndromes related to autosomal abnormalities such as (13-15)-trisomy, 18-trisomy or 1-trisomy (mongolism). He had however a small mouth and muscular hypertonicity which are frequently associated with the 18-trisomy syndrome.

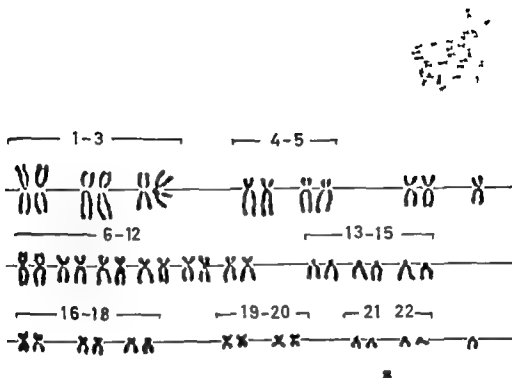


Fig. 3. Karyotype of Case 2. There are 47 chromosomes, including an extra small metacentric chromosome (placed below group 21-22).

The odd metacentric chromosome could be the result of a translocation or a deletion during meiosis. It could also represent an isochromosome for the short arm of a chromosome of pair no. 17 or 18. In the better-quality metaphase plates the lengths of the arms of the abnormal chromosome appeared similar to the short arms of no. 18 rather than 17. Isochromosomes are usually the result of misdivision of the centromere during meiosis [6, 7, 10, 14]. Since the patient is sex chromatin-negative it is probable that the extra chromosome does not represent

a deleted X, but this possibility cannot be excluded. The chromosomal anomaly could have arisen after the formation of the zygote but in this event one might expect evidence of mosaicism, which was not found.

The chromosomal abnormalities in the two siblings under discussion could be a matter of coincidence or they could possibly be in some way related to each other. One cannot say whether the factor or factors responsible for the formation of unbalanced gametes could have been present in either or both parental gonads.

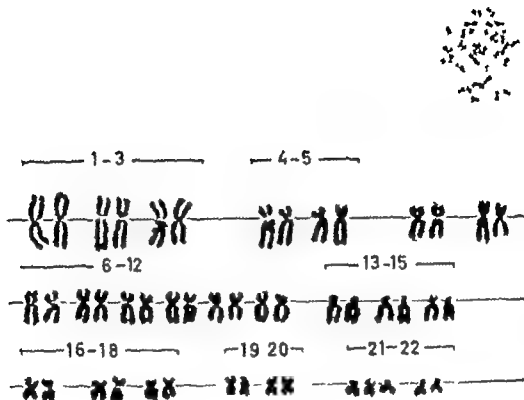


Fig. 2. Karyotype of Case 1. There are 47 chromosomes, including a trisomy in the 21-22 group.

modal number of 47 with trisomy in group 21-22 (Fig. 2). Both the leucocytes and skin cells of Case 2 showed a chromosome number of 47 with an extra small metacentric chromosome that appeared to be slightly smaller than the small acrocentrics (Fig. 3).

Both the buccal mucosa cells and cultured skin cells of Case 2 were negative for sex chromatin.

Discussion

Case 1 is a typical case of mongolism and the chromosomal abnormality has

probably occurred as a result of non-disjunction in one of the parental gametes.

The origin of the odd chromosome in Case 2 cannot be determined with certainty from its morphological appearance or from clinical evidence. The clinical findings in the present case do not fit into any of the previously described syndromes related to autosomal abnormalities such as (13-15)-trisomy, 18-trisomy or 1 trisomy (mongolism). He had, however, a small mouth and muscular hypertonicity which are frequently associated with the 18-trisomy syndrome.

CASE REPORT

Aortic Hypoplasia

by OLE EKLÖF DARGY O ILHA and PER ZETTERQVIST

From the Departments of Propædæutics, Faculty of Medicine Porto Alegre, Brazil, and the Departments of Medicine and Neonatology, Paediatric Clinic, Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden

Although well known to pathologists since the middle of the 18th century isolated hypoplasia of the aorta still remains a rather uncommon clinical entity. It is found more commonly as a coexisting anomaly in congenital cardiovascular disease [12, 16]. However in view of the relatively few cases reported and the unusual diagnostic problems presented by those patients it seems worth while reporting two cases studied by us, one of them associated with supravalvular aortic stenosis, and each associated with mental deficiency.

Hypoplasia of the aorta has been defined in various ways, some authors including both luminal constrictions of peripheral arterial vessels [1] and segmental aortic involvement [13] in this term. In our opinion, however the term aortic hypoplasia should be restricted to only those cases in which the aorta is small in caliber along its entire extent. This definition does not include the coexistence of other vascular anomalies.

Normal measurements of the aorta vary according to age, sex and constitution [8, 16]. Arridsson [3] recently correlated cross-sectional areas of the thoracic aorta in infants and children, studied by angiography to the body surface area, finding a linear relationship.

Supravalvular aortic stenosis is another relatively rare condition sometimes observed in conjunction with aortic hypoplasia [12]. In these cases there is an additional constriction of the aortic lumen just above the aortic valve. The morphological criteria for the diagnosis of supravalvular aortic stenosis have recently been enumerated by Perou [15] who found the true supravalvular stenosis both grossly and microscopically akin to coarctation of the aorta.

In many cases of aortic hypoplasia and supravalvular stenosis the patients are both physically and mentally retarded [4, 6, 15, 17]. Some of the mentally retarded patients have a characteristic facial appearance which in some cases constitutes a further clue to the correct diagnosis. Nevertheless, similar appearances have been found in other cases without aortic hypoplasia or supravalvular aortic stenosis.

The main clinical finding in aortic hypoplasia has in many cases been an elevation of the blood pressure usually ascribed to the reduced capacity of the aorta. Pressure differences present in the limbs may be explained by involvement of the appropriate arteries. Some patients reveal symptoms of congestive heart failure with reduced pulse pressure. The signs and



Fig. 5. Case 1. Conventional chest roentgenograms showing moderately increased heart volume. (A) Frontal view; (B) lateral view. Both the left atrium and ventricle are enlarged. There is a narrow vascular pedicle. The aortic arch is not identifiable.

At the initial examination in 1958 the girl was found to have facial asymmetry (Fig. 1), strabismus, loose ligaments, and palatum ograle. Inspection of the precordium revealed a slight bulge and a diffuse area of maximum impulse in the fifth and sixth intercostal spaces outside the mid clavicular line. The cardiac impulse was increased in breadth and heaving. A systolic thrill was palpable over the aortic area, manubrium, and vessels of the neck.

A harsh systolic murmur of a "stenotic" type was heard and recorded (Fig. 2), having its maximum intensity over the aortic area and manubrium with transmission to both sides of the neck. The second sound was single and well audible though not accentuated over the second intercostal space bilaterally. Blood pressures: Right arm 130/105, left arm 105/85, legs 120/80. The electrocardiogram indicated marked left ventricular hypertrophy (Fig. 4).

Conventional chest roentgenograms (Figs. 5A and 5B) showed a pathologic increase in heart volume. Both the left atrium and ventricle were moderately enlarged. The vas-

cular pedicle was narrow. The aortic arch was not identifiable. The pulmonary vasc was probably slightly dilated.

A second examination was made in 1962. No significant alterations had occurred on the ECG. The heart volume had increased further. The patient had been treated with digitalis during the last three years.

Angiocardiography using a transseptal technique was carried out with injection of the contrast medium into the left atrium (Figs. 6A, B, C and D). There was reflux into the veins of the left upper lobe. The left atrium was moderately enlarged and there was a considerable dilatation of the left ventricle. A moderate hypertrophy of the left ventricular wall was present. The possibility of low sub-aortic stenosis could not be ruled out due to the fact that it was not possible to record the pressures at this level. The aortic sub-aortic ring and the aortic leaflet appeared normal. Approximately 1.0 centimeters above the aortic plane there was a circular constriction of the aortic lumen almost one centimeter in length. The caliber of the aorta gradually enlarged above

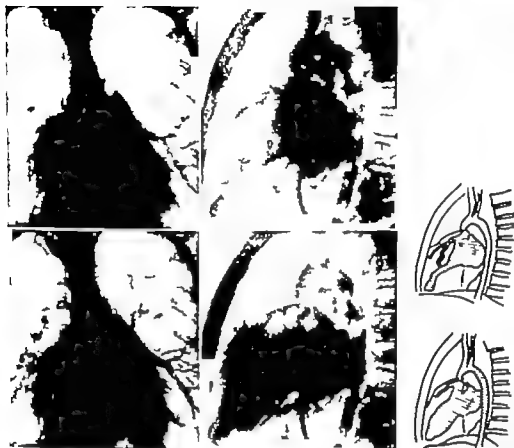


Fig. 8. Case 1. Angiocardiography with contrast injection into the left atrium. (A and B) Frontal and lateral views in systole; (C and D) frontal and lateral views in diastole. Dilatation of the left atrium and ventricle is confirmed. The aortic valvular ring and the aortic leaflets are normal. About 2 cm above the valvular plane there is a luminal constriction almost 1 cm in length. The aortic lumen gradually enlarges above the stenosis but remains subnormal in its entire length.

the stenosis but remained smaller than normal. The aortic arch was low and the vessel arising from its convexity had a long intra-thoracic course. There was no abnormality at the origin of these vessels. There was considerable dilatation and tortuosity of the anterior descending branch of the left coronary artery. The right coronary artery was moderately dilated and tortuous. The circumflex branch of the left coronary artery was only partially seen.

It was concluded that the patient had a supra-valvular aortic stenosis complicated by a slight hypoplasia of the aorta, possibly in

association with low sub-valvular stenosis of the left ventricle.

At operation (Dr Cid Nogueira, PA) in Dec 1962, the systolic pressure in the left ventricle was 190 mm Hg with a recording in the left femoral artery of 115 mm Hg (Fig 7a). The narrowest aortic segment was located 1.2 cm above the valvular plane. The aortic wall was obviously thickened in the entire ascending part. Following resection of the stenotic part the systolic pressures in the left ventricle and the femoral artery were normal and equal (Fig 7b).

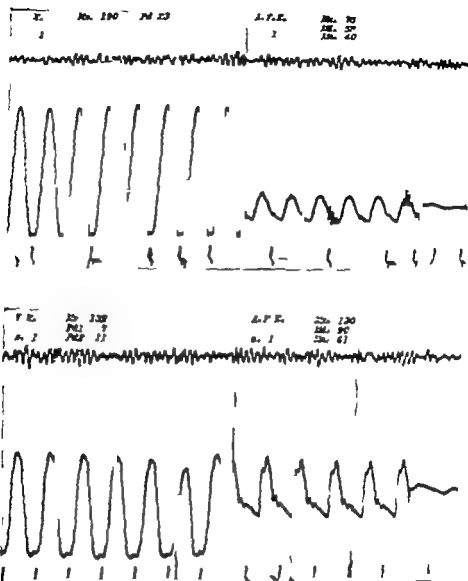


Fig 7 Case 1 Pressure recordings from the left ventricle and femoral artery () Before and () following surgical correction of the supra-aortic aortic stenosis.

Case 2

JÖ., a boy born in 1957. The patient somatic and mental development had been slow. He began to walk at 17 months. At the examination in 1962 the i.q. was around 60. At three months of age a harsh systolic murmur was detected over the base of the

heart. At about one year of age strabismus was noticed and at the age of 1½ years bilateral hyperopia was diagnosed. The patient had always had increased fatigability and breathlessness on effort.

The physical examination in 1962 showed a peculiar appearance with a prominent inter-

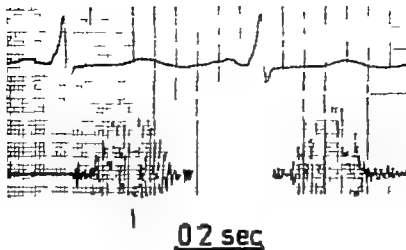


Fig. 8. Case 2. Phonocardiogram obtained over manubrium of the sternum.

frontal suture suggestion of a saddle nose, and for the most part an open mouth (Fig 2). Inspection of the precordium was normal. The apex beat was not palpable. A grade V systolic murmur and systolic thrill were found over the manubrium of the sternum and bilaterally over the first two intercostal spaces and along the common carotid ar-

teries. It was distinctly higher-pitched over the manubrium than along the carotids where it had a rumbling character. A phonocardiogram showed the murmur to be typically diamond shaped over the manubrium (Fig 8) and also confirmed that it was of higher frequency in this place than elsewhere. The second sound over the pulmonary

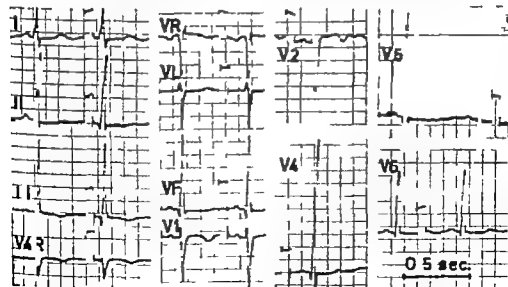


Fig. 9. Case 2. Electrocardiogram.



Fig 10. Case 2. Conventional chest roentgenograms showing normal heart volume (A) Frontal view; (B) lateral view. Slight enlargement of the left atrium is noted. The aortic arch is not identifiable.

area was single and neither accentuated nor reduced in strength. Blood pressures were: Right arm 160/90; left arm 140/90; legs 130/80 mmHg. The ECG showed typical features of left ventricular hypertrophy (Fig 9).

Conventional chest roentgenograms showed a normal heart volume (Fig 10A and B). The left atrium bulged slightly posteriorly indicating some enlargement of this cavity. The aortic arch was not distinguishable. The pulmonary vessels were normal.

At heart catheterization repeated attempts at puncturing the femoral artery failed, probably due to the small caliber of the patient's systemic arteries. Instead, right heart catheterization was performed, showing normal pressure conditions in both right heart cavities as well as in the pulmonary artery.

Angiocardiography was performed with injection of the contrast medium into the pulmonary trunk (Figs 11A-B and D). The pulmonary arteries were slightly slender and the pulmonary valves were normal. The pulmonary veins had the usual distribution and drained into the left atrium. This cavity was slightly enlarged. The left ventricle was

of normal size and configuration. The ventricular wall was moderately hypertrophied. The aortic valvular ring was of normal size. The aortic leaflets were of ordinary thickness and mobility. No obvious changes of the sinuses of Valsalva were present. The aortic lumen was markedly reduced in its entire extent with caliber nowhere exceeding half the normal. The aortic arch was short and the vessels arising from its convexity had a very long intrathoracic course. There were no abnormalities of the emergent vessels. The anterior descending branch of the left coronary artery was moderately dilated and sinuous. The right coronary artery was mildly tortuous and dilated. The circumflex branch of the left coronary artery was not visualized.

It was concluded that the patient had general hypoplasia of the aorta without stenosis of the aortic orifice or supra-aortic aortic stenosis.

Discussion

In the presence of a characteristic stenotic murmur, a peculiar facial appearance as described above, strabismus, mental retardation, and a high systolic blood pres-

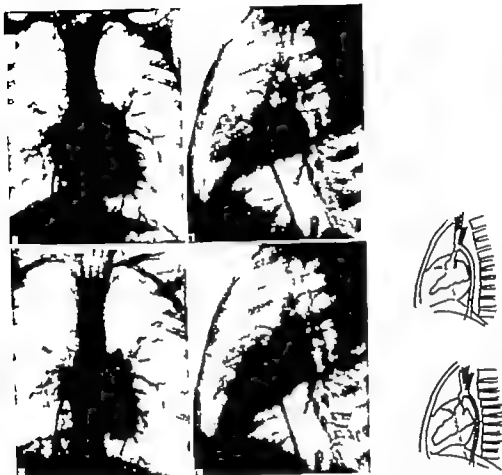


Fig. 11. Case 2. Angiocardiography with contrast injection into the pulmonary trunk. (A and B) Frontal and lateral views in systole; (C and D) frontal and lateral views in diastole. The pulmonary veins drain into the left atrium which is somewhat enlarged. The aortic valves are normal. The aortic lumen is markedly reduced in its entire extent.

sure the possibility of aortic hypoplasia should be kept in mind.

The etiology of this syndrome is unknown []. There is nothing to indicate an environmental cause or a single Mendelian gene as the origin. The combination of mental retardation with a relatively constant set of malformations indicated the possibility of an underlying chromosomal aberration [14]. In one of our cases, examined in this respect, no abnormalities could be found.

The histological picture of the hypoplastic aorta is characterized by underdevelopment of the elastic muscular tissues but no other characteristic feature is present [9].

Varying degrees of reduction of the aortic caliber may occur as a disease *ex generis* but is more often seen as a part of a complex cardiovascular malformation [1].

Elevation of the systolic blood pressure has been registered in several cases of aor-

tic hypoplasia but the diagnostic value of this sign has not been emphasized. The abnormal pressures noted should be regarded as a consequence of the diminished distensibility and capacity of the aorta. It is, however, still a matter of speculation that due to an increasing peripheral arterial resistance, in time the diastolic pressure as well will rise giving the picture of established hypertensive disease. The different pressures recorded in the limbs should be attributed to abnormalities in distribution and caliber of the regional arteries.

Since in some cases of aortic hypoplasia coexisting anomalies of the pulmonary vascular system have been described [5, 13, 17] this area should be studied as well, preferably by right heart catheterization and separate serial right ventricular or pulmonary angiography.

The association of aortic hypoplasia and supravulvular aortic stenosis is not infrequent [1-]. In most cases the supravulvular stenosis is due to an exaggeration of the transverse infolding or plication of the aortic wall at the upper limits of the sinuses of Valsalva [11]. This infolding of the media capped by slight intimal thickening may give rise to variable degrees of constriction of the aortic lumen. Although a circumferential involvement of the vessels is the most common finding, there are cases with only a supravulvular membrane causing impairment to the aortic flow [6, 7]. Still there are cases with a "free floating membrane" or band extending across the aorta in the supravulvular region causing no functional impairment at all [15, 19]. Usually the aortic leaflets are quite normal but in some cases one leaflet may adhere to the aortic wall [10] and may in this

way compromise the blood flow into the coronary arteries [18].

Differentiation between existing stenotic lesions in the aortic valve cannot be made on clinical grounds alone. The anatomical diagnosis rests on the angiocardio-graphic findings.

The prognosis in the individual case with aortic hypoplasia depends on the degree of narrowing of the aorta and the condition of the myocardium. In cases with extreme reduction in caliber the malformation causes a strain on the left ventricle resulting in left ventricular hypertrophy and heart failure [16]. So far there is no known therapy. In supravulvular stenosis on the other hand, surgical correction is possible and the results have been encouraging.

Summary

Two children are reported, presenting the syndrome of aortic hypoplasia, mental retardation, strabismus, and a characteristic facial appearance. The cardiologic findings in each case included a systolic murmur over the aorta and evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy. In one case a moderate general hypoplasia of the aorta was associated with marked localized stenosis of the supravulvular aortic portion. Following surgical resection of the stenotic area the pressure conditions were normalized. In the other case the entire aorta was hypoplastic, and as a consequence of its reduced capacity an elevation of the systolic blood pressure was found in all extremities. The discussion concerns mainly the anatomical variations of the aorta present in this syndrome and the significance of selective angiocardiology for their detection.

References

1. ARNOT M. E.: In OSLER, W., and MCCRAE, T. *Modern Medicine*, Vol. 4. Philadelphia, 1937. Quoted by PRÖLLI *et al*
2. ANDERSEN, J and NYFOS, L.: Hypoplasia of the aorta. An autopsyal case *Acta Med Scand*, 166 325, 1953.
3. ARVIDSSON, H.: Angiocardigraphic measurements in congenital heart disease in infancy and childhood. I. The size of the ascending and descending aorta. *Acta Radiol*, 1 (New series), 981 1953.
4. BEUKEN A. J. APTIS, J and HARMJANS, D. Supravalvular aortic stenosis in association with mental retardation and certain facial appearances. *Circulation*, 26 1235, 1962.
5. BULGARINELLI, R.: Le moderne tecniche di diagnostica cardiologica nello studio di un rarissimo caso di ipoplasia della polmonare dell'aorta. *Minerva Pediatr* 8 1373, 1958.
6. BURNET A. F. Supra aortic stenosis associated with Marfan syndrome *Brit Heart J* 29 143, 1958.
7. CHICK, S., FISKE, M. I. and HATAYAMA, E.: Supra aortic stenosis. *Amer J Clin Path*, 23 293, 1957.
8. DOTTER, C. T. and STEINBERG, L.: The angiographic measurement of the normal great vessels. *Radiology* 32 333, 1949.
9. HIRSCHFELDER, A. D. *Diseases of the Heart and Aorta*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, 1912. Quoted by ANDERSEN and NYFOS.
10. KLATTE, E. C., TAMPA, J. P. CAMWELL, J. A. and LUKIE, P. R.: The roentgenographic manifestations of aortic stenosis and aortic valvular insufficiency *Amer J Roentgenol*, 84 57 1962.
11. KREKE, I., REISS, R., STRAUSS, L., BLU MEYTHAL, B. and RABONOFFSKY, L. Supravalvular stenosis of the aorta. *J Surg* 149 819 1959.
12. LEV M.: *Diagnosis of Congenital Malformed Hearts* Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, Ill., 1953.
13. LINDER, L.: Aortic hypoplasia, an unusual cause of congestive heart failure. *Cardiologia* 36 309 1960.
14. PALMER, C. G., LUKIE, P. R., MERRITT A. D. and PRINZ E. L.: Supravalvular aortic stenosis genetic and chromosomal studies. Preliminary report read at the meeting of the *Amer Soc Human Gen*, July 19-21, 1963.
15. PEROU M. L.: Congenital supravalvular aortic stenosis. *Arch Path*, 71 453, 1961.
16. PRÖLLI, K., HEIKEL, P. E. and HALOVEN P. L.: Hypoplasia of the aorta. Report of case. *Amer Heart J* 57 299, 1959.
17. SOULÉ, P., VERVANT P., CORONEL, F. BOUCHARD, F. FORMAN J. ALBOU E. and LESTYNER, M.: Hypoplasie de l'aorte et des branches de l'artère pulmonaire (Deux observations.) *Arch Mal Coeur* 55 430, 1962.
18. STARR, A., DOTTER, C. and GRISWOLD H.: Supravalvular aortic stenosis. Diagnosis and treatment. *J Thor Surg (St. Louis)*, 41 124, 1961.
19. TORRES, E. T. and CAVALCANTI, A. R.: Congenital elastic band of aortic aile *Amer Heart J* 65 630, 1963.

Submitted Oct. 21, 1963

Accepted Nov 4, 1963

Department of Roentgenology
Paediatric Clinic
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

Cardiomyopathy in Friedreich's Ataxia

With Studies of Cardiovascular and Respiratory Function

by CLAES THORÉN

(Supplement 153)

The main purpose of the investigation is to study the presence and nature of the heart disease in Friedreich's ataxia. The clinical features and haemodynamics of the cardiomyopathy and its effect on myocardial function are studied. This is done by means of heart catheterization, determination of circulatory dimensions and lung function, as well as by exercise tests and measurements of the peripheral circulation. The development of the ECG changes and the way in which they are influenced by various functional conditions are also analyzed. In addition, the patho-anatomical background of the heart disease is studied.

The series comprises 56 cases of Friedreich's ataxia classified into four groups according to the degree of physical handicap. A clinical examination is made of 40 patients as well as of their parents and sibs. In addition 8 "atypical" cases are examined and also 34 patients with other neurological syndromes, previously suspected to be Friedreich's ataxia.

A definitely abnormal ECG is demonstrated in about 90% of the cases of Friedreich's ataxia. No correlation is found between the degree of neurological dysfunction and the degree of heart disease

whereas the latter shows a similarity in sibs. In 5 cases, the heart disease is detected before the neurological manifestations. Signs of cardiomyopathy are present in only one sibship among the "atypical" cases, and in only one of the excluded cases who had a form of chronic exophthalmopathy.

Degeneration of the myocardium as well as of certain nervous tissue is suggested to be the result of a single genetic defect. Friedreich's syndrome is therefore proposed as a more suitable name for the disease.

Three neurologically healthy sibs of the patients as well as one mother have an obviously pathological ECG but it cannot be determined whether isolated cardiomyopathy does, in fact, occur in these families.

The most common ECG changes are T wave inversion, signs of left ventricular hypertrophy and extrasystoles. Work on the bicycle ergometer—performed in the wheel-chair cases by a special method devised for cranking—is accompanied by reversion of the T waves in more than two-thirds of the patients. Similar normalization occurs during an orthostatic test in one-third of the cases and in half of those in which ganglionic block is induced.

A follow up study of the ECG shows reversion of the T waves in one third of the cases.

The blood volume and the total amount of haemoglobin are found to decrease with the degree of physical handicap, as a result of inactivity and muscular atrophy. The heart volume in relation to the total amount of haemoglobin is on the contrary increased.

The disease is characterized by an abnormally high heart rate despite a low working intensity. This is explained by a low oxygen pulse and, as a rule, an extremely low stroke volume. The filling pressure of the ventricles increases with the duration of the disease.

Despite a low cardiac output in relation to oxygen uptake—which applies in the majority of cases—signs of poor oxygen utilization are present, even in the few patients with a more hyperkinetic circulation. A disturbed distribution of the cardiac output is suggested as the cause.

During work, the increase in cardiac output is generally ordinary in relation to oxygen uptake despite a decrease in stroke volume in several cases.

Studies of the peripheral blood flow by occlusion plethysmography show a reduced flow in the forearm and calf at rest, as well as reactive hyperaemia in correlation to the degree of physical handicap. During ganglionic block, an increase in reactive hyperaemia is noted in the wheel-chair cases. Muscular inactivity and raised vasomotor tone are suggested to be responsible for the decreased blood flow. A decreased cardiac output is a possible contributory factor.

Angiocardiography discloses hypertrophy and rigidity of the walls of the left

ventricle and systolic contraction of the infundibulum of the right ventricle which may contribute to the systolic ejection murmur. This is shown by phonocardiographic analysis to differ from a murmur of physiological type.

The murmur sometimes disappears with increasing duration of the disease which is explained by a falling stroke volume and more hyperkinetic circulation.

Pulmonary function is studied by static and dynamic spirometry. The total lung capacity is within the normal range except in the wheel-chair cases, in which it is slightly reduced, due to a greater degree of kyphoscoliosis. Friedreich's ataxia is characterized by a raised residual volume, a high ratio of functional residual capacity to total lung capacity and an elevated level of the tidal volume. An abnormal rhythmic activity of respiration occurs. A disturbed respiratory mechanism is suggested to be responsible for this pattern, which also contributes to the speech disturbances. The forced expiratory volume in one second is normal, but repeated forced ventilation is impaired. Interrupted transmission of proprioceptive afferents from intercostal muscles may explain the essential disturbances in pulmonary function.

Signs of generalized myocardial hypertrophy and reticular fibrosis are present in all four cases in which autopsy is performed. Subendocardial fibroelastosis and mural thrombosis are seen in the left atrium. All four cases display subintimal fibrotic hyperplasia of the large and medium-sized branches of the coronary arteries occasionally with total occlusion. It is pointed out that the pathogenetic consequences of the coronary changes are however obscure.

PROCEEDINGS OF PEDIATRIC SOCIETY

Norwegian Pediatric Association

Meeting Febr 22 1963

S Halvorsen Regulation of the Erythropoiesis in the Newborn

Publ. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 62 4-5 1963.

D Skyberg Generalized Neonatal Herpes Simplex

A boy born at term, falls ill on the fifth day of life with rapidly increasing listlessness, anorexia and cyanosis. Dyspnea with hepatic congestion and pulmonary rales develop. The condition is treated as sepsis with heart failure; the infant dies following two and a half days of illness. Autopsy revealed focal necroses in the liver and adrenal

glands together with a necrotic ulcer in the esophagus near the cardia. In the necrotic borders were demonstrated typical intranuclear inclusion bodies of the type Cowdry A together with morphologic changes similar to those described in reports on fulminant virus infections. Culture of liver tissue on HeLa cells gave growth of herpes simplex virus. The mother's blood did not contain herpes antibodies and this had made the unprotected infant susceptible to the infection. The source of contamination was not demonstrated.

The diagnosis of generalized neonatal herpes simplex has not previously been made in Norway.

Meeting March 29 1963

Al Seip Hereditary Hypoplastic Thrombocytopenia

Publ. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 52 370, 1963.

Arne Kåss Taberous Sclerosis

A case of tuberous sclerosis has been observed in the Pediatric Department in Vestfold County Hospital. There is nothing significant in the family history. The pregnancy was uneventful. The patient is a ill ovular twin and up till now the other twin has prevented no abnormal symptoms. A few weeks old, the patient presented psychomotor retardation. At four months of age an exanthema typical of adenoma sebaceum was found with marked papillary atrophy; pneumoencephalography revealed intraventricular tumors in the frontal and tem-

poral horns. Biopsy of skin from the face showed changes compatible with the diagnosis. Prednisone treatment kept up over several weeks gave no sure clinical improvement, and renewed pneumoencephalography revealed unaltered conditions. Up till now the patient has presented no epileptic symptoms. The dementia was markedly progressive and 18 weeks of age the patient was transferred to a mental home.

Dystera Angensen. Hereditary Non-spherocytosis II molytic Anemia

The patient, E. B. is the second of 10 sisters. The mother has a tendency to anemia, particularly during pregnancy and has frequently had iron treatment. The now 4 year-old sister had icterus in the neonatal

period and was anemic at 2 months of age. The anemia disappeared at about 1 year of age following iron treatment.

Pregnancy and birth were normal. Birth weight was 3210 g. At two weeks of age the patient was slightly icteric and pale. Four weeks old she was admitted to the Pediatric Department of the University Hospital because of anemia. Blood tests: Hemoglobin 11%, Saturation Index 1.0. Coombs' reaction: Negative. Reticulocytes: 14%. Thrombocytes: 180,000. Leucocytes: 8600 with normal differential count. There was anisocytosis but no spherocytosis. Bone marrow: Lively normoblast erythrocytopoiesis. Serum iron: 48 gamma per cent. Osmotic fragility: Normal. The life span of the erythrocytes (Cr⁵¹) was reduced; it was 23 days in the patient and 28 days in the mother.

Preliminary examinations have given no

explanation for the shortened life span of the erythrocytes. Using the Dacie method, autohemolysis was found to be markedly increased and the hemolysis was not hampered by addition of glucose (Dacie type II). Glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase, glutathione, glutathione reductase and pyruvate kinase are found in normal amounts in the erythrocytes (Dr. Borresen, Central Laboratory Oslo University Hospital). Hemoglobin electrophoresis of the infant blood at three months of age shows that about 30% of her hemoglobin is made up of fetal hemoglobin. This is supposed to be secondary to the hemolysis, but will be followed. The serum haptoglobin content is reduced (40 mg%), probably also secondary to the hemolysis.

The patient was initially given two transfusions. Her hemoglobin has later risen spontaneously to 75-80%.

Meeting May 24-25 1963

J. Marmunder Epidemic Pneumonia in Infants

During the period December 1962 through February 1963, 80 patients under 2 years of age were admitted to the Pediatric Department Ullevål Hospital because of bronchopneumonia. The clinical picture was approximately the same in all cases, with typical symptoms of what has also been called acute bronchiolitis, capillary bronchitis, malign tracheobronchitis, and interstitial pneumonia. Rales over the lungs were present in all patients for shorter or longer time especially when the stage of acute respiratory distress was past. Of the 80 patients, 53 were under 6 months of age, 19 were from 6 to 12 months old and 8 from 1 to 24 months old, an age distribution which tallies with that indicated in previous publications. The younger the patient the more severe was the disease. The findings of bacteriological examinations were not uniform. Only 32 patients were of bronch. Blood examinations revealed leucocytosis in 24 of the 80 patients. These findings suggest a virus etiology, an assumption borne out by the

fact that the disease usually occurs during the winter months when the incidence of colds and respiratory infections in the population is at its highest. Such infections were present in the immediate surroundings of more than half the patients. Blood sampling for demonstration of virus antibodies in the serum was carried out on 41 patients. The complement fixation reaction to Parainfluenza III showed definite rise in 4 cases, and in 3 cases a rise in the titre to Respiratory Syncytial virus.

All patients were treated with antibiotics, in most cases with penicillin-chloramphenicol, a therapy generally recommended because of the considerable chances of bacterial superinfection. However in our experience the most important treatment is oxygen vapor and, if necessary with digitalis in patients with severe respiratory complications. The treatment should be instituted at the earliest possible moment in which case the prognosis is good. In the present material 3 patients died. They were all under 6 months of age and all had cardiac complications in the form of myocarditis or pericarditis.

Ragnhild K17 Variant of Maple Syrup Urine Disease

(Will be published in *Acta Paediat* (Stockh), 53 1964)

Harald M Srensen and Eystind Treterds Neonatal Physiologic Proteinuria

Transient occurrence of increased protein excretion in the urine was considered an established fact until 195 when Doxladis and co-workers published a study in *Lancet* claiming that the so-called physiologic neonatal proteinuria is nonexistent. The authors maintain that in reality the alleged proteinuria is a misinterpreted demonstration of urates. As there seemed to be some room for doubt it was decided to undertake a renewed study of neonatal albuminuria.

From 36 healthy newborn infants were collected 107 urine samples in the course of the first, second and third days of life. In all cases pregnancy and delivery had been uneventful, spontaneous vertex presentation, and in no case had there been signs of pre- or postnatal asphyxia. Qualitative protein demonstration was done using albutix strips and Heller test and quantitative protein determination using the Claus method.

By this means it was possible to demonstrate a urinary excretion of protein of more than 30 mg% in about 40% of healthy newborns on the first day of life. This albuminuria was transient and had disappeared after the third day of life in the majority of infants. Thus physiologic proteinuria in the neonatal period seems to remain a fact.

K F See Excretion of Estradiol in the Urine in Newborn Infants with Congenital Dysplasia of the Hip

The excretion in the urine during the first three days of life of estradiol and alpha ketolide estrogens has been determined in 40 newborn infants. Eight of the infants presented normal findings, while Ortolani sign was present in 1. During the first two days of

life the excretion of estradiol was about 400 microgram in 24 hours after which it fell rapidly. There was no demonstrable difference in estradiol excretion between the two groups of newborns.

Andrén & Berglin (1960 1961) maintain that the metabolism of 17 beta-estradiol is reduced in infants with hip joint dislocation. This finding was not borne out by the present study. Only traces of 17 beta-estradiol were demonstrable in the urine in both groups of infants, finding which is in accordance with observations on normal newborns (Denzlinsky & co-workers, 1957). The two alpha-ketolide estrogen metabolites 16-alpha hydroxy-estrone and 16-oxo-17 beta-estradiol have been demonstrated in urine from newborns for the first time. There seems to be a tendency to higher values for these steroids in the group comprising Ortolani-positive infants than in the normal group. The difference is not, however statistically significant.

P J Moe S Refsum, Jr., O Knudsen Multicystic Kidney

Multicystic kidney seems to be the most frequent cause of the diagnosis of abdominal tumor in the neonatal period and may occur together with other congenital deformities, especially esophageal atresia. Multicystic kidney is often confused with polycystic kidney. The latter is, however, a bilateral recessively hereditary condition, while family incidence has not been established in any of the 70 cases of multicystic kidney reported in the literature.

Four newborn infants with multicystic kidney have been treated in the University Clinic of Oslo in the course of 5 months. Preparations from these patients showed conglomerations of thin walled non-calcified cysts containing a thin yellowish fluid. In three of the specimens fine papillae led from the separate cysts to the hilum where a rudimentary blindly-ending ureter was present in two of the cases. Microscopic examination revealed areas of renal tissue

with primitive glomeruli and tubules, hyaline cartilage (dysplastic renal tissue) and thin walled cysts and passages lined with a low cubocylindrical epithelium. There was no sign of stratified epithelium from the renal pelvis, calyces, or collecting tubules. Bundles of peripheral nerves and areas with thin and thick walled vessels were also observable.

An injury to the fetus which has hampered or stopped further development of the ureter on the 28th to 32nd day of the organogenesis may be a possible explanation of the condition. The metanephric kidney may possibly have been induced by the Wolffian duct or by the nervous tissue of a primitive mesonephric organ. The cysts may have developed because of lacking outlet from primitive, still functioning nephrons.

K Halvorsen, R Nordhagen, J Olsen
Rh-erythroblastosis and ABO-incompatibility

Reference was made to a study by Lebeck & Bagger Hansen published in *Ugeskr. Læg.* The authors maintain that ABO incompatibility between the fetus and the mother intensifies the effect of the Rh-antibodies from the mother. Treatment of material as well as the conclusions drawn are misleading.

The own material consisted of 118 cases of Rh-erythroblastosis admitted to the Pediatric Department in Bergen in 1961 and 1962. Serological examination was carried out in the Blood-typing Laboratory of Bergen. Four deaths occurred and in all cases there was compatibility with regard to the ABO system. Two of the deaths were due to other causes than the hemolytic disorder. The incidence and severity of Rh-erythroblastosis was higher when there was ABO-compatibility between the blood groups of fetus and mother. There was also parallelism between the Rh-antibody titre of the mothers and of the degree of reaction to direct Coombs test in the newborns on the one hand and severity of disease in the infant on the other.

L. Wirshing, J. - Eye Symptoms in Acrodermatitis Enteropathica

Report is given of two patients who have developed corneal changes following diadoquin treatment. The possibility that the changes may be caused by the drug is discussed. However as the opacities receded together with the other symptoms under increased diadoquin medication there is every probability that the corneal changes are part of the pathological picture and are, up to now, unknown symptom in acrodermatitis enteropathica.

(Published in *Acta Ophthalmologica* 40: 367, 1962)

P. A. Slagter. Congenital Hypogammaglobulinemia

Three patients with hypogammaglobulinemia are described. Two are believed to be true congenital hypogammaglobulinemia, while the third might be "transient physiologic hypogammaglobulinemia." The latter died at slightly over 7 months of age. In the two other patients gammaglobulin maintenance treatment has had beneficial effect.

Dagfinn Aaraberg. Cortisol Concentration and Transcortin binding of Cortisol in the Plasma of the Cord and the Maternal Plasma after Birth

Cortisol concentration and transcortin binding of cortisol in cord plasma from 9 normal infants born at term, 9 premature, and 11 infants with diabetic mothers have been studied. There was no significant difference between the three groups in the cortisol concentration of the plasma, neither with reference to cord values nor maternal values. The ratio of maternal value to cord value ranges from 2:1 and 5:1. The transcortin-bound cortisol fraction was higher in the mother than in the infant in all cases. The conjugation was significantly greater in full term infants than in premature and

there was good correlation between transcortin binding and the gestational age of the infant. The non transcortin bound, biologically active cortisol concentration was the same in mother and child. This cortisol fraction was significantly higher for premature than for full term infants. In infants with diabetic mothers the transcortin binding and the concentration of non transcortin bound cortisol were judged to lie within the limits of what could be expected according to gestational age.

Karl W. Weising: Serum Bilirubin Values in Newborn Infants Following Prophylactic Vitamin K Administration to the Mothers

Menadione may cause hyperbilirubinemia when given in large doses to newborn infants and the same has been observed when the mothers have received large intravenous doses shortly before delivery. The object of the present study has been to examine whether a medium-sized dose of menadione perorally administered prior to delivery may lead to higher incidence and higher degree of icterus in the infants. A dose of 20 mg vita-

min K was given 11 hours before delivery and the degree of jaundice was recorded on the fourth day of life. One group of mothers had used vitamin K for several days or weeks prior to delivery.

Findings: A total of 728 infants has been examined. The mothers of 372 of them had received no treatment while the mothers of 356 infants had been given menadione. In the non-treated group 40 infants (3.37%) had a serum bilirubin value of more than 15 mg% and mean value was 6.5 mg%. The corresponding figures for the treated group were 17 (4.8%) and 8.75 mg%. There was no significant difference between the two groups as regards incidence of infant with serum bilirubin values of above 15 mg%, whereas the mean value was significantly lower for the treated group. This was more pronounced with reference to the group of mothers who had been on menadione for a longer period, mean value being 8.03 mg%. The reason for this difference is not clear but at least one may conclude that a dose of 40 mg menadione given to the mother shortly before delivery does not lead to higher incidence or degree of icterus in the newborn infant.

(To be published in *J Pediatr*)

Meeting Oct 4 1963

Kj. B. Rossvall and Jan Steen Johansen: Goiter and Hypothyroidism in Children Due to Defect in the Synthesis of Thyroid Hormone

Three children with defects in the synthesis of thyroid hormone have been examined in the Pediatric Department, Rikshospitalet, Oslo. The first patient, a boy, was 1 year old when examined. The family history was non-contributory. He was retarded and had typical signs of myxedema. The presence of goiter at birth has not been established, but he developed goiter later. The I^{131} uptake in the thyroid gland was increased and fell steeply following perchlo-

rat intake. The case has accordingly been classified as a failure to form organic iodine. The second patient was a 3½ years old girl. The parents were second cousins, and several members of the family had thyroid disorders. She had a moderate goiter at birth, but showed no signs of hypothyroidism. Thyroxin medication was started at the age of 6 months. She developed normally. From the age of 5 years she had increasing goiter. There was a discrepancy between PBI and BEI. The goiter gradually disappeared when the dose of thyroxin was increased. The case was classified as a defect in thyroglobulin synthesis or proteolysis. The third patient was a 4½ years old girl. Several members of the family had goiter. She had a large goiter

at birth which was first believed to be a lymphangioma, but later diagnosed as large thyroid gland. The development was normal except for a slight retardation in bone age

On thyroxin treatment the goiter disappeared. This case was also classified as a defect in thyroglobulin synthesis or proteolysis.

Meeting Nov 22 1963

Lei R. Gjessing: Chemical Diagnosis of Neuroblastoma

(Published in *Scand J Clin Lab I* vol 15 1963.)

U. Ofstedal: Acute Leukemia in Children

In the period 1955-1962 sixty four cases of acute leukemia have been diagnosed in the Pediatric Department, Rikshospitalet, Oslo. Seven cases were for different reasons not treated. Steroid were used initially in almost all cases and were also used during later ex-

acerbations and in the terminal phase of the disease. As maintenance therapy aminopterin and 6-mercaptopurine were used. Complete or incomplete remissions were obtained in 70% of the treated cases. The mean survival time in the cases with complete remissions were 14.5 months from the start of the symptoms, the median survival time 11.5 months. The mean survival time for all patients was 10.0 months from the start of the symptoms and the median survival time 7.5 months.

S. Halvorsen, Oslo

NEW BOOKS RECEIVED

Books received by *Acta Paediatrica* are acknowledged in this column. Selected books will be reviewed in subsequent issues space permitting

Proceedings of the Second International Congress on Mental Retardation. Part I Organic Bases and Biochemical Aspects of Imbecility Part II Psychological and Sociological Problems in Imbecility Drug Treatment E Karger AG Basel, 1963 S.Fr 100.

R. Haeubrich (ed): *Klinische Röntgendiagnostik innere Krankheiten. Band I Thorax* Springer Verlag, Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg, 1963. DM 220.

Jean Cordier *Contribution à l'étude de l'épidémiologie de la débilité mentale* Université Libre de Bruxelles, 1963.

G Jentschura E Marguardt and E M Rudel *Behandlung und Versorgung bei Fehlbildungen und Amputationen der oberen Extremität*. Georg Thieme Verlag Stuttgart 1963. 136 pages, 107 figs. DM 22.50

H L. Vité *Aspects et Mécanismes des Hyperaminoaciduries de l'Enfance Recherche sur la Karakulorkor la Reichlinisme Congenital le Scorbut*. Editions Arscia S.A. Brussels, 1963. 3.5 pages. Numerous figs. Fr B. 540.

Sydney S Gellis and Benjamin M Kagan. *Current Pediatric Therapy* W B Saunders Company Ltd., London, 1964. 47 pages. 25 12s.

A. W. Wilkinson. *Recent Advances Pediatric Surgery* J & A. Churchill Ltd., London, 1963 206 pages, 75 fig 50 s.

P Roger R Habib and H Mathieu *Problèmes actuels de néphrologie infantile* Editions Médicales Flammarion, Paris, 1963.

R. Wenger *Endokardfibrose*. Georg Thieme Verlag Stuttgart 1964 DM 30

Herbert G Birch (ed): *Brain Damage in Children the Biological and Social Aspects*. The Williams & Wilkins Company Baltimore U.S.A., 1964 199 pages. \$ 6.95.

National Research Institute of Mother and Child, Warszawa, Poland Research Reports, vol I 1963

BOOK REVIEWS

H. Loeb: Contribution à l'étude du métabolisme énergétique de l'enfant

Editions Arscia S. A., Brussels, 1963. F B. 350.

The main part of Dr. Loeb's studies deals with the intravenous glucose tolerance test which has been performed in a large number of normal infants and children. In these tests, blood glucose is determined every fourth minute for thirty to sixty minutes following the intravenous injection of 0.66 ml/kg of 50% glucose solution. The rate of disappearance (K) was found to be higher in most infants and children than in adults. During the first months of life, however, K was approximately the same as in adults. The findings show the reproducibility and accuracy of intravenous glucose tolerance tests. It is regrettable, however, that the unspecific reduction method for glucose determination was used instead of some of the newer enzyme methods. The author has also studied the effect of repeating the glucose test and that of administering insulin or tolbutamide before the test. It can be noted, that the well-known Straub-Strangott effect could not be demonstrated. Among the results of the studies of pathological cases, the finding of increased K values after leucine administration in leucin-induced hypoglycaemia seems very interesting. In some cases, the disappearance of radioactive glucose was also determined. In addition to the studies of glucose metabolism, the author also made investigations of free fatty acids and of some keto acids. Compared to normal values in the adult children were found to have higher concentrations of free fatty acids and of α -ketosuccinic acid.

Lars Wranne, Uppsala

P. Royer, H. Mathisen and R. Hachib: Problèmes actuels de néphrologie infantile

Editions Médicales Flammarion, Paris 1963. F 98.

The international courses held at the "Centre International de l'Enfance" in Paris have become well-known and appreciated institutions for postgraduate education in the paediatric field. In 1961 a course conducted by Pierre Royer was devoted to the nephrological problems of infancy and childhood. The communications and surveys given at this occasion have now—probably after some expansion—been collected in a volume. It should be pointed out from the beginning that this is a valuable book, both for the general paediatrician and the one with special interests in nephrology.

The book begins with a chapter on methods for exploration of the tubular functions. Another chapter—covering over 100 pages—is concerned with different kinds of renal disease characterized by tubular disorders. The presentation has in many instances been condensed in instructive tables giving the essentials of the disease under discussion. The study of the functional capacity of the renal tubules may be elucidating not only in primary renal disease, but also in other disorders where it often can give valuable information about the nature of metabolic defects. This survey is a good introduction into this field, which merits keen interest by the paediatrician.

Two chapters are concerned with chronic nephropathies with haematuria. The authors stress the often overlooked fact that although the histological picture at necropsy in such cases often is uniform, histological examination of material obtained by renal biopsies during the early stages, suggest

that "chronic nephritis" probably is composed of many different disease entities.

The authors have restricted themselves to the field of "nephrology" and are only superficially touching upon paediatric urology. This necessary limitation has, also, also to some extent involved the presentation of acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis. This disease being the most common, and probably the most important single renal disease had perhaps merited a more complete presentation. The limited space devoted to urinary tract infections has, however been well used and the authors have time to stress two very important factors in the management of acute pyelonephritis: relapse is often asymptomatic (and often without cellular findings, it could have been added) good care of patients with acute infections demands repeated checks during long time perhaps during several years.

The last part of the book is concerned with therapeutic problems, dealt with in an instructive manner. Especially should be mentioned the chapters giving practical guidance for diagnostic and therapeutic acting in patients with chronic renal failure with chronic proteinuria, with pyuria and with arterial hypertension.

There are several monographs in the field of nephrology but none devoted especially to the often specific problems met with in paediatric patients. We should therefore be thankful to the authors—who themselves earlier have made valuable contributions in paediatric nephrology—for the endeavour to cover this lack. The book is easily read, filled with relevant facts and equipped with a usable index. It is a pleasure to recommend the book, which will meet many demands of paediatricians caring for infants and children with renal disease.

Jan W. Berg Göteborg

F. J. W. Miller R. M. E. Seal and M. D. Taylor: Tuberculosis in Children

Six hundred pages including 7 pages index 119 figures and 6 colorplates. J & A Churchill Ltd. London. 1963. Price £6

This book is produced at the well-known paediatric workshop of the late Professor James Spence clinic in Newcastle upon Tyne. This fact fills the reader with great expectations and these are more than fulfilled. In general the authors are on the same line as paediatricians in Scandinavia regarding the conception of tuberculosis in childhood. The present reviewer will make only a few comments.

Account is given of experiences of tuberculosis in children up to 15 years of age in North Eastern England and in South Wales. Half of the children were under 5 years of age when admitted. The clinical material comprised 1200 children who since 1947 received chemotherapy. From 1957 admissions of children to hospital for tuberculosis fell sharply and serious clinical manifestations are now quite uncommon. At school entry the incidence of tuberculin positive children is 2% or less, at 10 years of age 6% and at 15-19 12.4%. As to the persistence of a positive tuberculin test in not vaccinated children the authors have the same experience as Scandinavian paediatricians, that reversion is rather uncommon. A thorough description of the public health aspects of tuberculosis in childhood and how to manage detection of the infection and to institute prophylaxis, a good survey of various aspects of BCG vaccination, its results and its complications is given. Very minute description is given of pleural effusion, its significance and the value of chemotherapy regarding prophylaxis and remote prognosis. Segmental lesions and development of bronchiectasis are discussed in detail. It seems as if especially the latter complications are given more attention in England than in the Scandinavian countries. One is little surprised at the high number of children with pulmonary tuberculosis who have been operated upon, more than 400 in the experience of one single physician. This must be due to more liberal opinions for surgery than a follow-up with steroid therapy in conjunction with chemotherapy has been used rather frequently in all forms of tuberculosis. The experience with this combined treatment has been

satisfactory giving quicker control of fever and toxic symptom, shortening absorption of inflammatory exudate and elimination of organisms and reducing the amount of structural damage by the process of repair. Referring to their study of the site of primary lesion in chronic pulmonary tuberculosis the authors maintain that the exogenous re-infection is rare in this age group. As regards erythema nodosum the authors have practically the same experience as we have. They believe, however, that children who convert with erythema nodosum have a more serious initial illness and a greater chance of complications than those who do not. How can this tally with their conclusion that the child with erythema nodosum is actually to an advantage because he is treated with prophylactic chemotherapy? Much prudent advice is given regarding the differential diagnosis and treatment of local tuberculosis. In tuberculous meningitis the authors are reluctant to abandon intrathecal therapy completely until they are quite sure that the chances of full recovery are at least equally as good as if it had not been given and they add "as yet no convincing evidence has been presented and it is unlikely that it could be collected in England".

It has been of great interest to the reviewer to compare the two last published Anglo-Saxon books on tuberculosis in children, this British one and the American published by Edith Lincoln and Edward M. Sewell (see *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 53:97 1964). Both are excellent textbooks and treat the disease in childhood somewhat differently complementing one another. For us paediatricians in countries with a high standard of public health these books represent historical reading of great interest. For doctors in developing countries they give an amount of fact and experiences that must be of great help in their endeavour to fight this serious disease in their countries.

Arvid Wallgren Stockholm

W. H. Hutzig: Die Plasmaproteine in der klinischen Medizin. Ergebnisse spezifischer Bestimmungen mit besonderer Berücksichtigung immunochemischer Methoden

Springer Verlag, Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg 1963. 109 fig. 231 pp. DM 58.

The study of serum proteins has been expanding so rapidly during the last few years that it has become quite impossible for the non-specialist to keep informed about the many new techniques and clinical findings, which are being presented at short intervals. The author of the present book has been engaged actively in research within this field for several years, during which time he has been "Privatdozent" at the Kinderhospital in Zürich.

The present monograph is a very good introduction to this complicated subject because it explains both the theoretical background, the technical procedures and the clinical findings. In the first chapter the modern concept of the physico-chemical structure of protein is explained, including

description of the formation of antibodies, antigens and the concept of immunology. Then follows a brief account of the many new and old methods by which the different protein fractions can be measured. Special emphasis is given to the immuno-chemical methods, which are described in detail. The next section is a short description of the many subfractions of the serum proteins and their special function and their separate turn-over rates. The greater part of the book is devoted to the clinical significance of the different proteins and their pathology. This section has been written together with four collaborators, and a wealth of knowledge has been collected. The literature references make up almost one quarter of the book, and many of the tables and figures are from the author's own publications. New entities such as the auto-immune disease and the antibody deficiency syndrome are extensively described. The new syndromes of an albuminuria and beta-lipoprotein deficiency have also been included. The latter includes

besides lack of the beta lipoproteins, torberia dwarfism, retinitis pigmentosa and a neurological disorder with ataxia. Finally in the last chapter a brief summary is given of the interesting genetics involved in the study of the distribution of the different subgroups of plasma proteins such as haptoglobulins and transferrin. The authors have succeeded in giving a well balanced presentation of our present-day knowledge. Not all is easy reading and many problems are still unsolved. The reviewer would have liked to get more information about special problems as for example hemophilia, organ specific autoimmune antibodies, and the fluorescence antibody reaction, but the book can be highly recommended for any doctor who wants to get a good background knowledge of these very important subjects. Further more it is equally handy as a reference book for quick orientation, which is facilitated by making all the pages containing literature references black in the upper corner.

Bent Preis Hansen, Copenhagen

E. Rossi (ed.) Postgraduate Courses in Pediatrics, Kinderpsychiatrie in der Praxis No. 9

B. Harger Basel (Schweiz) and New York, 1963. Priced DM 1.-

Seven papers by different authors offer a short concentrated and perfect survey of the main chapters in child psychiatry. It is, however extraordinary how much the trend in the German-speaking countries are influenced by the classical psychiatry of adult. Stuttle writes an excellent paper with very representative case histories concerning child psychosis but he only quotes two American writers, one of them a psychiatrist for adult in spite of the fact that the Anglo-Saxon countries have a very rich choice of good papers on this subject. Rauter makes some very important point in her chapter about the function of a psychiatrist in children's hospital how important it is to underline the fact that children with symptoms of organic lesions can improve by change of environment exactly as well as children with symptoms of psychogenetic disease. The book is easy to read even if nothing new for a child psychiatrist but gives good child psychiatric orientation for the pediatrician which is the declared purpose of the book.

Elen Brita Norrlind, Stockholm

ANNOUNCEMENTS

Congresses of Pediatrics

The 11th International Congress of Pediatrics will be held in Tokyo November 7-12, 1965.

The IVth Middle Eastern Mediterranean Pediatric Congress Athens Sept. 27-30, 1964. Professor C. Chocoma is president and

Address: 79 Stadium Street Athens, Greece. The programme will include papers on subjects related to Hematology, Endocrinology, Metabolic and Nutritional Diseases, Neonatal Physiology and Pathology, Infectious and Parasitic Diseases as well as papers of

From the Department of Pediatrics, Harvard Medical School and the Department of Medicine Children's Hospital Medical Center Boston

Pulmonary Function in Symptom Free Asthmatic Patient.

by MARCELLO M. ORZALESI, CHARLES D. COOK and MONTGOMERY C. HART

Previous studies of pulmonary function in patients with asthma have resulted in conflicting conclusions concerning the amount of residual respiratory abnormality during symptom free periods [1, 2, 9, 10, 11, 20, 22, 26, 27]. The present investigation provides further information concerning the pulmonary function of asthmatic children during asymptomatic periods and of adults who had asthma during childhood and were also asymptomatic at the time of study.

Material and Methods

The 28 patients studied were divided into two groups. Nineteen children (12 boys and 7 girls) between 7½ and 18½ years of age, comprised the first group; they had had asthma for at least three years with four or more severe attacks per year and had required intensive therapy and admission to the hospital on numerous occasions. The second group consisted of 10 adults (8 men and 2 women) between 17 and 34 years of age who had had severe asthma requiring frequent admissions to the hospital during childhood. Only two of these adult still exhibited occasional mild symptoms of asthma and received intermittent treatment with bronchodilators. At the time of study none of the patient in either group was

taking any medication or had any symptoms or signs of asthma. None of the patients had a chronic cough or any other signs of chronic pulmonary infection.

The following measurements were made: (1) lung volumes, using the closed-circuit helium dilution technique described by Hellesten *et al.* [8, 19]; (2) anatomic dead space (V_D) by the single breath nitrogen wash-out method of Fowler [12, 18]; (3) airway resistance & FRC using with minor modifications, the technique of Dubois *et al.* [4, 16]; (4) peak expiratory flow rates (PEFR) using the Wright peak flow meter [23, 28]; (5) one and two-second timed vital capacity (TVC_{one} and TVC_{two}) using the technique described by Gensler [14, 25]; (6) maximum breathing capacity (MBC) using a one-way valve and a Douglas bag [24, 25]; (7) distribution of inspired gas as described by Briscoe *et al.* [4, 17]; (8) maximal static expiratory and inspiratory airway pressures & different lung volumes as described by Cook *et al.* [6]. The results of each test were compared with normal values obtained by the same techniques in the same laboratory.

Results

The results of the measurement of lung volumes, expressed as per cent of the predicted value for both groups of patients are shown in Table 1 and Fig. 1. In the first group of patients the mean residual volume (RV) was higher than predicted ($P < 0.025$) but only 3 of the 19 children

Supported in part by Grants No. HD-00248-04 and 2A-5376 from the National Institutes of Health.

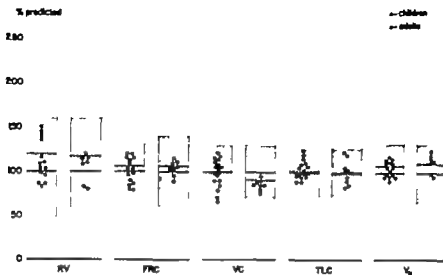


Fig. 1 Average (—) and individual lung volumes in asthmatic children (○) and adults (●). The values are expressed as per cent predicted on the basis of height; the continuous line and the shaded areas represent the average ± 2 S.D. for the normals [12, 14].

had a significant increase in RV exceeding 2 standard deviations. The mean values for all the other lung volumes in this group were within normal limits. When considering individual values, one patient had a significant increase in functional residual capacity (FRC) 2 had decreased vital capacities (VC) and one an increased total lung capacity (TLC) (Fig. 1). The mean values for all the lung volumes

1. Pulmonary function tests in asthmatic children and adults during symptom free periods

| Pulmonary function tests ^a | Normal | | Children | | P | Adult | | P |
|---------------------------------------|---------|-------|----------|-------|--------|---------|-------|--------|
| | Average | S.D. | Average | S.D. | | Average | S.D. | |
| RV | 100 | 30 | 120 | 36 | <0.023 | 118 | 24 | S.S. |
| FRC | 100 | 40 | 106 | 22 | S.S. | 106 | 20 | S.S. |
| VC | 100 | 15 | 100 | 19 | S.S. | 91 | 1 | S.S. |
| TLC | 100 | 14 | 106 | 18 | S.S. | 106 | 18 | S.S. |
| V _D | 100 | 17 | 108 | 22 | S.S. | 110 | 13 | S.S. |
| C ₁ at FRC | 100 | 37 | 81 | 31 | <0.025 | 77 | 32 | 0.023 |
| PFR | 100 | 15 | 107 | 22 | S.S. | 100 | 11 | S.S. |
| MBC | 100 | 40 | 7 | 1 | <0.001 | 78 | 11 | <0.001 |
| Air velocity index | 0.909 | 0.183 | 0.758 | 0.175 | <0.001 | 0.901 | 0.154 | S.S. |
| TVC _{see} { children | 83.5 | 5.0 | 73.9 | 9.4 | <0.001 | — | — | — |
| adults | 76.6 | 6.2 | — | — | — | 17 | 7.4 | S.S. |
| TVC _{see} { children | 84.5 | 3.3 | 89.3 | 6.5 | 0.003 | — | — | — |
| adults | 80.7 | 5.6 | — | — | — | 80.2 | 6.5 | S.S. |
| N wash-out delay | 12.4 | 10.9 | 32.1 | 23.9 | <0.005 | 48.1 | 23.6 | S.S. |

The result of the test are expressed as per cent of predicted on the basis of height except for air velocity index, TVC_{see} and TVC_{see} and nitrogen washout delay.

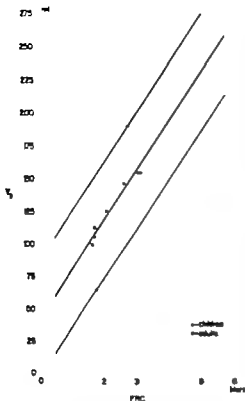


Fig. 2. Anatomic dead space (V_D) versus functional residual capacity (FRC) in asthmatic children (●) and adults (○). The regression line ± 2 S.D. for normal subjects is also shown [14].

in the group of adults were within normal limits. Only one patient had a significantly increased (> 2 S.D.) RV and the same patient also had an increased FRC (Fig. 1).

The mean anatomical dead space (V_D) for each group of patients was normal when the predictions were made on the basis of either height or FRC (Table 1, Fig. 1 and 2). Only patients of the first group had an increased V_D (> 2 S.D.) when compared with normal on the basis of height, but all were within normal limit on the basis of their FRC.

The mean values for airway conductance (C_a) the reciprocal of airway resistance

in both groups of patients were slightly but significantly ($P = < 0.05$) decreased when compared with normal values on the basis of height (Table 1) or FRC (Fig. 3).

The mean values for TV , $C_{1.000}$ and $TV_{C_{1.000}}$ were significantly lower than predicted only in the group of children ($P < 0.001$ and $P < 0.005$). Mean values for MBC were also decreased ($P < 0.001$ for both groups of patients) but only 4 children and one adult had significantly (> 2 S.D.) low values. On the other hand, another indirect method for estimating airway obstruction, the measurement of peak flow rates, showed no significant variation from normal for either group or for the individual (Table 1).

The air velocity index, the ratio of the per cent predicted MBC to the per cent predicted VC has been used by Gaensler [13] to demonstrate abnormal pulmonary function in asthmatic patients. In the

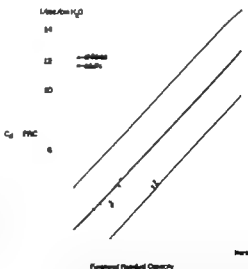


Fig. 3. Airway conductance (C_a) versus functional residual capacity (FRC) in asthmatic children (●) and adults (○). The regression line ± 2 S.D. for normal subjects is also shown [16].

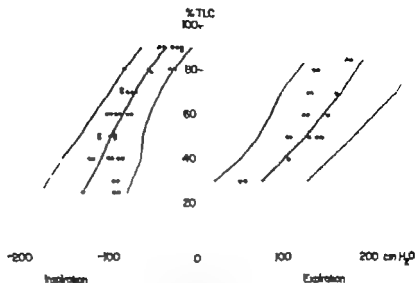


Fig. 4. Maximal inspiratory and expiratory airway pressures (cm H₂O) at different lung volumes (%TLC) in 8 asthmatic children. The average values \pm 2 s.d. from 14 normal children are also shown (6).

present series it was significantly reduced for the children ($P < 0.001$) but not for the adults.

The mean nitrogen washout delay was significantly increased in the children ($P < 0.005$) but within normal limits in the adults (Table 1). Eight children and 2 adults had an abnormally increased (> 2 s.d.) delay.

The maximal airway pressures on expiration and inspiration at different lung volumes were determined in 8 patients of the first group. The results were compared with those of a group of 14 children of approximately the same age and height (Fig. 4). Only one patient of the 8 had low inspiratory and expiratory pressures.

Discussion

The principal cause of pulmonary dysfunction in asthma is bronchial obstruction which results in a reduction in gas

flow especially on expiration, and secondary air trapping and hyperinflation. It has been suggested that repeated attacks of asthma might lead to rupture of the alveoli and loss of elastic tissue with subsequent irreversible emphysema.

Direct measurements and indirect estimations (PEFR, TVC and MBO) of airway resistance, the distribution of inspired gas (which is abnormal when partial obstruction is present) and the measurement of lung volumes especially RV should be the most useful tests for evaluating the presence or absence and extent of pulmonary changes due to asthma.

A number of authors have studied both asthmatic children and adult during symptom free periods with variable results. Lukas [22] found that increases in the RV/TLC ratio were apparently not reversible in two of 6 asthmatic children tested during symptom free periods. He postulated that severe asthma might fre-

quently result in chronic emphysema. Andrewes & Simmons [1] also found changes in lung volumes (an increase in RV and FRC) in 11 symptom free asthmatics. Beal [] studied 20 patients ranging in age from 11 to 66 years and found slight hyperinflation (increases in RV and FRC) a decrease in MBO and abnormalities in intrapulmonary gas distribution. These changes were partly or wholly reversed following the administration of bronchodilators. Tooley reported similar findings [27]. Kraepelin & Engström and co-workers [11-13] have shown that children with asthma have abnormalities in pulmonary function during asymptomatic periods; these changes decreased with age and reached normal values in most of their patients. Consistent with the data of Kraepelin are those of Sadoul *et al.* [26] who reported that 74% of 128 young men with asthma had normal lung volumes and TVC during symptom-free periods.

The present study indicates that the measurement of residual volume, airway resistance, MBO, TVC, air velocity index and nitrogen washout delay are the most sensitive tests for demonstrating changes in asymptomatic asthmatic patients. These parameters are significantly although slightly abnormal for groups of asymptomatic asthmatic patients but only a few individual patients have values which vary significantly from the normal. Thus although pulmonary changes persist in a few children and adults during symptom-free periods, they are minimal. Unfortunately in the present series the further reversibility of the minimal changes after the administration of bronchodilator drugs was not investigated.

Engström & Karlberg [11] using a different technique, did not find a significant increase in total flow resistance. The Dubois technique used by us measures only air flow resistance rather than total pulmonary resistance and may be more sensitive in detecting changes due to obstruction. Furthermore, since air flow resistance decreases with increased lung volume [3-16] it may be that their measurements of airway resistance would have been elevated if they had been compared to normal values on the basis of FRC rather than height. Another possible explanation for the discrepancies might be a difference in the severity of the asthma, it seems unlikely however that our patients had more severe disease in view of the minimal changes in lung volumes and the strict criteria for selecting asymptomatic asthmatic patients without complications.

The Wright peak flow meter has proved satisfactory for following obstructive changes in symptomatic asthmatic patients both in our laboratory [23] and in the reported work of others [18]. However it is apparent that this test was not as sensitive for detecting minimal changes in asymptomatic patients as the TVC_{1000} and TVC_{2000} , the MBO, the air velocity index or the direct measurement of airway resistance. Consistent with the finding of an increased airway resistance were the results of the nitrogen washout test which showed uneven gas distribution in about a third of the patients.

The anatomic dead space is not apparently affected by recurrent asthma as no significant increases were noted. This suggests that there was not enough change in the structure of the air passages to result in detectable changes in this volume.

It was considered possible that recurrent attacks of asthma might be associated with hypertrophy of the respiratory muscles, particularly those used on expiration but no such change was found. This is consistent with earlier findings in severely emphysematous elderly men who showed no evidence of increased expiratory muscle strength when compared to normal persons of the same age [7].

In conclusion, the present data and a review of the literature indicate that the majority of asthmatic patients have pulmonary function which is within normal limits during symptom free periods. However if they are considered as a group instead of individually they may show some slight abnormalities, particularly in their airway resistance indicating a minimal and subclinical airway obstruction.

Summary

Evaluation of pulmonary function in 29 asthmatic patients (19 children and 10 adults) during symptom free periods gave the following results.

1 Twenty five of the 29 patients had normal residual volumes, 27 had normal functional residual capacities, and 28 had normal vital capacities. Both groups of patients showed a moderate increase in

mean residual volume (significant only in children) all the other mean lung volumes being normal.

2 The mean anatomical dead space for the two groups of patients was normal on the basis of both height and functional residual capacity.

3 The mean airway resistance was significantly increased in both groups of patients and the maximal breathing capacity was consistent with this finding i.e. lower than expected. The timed vital capacity (one and two second) and the air velocity index were significantly low only in the group of children. Peak expiratory flow was normal in both groups, indicating that the small increase in airway resistance was not detectable by this technique.

4 The nitrogen washout test showed uneven distribution of inspired gas in 10 patients (8 children and 2 adults) and was normal in 18.

5 Respiratory muscle strength was measured in 8 children and was normal in 7.

6 These results indicate that complete or almost complete regression of the changes in lung function is to be expected in the majority of patients with asthma during symptom free periods. If the patients are considered as a group however they show a small but significant increase in airway resistance.

References

- 1 ANDREWS, J. F. and BRIDGES, H. H.: Lung volumes of normal and asthmatic children. *Pediatrics* 33 507 1939.
- 2 BEAL, H. D.: Pulmonary function studies in 20 asthmatic patients in the symptom-free interval. *J. Allergy* 23 1 1952.
- 3 BRIDGES, W. A. and DUBOIS, A. B.: Relationship between airway resistance, airway conductance and lung volume in subjects of different age and body size. *J. Clin. Invest.* 37 1279 1959.
- 4 BRIDGES, W. A. and COOK, C. D.: A. Canine ventilation of normal and diseased lungs studied by an open-circuit method. *J. Appl. Physiol.* 14 234, 1959.
- 5 COOK, C. D. and HALL, J. F.: Relation of lung volumes to height in healthy persons between the ages of 6 and 34 years. *J. Pediatr.* 59 710, 1961.
- 6 COOK, C. D., HEAD, J. and ORZALESI, M. M.: 14. The volume-pressure characteristics of the respiratory system during maximal

- efforts. *J Appl Physiol*, 1964 in press.
- 7 COOK, C D and MURRAY J Unpublished data.
 - 8 DUBOIS, A. B., BOTTELDO, S Y and COMROE, J H JR: A new method for measuring air way resistance in man using a body plethysmograph values in normal subjects and in patient with respiratory disease. *J Clin Invest* 35 327 1956.
 - 9 EYOSTRÖM L, KARLBERG P, KRAKPELIEN S. and WERELIN, G Respiratory studies in children. V. Maximal breathing capacity in healthy and in symptom-free asthmatic children, 7-14 years of age. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 47 560, 1958.
 - 10 EYOSTRÖM L, ESCARDO, F E., KARLBERG, P and KRAKPELIEN S: Respiratory studies in children. VI. Tided vital capacity in healthy children and in symptom-free asthmatic children. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 47 114, 1958.
 - 11 EYOSTRÖM, L and KARLBERG, P Respiratory studies in children. V. Lung volumes in relation to ventilatory capacity and mechanical properties of the lungs in symptom free asthmatic children. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 47 529 1958.
 - 12 FOWLER, W B.: Lung function studies. II. The respiratory dead space. *Amer J Physiol* 154 406, 1948.
 - 13 MARVELER, E. A.: Air velocity index. *Amer Rev Tuberculosis*, 62 17 1950.
 - 14 — Analysis of the ventilatory defect by timed capacity measurements. *Amer Rev Tuberculosis*, 64 245, 1951.
 - 15 HART, M. C., ORSALINI, M. M. and COOK, C. D. Relation between anatomic respiratory dead space and body size and lung volume. *J Appl Physiol* 16 519 1963.
 - 16 — Airway conductance in normal subjects from 5 to 45 years of age. T to be published.
 - 17 — Distribution of inspired gas in normal subjects from 5 to 45 years of age T to be published.
 - 18 HILL, P J B and GILLMAN, P M. S.: Peak flow rates in normal and asthmatic children. *Brit Med J* 1 1963, 1964.
 - 19 HILLIERSEN P J COOK, C D, TRIEDLANDER, L. and ANDERSON S.: Studies of respiratory physiology in children. I. Mechanics of respiration and lung volumes in 83 normal children 5 to 17 years of age. *Pediatrics* 22 80, 1958.
 - 20 KRAKPELIEN S., EYOSTRÖM, L. and KARLBERG P Respiratory studies in children. II. Lung volumes in symptom free asthmatic children, 6-14 years of age. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 47 399 1958.
 - 21 KRAKPELIEN S Respiratory studies in children. VII. A longitudinal study of the lung volumes in asthmatic children during symptom-free periods. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 48 235, 1959.
 - 22 LUTAS, D S.: Pulmonary function in group of young patients with bronchial asthma. *J Allergy* 22 411 1961.
 - 23 MURRAY A. B. and COOK, C. D. Measurement of peak expiratory flow rates in 220 normal children from 4.5 to 18.5 years of age. *J Pediatr*, 63 184, 1963.
 - 24 ORSALINI, M. M., KOWEN, D COOK, C D and BRWACHMAN H.: Abnormalities, sweat electrolyte and pulmonary function studies in parents of patients with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 43 267 1953.
 - 25 ORSALINI, M. M. and COOK, C. D. Unpublished data.
 - 26 SADOUL, P SAUTIER, C and COLLOMBIER, V Spirographic patterns of asthma in young men. *European Academy of Allergy Proceedings*, II. Small meeting, Barcelona, p. 17 1960.
 - 27 TUGLEY W H.: Normal and abnormal respiration in children. *37th Ross Conference on Pediatric Research* p 56, 1961.
 - 28 WRIGHT B. M. and MCKENROW C. B.: Maximum forced expiratory flow rate as measure of ventilatory capacity. *Brit Med J* 2 1641 1959.

Submitted February 16, 1964

Accepted February 18, 1964

The Children Hospital Medical Center
300 Longwood Avenue
Boston 15 Mass.
U.S.A.

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head: Prof. Bertil Lindquist) Lund, Sweden

Conduction Velocity of Peripheral Motor Nerves in Mental Retardation, Diabetes and Various Neurological Diseases in Childhood

by INGRID GAMSTORP

In a previous publication the normal values were given for conduction velocity of peripheral motor nerves in infancy, childhood and adolescence [3]. The values found for the ulnar, median and peroneal nerves in different age-groups were interpreted as an expression of the normal maturation of the peripheral nervous system. It was therefore considered of interest to assess the conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in groups of sick children with either a conceivably slow maturation or diseases capable of affecting the peripheral nerves. Three groups were studied. 1. Mentally retarded children. 2. Diabetic children. 3. Children with neurological diseases, possibly affecting the peripheral nerves. All the patients were below 16 years of age.

Methods

The method described by Hodes, Larrabee & German [8] was used with small modifications previously reported in detail [3]. The method, as applied to the ulnar nerve, is schematically outlined in Fig. 1. A supra-maximal electrical stimulus was given percutaneously at different points along the nerve and the evoked response of a peripheral muscle was picked up by surface electrodes and recorded on a Disa electromyograph. The conduction velocity of the nerve itself was calculated by dividing the difference between the 2 recorded conduction times by the distance measured on the arm between the point of stimulation. The ulnar, median and peroneal nerves were routinely examined. The ulnar nerve was also examined for the presence of Hoffmann reflex (H reflex) [12].

I Mental Retardation

Material

All together 38 nerves in 47 patients, 28 boys and 19 girls, were examined. Fourteen children were between 1 and 3 years of age.

Part 3 of this material belongs to a study supported by grant from "Sofisticated Foundation" through the Swedish Medical Research Council.

10 between 3 and 8 and 17 between 8 and 16. Infants were not included because of the difficulty in evaluating the intellectual development in this age-group. All children were severely mentally retarded. The main part of the older children were inpatient of the St. t. Hospital in Lund for the Uneducable (Vipeholms sjukhus). Twelve children were mongols, 2 in the oldest and 5 in each of the

TABLE 1 Conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in groups of children with mental retardation (B) and with diabetes (C) and in age matched controls (A)

| Age-group | Ulnar nerve | | Median nerve | | Peroneal nerve | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| | No. of observations | Mean | No. of observations | Mean | No. of observations | Mean |
| <i>A. Normal material</i> | | | | | | |
| 1-2 years | 21 | 59.9 ± 8.1 | 1 | 49.5 ± 5.9 | 21 | 53.7 ± 8.1 |
| 3-8 years | 26 | 63.4 ± 8.5 | 5 | 58.3 ± 5.4 | 26 | 57.5 ± 6.9 |
| 9-16 years | 26 | 67.6 ± 6.0 | 20 | 63.0 ± 5.7 | 20 | 57.9 ± 7.3 |
| <i>B. Mental retardation</i> | | | | | | |
| 1-2 years | 26 | 62.9 ± 11.3 | 26 | 4.5 ± 8.5 | 26 | 51.7 ± 9.1 |
| 3-8 years | 27 | 58.8 ± 6.6 | 7 | 50.1 ± 7.4 | 27 | 54.7 ± 6.9 |
| 9-16 years | 23 | 62.2 ± 9.0 | 22 | 57.3 ± 6.9 | 23 | 52.7 ± 5.3 |
| <i>C. Diabetes</i> | | | | | | |
| 3-8 years | 16 | 59.1 ± 5.3 | 16 | 58.6 ± 9.5 | 15 | 49.3 ± 8.5 |
| 9-16 years | 20 | 59.9 ± 6.1 | 20 | 58.0 ± 4.3 | 20 | 51.0 ± 6.0 |
| <i>4. B</i> | | | | | | |
| 1-2 years | -2.1 | $p > 0.03$ | 6.7 | $0.01 > p > 0.001$ | 2.0 | $p > 0.05$ |
| 3-8 years | 6.6 | $0.01 < p > 0.001$ | 8.1 | $p < 0.001$ | 2.8 | $p > 0.03$ |
| 9-16 years | 5.4 | $0.01 > p > 0.001$ | 6.8 | $p < 0.001$ | 4.9 | $0.03 > p > 0.01$ |
| <i>A-C</i> | | | | | | |
| 3-8 years | 6.3 | $0.01 > p > 0.001$ | -0.3 | $p > 0.03$ | 5.3 | $p < 0.001$ |
| 9-16 years | 7.7 | $p < 0.001$ | 8.9 | $p < 0.001$ | 5.6 | $0.01 > p > 0.001$ |

Younger age-groups. Four had a history of organic brain damage in the neonatal period, one had tuberous sclerosis, and 2 had untreated phenylpyruvic oligophrenia. In the remaining 28 the cause of the mental retardation was unknown. Patients with symptoms of a progressive disease of the central nervous system were excluded, as were diabetics and children with symptoms possibly

referable to disease of the peripheral nervous system such as muscular atrophy or loss of deep tendon reflexes. The aim was to include only children with early onset of symptoms; in all the children studied retardation of psychomotor development had been observed within the first year of life.

Results

Of the 158 individual measurements 9 (1 in the ulnar nerve, 5 in the median nerve and 2 in the peroneal nerve) were considered definitely below the normal limit for age. Borderline low values were found in 4 ulnar, in 14 median and in 8 peroneal nerves. The means for the 3 different nerves in the 3 age-groups were calculated and compared with the mean for



Fig. 1. Schematic presentation of the method applied to the ulnar nerve.

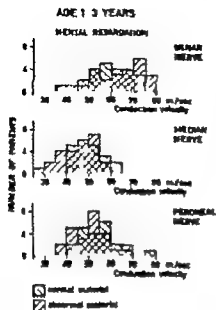


Fig. 1. Conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in apparently healthy children and mentally retarded children, 1-3 years of age.

apparently healthy age-matched children [3]. Four of the 9 means did not differ significantly from the normal means (the peroneal nerve in all age-groups and the

ulnar nerve in the youngest age-group), 3 (the ulnar nerve in the 2 older age-groups and the median nerve in the youngest age-group) were significantly below the normal means ($0.01 > p > 0.001$) and in (the median nerve in the 2 older age-groups) the difference was highly significant ($p < 0.001$). Thus the group of mentally retarded children appeared to have a lower conduction velocity in the nerves of the arm at least and particularly in the median nerve whereas no deviation from the normal values was apparent in the leg. The results are summarized and compared with normal values in Table 1 and in Fig. 2, 3 and 4.

The H reflex was absent in all the ulnar nerves examined.

Discussion

The changes in conduction velocity of peripheral nerves through normal infancy, childhood and adolescence are considered a reflexion of the functional maturation

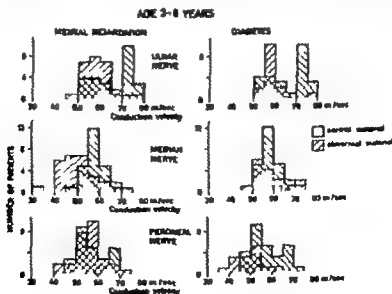


Fig. 2. Conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in apparently healthy children, mentally retarded (left) and diabetic children (right), 3-8 years of age.

AGE 8-16 YEARS

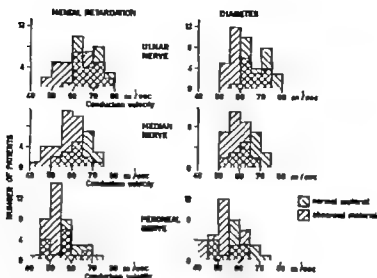


Fig. 4. Conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in apparently healthy children, mentally retarded children (left) and diabetic children (right), 8-16 years of age

of the peripheral nervous system [3, 18]. The findings set forth above therefore suggest a retarded development at least of the median nerve in the group of mentally retarded children. In normal children the maturation of the nerves of the arm, and particularly of the median nerve, lasts longer than that of the peroneal nerve which at age one conducts with practically the same velocity as in normal adults [3]. Most mentally retarded children learn to run and all children above 3 in the present material were able to walk by themselves. Their ability to perform small, exact finger movements is, however, often severely retarded and they seldom achieve normal adult skill, particularly regarding the precise movements of the thumb. It is tempting to assume a connexion between the clumsy finger movements of the mentally retarded children and the delayed

functional maturation of the peripheral nerves of their arms. The interpretation of the results in the mentally retarded children is further discussed in relation to the results obtained in diabetic children (see next page).

It should be stressed that the difference between normal children and mentally retarded children was demonstrable only when the 2 groups were compared with each other *as groups*. Practically all the individual values fell within normal limits. Measurement of the conduction velocity of the peripheral nerves is thus of no help in the evaluation of the mental development of a given person.

No lesion or slow maturation of the pyramidal tract could be demonstrated by the method used, i.e. examination of the ulnar nerve for the H reflex in children above one year.

II Diabetes

Material

The material consisted of 23 diabetic children (15 boys and 8 girls) in whom 136 nerves were examined. Eight of the children were between 3 and 8 years of age and 15 between 8 and 16. The duration of the disease varied between 0 and 10 years. At the time of examination all the children were under treatment and free of ketoacidosis. Deep tendon reflexes were normal. No case of obvious mental retardation was included.

Results

Of the 136 individual measurements one (peroneal nerve) was considered definitely below the normal limit for age and 8 (one median nerve and 7 peroneal nerves) were borderline low. A mean was calculated for each nerve and each age-group and compared with the normal means [3]. No difference was found for the median nerve in the younger age-group. The values for the ulnar nerve in the younger and for the peroneal nerve in the older group were significantly decreased ($0.01 > p > 0.001$); the difference was highly significant for the peroneal nerve in the younger and for the ulnar and median nerves in the older age-group ($p < 0.001$). The results are summarized and compared with normal values in Table I and Fig. 2 and 4.

No H reflex was found in the ulnar nerve

Discussion

The high incidence of clinical signs of polyneuropathy in diabetes has prompted several investigations on the motor nerve conduction velocity in this disease. The results are concordant: a higher proportion of abnormally low values and lower means

in diabetics with or without clinical signs of polyneuropathy than in apparently healthy persons [2, 14, 15, 1]. The published materials consist mainly of adults: the youngest patient of Mayer [14] was 10, of Skillman *et al.* [1] was 1, and 4 of the 103 patients of Mulder *et al.* [15] were between 11 and 16. The number of individual low values appears smaller in the present childhood material than in adult materials. This holds true when the present material is an attempt to eliminate the possible effect of the duration of the disease is compared with those patients, reported by Mulder *et al.* [15], who had had diabetes for at most one year. Of 34 patients in this group 4 had certain mononeuropathy and 6 polyneuropathy, whereas among the present material of 23 children no case of polyneuropathy and only one of mononeuropathy were found, although several of the children had had diabetes for more than one year. However, mean values for diabetic children, as well as for diabetic adults, are significantly lower than for age-matched controls and thereby suggest some functional disorder of the peripheral nervous system also in young diabetics.

The results in diabetic children were compared with those in the mentally retarded group. In the diabetic group, in which a disease of peripheral nerves is postulated, the mean values were lower than normal both in the arms and in the legs and if anything more consistently so in legs. In the mentally retarded, on the other hand, in which a slow maturation is postulated the mean values were abnormally low only for the nerves of the arm and particularly for the median nerve.

TABLE 2. *Conduction velocity of peripheral nerves Results of measurements children with various neurological diseases*

| Diagnosis | No. of patients examined | No. of patients with abnormal findings | % of patient with borderline values |
|---|--------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Late-infantile metachromatic leucodystrophy | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Diffuse brain sclerosis, not classified | 3 | 0 | 0 |
| Acute polyneuropathy | 2 | 2 | 0 |
| Primary muscle diseases | | | |
| Myotonia | 2 | 0 | 0 |
| Progressive dystrophy | 7 | 0 | 0 |
| Myotonic dystrophy | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Not classified | 3 | 0 | 1 |
| Spinal muscular atrophy | | | |
| Fazio | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Progressive infantile | 2 | 0 | 1 |
| Progressive juvenile | 3 | 0 | 0 |
| Chronic polyneuropathy | 11 | 10 | 1 |

III. Neurological Diseases

Material and results are summarized in Table 2

Discussion

The first case was in a 4-year-old boy with the onset of pyramidal tract symptoms at the age of 11 months. The disease progressed steadily and the patient had at the time of examination severe pyramidal tract symptoms, ataxia, severe mental deterioration and tonic fits. The diagnosis was established by the finding of a high protein concentration with a normal relative distribution of the protein fractions in the spinal fluid and the pathognomonic finding on urinary paper chromatography of one large metachromatic sulphatid spot and a second more slowly running spot with the same colour [4]. This boy had low conduction velocity of one nerve and re-examination month later showed progress with normal values in 3 nerves.

Involvement of the peripheral nervous system is often seen in this disease. It manifests itself histologically as a brown metachromatic deposit in nerve sheaths [6] and clinically as signs simulating polyradiculitis [5]. Although the boy showed no clinical signs of polyneuropathy, impaired function was demonstrated by the measurement of the conduction velocity. In 3 other patients with clinical signs of a progressive disease of the central nervous system but definitely not metachromatic leucodystrophy the conduction velocity was found to be normal.

Two patients with acute polyneuropathy are included in the material, both had abnormally low conduction velocity. One had a classical type of Guillain-Barré syndrome, the other, acute encephalomyeloneuritis which had appeared after an exanthematous disease, probably rubella. Peripheral nerve function re-

covered completely in both, clinical improvement started several months before conduction velocity became normal. This is in agreement with observations made in larger series [11-16].

The rest of the listed patients had difficulties to move about and symptoms pointing to a disease of the motor unit. The clinical examination was supplemented by determination of the serum enzymes, electromyography and histological examination of a muscle biopsy specimen, and the diagnosis was based on the results of these examinations. The conduction velocity was normal in all cases of a primary muscle disease except one. The exception was a 6-month-old boy who since birth had a severe primary muscle disease of undecided type; this boy had borderline values in 2 of 6 nerves examined. The reason for this finding remains uncertain, no other methods could be used in this young infant to exclude or prove the possible presence of peripheral neuropathy. A patient with a myelopathy also had a normal conduction velocity with the exception of one infant with progressive spinal muscular atrophy who showed borderline values in 2 of 6 nerves examined. A possible explanation for this finding is that the chronic progressive disorders of the lower motor neuron usually affect the large anterior horn cells first and most severely [19]. The thickest and fastest conducting nerve fibres belong to the largest anterior horn cells; as the method used allows measurement only of the fastest conducting fibres this will mean an unmasking of normal thinner fibres and a slight decrease of the conduction velocity.

The results in patients with primary muscle diseases or myelopathy contrast

with the findings in the next group: the 11 children with probable chronic polyneuropathy 10 of whom had a definitely abnormal conduction velocity in at least 2 of the 6 nerves examined. This group included twin brothers with Friedrich ataxia. Six children had abnormally slow conduction velocity in all the nerves examined. None in the group showed completely normal values; one girl had borderline values in 2 nerves.

The examination of the conduction velocity of peripheral nerves has been well established as a valuable diagnostic tool in distinguishing between different neuromuscular disorders [7-9, 10, 11, 13] and the presented results are in agreement with previously reported series. The difference is usually large enough to be diagnostic between the mild reduction of conduction velocity occasionally found in diseases of the anterior horn cells and the low velocity noted in cases of chronic polyneuropathy [11]. The occurrence of this disease in childhood and the diagnostic difficulties in this age were stressed by Byers & Taft [1]. They emphasized the importance of a correct diagnosis; a chronic polyneuropathy carries a better prognosis than do the diseases for which it is easily mistaken, i.e. progressive muscular dystrophy and progressive infantile spinal atrophy.

Lambert [11] stressed the value of measuring conduction velocity of peripheral nerves in infant and children, in whom a good sensory examination is often difficult to perform and to interpret. At the same time simple and inconvenient the patient only slightly it definitely belongs to the diagnostic tool of pediatric neurology.

Summary

The conduction velocity of ulnar median and peroneal nerves was examined in 3 groups of sick children. 1. Mentally retarded children. 2. Diabetics. 3. Children with various neurological diseases, possibly affecting the peripheral nerves.

In the first group few individual values fell outside normal limits for age. The mean was calculated for each nerve and compared with the mean for normal children of the same age. For the nerves of the arm, particularly for the median nerve the nerve which is normally the latest to reach normal adult level, the mean was significantly below normal, whereas the mean for the peroneal nerve did not differ from normal. This may be interpreted as a sign of delayed maturation of the peripheral nervous system, a possible connection is discussed with the clumsy finger movements, particularly of the thumb in mentally retarded children.

In the second group few individual values fell outside the normal range: the means were significantly below normal in the arms and in the legs. Thus, in diabetic children in whom a disease of the peripheral nerves appears the likely explanation for the decreased conduction velocity: all examined nerves were affected and, if anything, the peroneal nerve more so than the nerves of the arm.

In the third group individual values for conduction velocity falling definitely below the normal limit were found in disorders affecting the peripheral nerves, e.g. late-infantile metachromatic leucodystrophy, acute and chronic polyneuropathy. In diseases affecting exclusively the central nervous system or the muscles the results are normal or occasionally low borderline. The method has its greatest value in children in whom it is difficult to interpret the results of other neurological examinations, particularly of sensation.

References

1. BYER, R. K. and TAFT, L. T. Chronic multiple peripheral neuropathy in childhood. *Pediatrics*, 59: 817, 1957.
2. FERRARI-FONCADE, A., TENENIO, P. and GONCALVES, J. B. Estudo de la velocidad de conduccion nerviosa en la diabetes. *Acta Neurol. Latinoam.* 6: 43, 1960.
3. GASTROTH, I. Normal conduction velocity of ulnar median and peroneal nerves in infancy, childhood and adolescence. *Acta Paediatr. (Stockh.)*, 5: suppl. 119: 83, 1963.
4. HAGBERG, H., SOCRANDER, P. and SYLV, KENNEDY, L. Clinical and laboratory diagnosis of metachromatic leucodystrophy. *Cerebral Palsy Bull.*, 3: 433, 1961.
5. — Sulphatide lipidoses in childhood. *Amer. J. Dis Child*, 104: 644, 1962.
6. HAGBERG, H., SOCRANDER, P. and THORÉN, L. Peripheral nerve changes in the diagnosis of metachromatic leucodystrophy. *Acta Paediatr. (Stockh.)*, 5: suppl. 113: 83, 1962.
7. HENRIKSEN, J. D. Conduction Velocity of Motor Nerve in Normal Subjects and Patients with Neurovascular Disorders. Thesis, May, Foundation, 1956.
8. HOOKS, R., LARRABEE, M. G. and GRIMAN, W. Human electromyogram in response to nerve stimulation and conduction velocity of motor axons, studies on normal and on injured peripheral nerves. *Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.* 69: 340, 1948.
9. HEDGECOCK, C. H. and DOW, R. S. Motor nerve conduction velocity determination. *Neurology*, 13: 962, 1963.
10. JOHNSON, E. W. and OLSEN, E. J. Clinical value of motor nerve conduction velocity determination. *JAMA*, 178: 2030, 1960.
11. LAMBERT, E. H. Neurophysiological techniques useful in the study of neuromuscular disorders. *Res. Publ. Ass. Res. Nerv. Ment. Dis.* 35: 247, 1960.
12. MAGALA, ER, J. W. and M. DOWDAL, D. B. Electrophysiological studies of nerve and reflex activity in normal man; identification of certain reflexes in electromyogram and conduction velocity of peripheral nerve fibers. *Bull. Hopkins Hosp.*, 86: 463, 1950.
13. MASON, H. and LEBMAN, L. Motor nerve conduction velocity measurement as diagnostic tool. *Neurology*, 12: 733, 1962.

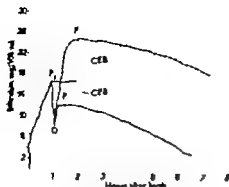


Fig. 1 The course of bilirubin concentrations in infants with haemolytic disease of the newborn.

Results

A. Factors associated with the production of bilirubin

Since the rate of production of bilirubin is directly related to the rate of haemolysis it may be predicted that the rate of its production after exchange transfusion would be proportional to the quantity of residual haemoglobin in nonexchanged foetal erythrocytes. The relative and absolute amount of this vulnerable haemoglobin can be calculated from the fall in the proportion of alkali resistant haemoglobin occurring during exchange transfusion [6]

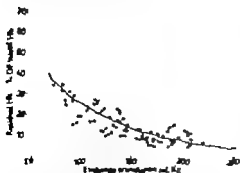


Fig. 2. — The relationship between the amount of blood exchanged and the fall in original haemoglobin in Cases with atypically low exchange (probably due to technical failure)

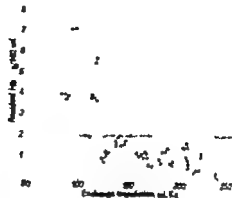


Fig. 3. The relationship between the amount of blood exchanged and the amount of residual haemoglobin in g/100 ml. ● Cases with mild or moderate anaemia; ○ cases with severe anaemia ($Hb < 10$ g/100 ml). Atypical exchange (see Fig. 2).

Fig. 2 shows the amount of blood exchanged in ml/kg body weight plotted against the per cent of foetal haemoglobin remaining after exchange transfusion. The regression curve of this relationship is asymptotic, its equation being given by $y = 10^{2-4} x^{0.4}$.

Fig. 3 shows that approximately the same relationship is found if the absolute amount of residual haemoglobin is plotted against the amount of blood exchanged. The scatter of values is greater however because of the variability of pre-exchange haemoglobin levels. Severely anaemic infants (open circles) tend to have lower amounts of residual haemoglobin for a given size of exchange transfusion. With exchanges over 160 ml/kg virtually all infants had residual haemoglobin below 2 g/100 ml.

In Fig. 4 values of residual haemoglobin are plotted against CEB in full term infants with HDN treated within 48 hours of birth. In infants with Rh incompatibility (solid circles) the post-exchange accu-

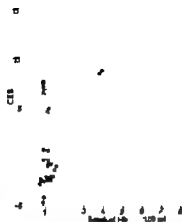


Fig. 4. Residual haemoglobin and CEB (clinically excess bilirubin) in term infants, treated within 48 hours of birth. ● Rh incompatibility; ○ ABO incompatibility; K repeated exchange transfusions; X kernicterus; † deaths.

lation of bilirubin always occurred when the amount of residual haemoglobin was more than about 2 g/100 ml, when the residual haemoglobin was below this limit CEB was negative in 70 % of cases. The difference between infants with low and high residuum of haemoglobin is significant ($\chi^2=12.67619$ $P<0.01$). Infants with HDN on the basis of ABO incompatibility (open circles) seemed to tolerate greater amounts of vulnerable haemoglobin.

The upper values of CEB were not found to be related to the size of the haemoglobin residua, and large accumulation of bilirubin after exchange transfusion occasionally took place with very effective elimination of foetal cells as judged by residual haemoglobin.

In premature infants (Fig 5) values of CEB were almost always positive regardless of the quantity of residual haemoglobin.



Fig. 5. Residual haemoglobin and CEB in premature infants (symbols as in Fig. 4).

No relationship could be found between CEB and the severity of haemolytic disease present, as judged by the titer of maternal antibodies or the rate of rise of bilirubin concentration in mg/hour during the first day of life.

B Factors associated with the excretion of bilirubin

1 *The degree of gestational maturity* The columns of Fig 6 indicate weeks of gestation, determined obstetrically as accurately as possible. Only infants with Rh incompatibility treated within 48 hours of birth, are included.

Infants born at term (39–41 weeks) showed negative values of CEB in the majority of cases. In contrast 90 % of infants of 38 or less weeks gestation accumulated excess bilirubin following exchange transfusion. This difference is significant ($\chi^2=11.0176$ $P<0.01$).

Haemolytic disease on the basis of ABO incompatibility was so rare in pre-

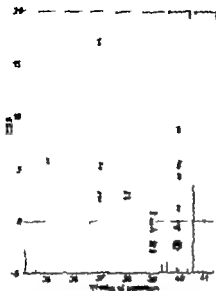


Fig. 6. Duration of gestation and CEB (only infant with Rh incompatibility treated within 48 hours of birth).

mature infants that no comparison could be made.

2. *Postnatal age* Fig. 7 shows values of CEB plotted against the age of infants at the start of exchange transfusion in full term infants.

The time at which exchange was car-

ried out markedly affected the post-exchange accumulation of bilirubin with the highest values of CEB found in infant treated within 1 hour of birth. Thereafter upper values of CEB decreased with increasing postnatal age and from the beginning of the fourth day only negative values of CEB were found. On the average cases with ABO incompatibility were treated later than those with Rh incompatibility and their values tend to be lower.

In most premature infant (Fig. 8) exchange was carried out soon after birth and it was not possible to assess the influence of postnatal age.

Discussion

There are two mechanisms by which bilirubin concentrations in HDN can be prevented from rising above critical level.

1. Direct removal of previously formed bilirubin causes a 5 to 30% reduction in plasma bilirubin levels (4). It has been shown that the absolute amount of bil-

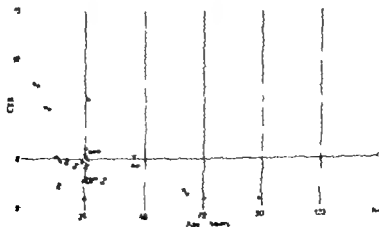


Fig. 7. Postnatal Age at the start of exchange transfusion and CEB in term infants. • Rh incompatibility; x ABO incompatibility.

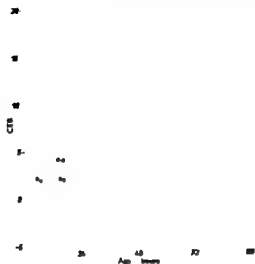


Fig. 8. Postnatal age at the start of exchange transfusion and CEB in premature infants (symbols as in Fig. 7).

rubin removed increases continually though not in linear fashion, with the amount of blood exchanged [2, 5].

2. Removal of the sensitized red cells and antibodies prevents continuance of abnormally high rates of bilirubin production. The reduction in numbers of remaining foetal erythrocytes, however, decreases exponentially as the size of exchange transfusion increases, and thus the efficiency of removal of the haemolytic system falls considerably during the course of the procedure.

Prevention of continuing haemolysis plays a far more important role quantitatively: one can easily calculate that removal of 80-90% sensitized red cells prevents the formation of an amount of bilirubin many times that actually removed by exchange transfusion.

Our data show that the degree of gestational maturity of treated infant is apparently the most important factor in-

fluencing effectiveness of exchange transfusion. Almost all premature infants showed positive often very high, values of post-exchange accumulation of newly formed bilirubin, whatever the amount of residual haemoglobin (Fig. 5). Exchange transfusion had to be repeated in 25%, as compared to 10% in full term infants.

In full-term infants, a rise in bilirubin concentration could be entirely suppressed by a single exchange transfusion when the residual haemoglobin was less than about 2 g/100 ml. This was virtually always achieved by an exchange of 160-180 ml/kg often by less (Fig. 3). Even in this group with low residual haemoglobin, in about a third of the cases, post-exchange accumulation rose as high as in infants with a much less effective exchange as judged by the residual haemoglobin (Fig. 4). Such cases probably represent individually low excretory capacities since this function shows considerable individual variation.

These conclusions are fully valid only for newborn infant treated within 48 hours of birth. This is of course the most common situation. In infants treated later the distinct though poorly understood improvement in post-natal excretion of bilirubin by the liver causes a rapid decrease in the post-exchange accumulation of bilirubin, and from the beginning of the fourth day the exchange was always "successful" i.e. with negative CEB (Fig. 7 and 8). This is, however, of little practical importance because the decrease of CEB is cancelled out by the higher saturation of the body by bilirubin: thus the peak levels after transfusion are about the same in infants treated early as later.

It may be concluded that when an adequate amount of blood, i.e. 130 ml/kg

or more is exchanged (Fig 3) the failure of the first exchange transfusion, often necessitating repeated exchange is due mainly to inadequacy of bilirubin excretion, secondary to gestational immaturity or individual inefficiency of hepatic conjugation. These endogenous factors are little influenced by external efforts and thus little can be achieved by prolonging the procedure. No difference in results could be demonstrated when the amount of blood exchanged varied from 150 to 250 ml/kg. We therefore give an average of 150 ml/kg in about 90 minutes. This amount may be decreased to 100-130 ml/kg in mild cases particularly with ABO incompatibility and in all cases treated after 72 hours.

In premature infants with a high level of bilirubin (20 mg/100 ml or more) the size of the exchange may be increased from 150 ml/kg to 200-230 ml/kg in order to reduce body pools of bilirubin as much as possible. We feel however that in such cases repeated exchange transfusions when necessary are both safer and more effective.

Summary

The difference between the highest level of bilirubin concentration before and after exchange transfusion has been used as a measurable index of the effectiveness of exchange transfusion.

During the first two days of life exchange transfusion was entirely successful only when the residuum of haemoglobin in foetal cells did not exceed about g/100 ml. This was virtually always achieved by an exchange of 100-170 ml/kg, often by smaller quantities. Under these conditions the failure of exchange transfusion was chiefly due to inadequacy of bilirubin excretion secondary to gestational immaturity or individual variability. In our data the outcome of exchange transfusion was not dependent upon the size of the exchange (150-250 ml/kg).

We give approximately 150 ml/kg of blood in about 90 minutes. This amount may be decreased to 100-130 ml/kg in mild cases particularly with ABO incompatibility and in all cases treated after 72 hours of age.

References

1. BROWN, A. K., ZUCKER, W. W. and ROBINSON, A. E. Studies in hyperbilirubinemia. II. *Amer J Dis Child* 82: 274, 1957.
2. FORBES, J. O., KERRY, A. J., ELLIOTT, W. D. and CUMMINGS, R. A. Exchange transfusion in neonatal hyperbilirubinaemia. *Lancet*, II: 1131, 1955.
3. JIRSOVÁ, V., JIRSA, M. and J. KOVČEK, M. Importance of the quantitative determination of direct and indirect bilirubin in haemolytic disease of the newborn. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 47: 179, 1958.
4. KUTER, U. and PARTENIER, A. Untersuch-

ungen über den Wertesatzung des Kerns bilirubins nach der Auro-nachtrien fassen, sowie zur Frage des optimalen I-transfusions mit seiner Austauschtransfusion. *Z. A. Geburtsh.*, 83: 183, 1959.

5. KLEIN, W. Untersuchungen über den Nukleinsäuregehalt bei der Austauschtransfusion. Behandlung des Ikterus gra. in neonatorum. *Z. Kinderheilk*, 86: 62* and 61, 1961.
6. POLÍČEK, K. and HÁZE, M. Haemolytic disease of the newborn, control of replacement of the erythrocytes by means of foetal haemoglobin. *Rev. Czechoslovak Med.*, 473, 1961.

Submitted Oct. 26, 1963

Accepted Dec. 15, 1963

Institut for the
Care of Mother and Child
Prague-Petřov
Czechoslovakia

From the Children's Department and Pediatric Research Institute
University Hospital, Rikshospitalet, Oslo

Iron Requirements in Infancy

II The Influence of Iron Fortified Cereals Given during the First Year of Life on the Red Blood Picture of Children at 1½-3 Years of Age

by PETER JOHAN MOE

Introduction

The studies to be reported in this article are an extension of the longitudinal studies of iron requirements during the first year of life published recently [3].

We have reasons to presume that a normal infant receiving adequate dietary iron supply during the first year of life will run little risk of developing iron deficiency anemia during the following years. We have been interested in studying whether this is really true and have therefore made a follow up study of the 211 participants in the previous investigation. No attempts have been made to perform a more exact determination of the daily iron intake of the participants after the age of 1 year as this appears to be very difficult in such a large series above the age of one year.

An attempt has also been made to determine the incidence of iron-deficiency anemia in Norwegian children during their first years of life and the influence of different types of infant cereals commonly used in Norway on the red blood picture of the subjects at the age of 1 to 3 years (control series).

Further an attempt has been made to evaluate the long term effect of iron therapy in anemic infant.

Literature

A survey of the literature has been given previously [3]. The only article of special interest which has appeared since that survey is by Beal and co-workers [1], who claim that a diet which provides 0.5 mg iron/kg or more daily to infants during the first year of life was adequate to meet the iron requirements for hemoglobin synthesis. However these studies comprised only 50 infants, which is too small a number for a longitudinal study of iron requirements. All the infants had received iron fortified cereals, and it is evident that the reported figures for daily iron intake must be too low. The infants had been under the care of different practicing physicians, and no iron analyses had been performed on the diets.

Clinical Material

The present study was performed on 300 healthy children aged 1½-3 years, during the period October 20 1963 to April 4, 1963.

An attempt was made to perform follow up study on all the 11 infants participating in the longitudinal studies of iron require-

TABLE 1 *Reasons for non participation in the follow up studies*

| | N of cases |
|------------------------------|------------|
| Moved from district | 16 |
| Treated by another technique | 3 |
| Died from leukemia | 1 |
| Failed to keep up attendance | 9 |

ments during the first year of life (groups A, B and C). Twenty-nine of the 11 infants (13.7%) did not participate in this part of the study for reasons shown in Table 1.

Almost all other children in the age group 1½–3 years attending our well baby-clinic during the period October 29, 1963 to April 4, 1965 were also studied (control series). Most of these 118 children attended our well baby-clinic regularly. All of them had received ordinary infant diets under the supervision of a well-baby-clinic. Twenty of the 118 children belonged to group D in the previous study [3].

The Diets

All the 300 children included in this report had received a very similar dietary regimen during their first year of life using the recommendations for infant feeding commonly used in Norway. Thus, the variable factor in the diet was the iron content of the cereals. Details for the diets of the infants in groups A, B and C as well as the result of iron analyses of the constituent of the diets, have been given in the monograph [3]. Detailed dietary information was not obtained for the children in the control series, but the total daily iron intake during the first year of life can be estimated for most of the children (see later).

The children in the control series were divided into the following 5 subgroups, based on the types of cereal used during the first year of life:

Group I consisted of 7 children who received whole wheat cereal ("hvetegrupp") regularly during the first year of life. None of them

had received any type of iron-fortified cereals.

Group II consists of 11 children who had received non-fortified cereals, and for some periods cereals with a low iron content ("5 mg" cereal) as well.

Group III consists of 31 children who had received iron fortified cereals with low iron content ("5 mg" cereal), and no other types of cereals.

Group IV consists of 44 children who had received iron-fortified cereals with a high iron content (15–40 mg per 100 g cereal) for a shorter or longer period of time plus other types of cereals.

Group V consists of 17 children who had received only iron-fortified cereal with a high iron content.

The children in group III received the same type of iron fortified cereals as the children in group C from the longitudinal studies, but on an average they had probably received less cereal than the latter. Their total daily iron intake must therefore have been maximum 5.4–8.4 mg. The children in groups I and II must have received a significantly lower dietary iron intake during their first year of life than the children in group C (and group III). Infants on ordinary un-supplemented diet (group I) will reach a total daily iron intake of 3–6 mg during the last month of the first year of life [3].

It is not possible to give exact figures for total daily iron intake of the children in group IV as there must have been large ranges depending on their intake of iron fortified cereals with a high iron content. The total daily iron intake of the children in group V is estimated to have been 10–20 mg during the last month of the first year of life.

No iron fortified cereal were supplied after the age of 1 year and all the children received the same supplementary dietary instructions from then onwards. How the dietary histories were obtained on all the children at each well baby-clinic visit and more complete dietary history was obtained for each child during the period for this study. Attention was paid to detect any gross deviation from usual feeding habits.

particularly any increased milk consumption. It was also important to get exact information regarding supplementing the diet with iron.

Methods

The infant's state of iron nutrition was evaluated by studying the hemoglobin concentration and erythrocyte morphology as in the first part of this investigation. The only change in methods was the use of a Ljungberg Cellscope in counting red blood cells, instead of the Zeiss counting chamber ad modum Bürker. The two methods have previously been compared [3], and there was a close correlation between the figures obtained. All the hematocrit readings and RBC count were performed by the technician, Miss Helene Lassen. She also checked the hemoglobin readings on the last 3 of the samples.

Age of the Children

Almost all the children from the longitudinal studies were between 2 and 3 years of age at the time of this investigation. Sixty-one of the 118 children in the control series were between 1½–2 years of age and the rest were 2–3 years of age. The normal red blood picture changes very little from the age of 1½–3 years, and the lower limit of normal hemoglobin concentration will, therefore, probably be the same throughout the whole period.

The mean ages in all the groups were above years. Most of the children in the control series are either a little younger or older than those in the longitudinal studies, since the longitudinal studies comprised all healthy children attending the well-baby-clinic at the age of 3 months during a given period of time.

Results

Influence of iron fortified cereals given during the first year of life on the red blood picture of children at 1½–3 years of age

The mean blood values of the 182 children from the longitudinal studies and the 118 in the control series aged 1½–3 years, are presented in Table 1.

Groups A and B in the longitudinal studies and group V in the control series comprise children who have received an adequate daily iron intake during the first year of life. "Student's *t*-test" shows that these children, 131 in all, have a highly significant higher hemoglobin concentration ($P < .001$) than the children in groups C, I, II and III—123 in all—who had received an inadequate daily iron intake during the first year of life. In spite of the fact that many of the latter children had received courses of iron therapy. Group IV

TABLE 1. Mean blood values children aged 1½–3 years

| | Group | % of cases | Hb. g ¹⁰⁰ | Hem. | MCHC |
|-----------------------------|-------|------------|----------------------|------|------|
| <i>Longitudinal studies</i> | A | 51 | 11.78 | 33.9 | 30.1 |
| | B | 63 | 11.8 | 33.8 | 30.4 |
| | C | 69 | 11.82 | 33.8 | 29.9 |
| <i>Control series</i> | I | 7 | 11.13 | 37.8 | 29.6 |
| | II | 19 | 11.23 | 38.1 | 29.7 |
| | III | 31 | 11.22 | 38.2 | 29.8 |
| | IV | 14 | 11.22 | 38.2 | 29.8 |

TABLE 3. *Information about previous iron therapy and distribution of hemoglobin concentrations at 1½–3 years of age*

| Group | Total no. of cases | No. of cases receiving iron therapy | No. of cases with Hb. (g%) | | Iron therapy or Hb. below 11 | |
|-------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------|------------------------------|-----|
| | | | < 10.5 | 10.5–10.95 | % of cases | |
| I | 7 | 3 | 1 | 1 | 5 | 5/7 |
| II | 19 | 4 | | 3 | 8 | 62 |
| III | 31 | 5 | 3 | 7 | 12 | 4 |
| C | 68 | 19 | 7 | 6 | 26 | 31 |
| IV | 44 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 16 |
| V | 43 | | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |
| V | 17 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 6 |
| A | 81 | 1 | 1 | | 4 | 6 |

occupies an intermediate position, both with respect to dietary iron intake during the first year of life and blood values.

Table 3 demonstrating the number of children in each group who had previously received courses of iron therapy and the distribution of hemoglobin concentrations at 1½–3 years of age is more interesting. The groups have been arranged according to dietary iron intake during the first year of life.

Table 3 demonstrates that 5° of the 123 children in the first four groups had either received iron therapy or had hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml at 1½–3 years of age whereas the corresponding figures for the last three groups were only 7 out of 131 children.

Table 3 also shows the marked difference between the children in groups A and II and those in group C (longitudinal studies) as well as a corresponding difference in the control series between the children (group V) receiving an adequate iron intake during the first year of life and the children (groups I, II and III) receiving significantly less than 10 mg iron daily during the latter part of the first year of life.

The 7 children in group I received a "good" non fortified diet during the first year of life. It is a small group but 5 of the 7 children had either received iron therapy or had hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml at 1½–3 years of age. The 19 children in group II received very nearly the same dietary iron intake as the children in group I. Eight of the 19 children had either received iron therapy or showed hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml at 1½–3 years of age. There can be little doubt therefore that as stated in the literature [2, 3] even a good non fortified diet during the first year of life may provide less than the required amount of iron.

Information about blood values of the children prior to iron medication

An objection to Table 3 may be that it contains no information about the indication for previous iron therapy. This information was given in the case of children participating in the longitudinal studies (Moe [3], page 35, 1963) as was the response to iron therapy. The indications for

TABLE 4 *Blood values of children in the control series prior to iron therapy and at 1½-3 years of age.*

| Infant No. | Group | Before iron therapy | | | At 1½-3 years of age | | |
|------------|-------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------|--------------------------|
| | | Hb. g % | Hem. % | RBC mill/mm ³ | Hb. g % | Hem. % | RBC mill/mm ³ |
| 222 | I | 7.35 | 31 | 4.74 | 10.8 | 38.5 | 4.47 |
| 229 | II | 8.8 | 33 | 4.81 | 11.2 | 36 | 4.41 |
| 238 | III | 9.75 | 34.5 | 4.67 | 10.9 | 37 | 5.02 |
| 232 | II | 10.05 | 34 | 3.44 | 11.33 | 39 | 4.80 |
| 233 | II | 10.5 | 36 | 4.09 | 11.8 | 36 | 4.48 |
| 316 | IV | 10.4 | 34 | 4.20 | 10.95 | 41.5 | 4.00 |
| 341 | III | 10.55 | 36 | 4.25 | 11.55 | 39 | 4.40 |
| 319 | IV | 11.68 | 40.5 | 3.98 | 11.3 | 37.5 | 4.70 |
| 256 | II | 8.3 | | | 10.96 | | 4.50 |
| 267 | III | 9.4 | | | 12.1 | 40 | 5.10 |
| 281 | III | 10.0 | | | 10.55 | 34.5 | 3.76 |
| 248 | I | 10.8 | (Routine laboratory) ^a | | 11.33 | 37 | 4.30 |
| 246 | I | 10.7 | | | 11.35 | 38 | 4.38 |
| 293 | IV | 11.0 | | | 11.85 | 38 | 4.71 |
| 310 | IV | 11.1 | | | 9.8 | 35 | 4.60 |
| 323 | V | 11.6 | | | 12.65 | 41 | 4.85 |
| 279 | III | 7 | | | 10.95 | 41.5 | 4.00 |

These tests were performed by different technicians on our routine laboratory the same Ljungberg colorimeter being used as in the main studies.

giving iron therapy to the children in the control series appear from Table 4. It may be seen from Table 4 that 4 of the 5 children belonging to groups IV and V had relatively high hemoglobin concentrations when iron therapy was started, namely 11 g per 100 ml or more. The indication for giving iron medication to these 4 children is questionable.

The long term value of a short course of iron therapy in anemic infants

Table 4 also shows that 7 of the 17 children in the control series receiving iron therapy before the age of 1½ years had hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml during their 1½-3 years age period. Seven of the 11 children from the longitudinal studies [3] who received iron therapy before the age of 1½ years had hemoglobin

concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml when aged 1½-3 years.

Most of the children received iron therapy for about 4 weeks. This is too short a period of treatment to fill the iron stores. The frequent recurrence of low hemoglobin concentrations demonstrates the inadequacy of a short course of iron therapy in preventing iron-deficiency anemia compared to the use of iron-fortified cereals with an adequate iron content during the first year of life.

Children with low hemoglobin concentrations at 1½-3 years of age and the effect of iron therapy

There were no cases of more severe iron-deficiency anemia at the age of 1½-3 years. This is probably due to the fact that many of the children receiving a low daily iron

TABLE 5 *Blood values of 1 children with hemoglobin concentrations below 10 g per 100 ml aged 1½-3 years and the effect of iron therapy*

| Infant no. | Sex | Group | Before iron therapy | | | After iron therapy | | |
|------------|-----|-------|---------------------|----------|--------|--------------------|----------|--------|
| | | | Hb. g % | Hemat. % | MCHC % | Hb. g % | Hemat. % | MCHC % |
| 69 | M | A | 9.65 | 37 | 28.1 | 11.83 | 42 | 34.1 |
| 196 | F | C | 9.68 | 35 | 29.1 | 11.5 | 39 | 34.5 |
| 310 | M | IV | 9.9 | 33.5 | 29.5 | 11.05 | 37 | 31.5 |
| 123 | M | B | 9.9 | 36.8 | 31.1 | 11.7 | 39 | 35 |
| 207 | M | IV | 10.0 | 36.6 | 27.4 | 11.0 | 39.5 | 30.6 |
| 176 | M | C | 10.5 | 35 | 29.3 | 11.6 | 34.5 | 31.9 |
| 11 | M | C | 10.5 | 36 | 29.6 | 11.15 | 37 | 32.4 |
| 265 | M | III | 10.13 | 37 | 37.8 | 11.4 | 34 | 34.8 |
| 189 | M | C | 10.4 | 36 | 29.9 | 11.3 | 41 | 37.3 |
| 4 | M | I | 10.46 | 35 | 29.9 | 11.3 | 35 | 32.2 |
| 183 | M | C | 10.45 | 36 | 29.0 | 11 | 35 | 33.4 |
| 281 | M | III | 10.65 | 34.5 | 30.4 | 11.05 | 33 | 32.5 |
| 264 | M | III | 10.6 | 36 | 29.4 | 11.16 | 36.5 | 30.8 |
| 222 | M | I | 10.6 | 34.5 | 29.9 | 11.0 | 37.5 | 32.0 |
| 164 | F | C | 10.6 | 35 | 27.9 | 10.9 | 34 | 29.7 |
| 49 | F | II | 10.65 | 37 | 29.9 | 12.1 | | |
| 179 | M | C | 10.68 | 37 | 29.6 | 11.5 | 35.5 | 30.9 |

intake during the first year of life had received iron therapy at the age of about 1 year. Blood values of 17 children with hemoglobin concentrations below 10.7 g per 100 ml aged 1½-3 years and the effect of iron therapy is shown in Table 5. Nine children with hemoglobin concentrations below 10.7 g per 100 ml could not for various reasons be checked after iron therapy had been instituted. Their mean hemoglobin concentration was 10.2 g per 100 ml, and all but one (from group IV) belonged to groups I, III or C.

All but one of the 26 children with hemoglobin concentrations below 10 g per 100 ml had hematocrit of 37 or below and all but 5 had MCHC below 30. Table 5 shows that 15 of the 17 children achieved hemoglobin concentration of 11 g per 100 ml or more after 4-8 weeks of iron therapy. The increase in hematocrit was not a consistently good

Six of the 16 children with hemoglobin concentrations of 10.7 to 10.95 g per 100 ml at 1½-3 years of age had blood tests performed following iron therapy. All of them had reached hemoglobin concentration above 11.2 g per 100 ml and their hematocrits were 39 or above.

The incidence of iron deficiency anemia in the longitudinal studies during the age period 1-3 years

Table 6 lists the number of children in the longitudinal studies having hemoglobin concentration below 11 g per 100 ml at the age of 1 or 1½-3 years in order to give an impression of the numbers of children from the different groups who developed signs of iron deficiency anemia during their first years of life.

Table 6 shows that 14 of the 65 children (20%) in group C had hemoglobin concentration below 10 g per 100 ml during

TABLE 6 No. of cases in the longitudinal studies with hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml at the ages of 1 or 1½-3 years

| Group | Total no. of cases | No. of cases with Hb. (g %) | | |
|-------|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------|------------|
| | | Below 10 | 10-10.45 | 10.5-10.95 |
| A | 51 | 1 | 0 | 3 |
| B | 63 | 1 | 0 | 2 |
| C | 55 | 4 | 10 | 15 |

only one in each of the other two groups had such low hemoglobin concentrations. These two children will be discussed briefly. Case 59 (group A) had a hemoglobin concentration of 11.8 g per 100 ml at the age of 1 year. This child received large quantities of milk during his second year of life, about 1 liter per day and he developed the typical features of iron-deficiency anemia with a hemoglobin concentration of 9.65 g per 100 ml at the age of 2 years. The second child, Case 123 (group B) had a hemoglobin concentration of 10.8 g per 100 ml at the age of 1 year and he was the only one who did not respond to iron therapy at that age. The reason for this child's persistently low hemoglobin concentration from the age of 9 to 23 months, in spite of high daily iron intake during the first year of life and prolonged iron therapy at the age of 1 year is uncertain.

A closer study of the 15 children in group C with hemoglobin concentrations of 10.5-10.95 during the age period 1-3 years, discloses that many of them must have been anemic, and the total incidence of iron-deficiency anemia in group C during the age period 1-3 years was probably nearly 35%.

TABLE 7 Number of children in the control series with hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml during the age period 1-3 years

| Group | Total no. of cases | No. of cases with hemoglobin (g %) | | |
|------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|----------|------------|
| | | Below 10 | 10-10.45 | 10.5-10.95 |
| I | 7 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| II | 19 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| III | 31 | 3 | 2 | 8 |
| IV | 44 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| V | 17 | 0 | 0 | 11 |
| Groups I-V | 118 | 8 | 7 | 18 |

The incidence of iron-deficiency anemia among children in the control series during the age period 1-3 years

Table 7 lists the number of children in the control series showing hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml during the age period 1-3 years.

Table 7 shows that 15 of the 118 "healthy" children (12.7%) from our well baby clinic were definitely anemic during the age period 1-3 years with hemoglobin concentrations below 10.5 g per 100 ml. The number would have been even higher if all the children had been followed to the age of 3 years, and especially if all the children had remained untreated. A closer study of the 18 children with hemoglobin concentrations of 10.5-10.95 shows that many of them must have been anemic and the total incidence of iron-deficiency anemia during the age period was probably approximately 25%. All the anemic children were in groups I-IV and 27 of the 57 children (47%) in the first three groups had hemoglobin concentrations below 11 g per 100 ml during the age period 1-3 years.

Role of Infection

Only one child had an infection which definitely influenced the blood values. Case 85 (group B) ran a high fever with glandular swelling in the neck and infectious blood picture at the age of 26 months. Her hemoglobin concentration was 10.6 g per 100 ml, but increased with out iron therapy to 11.03 g per 100 ml. One further child deserves closer comment, i.e. Case 30 (group III). This child had always had a tendency to diarrhoea and one cannot exclude the possibility that this has influenced his blood picture.

This part of the investigation confirmed the impression from the longitudinal studies that infections are of minor importance as a cause of anemia in this age period compared to the role of the dietary iron intake.

Discussion

- ✓ An infant approximately trebles his weight during the first year of life whilst weight increment during his second year of life is about 5 kg or about 25% of the weight at the age of 1 year. The high concentration of hemoglobin and the relatively large blood volume at birth are the major contributing factors in reducing the exogenous iron requirements during the first year of life, but a normal infant poorly supplied with endogenous iron will need to increase his iron content by 2-300% during the first year of life [4]. The hemoglobin concentration will normally remain practically unchanged during the second year of life and it would seem justified to presume that an infant (with a normal hemoglobin concentration at the age of 1 year) will need to increase

his total body iron by about 25% during the second year of life. Exogenous iron requirements during the second year of life will, therefore, presumably be smaller than during the third and fourth trimester. In spite of this most recommendations as regards daily iron allowances stipulate larger intakes in the second year of life. It is difficult to perform an exact determination of daily iron intake in a large number of infants after the age of 1 year. Theoretical calculations of iron requirements can only serve as rough guides, but it is likely that a good non-supplemented diet will meet the iron requirements after the age of 1 year and one may therefore presume that an infant with a good state of iron nutrition at the age of 1 year will run little risk of developing iron-deficiency anemia during the following years, on an ordinary diet (with a daily iron intake of about 6-7 mg).

The studies reported in this article show that the regular use of iron fortified cereals with an adequate iron content (groups I, B and V) during the first year of life will almost completely prevent the occurrence of iron-deficiency anemia during the first years of life.

No reliable figures exist as to the approximate incidence of iron-deficiency anemia during the first years of life in Norway. These studies indicate a relatively high incidence of mild or moderate iron deficiency anemia among healthy infants attending regularly a well-baby-clinic in Oslo. There can therefore be no doubt about the desirability of a change in dietary iron intake during the first year of life in order to secure an adequate iron intake for all healthy infants and thereby prevent the development of iron-defi-

ciency anemia in infancy and early childhood.

The inadequacy of non-fortified diets during the first year of life in preventing iron-deficiency anemia has been demonstrated. Iron-fortified cereals are now in common use all over the country although there probably is a higher percentage of infants receiving iron-fortified cereals in Oslo than in rural districts. All iron-fortified cereals used in Norway today have an adequate iron content, provided the infants are fed according to the feeding instructions. It has been maintained that it is unnecessary to give iron-fortified cereals twice a day provided the cereals have a significantly high iron content, but this question has not been solved in the present investigation. Most infants are fed cereals twice a day until the age of 9-12 months, and it is not quite obvious why they should not be given iron-fortified cereals twice a day. Iron-fortified cereals do not represent a large burden on the family budget. They are much more important for the prevention of iron-deficiency anemia during the first year of life than are canned meats, vegetables and fruits. All the 17 children in the control series (group V) receiving only iron fortified cereals with a high iron content (15-40 mg per 100 g of cereal) had high hemoglobin concentrations at 1½-3 years of age but there were several anemic children among the 44 children (group IV) receiving iron fortified cereals with a high iron content, alternating with cereals with a low iron content. The children in the control series did not participate in the longitudinal studies, and they were not subjected to constant dietary supervision. It is, therefore, impossible to know the

precise composition of their diets during their first year of life but the above observations demonstrate the risk involved in permitting the use of iron-fortified cereals alternately with cereals of a low iron content.

Summary

The present study was performed on 300 healthy children aged 1½-3 years. One hundred and eighty-two had participated in previous longitudinal studies of iron requirements in infancy the other 118 belonged to a control series of healthy children attending a well-baby-clinic. The latter children were divided into 5 sub-groups based on the types of cereals they had taken during the first year of life.

The incidence of iron-deficiency anemia in Norwegian children during the first years of life is still high, depending mainly on the type of cereals they have been given. These studies have demonstrated that children receiving an adequate daily iron intake during the first year of life (10 mg or more from the age of about 8 months) will run little risk of developing iron-deficiency anemia during the following years on an ordinary diet.

It is difficult to carry out an exact determination of the daily iron requirements during the second year of life. From a practical point of view it is important to know that iron fortification of a good diet after the age of 1 year is unnecessary provided the infants have a good state of iron nutrition at the age of 1 year. This will probably mean that the daily iron requirements during the second year of life is about 5-7 mg daily and definitely not as high as 10-15 mg daily.

References

- 1 DEAL, V. A., MEYER, A. J., McCAMMO R. W.: Iron intake, hemoglobin, and physical growth during the first two years of life. *Pediatrics*, **20**: 518, 1962.
- 2 LAWRY, M. F.: Iron-deficiency anemia. *Pediatr Clin N Amer* **4**: 451 May 1957.
- 3 M. E. P. J.: Iron requirements in infancy. Longitudinal studies of iron requirements during the first year of life. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, **52**: pp 160 1963.
- 4 BYRNE, P.: Iron metabolism. A review with special consideration of iron requirement during normal infancy. *Pediatrics*, **11**: 667 1956.

Submitted Dec. 2, 1963

Accepted Feb. 19, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
School of Medicine
University of Bergen
Bergen
Norway

From the Department of Paediatr Pathology & the Department of Pathology the Paediatr Clinic and the Department of Paediatr Radiology Karolinska sjukhuset Stockholm, Sweden

Late Stages of Pulmonary Hyaline Membranes of the Newborn

by BENGT ROBERTSON RAGNAR TUNELL and ULF RUDHE

In neonates suffering from pulmonary hyaline membranes and surviving the first few days it has been observed that the membranes become infiltrated by histiocytes, fragmented and detached from the alveolar walls. This has been interpreted as evidence that the membranes are being removed [3 10 15 18]. In these cases a cellular reaction has also been described in the alveolar walls proper: proliferation of the alveolar epithelium and accumulation of fibroblasts. These latter features have been interpreted as a process of reparation, following previous damage to the alveolar walls and it has been postulated, that such a damage probably is related to the development of hyaline membranes [3 15]. Studies with the electron microscope have revealed destruction of the alveolar lining and swelling of the endothelium in capillaries beneath the membranes in an early stage of the disease [5 6]. No permanent sequelae however have been recognized in the surviving cases [11]. The report hitherto published on the structure of pulmonary hyaline

membranes in the neonatal period are confined to the first postnatal week.

The purpose of this study is to present the morphologic features in the lungs of four neonatal cases of idiopathic respiratory distress surviving the first postnatal week. Three of these patients died at the age of 13 1 and 23 days, respectively. The fourth infant survived and is still living at 16 months of age. In this case a lung biopsy was performed at the age of 8 weeks.

Case Reports

Case I

Clinical history. This concerns a prematurely born male infant (birth weight 1700 g), the first child of a healthy 22 year-old mother. After an uneventful pregnancy of 32 weeks the infant was born in normal spontaneous vertex delivery. The immediate neonatal course was uncomplicated. Cyanosis, however, still persisted after 10 minutes. At this time slight respiratory distress was observed, which gradually increased. At the age of three hours the Silverman score was 5 and the respiratory frequency 80/min. Generalized cyanosis was present but disappeared after the administration of 50 oxygen in the inspired air.

During the subsequent four days the respiration was highly irregular. There were frequent episodes of apnea but the respira-

Supported by grants from Karolinska Institutet, Forskningsrådet and Statens Medicinska Forskningsråd (Molnström Foundation T 231).



Fig 1 Alveolar duct filled with cellular acidophilic material. Premature infant (birth weight 1 00 g), aged 13 days. Idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period. (Case 1.) Hematoxylin-eosin 530.

tory distress gradually decreased. On the fourth day after birth the spontaneous respiration stopped for a period of 14 minutes, which made it necessary to apply the Engstrom respirator. The setting of the respirator was adjusted according to results obtained from arterial blood gas analyses. A comparatively low positive pressure (25 cm H_2O) was needed to maintain the required minute volume of 800 ml. The general condition of the infant was good, but some respiratory distress, i.e. intercostal retraction and prolonged expiration during periods of spontaneous respiration, persisted.

At the age of 10 days the clinical course was complicated by diarrhea, melena, vomiting and increasing dyspnea. The infant rapidly deteriorated and expired at the age of 13 days.

Röntgenologic findings. Roentgen examination of the chest was carried out repeatedly during the disease period. A few hours after birth disseminated atelectases of a reticulo-granular appearance were noted in both lungs. The somewhat irregular distribu-

tion had changed to a more uniform one on the next day. On the fourth day the involved area had spread to include much of the periphery of the lungs. Additional progression was seen on the seventh day when multiple areas of patchy consolidation developed bilaterally. The appearance of the lungs particularly in the studies following the initial examination, was considered compatible with the hyaline membrane syndrome.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity - idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period + acute gastroenteritis + pneumonia.

Gross findings at autopsy. Both lungs were consolidated and weighed 24 and 38 g, respectively (normal combined weight 30 ± 9 g). There were large septal and subpleural bleedings. The mucosa of the esophagus, the stomach and the intestines showed foci of recent hemorrhage. The leptomeninges presented recent wide-spread hemorrhage in the vicinity of the cerebellar hemispheres. A hemorrhage into the ventricular system of the brain was noted. The cardiovascular



Fig. 2. Thickened, partly hyalinized alveolar wall with accumulation of fibroblasts. Amorphous material in the lumen. (Case 1) Hematoxylin-eosin 532.

system was normal. The ductus arteriosus was patent. The other organs were unremarkable.

Histologic findings in lung specimens (The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, v. Gieson, H & denham Azan and Lendrum reticulum et al.) In several alveoli and bronchioles of both lungs acidophilic hyaline material was observed, either filling the lumina of the air-spaces or forming membranes covering the walls. This material was infiltrated by histiocytes (Fig. 1). Many alveolar walls were thickened and hyalinized, with hyperchromatic nuclei in the cells of the alveolar epithelium (Fig. 2). Beneath the epithelium of these alveolar walls many fibroblast and excess of reticulin fibers were observed (Fig. 3). However no excess of collagen fibers could be demonstrated. There was no inflammatory exudate in the air-spaces.

Case 2

Clinical history This concerns a prematurely born infant (birth weight 1900 g), the first child of a healthy 18-year-old woman. After an uneventful pregnancy of 32 weeks

there was spontaneous uncomplicated delivery. The child was born in vertex presentation. Immediately after birth the infant cried vigorously. Cyanosis persisted and 10 minutes after birth intercostal retractions were observed. Three hours after birth severe respiratory distress had developed (82 w. man score 9). There was marked generalized cyanosis, which disappeared after the administration of 80% oxygen in the inspired air. From the 12th hour after birth arterial blood gas analyses were repeatedly performed via permanent catheter in one umbilical artery. During the first three postnatal days the arterial oxygen saturation varied between 40 and 80% depending upon the content of oxygen in the inspired air. The values of P_{aCO_2} varied between 45 and 80 mm Hg and those of BP between 15 and 5 mmHg/l. The respiratory frequency was 70-80/min. Because of severe sternal retractions the infant was treated with thorax elevation during the first three days.

From the fourth day the respiratory distress gradually diminished. There was however a strong tendency to vomit requiring intravenous nutrition during the following weeks. On the 18th day an acid

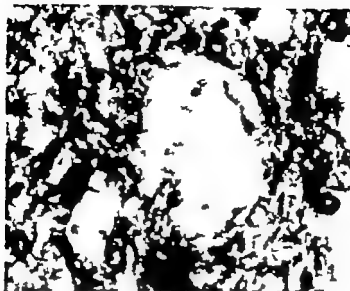


Fig. 2. Thickened alveolar wall (not lining excess of reticulin fibers, (C 1) Lomtrun reticulum stain 530)

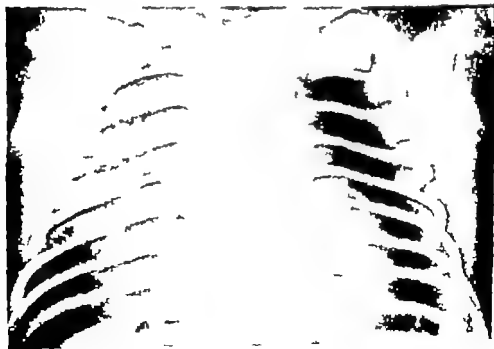


Fig. 4. Case 2, day of birth. Small reticulo-granular densities are distributed in the hilar and basal areas bilaterally

dent with the feeding tube occurred the tube formed a loop in the esophagus and its tip came to the level of the larynx, resulting in marked aspiration and subsequent telescoping of the right upper lobe. The child rapidly deteriorated. After this event Apnoic spells occurred and in spite of the application of the Engström respirator the child died two days later at the age of 1 day. During the last day there were bleedings from the gastro-intestinal tract.

Röntgenologic findings. Roentgen examination of the chest carried out on the day of birth demonstrated widespread, regularly distributed dense areas of reticulogranular appearance in both lungs (Fig. 4). The main bronchi and some of the larger subsegmental bronchi were clearly seen against the contrasting dense parenchyma. The pattern was characteristic of the hyaline membrane syndrome. A moderate regression of the stigmata was noted on the fourth day. Confluent patchy infiltrates appeared after 18 days and were considered to be secondary to aspiration.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity - hyaline membrane respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period - pneumonia (aspiration).

Gross findings at autopsy. Both lungs were consolidated with foci of bronchopneumonia. The lungs weighed 30 and 35 g, respectively (normal combined weight 44 ± 13 g). There was purulent material in the trachea and the main bronchi. The mucosa of the distal part of the esophagus was partly ulcerated. The remainder of the gastro-intestinal tract was normal. There were no cardiovascular abnormalities. The ductus arteriosus was patent. The other organs, including the brain, showed nothing remarkable.

Bacteriologic findings. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* was cultured from the lungs.

Histologic findings in lung specimens. The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, v. Gieson, Heidenhain, Azan and Lendrum (reticulum stain.) Foci of bronchopneumonia were present in both lungs. In many alveoli amorphous material was found indicating aspira-

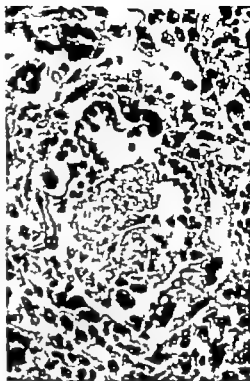


Fig. 6. Thickened, partly hyalinized alveolar walls. Hyperchromatic nuclei in the alveolar epithelium. Amorphous material and some erythrocytes in the lumen. Premature infant (birth weight 1000 g), aged 21 days. Idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period. (Case 2) Hematoxylin-eosin 425.

tion. There were no hyaline membranes. Many alveolar walls were thickened and hyalinized in the same fashion as in Case 1. The nuclei of the alveolar epithelium were hyperchromatic and many fibroblasts were observed in the interstitium. In this case in contrast to Case 1 there was excess of collagen as well as reticulin fibers in the thickened alveolar walls (Figs. 5-7).

CASE 3

Clinical history. This concerns a prematurely born male infant (birth weight 1320 g), the first child of a 29-year-old healthy woman. On account of acute abdominal symptoms appendectomy was performed in

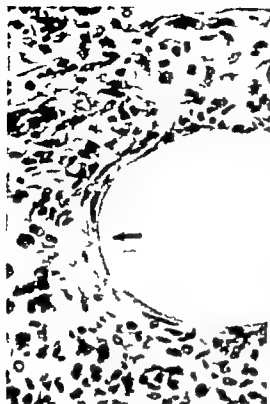


Fig 6. Thickened alveolar wall, containing fibroblasts and excess of collagen fibers (arrow). (Case —) Giemsa 400.

the sixth month of pregnancy. The appendix, however, was normal, and the clinical symptoms were attributed to pancreatitis. After a pregnancy of 38 weeks the child was born in spontaneous normal vertex delivery. Within a few minutes after birth there was moderate respiratory distress (Silverman score 5) and light cyanosis. After administration of 35% oxygen in the inspired air the cyanosis disappeared. During the first few days of life the dyspnea gradually improved but the respiration was irregular and mainly of the Cheyne-Stokes type. Apnoeic spells occurred repeatedly and seemed to be provoked by oral feeding. Therefore the infant was given intravenous nutrition. During longer period of apnoea artificial ventilation with intermittent positive pressure had to be performed, on one occasion for a period of 30 minutes.

The general condition of the infant gradually deteriorated. During the last days of life cerebral symptoms were prominent, convulsions occurred, there were muscular hypotonia and few spontaneous movements. The respiration rate decreased to 20–30/min. Comparatively long periods of apnoea (<10 min.) supervened frequently. The body weight had decreased to 1010 g when the infant died at the age of 24 days.



Fig Detail from the same alveolar wall as represented in Fig 6. The collagen fibers are clearly visible (Case 2) v Giemsa 1250.

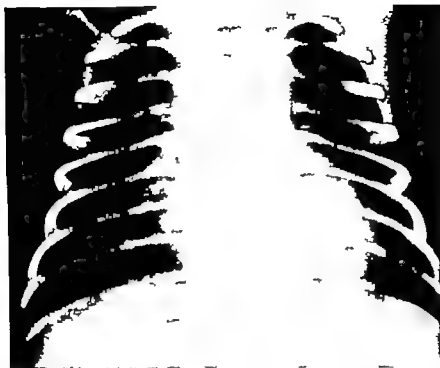


Fig. 8. Case 3, three hours after birth. Dense areas of reticulo-granular appearance are scattered centrally and basally. The air-filled bronchi are well defined.

Röntgenologic findings. Roentgen examination of the chest performed three hours after birth showed areas of atelectasis of reticulo-granular appearance in both lungs. The central and basal portions of the lungs were predominantly involved. The air-filled bronchi were outlined against the surrounding dense parenchyma (Fig. 8). The appearance of the lungs was essentially unchanged during the following five days. Progression was later observed. The final pattern of the lungs and the sequence of findings were considered to be consistent with the hyaline membrane syndrome.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity + idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period, convulsions, probably secondary to hypoxic cerebral damage.

Gross findings at autopsy. In both lungs the parenchyma was partly emphysematous, partly consolidated and there were foci of

bronchopneumonia. The combined lung weight was 38 g (normal 30 ± 9 g). There were many petechiae in the pleurae and the pericardium. The cardiovascular system was otherwise normal. The ductus arteriosus was closed. Wide-spread hemorrhage in the leptomeninges was observed and there was recent thrombosis of the superior sagittal sinus. No macroscopic evidence of damage to the brain parenchyma could be recognized.

Bacteriologic findings. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* was cultured from the lungs.

Histologic findings. Lung specimens (The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, v. Gieson, Heidenhain Azan and Lendrum reticulum stain.) In both lungs there were foci of bronchopneumonia and intralobular hemorrhage. Many thickened alveolar walls of the same type as in Case 1 and 2 were observed. In these alveolar walls of bronchioles and excess

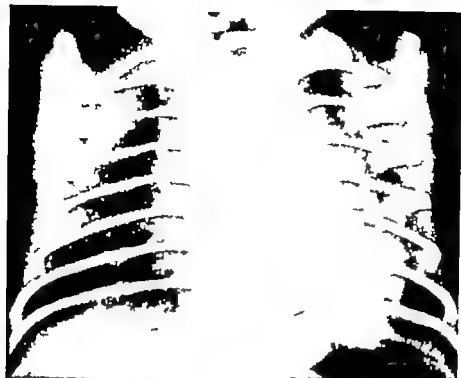


Fig 9a. Case 4. One hour after birth. Small opacities are diffusely distributed throughout both lungs.

of collagen as well as reticulin fibers could be recognized. There was no evidence of lamellar membranes.

Case 1

Case history. This concerns a prematurely born male infant (birth weight 1900 g) second child of a healthy 32-year-old woman. Following an estimated gestational period of 28 weeks the child was delivered by caesarean section, because of profuse bleeding from a placenta previa. At birth the infant was pale, asphyctic without spontaneous breathing. Resuscitation by intubation and artificial ventilation was immediately performed. Four minutes after birth spontaneous breathing occurred. Intercostal retractions were present from the first breath and there was generalized cyanosis. At three hours there was severe respiratory distress (Silverman score 9) and despite the administration of 80%

oxygen in the inspired air cyanosis persisted. At that time a permanent catheter was inserted into one umbilical artery. Blood-gas analysis revealed an oxygen saturation of 30%, P_{aCO_2} of 75 mm Hg and met-bolism acidosis (-12 mEq/l BE). The respiratory frequency was 40/min. Five hours after birth all spontaneous breathing disappeared and there was a cardiac arrest during a few seconds. After successful resuscitation by external heart massage, intubation and artificial respiration with positive pressure the Engström respirator was applied. The setting of the respirator was adjusted according to the result obtained from blood-gas analyses. At the age of 1 hour adequate ventilation could be maintained by administering 100% oxygen under a positive pressure of 50 cm H₂O and respiratory frequency of 20/min. The oxygen saturation was 90%, P_{aCO_2} 25 mm Hg and BE -5 mEq/l in blood taken from the catheter in the umbilical artery.

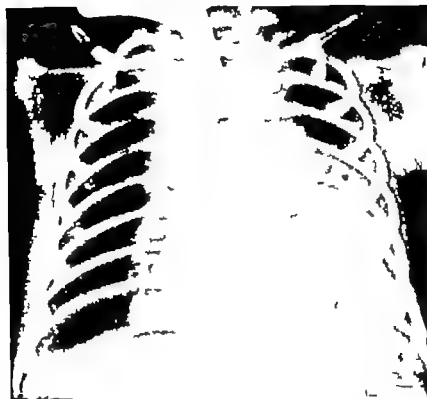


Fig. 95 Case 4. One day of age, following intubation and artificial respiration. The abnormal pattern is unchanged.

Ten days after birth tracheostomy was performed.

The general condition slowly improved and from the third day the oxygen content in the inspired air and the degree of positive pressure could be gradually diminished. During the first four days of life the child was given intravenous nutrition, but thereafter oral feeding was started.

There was no blood incompatibility between mother and child. On the fourth day after birth, however serum bilirubin was 25 mg %. Since the respiratory and circulatory functions of the child were still impaired no exchange transfusion was performed. Audiometric studies were carried out from the 5th day of life (Dr M. Barr) showing reduced hearing. No other clinical evidence

of kernicterus was recognized. The serum bilirubin level gradually decreased following the fourth day.

At the age of one month the artificial ventilation could be discontinued. Moderate intercostal retractions and prolonged expirium persisted, however during the subsequent month. Decannulation was not performed until 1 month after birth.

Because of the clinical and roentgenological findings (see below) thoracotomy was performed at the age of 56 days and a small biopsy specimen was taken from the anterior segment of the right middle lobe for histologic examination. The postoperative course was uneventful. When the child was sent home one month later there was still slight impairment of respiration evidenced by pro-

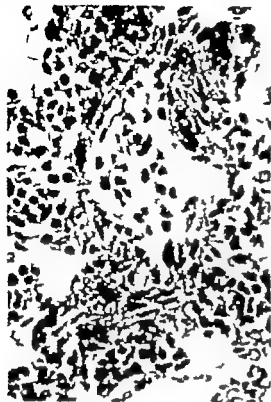


Fig 1 Thickened alveolar wall with excess of fibroblast and collagen fibers. Cellular debris present in the lumen. Biopsy specimen from premature infant (birth weight 1900 g), died 16 weeks. Idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period. (Case 4) (Gross 450)

longest expirations and sneezes over both lungs.

Post-natalologic findings: Roentgen examination of the chest one hour after birth demonstrated findings that were compatible with those of the early stages of the hyaline membrane syndrome (Fig 9a). In the examinations performed at 1 1/2 and 6 hours after birth the changes were more marked. The air-filled bronch were outlined against the surrounding dense parenchyma. On the following day after the patient had been intubated the abnormal pattern was still prominent in all part of the lung (Fig 9b). A low but steady breathing pattern. Emphysematous blebs and patchy infiltrates then developed in the right lung. Following a

short period of enlargement they gradually diminished in size. After two months only small areas of atelectasis remained. There were no abnormal changes seen in the left lung at this time.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity + idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period + hyperbilirubinemia + questionable kernicterus.

Histologic findings: (Biopsy specimen at 6 week of age from the right middle lobe. The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, + Gross, Hidenhain Azan and Lendrum's reticulum stain.) Parts of the lung tissue examined showed recent intraalveolar hemorrhage which was attributed to the trauma during operation. In some areas the alveolar walls presented the same type of hyaline fibrous thickening as in Cases 1-3. In these alveolar



Fig 11 Another part of the same biopsy specimen represented in Fig 10. There is prominent thickening and fibrosis of the alveolar walls. (Case 4) (Gross 450)



Fig 1.—Thickened alveolar walls with excess of reticulum fibers. (Case 4) Lendrum reticulum stain 210

walls there was excess of collagen as well as reticulum fibers (Fig 10-12). In some alveoli amorphous material containing a few histiocytes was found, but there were no hyaline membranes.

Comment

All these four premature infants developed shortly after birth the characteristic clinical picture of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome, i.e. grunting, nostril breathing, severe intercostal retractions, high respiratory frequency and generalized cyanosis [1-17]. Roentgenograms of the chest showed areas of disseminated densities arranged in a reticulo-granular pattern all over the lungs. It is a well established fact that these clinical and roentgenologic findings are associated with pulmonary hyaline membranes in approximately 80% of the fatal cases expiring within the first postnatal week [9-10, 13-14-16].

After the first few days of respiratory distress the four infants all improved gradually. The ultimate cause of death in three of the cases was considered essentially unrelated to their initial disease. It should be pointed out, however, that these three patients up to their last day of life as well as the fourth surviving patient at the time of lung biopsy still showed evidence of slight respiratory difficulties. Inspiratory retractions were present as well as a prolonged expirium.

The histologic features in the lung tissue of the four cases were similar. Thickened alveolar walls were covered by hyperchromatic epithelium and showed increase of fibroblasts. In the three older cases (1-56 days of age) excess of collagen and reticulum fibers could be demonstrated in these walls. In the youngest there was excess only of reticulum fibers. These features, apart from the develop-

ment of reticulin and collagen resemble the proliferative and reparative phenomena occurring in connection with pulmonary hyaline membranes during the first postnatal week [3-16]. Similar features have also been described in association with hyaline membranes in influenza pneumonia [10]. The excess of reticulin and collagen fibers in the alveolar walls of our four cases is quite compatible with a late stage of such a process of reparation as referred to above.

In the patient that expired on the 13th day hyaline membranes infiltrated by histiocytes could be demonstrated in the lung. In the other three surviving longer no hyaline membranes were present. We believe that all these infants had pulmonary hyaline membranes in the immediate neonatal period as suggested by the clinical course but that the membranes in the older cases had disappeared or had partly been incorporated in the alveolar wall structure. As mentioned before macrophage response including fragmentation and probably removal of the membranes has been recognized at the age of 3-4 days in neonatal cases of this condition.

Although the histologic features presented by these cases are compatible with a late stage of a reparative process in the alveolar walls probably secondary to a damage causing hyaline membranes in the immediate neonatal period consideration must be given to the possibility that the treatment has influenced the development of the pulmonary lesions. Experiment on adult rabbits and mice have shown that prolonged exposure to 70-100% oxygen causes alveolar damage and development of hyaline membranes [6-7]; fibrosis of alveolar walls, however has not been re-

ported. Newborn mice studied under similar experimental conditions have reacted differently: emphysema of marked degree has been observed but no hyaline membranes [1-]. The effects of prolonged exposure of the human neonatal lung to high oxygen levels have not as yet been analyzed. Consequently no conclusions can be drawn concerning the possible effect of oxygen therapy in our four cases. It cannot be ruled out however that this particular therapy though necessary for the maintenance of adequate ventilation, might have influenced and possibly enhanced the structural alterations of the alveolar walls. This applies particularly to Case 4 which received 100% oxygen during the initial phase of the respirator therapy.

Even less is known about the effect of artificial ventilation with high positive pressure on the human neonatal lung. Two of our cases (1 and 4) received prolonged respirator therapy; one of these (Case 4) with high positive pressure. In Case 4 artificial ventilation was administered only during the last two days of life. In Case 3 the respirator was never applied. Since the histologic features are similar in all cases, the artificial ventilation *per se* can hardly have been a significant factor in the development of the lesions in the alveolar walls.

In Case 4 emphysematous blebs developed during the respirator treatment. This complication can possibly be attributed to the high pressure ventilation. Another point of interest concerning Case 4 is that clinical and roentgenologic evidence of pulmonary disease still persisted at the age of 3 months. This is not the rule in uncomplicated cases of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in

the neonatal period. Other pulmonary lesions may have been present in this case though not detectable in the small biopsy specimen that was examined histologically. It has to be emphasized that this biopsy specimen was obtained from the periphery of the lung.

The alveolar lesions here described resemble those of infantile lobar emphysema [4] as well as those of the Hamman Rich syndrome [8]. There is still no evidence however of an etiologic relationship between severe respiratory distress in the neonatal period and the early phases of these two pathogenetically obscure pulmonary disorders.

Summary

Four neonatal cases of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome suggesting pulmonary hyaline membranes are presented. Three of the infants died at the age of

13-23 days. The fourth survived and in this case a lung biopsy was performed at the age of 8 weeks. The histologic features in the lung tissue of all four cases were similar and consisted of thickened alveolar walls showing increase of fibroblasts and excess of reticulin or collagen fibers. These findings are consistent with such a process of repair as has been observed in the first postnatal week in cases of pulmonary hyaline membranes. Hyaline membranes infiltrated by histiocytes were still present in the case that expired at the age of 13 days, but not in the three cases surviving longer. Prolonged respirator therapy was performed in two cases, in one of these with high positive pressure. All cases received supplemental oxygen, one case 100% oxygen during the initial phase of the disease. The possible effect of this therapy on the development of the lesions in the alveolar walls is discussed.

References

1. B. CHAY W. A. The respiratory distress syndrome and its significance in premature infants. *Pediatrics*, 34: 194, 1959.
2. BERNSTEIN, R., EDLON T. and ZETTER REX L. The hyaline membrane disease. *Acta Paediat* (Stock), 47: 92, 1958.
3. BOWE, J. H. and CHAY J. M. Reparative phenomena in lungs of neonates with hyaline membranes. *Pediatrics*, 29: 990, 1962.
4. BOLANDER, R. B., SCHNEIDER, A. F. and BOOPE, J. D. Infantile lobar emphysema. *Arch Path* (Chicago), 61: 289, 1956.
5. BERNARD, V. L., AN KETSTEIN H. B. and BROWN, P. H. Pulmonary hyaline membranes studied with the electron microscope. *Amer J Path*, 31: 749, 1957.
6. CAMPECKE, M., PROUD'OM, S. and GUTHRIE, A. Étude microscopique électronique du poumon de prématuré mort en détresse respiratoire. *Ann Paediat* 196: 81, 1961.
7. CRONBERG, G., GYLLENSTEN L. and WIKER, J. Pulmonary damage caused by oxygen poisoning. An electron microscope study in mice. *Acta Paediat* (Stock), 45: 477, 1959.
8. CHAFFIN, C. C. Hyaline membrane syndrome. *JAMA* 166: 641, 1953.
9. DONALD L. and STILES, R. E. Radiography in diagnosis of hyaline membranes. *Lancet* 2: 846, 1953.
10. DEUSCHLE, S. G. and WHITE, C. A. Neonatal pulmonary disorders. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 9: 372, 1960.
11. GORDON, R. H. and BERNSTEIN J. Pulmonary hyaline membranes and the respiratory distress syndrome. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 671, 1961.
12. HELLSTROM, R. Personal communication.
13. MERRICK, L., MARTIN, H. N., GORDON, V. H. and REINKER, G. The radiographic appearances of hyaline membrane disease of the lungs in the newborn. *Radiology* 69: 243, 1953.
14. PETERSON H. H. JR., and FEYDLITO, M. E. Contrasting roentgenographic pulmonary patterns of the hyaline membrane and fetal aspiration syndromes. *Amer J Roentgen*, 74: 800, 1955.
15. ROBERTSON, R. Reparative phenomena in hyaline membrane disease. *Acta Path Microbiol Scand* 55: 293, 1963.

16. STETEN, H. F. Pathology of respiratory distress in the newborn. *Br J Med* 21 491 1954.
17. L. WER, H. Reduction of mortality from respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity with early administration of intra venous glucose and sodium bicarbonate. *Pediatrics* 31 998, 1962.
18. WARD EVAN, T. The formation of pulmonary hyaline membranes in the newborn baby. *Arch Dis Child*, 37 470 1962.
19. WOLSKOW, S. H. and FROTHINGHAM, C. The influenza epidemic at Camp Duxton. A study of the pathology of the fatal cases. *Arch Int Med* 21 571 1922.

Submitted Feb 14 1964

Accepted Feb 1964

(H R.) Department of Pediatric Pathology at
the Department of Pathology
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

From the Pediatric Clinic and the Department of Clinical Bacteriology University of Gothenburg Gothenburg, and The Maternity Hospital, KK II Sahlgrenska Sjukhuset Gothenburg

Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood

III Quantitative Estimation of Cellular Excretion in Unselected Neonates

by KNUT LINCOLN and JAN WINBERG

Introduction

The diagnosis of urinary tract infections mainly rests upon the demonstration of a pathologic bacteriuria and leucocyturia. Accuracy in diagnosis thus requires a definition as clear as possible of the normal limits of urinary cellular and bacterial excretion. As a basis for the diagnosis of neonatal infections bacterial and cellular excretion have been established in about 600 unselected newborns. A report of the bacteriological part of the study has been published earlier [5] and demonstrated that accepted adult and childhood ranges for bacterial excretion were not applicable in neonates unless special cleaning procedures were applied. In this paper the urinary cellular excretion pattern will be reported. The results may to a certain extent explain the conflicting findings of earlier authors [1-4] dealing with neonates.

Material and Methods

The material has been presented in detail in previous paper [5]. The urine specimens

This investigation was supported by grant from The Statens Medicinska Forskningsråd

examined in this study are fewer than in the former one. This is due to circumstances working at random, and not the consequence of selection. The handling of the urine and different procedures for cleaning of the genital tract before collection of urine were also reported earlier. Since the counts of the different types of cells were not appreciably influenced by different methods of genital cleaning all urine specimens whether obtained after ordinary cleaning of the genital tract or after irrigation of prepuce or vulvar region, are presented together in the figures.

The cells in one cubic millimetre of uncentrifuged and unstained urine were counted in a Fuchs-Rosenthal counting chamber using the highest dry objective (40). In some instances—see below—the urine was stained with the Sternheimer-Malbin stain [6] or with methylene blue. Gram-stained smears of urine or urinary sediment were also examined in these instances.

In the urine specimens mainly three different types of cells were found: leucocytes, squamous epithelial cells and non-squamous epithelial cells.

The shape of the non-squamous epithelial cells usually distinguished them from the leucocytes, although the size of these two types of cells was about equal (Fig. 1).

The classification of some oval cells was, however, difficult. Cells with a smooth

- 14 SKINNER, H. E.: Radiology of respiratory distress in the newborn. *Brit J Radiol* 27 401 1954.
- 15 LEVINE, R.: Reduction of mortality from respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity with early administration of intravenous glucose and sodium bicarbonate. *Pediatrics* 32 944, 1963.
- 16 WADD EYAN, T.: The formation of pulmonary hyaline membranes in the newborn baby. *Arch Dis Child* 37 470 1962.
- 18 WOLFECH, S. H. and FROTHINGHAM, C.: The influenza epidemic at Camp Devens. A study of the pathology of the fatal cases. *Arch Int Med* 32 81 1923.

Submitted Feb. 14 1964

Accepted 1 Apr. 27 1964

(B. R.) Department of Pediatric Pathology at
the Department of Pathology
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 80
Sweden

From the Paediatric Clinic and the Department of Clinical Bacteriology, University of Gothenburg, Gothenburg and The Malmö Hospital, KK II Sahlgrenska sjukhuset Gothenburg

Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood

III Quantitative Estimation of Cellular Excretion in Unselected Neonates

by KNUT LINCOLN and JAN WTNBERG

Introduction

The diagnosis of urinary tract infections mainly rests upon the demonstration of a pathologic bacteriuria and leucocyturia. Accuracy in diagnosis thus requires a definition as clear as possible of the normal limits of urinary cellular and bacterial excretion. As a basis for the diagnosis of neonatal infections bacterial and cellular excretion have been established in about 600 unselected newborns. A report of the bacteriological part of the study has been published earlier [5] and demonstrated that accepted adult and childhood ranges for bacterial excretion were not applicable in neonates unless special cleaning procedures were applied. In this paper the urinary cellular excretion pattern will be reported. The results may to a certain extent explain the conflicting findings of earlier authors [1-4] dealing with neonates.

Material and Methods

The material has been presented in detail in a previous paper [5]. The urine specimens

This investigation was supported by grant from The Statens Medicinska Forskningsråd

examined in this study are fewer than in the former one. This is due to circumstances working at random, and not the consequence of selection. The handling of the urine and different procedures for cleaning of the genital tract before collection of urine were also reported earlier. Since the counts of the different types of cells were not appreciably influenced by different methods of genital cleaning, all urine specimens, whether obtained after ordinary cleaning of the genital tract or after irrigation of prepuce or vulvar region, are presented together in the figures.

The cells in one cubic millimetre of uncentrifuged and unstained urine were counted in a Fuchs-Rosenthal counting chamber using the highest dry objective ($\times 40$). In some instances—see below—the urine was stained with the Sternheimer Malbin stain [9] or with methylene blue. Gram-stained smears of urine or urinary sediment were also examined in these instances.

In the urine specimens mainly three different types of cells were found: leucocytes, squamous epithelial cells and non-squamous epithelial cells.

The shape of the non-squamous epithelial cells usually distinguished them from the leucocytes, although the size of these two types of cells was about equal (Fig. 1).

The classification of some oval cells was however difficult. Cells with a smooth,



FIG. 1. Line drawings after colour microphotographs of Papanicolaou-stained alcohol-ether fixed smears of urinary sediment from 6-day-old boy. *A* Two squamous epithelial cells (transitional cells) and numerous non-squamous epithelial cells. Not polymorphism, elongation, angular appearance, but similarity to clinical or cuboid epithelial cells. One illeceous cell to the right of the squamous cells. Bottom row: four leucocytes drawn to scale. *B* The cells sometimes appear in clusters.

rounded contour were usually classified leucocytes while cells with a more angular shape were characterized as non-squamous epithelial cells. This judgment was sometimes doubtful but since such dubious cells were relatively uncommon misinterpretations probably have not appreciably influenced the result of the cell counts.

In most of these specimens the classification was facilitated by the above mentioned staining procedures, which permitted a reliable recognition of the polymorphonuclear leucocytes.

Result

The results of the study are presented in Fig. 2, 3 and 4. Each figure shows the excretion of one type of cell and compares males and females.

Leucocytes (Fig. 2)

In both boys and girls most urine specimens contained between 0 and 10 leucocytes per mm^3 of uncentrifuged urine. It is, however, obvious that in the girls there are more specimens with high counts than in the boys. Thus 51 specimens out of 404 among the girls contained more

than 50 cells per mm^3 of uncentrifuged urine and 19 out of 404 more than 50 (Table 1). Among the boys corresponding figures were 7/344 and 9/344. If those samples are excluded which contained at the same time large amounts of coliform bacteria. The excretion during the first four days may be a little higher than that during the following 5-15 days.

In male urine specimens with more than 50 leucocytes there were usually at the same time a high count of coliform bacteria. In Fig. 2 such specimens are represented by black dots. Probably there was a urinary tract infection in these patients—as was discussed in detail in the previous paper. Among the girls with a leucocyturia amounting to 50/ mm^3 or more there was on the other hand not a single case with high count ($>100,000$ bact. per ml) of coliform bacteria. A certain association to high counts of not identified slow growing bacteria of vaginal flora type was however found in these cases (Table 1). Thus in girls especially those with more than 50 leucocytes per mm^3 of

LEUCOCYTES IN THE URINE OF 476 NEONATES

228 ♂

248 ♀

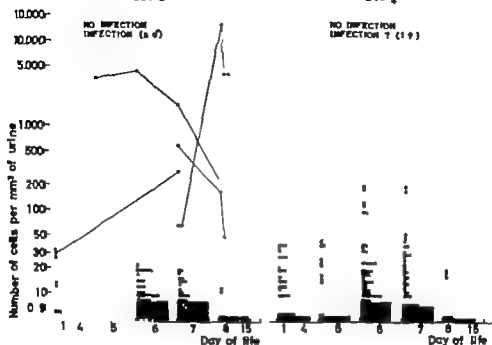


Fig. 5. Leucocytes in the urine of 228 newborn boys and 248 newborn girls. Black symbols notify specimens where leucocyturia was combined with marked coliforms (see 5). Half black symbol stands for specimens containing 100-200,000 bacteria of other types than coliforms. There is an obvious sex difference.

TABLE 1. *Leucocytes in the urine of 476 neonates*

| Day of life | Boys | Girls | |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| | Frequency of specimens with ≥ 5 cells per mm ³ uncentrifuged urine | Frequency of specimens with > 25 cells per mm ³ uncentrifuged urine | Frequency of specimens with > 50 cells per mm ³ uncentrifuged urine |
| 1-4 | 5/28 | 11/52 | 1/52 |
| 5 | 0/15 | 6/40 | 1/40 |
| 6 | 0/136 | 16/158 | 8/158 |
| 7 | 1/127 | 18/122 | 8/122 |
| 8-15 | 0/27 | 0/22 | 0/22 |
| Total | 7/244 | 51/404 | 19/404 |

pressure in the right arm was 105/75, in the left 95/75, and in the legs 140/80. The ECG was repeatedly normal. X-ray of the heart showed a slightly increased volume (403 ml per square meter of body surface) but no definite abnormalities in configuration. Congenital heart disease was considered unlikely.

Lungs. The lungs were normal on X-ray.

Abdominal organs. The spleen, which had been palpable since birth, could still be felt 4 cm below the left costal margin, and the liver about 1 cm below the right costal margin.

Genitourinary system. The penis was normal, and the testes were small but otherwise normal. Testes of prepubertal size and consistency could be palpated bilaterally at the external inguinal ring. The prostate was not palpable. In March 1961 a right inguinal herniorrhaphy was done. The right testis appeared normal and a biopsy specimen was obtained.

Skeleton. X-ray film of the skull and extremities revealed no abnormalities.

Neurological system. Mentally the boy was retarded; he was regarded as an imbecile with mental age of 4 years as assessed by a Terman Merrill test and according to a Buhler-Hetzer test. Neurological examination revealed no abnormalities. Ophthalmoscopic examination showed tortuous vessels in pale retina. EFG showed a normally slow activity but no epileptogenic burst.

Laboratory tests. Routine test on blood and urine were repeatedly normal. The serum potassium, serum calcium, serum phosphorus, serum alkaline phosphatase, serum cholesterol, serum total lipids, and fasting blood glucose concentration were normal. The total serum protein was 7.0 g/100 ml with a normal paper electrophoretic pattern. The urinary excretion of gonadotrophin was less than 6.5 IU/24 hours (normal). Paper chromatographic examination of the urine revealed no abnormal aminoacids.

Case 2. M. B., a boy, was born June 2nd 1950 to a 31-year-old mother and a 38-year-old father. A sister born in 1958, and both parents are healthy. No other member

of the family has had signs or symptoms of the kind presented by the boy.

The boy was born at term after an uneventful pregnancy and delivery. His birth weight was 3080 g and his length at birth 49 cm. During the neonatal period he was found to be hoarse, and initially he had also difficulties in sucking. From an early age the mother noticed that he was shorter than other boys of his age. His psychomotor development was relatively normal; he was able to sit without support at the age of 7-8 months, he walked without support at 18 months of age, he started to talk single words at 18 months, and could speak short sentences at 2 years of age. However, at the age of 5 his diction was still indistinct and he could not roll his tongue. His mother has regarded him as being more easily exhausted by play than other boys of his age.

At the age of 3 years the boy was referred to the Department of Paediatrics at the County Hospital, Härnäs. He was short and peculiar looking, with enlarged head, short neck, broad flat nose bridge, short broad hand and feet, and very thin hair. A systolic murmur was heard. An air-encephalogram revealed slight central atrophy of both the lateral ventricles, and the basal cisterns were wider than normal. His mental development was regarded as normal.

At the age of 5 years the boy was admitted to the Department of Child Psychiatry in Härnäs, where a performance test showed IQ 103. In 1961 he was referred to the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, for further examination.

Examination at the age of 5½ years. disclosed several anomalies (Fig. 9). The boy was only 99 cm tall (about 4 cm less than - 2SD), and weighed 18.5 kg (normal for the height). The skull circumference was 51 cm (normal). The hair showed several large whorls. The nose bridge was broad and flat. The neck was short, with moderately pronounced bilateral webbing. The external ears were low-set and showed slight anomalies. The palate was highly arched. There were no dental malformations. Hypertelorism, slight exophthalmos, and bilateral

dent with the feeding it be occurred, the tube formed a loop in the esophagus and its tip came to the level of the larynx resulting in marked aspiration and subsequent atelectasis of the right upper lobe. The child rapidly deteriorated after this event. Apneic spells occurred and in spite of the application of the Engström respirator the child died 14 days later at the age of 21 days. During the last day there were bleedings from the gastro-intestinal tract.

Röntgenologic findings. Roentgen examination of the chest carried out on the day of birth demonstrated wide-spread, regularly distributed dense areas of reticulo-granular appearance in both lungs (Fig. 4). The main bronchi and some of the larger subdivisions were clearly seen against the contrasting dense parenchyma. The pattern was characteristic of the hyaline membrane syndrome. A moderate regression of the telectases was noted on the fourth day. Confluent patchy infiltrates appeared after 18 days and were considered to be secondary to aspiration.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity-idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period + pneumonia (aspiration).

Gross findings at autopsy. Both lungs were consolidated with foci of bronchopneumonia. The lungs weighed 30 and 35 g, respectively (normal combined weight 44 ± 13 g). There was purulent material in the trachea and the main bronchi. The mucosa of the distal part of the esophagus was partly ulcerated. The remainder of the gastro-intestinal tract was normal. There were no cardiovascular abnormalities. The ductus arteriosus was patent. The other organs, including the brain, showed nothing remarkable.

Bacteriologic findings. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* was cultured from the lungs.

Histologic findings in lung specimens. (The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, v. Gieson, Heidenhain Azan and Leadrum reticulum stain.) Foci of bronchopneumonia were present in both lungs. In many alveoli amorphous material was found indicating aspira-

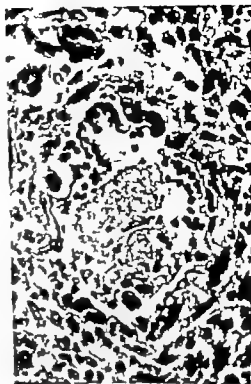


Fig. 4. Thickened, partly hyalinized alveolar wall. Hyperchromatic nuclei in the alveolar epithelium. Amorphous material about some erythrocytes in the lumen. Premature infant (birth weight 1000 g), aged 21 days. Idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period. (Case 1) Hematoxylin-eosin, $\times 150$.

tion. There were no hyaline membranes in the alveolar walls. In most alveoli the alveolar walls were not hyalinized in the same fashion as in Case 1. The nuclei of the alveolar epithelium were hyperchromatic and many erythrocytes were observed in the interstitium. In this case in contrast to Case 1 there was no evidence of hyaline membrane formation in the alveolar walls (Fig. 5).

Case 3

Clinical history. This was a prematurely born male infant (birth weight 1250 g) the first child of a 21-year-old healthy woman. On account of asphyxia and other symptoms penderecty, as performed

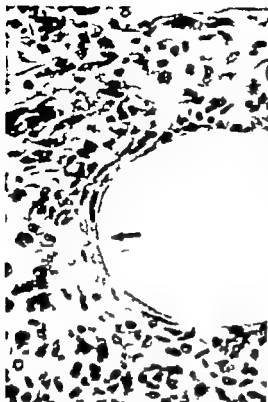


Fig. 6. Thickened alveolar wall, containing fibroblast and excess of collagen fibers (arrow). (Case 1) \times Giemsa 420.

the sixth month of pregnancy. The appendix, however, was normal, and the clinical symptoms were attributed to pancreatitis. After a pregnancy of 38 weeks the child was born in spontaneous normal vertex delivery. Within a few minutes after birth there was moderate respiratory distress (Silverman score 5) and slight cyanosis. After administration of 35% oxygen in the inspired air the cyanosis disappeared. During the first few days of life the dyspnea gradually improved but the respiration was irregular and mainly of the Cheyne-Stokes type. Apnoeic spells occurred repeatedly and seemed to be provoked by oral feeding. Therefore the infant was given intravenous nutrition. During longer periods of apnoea artificial ventilation with intermittent positive pressure had to be performed on one occasion for a period of 30 minutes.

The general condition of the infant gradually deteriorated. During the last days of life cerebral symptoms were prominent: convulsions occurred, there were muscular hypotonia and few spontaneous movements. The respiration rate decreased to 20–30/min. Comparatively long periods of apnoea (<10 min.) supervened frequently. The body weight had decreased to 1010 g when the infant died at the age of 24 days.

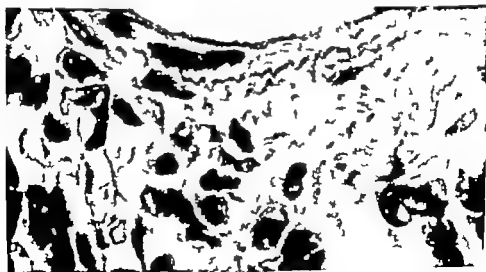


Fig. 7. Detail from the same alveolar wall as represented in Fig. 6. The collagen fibers are clearly visible (Case 1) \times Giemsa 1220.

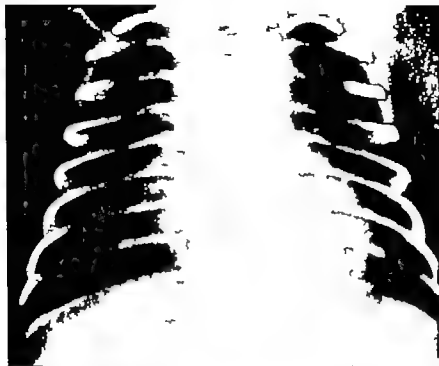


Fig 8. Case 3, three hours after birth. Dense areas of reticulo-granular appearance are centered centrally and basally. The air filled bronchi are well defined.

Roe tpeologic find gs. Roentgen examination of the chest performed three hours after birth showed areas of increased reticulo-granular appearance in both lungs. The central and basal portions of the lungs were predominantly involved. The air filled bronchi were outlined against the surrounding dense parenchyma (Fig 8). The appearance of the lungs was essentially unchanged during the following five days. Progression was later observed. The bronchovascular pattern of the lungs and the sequence of findings were considered to be consistent with the hyaline membrane syndrome.

The clinical diagnosis was immaturity + idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period + convulsions, probably secondary to hypoxic cerebral damage.

Gross findings at autopsy. In both lungs the parenchyma was partly emphysematous, partly consolidated and there were foci of

bronchopneumonia. The combined lung weight was 38 g (normal 30 ± 9 g). There were many petechiae in the pleurae and the pericardium. The cardiovascular system was otherwise normal. The ductus arteriosus was closed. Wide-spread hemorrhage in the leptomeninges was observed and there was recent thrombus of the superior sagittal sinus. No macroscopic evidence of damage to the brain parenchyma could be recognized.

Bacteriologic findings. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* was cultured from the lungs.

Histologic findings. *Lung specimens.* (The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, Gomori, Heidenhain Azan and Lendrum reticulum stain.) In both lungs there were foci of bronchopneumonia and intra-alveolar hemorrhage. Many thickened alveolar walls of the same type as in Case 1 and were observed. In these alveolar walls fibroblasts and excess



Fig. 9a. Case 4. One hour after birth. Small atelectases are diffusely distributed throughout both lungs.

of collagen as well as reticulin fibers could be recognized. There was no evidence of hyaline membranes.

Case 4

Clinical history. This concerns a prematurely born male infant (birth weight 1990 g), second child of a healthy 23-year-old woman. Following an estimated gestational period of 38 weeks the child was delivered by caesarean section, because of profuse bleeding from a placenta previa. At birth the infant was pale asphyctic without spontaneous breathing. Resuscitation by intubation and artificial ventilation was immediately performed. Four minutes after birth spontaneous breathing occurred. Intercostal retractions were present from the first breath and there was generalized cyanosis. At three hours there was severe respiratory distress (Silverman score 9) and despite the administration of 80%

oxygen in the inspired air cyanosis persisted. At that time a permanent catheter was inserted into one umbilical artery. Blood-gas analysis revealed an oxygen saturation of 30%, P_{aCO_2} of 75 mm Hg and metabolic acidosis (-23 mEq/l BE). The respiratory frequency was 40/min. Five hours after birth all spontaneous breathing disappeared and there was a cardiac arrest during a few seconds. After successful resuscitation by external heart massage, intubation and artificial respiration with positive pressure the Engström respirator was applied. The setting of the respirator was adjusted according to results obtained from blood-gas analyses. At the age of 12 hours adequate ventilation could be maintained by administering 100% oxygen under a positive pressure of 50 cm H_2O and a respiratory frequency of 20/min. The oxygen saturation was 90%, P_{aCO_2} 25 mm Hg and BE -5 mEq/l in blood taken from the catheter in the umbilical artery.

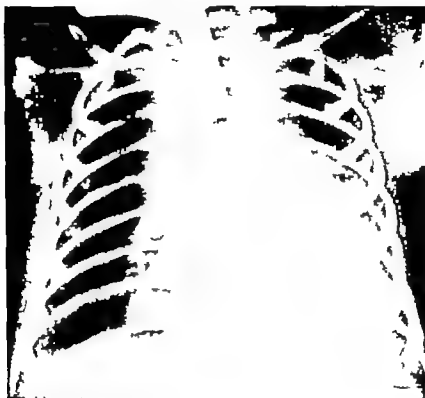


Fig. 2b. Case 4. One day of age following intubation and artificial respiration. The abnormal pattern is unchanged.

Two days after birth tracheostomy was performed.

The general condition slowly improved and from the third day the oxygen content in the inspired air and the degree of positive pressure could be gradually diminished. During the first four days of life the child was given intravenous nutrition, but thereafter oral feeding was started.

There was no blood incompatibility between mother and child. On the fourth day after birth, however serum bilirubin was 5 mg%. Since the respiratory and circulatory functions of the child were still impaired, no exchange transfusion was performed. Audiometric studies were carried out from the 8th day of life (Dr M. Barr) showing reduced hearing. No other clinical evidence

of kernicterus was recognized. The serum bilirubin level gradually decreased following the fourth day.

At the age of one month the artificial ventilation could be discontinued. Moderate intercostal retractions and prolonged expiration persisted, however during the subsequent month. Decannulation was not performed until 2 months after birth.

Because of the clinical and roentgenological findings (see below) thoracotomy was performed at the age of 56 days and a small biopsy specimen was taken from the anterior segment of the right middle lobe for histologic examination. The postoperative course was uneventful. When the child was sent home one month later there was still slight impairment of respiration evidenced by pro-



Fig 10 Thickened alveolar wall with excess of fibroblasts and collagen fibers. Cellular amorphous material in the lumen. Biopsy specimen from premature infant (birth weight 1090 g) aged 8 weeks. Idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period. (Case 4) v Gleason 450

longitudinal expirium and rhonchi over both lungs.

Post mortem findings. Roentgen examination of the chest one hour after birth demonstrated findings that were compatible with those of the early stages of the hyaline membrane syndrome (Fig 9a). In the examinations performed at 1 and 6 hours after birth the changes were more marked. The air-filled bronchi were outlined against the surrounding dense parenchyma. On the following day after the patient had been intubated the abnormal pattern was still prominent in all parts of the lung (Fig 9b). A slow but steady clearing followed. Emphysematous blebs and patchy infiltrates then developed in the right lung. Following a

short period of enlargement they gradually diminished in size. After two months only small areas of teleostasis remained. There were no abnormal changes seen in the left lung at this time.

The clinical diagnoses were immaturity + idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in the neonatal period + hyperbilirubinemia + questionable kernicterus.

Histologic findings. (Biopsy specimen at 8 weeks of age from the right middle lobe. The sections were examined with the following stains: Hematoxylin-eosin, v Gleason, Heidenhain's Azan and Lendrum's reticulum stain.) Part of the lung tissue examined showed recent intralveolar hemorrhage which was attributed to the trauma during operation. In some areas the alveolar walls presented the same type of hyaline-fibrous thickening as in Cases 1-3. In these alveolar

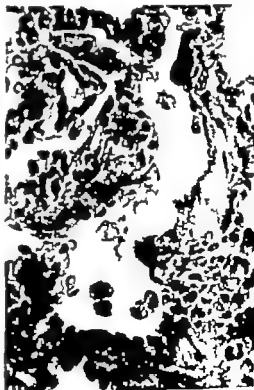


Fig 11 Another part of the same biopsy specimen as represented in Fig 10. There is prominent thickening and fibrosis of the alveolar walls. (Case 4) Gleason 450.

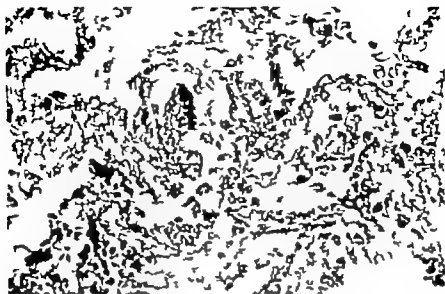


Fig 12. Thickened alveolar walls with excess of reticulin fibers. (Case 4.) Lendrum reticulum stain 10

walls there was excess of collagen as well as reticulin fibers (Fig 10-12). In some alveoli amorphous material containing a few histiocytes was found but there were no hyaline membranes.

Comment

All these four premature infants developed shortly after birth the characteristic clinical picture of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome, i.e. grunting, nostril breathing, severe intercostal retractions, high respiratory frequency and generalized cyanosis [1-17]. Roentgenograms of the chest showed areas of disseminated densities arranged in a reticulo-granular pattern all over the lungs. It is a well established fact that these clinical and roentgenologic findings are associated with pulmonary hyaline membranes in approximately 80% of the fatal cases expiring within the first postnatal week [1-11, 10, 13, 14, 16].

After the first few days of respiratory distress the four infants all improved gradually. The ultimate cause of death in three of the cases was considered essentially unrelated to their initial disease. It should be pointed out however that these three patients up to their last day of life as well as the fourth surviving patient at the time of lung biopsy still showed evidence of slight respiratory difficulties; inspiratory retractions were present as well as a prolonged expirium.

The histologic features in the lung tissue of the four cases were similar. Thickened alveolar walls were covered by hyperchromatic epithelium and showed increase of fibroblasts. In the three other cases (2-56 days of age) excess of collagen and reticulin fibers could be demonstrated in these walls. In the youngest there was excess only of reticulin fibers. These features, apart from the develop-

ment of reticulin and collagen, resemble the proliferative and reparative phenomena occurring in connection with pulmonary hyaline membranes during the first postnatal week [3-16]. Similar features have also been described in association with hyaline membranes in influenza pneumonia [19]. The excess of reticulin and collagen fibers in the alveolar walls of our four cases is quite compatible with a late stage of such a process of reparation as referred to above.

In the patient that expired on the 13th day hyaline membranes infiltrated by histiocytes could be demonstrated in the lungs. In the other three surviving longer no hyaline membranes were present. We believe that all these infants had pulmonary hyaline membranes in the immediate neonatal period as suggested by the clinical course but that the membranes in the older cases had disappeared or had partly been incorporated in the alveolar wall structure. As mentioned before macrophage response including fragmentation and probably removal of the membranes been recognized at the age of 3-4 days in neonatal cases of this condition.

Although the histologic features presented by these cases are compatible with a late stage of a reparative process in the alveolar walls probably secondary to a damage causing hyaline membranes in the immediate neonatal period, consideration must be given to the possibility that the treatment has influenced the development of the pulmonary lesions. Experiments on adult rabbits and mice have shown that prolonged exposure to 70-100% oxygen causes alveolar damage and development of hyaline membranes [2-7]; fibrosis of alveolar walls, however, has not been re-

ported. Newborn mice studied under similar experimental conditions have reacted differently: emphysema of marked degree has been observed but no hyaline membranes [12]. The effects of prolonged exposure of the human neonatal lung to high oxygen levels have not as yet been analyzed. Consequently no conclusions can be drawn concerning the possible effect of oxygen therapy in our four cases. It cannot be ruled out however that this particular therapy, though necessary for the maintenance of adequate ventilation might have influenced and possibly enhanced the structural alterations of the alveolar walls. This applies particularly to Case 4 which received 100% oxygen during the initial phase of the respirator therapy.

Even less is known about the effect of artificial ventilation with high positive pressure on the human neonatal lung. Two of our cases (1 and 4) received prolonged respirator therapy, one of these (Case 4) with high positive pressure. In Case 4 artificial ventilation was administered only during the last two days of life. In Case 3 the respirator was never applied. Since the histologic features are similar in all cases the artificial ventilation *per se* can hardly have been a significant factor in the development of the lesions in the alveolar walls.

In Case 4 emphysematous blebs developed during the respirator treatment. This complication can possibly be attributed to the high pressure ventilation. Another point of interest concerning Case 4 is that clinical and roentgenologic evidence of pulmonary disease still persisted at the age of 2 months. This is not the rule in uncomplicated cases of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome in

the neonatal period. Other pulmonary lesions may have been present in this case though not detectable in the small biopsy specimen that was examined histologically. It has to be emphasized that this biopsy specimen was obtained from the periphery of the lung.

The alveolar lesions here described resemble those of infantile lobar emphysema [4] as well as those of the Hamman Rich syndrome [8]. There is still no evidence however of an etiologic relationship between severe respiratory distress in the neonatal period and the early phases of these two pathogenetically obscure pulmonary disorders.

Summary

Four neonatal cases of idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome suggesting pulmonary hyaline membranes are presented. Three of the infants died at the age of

13-23 days. The fourth survived and in this case a lung biopsy was performed at the age of 8 weeks. The histologic features in the lung tissue of all four cases were similar and consisted of thickened alveolar walls showing increase of fibroblasts and excess of reticulin or collagen fibers. These findings are consistent with such a process of repair as has been observed in the first postnatal week in cases of pulmonary hyaline membranes. Hyaline membranes infiltrated by histiocytes were still present in the case that expired at the age of 13 days, but not in the three cases surviving longer. Prolonged respirator therapy was performed in two cases, in one of these with high positive pressure. All cases received supplemental oxygen, one case 100% oxygen during the initial phase of the disease. The possible effect of this therapy on the development of the lesions in the alveolar walls is discussed.

References

1. BUNA, W. A. The respiratory distress syndrome and its significance in premature infants. *Pediatrics*, 24: 194, 1959.
2. BERENSTEIN R., E. LUN T and ZETTER OGDEN, L. The hyaline membrane disease. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 47: 82, 1958.
3. BORE, J. H. and CHA O, J. M. Reparative phenomena in lungs of neonates with hyaline membranes. *Pediatrics*, 29: 990, 1962.
4. BOLANDER, R. B., SCHNEIDER, A. F. and ROOPE, J. D. Infantile lobar emphysema. *Arch Path (Chicago)*, 61: 229, 1956.
5. BRENNER, V. L., VAN KRISTEN, H. B. and BRUNA, P. D. Pulmonary hyaline membranes studied with the electron microscope. *Amer J Path* 31: 768, 1957.
6. CAMPOCHI, M., PROBYN, S. B. and GUYER, A. Étude au microscope électronique d'un poumon de prématuré mort en détresse respiratoire. *4. Paediat* 196: 81, 1961.
7. CEDERSTEDT, G., GILLESPIE, L. and WICK, M. J. Pulmonary damage caused by oxygen poisoning. An electron-microscopic study in mice. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 43: 47, 1959.
8. CHAFFIN, C. C. Hyaline membrane syndrome. *JAMA* 164: 621, 1953.
9. DO ALD, I. and STICKER, R. E. Radiograph in diagnosis of hyaline membranes. *Lancet* 2: 646, 1953.
10. DREICOLL, S. G. and RORTY, C. A. Neonatal pulmonary disorders. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 9: 326, 1962.
11. GREGG, R. H. and BEIDSTEIN, J. Pulmonary hyaline membranes and the respiratory distress syndrome. *Amer J Dis Child* 101: 671, 1961.
12. HELLSTRÖM, B. Personal communication.
13. MENCHAY, L., MARTIN, H. V., GORDON, V. H. and REYNOLDS, O. The radiographic appearance of hyaline membrane disease of the lungs in the newborn. *Radiology* 69: 343, 1953.
14. PETERSON, H. O. J. and PETERSON, M. E. Contrasting roentgenographic pulmonary patterns of the hyaline membrane and fetal aspiration syndromes. *Amer J Roentgen* 74: 800, 1955.
15. ROBERTSON, B. Reparative phenomena in "hyaline membrane disease". *Acta Path Microbiol Scand* 58: 379, 1963.

- 16 STEINER, R. E.: Radiology of respiratory distress in the newborn. *Brit J Radiol* 37 491 1954.
- 17 UHMER, R.: Reduction of mortality from respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity with early administration of intravenous glucose and sodium bicarbonate. *Pediatrics*, 32 666 1963.
- 18 WADSWORTH, T.: The formation of pulmonary hyaline membranes in the newborn baby. *Arch Dis Child*, 37 470, 1962.
- 19 WOLFE, S. B. and FROTHINGHAM, C.: The influenza epidemic at Camp DeWitt. A study of the pathology of the fatal cases. *Arch Int Med* 35 871 1923.

Submitted Feb. 14 1964

Accepted Feb. 27 1964

(B.R.) Department of Pediatric Pathology as
the Department of Pathology
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

From the Pediatric Clinic and the Department of Clinical Bacteriology, University of Gothenburg, Gothenburg, and The Maternity Hospital, KK II Sahlgrenska Sjukhuset, Gothenburg

Studies of Urinary Tract Infections in Infancy and Childhood

III Quantitative Estimation of Cellular Excretion in Unselected Neonates

by KNUT LINCOLN and JAN WINBERG

Introduction

The diagnosis of urinary tract infections mainly rests upon the demonstration of a pathologic bacteriuria and leucocyturia. Accuracy in diagnosis thus requires a definition as clear as possible of the normal limits of urinary cellular and bacterial excretion. As a basis for the diagnosis of neonatal infections bacterial and cellular excretion have been established in about 600 unselected newborns. A report of the bacteriological part of the study has been published earlier [5] and demonstrated that accepted adult and childhood ranges for bacterial excretion were not applicable in neonates unless special cleaning procedures were applied. In this paper the urinary cellular excretion pattern will be reported. The results may to a certain extent explain the conflicting findings of earlier authors [1-4] dealing with neonates.

Material and Methods

The material has been presented in detail in a previous paper [5]. The urine specimen

This investigation was supported by grant from The Statens Medicinska Forskningsråd.

examined in this study are fewer than in the former one. This is due to circumstances working at random, and not the consequence of selection. The handling of the urine and different procedures for cleaning of the genital tract before collection of urine were also reported earlier. Since the count of the different types of cells were not appreciably influenced by different methods of genital cleaning of urine specimens, whether obtained after ordinary cleaning of the genital tract or after irrigation of prepuce or vulvar region, are presented together in the figures.

The cells in one cubic millimetre of uncentrifuged and unstained urine were counted in a Fuchs-Rosenthal counting chamber using the highest dry object (40). In some instances—see below—the urine was stained with the Sternheimer Malbin III [9] or with methylene blue. Gram-stained smears of urine or urinary sediment were also examined in these instances.

In the urine specimens mainly three different types of cells were found: leucocytes, squamous epithelial cells and non-squamous epithelial cells.

The shape of the non-squamous epithelial cells usually distinguished them from the leucocytes, although the size of these two types of cells was about equal (Fig. 1).

The classification of some oval cells was, however, difficult. Cells with smooth,

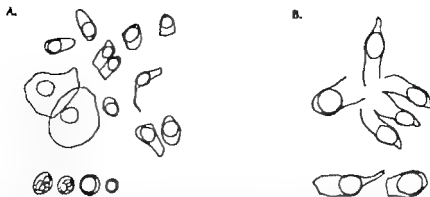


Fig 1 Line drawings after colour microphotographs of Papanicolaou-stained alcohol-ether fixed smears of urinary sediment from a 6-day-old boy. A Two squamous epithelial cells (transitional cell) and numerous non-squamous epithelial cells. Not polymorphous, longation, angular appearance and similarity to cylindrical or cuboid epithelial cells. One dubious cell to the right of the squamous cells. Bottom row: four leucocytes drawn to scale. B The cells sometimes appear in clusters.

rounded contour were usually classified as leucocytes while cells with a more angular shape were characterized as non-squamous epithelial cells. This judgment was sometimes subtle but since such dubious cells were relatively uncommon misinterpretations probably have not prevailed in fluenced the result of the cell counts.

In most of these specimens the classification was facilitated by the above mentioned staining procedures which permitted a reliable separation of the polymorphonuclear leucocytes.

Results

The results of the study are presented in Fig. 3 and 4. Each figure shows the excretion of one type of cells and compares males and females.

Leucocytes (Fig 2)

In both boys and girls most urine specimens contained between 0 and 9 leucocytes per mm³ of uncentrifuged urine. It is, however, obvious that in the girls there are more specimens with high counts than in the boys. Thus 51 specimens out of 404 among the girls contained more

than 45 cells per mm³ of uncentrifuged urine and 10 out of 404 more than 50 (Table 1). Among the boys corresponding figures were 7/344 and 2/344. If those samples are excluded which contained at the same time large amounts of coliform bacteria, the excretion during the first four days may be a little higher than that during the following 5-15 days.

In male urine specimens with more than 50 leucocytes there were usually at the same time a high count of coliform bacteria. In Fig. 2 such specimens are represented by black dots. Probably there was a urinary tract infection in these patients—as was discussed in detail in the previous paper. Among the girls with a leucocyturia amounting to 50/mm³ or more there was on the other hand not a single case with high count (>100 000 bact. per ml) of coliform bacteria. A certain association to high counts of not identified slow growing bacteria of vaginal flora type was, however, found in these cases (Table 2). Thus in girls especially those with more than 50 leucocytes per mm³ of

LEUCOCYTES IN THE URINE OF THE NEWBORN

1932

2489

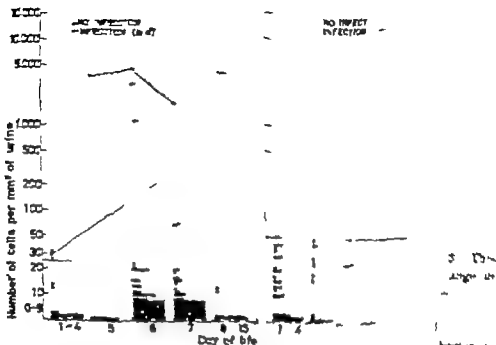


FIG. — Leucocytes in the urine of 223 newborn boys at birth specimens where leucocytosis was occasional and symbol stands for a specimen containing 100,000 cells per mm² of urine.

TABLE 1 Leucocytes in the

| Day of life | Boys | |
|-------------|---|--|
| | Frequency of specimens with | |
| | 2 cells per mm ² (unconstituted) urine | |
| 1-4 | 8/20 | |
| 5 | 0/15 | |
| 6 | 0/136 | |
| 7 | 1/127 | |
| 8-15 | 0/27 | |
| Total | 7/266 | |

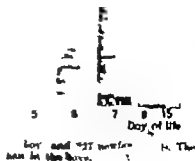


TABLE 2. *Result of anaerobic urine culture in patients with low and high counts of leucocytes.*

| | Boys | | Girls | |
|---|------|---|-------|------|
| Number of leucocytes | < 25 | — | < 25 | > 80 |
| Number of patient with < 100,000 bacteria per ml of urine | 40 | — | 40 | 7 |
| Number of patient with > 100,000 bacteria per ml of urine | 0 | — | 3 | 6 |

Small grampositive and gramnegative rods.

urine prolonged incubation in closed plastic jars or under anaerobic conditions rather often disclosed growth of usually gramnegative and sometimes gramnegative and grampositive small rods, not unlike *Haemophilus vaginalis* as described

by Edmunds [2-3]. Such bacteria were not found when 25 specimens from 40 boys were cultured anaerobically (Table 2).

'Glitter cells' or Sternheimer Malbin cells [8] were sometimes seen. Even in the absence of infection they could make up to 10% of the leucocytes. They amounted to more than 50% of the white cells in most instances of the coli infections.

Non-squamous epithelial cells (Fig 3)

Boys excreted more of these cells than girls. The difference was statistically significant. With increasing age there was a diminution of the cells, which was statistically significant for the boys, but not for the girls (probably due to lower figures) (Table 3).

In boys a high count of non-squamous

NONSQUAMOUS EPITHELIAL CELLS IN THE URINE OF 438 NEONATES

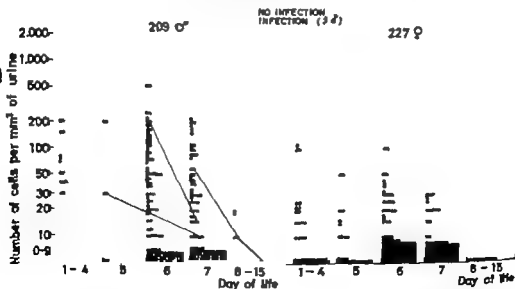


Fig. 2. Non-squamous epithelial cells in the urine of 209 newborn boys and 227 newborn girls. Symbols, confer Fig. 1. The figure suggests that these cells are appearing with higher frequency in the urine of the boys than in that of the girls. Excretion in the infected infants is not remarkably high.

TABLE 3 *Non-squamous epithelial cells in the urine of 436 neonates*

| Day of life | Boys Frequency of specimens with > 10 cells per mm ³ of uncentrifuged urine | Girls Frequency of specimens with > 10 cells per mm ³ of uncentrifuged urine | Significance of difference between boys and girls |
|--|---|--|---|
| 1-4 | 23/30 | 17/48 | $P < 0.001$ |
| 5 | 8/11 | 8/29 | $P < 0.01$ |
| 6 | 64/131 | 31/146 | $P < 0.001$ |
| 7 | 48/119 | 16/118 | $P < 0.01$ |
| 8-15 | 7/20 | 3/15 | — |
| Total | 182/311 | 78/334 | |
| Significance of difference between consequent days | | | |
| 1-5 | $P < 0.05$ | $P > 0.05$ | |
| 6 | $P < 0.05$ | $P > 0.1$ | |
| 7 | | | |

epithelial cells was found much more often than a high count of leucocytes. In girls on the other side high counts of both types of cells were found with about equal frequency. Epithelial cells amounting to 30 or more per mm. were registered only in three of the 8 boys with a probable infection. They decreased with age in an

expected way (black dots, Fig. 3). This decrease did not parallel the change in number of leucocytes in the urine.

Squamous epithelial cells (Fig. 4)

Fig. 4 shows the excretion of these cells. It is obvious that boys excreted much less of these cells than did girls.

SQUAMOUS EPITHELIAL CELLS IN THE URINE OF 433 NEONATES

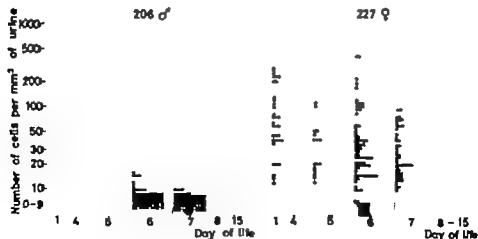


Fig. 4 Squamous epithelial cells in the urine of 206 newborn boys and 227 newborn girls. The excretion is more marked in the girls than in the boys.

Comment

On the basis of this investigation we find it sound to suspect strongly a urine abnormality in the newborn and repeat the examination if there is a leucocyturia of more than 25 leucocytes per mm^2 of uncentrifuged urine in boys and more than 50 in girls, especially if the cells are of the granular motility type. These figures are a little more liberal than those given for older infants and children [8].

Figures for leucocyte excretion in newborns have earlier been given by James [4] and by Aas [1]. The former report presents very scanty figures which however probably are in accordance with ours. The figures given by Aas are not comparable to those of James and ours, since he did not separate leucocytes and non-squamous epithelial cells. In view of our findings of an inverted sex difference between leucocytes and non-squamous epithelial cells this may explain his statement that there is no difference between boys and girls as regards cellular excretion in newborns.

The leucocytes were to some extent of the "granular motility type" which are found in adults and children with renal parenchymal inflammations [9]. Their presence in the neonates may suggest a renal origin but since the frequency of these cells is related to the degree of urinary hypoosmolality [7, 9] their presence in noninfected cases simply may be a consequence of the low concentration of the urine during the neonatal period.

When boys excreted more than 25 leucocytes per mm^2 of uncentrifuged urine the leucocyturia was often marked and associated with a significant coluria. The combination of marked coluria and leuco-

cyturia suggested a urinary tract infection as was discussed in the previous communication [5].

In girls the excretion of 50 cells or more was in none associated with marked coluria. When culture was performed under anaerobic conditions it disclosed in several specimens an abundant growth of *Haemophilus vaginalis*-like bacteria. Such bacteria were found especially frequently in specimens with >50 leucocytes. Similar bacteria may in adults be associated with vaginal infections [7].

Thus a marked leucocyturia in newborn boys often seems to be caused by urinary tract infection, while in girls it may also result from a vaginal infection. Concerning the latter point, however further studies are necessary before valid conclusions can be drawn.

The sex difference in excretion of non-squamous epithelial cells suggested by our findings is noticeable. We have no explanation for these findings. Lippman [6] refrains from assigning these cells to any special part of the urinary tract whereas Aas [1] classifies them as renal epithelial cells. The fact that the leucocyte excretion in our infected boys was of the same magnitude as the excretion of non-squamous epithelial cells in the noninfected ones suggests the value of making an effort to separate these cells, even if it may be difficult. Such a separation may be facilitated by various staining methods.

Summary

Urinary cellular excretion during the first week of life was studied in about 800 unselected newborns.

On the basis of the findings it seems

reasonable to suspect a urine abnormality when boys excrete more than 25 white cells and girls excrete more than 50 white cells per mm. of an uncentrifuged urine. In boys the excretion of more than 25 white cells was usually associated with a significant coluria. Such patients probably had a urinary tract infection. In the urine of girls excreting more than 50 white cells *Haemophilus vaginalis*-like bacteria were

frequently isolated in large amounts. The significance of this finding is uncertain.

Non-squamous epithelial cells were excreted in significantly larger amounts by boys than by girls. Excretion diminished with increasing age. The reason for this sex difference is obscure.

Squamous epithelial cells were present to a larger extent in the urine of girls than in that of boys.

References

1. AAR, K. The cellular excretion in the urine of normal newborn infants. *Acta Paediatr* (Stockh), 50: 381, 1961.
2. EORUNDA, P. & *Haemophilus vaginalis*, its association with postperal pyrexia and leucorrhoea. *J Obstet Gynaec*, 66: 217, 1909.
3. — *Haemophilus vaginalis* morphology, cultural characters and viability. *J Pathol Bact*, 73: 273, 1960.
4. JAMES, U. Urinary infection in the newborn. *Lancet* II: 1001, 1960.
5. LEXTON, K. and WINKERS, J. Studies in urinary tract infections in infancy and childhood. II. Quantitative estimation of bacteria in unselected neonates with special reference to the occurrence of asymptomatic infections. *Acta Paediatr* (Stockh), 53: 207, 1964.
6. LUTTMAN, R. W. *Urine and the Urinary Sediment. A Practical Manual and Atlas* p. 23, C. C. Thomas, Springfield, 1937.
7. SCHROEDER, P. Die Bedeutung der Sternheimer Malbinzellen ("granular motility cells") für die Diagnose der Pyelonephritis. *Klin Wochschr* 38: 664, 1960.
8. STANFIELD, J. M. and WEBB, J. K. Observations on pyuria in children. *Arch Dis Child*, 28: 286, 1953.
9. STENSTROMER, R. and MALIN, B. Clinical recognition of pyelonephritis, with new stain for urinary sediments. *Amer J Med*, 11: 312, 1951.

Submitted Jan. 31, 1964

Accepted Feb. 4, 1964

(J. W.) Paediatric Clinic
Barnejukhuset
Göteborg, Sweden

pressure in the right arm was 103/75. In the left 95/75 and in the legs 140/80. The ECG was repeatedly normal. X-ray of the heart showed a slightly increased volume (405 ml per square meter of body surface) but no definite abnormalities in configuration. Congenital heart disease was considered unlikely.

Lungs. The lungs were normal on X-ray. **Abdominal organs.** The spleen, which had been palpable since birth, could still be felt 4 cm below the left costal margin and the liver about 1 cm below the right costal margin.

Genito-urinary tract. The penis was normal and the scrotal sacs small but otherwise normal. Testes of prepubertal size and consistency could be palpated bilaterally at the external inguinal ring. The prostate was not palpable. In March 1961 a right inguinal herniorrhaphy was done. The right testis appeared normal, and a biopsy specimen was obtained.

Skeleton. X-ray films of the skull and extremities revealed no abnormalities.

Nervous system. Mentally the boy was retarded; he was regarded as an imbecile with a mental age of 3 years as assessed by a Terman-Merrill test and 2½ according to a Bender-Heisler test. Neurological examination revealed no abnormalities. Ophthalmoscopic examination showed tortuous vessels in a pale retina. EEG showed an abnormally slow activity but no epileptogenic bursts.

Laboratory tests. Routine tests on blood and urine were repeatedly normal. The serum potassium, serum calcium, serum phosphorus, serum alkaline phosphatase, serum cholesterol, serum total lipids and fasting blood glucose concentration were normal. The total serum protein was 7.0 g/100 ml with normal paper electrophoretic pattern. The urinary excretion of gonadotrophins was less than 6.5 MU/24 hours (normal). Paper chromatographic examination of the urine revealed no abnormal aminoacids.

Case M II. A boy was born June 2nd, 1956, to a 31-year-old mother and a 38-year-old father. A sister born in 1958 and both parents are healthy. No other member

of the family has had signs or symptoms of the kind presented by the boy.

The boy was born at term after an uneventful pregnancy and delivery. His birth weight was 3050 g and his length at birth 49 cm. During the neonatal period he was found to be hoarse and initially he had also difficulties in sucking. From an early age the mother noticed that he was shorter than other boys of his age. His psychomotor development was relatively normal; he was able to sit without support at the age of 7-8 months, he walked without support at 15 months of age, he started to talk single words at 1½ months, and could speak short sentences at 3 years of age. However at the age of 5 his diction was still indistinct and he could not roll his r's. His mother has regarded him as being more easily exhausted by play than other boys of his age.

At the age of 3 years the boy was referred to the Department of Paediatrics at the County Hospital, Karlstad. He was short and peculiar-looking with enlarged head, short neck, broad flat nose bridge, short, broad hands and feet and very thin hair. A systolic murmur was heard. An electroencephalogram revealed slight central atrophy of both the lateral ventricles, and the basal cisterns were wider than normal. His mental development was regarded as normal.

At the age of 5 years the boy was admitted to the Department of Child Psychiatry in Karlstad, where a performance test showed IQ 103. In 1961 he was referred to the Department of Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, for further examination.

Examination at the age of 5½ years. disclosed several anomalies (Fig. 2). The boy was only 99 cm tall (about 4 cm less than -3 SD) and weighed 16.5 kg (normal for the height). The skull circumference was 51 cm (normal). The hair showed several large whorls. The nose bridge was broad and flat. The neck was short, with moderately pronounced bilateral webbing. The external ears were low-set and showed slight anomalies. The palate was highly arched. There were no dental malformations. Hypertelorism, slight exophthalmos, and bilateral



Fig. 2. Case 1. Photomicrograph showing prepubertal testicular tissue with one large germ cell in the center (van Gieson, $\times 350$).

ptosis of the eyelids were present. The voice was hoarse. Laryngoscopy showed signs of laryngitis, but no malformations could be seen. The hands and the feet were short and broad. Typical cubitus and genu valgus were present on both sides.

Heart. There were no signs of cardiac insufficiency at rest. The first sound was accentuated over the apex, where a grade I-II, short presystolic murmur was heard. A harsh, grade III systolic murmur was loudest at the apex. A phonocardiogram showed this murmur to be of high frequency with a mid-systolic accentuation. The blood pressure was 105/90 in the right arm and 110/80 in the legs. The ECG showed frequent extra systoles from a single focus within the left ventricle and P mitrale. There were no definite signs of ventricular hypertrophy.

On X-ray the heart volume was moderately increased (415 ml per square meter of body surface), with signs of left atrial enlargement. Cardiac catheterization showed slightly increased pressure in the left atrium and a pressure gradient of 5 mm Hg between

the left atrium and ventricle. Other pressures were normal and no signs of intracardiac shunt were found. Angiocardiography showed hypertrophy of the left ventricle with signs of systolic obstruction of the outflow tract. The findings were interpreted as caused by idiopathic muscular subaortic stenosis.

Lungs. The lungs were normal on X-ray.

Abdominal organs. The liver was palpable at the right costal margin, but the spleen could not be felt.

Genito-urinary tract. The penis was normal. The scrotal sac was small but otherwise normal; the testes could not be felt. The prostate was not palpable. Intravenous urography showed no abnormalities. In September 1962 right-sided and in January 1963 left-sided orchidopexy was performed. The testes were situated very high in the abdomen, and were smaller than normal. A biopsy specimen was taken from the right testis.

Skull. X-ray films of the skull, the spine and the extremities revealed nothing abnormal.

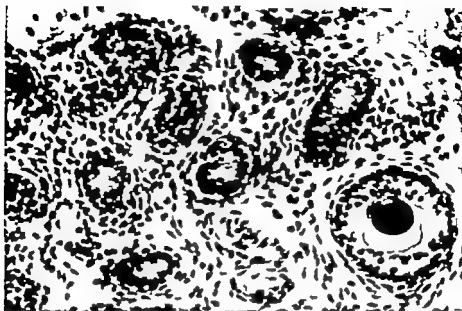


Fig. 4 Case 2 Photomicrograph showing prepubertal testicular tissue without identifiable germ cells. Not slightly increased cellularity and hyaline cast in one tubule. van Gieson, $\times 250$.

Nervous system. Mentally the boy seemed normal, and an intelligence test (Terman Merrill) showed IQ 105. Neurological examination revealed no abnormalities and the hearing was normal. EEG showed relatively slow basic rhythm, but the record was otherwise normal.

Laboratory tests. Repeated routine blood and urine test were normal. The serum calcium, serum phosphorus, serum alkaline phosphatase, serum cholesterol and total serum lipid were normal. The serum protein bound iodine was $6.8 \mu\text{g}/100 \text{ ml}$. The urinary excretion of gonadotrophins was less than $6 \text{ MU}/24 \text{ hours}$ (normal) of 17 hydroxycorticosteroids (Noenimberaki) $9 \text{ mg}/24 \text{ hours}$ and of 17 ketosteroids, $0.6 \text{ mg}/24 \text{ hours}$ (normal).

Histology of Testis

The testicular biopsy specimens were fixed in formalin, and embedded in paraffin. Multiple $4\text{-}\mu$ thick sections were cut and stained with haematoxylin-eosin, van Gieson's connective-tissue stain and by a routine PAS technique.

Case 1 B.H. (Fig. 3) There was no gross derangement of the testicular parenchyma, and no sclerosis. The tubules were small and uniform in size. Their lumina were filled with irregularly stratified immature epithelium made up of rather small cells with compact, round or slightly oval nuclei. This epithelium contained vacuolated cells with predominantly basal orientation and larger lighter-coloured nuclei, representing primary spermatogonia. These cells occurred singly or in a few pairs and may have been rather scanty with regard to the boy's age. The tubules were widely spaced in a loosely textured stroma containing small fibrocytoid cells. There were no differentiated Leydig cells. The tunica albuginea was normal.

The findings were compatible with prepubertal testicular tissue without definite pathological change.

Case 2 M.B. (Fig. 4) The general structure of the testicular tissue resembled that of Case 1 with small tubules of uniform size widely spaced in a rather cellular stroma of loose texture and without distinct Leydig cells. Thorough search in a multiple

TABLE 1 *Summary of chromosome analyses*

| Origin of cultured cell | | Chromosome counts | | | Total | Karyotype interpretation |
|-------------------------|-------------|-------------------|----|----|-------|--------------------------|
| | | 45 | 46 | 47 | | |
| Case I | Skin | | 24 | 1 | 25 | Long Y chromosome |
| | Bone marrow | 1 | 30 | 0 | 31 | Long Y chromosome |
| | Testis | 1 | 19 | | 20 | Long Y chromosome |
| Mother of Case I | Blood | | 32 | | 32 | Normal karyotype |
| Father of Case I | Blood | 1 | 35 | | 36 | Long Y chromosome |
| Case II | Skin | | 18 | | 18 | Normal karyotype |
| | Blood | | 18 | | 18 | Normal karyotype |
| | Testis | | 6 | | 6 | Normal karyotype |

sections failed to disclose any spermatogonia in the wholly undifferentiated tubular epithelium.

Compared with Case 1 there were two further differences of possible significance. A few tubules contained PAS-positive hyaline material (somewhat resembling corpora amylacea), which was partly surrounded by flattened epithelial cells—an unusual finding. The cells in the interstitial tissue were arranged rather irregularly and tended to be concentrated round the tubules. This tissue was slightly more fibrous than normal, with broader septula, but no scar tissue was found.

The findings were compatible with prepubertal testicular tissue with germinal-cell dysplasia.

Cytological Studies

Cytological studies of cultured cells from skin, bone marrow and testis were performed by the method of Böök *et al.* [4]. Chromosome studies of peripheral leucocytes were carried out by a modification of a method described by Moorhead *et al.* [19].

Case 1 B. H. Analysis of the chromosomes was based on a study of cell cultures derived from skin, bone marrow and testis.

Chromosome counts were made in a total of 76 apparently undamaged cells in

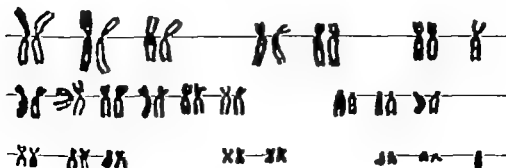


TABLE 2. Chromosomal constitution in phenotypical males with webbed neck, short stature and other developmental anomalies characteristic of the pterygium syndrome

| Authors | Age in yrs. | Testes on physical examination | Histology of biopsy specimens | Sex chromatin | Chromosomal constitution |
|-------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------|--|---------------|--------------------------|
| Fraccaro <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 31 | Undescended (intraabdominal) | Dysgenesis, germinal-cell aplasia | Negative | Normal XY |
| Futterweit <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 12 | Undescended (canalicular) | Dysgenetic tubules, germinal-cell hypoplasia, or aplasia | Negative | Normal XY |
| Chu <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 12 | Descended testes in normal scrotum | N/A performed | Negative | Normal XY |
| Stefker <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 12 (Case 1) | Partly descended (inguinal canal) | Testes "immature in relation to the age of 4½ months" | Negative | Normal XY |
| Stefker <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 12½ (Case 4) | Descended, normal, prepubertal testes | Not performed | Not performed | Normal XY |
| Okawa & Blizzard 1961 | 11 (Case 1) | Undescended (intraabdominal) | Dysgenesis, germinal-cell aplasia | Positive | XX (One enlarged X) |
| Okawa & Blizzard 1961 | 2½ (Case 2) | Descended testes in normal scrotum | Not performed | Negative | Normal XY |
| Lagroun <i>et al.</i> 1961 | 29 | Descended, small testes | Dysgenesis, germinal-cell dysplasia | Positive | XXY |
| Leach <i>et al.</i> 1962 | 15 (Case 2) | Undescended (canalicular) | Dysgenetic tubules, germinal-cell aplasia | Negative | Normal XY |
| de Graaf <i>et al.</i> 1962 | 14½ | Undescended (intraabdominal) | Dysgenesis, germinal-cell aplasia | Negative | ? Normal XY |
| Authors 1964 | 10 (Case 1) | Partly descended (inguinal canal) | Normal prepubertal testicular tissue | Negative | XY (Long Y) |
| Authors 1964 | 5½ (Case 2) | Undescended (intraabdominal) | Germinal-cell aplasia | Negative | Normal XY |

mitotic metaphase. The results of these analyses are summarised in Table 1.

Detailed analyses of 11 cells with the aid of enlarged photomicrographs showed the chromosome number to be 46 with a

normal male karyotype except that the Y chromosome was longer than usual (Fig. 5). The relative length of the patient's Y chromosome was compared with the relative lengths of the Y chromosomes of

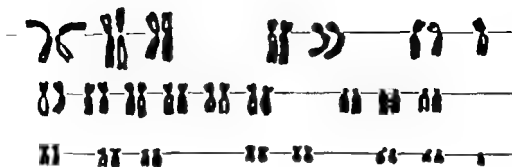


Fig. 6 Case 2 Paired chromosomes from testis showing normal male karyotype

6 normal men by measuring enlarged photomicrographs. All measurements were made by the same person.

The mean relative length of the Y chromosome in 33 cells from 6 normal men was 18.7 (S.E. = 0.4, S.D. = 2.3). The variation in length of the Y chromosome among the 6 normal men was insignificant compared with the variation within each individual. The estimate of the mean relative length (in normal men) must therefore be considered adequate. The mean relative length of the Y chromosome in 11 cells from the patient was 23.0 (S.E. = 0.2; S.D. = 2.0). The relative length of the patient's Y chromosome was found to be increased by 23% compared to the relative length of the Y chromosome in the normal material ($P < 0.001$). No sex chromatin was found in the interphase nuclei of cultured skin cells from the patient.

Chromosome studies of the parents were carried out on leucocyte cultures. Analyses of cells from the mother showed a normal

chromosome number and karyotype. The karyotype of the father was normal, but the Y chromosome was about the same length as that found in the patient. The mean relative length of the Y chromosome in 4 cells from the father was 23.1 which was found to be 24% greater than that in the normal material ($P < 0.001$).

Case 2 M. B. Analysis of the chromosomes was based on a study of cell cultures derived from skin, blood and testis. Chromosome counts were made in a total of 39 apparently undamaged cells in mitotic metaphase. The results of these analyses are summarized in Table 1.

Detailed analyses of 10 cells with the aid of enlarged photomicrographs showed the chromosome number to be 46 with a normal male karyotype. The Y chromosome was of normal size (Fig. 6). No sex chromatin was found in the interphase nuclei of cultured skin and testicular cells from the patient.

Discussion

Both boys described showed multiple somatic anomalies characteristic of the

The relative length is the length of the chromosome relative to the total length of the haploid set containing the Y chromosome times 1000.

pterygium syndrome. Both were short in stature and had a short webbed neck, hypertelorism, slight exophthalmos, bilateral ptosis of the eyelids, a broad, flat nose bridge, low-set anomalous external ears, a high arched palate, short broad hands and a small scrotum. Other deviations from the normal were also noted. In Case 1 there was mental retardation, convulsions, and splenomegaly, and in Case 2 hoarseness, cubitus valgus, idiopathic myocardial hypertrophy and undescended testes. Above all, the boys differed in mental development which was normal in Case 2.

In establishing to which sub-group of the pterygium syndrome in the male a patient is to be placed, the *histological appearance* of the testis seems to be decisive. In Case 1 the testicular tissue was found to be of normal prepubertal type, whereas in Case 2, in which the testes were not descended, germinal cell aplasia was present. The microscopical findings thus indicate the diagnosis of "Ulrich's syndrome in the male" in Case 1 while Case 2 is probably best classified as "Turner's syndrome in the male." These diagnoses are not to be regarded as definitely settled, however, as the present findings refer to boys of prepubertal ages, and therefore do not permit a prediction of the final, postpubertal testicular maturation.

The *chromosomal constitution* in male patients with the pterygium syndrome has only been studied in a very few cases (6, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 21, 24, 25), the pertinent data of which are collected in Table 2. With two exceptions these cases were found to be sex-chromatin negative and to have a normal male XY karyotype.

One exception [21] concerned an 11 year old child with undescended testes, germinal-cell aplasia, positive sex chromatin, and abnormal female karyotype with one normal and one enlarged X chromosome. The other exception [16] was a 29-year-old man with 47 chromosomes and the XXY karyotype of Klinefelter's syndrome but lacking the histological testicular changes characterizing the syndrome. Both of our patients were sex-chromatin negative. Case 2 showed a normal chromosome number with a normal male karyotype. Case 1 also had a normal chromosome number but the Y chromosome was unusually long. This has not previously been reported in patients with the pterygium syndrome. The finding prompts a discussion concerning the importance of the long Y chromosome with regard to the developmental anomalies in this case. This is of special interest, as Nowakowski & Lenx [20] have drawn parallels with the XO situation in female cases, and claiming that mutation of the Y chromosome might produce part of the effect of absence of the whole chromosome.

It is generally agreed that the length of the human Y chromosome varies not only in different cells from the same individual but also in different individuals. Variation in length of the Y chromosome may reflect differences in chromatin content, in chromosomal behaviour or in both.

An unusually long Y chromosome has been reported in an apparently normal male [2]; in a male mongol (trisomic for number 21) his normal brother and two distant relatives [3]; in a patient with Marfan's syndrome [15]; in two males with oligospermia [28]; in a normal father and a paternal grandfather of a mongoloid

girl [18] and in a male infant, with multiple malformations, and his father normal in phenotype [28].

Studies with tritiated thymidin show that the Y chromosome of man replicates late during the period of DNA synthesis. This finding is compatible with the heterochromatic nature of the Y chromosome [1]. As duplications of heterochromatic segments are thought to have far less harmful effects than duplications of euchromatic segments of the same size [23] it would not be surprising to find occasional phenotypically normal individuals with an enlarged Y chromosome due to segmental duplication. The family of Case 1 may fall into this category and if so, the long Y chromosome of the patient has probably not contributed to his developmental anomalies.

The increased length of the Y chromosome might also be the result of a reciprocal translocation. The father could then have a balanced translocation between the Y chromosome and another chromosome, which translocation would have originated in the germ cells of an earlier generation. The other chromosome involved in the translocation ought then to be slightly shorter than normal. A small deficiency of one of the larger chromosomes might be undetectable if the patient had a Y chromosome with a translocated fragment and was chromosomally unbalanced, he might have developed abnormally.

The usual finding of a normal chromosome constitution in the pterygium syndrome in the male brings up the question of the connexion between chromosomal aberration and developmental anomalies. Suffice it here to point out the interesting finding of the same developmental anomalies (the pterygium syndrome) both in cases with definite, but varying chromosome aberrations (Turner's syndrome in the female and some cases of Turner's syndrome in the male) and in cases with a normal chromosome constitution (Ulrich's syndrome in the female and in the male and most cases of Turner's syndrome in the male). It seems wise to warn against routinely attributing developmental anomalies to simultaneously occurring gross chromosome abnormalities. Obviously the same developmental abnormalities can appear both in cases with and in cases without apparent chromosomal aberrations.

Summary

Two boys with the pterygium syndrome are described. The first case showed a normal prepubertal testicular histology and an unusually long Y chromosome. The other had no germ cells and showed testicular dysgenesis, but had a normal karyotype. The first case is considered to represent Ulrich's syndrome in the male while the other probably represents Turner's syndrome.

References

1. ATKIN, L., BOCK, J. A., GUERIN, K. H., HANCOCK, O. and HARMON, M.: A case of XXXXY sex chromosome anomaly with ultradiagnostic studies. *Cytogenetics*, 2 208, 1963.
2. BENDER, M. A. and GOSCH, P. C.: An unusually long human Y chromosome. *Lancet* II 463, 1961.
3. BIRNOR, A., BLANK, C. E. and HUNTER, H.

- Herrlill variation in the length of the Y chromosome *Lancet*, *II* 18 1962.
4. BOONE, J. A., FRACCARO, M. and LINDSTEN J.: Cytogenetical observations in mongolism. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, *50* 17 1961.
 5. DE LA CHAPELLE, A.: Cytogenetical and clinical observations in female gonadal dysgenesis. *Acta Endocrin (Kbh)*, *5* suppl 65 1960.
 6. CHU, E., WARRANT J. and ROSENSTEIN R.: Chromosome complement in case of the "Male Turner Syndrome" *Lancet* *I* 80, 1961.
 7. COURT BROW, W. M., JACOBY, P. A. and DOLL, R.: Interpretation of bromouracil count made on bone marrow *Lancet* *I* 160 1960.
 8. FLAVELL, H. W.: Binding of the neck with Turner syndrome in male *Brit J Surg* *31* 150, 1942.
 9. FORD, C. E., JONES, K. W., POLANI, P. E., ALKIND, J. C. and BRIDGES, J. H.: A sexual chromosomal anomaly in a case of gonadal dysgenesis (Turner syndrome). *Lancet* *I* 711 1959.
 10. FRACCARO, M., KALISER, A. and LINDSTEN J.: Chromosome complement in gonadal dysgenesis (Turner syndrome) *Lancet* *I* 854, 1959.
 11. FRACCARO, M., JONES, D., LINDSTEN J., LOTT, R. and TILLINGER, K. G.: Testicular germinal dysgenesis (male Turner's syndrome). *Acta Endocrin (Kbh)*, *26* 89, 1960.
 12. FETTERWEIT, W., CHAPMAN, M. L. and MOLOSHOK, R. E.: Multiple congenital defect in a twelve year old boy with cryptorchidism: male Turner syndrome" *Metabolism*, *18* 1074 1961.
 13. D. GEYER, J. L., DE BROCCHE, J. and LAMY, M.: Dysplasie gonadique et mal formations d type turnerien chez un individu phénotypiquement et chromosomiquement masculin. *Ann Hép Paris* *39* 74 1963.
 14. HAKERTON, J. L. and POLANI, P. E.: Perinatal communication.
 15. KALLIK, B. and LEVAY, A.: Abnormal length of chromosome 21 and 22 in four patients with Marfan's syndrome *Gynaecologia* *18* 1960.
 16. LAURON, R., BIANCHI, N. O., CARABON, A. and CAIRO, H.: Estudio cromosómico en 1 síndrome de Turner en el Varón. *Rev Clin Esp*, *31* 330, 1961.
 17. LINDSTEN J.: *The Nature and Origin of X Chromosome Aberrations in Turner Syndrome* Almqvist & Wiksell, Uppsala, 1962.
 18. MAKINO, S., LARSEN, M. S., YAMADA, K. and KAJIL, T.: A long Y chromosome in man. *Chromosoma*, *14* 154, 1963.
 19. MOOREHEAD, P. S., NOWELL, P. C., MELLIN, W. J., BATTIE, D. M. and HENDERSON, D. A.: Chromosome preparations of leucocytes cultured from human peripheral blood. *Exp Cell Res*, *24* 612, 1960.
 20. NOWAKOWSKI, H. and LOTT, W.: Genetic aspects in male hypogonadism. *Acta Progr Horm Res*, *17* 53, 1961.
 21. OTAKAWA, K. and RUTLAND, R. M.: Chromosomal studies of patient with congenital anomalies simulating those of gonadal aplasia. *New Engl J Med*, *264* 1008, 1961.
 22. POLANI, P. E.: Turner syndrome and allied conditions. *Brit Med Bull* *17* 700, 1961.
 23. POSTECORIO, G.: Structure of heterochromatin. *Nature (Lond)*, *162* 365, 1944.
 24. STRICK, D. D., MELLIN, W. J., BOSTROM, T. A. M., ESKELIN, W. R. and LEBERT, G.: Turner syndrome in the male. *J Pediatr* *58* 221 1961.
 25. TARTAGLIA, H. and SCHWAB, G.: Germinalzell-Aplasie und Klinefelter. *Dtsch Med Woch* *88* 701 1962.
 26. TURNER, H. H.: A syndrome of infantism, congenital webbed neck, and eubryol valgo. *Endocrinology*, *21*, 866, 1932.
 27. ULLMANN, O.: Über typische Kombinationsbilder multipler Abartungen. *Z Kinderheilk* *49* 71 1930.
 28. VAN WICK, J. A. M., TURNER, O. A. J. and STOLTE, L. A. M.: Anomalies in the Y chromosome *Lancet*, *I* 218, 1962.

Submitted Jan. 25, 1964

Accepted Feb. 3, 1964

(K. H.) Department of Pediatrics
Akademiska Sjukhuset
Uppsala
Sweden

CASE REPORT

Marked Elevation of Beta 2M Globulin in a Patient with Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia

by E. KOUVALAINEN, L. HJELT and O. WASZ-HÖCKERT

From the Children's Hospital, University of Helsinki

Interstitial plasma cell pneumonia occurs mainly in infants and especially in prematurely born infants. The disease is usually manifested between the first and fourth month of life and among institutional children it often occurs as small epidemics [1, 3, 10, 18]. The regular finding of *Pneumocystis carinii* in the lungs in histological sections points to the etiological role played by the organism [14]. In experimental animals *Pneumocystis carinii* is known to produce a disease which in many respects resembles the interstitial plasma cell pneumonia in children [21, 23].

The occurrence of the disease especially in prematurely born infants aged 1-4 months points to a specially lowered resistance in this age group. It is known that gammaglobulin values fall soon after birth, and thus prematures in the above mentioned age group show a gamma globulin level which is sometimes almost as low as that seen in agammaglobulinemia [8, 11]. It is possible that this physiological impaired capacity to form gamma globulin is responsible for the lowered resistance against *Pneumocystis carinii*. This

hypothesis is supported by the fact that interstitial plasma cell pneumonia also occurs in older agammaglobulinemic patients [2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 12, 13, 15, 16]. On the other hand the therapeutic use of gammaglobulin in interstitial plasma cell pneumonia obviously does not improve or change the clinical symptoms [2, 6, 12, 16]. Patients suffering from interstitial plasma cell pneumonia form antibodies against *Pneumocystis carinii* which can be demonstrated by the complement fixation test [17, 23], but the existence of these antibodies in the commercial gammaglobulin is questionable.

In the following a patient with interstitial plasma cell pneumonia showing marked elevation of beta 2M globulin is described. The immunoglobulins of 8 infants treated in the same institutional unit as this patient were also studied. The object was, firstly, to see if elevated beta 2M globulin levels occurred in these infants as a possible sign of latent *Pneumocystis carinii* infection; and, secondly, to detect the hypo- or agammaglobulinemic cases in order to give them prophylactic gamma globulin therapy.



Fig 1 Chest X ray showing diffuse infiltrations in both lungs and small interstitial emphysema bubbles.

Case Report

Clinical course and findings. The patient (male) was the first child of the family. The pregnancy and delivery were uneventful. The birthweight was 3900 g. The mother had tuberculosis of the lungs and the child was taken from the mother in the maternity hospital and treated in an institution for such infants. BCG vaccination was performed in the maternity hospital. The child was said to be limping a little but was otherwise normal. He did not gain weight normally in spite of an adequate food intake.

At the age of 2 months and 4 days respiratory difficulties occurred and the child was brought to the hospital. He was in bad condi-

tion. The weight was 4340 g, respiration fast. Moderate sternal retraction during inspiration was seen. In both lungs a few moist rales were heard. The heart sounds were normal, the nervous system and gastrointestinal tract symptomfree. The temperature varied between 36.4 and 37.1°C. The Hb was 13.5 g/l. The leucocytes ranged from 10,800 with a normal differential count.

Chest X ray showed diffuse infiltrates in both lungs. Later on small interstitial emphysematous bubbles were seen (Fig. 1). The serum protein pattern shown by paper electrophoresis was as follows: total protein 8, albumin 3.1, α_1 -globulin 0.2, α_2 -globulin 1.0, β -globulin 0.7 and gammaglobulin 0.7 g/100 ml. In the immunoelectrophoresis, done in the usual way using horse antihuman serum from the Pasteur Institute (No. 306) as antiserum, the gamma line was normal, the β -A hardly visible but the β -M line was very sharply accentuated (Fig. 2). The level of β -M globulin in the serum must have been, according to our experience about 5 times higher than in normal adult serum. The next day the patient was in very poor condition. The respiratory rate increased to 80–100/min. The skin was grayish. The temperature was not elevated. Bacterial culture from the nose showed *Staphylococcus aureus*, because of which the penicillin-streptomycin treatment started originally was changed to chloramphenicol and to cephradine. The child developed signs of cardiac insufficiency for which he was given digitalis. He remained in poor condition and died two weeks after the onset of the symptoms.

Autopsy. The heart, gastrointestinal tract, and central nervous and genito-urinary systems were without changes. The trachea



Fig 2 Immunoelectrophoresis of the patient and control immunoelectrophoresis (C). Note the marked accentuation of the β -M line and the gamma line, which is within normal limits.

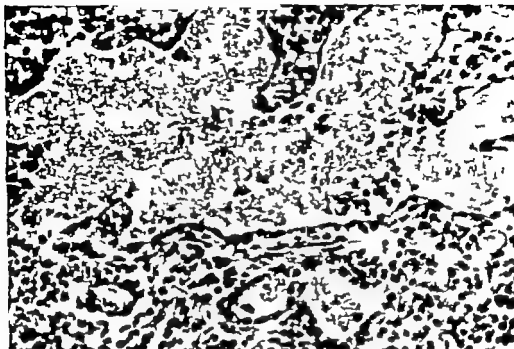


Fig. 2. Microscopic picture of the lungs. Note the accumulation of mononuclear cells in the thickened interalveolar walls and the foamy substance containing tiny spots in the alveoli (H.E., 400).

contained mucopurulent exudate. The left lung sank in water the right just floated. The visceral pleurae were red. The lungs were of varying consistency mostly rubberlike. The cut surface was red and moderately consolidated. There was very little air and typical interstitial emphysema. The liver weighed 180 g and was congested.

Microscopically the lungs showed areas in which the alveoli were filled with a foamy honey-comb like mass, in which tiny dark spots were seen. Numerous desquamated epithelial cells were present in some alveoli. The alveolar walls were thickened and showed marked plasma cell infiltration (Fig 3). There was congestion and patchy hemorrhages in the alveolar walls. The liver, spleen and adrenals showed venous congestion, but were otherwise normal. The kidneys were mature and normal apart from a few calcium containing calculi seen in a few tubules in the left kidney. The number of thymocytes in the cortical layer of the thymus was decreased. Hassall corporcles were normal.

Of the eight infants who were exposed to *Pneumocystis carinii* infection by the patient described above, three showed hypogammaglobulinemia. In two of these three cases the gammaglobulin level, however was estimated to be higher than 0.3 g/100 ml, and prophylactic gammaglobulin treatment was given to one of the infants only. The beta 2A and beta 2M lines were normal for that age. During the observation time of six months no manifest symptoms of *Pneumocystis carinii* infection was seen in the exposed infants.

Discussion

A marked rise of the beta 2M globulin in the described case with plasma cell pneumonia is beyond question. The immunoglobulins in interstitial plasma cell pneumonia have been studied extensively in the last few years, but an elevated beta 2M fraction in association with a normal

gammaglobulin level has not been described before. The patient described by Hong *et al* [12] with primary agammaglobulinemia exhibited a high beta 2M fraction. This however was elevated already before the onset of *Pneumocystis pneumonia*. Beta-2M macroglobulinemia is known to appear in the antibody deficiency syndrome as shown by Rosen *et al*. [10]. The patient presented by Marshall *et al* [16] probably primarily also had Rosen's type of agammaglobulinemia. In the patient presented here agammaglobulinemia is excluded, since the electrophoretically and immunoelectrophoretically demonstrated gammaglobulin was in the normal limits.

An isolated distinct accentuation of beta 2M is not normally seen but it is known that newborn infants can react against bacterial infections by forming antibodies which belong to the beta 2M fraction [8]. This patient did not have a manifest bacterial infection at autopsy in spite of the positive nose culture for *Staphylococcus aureus*. The ASTA titers usually were not studied.

While it is thought that beta 2M globulin is formed in lymphocytoid plasma cells [16] accentuation in interstitial plasma cell pneumonia could be expected to arise from massive infiltration of the alveolar septa with plasma cells. Agammaglobulinemic patients which exhibit normal beta-2M levels do not show plasma cells in the lungs in spite of a pneumocystic infection [6]. Accordingly accentuation of beta-2M could be a consequence of the highly increased number of plasma cells. Whether in this disease the cells form specific antibodies against *Pneumocystis carinii* cannot be decided without complementary studies.

Since interstitial plasma cell pneumonia is a special danger for children in institutional care with hypo- or agammaglobulinemia it seems important to study the immunoglobulin status of exposed children. During the incubation time gammaglobulin therapy for hypogammaglobulinemic children for 1-2 months might be of importance. The commercial gammaglobulins contain very small amounts or none of the beta 2M fraction which might be important in this type of pneumonia. The poor results with gamma globulin in cases of manifest disease [2, 6, 12-16] might also be due to lack of the beta-2M fraction in the preparation used. Specific gammaglobulin preparations with a high level of antibodies against the *Pneumocystis carinii* would possibly be a reasonable trial in the therapy and prophylaxis of interstitial plasma cell pneumonia.

Summary

A two-month-old male infant suffering from typical interstitial plasma cell pneumonia showed a marked elevation of beta-2M globulin in association with a normal gamma globulin level. The significance of this finding was thought to be due to the massive plasma cell infiltrations in the lungs. Possible value of gammaglobulin preparations in prophylaxis and treatment of the disease has been discussed.

Addendum

While this paper has been in print the writer has seen an other case of interstitial plasma cell pneumonia in the same institution as the patient described above. Also this patient showed a strong accentuation of beta 2M-globulin.

References

1. ARVENAINEY E. K.: Pneumocystis pneumonia. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 4: 203 1957
2. ALLIBONE, E. C., GOLDIE, W. and MARSHON R. P.: Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia and progressive vacuolitis in siblings. *Arch Dis Child*, 39 28, 1964
3. ANDERK, O.: Über die nichtsyphilitische interstitielle Pneumonie des ersten Kindesalters. *Fócherus Arch Path Anat* 302 539 1933.
4. BIRD, T. and THOMSON J.: Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. *Lancet* 1 80, 1957
5. BURKE, B. A., KROVITS, J. and GOOD R. A.: Occurrence of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in children with agammaglobulinemia. *Pediatrics* 28 104, 1961
6. GERHARD, J. W.: Pneumocystis pneumonia. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 6 317 1959.
7. GERHARD, J. W. and MOORE, D. F.: Interstitial plasma cell pneumonia due to pneumocystis carinii. *Clinical Med Ass J* 76 399 1957
8. GILLEN D. ROWEY F. S. MICHAELS, J. B. and J. VEW Y. C. A.: Transient dysgammaglobulinemia of the newborn: 10% gamma₂ globulin deficiency in the neonate and its significance. *Amer J Dis Child* 104 401 1962.
9. GOOD R., ZAK, S., COOPER, R. and REIDERS, R.: Clinical investigations of patients with agammaglobulinemia and hypogammaglobulinemia. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 7 397 1960
10. HENDRY W. R. and P. TRICK, R. L.: Observations on 11 cases of Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia. *Amer J Clin Path*, 35 401, 1963.
11. HITZEL, W. H.: Die physiologische Entwicklung der Immunglobuline (Gamma- und Beta-2-globuline). *Helv Pediat Acta*, 18 896, 1963
12. HOWE, R., SCHUBERT, W. K., PERRIN, E. V. and WYLLIE C. D.: Antibody deficiency syndrome associated with beta-2 macroglobulinemia. *J Pediat* 61 831 1962.
13. HUTCHINGS, J. H.: Congenital agammaglobulinemia. *Lancet* 11 844, 1955.
14. JIROVEC, O. and VANEK, J.: Zur Morphologie der Pneumocystis Carinii und zur Pathogenese der Pneumocystis Pneumonie. *Zbl Bly Path*, 92. 4-4, 1954
15. KRAMER, R. L., CIRONE, V. C. and MOORE, H.: Interstitial pneumonia due to Pneumocystis carinii, cytomegalic inclusion disease and hypogammaglobulinemia occurring simultaneously in an infant. A case report with necropsy findings. *Pediatrics*, 29 816, 1962
16. MARSHALL, W. C., WESTON H. J. and BOULAN M.: Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia and congenital hypogammaglobulinemia. *Arch Dis Child*, 39 18, 1964
17. PAVLICA, F. J.: The first observation of congenital pneumocystis pneumonia in fully developed stillborn child. *Ann Pediat* 193 177 1962.
18. POVE C., DUTTE, W. and NASARIAN I.: Endemic Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in South Iran. *Arch Dis Child* 39 35, 1964.
19. ROWEY F. S., CHURCHARD A., CRAIG J. M., JANEWAY C. A. and GILLEN D.: The site of synthesis of the gamma-1 macroglobulin in dysgammaglobulinemia. *Amer J Dis Child*, 104 823 1962.
20. ROWEY F. S., KEVY S. V., MEHLER, E., JANEWAY C. A. and GILLEN D.: Dysgammaglobulinemia and recurrent bacterial infections. *Lancet*, 1 700, 1961
21. SKELDON W. H.: Experimental pneumocystis pneumonia infection in rabbits. *J Exp Med*, 110 147 1959
22. VITELL, O.: Ein neues stabiles Antigen für die Serodiagnose der interstitiellen Plasmaszellularen Pneumonie junger Säuglinge und Frühgeburteten. *Deutsch Med Wochr* 88 1857 1963.
23. WELTER, R.: Weitere Untersuchungen über experimentelle Ratten Pneumocystose im Hinblick auf die interstitielle Pneumonie der Frühgeburteten. *Z Kinderk*, 78 106, 1950.

Extracted April 1 1964

Accepted April 14, 1964

Children Hospital, University of Helsinki,
Stenbäckstr 11
Helsinki
Finland

The Course of the Respiratory Distress Syndrome of Newborn Infants

As Indicated by Poor Stability of Pulmonary Expansion

by PETER GRUENWALD

From the Departments of Pathology, Sunol Hospital and The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland, U.S.A.

Until recently most investigators of the pathology of the respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) gave prominent consideration to the two pulmonary changes which could readily be ascertained at autopsy: atelectasis and hyaline membranes (HM). More recently another pulmonary factor was found to be regularly associated with the RDS, namely poor stability of lung expansion (PS) caused by a deficiency in the peculiar surface activity of the lining

of the respiratory surfaces. Data from autopsy material pertaining to these factors have now accumulated in sufficient numbers to suggest an interpretation of the pathogenesis and course of the pulmonary disturbance in the RDS which will be presented here. Since we will be concerned with the incidence of HM and PS in relation to each other and to birth weight and length of survival, the concepts currently associated with these two conditions will at first be briefly reviewed.

Work supported by research grants of the United Cerebral Palsy Research and Educational Foundation, and the National Institutes of Health, Public Health Service (No. HD-00647-07).

Hyaline membranes A detailed review has been presented by Gregg & Bernstein [7]; only the highlights will be mentioned here. For a long time the combination of HM and atelectasis was the only pathologic finding in infants, mostly premature, with the RDS. It was surmised that the HM cause the persistence if not the development of secondary or resorption atelectasis. The appearance of HM only after some time, usually hours of air breathing, seemed to correlate with the notion that the RDS develops following a period of normal respiration. On the other hand, it has been pointed out that atelectasis is remarkably uniform while the distribution of HM as seen at autopsy is spotty in many lungs and absent in some, and this led to the conclusion that the membranes are an accessory of some other less conspicuous abnormality rather than the essential lesion. When it was recognized that the basic constituent of HM is fibrin, it was obvious that transudation had to precede membrane formation; yet this is not the usual pulmonary edema, since the lungs are at no time "wet".

either by auscultation during life or by examination at autopsy. Evidence has been accumulating that the RDS does not develop in infants who were normal for a few hours after birth, but has its inception immediately following birth, probably preceding the formation of HM.

Poor stability of expansion. Avery & Mead [1] and Groenwald [8, 9, 10] observed that the pressure-volume curves of some neonatal lungs lack the usual degree of hysteresis. Poor stability of expansion is the result of air loss from these lungs occurring on deflation at relatively high pressure while specimens of normal infant lungs retain more than half their air content at deflation to 5 cm. These abnormal lungs lose more than half their inspired volume at considerably higher pressures [10] and many of them are completely atelectatic in the absence of transpulmonary pressure regardless of the maximum volume registered at higher pressures. This is the state usually seen at autopsy. The above mentioned authors found a good correlation of PS with the RDS or with HM. It is now established that normal hysteresis, and stability of expansion is the result of lowering of the surface tension along the alveolar walls specifically during expiration, produced by characteristic surfactant which is presumably elaborated by alveolar lining cells. A deficiency of this activity (we can only measure activity not the concentration of the active lipoprotein) results in PS. Barrie [6] and Pattle and coworkers [18] have also correlated this surfactant deficiency with the RDS. Given an intact lung specimen, the stability of expansion can be determined by obtaining a pressure-volume curve [10]. In the present study

most lungs were inflated stepwise with pressures up to 60 cm of water and then deflated again in steps. Variations in deflation characteristics and therefore the stability of expansion are most significant and conspicuous at pressures below 10 cm. An index was devised which is essentially a measure of the area below the deflation curve between 10, 5 and 0 cm of pressure [12]. This index ranges from 0 to 1.50 and when actual observations were plotted, they fell into one group below 0.71 and another above 0.80. Very few observed values were between 0.71 and 0.80, and it turned out that this provides a convenient border between good and poor stability. Detailed data including most of the cases used here, were previously given [10]. In the present report only the two groups of good and poor stability will be contrasted, without regard to individual values within each group.

The consequences of PS for an infant's respiration are obvious. The first breath is unaffected. However in contrast to the normal state in which a residual volume of air is rapidly established after birth these abnormal lungs lose their air content completely or nearly completely at expiration. Each subsequent inspiration must therefore open up a collapsed lung again and again, and thus requires an inspiratory effort almost as great as that of the normal first breath. This increased effort is clinically obvious. If it is sufficiently strong it may at each inspiration open the lungs approximately to the extent that they would normally open at the first breath. As it weakens not even this can be accomplished any longer. In premature infants who constitute a great majority of cases

of the RDS these difficulties are compounded by the tendency toward atelectasis of prematurity [10]. In this condition the bronchial tree, including the respiratory bronchioles, expands under moderate pressure while a much higher pressure is necessary to expand the alveoli. If inspiratory effort is vigorous the lungs may be fairly well expanded but will return to the state of atelectasis of prematurity if stability is poor. If the respiratory effort becomes inadequate after fatigue supervenes the state of atelectasis of prematurity may not be overcome and the infant is then limited to breathing with its respiratory bronchioles. This is not only inefficient; it also prevents the increase in lung volume which normally occurs after several hours of breathing [10].

Observations

Information was obtained from autopsy material by two lines of investigation, namely pressure-volume curves of whole lungs and microscopic study of artificially expanded as well as intact tissue. In all 320 usable pressure-volume curves were obtained. The present report is limited to 194 cases, namely those with a body weight at autopsy of 751 to 2500 g. These include the ones previously reported [10] and additional material obtained since then. In all instances sections of tissue not subjected to experimental expansion were examined microscopically and in some cases also expanded tissue fixed at known pressure [11].

Poor stability and hyaline membranes. Fig. 1 summarizes the incidence of PS and HM in five age groups. The typical full

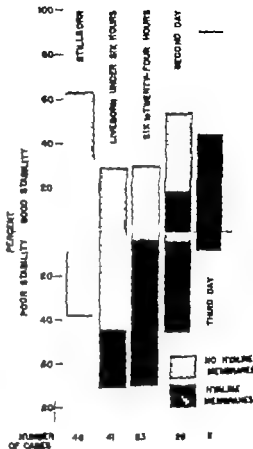


Fig. 1. Poor stability of expansion and hyaline membranes in infant lungs at autopsy. All bars are of the same length (100%) and are divided according to stability (above and below dividing line) and microscopically recognized hyaline membranes (shading).

counted among infants dying between six and twenty-four hours after birth. At this age the correlation of the two parameters studied is nearly perfect. In the entire group of 53 cases only 2 with HM had good stability just above the border line and two without HM had PS; these were seven hours old and might yet have developed membranes had they survived longer. Even if it were assumed that PS

the presence of membranes is in this age group a good pathologic-diagnostic indicator of the disease regardless of its significance in the pathogenesis.

Tracing the condition back to infants dying during the first six hours after birth, one finds the same incidence of PS but fewer HM. This is consistent with the possibility that the RDS is as prevalent among neonatal deaths during this period as later during the first day but has not yet led to the formation of HM in the majority of cases. If this were true PS but not HM would be a good indicator of the disease at autopsy in this age group.

The state at birth is represented by findings in stillborn infants; in this group there are obviously no HM. In contrast to neonatal death death in utero is not caused or contributed to by PS since it occurred before respiration could have been attempted. It is therefore significant to find that 37% of these infants had PS. It is unlikely that this is representative of the entire population of newborn infants, and one is therefore led to the conclusion that there is some association of fetal death and PS or in other words, that some factor or factors causing fetal death also produce PS.

When observations are continued beyond the first day there is again a departure from the good correlation of PS and HM. In contrast to the first six hours, however death on the second day yields a significant number of lungs with HM and good stability but not the reverse situation. If by the end of the first day there is a nearly perfect correlation of PS and HM, it may be concluded that on the second day about one third of all lungs with HM and previously poor PS have now

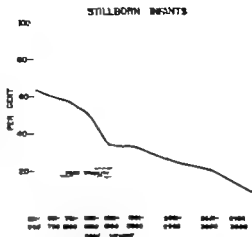


Fig. 1. Incidence of poor stability of expansion in the lungs of 100 non-macerated stillborn infants by birth weight groups.

quired good stability perhaps as a beginning of reversal of the basic abnormality of the RDS. This trend continues on the third day when the majority of lungs with HM have good stability. The present material does not include lungs with HM of infants older than three days.

Maturity factor. The RDS predominantly affects premature infants. It has been suggested that persistence of a premature state of the lungs comparable to that normally existing in infants weighing less than 1000 g is responsible for a deficiency in surfactant resulting in PS [1]. The incidence of PS in relation to birth weight may best be studied in stillborn infants in whom it did not contribute to the fatal outcome. In order to demonstrate the trend of incidence infants of all birth weight groups were included here in contrast to the limited group represented in Fig. 1. Macerated stillborn infants were excluded from this study. Fig. 2 shows that 33% of previable fetuses weigh

ing less than 500 g had good stability and an occasional infant weighing over 3000 g had poor stability. The distribution does not suggest an exclusive or even greatly predominant effect of prematurity since both poor and good stability occur in all weight groups extending from far below the border of viability up to full maturity. As was indicated above, some stress factor of unknown nature predisposes to both fetal death and PS. A combination of this factor and immaturity can adequately account for the distribution seen in Plg. 2.

As was mentioned above, atelectasis of prematurity may compound the effects of PS. In mature lungs, PS and HM are found without the premature pattern of atelectasis and HM may then be found in the partially expanded terminal air spaces as well as the respiratory bronchioles [11].

Discussion

The present observations confirm the preeminent significance of PS in the pathogenesis and manifestations of the RDS.

On this basis the following tentative account of the course of the pulmonary abnormality in the RDS may be given.

Prior to birth an unknown form of stress affects the fetus; this form of stress may occur more frequently or severely in prematures, or may combine in prematures with a separate immaturity factor which enhances its effects. A few conditions are known to be prominently associated with this occurrence, such as maternal hemorrhage [5, 19] or diabetes [6]. Whether or not delivery by cesarean section has a similar effect is not decided. However, in many instances neither of these factors is involved. Whatever the

cause, a variety of evidence [3, 5, 8, 15, 16, 17, 19, 20] suggests that the RDS develops immediately after birth and is presumably due to prenatal factors. Ueber [21] has aptly summarized this as follows: "The syndrome probably originates in utero for it is usually evident from the first breath. He has also made the point that difficult delivery in the obstetrical sense which produces acute perinatal distress is apparently not the same factor which produces or predisposes to the RDS. Now that we no longer depend for the pathologic diagnosis of the RDS on HM which may require hours to develop, we can find evidence for the prenatal origin in the relatively high proportion of still-born infants with PS [8].

The onset of respiration after birth should not be affected by PS. However, failure to establish a functional residual capacity of the usual magnitude and collapse of the lungs recurring at each expiration necessitate an excessive respiratory effort as was mentioned above. A vicious circle ensues and the more the fatigue and metabolic disturbances secondary to hypoxia increase, the less the infant is able to expand its terminal air spaces again and again on inspiration. Meanwhile a transudate furnishes the fibrin which forms the essential component of the HM. It has been suggested that abnormally high surface tension predisposes to transudation [2, 4].

It is suggested, though not conclusively proven by the present data, that on the second day the surfactant deficiency which produces PS begins to correct itself. There is probably considerable variation in the time at which this occurs. If at that time the infant is in sufficiently

good condition, it may now begin more nearly normal respiration and recover. As part of this recovery the lung must increase its total volume to the extent that this happens in other infants during the first day.

The present material includes eleven infants who died on the second or third day with HM and good stability. Search was made for anatomical evidence which might explain the fatal outcome in this group in spite of an opportunity for improved respiration. One of these infants weighed less than 1000 g; seven others showed either rupture of lungs, or evidence of heart failure (fatty degeneration of the myocardium or greatly dilated left ventricle) or intracranial hemorrhage of significant severity. Only three infants in this group showed none of the above mentioned conditions. In none of this material was any evidence available to indicate the degree of metabolic derangement which may have been present in addition to the anatomical factors. These observations confirm the suggestion that infants will survive the RDS when the stability of their expansion improves after the first day if they are not otherwise damaged. Efforts to support infants with the RDS metabolically are particularly important as long as we cannot prevent or treat the pulmonary lesion. We should make every effort to guide the infants over this self-limited disease in the best possible condition in order to enable them to recover when the stability of their expansion returns to normal.

The present observations bear on the interpretation of autopsy findings in neonatal lungs. In infants dying more than six or seven hours after birth, the pre-

sence of HM is probably the best diagnostic criterion of the RDS. On the other hand, in infants dying earlier the demonstration of PS is more valuable. During the latter part of the first day when most of the infant deaths with the RDS occur both criteria are equally reliable. If an intact unfixed lung is available (while the other lung is being fixed and sectioned) a pressure-volume curve may be prepared with simple equipment and in a short time. If only pieces of lung tissue are available they may be examined on a surface balance with a variable area; this requires more elaborate equipment and more time. Both methods yield comparable results [14].

Many pathologists have been puzzled by the airless state of the lungs of infants with the RDS even though respiration must have taken place for hours. It is now clear that in the absence of the usual stability of expansion the lung will expel all or most of the air contained in it when it is not exposed to transpulmonary pressure. This is not resorption atelectasis, but a phenomenon which may be reproduced at will in post mortem specimens by artificial inflation and subsequent reduction of pressure. Thus the airless state of these lungs at autopsy is no indication of the amount of air which they may have contained during inspiration. One might, in fact, use this airless state of a lung which is known to have contained air for considerable periods of time as evidence of PS. This has been tested against pressure-volume curves in many specimens and has been found to be uniformly correct. Obviously this criterion cannot be used in the lungs of infants who have not breathed at all or only for a short period of time.

While it is becoming apparent that PS can occur under conditions other than the RDS and at any age [13] the usual perinatal autopsy material contains only a very small number of instances of PS which cannot be accounted for by the RDS

Summary

A review of the findings in lung specimens from perinatal autopsies had led to conclusions which agree with the concept that poor stability of expansion caused by deficient activity of a specific surfactant is the basic lesion in the RDS

On this basis the following course of the

pulmonary abnormality is suggested. The basic lesion originates before birth through the action of an unidentified form of stress, and more commonly in premature infants. Failure to establish a functional residual capacity and collapse at each expiration account for the gradually increasing difficulties of infants afflicted with this defect. Hyaline membranes develop after several hours. The defect of surfactant activity is self limited and reverses itself on the second or third day. When this happens, infants recover unless they are irreversibly damaged by the RDS, or by other pathologic conditions.

References

1. AVERY M E. and MEAD J. Surface properties in relation to atelectasis and hyaline membrane disease. *Amer J Dis Child*, 87 517 1959
2. HARRIS, H. Hyaline membranes. *Brit Med J* 1 450, 1960.
3. BRUNS, P. D. COOPER, W. E. and DROGE, V. E. Maternal-fetal oxygen and acid base studies and their relationship to hyaline membrane disease in the newborn infant. *Amer J Obstet Gynec*, 22 1079 1961
4. CLEMENTS, J. A. Pulmonary edema and permeability of alveolar membranes. *Arch Environ Health* 2 290, 1961
5. CONKE, M. M. WEIDTRAUB B. H. and LILLYFIELD A. M. The relationship of pulmonary hyaline membrane to certain factors in pregnancy and delivery. *Pediatrics* 26 42, 1960.
6. GILLIS S. S. and HSIA, D. Y. Y. The infant of the diabetic mother. *Amer J Dis Child*, 87 1 1959
7. GREGG, R. H. and BERNSTEIN J. Pulmonary hyaline membranes and the respiratory distress syndrome. *Amer J Dis Child*, 102 871, 1961
8. GRUENWALD P. Prenatal origin of the respiratory distress (hyaline membrane) syndrome of premature infants. *Lancet*, 1 230 1960
9. GRUENWALD P., NITOWY Y. H. M. and SIEGEL, I. A. Perinatal mortality conference: Respiratory distress syndrome. *New York J Med* 63 77 1963.
10. GRUENWALD P. Normal and abnormal expansion of the lungs of newborn infants obtained at autopsy. II. Opening pressure, maximal volume and stability of expansion. *Lab Invest*, 13 563, 1963.
11. — Normal and abnormal expansion of the lungs of newborn infants obtained at autopsy. III. The pattern of aeration affected by gestational and postnatal age. *Am Rev* 146 337 1963.
12. A numerical index of the stability of lung expansion. *J Appl Physiol*, 13 665, 1963.
13. — The stability of expansion of the lungs in pulmonary pathology. *Amer J Clin Path*, 41 176, 1964.
14. GRUENWALD P. JOHNSON R. P. HUNTER, R. F. and CLEMENTS, J. A. Correlation of mechanical properties of infant lungs with surface activity of extracts. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*, 109 360 1962
15. MILLER, H. O. and CALKINS, L. A. Neonatal respiratory morbidity. *Amer J Dis Child*, 101 3, 1961
16. MILLER, H. O. Respiratory distress syndrome of newborn infants. II. Clinical study of pathogenesis. *J Pediatr*, 61 9 1962.
17. MORROW J. E. Pathological anatomy of anoxia. *Cerebr Palsy Bull*, 3 559 1961
18. PAXLER, R. E., CLAUDIAUX, A. E., DAVIES, P. A. and CAMERON A. H. Instability of lung lining film as cause of the respiratory-distress syndrome in the newborn. *Lancet* 2 469, 1962.

- 19 ROGERS, W. S. and GRUNKWALD F. Hyaline membranes in the lungs of premature infants. *Amer J Obstet Gynec*, 71: 9, 1956.
- 20 SMITH, C. A.: *Hyaline Membrane Formation in the New-Born Infant as Related to Obstetrical Factors. Anoxia in the New-Born Infant* Blackwell, Oxford, 1953, p. 111.
- 21 USHER, R.: The respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity. *Pediatr Clin N Amer* 8: 825, 1961.

Submitted Dec. 2, 1963

Accepted Jan. 15, 1964

Department of Paedology
Bristol Hospital of Baltimore
Baltimore, Maryland
U.S.A.

SUMMARIES OF SUPPLEMENTS

Mongolism in Newborns

A Clinical and Cytogenetic Study

by BERTIL HALL

(Supplement 154)

All newborn, suspected mongoloid infants in south Sweden during the period 1/7 1961-30/6 1962 were investigated clinically and cytogenetically. Only those (38) suspected of mongolism who moreover had trisomy 21-22 were classified as mongoloid. This is the principal material of the investigation upon which the conclusions are mainly based. These children were follow up investigated at age one year. The mongolism frequency calculated on the number of newborn infants, was about 1.5 %. The control material consists partly of 40 normal newborns investigated clinically and cytogenetically partly of recorded information concerning 207 newborn children. In addition, other pediatricians clinically investigated 20 newborn suspected mongoloid infants born during the period 1/7 1962-30/6 1963 according to a predetermined questionnaire. They also investigated 46 normal newborn infants, according to the same questionnaire. The suspected mongoloids investigated by other pediatricians were also cytogenetically investigated. At x ray examination of the hands, adults were also investigated, i.e. 10 mongoloids, 11 oligophrenics of unknown genesis, and 29 normals.

Of the many signs of mongolism in newborns, the following 10 were chosen as cardinal signs: a) lack of Moro reflex; b) muscle hypotonia, c) flat facial profile; d) oblique palpebral fissures; e) dysplastic ear; f) abundant neck skin; g) typical or atypical four finger line; h) hyperflexibility; i) dysplastic pelvis; j) dysplastic middle phalanx dig V. Two of the signs, lack of Moro reflex and muscle hypotonia are hypothetically combined with a depressed CNS function. Three cardinal signs can be localized to the head: flat facial profile, an easily observable sign that seems mainly due to maxillary hypoplasia; oblique palpebral fissures accepted as a good sign in older mongoloids and seemingly equally valuable in newborn mongoloids; and the dysplastic ear. The ear morphology varies more in mongoloids than in normals but the dysplastic ear is usually easy to distinguish from the normal ear. The comparison between the dysplastic ear and the normal ear in the newborns can be facilitated by the fact that the ears in newborns seldom protrude. The mongoloid ear is smaller, has a more rounded form, and the helix has not the distinct morphology found in the normal ear. The sixth cardinal sign, abundant neck

skin, is easy to appraise. It represents also the general skin change at mongolism, i.e. the pastiness and flaccidity signs found also in the palms of the hands. The seventh cardinal sign is the four-finger line typical or atypical. In this work, only those were included among the atypical four-finger line in whom an obvious fusing had occurred between the three-finger line and the five-finger line. The eighth cardinal sign, hyperflexibility is a well-known sign of mongolism and seems to be as valuable in newborn mongoloids. The ninth and tenth signs are roentgenological. The roentgen examination of the pelvis showed that the *flac uader* is not suitable for use from a diagnostic point of view in newborns because among other things, small turnings round the transverse axis produce great changes of the acetabular and ilium angles. The morphologic deviation in the mongoloid pelvis (ilium) which is usually very clear is more simple to appraise. It has been pointed out that, because the mongoloids normally have a dorsally outwards curvature of the iliac crest, usually no bone process is visible on the place of spina iliaca posterior superior. This additional sign is valuable because it is not affected by a moderate turning round the transverse axis. The x-ray examination of the hand skeleton shows that the middle phalanx dig. V in the newborn mongoloids is usually dysplastic. This dysplasia is probably rare in adult mongoloids. This examination shows, moreover that it is usually easy to judge whether the middle phalanx dig. V deviates morphologically but that it is hazardous to judge whether a morphologically normal middle phalanx is short or not. Of the other signs that have not been chosen as cardinal, it can be

mentioned that the newborn mongoloids were often pale, quiet, had a weak cry and lay in a characteristic manner with the legs abducted. Epicanthus is lightly pronounced in the newborn mongoloids whereas the inner eye angle lacks the distinct pointed morphology seen in normals. The blunt inner eye angle is, as it were filled with small skin creases. Iris spots are a valuable sign of newborn mongoloids. The patellar reflexes are often weak in newborn mongoloids. The newborn mongoloids do not have a flat occiput but a rounder head shape than the normals. The abundant neck skin helps positively in giving the investigator the impression that the head shape is round. This view is based on the fact that the lateral roentgenograms did not show silhouettes clearly distinguishable in this respect from those of normals, and that a highly premature mongoloid, apart from a normal neck skin, had also a normally protruding occiput and thus not a round head shape. The newborn mongoloids however have a smaller head circumference than normals with corresponding birth weight and it could also be proved that the fronto-occipital diameter in the newborn mongoloids is significantly shorter than in normals with corresponding birth weight. The large fontanel in the newborn mongoloids seems somewhat bigger than in newborn normals, but the difference is not great enough to be of diagnostic value. The pregnancy period is shorter for the mongoloids than for the normals. The mongoloids have, moreover a lower birth weight than can be explained by the curtailed pregnancy period. Where the mongoloids were full term (pregnancy period more than 40 weeks) there was no difference between

mongoloids and normals concerning birth weight. The skeletal age in the wrist is advanced in newborn mongoloids compared with newborn normals. Where six or more of the cardinal signs are positive and the picture also otherwise argues for the diagnosis mongolism, i.e. where also other positive signs occur a chromosome investigation, from a diagnostic point of view is not considered necessary.

The chromosome investigation does not give an absolute diagnosis. The diagnosis should be based upon the clinical investigation. A subject resembling mongolism, with trisomy 21-22 and with a normal set of chromosomes in a percentage of the cells (mosaicism) has been shown to have normal intelligence. One must thus take into account the risk that only the aberrant cells are observed at the cytogenetic routine investigation, especially as the frequency of normal cells can vary from tissue to tissue. A chromosome investigation of all uncertain cases, however should be carried out. No complicated arrangements for sending samples for cytogenetic investigations are required. Of the 43 suspected mongoloids investigated 1/7 1961-30/6 1962 38 proved to be trisomic for a chromosome in the group 21-22 whereas the other 5 had apparently normal chromosomes. The chromosomes were in most instances examined in two tissues, blood and skin. Of the five subjects with normal set of chromosomes, three had four of the cardinal signs and in addition two of these proved at age one year to be mentally retarded. These mongolism resembling subjects, with mental retardation but without signs of chromosome aberration, were called pseudomongoloids.

Fifteen of the 38 mongoloid infants died

during the first year of life; all before age six months. Ten were autopsied, all of whom had cardiac malformation. In seven, ventricular septal defect occurred, and in one or two persistent ostium atrioventriculare commune. The last mentioned malformation is then not thought to be such a dominant heart malformation at mongolism as was earlier imagined. Of the five not autopsied two had an obvious systolic murmur. Where suspicion of cardiac malformation remained in the 23 surviving at age one year a fresh x ray examination of the heart and an electrocardiogram were made. After this examination, suspicion of heart malformation remained in 3/23 subjects.

All mongoloids follow up investigated at age one year showed signs of mental retardation in varying degrees. It would seem that most signs described in older mongoloids are already present in the newborn mongoloids. Mental retardation, however cannot be demonstrated, but it must be pointed out that certain signs indicate a depressed CNS function in the newborn mongoloid. The experiences gained at the investigation of the newborn material and of the age one year mongoloids do not suggest that it is much easier to diagnose when the mongoloid has reached age one year. In some cases, the reverse seems to apply.

The present investigation demonstrates a pronounced variation in the phenotype of newborn mongoloids. This agrees with the view of some authors concerning older mongoloids—a view which, however has not been altogether accepted in the literature.

Based upon a comparison of the embryonic development of the finger pha-

langes and the phalanx morphology in newborn mongoloids, a hypothesis is presented to explain some aberrations in mongoloids. This hypothesis, delayed em-

bryonic development and various possible alternatives to the mechanism giving rise to this process are discussed.

Respiratory Studies in Children VI Mechanics of Breathing Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Asthmatic Children from Attack to Symptom Free Status

by INGA ENGSTRÖM

(Supplement 155)

Twenty-one asthmatic children between the ages of 6 and 17 years were studied, 11 boys and 10 girls. Pulmonary flow resistance, dynamic compliance, static lung volumes and timed vital capacity were determined during an asthmatic attack and repeatedly during recovery until a symptom free status was attained.

During attack pulmonary flow resistance, functional residual capacity and residual volume were increased and dynamic compliance, vital capacity, forced expiratory one second volume and total lung capacity were decreased. A relationship was found between the degree of pulmonary function aberration and the intensity of attack as judged clinically. The functional residual capacity at attack was influenced both by pulmonary flow resistance at attack and by the functional residual capacity at symptom free period. The reduction of forced expiratory one second volume at attack was better correlated to the reduction of vital capacity than to the increase in pulmonary flow

resistance. The reduction of dynamic compliance at attack was correlated to the reduction of vital capacity.

The pulmonary flow resistance returned rapidly to normal values on recovery from attack. The static lung volume and the forced expiratory one second volume reversed at a slower rate, continuing also when the pulmonary flow resistance was normal. At symptom free status the static lung volumes were increased, pulmonary flow resistance was usually normal, dynamic compliance was increased and the forced expiratory one second volume was still decreased. Dynamic compliance and vital capacity had the same relationship as in healthy children through the different stages of disease. Forced expiratory one second volume and pulmonary flow resistance had the same relationship through the different stages of disease but considerably different from the relationship in healthy children insofar as forced expiratory volume always was lower than would be expected if the pulmonary

mongoloids and normals concerning birth weight. The skeletal age in the wrist is advanced in newborn mongoloids compared with newborn normals. Where six or more of the cardinal signs are positive and the picture also otherwise argues for the diagnosis mongolism, i.e. where also other positive signs occur a chromosome investigation, from a diagnostic point of view is not considered necessary.

The chromosome investigation does not give an absolute diagnosis. The diagnosis should be based upon the clinical investigation. A subject resembling mongolism, with trisomy 21-22 and with a normal set of chromosomes in a percentage of the cells (mosaicism) has been shown to have normal intelligence. One must thus take into account the risk that only the aberrant cells are observed at the cytogenetic routine investigation, especially as the frequency of normal cells can vary from tissue to tissue. A chromosome investigation of all uncertain cases, however, should be carried out. No complicated arrangements for sending samples for cytogenetic investigations are required. Of the 43 suspected mongoloids investigated 1/7 1961-30/6 1962 38 proved to be trisomic for a chromosome in the group 21-22 whereas the other 5 had apparently normal chromosomes. The chromosomes were in most instances examined in two tissues, blood and skin. Of the five subjects with normal set of chromosomes three had four of the cardinal signs and in addition two of these proved at age one year to be mentally retarded. These mongolism-resembling subjects, with mental retardation but without signs of chromosome aberration, were called pseudomongoloids.

Fifteen of the 38 mongoloid infants died

during the first year of life, all before age six months. Ten were autopsied, all of whom had cardiac malformation. In seven, ventricular septal defect occurred, and in one or two persistent ostium atrioventriculare commune. The last mentioned malformation is then not thought to be such a dominant heart malformation at mongolism as was earlier imagined. Of the five not autopsied, two had an obvious systolic murmur. Where suspicion of cardiac malformation remained in the 23 surviving at age one year a fresh x ray examination of the heart and an electrocardiogram were made. After this examination, suspicion of heart malformation remained in 3/23 subjects.

All mongoloids follow up investigated at age one year showed signs of mental retardation in varying degrees. It would seem that most signs described in older mongoloids are already present in the newborn mongoloids. Mental retardation, however, cannot be demonstrated, but it must be pointed out that certain signs indicate a depressed CNS function in the newborn mongoloid. The experiences gained at the investigation of the newborn material and of the age one year mongoloids do not suggest that it is much easier to diagnose when the mongoloid has reached age one year. In some cases, the reverse seems to apply.

The present investigation demonstrates a pronounced variation in the phenotype of newborn mongoloids. This agrees with the view of some authors concerning older mongoloids—a view which however has not been altogether accepted in the literature.

Based upon a comparison of the embryonic development of the finger pha-

lages and the phalanx morphology in newborn mongoloids, a hypothesis is presented to explain some aberrations in mongoloids. This hypothesis, delayed em-

brionic development and various possible alternatives to the mechanism giving rise to this process are discussed

Respiratory Studies in Children. VI Mechanics of Breathing Lung Volumes and Ventilatory Capacity in Asthmatic Children from Attack to Symptom Free Status

by INGA ENGSTRÖM

(*Supplement 155*)

Twenty-one asthmatic children between the ages of 6 and 17 years were studied, 11 boys and 10 girls. Pulmonary flow resistance dynamic compliance static lung volumes and timed vital capacity were determined during an asthmatic attack and repeatedly during recovery until a symptom free status was attained.

During attack pulmonary flow resistance functional residual capacity and residual volume were increased and dynamic compliance vital capacity forced expiratory one second volume and total lung capacity were decreased. A relationship was found between the degree of pulmonary function aberration and the intensity of attack as judged clinically. The functional residual capacity at attack was influenced both by pulmonary flow resistance at attack and by the functional residual capacity at symptom free period. The reduction of forced expiratory one second volume at attack was better correlated to the reduction of vital capacity than to the increase in pulmonary flow

resistance. The reduction of dynamic compliance at attack was correlated to the reduction of vital capacity.

The pulmonary flow resistance returned rapidly to normal values on recovery from attack. The static lung volume and the forced expiratory one second volume recovered at a slower rate continuing also when the pulmonary flow resistance was normal. At symptom free status the static lung volumes were increased, pulmonary flow resistance was usually normal dynamic compliance was increased and the forced expiratory one second volume was still decreased. Dynamic compliance and vital capacity had the same relationship as in healthy children through the different stages of disease. Forced expiratory one second volume and pulmonary flow resistance had the same relationship through the different stages of disease but considerably different from the relationship in healthy children insofar as forced expiratory volume at one second was lower than would be expected at the pulmonary

flow resistance found. The relationship between functional residual capacity and pulmonary flow resistance at attack differed from the one at symptom free period. At attack the functional residual capacity increased in relation to the increase in pulmonary flow resistance. At symptom free or almost symptom free status the

pulmonary flow resistance increased when functional residual capacity decreased.

The mechanism at attack, recovery and symptom free period was discussed. Other probabilities than bronchial obstruction for the maintenance of hyperventilation and ventilatory impairment during symptom free periods were suggested.

Nils Rosén von Rosenstein and His Textbook of Paediatrics

edited by BO VAHLQUIST and ARVID WALLGREN

(Supplement 156)

Jubilee-volume celebrating the 200 years anniversary of the publication of Nils Rosén von Rosenstein's famous book *Underrättelser om Barnsjukdomar och deras Bete Medel* in 1764. The volume had the following contents.

Preface by Torgny Segerstedt

The Nils Rosén von Rosenstein Medal
by John Lind

Nils Rosén von Rosenstein, a short Biography by Arvid Wallgren

The Diseases of Children and their Remedies by Bo Vahlquist

Nils Rosén von Rosenstein and Iatromechanics by Anna Lena Pehrsson

Correspondence between Nils Rosén von Rosenstein and Albrecht von Haller by Fredrik Berg

Nils Rosén von Rosenstein.—Biography by Åke Dantler

Glycogenosis Type I (Lack of Glucose 6 Phosphatase) in Four Siblings

by G. BRANTE, K. KALJER and P. A. ÖCKERMAN

(*Supplement 15*)

Four siblings with glycogenosis of type I, three of them studied for more than 10 years, are presented. In two of the patients diagnostic and other biochemical analyses were performed on liver tissue obtained by biopsy. In a third sibling the type diagnosis was tentatively established by analyses on perorally sampled jejunal mucosa. The clinical manifestations, which were mild, are described and the results of biochemical analyses are reported.

This is the first family with type I glycogenosis in which lack of jejunal glucose-6-phosphatase activity, increased liver glucose-6-phosphatase, fructose-6-phos-

phate and fructose 1,6-diphosphate in creased plasma glycerol and increased serum ornithine carbamoyl transferase were demonstrated.

Current knowledge of type I glycogenosis is briefly surveyed. The writers' cases are compared with other published accounts of the same disorder. Theories of the mechanisms underlying the secondary biochemical disturbances are discussed. Speculations are made concerning reasons for variations between different affected families as regards severity of the clinical manifestations of type I glycogenosis.

case. About two thirds of the children had normal or only slightly abnormal EEGs at all recordings. Nearly one third showed at the first recording, low activity which rapidly diminished and which must be considered to be a sequel of the febrile convulsion. The low activity occurred more frequently the longer the convulsion had lasted and was observed in practically all of the children with pathological neurological findings and with allergy. The changes may be regarded as depending upon cerebral hypoxia as the oxygen requirement is increased by pyrexia and the oxygen supply diminishes during a convulsion particularly during the tonic phase, partly on account of respiratory arrest and partly on account of delayed circulation caused by raised intrathoracic pressure. Subsequent convulsions occurred twice as frequently in children in whom the first EEG was abnormal and the incidence of subsequent paroxysmal changes in these children was ten times that in children with normal EEGs. An EEG recorded during the days immediately after a febrile convulsion is thus of certain prognostic value. Nine of the children (scarcely 10%) developed transient paroxysmal changes later and these children differed clearly from the main group in that they showed signs of a tendency to seizures, the majority of them having a familial predisposition to convulsions and the first febrile convulsion occurring after the age of two years. First febrile convulsions are otherwise unusual at this age. Three out of the nine children have since had convulsions later during the hitherto brief period of observation.

DISCUSSION

C. FRIDERICIUSSEN. When the prophylactic administration of antiepileptic drugs to every case of febrile convulsions is under debate, I consider that it is incorrect that the cases in which, on admission, commencing epilepsy may be suspected are not sorted out first. This group comprises the children in whom there is (1) known familial predisposition to epilepsy or (2) focal sei-

zures or (3) the convulsions last for over 20-30 minutes or (4) the immediate treatment has had no effect or (5) the child is over the age of 5-6 years or (6) the convulsions were not associated with pyrexia or (7) where the EEG findings were suspicious. If this group is excluded, only approximately 4% of the remaining cases of febrile convulsions will later manifest themselves as epilepsy. I am of the opinion, therefore, that it is a considerable psychic stress for a mother to have to administer antiepileptic treatment for years and live in fear of possible epilepsy only because a single febrile convulsion has occurred. If the convulsion is repeated the situation is quite different and, in such cases, I would also recommend prophylactic therapy even although in our material from Sundby Hospital, after a period of observation of up to 18 years, no cases of epilepsy occurred in the 55 children who had had repeated febrile convulsions. In his time Jarlev demonstrated that in adult postepileptic alkalosis was present immediately after the convulsions. Now that methods of investigation are so easy would it not be possible to estimate the pH in the blood immediately after an attack and thus obtain a further indication of the diagnosis. — P. PLUM. It is excellent that a controlled therapeutic experiment such as that reported is carried out. We do not consider however that children with febrile convulsions should be treated routinely as epileptics. In the Paediatric Department Rigshospitalet, we record the EEG a few weeks after the first febrile convulsion. We only administer treatment if this EEG is abnormal. If a child has had two or more febrile convulsions, we take prophylactic antiepileptic treatment into consideration. In such cases, we recommend prophylactic medical treatment should pyrexia occur. — J. VESTERDAL. No difficulties are involved in getting the mothers to accept the recommendation that the children require treatment for the "febrile convulsions" provided that the condition is not termed "epilepsy". — BROWN IRELL. From an anaesthesiological point of view the significance of active and

Immediate treatment of the convulsion must be emphasized. The significance of this is illustrated by a case of febrile convulsions in a child aged two years with aspiration of the gastric contents into the respiratory passages, respiratory arrest and probably cardiac arrest. The case was treated with primitive methods of resuscitation. After five hours, complete restitution was obtained. The active anaesthesiological regime includes rapid treatment of the convulsions by intravenous administration of barbiturates and possibly the employment of curare preparations, intubation and artificial respiration. It is necessary to supervise and possibly to assist the respiration in unconscious patients who have insufficient respiration without convulsions. It is equally necessary to do the same in patients in whom the convulsions involve anoxia. The EEG changes may be assessed both on the basis of the underlying cerebral disease and as possible anoxic sequelae which severe cerebral anoxia may produce during the convulsion. It, in addition to the actual cerebral convulsive condition, the blood supply is anoxic on account of obstruction and possible absence of adequate ventilation. The interpretation of the EEGs would probably be facilitated if the patient, as far as possible, received adequate supply of oxygen. The presumption that administration of oxygen should prolong the convulsions is not in agreement with experience from electrostimulation treatment which is carried out with ventilation with pure oxygen and here the duration of the convulsions is not prolonged. Reference is made to Knud Svendsen's work on the treatment of convulsions in an anaesthetic department (*Ugeskr. Læg.* 194 178, 1963). — P. W. BRASTRUP: The trepidations felt in the department concerning the extra work involved by an investigation of this type proved to be fully justified and we are looking forward to its conclusion. On the other hand the preliminary experience has shown that the practical and psychological problems associated with continual administration of tablets to small children are, at any rate, less than we had

predicted. Some uncertainty reigns whether the children really get the tablets prescribed and, at present an attempt is being made to illustrate this more fully. The preliminary accounts have not been able to illustrate with certainty the very important question as to whether the symptoms or investigations at the first convulsion can permit subdivision into special risk groups in view of the prognosis and the requirement of treatment and, similarly the primary question whether anticonvulsive treatment prevents subsequent epilepsy is still unsolved. The final analysis will probably illustrate these questions.

P. W. Brastrup: The sulphonamide concentration in the cerebro-spinal fluid after one oral dose of sulphamethoxypyridazine (Lederkyn®)

Sulphonamides are regarded as the group of bacteriostatic drugs which can pass the blood-C.S.F. barrier with greatest certainty. In order to illustrate this, a standard buffer dose of 100 mg Lederkyn per kg body weight was administered at varying intervals before 100 routine lumbar punctures. The sulphonamide concentration in the CSF and the whole blood was then determined in the Central Laboratory. It was demonstrated graphically that the blood values varied considerably but that, by and large, these were over 10 mg% for at least 36 hours. The values showed great scatter probably on account of administration at varying times of the day and with varying relationships to meals. The average curve for the spinal concentration corresponds to this but considerably lower and values of over 6-7 mg% were only attained in a few cases. During continuous treatment with Lederkyn, CSF values of over 5 mg% are only attained with reasonable certainty when the total blood values are over 20 which corresponds to a 24 hour administration of approximately 30 mg per kg i.e. considerably higher than the normal dosage and the dose recommended by the manufacturers. The few investigations of the sulphonamide

concentration in pathological cerebro-spinal fluids show results which do not differ in principle from the conditions found in normal CSF

DISCUSSION

J KRINGSKJELAND: In the Paediatric Department, The Central Hospital, Nykøbing Falster since October 1958 we have employed Lederkyn as the only sulphonamide preparation in the treatment of purulent meningitis in combination with penicillin and possibly also streptomycin according to the usual rules. Our material comprises 17 cases of purulent meningitis. Thirteen of the patients were aged 8-14 months and the remaining patients were 2, 3, 10 and 12 years of age. Culture from the CSF

revealed meningococci in 5 cases, pneumococci in 3 cases and Pfeiffer's bacilli in 3 cases. In 6 cases, no bacterial growth was obtained. Out of these 6 cases it was probable, according to the history and clinical findings, that 2 were meningococcal, one was pneumococcal, one was suspected to be a Pfeiffer infection and one suffered from *B. coli* sepsis. All 17 cases of purulent meningitis recovered. The dosage employed was twice that recommended by the manufacturers Lederkyn being administered twice per 24 hours instead of once. This double dosage was continued for a week, after which normal dosage was resumed. The results of treatment of purulent meningitis with this sulphonamide preparation are thus absolutely satisfactory.

Meeting November 13 1963

O. Strömberg: Late cases of Werdnig-Hoffmann disease

Three patients with progressive infantile muscular atrophy who had been admitted to the Paediatric Department III Sandby Hospital are reported. The patients were a

of $\frac{1}{2}$ years and two siblings, a girl aged 2 years and a boy of $1\frac{1}{2}$ years. In all three children the diagnosis was verified by abnormal electrocervicographic findings and muscle biopsy which showed neurogenic muscular atrophy. In all three children, the clinical picture was somewhat uncharacteristic as the condition was exclusively localized to the lower limbs and manifested itself in difficulty in walking and the course had been very benign. The symptoms commenced at the age of 6 months, between 8 and 15 months and at 10 months, respectively. The periods of observation since the first admissions were 7, 9 and 4 months, respectively and during this time no progression of the condition has been demonstrated. In the differential diagnosis, chronic peripheral neuropathy was considered but the normal peripheral nerve conduction does not support this.

DISCUSSION

ST. BRANT: There must be cases of Werdnig-Hoffmann disease but the first case at any rate, was not entirely typical. It is not unusual that the disease commences at the ages recorded.

Erna Christensen and J. Vestergaard: A case of Krabbe's disease

The patient a girl, was the daughter of mother aged 45 years. She had five healthy sisters and one healthy brother. There were no similar cases in the family. The birth and early development had been normal. Since the age of five months, marked weakness with generalized muscular atrophy and weak tendon reflexes were observed. At the commencement of the disease, the psychic functions appeared to be normal. The cerebro-spinal fluid was normal. Ophthalmoscopic findings were normal. The creatine phosphokinase in the serum was greatly raised (81.3 units/litre). The EMG suggested myogenic affection or possibly inactive atrophy. In the course of 1-2 months, periodic increase of tone occurred which was, however, difficult to recognize on account of

muscular atrophy and feeding difficulties and dementia developed. The child died at the age of 10 months. At autopsy bronchopneumonia was found as the immediate cause of death.

Examination of the brain showed macroscopic sclerosis of the white matter and patchy detachment of the cortex but no malformations. The spinal medulla had undergone flask-shaped swelling with obliteration of the normal structure and in the thoracic medulla, the central canal was dilated. Histological investigation revealed the typical picture of Krabbe's leukodystrophy with globoid cells in the white matter in the cerebrum, cerebellum and spinal medulla, absent myelination and marked proliferation of astrocytes. No normal oligodendroglial cells were observed. The swollen part of the lumbar medulla proved to be a malformation with three central canals and disorganization of both the grey and white matter. The striped maculature showed diffuse atrophy but no signs of neurogenic atrophy.

The pathogenesis in globoid cell leukodystrophy is mentioned. The most probable explanation is that an enzymatic defect in the oligodendroglial cells is concerned with subsequent defective myelination and formation of the characteristic globoid cells which contain perlipoids. This thus offers a natural explanation of the fact that these patients are clinically healthy at birth and that during the first months, when myelination should normally occur the symptoms of a progressive condition in the central nervous system develop.

DISCUSSION

St. BRANDT: How frequently are changes found in the medulla? — EIRA CHRISTENSEN: I have not observed such changes previously.

O. SERNICKE: A case of diagnosis

The patient was a girl, admitted at the age of scarcely one year to the Paediatric Department of Sundby Hospital. The clinical

picture was dominated by markedly intermittent fever for over seven weeks. The general condition made cerebral lesion suspect during the first 3 weeks and, in addition, an uncharacteristic alternating exanthema and purulent nasal discharge were present for 3-4 weeks accompanied, for a period, by cervical adenitis. After hospitalization for 14 days, the child's condition was extremely poor with respiratory and feeding difficulties and parenteral fluid administration was necessary for five days. Various forms of antibiotic therapy (penicillin, sulphonamide, terramycin and chloramphenicol) were without effect. The child recovered gradually and was discharged completely well after nine weeks in hospital. On out-patient follow-up examination, eight months after discharge the child was completely healthy. No abnormal results were found from the numerous investigations undertaken apart from anaemia and raised ESR. No definite diagnosis was established but the possibility of a rheumatic condition is discussed.

Villy Eriksen: Treatment of oxyuriasis with pyrrinipamonte (Vangum®)

Forty-four children aged 11 years suffering from oxyuriasis were treated with a single dose of pyrrinipamonte (Vangum). Eighty-six per cent were cured and there were no side-effects.

Ruth Schjodt Pedersen: A case of acetyl salicylic acid poisoning

A case of acetyl salicylic acid poisoning in a boy aged 7 years was reported. The child was admitted 1 hour after having consumed 9 g acetyl salicylic acid. The patient presented the typical picture of poisoning with severe disturbances in the neutrality regulation and relatively high serum salicylic acid concentration. Despite this, the clinical course was milder than in the cases previously described in Denmark. The symptoms disappeared in about 48 hours following treatment with abundant amounts of isotonic saline, 5% glucose, vitamin K and ascorbic acid.

DISCUSSION

P W BRANSTUP mentioned a fatal case of acetyl salicylic acid poisoning in a child aged 2 years with pneumonia. — A lively discussion (C FRIDENKROHN, P W BRANSTUP, J KRINGSLEACH, S. BRANDT, O STRICKER, H ZACHAU-CHRISTENSEN, TORVEN IVERSEN) ensued about the suitability of administration of acetyl salicylic acid to infants and small children and the participants were unanimous that acetyl salicylic acid should preferably not be administered in this age group but, if administered, the dosage should not exceed 50 mg/kg/24 hours. Further the principles of treatment of poisoning were discussed. — ERMA CHRISTENSEN It is singular that the clinical picture of acetyl salicylic acid poisoning has been recognized for 30 years but that as far as I am aware, no reports of autopsy findings in these patients are available as yet. Dr Inge Tygstrup and I have each investigated a case and found toxic liver damage together with changes in the erythrocytes in the white matter similar to those seen in patients with liver coma.

O Strimcks and B Zachau-Christiansen
Poisoning of children with tranquillizers

On the basis of the cases of poisoning described in the literature the symptoms of poisoning which occur after ingestion of phenitiazine and chlorpromazine preparations were first mentioned. Thereafter the authors own cases, a total of 6 children, were mentioned. Four of these had been admitted to the Children's Hospital, Fuglebakkens after

ingestion of chlorpromazine (Proxil) and two to the Paediatric Department of Sundby Hospital after poisoning with chlorpromazine (Truxal). The children, four girls and two boys, were aged between 11 months and 4 years. Serious symptoms were present in only two of the children in the form of loss of consciousness and convulsions. One of these children died 18 hours after ingestion of an apparently slight quantity of chlorpromazine. The remaining four children were remote and drowsy and one was unconscious for some hours but without convulsions. Finally the treatment was discussed and the value of emptying of the stomach was emphasized even long after the ingestion of the poison on account of the prolonged disintegration time of the tablets in the stomach. The employment of emetics is recommended. On account of the mode of action of these tranquillizers, it must be considered, further whether barbiturates are the correct anti-convulsive drugs in cases of poisoning such as these.

DISCUSSION

S BRANDT emphasized that the practitioner prescribing such a preparation should draw the patient's attention to the fact that the drug must be kept out of reach of children. — E THAMSTUP thought that a special mechanism of closure on the medicine bottle should be devised. — P W BRANSTUP recommended that every medicine cupboard should contain charcoal tablets.

Torben Iversen, Copenhagen

Swedish Pediatric Society

Meeting November 29 and 30 1963

Hugo Andersson, Ingrid Hagna, Barbro Jönsson and Ingemar Pettersén. Electroencephalography in Subdural Effusions in Infancy

EEG was pathological before operation in all of 17 cases of subdural effusions. In ten of these marked asymmetries in delta and theta-activity were registered, in three the basic rhythm was depressed and three others showed paroxysmal activity (one later developed hyperhythmia) and one case showed "electrical silence". Postoperatively 10 out of 17 had normal EEG. These patients were healthy. Four of six patients who were not cured had pathological EEG before and after operation, three had paroxysmal activities and one "electrical silence".

R. Tunell, L. G. Allén, B. Jalling and B. Persson. Risks of Intoxication with Vitamin A in Infants

Five cases of chronic vitamin A intoxication in children between 3 and 5 months of age are described. They received between 17,500 and 60,000 IU vitamin A per day in water-soluble form for one to two months and became acutely ill with anorexia, hyperirritation, (tender edema over the occiput) and a bulging fontanelle (a sign of increased intracranial pressure). Three patients had lamellous desquamation on palms and feet. X-ray of hands and feet revealed broadened and deformed metaphyseal ends and decalcified cranium. Seven-thirty days after the last dose the serum concentration of vitamin A was between 400 and 700 IU/ml (normal values do not exceed 200 IU at these ages). Follow-up examination of three cases 2-6½ years later revealed no pathological changes. Healthy children were given 7500 IU or 2500 IU of water soluble vitamin A from birth to three to five months of age. Those who received the lower dosage had a serum

fasting value of serum-vitamin A (0 ± 54 IU/100 ml) which was statistically lower than the values in those who received the higher dosage (mean value 95 ± 43 IU/100 ml). Three children on the higher dose had fasting values between 185 and 200 IU but none had any sign of vitamin A intoxication. Five healthy children received 22,500 IU vitamin A in a single dose; four hours later the serum level was between 350 and 750 IU/100 ml.

The results indicate that a daily dose of water soluble vitamin A should be 2500-3000 IU which corresponds to current practice in many other countries. The Swedish Medical Board will recommend this dosage for routine administration to healthy children.

DIAGNOSIS OF INTOXICATION IN CHILDREN

H. Fyhring. It is questionable if all patients poisoned with petroleum products should be intubated at gastric lavage. Before intubation a general anesthesia should be given which carries a risk of vomiting. Emetic drugs may provoke vomiting when the patient is somnolent or unconscious and thus bear a risk of aspiration of gastric content.

B. Hagberg, A. Hamfelt and O. Hansson. Case with B-Dependency Syndrome and Impaired Tryptophan-Metabolism

Girl born in 1959 has had infantile spasms since 8 months of age. At 18 months EEG showed hyperhythmia. Therapy with ACTH and anticonvulsants was of no benefit. The girl was slightly tactile and deteriorated mentally. At age of 3 years, therapy with vitamin B₆ was started and followed by rapid psychomotor improvement during the following year. The serum content of pyridoxal-phosphate and urinary excretion of

xanthine acid after tryptophane loading during and without vitamin B therapy were studied.

A E Roch Nordlund, J Bergström and E. Hultman: Muscle Glycogen in Juvenile Diabetes before and during Treatment with Insulin

Preceding reports on the contents of muscle glycogen in living man have shown great variety. According to the results published by Sherlock *et al.* (1949) there is, however, no obvious difference in muscle glycogen between normal individuals and diabetic patients. Using a new technique of needle biopsy introduced by J Bergström, the present authors have estimated the muscle glycogen contents of 78 normal individuals. Muscle biopsies were taken from m. quadriceps femoris. In normal individuals the mean value of muscle glycogen was found to be 1.35 g per 100 g wet muscle. The normal range of this investigation was 1.0 g to 2.0 g per 100 g wet muscle weight. Muscle glycogen content was determined in 10 patients aged 3 to 15 years with juvenile diabetes. Eight of them had had no previous treatment and 2 had been on insulin for 6 months. Muscle biopsies were taken and immediately followed by an injection of fast acting insulin. The mean value of the patients' muscular glycogen was 0.50 g per 100 g wet muscle before treatment, ranging between 0.33 g and 0.90 g per 100 g wet muscle. In seven cases, control biopsies were made 1 to 3 days after insulin administration. All these cases showed a significant increase in muscle glycogen, in five cases to normal and in two cases almost within normal limits. In nine of the patients muscle biopsy was repeated when their diabetes was under control. In 11 of these cases the values for muscle glycogen were within normal range.

P A Öckerman: Glycogen Storage Disease in Sweden. Critical Evaluation of the Diagnosis

Of 26 Swedish cases, diagnosed as glycogen storage disease 21 were investigated

with biochemical and enzymatic diagnostic methods. Only 5 cases were shown to be glycogen storage disease. In 12 cases all known types of glycogenosis could be excluded. Three cases could not be analyzed in detail. The results of the biochemical and enzymatic analyses are correlated to the clinical symptoms and signs and to the histopathological appearance. Clinical and histopathological investigation tends to result in more cases of glycogen storage disease than can be verified by biochemical and enzymatic methods. Some cases that had been called glycogen storage disease in spite of atypical clinical traits, might have hitherto unknown hereditary disorders.

F Karlström: Gastric Ulcer in Children

A total of 184 children under 15 years of age with peptic ulcer received treatment at pediatric medical departments in Sweden during the years 1953-1962. In most cases (168) the diagnosis was confirmed by radiographic demonstration of a crater. The relation between children with peptic ulcer and their parent treated at the pediatric departments was 4.4:10,000. There has been no increase or decrease in the number of children with peptic ulcer. The disease appears to be commoner in the cities than in rural districts, but is equally distributed in different parts of Sweden. In general, the incidence increases with increasing age. The disease was commoner in boys (66%) than girls (34%). Duodenal ulcer accounted for 85% of the cases, gastric ulcer for 14%, and combined duodenal and gastric ulcer for 1%. Ulceration in Meckel's diverticulum showed many of the same features as ulceration in the stomach and duodenum. A positive family history was present in 47% of the cases. Most of these children were of normal height but thin, suggesting a leptosomatic habitus. The commonest symptoms were hunger pains, sour eructations or pyrosis, and vomiting attacks. Bloody vomit was recorded in 31 and blood-streaked stools in 5 cases. Medical treatment was used in 169 children and surgical treatment in 12.

Two children died during the neonatal period. Follow-up investigation of 64 cases after 5-10 years observation showed that 71% of those who had been medically treated were either symptom-free or improved, and 19% were worse. Of those treated surgically 8 had been under observation for 5-10 years, and 5 of them were symptom-free or improved while 1 considered that no improvement had occurred. Taking into account the surgically treated cases in which the observation period was less than 5 years, 11 patients reported freedom from symptoms or improvement and 1 no change in his condition. Although the series does not justify any definite conclusions from this comparison between medically and surgically treated patients, the figures would appear to indicate that operative treatment might be used more extensively than has hitherto been the case.

O. Colander: Indirect Blood Gas Analysis through Gastrotonometry

Oxygen, carbon dioxide and nitrogen deposited in the gastric ventricle equilibrate with the blood gases. These can thus be studied by continuous analyzing inflated gas mixtures. Some results in normal children and in states of hypoxia and hyperoxia were reported.

Leena Angerall Oras Eeg-Olofsson and Jøken Sævi-Söderbergh. Skin Biopsy in Diabetic Children

Skin biopsy was performed in 28 diabetic children without clinical signs of retinopathy, nephropathy or neuropathy as well as in 11 controls of similar age. The diabetics also underwent EEG and EMG examinations and their ulnar and peroneal nerve conduction velocity was estimated. The biopsy specimens were punched out from the skin on the dorsal aspect of the foot. After fixation in Bouin solution, embedment, sectioning and staining (van Gieson-hematoxylin, elastin, Masson-PAS) the specimens were blind coded and examined by two of

the authors. A grading system was used for assessing among other things the thickness of capillary walls and sweat-gland basement membranes. In addition the thickness of sweat-gland basement membranes was measured with vernier calipers on photomicrographs with a total enlargement of about 1500 times. Whereas there were no differences in the thickness of capillary walls and sweat-gland membranes between diabetics and controls under 10 years of age, diabetics over 10 exhibited somewhat thicker sweat-gland membranes than controls. Moreover 7 of the latter group as compared to one control had thickened capillaries. Of 5 children with the thickest sweat-gland basement membranes, onset of diabetes was near puberty. Average nerve conduction velocity was lower in diabetics than in controls, with slow conduction more common in diabetic children with thickened sweat-gland membranes. Some diabetics exhibited signs of slight damage to peripheral neurones. The results indicate that diabetic microangiopathy and thickening of the basement membranes of the sweat glands can occur in children over 10 with short duration of diabetes. This could mean that puberty is of pathogenetic significance.

C. G. Bergstrand, J. Gents and B. Lindblad. Pediatric Viewpoints on Kidney Biopsy

The results of 78 percutaneous kidney biopsies on 64 children and adolescents during the period 1957-63 were analysed. The indications and complications of this technique were determined. In the great majority of punctures the chief indication was to determine the diagnosis, and in a smaller number to evaluate the prognosis. The patients were divided into two groups: those with acute and chronic glomerulonephritis, and those with hematuria and proteinuria of unknown origin. Histological examination of the biopsy confirmed the diagnosis in the great majority of the former but failed to explain the symptom-picture in the latter group.

Meeting January 17 1964

J. Pejters and I. Silvertalpe Trial Therapy with Immune-globulin in Cases of Infectious Mononucleosis

Treatment was carried out with gamma globulin from patient convalescing from this disease with positive Paul Bunnell and Davidsohn's absorption tests. The convalescent blood was obtained between 7-30 days after subsidence of the fever. The fractionated gamma-globulin was dispensed in a 12% solution in 0.3 molar glycerol in distilled water with pH 7.0 and merthiolate 1/10,000 employed as a preservative. The immune-globulin was administered as a deep intramuscular injection in single doses of 8 ml. corresponding to 400 ml whole blood, regardless of the patient's age and body weight. The material consists of 56 cases, with an equal number of controls, and is made up of 42 seropositive and 14 seronegative cases in the group under treatment and 43 seropositive and 13 seronegative cases in the control group. All patients received penicillin as a prophylactic against secondary infections. The sedimentation rate, temperature, serology and the appearance of atypical cells in the peripheral blood were observed. No difference was detected between the treated and the control groups. It seems possible that a larger dose of immune-globulin might have produced a different result.

Birgit Skoldenberg Serous Meningoencephalitis in Cases of Infection with Positive Cold Agglutination Tests

In Stockholm City Hospital for Infectious Diseases during the period January 1962-June 1963 there were 126 patients (69 women, 57 men) with cold agglutination positive infection. Of these eight (two women, six men) had serous meningoencephalitis or meningitis. Six of the eight cases were in the 5-29-year age-group (totalling 75 of the patients), and belonged to the 73 who became ill during the period October 1962-February 1963. Obvious encephalitic symptoms were present in three of the eight

patients (a 14-year-old girl and 7 and 8-year-old boys). The boys had severe giddiness and vomiting with changes in position. These three patients had only mild upper respiratory symptoms. Besides pneumonia, two cases also had a febrile mucocutaneous syndrome. Two cases had right-side upper lobar pneumonia; pharyngitis and tracheitis occurred in one case. Five of the patients had more than a quadruple increase in cold agglutination, while the three remaining patients had titers of 16-16, 256-256 and 128-neg. neg. Enterovirus could not be demonstrated. One case (with cold agglutination 128, neg-neg) had neutralising antibodies against ECHO 3 without an increase in titer. The patient's wife also had serous meningitis; she had ECHO 3 in feces and neutralising antibodies against ECHO 3 with increase in titer. Parotitis was excluded clinically, epidemiologically and in five of the eight cases, also serologically. Infection from tick-borne virus was excluded, as it was not that season. The time connection between cold agglutination positive infection and serous meningoencephalitis or meningitis in the eight cases constitutes no conclusive evidence of an etiological connection. As a result of future attempts to isolate mycoplasmas in blood and cerebrospinal fluid, as well as at post-mortem, it may be possible to establish the etiological connection.

J. Ström Winkler Syndrome

Will be published in *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 53 1964

E. Bengtsson and H. Nordenström Eosinophilic Leukemia

Eosinophilic reactions occur briefly in cases of typhoid leukemia. Genuine cases of eosinophilic leukemia are however rare but they have been reported in Scandinavia by Thomsen, Nordlander as well as Engfeldt & Zetterström. The latter prefer the description "disseminated eosinophilic collagen disease to eosinophilic leukemia. There is

some obscurity regarding the classification of the disease. The differential diagnosis appears to be mainly with leukemoid eosinophilia.

Case report A 5-year-old boy presented with nasal pharyngitis and regional cervical adenitis, and after two weeks developed a picture suggestive of mononucleosis with generalized lymphadenopathy and hepatosplenomegaly. Blood count showed leucocytosis with typical lymphocytes dominating. After one week the eosinophils increased from 0.3 % to more than 40 %. Lymph node biopsy showed fibrous tissue with a large number of lymphatic, but also a fair number of eosinophilic cells. Sternal puncture revealed primarily eosinophils. It was of particular interest that the complement fixation test for toxoplasmosis in the 2nd, 4th, and 8th weeks showed values of 1/30, 1/120 and 1/480, the dye-test was 1/250, 1/1250 and 1/6250 respectively. The antipeurolysin titer: 1600, 1600 and 17 600 respectively. The patient died after 8 weeks of rapidly progressing illness. Post-mortem examination revealed immature myeloid cells, mainly eosinophilic leucocytes of varying degrees of immaturity infiltrating different organs,

such as the bone marrow, thymus, lymph glands, spleen, liver, kidneys, lungs and myocardium.

L. O. Kargsten: Infectious Mononucleosis with Long-standing Acquired Hemolytic Anemia

A survey of literature shows that 24 of 37 cases of infectious mononucleosis with acquired, hemolytic anemia, recovered spontaneously within few weeks. The remaining three cases were splenectomized within three months after onset of disease.

A case of infectious mononucleosis with auto-immune, acquired, hemolytic anemia of eight months duration is reported. A positive direct Coombs reaction occurred, which had previously been noted in 11 of 21 patients. The prolonged course of the acquired, hemolytic anemia of this case is unique, suggesting a possible underlying congenital defect of the erythrocytes, in spite of normal hemoglobin-electrophoresis, activity of glucose-6-phosphatodehydrogenase etc. No previous case of persistent acquired, hemolytic anemia has been described.

Meeting February 14 1964

J. Houshek, Prague (guest-lecturer): School Health Activities in Czechoslovakia

B. Valquist: Enforcement of the Central Organization for Health Supervision of Children and Adolescents

Meeting March 11 1964

Panel Discussion of Renal Tubular Defects

J. WYSS: Disturbances of the Acid Base Regulation and of the Water Reabsorption.

R. ZETTERSTRÖM: General Aspects on Pathological Conditions of the Renal Tubuli.

R. ZETTERSTRÖM: Neurogenous Diabetes Insipidus.

L. HAMMARSTRÖM: Aminoaciduria.

J. GUST: Gluco-aminoaciduria.

Meeting April 4 1964

Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia

P. KARLBERG, H. BELFRAH AND O. EKO-OLOFSSON: Clinical Aspects.

O. ARNEN: Pathology

E. LYCKE AND O. STRANWEGGÅRD: Microbiology

your own country as well as abroad by virtue of your personal qualities.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosén von Rosenstein medal.

Professor Arvo Hippä

You are legendary among pediatricians. In 1914 you carried out your first important scientific studies in Berlin and during half a century a period that at times has meant much of suffering and struggle for your country you have been a brilliant leader in pediatrics. The famous clinic in Helsinki where your distinguished pupils are now working is fine evidence of this. The clinic and the tradition you have founded have proved that even a small country far from the great thoroughfares may reach fame in the scientific world through outstanding contributions by individual workers.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosén von Rosenstein medal.

Professor Arvid Wallgren

Many years ago you were a student at Uppsala, and here you took the degree of Doctor of Medicine. During the nearly 5 decades that have passed since then you have been a pioneer in both clinical pediatrics and its related fields such as social medicine. And your name is as renowned in foreign lands as in our own. You have founded a school, and today all the professors of pediatrics at the Swedish universities are directly or indirectly pupils of yours. All of us respect you warmly for your personal qualities, and we admire you for your contributions to our specialty. No other Swedish doctor since Rosén von Rosenstein a day has so brilliantly as you represented pediatrics.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosén von Rosenstein medal.

Finally I would on this occasion quote a few words from Arvid Wallgren biography

of Rosén von Rosenstein in our memorial book:

Without doubt Nils Rosén von Rosenstein occupies a very prominent place among the great men of Sweden. The lustre he spread over our country still glows and we pediatricians owe him great gratitude. We endorse with all our heart the hope that was expressed by the American pediatrician and medical historian John Rubenik in an oration in the Cathedral of Uppsala in 1930 to the memory of Nils Rosén, 'that the spirit that animated the Father of Pediatrics in Sweden should forever remain among its modern practitioners around the world'.

The Swedish Pediatric Society has also conferred the Rosén medal on Professor Robert Debré, then on a mission to Canada. Professor Arvid Wallgren at a meeting of the Executive Board of the International Children's Center in Paris June 11 1964, on behalf of the Society delivered the medal and the jubilee volume with the following words:

"Il y a deux semaines l'Université d'Upsal et la Société de Pédiatrie Suédoise ont célébré le deux centième anniversaire de la publication du 'Traité de Pédiatrie' du Professeur Nils Rosén von Rosenstein. Ce livre a joué un rôle éminent dans le développement de la pédiatrie non seulement de notre pays mais de toute l'Europe contemporaine. Il été publié en 3 langues et a paru dans une vingtaine d'éditions. A l'occasion de cet anniversaire, l'Université et la Société de Pédiatrie ont publié un livre de jubilé et la Société de Pédiatrie a inauguré une médaille de Rosén. La Société m'a chargé de transmettre ce livre de jubilé et la médaille de Rosén à vous Monsieur Debré, et de vous présenter ma profonde admiration et mon témoignage au Maître de la Pédiatrie européenne. Nulle personne vivante n'a fait autant que vous pour l'amélioration de la santé des enfants et pour le développement de la pédiatrie mondiale par vos travaux scientifiques et votre activité comme Président du Centre International de l'Enfance

The jubilee-meeting of the Swedish Pediatric Society took place at the University Hospital where the first Rosén lectures were held:

A. Wallgren (Stockholm) Rosén on Rosenstein Biography

C. Faxälv (Zürich) Familiäre konstitutionelle Panmyelopathie.

C. Janeway (Boston) The Problem of Immunological Deficiency

At the same meeting Dr. E. M. Papper, Professor of Anesthesiology at the Columbia University, New York, read a paper on The Effect of Drugs on the Fetus and Newborn.

BOOK REVIEWS

A. W. Wilkinson (ed.): Recent Advances in Paediatric Surgery

Churchill Ltd., London, 1963. 300 pp. 50s.

"This book should help postgraduates working in the field of paediatrics, general surgeons dealing with children, and the specialist paediatric surgeon, to evaluate recent developments on a broader front than is possible from the most detailed review of current practice in a single hospital."

Ten contributors, 8 of which from The Hospital for Sick Children at Great Ormond Street, London, cover a great deal of debated problems in paediatric surgery. Prof. A. W. Wilkinson, the editor, is through his many publications on metabolic problems including fluid-electrolyte disturbances the leading name in that field. Other contributors are also well known experts. Even if the advances are not exactly recent the book is recommended. As a progress in clinical publication of this type is noted, chapter on clinical genetics, a field of increasing interest

A. O. Ericsson Stockholm

W. Tönis and G. Friedman Das Röntgenbild des Schädels bei intrakranieller Drucksteigerung im Wachstumsalter

107 pp. Springer Verlag 1964. Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg. Price DM 58.—

This book is the result of a roentgenologic study of the signs and symptoms of intracranial hypertension in 676 patients less than 20 years of age. Its primary aim is to determine the value of conventional roentgenography of the skull in the detection of the presence of intracranial hypertension and evaluation of its cause. About three-fourths of the patients had intracranial tumors. In the remainder the etiology was diverse and included non-tumorous stenosis of the aqueduct and foramen of Magendie, tuberculous meningitis, abscess of the brain, encephalitis and craniosynostosis.

In the introductory chapter the roentgen findings in normal skulls of growing individuals are described and the measurement criteria are defined. This section is followed by an account of the roentgen manifestations of intracranial hypertension, detailing their individual relationships to the location,

your own country as well as abroad by virtue of your personal qualities.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosen von Rosenstein medal.

Professor Arvo Ylppö

You are legendary among pediatricians! In 1914 you carried out your first important scientific studies in Berlin, and during half a century a period that at times has meant much of suffering and struggle for your country you have been a brilliant leader in pediatrics. The famous clinic in Helsinki where your distinguished pupils are now working is fine evidence of this. The clinic and the tradition you have founded have proved that even a small country far from the great thoroughfares may reach fame in the scientific world through outstanding contributions by individual workers.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosen von Rosenstein medal.

Professor Arvid Wallgren,

Many years ago you were a student at Uppsala, and here you took the degree of Doctor of Medicine. During the nearly 5 decades that have passed since then you have been a pioneer in both clinical pediatrics and its related fields such as social medicine. And your name is as renowned in foreign lands as in our own. You have founded a school, and today all the professors of pediatrics at the Swedish universities are, directly or indirectly pupils of yours. All of us respect you warmly for your personal qualities, and we admire you for your contributions to our specialty. No other Swedish doctor since Rosen von Rosenstein's day has so brilliantly as you represented pediatrics.

The Swedish Pediatric Society is honoured to confer on you the Rosen von Rosenstein medal.

Finally I would on this occasion quote a few words from Arvid Wallgren's biography

of Rosen von Rosenstein in our memorial book.

"Without doubt Nils Rosen von Rosenstein occupies a very prominent place among the great men of Sweden. The love he spread over our country still glows and we pediatricians owe him great gratitude. We endorse with all our heart the hope that was expressed by the American pediatrician and medical historian John Ruhrah in an oration in the Cathedral of Uppsala in 1920 to the memory of Nils Rosen, 'that the spirit that animated the Father of Pediatrics in Sweden should forever remain among its modern practitioners around the world'.

The Swedish Pediatric Society has also conferred the Rosen medal on Professor Robert Debré, then on a mission to Canada. Professor Arvid Wallgren at a meeting of the Executive Board of the International Children's Center in Paris June 11, 1964, on behalf of the Society delivered the medal and the jubilee volume with the following words:

"Il y a deux semaines l'Université d'Upsal et la Société de Pédiatrie Suédoise ont célébré le deux centième anniversaire de la publication du *Traité de Pédiatrie* du Professeur Nils Rosen von Rosenstein. Ce livre a joué un rôle éminent dans le développement de la pédiatrie non seulement de notre pays mais de toute l'Europe contemporaine. Il a été publié en 8 langues et a paru dans une vingtaine d'éditions. A l'occasion de cet anniversaire l'Université et la Société de Pédiatrie ont publié un livre de jubilé et la Société de Pédiatrie a inauguré une médaille de Rosen. La Société s'en charge de transmettre ce livre de jubilé et la médaille de Rosen à vous, Monsieur Debré, et de vous présenter sa profonde admiration et son témoignage au Maître de la Pédiatrie européenne. Nulle personne vivante n'a fait autant que vous pour l'amélioration de la santé des enfants et pour le développement de la pédiatrie mondiale par vos travaux scientifiques et votre activité comme Président du Centre International de l'Enfance.

The jubilee-meeting of the Swedish Pediatric Society took place at the University Hospital where the first Rosen lectures were held: A. Wallgren (Stockholm) Rosen von Rosenstein Biography
 G. Faxälv (Zürich) Familiäre konstitutionelle Panmyelopathie

C. Janssen (Basel): The Problem of Immunological Deficiency

At the same meeting Dr E. W. Papper, Professor of Anesthesiology at the Columbia University New York read paper on The Effect of Drugs on the Fetus and Newborn.

BOOK REVIEWS

A. W. Wilkinson (ed.) Recent Advances in Paediatric Surgery

Churchill Ltd., London, 1963 300 pp 50s.

"This book should help postgraduates working in the field of paediatrics, general surgeons dealing with children, and the specialist paediatric surgeon, to evaluate recent developments on a broader front than is possible from the most detailed review of current practice in a single hospital.

Ten contributors, 8 of which from The Hospital for Sick Children at Great Ormond Street, London, cover a great deal of debated problems in paediatric surgery. Prof. A. W. Wilkinson, the editor is through his many publications on metabolic problems including fluid-electrolyte disturbances the leading name in that field. Other contributors are also well-known experts. Even if all advances are not exactly recent the book is recommended. As a progress in a clinical publication of this type is noted chapter on clinical genetics, a field of increasing interest

N. B. Ericsson Stockholm

W. Tjarks and G. Friedman Das Röntgenbild des Schädels bei intrakranieller Druckerhöhung im Wachstumsalter

107 pp. Springer Verlag 1964, Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg Price DM 58 —

This book is the result of a roentgenologic study of the signs and symptoms of intracranial hypertension in 625 patients less than 20 years of age. Its primary aim is to determine the value of conventional roentgenography of the skull in the detection of the presence of intracranial hypertension and evaluation of its cause. About three-fourths of the patients had intracranial tumors. In the remainder the etiology was diverse and included non tumorous stenosis of the aqueduct and foramen of Magendie, tuberculous meningitis, abscess of the brain, encephalitis and craniospinaemia.

In the introductory chapter the roentgen findings in normal skulls of growing individuals are described and the measurement criteria are defined. This section is followed by an account of the roentgen manifestations of intracranial hypertension, detailing their individual relationships to the location.

type and time of appearance of the pertinent intracranial disorders. Emphasis is given to those findings which enable an early diagnosis to be established. The final section deals with the postoperative roentgen appearance of the skull. The illustrations are invariably instructive and deserve high praise for their quality. The list of references is extensive and up to date. In the reviewer's opinion this book is an important contribution and is warmly recommended.

Ulf Rudke, Stockholm

H. L. Vis Aspects et Mécanismes des Hyperaminoaciduries de l'Enfance Recherches sur le Kwashiorkor le Rachitisme commun et le Scorbut. Preface by R. Dubois. Summary in English

Éditions Arscia S.A., Brussels, 1963, 325 pp
Price Fr B 540

According to the author "The main purpose of the work was to define the free amino acids in urine plasma and striated muscle of children and to investigate the pathogenesis of the hyperaminoacidurias in three deficiency diseases, kwashiorkor, rickets and scurvy. Standard methods were used, free amino acids being determined by the chromatographic methods of Moore & Stein, 1954, and of Spackman, Moore & Stein, 1956.

The absolute amount of urinary free amino nitrogen increased regularly until puberty. The amino acid pattern varied somewhat according to age. In children between 9 months and 2 years of age (20 cases) glycine, histidine, glutamine, alanine, serine, lysine, 1-methylhistidine, taurine, threonine and β -aminobutyric acid amounted to 87% of the total amino acids, the other amino acids were present only in small amounts. In children between 4 and 6 years of age (7 cases) the excretion of 3-methylhistidine, taurine, cystine and glycine increased more than the excretion of other amino acids, a change which was still more obvious in children between 8 and 10 years (5 cases). The amino acid pattern in the urine of these older children resembled that observed in adults.

The concentration of amino acids in

plasma of children between 9 months and 2 years of age (20 cases) was generally lower than reported for adults, especially the concentration of cystine, glutamic acid and glutamine.

The pattern of free amino acids of striated muscle was different in children (4 cases) and adults (2 cases). The most striking difference was a higher level of taurine and a lower level of glutamine in the children.

The hyperaminoaciduria was very marked in rickets, only moderate in scurvy and latent in kwashiorkor where it appeared only when alimentary protein was given. In all three conditions there was an almost uniform increase in the excretion of the amino acids constituting 87% of the physiological aminoaciduria. However there was a proportionally low excretion of taurine in rickets, and a notably high excretion of taurine and β -aminobutyric acid in kwashiorkor and of β -aminobutyric acid, proline and hydroxyproline in scurvy. The large quantities of taurine in urine plasma and muscle of the children suffering from kwashiorkor was thought to be due to an accelerated conversion of the sulfur amino acids into taurine or to a slowing of the decarboxylation of the latter. The presence of free proline and hydroxyproline in scurvy indicated an alteration in the metabolism of connective tissues. The excess excretion of β -aminobutyric acid depended on an increased catabolism of DNA and on a slowing of cellular mitosis.

In all the deficiency conditions studied the aminoacidurias were thought to depend mainly on disturbances in the intracellular osmotic pressure and to cellular intolerance of a few amino acids. On the basis of these conclusions the author proposes a new classification of aminoacidurias into four types: Hyperaminoacidurias due to electroosmotic disturbances (1) tubulopathy (2) renal overflow (3) and congenital metabolic blocks (4). Conditions belonging to the fourth type are summarized in a surveyable table.

The book which contains a comprehensive and thorough review (291 references) of the literature is wholeheartedly recommended as a most useful source of information for those who are interested in this field.

Rudolf Jagenberg Gothenburg

From the Department of Child Health, The University of Sheffield, England

Salicylate Poisoning: The Diagnosis when Its Possibility is Denied by the Parents

by DOUGLAS PICKERING

When a child is found to be in coma, a variety of causes have to be considered. One of these is poisoning. The diagnosis of poisoning is apt to be discarded if the possibility is persistently denied by the parents, and the results of the mistake are likely to be disastrous. The following three cases illustrate the point.

Case 1

O. U., aged 1½ years, was admitted to a peripheral hospital with a history of cough for 24 hours, and rapid deep respirations for 3 hours. There was no history of poisoning. On physical examination, she was pale and mildly dehydrated. Her temperature was 36°C. Her pulse was 126 per minute. Her respiratory rate was 30/min. The breath smelled of acetone. No other abnormality was noticed. The urine revealed a trace of reducing substances. Rothemba test showed

large quantity of acetone. Her electrolytes were—sodium 145 mEq/l, potassium 3.4 mEq/l, chloride 121 mEq/l, bicarbonate 9.7 mEq/l, blood sugar 334 mg%. On the basis of these findings, diagnosis of diabetic ketosis was made. This was treated with intravenous 1/6 sodium lactate 100 ml/hour. She was given 1 mega unit of crystalline penicillin, a gastric tube was placed in position and aspirated hourly. She was given soluble insulin 10 unit subcutaneously and 10 units intravenously. Four hours later her respirations were improving. She

was awake and taking notice of her surroundings. Her urine, however, showed no change from the above values, and so the dose of insulin was repeated. One hour later however she had become comatose, flushed and sweating. She was thought to be hypoglycaemic, and 25 ml of 50% glucose were given intravenously. There was a slight improvement in her condition. Her electrolytes were repeated, and showed sodium 155 mEq/l, potassium 2.0 mEq/l, chloride 112 mEq/l, bicarbonate 22 mEq/l, blood sugar 110 mg%. Her urine showed no reducing substances and there was only trace of acetone. Over the following hour she progressively deteriorated and died despite oxygen and 1 ml of intramuscular Nifedipine.

The following day, under direct questioning, the mother recalled that on the evening prior to admission, she had found the child playing with a bottle containing aspirin tablets. The bottle (which was not in fact an aspirin bottle) was usually kept in the top drawer of the sideboard, and the children would have seen it put there on previous occasions. She said she was not certain whether the child had swallowed any tablets, but she gave the child salt water in an unsuccessful attempt to induce vomiting. Salicylate levels were estimated on a sample of blood taken on admission, and the blood salicylate level was found to be 81 mg%. Post mortem findings confirmed the cause of death as cerebral oedema due to salicylate poisoning.

Case 2

R. O., aged 6 years, was admitted with a history of cough for 48 hours, and rapid respirations for 2 hours. Half-an hour prior to admission, she had awakened looking very ill, and had become "stiff" and did not respond to her mother's calls. She was seen by her family doctor who noticed her limbs to be twitching slightly and referred her to hospital. On admission she was stuporose, with slight jerking movements of both arms. Her temperature was 39°C. There was a tachycardia of 160 per/min. The blood pressure was 100/48. The respirations were rapid and deep. Her complexion was pale, her lips were cyanosed, and the pupils tightly contracted. After they had been dilated with atropine the eye grounds were found to be normal. The tongue was pale and dry and there was tenacious brown mucus over the fauces. Mild dehydration was present. Examination of the central nervous system showed generalised hypotonia and absent reflexes. On auscultation of the chest, some fine rales were heard over the left base. The patient was catheterised; the urine was clear there were no reducing substances, but acetone was present in large amounts. The urine was tested for salicylates, despite the history that not more than two tablets of junior aspirin had been ingested. The salicylate test was strongly positive. While this investigation was being carried out the patient became comatose. She was treated as a case of aspirin intoxication, and was given 1½ lactic acid intravenously. She improved initially. Her breathing became less acidotic in type. She vomited altered blood twice. After receiving 180 ml of fluid intravenously she had a generalised convulsion and died. She had received the following drugs in hospital: on admission paraldehyde 2 ml, penicillin 1 million units intramuscularly and hydrocortisone 25 mg intramuscularly. The cerebrospinal fluid was normal apart from a slightly raised protein of 40 mg%. A specimen of blood taken when she was admitted revealed sodium 162 mEq/l, potassium 7 mEq/l, blood urea 78 mg%, carbon dioxide 13.9 volumes%, serum salicylate

53 mg%. Post-mortem analysis of the tissues showed that the body contained between 2 and 3 g of aspirin. The parents continued to maintain that it was impossible that the child could have obtained more than 2 junior aspirin tablets. (A junior aspirin contains ½ mg of aspirin.)

Case 3

L. E. M., aged 2 years, was admitted to a peripheral hospital, with a history of being off colour for 2 days, vomiting for 12 hours, and having a progressive increase in the depth of respirations for 3 hours. Physical examination revealed no abnormality. Chest x ray was normal. Her serum electrolytes were sodium 122 mEq/l, potassium 4.6 mEq/l, bicarbonate 5 mEq/l, chloride 103 mEq/l, blood urea 70 mg%, blood sugar 300 mg%. In her urine there were no reducing substances, but large quantities of acetone. A diagnosis of diabetic ketoacidosis was made, and she was given 20 units of soluble insulin. Her blood sugar fell to 35 mg% and she had a convulsion. A lumbar puncture was performed, which revealed a C.S.F. containing no cells, protein 30 mg%, chloride 746 mg%, sugar 44 mg%. An infusion of 5% dextrose saline was commenced. Twelve hours later she had a further convulsion. Her blood sugar had fallen to 40 mg%. Her electrolytes were sodium 122 mEq/l, potassium 4 mEq/l, bicarbonate 11 mEq/l, chloride 103 mEq/l, blood urea 48 mg%, serum calcium 6.6 mg%. She was given calcium gluconate intravenously as the convulsion was thought to have been due to hypocalcaemia. At this point advice was sought from the Department of Child Health, at the Children's Hospital, Sheffield. It was suggested that she might have salicylate poisoning and that a history of this specifically should be asked. It was stated that the child might have been given 2 adult aspirin tablets (5 mg each) but that the girl could not have obtained any more, because the bottle was on a shelf out of reach of the child. It was suggested that she should be transferred to the Children's Hospital as a possible case of salicylate poisoning in spite of the

above story she was transferred, and the blood salicylate level was found to be 50 mg %. The child was flushed and appeared febrile. Her temperature was 38.5°C. She was well hydrated. She responded to painful stimuli. Her pulse was 144 per minute. Examination of the chest revealed widespread rales and rhonchi over both lungfields. Her abdomen revealed no abnormality. Examination of the central nervous system showed no other abnormality. She was treated with 10% dextrose saline containing 1.36% sodium bicarbonate and 200,000 units of penicillin 6 hourly. After 600 ml had been given she had regained full consciousness, and was able to take fluids by mouth. She was given sodium bicarbonate 0.3 g t.i.d.s. Twenty-four hours later she was up and about in the ward, and two days after admission she was discharged home fit and well.

Discussion

In all cases the diagnosis was rendered difficult by the parents' denial of the possibility of salicylate poisoning. An additional difficulty was the finding of a high blood sugar and the presence of acetone in the urine, suggesting the possibility of diabetic coma. The high blood sugar may be caused by the action of salicylates in blocking certain of the later stages in glucose metabolism. Fatty acid catabolism takes place and ketone bodies are formed. The urine may give a positive result with Benedict's test, either because of a true glycosuria or because of the weakly reducing action of the excreted form of the salicyl group. The violet colour in the urine after adding ferric chloride due to the breakdown products of salicylates, can be confused with the pure burgundy red produced by aceto-acetic acid. Rothera's test is negative unless a genuine ketosis had developed—as it may do as a result of the disturbance of carbohydrate and fat metabolism []

The clinical diagnosis should be suspected when a child presents with unexplained overventilation. The absence of sugar in the urine or the presence of only a small amount of reducing substance should alert one to the diagnosis. The diagnosis is confirmed by estimating the serum salicylate level.

It is interesting to speculate as to the reasons for the parents' denial of the possibility of salicylate poisoning. The parents may deny it because they are genuinely ignorant of the fact that the child has ingested the poison. This may be a reflection of their lack of care in their storage of medicines. They may deny it because they do not want to recognise the true diagnosis, feeling guilty about the matter. They may deny the fact because they realise the possible legal implications—either in their being accused of neglect and carelessness or of actually poisoning the child.

A simple screening test for salicylate poisoning has recently been described [1]. This should be used when there is any possibility of the child's symptoms being due to salicylates.

Summary

When a child passes into coma the possibility of poisoning should be considered, even though it is denied by the parents. The presence of overventilation should suggest the possibility of salicylate poisoning. The confusing finding of a high blood sugar is mentioned. Three cases of salicylate poisoning are described. In all cases the possibility of poisoning was denied by the parents. The possible reasons for the parents' denial were discussed.

Acknowledgements

I should like to thank Professor R. S. Illingworth and Dr O. C. Harvey for allowing

me to publish their cases. I am also indebted to Professor Illingworth for his suggestions and help in the preparation of the manuscript.

References

1. JOHNSON P. H., FREE, H. M. and FREE, A. H.: Simple screening for alkylates with phenyleth. *J Pediatr*, 63 949 1963.

2. TACKETT, P. V.: Salkylism. *Amer J Dis Child* 63 234 1963.

Department of Child Health
The Children's Hospital
Western Bank
Sheffield
England

Submitted Feb 25, 1964
Accepted March 22, 1964

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head, Jørgen Flåmmand Christensen)
and the Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics (Head, Jens Jacobsen),
Odense County and City Hospital, Denmark

Disturbances of Hydrogen Ion Balance Occurring in Premature Infants

I *Early Types of Acidosis*

by POUL KILDEBERG

For many years it has been a universally accepted, though rather lonesome truth that the acid base parameters of newborn infants differ to the acid side as compared with those of normal adults. Without questioning the existence of frank acidosis in the neonatal period recent writers have proposed the view that healthy newborn infants are not acidotic *sensu stricto* but normally adjusted to lower levels of blood pH and bicarbonate concentration, possibly reflecting a relative acidosis of the maternal environment during gestation [24-33].

Again, when compared with term infants the acid base level of newborn prematures is generally considered to be displaced farther down the pH scale and evidence in support of this has been published by several authors [5-22-33]. However in view of the increased incidence of perinatal complications associated with premature birth and the possibility of a corresponding rise in the number of acid base derangements it might be anticipated that paradoxically more definite knowledge of the nature, causes, and in-

evidence of such disturbances might help to clarify further a concept of normo-acidity in premature infants. During the studies reported here it became possible to define several entities of acid base derangement in a group of premature infants and from the acid base point of view to add one quality to the rather ill-defined term 'healthy premature'.

Case Material

Four hundred and eighty two determinations of the acid base status were made in 128 infants with birth weight (BW) < 2500 g, treated at the Obstetric and Pediatric Departments of the Odense County and City Hospital during the period May 1st 1961-October 1st, 1963. These 128 premature infants represent 31% of the total number of prematures seen at these departments during the past two and a half years. Twenty six infants had a BW < 1800 g, the mean BW for the whole case material being 1854 g.

Infants weighing less than 1800 g were preferably treated in incubator. Oral feedings with glucose in water were started 24-48 hours after birth, depending on the BW. Fifty-four infants showed completely normal clinical perinatal course, 47 surviving

prematures suffered more or less severe complications while 27 infants died before a weight of 2500 g was reached. Twenty-two infants were asphyctic at birth. In 19 typical "respiratory distress" was noted during the first days of life.

Random selection of cases for study was not attempted. Likewise, blood samples were not drawn at regular intervals from all infants studied throughout the stay in hospital. In 38 prematures only one or two determinations were made at different times after birth.

Methods

Using capillary blood obtained by heel prick, determinations of the acid base status were carried out by means of the Astrup micro equipment [1, 23]. Measurements of the actual pH were made in duplicate and double equilibrations were performed at both high (appr. 60 mm Hg) and low (appr. 30 mm Hg) CO tensions. By the "base excess" (BE) is indicated, in mEq/l the three table base or acid (negative values) of the blood (end point pH 7.40 at $p\text{CO}_2$ 40 mm Hg).

Correction of the $p\text{CO}_2$ values for subnormal oxygen saturations were not made. Under ordinary circumstances, the error involved herein is not serious, but in cyanotic and anoxic neonates it may become very considerable ($p\text{CO}_2$ values too low by 10–40%). However because the present approach involves primarily a comparison of different groups of cyanotic and of different groups of non-cyanotic infants the data will still permit of certain conclusions.

Measurements of blood lactic acid concentrations were made by the method of Horn & Bruns [12] using the Boehringer test-set.

Results

Fig 1 shows the results of 243 determinations of the acid base status made in 102 premature infants aged 0–7 days. The hexagon indicates the normal range for term infants as computed from acid base

measurements undertaken in 60 normal infants during the first week of life. It is seen that this range fits the values obtained from healthy prematures rather closely the main difference lying in the more frequent occurrence of high $p\text{CO}_2$ values following premature birth, and it would appear that the metabolic acid base characteristics of less than one week old, healthy prematures conform to those of normal term infants,—at any rate when healthy refers retrospectively to an uncomplicated course throughout the perinatal period. A mean BE of -2.60 mEq/l ($s = 0.343$) and a mean $p\text{CO}_2$ of 37.7 mm Hg ($s = 1.173$) were computed from 68 determinations of the acid base status made in 36 healthy premature infants (mean BW 1866 g) during the first week of life (open circles of Fig 1) the corresponding values for the term infants being -1.94 mEq/l ($s = 0.238$) and 35.4 mm Hg ($s = 0.489$) respectively. These sample means are not particularly suited for statistical comparison but the observed differences between premature and full-term neonates are at any rate not significant. For the BE values the difference is not significant at the 0.1 level ($t = 1.568$ $t_{0.1} = 1.657$ 127 degrees of freedom). Some values falling within the normal range were obtained from infants who later died. These deaths mostly resulted from congenital diseases, i.e. cardiac cerebral, and other malformations.

The figure further demonstrates that severe disturbances of hydrogen ion homeostasis occur frequently in premature neonates, the typical disturbance being one of combined—i.e. respiratory and metabolic—acidosis. A combined acidosis is essentially an uncompensated disturbance

The figure further demonstrates that severe disturbances of hydrogen ion homeostasis occur frequently in premature neonates, the typical disturbance being one of combined—i.e. respiratory and metabolic—acidosis. A combined acidosis is essentially an uncompensated disturbance

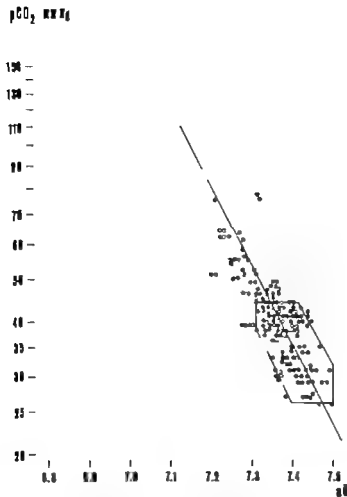


Fig. 1 Result of 243 determinations of the acid-base status undertaken in 102 premature infants during the first week of life

○ Acid-base values of infants who either had completely uncomplicated perinatal clinical course or went through minor difficulties (slight distress, single short cyanotic episodes, moderate icterus). ● Acid-base values of surviving preterm infants who suffered more or less severe complications (intrauterine or extrauterine asphyxia, atelectases, respiratory distress, dysmaturity brain damage, severe icterus) or diseases (erythroblastosis, malformations et.). ● Acid-base values of infants who died before weight of 2500 g was reached.

The hexagon indicates the normal range ($\bar{x} \pm 2s$) for term infants as computed from values obtained from 90 normal infants aged 1-7 days: Mean base excess (BE), $\bar{x} = -1.94$ mEq/l standard deviation, -2.31 standard error of the mean, $s_2 = 0.228$. Mean pCO_2 , $\bar{x} = 34.4$ mm Hg -4.64 , $s_2 = 0.459$. Mean pH, $\bar{x} = 7.403$, 0.0168 , $s_2 = 0.00494$. The normal CO_2 absorption line corresponding to hemoglobin concentration of 20 g/100 ml is shown.

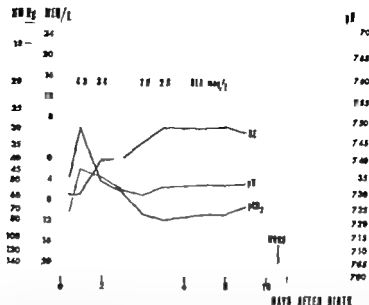


Fig. 2. Course of acid base parameters in a small male premature weighing approximately 800 g O 1669 G.-53. Apart from mild initial asphyxia, the infant kept normal colours through the first 30 hours of life. Subsequently cyanotic attacks became frequent. Moderate edema was noted but did not increase and the diuresis appeared satisfactory. On the 3rd day serum Na was 156 mEq/l and serum K 5.3 mEq/l. On the 8th day urine Na was 108 mEq/l and urine K 1.8 mEq/l.

Treatment: Incubator oxygen, glucose solution, 5-10%, intravenously human albumin, 40%, 45 cc intravenously in the course of the first 4 days. A tapeworm was not performed. (BLA: Blood lactic acid.)

tending to produce very low pH levels. The lowest pH value found in a living infant was 6.68 the lowest figure obtained from a surviving infant being 6.89. It is seen that in infants with pCO_2 values less than about 70 mm Hg the metabolic component is usually moderate while still higher pCO_2 levels are accompanied by rapidly increasing metabolic acidosis. Furthermore a fairly good correlation was found between the severity of the acid base disturbance and the clinical course. During the second and following weeks of life the pattern of acid base pathology tends to change somewhat this change being largely due to a more frequent occurrence of isolated metabolic acidosis [16].

From a closer study of these observations emerged the classification of acid base disturbances associated with premature birth used in this and a following report [16]. The incidence of the different types of disturbance in the present case material probably gives some idea of the relative frequencies, but the selection of cases for study allows no statements concerning the true prevalence of these abnormalities in premature infants.

Respiratory acidosis (10 cases) was occasionally observed during the first 4 hours of life or in the early stages of respiratory difficulties, but in nearly all cases of protracted hypoxia metabolic acidosis supervened. However respiratory acidosis of several days duration was observed in

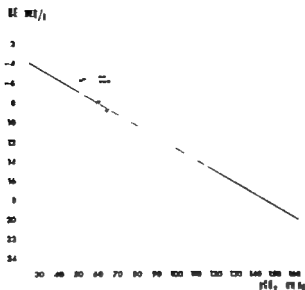


Fig. 3. Regression of base excess (BE) on $p\text{CO}_2$. Forty-eight determinations of the acid-base status made in 29 premature infants with combined neonatal acidosis.

$$\text{BE} = -1.02 - 0.116 \text{ } p\text{CO}_2 - 0.73, \quad P < 0.001$$

two very small prematures weighing 990 and 800 g respectively (Fig. 2). No explanation of this apparent difference from the response seen in older premature infants was found. It is tempting to conclude from the data of Fig. 2 that in this 26-29-week-old fetus the renal response to an elevated $p\text{CO}_2$ level was well developed. In one infant weighing only 750 g who died three days after birth, mild combined acidosis was present during the first 48 hours. The last sample taken showed an almost normal acid base status (Fig. 5a).

The combined respiratory and metabolic acidosis (29 cases) was found to be the most characteristic and most frequently occurring disturbance of neutrality regulation. Although it may be present at any time during the first two weeks, the more severe cases were largely confined to the

first days of life. In asphyxiated newborn infants combined acidosis of more or less severe degree was an almost obligatory finding and, conversely severe combined acidosis was invariably associated with cyanosis and poor respiration. A highly characteristic feature of this acidosis was the rapid fluctuations occurring in the BE as well as in the respiratory component (Fig. 6b-c). As mentioned above the metabolic acidosis appeared to be in some way correlated to the development of hyaline membrane disease. A total of 48 determinations of the acid base status were made in 20 patients with combined acidosis, and correlation analysis on these data (Fig. 3) proved the BE and $p\text{CO}_2$ values to be strongly and significantly correlated -0.73 ($t > 7$, $p_{0.001} = 3.52$).

The above relationships, the very nature of the combined acidosis, its variability

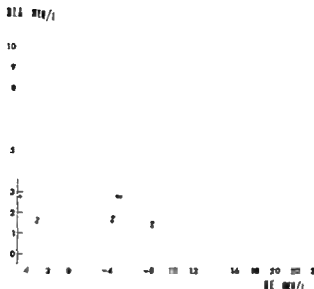


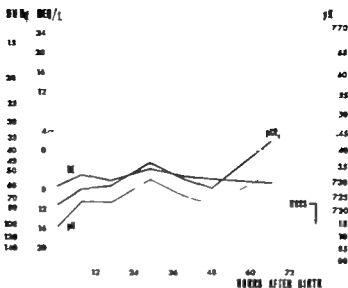
Fig. 4. Fifty-nine determinations of the blood lactic acid concentration (BLA) in 30 premature with early neonatal acidosis.

as well as its correlation to the age and clinical condition of the patients classify this particular disturbance as one measurable manifestation of neonatal asphyxia, caused, in the newborn, by severe depression of the alveolar ventilation. Following intrauterine asphyxia, both components of the acidosis may be present at birth.

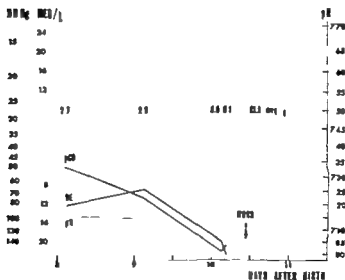
Because of the association between the pCO_2 level and the degree of metabolic acidosis and earlier reports on increased blood levels and urinary losses of organic acids in newborn infants [3 5 8 9 21] determinations of the blood lactic acid (BLA) were made in a number of acidotic infants in an attempt to elucidate a possible contribution of anaerobiosis to the accumulation of non volatile acids. Fifty nine determinations of the BLA were carried out in 30 infants with neonatal acidosis of varying degree. While BLA/BE (Fig. 4) and BLA/ pCO_2 plots failed to

show any correlation of the BLA level to mild and moderate degrees of acidosis, severe, life-threatening acidosis was constantly accompanied by a considerable increase in the BLA. Even under such circumstances, however, the increase in BLA could account for not more than about one third the acid excess present (Fig. 4 and 5B). Nevertheless, these results, the strong correlation between the respiratory and metabolic components of the acidosis, and the occurrence of rapid fluctuations in the BE level unquestionably favours the view that the early metabolic acidosis is a secondary phenomenon, at least in part due to the accumulation of combustible organic acids during hypoxia. However an internal redistribution of H^+ between the cellular and extracellular compartments may be another possibility deserving of consideration, of discussion p. 514.

Unfortunately the lack of correction for subnormal oxygen saturations does not



A



B

Fig. 8. Cases of combined acidosis. A, Premature girl weighing 700 g. O 1482/81-82. X asphyxia or respiratory distress. Treatment: Incubator oxygen, glucose. Autopsy: Lungs well aerated; cerebrum and adrenal glands appeared normal. Histologic examination of the umbilical cord showed signs of intrauterine infection. B, Premature girl weighing 1940 g J 461/82-83. Admitted 7 days old with story of meconium-stained amniotic fluid, neonatal asphyxia, and persisting respiratory difficulties. Chest roentgenograms and postmortem examination showed severe atelectasis.

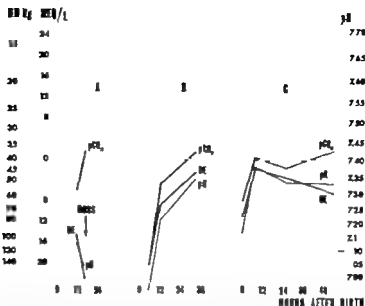


Fig. 6. Types of early acid base disturbance. A, Premature male infant, birth weight 1800 g. J 864/81-82. Cried and breathed normally at birth. Subsequently severe respiratory distress developed. B, Premature female infant, birth weight 1600 g. O 789/81-82. Asphyctic at birth (Apgar score 6 1 one minute). Incubator oxygen. Rapid clinical improvement. C, Premature female infant, birth weight 1600 g. O 869/81-82. Normal delivery and uncomplicated course through the first 24 hours. During the second day diarrhea and beginning metabolic acidosis supervened.

permit of exact classification of borderline pCO₂ values in cyanotic patients. However, during the study of the acid base values of these premature infants it became clear that in a certain group of acidotic infants the pCO₂ values sometimes fell short of the correlation to the BE values discussed in the foregoing, i.e. the disturbance presented as a *predominantly metabolic acidosis* (Fig 6A and 7). It is seen in Fig 7 that following a brief initial phase of combined acidosis the BE remains low through 24 hours in spite of an apparently normal pCO₂ level, a situation different from those depicted in Fig 5A-B and 6B-C. Metabolic acidosis of this type was observed in 10 premature infants in 8 of whom a diagnosis of "respiratory distress" could be made. Of the remaining two patients

one had only slight acidosis, and one died two days old from severe cardiac malformation. In such distressed and acidotic infants heavy cyanosis of the blood in the presence of an apparently normal pCO₂ was observed frequently.

Several mechanisms require consideration when attempts are made to account for the development of predominantly metabolic acidosis in cyanotic patients. Large veno-arterial shunts, uneven distribution of pulmonary ventilation/perfusion ratios [6] as well as diminished pulmonary diffusion capacity ("alveolo-capillary block syndrome of Austrian *et al* [1]) might contribute to the development of hypoxia without significant CO₂ retention. Whereas studies in the respiratory physiology of prematures with respiratory distress [15

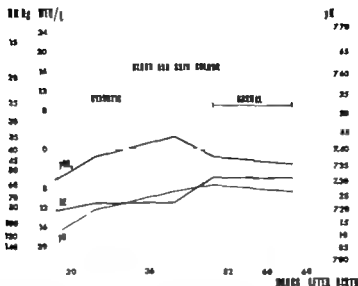


Fig. 7. Predominantly metabolic acidosis in premature male infant, birth weight 1850 g., pH 7.35/61–62. Delivered by Caesarean section (placenta previa), cried and breathed normally within one minute. Typical respiratory distress developed. Treatment: incubator oxygen, Aleveir[®] glucose

25, 31] seem to bear out the significance of RL-shunts and ventilation/perfusion inequalities, evidence concerning the resistance to diffusion in respiratory distress is scant and indirect. From a histopathologic point of view an "alveolo-capillary block" might be expected to equvalate physiologically the increased alveolo-capillary distance.

In the case of low or decreasing pCO_2 values in the presence of profound acidosis and hypoxia (Fig 6A), a fourth possibility may be considered. A normal and steady pCO_2 reflects a perfect balance between net CO_2 production and pulmonary CO_2 excretion, and pronounced anaerobiosis might be expected to disturb this equilibrium by causing a temporary decrease in the total cellular output of CO_2 , opposing the hypercapnia or even causing the pCO_2 to fall.

Finally it is to be emphasized that

several infants with a typical respiratory distress syndrome suffered severe combined acidosis especially during the early phases of the illness which probably reflects the contribution of atelectasis and hypoventilation to the oxygen debt.

A late metabolic acidosis occurring in apparently healthy prematures during the second and following weeks of life as well as acid-base disturbances related to complicating diseases will be the subject of another report [16].

Discussion

The results obtained have been considered in some detail in the preceding section; only a few points shall need further comment. It is evident from the data reported here that presence or absence of a special anaerobic metabolic set-up is not required to explain the small if not insigni-

nificant difference between the metabolic acid base status of healthy premature and term infants. Any such difference appears to be one of degree rather than of kind. It is by now well established [4 14, present investigation] that asphyxia of some duration will lead to metabolic acidosis, whether or not due to anaerobic glycolysis, in prematures as well as in term infants. Accordingly the greater incidence of complicated deliveries and asphyctic insults associated with premature birth will necessarily influence crude averages of BE in such a way that newborn premature infants turn out to be acidotic as compared with term infants. Likewise if a comparison is made in 2-3 week-old infants the late metabolic acidosis [10] may be expected to disturb the results. In the present investigation, segregation of the cases under study according to simple clinical criteria brought the mean BE of 'healthy' premature and term infants very close together—in fact within the limits of statistical significance.

Considering the metabolic acidosis of asphyctic neonates, it is to be emphasized that a main feature of this disturbance is its complete reversibility upon proper oxygenation of the tissues. Accumulation of combustible organic acids has generally been held responsible for the relative acidosis of newborn infants [5 21 33 36] but surprisingly little evidence is available concerning infants in actually asphyctic states. Eastman & Molano [7] showed excess lactic acid in the blood of newborn asphyctic infants to be of fetal origin, but a quantitative comparison of the "anaerobiosis" as estimated from the amount of organic acids present in blood and urine and the metabolic acid base

status of such infants has not been published. Like those of Vedra & Urych [20] the results of the BLA determinations undertaken in the present study do not lend much support to a concept of "anaerobic acidosis" as the sole cause of the low BF values regularly found in asphyctic premature infants. They rather suggest accumulation of LA to be a terminal phenomenon. Obviously acids other than lactic may be involved too, but the lack of correlation between the BE and BLA in infants whose acidosis is not very severe seems to disavow this possibility as the full explanation. In an attempt to explain the metabolic acidosis observed in asphyctic adults [11] Weisbrot *et al.* [32] mention the possibility of a shift of H^+ from cells to plasma due to hypercapnia and suggest that such a mechanism might also apply to the acidosis of newborn infants. The demonstration of predominantly metabolic acidosis in prematures with respiratory distress in the present study would seem to speak against an elevated pCO_2 as the cause of such internal redistribution of hydrogen ions. As shown in experiments by Siggaard Andersen [23] and others, *in vivo* CO_2 absorption lines differ a little from the corresponding *in vitro* ones, but the observed difference can only account for slight reduction of the BE during *in vivo* hypercapnia. In 1922 Warburg [30] showed intra and extracellular H^+ of the blood to be distributed according to the red cell membrane potential. Depolarization of the cell surfaces during profound hypoxia might result in cellular hydrogen ions leaking into the plasma and it would appear that hypoxia rather than hypercapnia is a likely cause of such shift.

The reversibility of the neonatal meta

bolic acidosis raises therapeutical problems. Obviously "titration" of acidotic premature infants with sodium bicarbonate as recommended by Hutchison *et al* [13] and by Usher [26-27] involves grave risks of overcorrection and alkalosis, which offers a complete analogue to the overcorrection of diabetic acidosis discussed by Møller [19]. In infants with reduced alveolar ventilation, i.e. limited capacity for pulmonary CO_2 excretion, very large doses of bicarbonate are required to neutralize the blood or extracellular compartment and overloading with sodium and fluid as well as aggravation of the impending hypoxia constitute further drawbacks of which anyone intending to treat premature with concentrated bicarbonate solutions should be aware.

Conclusions

1 During the first postnatal week, the metabolic acid base status of prema-

ture infants having a completely normal perinatal clinical course appears not to differ significantly from that of normal term infants

2 In premature newborns (as in term infants) asphyxia of some duration leads to reversible metabolic acidosis. In asphyxia due to hypoventilation a combined respiratory and metabolic acidosis results. In such cases the base excess and pCO_2 values are strongly correlated.

3 In some infants with "respiratory distress" the disturbance takes the form of a predominantly metabolic acidosis.

4 The metabolic acidosis appears to be a direct consequence of the hypoxia. Accumulation of combustible organic acids (chiefly lactic) contributes to the acidosis in the terminal phases of asphyxia but other factors must be primarily responsible e.g. a loss of cellular H^+ to the plasma.

References

1. ASTRUP P, JØRGENSEN K., BOGAARD-ANDERSEN, O and ENGEL, K. The acid base metabolism. A new approach. *The Lancet* 1 1623, 1960.
2. AUSTRIAN R, McCLENNETT J H, REYNOLDS, A D JR., DONALD K W, RILEY R L and COCKYARD, A J. The syndrome of alveolar-capillary block. *Amer J Med*, 11 647 1951.
3. BELL, W B., CUNNINGHAM, L. and JOWETT M J. The metabolism and acidity of the foetal tissues and fluids. *Br J Med J* 1 176, 1978.
4. BLUSTAD W. Blood gas determinations on premature infants. II. Investigations of premature infants with early neonatal dyspnea (The hyaline membrane syndrome). *Acta Paediat (Scand)*, 43 103, 1956.
5. BLACK D. W B. Acid base balance in premature infants. *J Clin Invest* 31 101 194...
6. CONROCK, J H., J. FORSTER, R E, DUBOW, A B., BRISCOE, W A and CARLSON, E. *The Lung Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* The Year Book Publishers, Inc., Chicago 1958.
7. EASTMAN X J and McLANE, C M. The lactic acid content of umbilical cord blood under various conditions. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp*, 45 261 1921.
8. GYÖRÖY P, BEKKER, T and BRAND M. Über Stoffwechselregulierungskosten des wachsenden Organismus. *Jahrb Kinderheilk* 115 178, 1978.
9. HENDRICKS, C H. Studies on lactic acid metabolism in pregnancy and labor. *Amer J Obst Gyn*, 72 49, 1957.
10. HOAG, L A. and KIRK, W H J. Acid-base equilibrium of newborn infant. *Amer J Dis Child* 41 1084 1921.
11. HOLAD T D A., MA, H and PAPPER, E M. The immediate effects of respiratory depression on acid-base balance in anesthetized man. *J Clin Invest*, 36 11 1 1957.
12. HORN H D and BAUM, F H. Quantita-

- tive Bestimmung von $14(+)$ Milchsaure mit Milchsäuredehydrogenase. *Biochim Biophys Acta*, 21 378, 1958.
12. HUTCHINSON J. H., KERR, M. M., McPHEIL, M. F. M., DOUGLAS, T. A., SMITH, G. NORMAN J. N. and HARRIS, E. H. Studies in the treatment of the pulmonary syndrome of the newborn. *The Lancet*, II 445, 1962.
 14. JAMES, L. S., WHEBROU I. M., PRINCE, C. E. HOLADAY D. A. and ANDER, V. J. The acid base status of human infants in relation to birth asphyxia and the onset of respiration. *J Pediatr*, 52 379 1958.
 15. KARLBERG P., COOK, C. D. O'BRIEN D. CHERRY RUTH B. and STERN, C. A. Studies of respiratory physiology in the newborn infant. II. Observations during and after respiratory distress. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 51 ppl 199 1962.
 16. KILDEBERG P. Disturbances of hydrogen ion balance occurring in premature infants. II. Late metabolic acidosis. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 53 517 1964.
 17. McBRIDE, A. and BRANNING, W. E. Spontaneous acidosis in premature infants. *J Pediatr*, 20 549 1942.
 18. MARPLES, E. and LIPPARD V. W. J. Acid base balance of newborn infants. *Amer J Dis Child*, 44 31, 1952
 19. MOLLER, H. The hydrogen ion concentration in arterial blood. A clinical study of patients with diabetes mellitus and diseases of the kidneys, lungs, and heart. *Acta Med Scand*, 165, B ppl 245 1960
 20. NELSON N. M. PROCTOR, L. B. CHERRY RUTH B. LIPPERT, P. J. and SMITH, C. A. Pulmonary function in the newborn infant. II. Perfusion—estimation by analysis of the arterial-alveolar carbon dioxide difference. *Pediatrics*, 20 876 1962.
 21. RIMM, C. E. Über einige Neugeborenenprobleme. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 28 290, 1941
 22. REARDON H. B. GRAHAM, B. D. WILSON J. L. BAUMANN M. L., TRAO, M. U. and MURAYAMA, M. Studies of acid base equilibria in premature infants. *Pediatrics*, 6 753, 1940.
 23. STIGAARD-ANDERSEN O. The acid-base status of the blood. *Scand J clin Lab Invest*, 16, B ppl 70 1963
 24. SMITH, G. A. *The Physiology of the Newborn Infant*. Blackwell Sci. Publ. Oxford 1959, 3rd ed.
 25. STRAND, L. B. and MACLENNAN, M. H. Ventilatory failure and right-to-left shunt in newborn infants with respiratory distress. *Pediatrics*, 28 17 1961
 26. UHLEN, R. H. The respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity. Clinical and theoretical aspects. *Pediat Clin N Amer* 8 64, 1961
 27. UHLEN, R. H. The metabolic changes in respiratory distress syndrome of prematurity seen as a failure of somatic compensations for asphyxia. In *Oxide Fractionation Symposium on Somatic Stability the Young Born*. Ed. G. E. W. Wolstenholme and M. O'Connor Churchill, London 1961
 28. VEDRA, B. Acidosis and anaerobiosis in full term infants. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)*, 38 90, 1959
 29. VEDRA, B. and ULRYCH, J. J. Anaerobiosis is normal and asphyxiated premature newborns. *Acta Paediat (Stockh)* 49 125 1960.
 30. WARBURG, E. Carboxylic acid compounds and hydrogen ion activities in blood and salt solutions. A contribution to the theory of the equation of L. J. Henderson and K. A. Hasselbalch. *Biochem J* 16 183, 1922.
 31. WARLEY M. A. and GARDNER, D. Respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn—Principles in treatment. *Arch Dis Child*, 37 453, 1962.
 32. WHEBROU I. M., JAMES, L. S., PRINCE, C. E., HOLADAY D. A. and ANDER, V. J. Acid base homeostasis of the newborn infant during the first 24 hours of life. *J Pediatr* 6, 393, 1958.
 33. WILSON J. L., REARDON H. B. and M. SATAMA, M. Anaerobic metabolism in the newborn infant. I. On the resistance of the fetus and newborn to oxygen lack. *Pediatrics*, 1 581 1948.
 34. LIPPERT, A. J. Neugeborenen-Hunger und Intoxikationsreaktion in ihren Beziehungen zueinander. *Kinderheilk* 16 258, 1916.
 35. ÖRTENGREN A. A comparative investigation of the concentration of certain electrolytes in maternal and cord blood. *Acta Paediat Fenn*, 1 3 ppl 4 1954-65.

Submitted Febr 7 1964

Accepted Febr 28, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Odense County and City Hospital
Odense
Denmark

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head: Jørgen Flåm and Christensen)
and the Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics (Head: Jens Jacobsen),
Odense County and City Hospital, Denmark

Disturbances of Hydrogen Ion Balance Occurring in Premature Infants

II Late Metabolic Acidosis

by POUL KILDEBERG

Testing selected functions of the infantile kidney and using several different bases of comparison, a number of authors have shown renal performance in the newborn infant to be "immature" and in several respects inefficient as compared with that of adult individuals [2-19]. As to the neutrality regulating functions of the premature kidney the available evidence is limited. In their study Tudvad *et al* [20] found the maximum rate of bicarbonate reabsorption in healthy premature infants to be comparable to that of adults. Gordon *et al* [5] from ammonium chloride tolerance experiments, concluded that the renal production of ammonia is deficient in premature infants, while Rubin *et al* [17] by feeding CaCl_2 to a group of prematures demonstrated such a deficiency only in the smaller infants (approx 1500 g). The relatively small amount of titratable acid excreted in the urine of newborn infants appears to be related to the amount of buffer substance excreted rather than to a deficient secretion of H^+ [14].

However as pointed out by McCance &

Widdowson [13], the results of such studies should be considered in the light of the general homeostatic mechanisms i.e. related to the job the kidneys actually have to do, and attention has been drawn by the same authors to the significance in this respect of the particular anabolic situation of the infantile organism. Thus, another and possibly more physiologic approach to the evaluation of renal functioning in the newborn infant which also takes into account the functional variability often observed in prematures, would consist in searching such infants for signs of renal inadequacies (in terms of adult standards) and next solving the more difficult problem of assessing the physiologic or pathologic significance of such inadequacies, i.e. establishing true normal standards for renal performance in infancy.

In the present paper a type of late metabolic acidosis occurring in some premature infants will be described and examined with a view to the possible role played by the renal tubular functions in the production of the disturbance.

TABLE 1 *Clinical data of 12 premature infants with late primary metabolic acidosis.*

Oral feedings have been initiated 24-48 hours after birth. From the beginning of the second week, the formula in question has been administered in an amount corresponding to 200 g/kg body weight/24 hours.

| N | Sex | Weight (in g) | | | Diet | Delivery and neonatal period | Minimum base excess recorded (Age in days) |
|----|-----|---------------|---------|----------|---------------|--|--|
| | | At birth | 7th day | 14th day | | | |
| 1 | ♀ | 1700 | 1650 | 1620 | Mammyan® | Normal | -2.0 mEq/l (7) |
| 2 | ♂ | 1700 | 1700 | 1800 | — | Meconium-stained amniotic fluid, N extra-uterine asphyxia | -9.5 — (10) |
| 3 | ♂ | 1800 | 1800 | 1700 | — | Normal | -11.1 — (12) |
| 4 | ♂ | 1800 | 1825 | 1830 | CM + W (50 %) | Normal | -7.3 — (22) |
| 5 | ♀ | 1850 | ? | 1820 | Mammyan® | Breech delivery Serum bilirubin concentration on the 6th day 20 mg/100 ml | -24.8 — (17) |
| 6 | ♀ | 2100 | 2080 | 2065 | — | Normal | -8.9 — (16) |
| 7 | ♀ | 2200 | 2270 | 2400 | — | Normal delivery Short convulsive episode on the 2nd day | -8.0 — (7) |
| 8 | ♂ | 2200 | 2170 | 2150 | CM + W (50 %) | Slight transient cyanosis | -10.5 — (12) |
| 9 | ♂ | 2200 | 2100 | 2165 | Mammyan® | Slight intra-uterine asphyxia. Breech delivery The infant appeared healthy | -7.0 — (11) |
| 10 | ♂ | 2270 | 2200 | 2200 | CM + W (50 %) | Delivery normal. Mild respiratory distress | -12.2 — (17) |
| 11 | ♂ | 2075 | 2270 | 2400 | — | Normal | -14.5 — (19) |
| 12 | ♀ | 1650 | ? | ? | Pelargon® | N rmal. (Breech delivery) | -20.0 — (45) |

See Table CM + W = Cow milk in water

Methods and Case Material

This study is based upon 482 determinations of the acid-base status made in 128 premature infants as well as supplementary measurements of the urinary net acid excretion. A general description of the case material has been presented in a previous report [1.] concerning different types of acidosis occurring shortly after premature birth. Further details are contained in Tables 1 and 2 of the present paper.

The acid base measurements were carried out using the Astrup micro equipment [18].

The urinary net acid excretion (NAE) may be defined by the equation

$$\text{NAE} = \text{TA} + \text{NH}^+$$

where TA denotes titratable acid obtained on titrating the urine to end point pH 7.40 at pCO₂ 0 mm Hg—i.e. TA can be interpreted as H⁺ excreted—in excess of the equivalent of the bicarbonate content of an equal volume of normal glomerular filtrate (~5 mEq/l)—in combination with the volatile and non-volatile buffers of the actual urine. NH₄ signifies H⁺ excreted in combination with ammonia.

Twenty-four-hour urine specimens were collected through glass funnel attached to the penis. A few crystals of thymol were added to the urines which were titrated within two hours after end of collection. NAE was

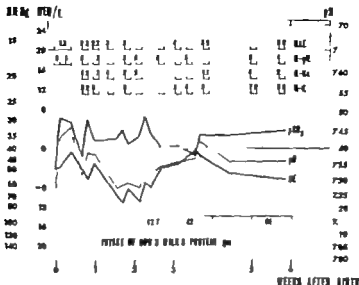


Fig. 1 Course of acid-base parameters in premature male infant with late primary metabolic acidosis (Table 1 no. 3). Δ AE = Net acid excretion (mEq). Urine V and urine-K are in mEq. BE = Base excess (mEq/l).

measured by the method of Jørgensen [8] using the Radiometer automatic titrator TTT 1.

Results

In eleven prematures (Table 1)—8.6% of the infants studied—a special type of metabolic acidosis was demonstrated, which from both clinical and laboratory criteria was easily distinguishable from the neonatal acidosis described previously [1]. The disturbance presented as a hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis which developed gradually during the second and third weeks of life and usually did not reach severe degrees (Fig. 1 and 2). Spontaneous remission as a rule set in within a couple of weeks. Respiratory compensation often but not always present did never reach the degree of efficiency achieved by older infants and children with metabolic acidosis [11].

In several instances, the diagnosis of metabolic acidosis came rather unexpectedly in apparently healthy infants showing no outward signs of illness. Only later did a review of the clinical records disclose retarded initiation of weight gain and, in some cases slow and indolent drinking at the height of the acidosis as clinical characteristics of this group.

Incidentally none of these infants were asphyctic at birth. In five infants the perinatal course was completely uneventful, while minor difficulties were observed in the remaining six (Table 1). Hence this acidosis did not appear to reflect particular happenings during the perinatal period nor were these prematures particularly small at birth the mean birth weight being 2031 g.

For this group a mean weight gain of -58.6 g (range -275 — $+100$) was computed for the first 14 days of life. Pro-

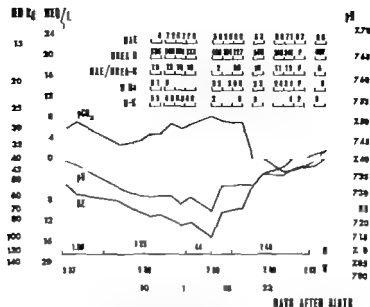


Fig. 2. Course of acid-base parameters in premature male infant with late primary metabolic acidosis (Table 1 no. 10). NAE=Net acid excretion (mEq) Urea-N=Urea nitrogen excreted (mg). NAE/Urea-N is in mEq/g Urine-Na and urine-K are in mEq N=Nitrogen of diet (g/day). W=Body weight (kg).

tracted initial weight loss was not conspicuous, the low 14th day weight score being mainly due to a delayed start of weight gain. As controls were used 20 consecutive cases fulfilling the following requirements. A normal perinatal clinical course a normal acid base status as judged from the existing measurements, and artificial feeding from birth. The mean birth weight of these control infants was 1702 g and the mean weight gain from birth to the 14th day of life +166.8 g (range +60 - +400). Thus the development or non development of this late metabolic acidosis appeared to be associated with the weight response to the early feedings which in the infants in whom acidosis subsequently developed suggests that less nitrogen was retained during the pre-acidotic period.

In one infant (Fig. 3) the acidosis was

unusually severe (minimum pH 7.05 at BE -24.8 mEq/l) but following a few oral doses of bicarbonate it disappeared completely. This would seem to suggest that the acidosis was due to an acid load accumulated during the first weeks of life of which the infant was not yet able to rid herself but not due to a continuous process still active at the time of treatment,—or alternatively that a vicious circle was broken. The acidosis was discovered by a routine determination of the acid base status the infant appearing quite vigorous throughout the acidotic period.

The development of this type of acidosis at a time (2nd-3rd week) when the daily protein intake usually reaches a temporary maximum as well as absence of diarrhea, dehydration, oliguria or other outward signs of illness in these cases, suggested

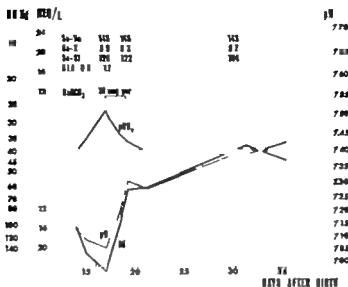


Fig. 2. Course of acid-base parameters in premature female infant with late primary metabolic acidosis (Table 1 no. 8). B.L.A. Blood lactic acid. Blood values are in mEq/l.

that a disproportion between the daily net load of non-volatile acid and the renal capacity for hydrogen ion excretion during the first few weeks of life was the direct cause of the disturbance.

An equally satisfactory response to a single infusion of bicarbonate and a simultaneous change of diet was observed in a small premature (Table 1 no. 12) who had for four weeks been maintained on a Pelargon⁶ diet containing in the strength used, cow's milk protein 2.2% and added (racemose) lactic acid, 31 mEq/l, but not thrived well. This patient presented with slight dyspepsia and a BE value of -20.0 mEq/l. Overloading with protein and lactic acid [4] appeared a reasonable explanation of the acidosis in this case.

In order to get an estimate of the NAE resulting from feeding ordinary cow's milk preparations to healthy premature

infants with a normal and approximately constant BE, the data of Table 2 were collected. Furthermore two young healthy adults (weight 58 and 67 kg) were for a four-day period placed on a diet containing a daily supply of 2-2.5 liters of cow's milk and additional calories in the form of pure sucrose. The urea nitrogen excreted amounted to 94% of the nitrogen ingested, the overall NAE value being 4.75 mEq/g of nitrogen ingested, 5.00 mEq/g urea-N excreted (range 4.0-6.0) or 0.8 mEq/g protein converted to urea. The larger amounts of milk titratable acid expressed per g of urea-N excreted demanding oxygenative or renal removal in infants with a positive nitrogen balance intestinal production of lactic acid and a greater tendency to urinary excretion of lactate in the infants may contribute to the observed difference between the adult figures and those of Table 2, cf. discussion p. 522. An

attempt will be made to match the NAE values of Fig 1 and 2 with estimates of the corresponding net acid production (NAP) based upon these figures (p 524)

Complicating infections and other disorders indirectly related to prematurity may give rise to other acid base disturbances more similar to those encountered in later life. During the present study infectious gastroenteritis accompanied by extraordinarily low BE values was found in some instances in 1-3-week-old premature. As in the case of primary late metabolic acidosis respiratory compensation was often relatively poor

The lowest BE recorded, -30.5 mEq/l was observed in a 16-day-old premature girl transferred from the nursery of the Obstetric Department because of diarrhea started two days before Pregnancy and delivery had been uncomplicated. The birth weight was 1850 g. The infant cried immediately and appeared healthy during the first two weeks, apart from anemia. On the 3rd day a hemoglobin value of 14.8 g/100 ml was obtained. On the 14th day the hemoglobin concentration was unchanged and the weight 1950 g. On admission to the Pediatric Department the infant appeared pale and slightly jaundiced. The stools were yellowish, liquid but apparently not infectious. The acid base status showed pH 7.91 BE -30.5 mEq/l and pCO₂ 16 mm Hg (total CO 2.5 mEq/l)

In spite of treatment with fluid, bicarbonate, antibiotics, and hydrocortisone the infant died 24 hours after admission. The macroscopic post mortem examination revealed no abnormalities. A histologic study of the kidneys showed normal glomeruli and normal tubular cells. In the proximal sections of the collecting ducts luminal precipitates of a homogenous eosinophilic material were noted, which did not resemble hemoglobin. More distally calcification of the precipitates became prominent. The acidosis was thought to be of renal origin.

Discussion

The gradual development of the primary late metabolic acidosis in apparently healthy premature displaying no signs of specific illness points to a disproportion between the daily NAP and the renal capacity for hydrogen ion excretion during the first weeks of life as the most likely single cause of this type of acidosis. Such disproportion might come into existence in a number of ways. (1) Specific renal tubular insufficiency relative to a 'normal' NAP. (2) Abnormally "increased" NAP relative to a 'normal' renal capacity for H⁺ excretion. (3) A combination of both. An abnormally large input of non volatile acid, in infants receiving ordinary cow's milk's feedings, might result from a low nitrogen retention or/and increased urinary loss of lactate due to the use of 'lactic acid milk'. (4) increased production of lactic acid through intestinal fermentative decomposition of lactose in complete oxygenation of lactate by the tissues [6], or insufficient tubular reabsorption of filtered lactate. The present data permit of no complete evaluation of these possibilities but throw some light on some of them.

Owing to a pH somewhat below 7.0 and its content of buffer substances, milk—whether human or cow's milk—has a definite titratable acidity. However because the milk titratable acid rather closely equals the amount of lactate present in the milk it does not change the renal mechanisms provided that all combustible milk buffer base (chiefly lactate) is properly oxygenated by the tissues. If lactate is excreted in the urine the equivalent amount of H⁺ will have to be disposed of by the kidneys.

DISTURBANCES OF HYDROGEN ION BALANCE. II

TABLE 2. % of acid excretion (A-E) in split feeding infants and one infant with mild respiratory acidosis. Expressed per g of urea-N excreted (the NAE above becomes rather in force, the high slope of infant no 3 being probably too (in-creased renal reabsorption of bicarbonate) in response to the elevated pCO₂.

| No. | Birth weight (g) | Weight at weaning (g) | Age at weaning (days) | 60% cow milk and 40% human milk feeding (ml) | Milk intake (ml) | Urea-N excreted (mmole) | Urea-N excreted (% of diet) | BE (mEq/l) | pCO ₂ (mm Hg) | Disturbance (ml) | NAE (mEq/24 hours) | NAE/M of diet (mEq/g) | NAE/ Urea-N excreted (mEq/g) |
|-----|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 | 1200 | 2140 | 22-33 | | 480 | 28 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 28 | 100 | 0.3 | 2.8 | 8.8 |
| 2 | 1000 | 1780 | 20-31 | | 370 | 10 | +1.8 | +1.8 | 87 | 170 | 1.3 | 1.3 | 12.5 |
| 3 | 1800 | 2000 | 29-30 | | 400 | 31 | -0.4 | -0.4 | 56 | 40 | 4.0 | 2.7 | 13.0 |
| 4 | 1800 | 2300 | 17-18 | | 400 | 38 | +1.2 | +1.2 | 38 | 155 | 1.4 | 1.3 | 5.2 |
| 5 | 1800 | 2240 | 22-26 | 470 | 240 | 37 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 61 | 245 | 2.8 | 2.4 | 9.0 |
| 6 | 2200 | 2360 | 48-50 | 200 | 240 | 37 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 36 | 350 | 6.0 | 4.7 | 8.3 |
| 7 | 2700 | 2870 | 60-61 | 200 | 240 | 42 | -2.1 | -2.1 | 33 | 275 | 6.8 | 4.1 | 8.2 |
| 8 | 3700 | 4000 | 16-17 | 700 | 480 | 18 | -2.5 | -2.5 | 29 | 165 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 8.8 |
| 9 | 3400 | 4100 | 26-27 | 700 | 480 | 40 | +0.8 | +0.8 | 43 | 218 | 4.3 | 2.1 | 0.8 |
| 10 | 3700 | 4800 | 27-28 | 700 | 400 | 48 | +2.0 | +2.0 | 47 | 440 | 6.3 | 2.8 | 8.8 |
| 11 | 3700 | 4800 | 18-19 | 200 | 400 | 8 | +1.2 | +1.2 | 41 | 890 | 8.7 | 4.0 | 6.5 |
| 12 | 3700 | 4800 | 18-19 | 200 | 400 | 43 | -0.3 | -0.3 | 40 | 480 | 7.2 | 2.6 | 4.7 |

Trisulphate acid, 1000 4 mEq/l.

Trisulphate acid, 1000 4 mEq/l. The 14% solution used contains $\pm 0.5\%$ protein and has titratable acidity 1000 8 mEq/l.

In order to evaluate accurately the potential acidity of any particular milk diet in terms of the net load of H^+ demanding renal excretion in any particular infant, the known quantities should include the amount of combustible milk buffer base passed into the urine the fraction of dietary nitrogen appearing as urea-N and the amount of non-volatile acid released by the conversion of the milk proteins to urea.

However comparing the NAE values corresponding to the pre-acidotic period of Fig 1 with those of Table 2 shows that while the daily protein load could probably not explain the accumulation, in this patient of non volatile acid in the presence of a strongly positive nitrogen balance it might possibly do so in the case of a zero balance. At the height of the acidosis the NAE values are quite comparable to those of Table 2 and, like those of Fig 2 tend to vary proportionately rather than inversely as the BE.

The data of Fig 2 include the urinary of urea N. In spite of failing weight gain during the first weeks of life this infant retained about 80% of the nitrogen administered as cow's milk's protein during this period and it is seen that the NAE expressed per g of urea-N excreted clearly exceeds that found in normal infants. In this infant the BE decreased steadily from the 10th to the 16th day in spite of apparently abundant renal NAE and absence of external losses of base. After replacement of the milk feedings by 10% glucose in water for two days, resumption of the protein intake did not compromise the gradual rise in BE, and restoration of extracellular neutrality was followed by a drop of the NAF

to the level found in the two adult individuals.

It appears, then, that renal incapability to handle the amount of non volatile acid "normally" excreted in the urine of premature infants receiving a corresponding diet is probably not the cause of this primary late metabolic acidosis, while it seems quite possible that these acidotic infants have been facing larger loads of non-volatile acid than have the normal control infants (of p 522). This would correspond well with the relative inefficiency of the premature kidney to deal with induced acidosis demonstrated by several authors [3, 4, 5, 7, 17] and the observation during the present study of unusually severe secondary acidosis in premature infants aged 1-3 weeks.

Possibly the premature substitution of extrauterine conditions including acidogenic enteral feedings for the maternal environment and placental homeostatic functions requires processes of enzymatic adaptation to take place in the tubular cells. The self limiting character of the late metabolic acidosis may indicate a process of substrate maturation i.e. the acidotic stress on the kidneys may constitute a prerequisite to the proper progress of such adaptation.

As recognized by Todvad *et al.* [40] the demonstration, in premature infants of a capacity for renal tubular hydrogen ion secretion i.e. a maximum rate of tubular bicarbonate reabsorption in an actually alkalotic state (basic urine) comparable to that of adults does not necessarily imply a corresponding capacity for the excretion of a positive NAE during the stress of acidosis, the latter depending primarily upon the rate of ammonia for

mation, the filtered amount of buffers and the maximum hydrogen ion gradient established across the luminal tubular cell membrane.

As a further contribution to the development of the late extracellular metabolic acidosis one might consider the possibility of a loss of cellular H^+ to the extracellular fluid. The steady decrease in sodium excretion and corresponding rise in potassium excretion shown in Fig. 1 and also recognizable in Fig. 2, might indicate increasing adrenocortical activity. That temporary adrenocortical hypofunction may occur rather frequently in newborn infants was, in fact, suggested by Jaudon [8] and Provenzano [15], but at the present time, a possible relationship of adrenocortical hypofunction to an internal redistribution of H^+ can not be defined. As shown by Pitts [15] in experiments with rats, adrenal insufficiency compromises the renal response to an acid load.

Summarizing, it appears that the metabolic acid base status during the second and following weeks of life reflects the integrated effects of several factors including the potential acidity of the diet, the degree of protein catabolism, the functional status of the renal tubules, and probably endocrine homeostatic functions and that in premature infants who do not thrive appreciably during the first weeks the net effect is often a metabolic acidosis. That the balance achieved may be a very subtle one is indicated by a prompt response to simple therapeutic measures (Fig. 3). Failure to thrive more or less increases the charge of the kidneys but possibly in addition, bears some relationship to other factors, e.g. the neonatal adrenocortical status.

The weight loss of the infants with late

metabolic acidosis was mainly confined to the first week of life whereas the acidotic trend did not become apparent until later which leaves little doubt that the failure to thrive was a primary factor. Obviously the increasing acidosis may further adjourn the start of weight gain [10] and a vicious circle result. It is common clinical experience that many otherwise healthy premature infants do not thrive appreciably during the first one or two weeks of life. It would appear that in such cases the possibility of metabolic acidosis should be borne in mind, and that with low BE values the dietary protein load should be reduced rather than increased.

Summary

A type of late (2nd-4th week) metabolic acidosis occurring in apparently healthy premature infants receiving ordinary cow's milk feedings (not enriched with protein or lactic acid) is described. It appears that delayed start of postnatal weight gain is a primary factor in the genesis of this disturbance which was demonstrated in 80% of 123 premature infants.

The acidosis is probably caused by a temporary disproportion between the renal capacity for hydrogen ion excretion and the daily load of non-volatile acid which in these infants may be larger due to low nitrogen retention and increased urinary loss of lactate. Other factors may be partly responsible.

The acidosis may be removed by means of a few doses of bicarbonate or a temporary withdrawal of the milk diet. In premature infants who do not thrive appreciably during the first weeks of life the possibility of metabolic acidosis should be borne in mind.

References

1. ASTRUP P, JORGENSEN K, SIGGAARD-ANDERSEN O and ENGBL, K.: The acid base metabolism. A new approach. *The Lancet*, 1 1023, 1960
2. HARRIS H. L. and VESTERDAL, J. The physiologic and clinical significance of immaturity of kidney function in young infants. *J Pediatr* 52 90, 1953.
3. DARROW D. C., DA SILVA, M. M. and STEVENSON, B. S.: Production of acidosis in premature infants by protein milk. *J Pediatr* 27 43, 1945
4. GOLDMAN H. I., KARLITZ, S., BRITTON, E., ACH, H. and SCHILL, V. B.: Acidosis in premature infant due to lactic acid. *Pediatrics* 27 971 1961
5. GORDON H. H., McNAMARA, H. and BENJAMIN H. R.: The response of young infant to ingestion of ammonium chloride. *Pediatrics* 2 90 1948.
6. HENLEY K. S.: Lactic acidosis. *The Lancet* 1 442, 1962.
7. HOFFMAN W. B., PARMALKER, A. H. and GROSSMAN A.: Mechanism of production of acidosis in premature infant by protein milk. *Amer J Dis Child*, 73 637 1948.
8. JAUDON J. C.: Hypofunction of the adrenals during early neonatal life. *J Pediatr* 30 841 1948.
9. JORGENSEN K.: Titrimetric determination of the net excretion of acid-base in urine. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 9 287 1957
10. KARLITZ, S., SCHILL, N. B. and GOLDMAN H. I.: Lactic acid milk in feeding of premature infants. *J Pediatr* 54 7-8, 1959.
11. KILDEBERG P.: Respiratory compensation in metabolic alkalosis. *Acta Med Scand* 1 515, 1963
12. KILDEBERG, P.: Disturbances of hydrogen ion balance occurring in premature infants. I. Early types of acidosis. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 53 803, 1964
13. McCANCE, R. A. and WIDDOWSON, E. M.: New thoughts on renal function in the early days of life. *Brit Med Bull* 13. 2, 1957
14. McCANCE, R. A. and WIDDOWSON E. M.: Control of acid base stability in the newly born. *The Lancet* 1 923, 1961.
15. PITT, R. F.: Acid base regulation by the kidneys. *Amer J Med*, 9 354, 1950.
16. PROVENZANO, R. W.: Adrenocortical hypoplasia in the newborn infant. *New Engl J Med*, 243 87 1950.
17. RUBIN M. I., CALCAGNO, F. L. and RUSBY, BARBARA L.: Renal excretion of hydroxy ions: A defense against acidosis in premature infants. *J Pediatr*, 59 848, 1961
18. SIGGAARD-ANDERSEN O.: The acid-base status of the blood. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl.* 76 1962.
19. SMITH C. A.: *The Physiology of the Newborn Infant*. Blackwell Sci. Publ. Oxford 1939, 3rd ed.
20. TUDVAD, F., McNAMARA, HELEN and HARRIS H. L.: Renal response of premature infants to administration of bicarbonate and potassium. *Pediatrics* 13. 4, 1954

Submitted Febr 7 1964

Accepted Febr 28, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Odense County and City Hospital
Odense
Denmark

From the Pediatric Department and Pediatric Research Institute (Head, Leif Salomonssen)
University Hospital, Rikshospitalet Oslo Norway

Hereditary Pituitary Dwarfism Treated with Human Growth Hormone

by O TRYGSTAD and M. SEIP

The role of genetic factors in the etiology of pituitary dwarfism is still a matter of dispute. Daughaday [4] maintains that "in contrast with the pituitary dwarfism of mice the human disease does not appear to have a hereditary basis. However in another chapter of the very same textbook Motulsky [9] accepts that the condition occasionally may be due to autosomal recessive inheritance.

Previous literature on the subject has recently been reviewed by Grebe [5] and by Nowakowski & Lenz [10]. But the uncertainty of the clinical diagnosis of pituitary dwarfism in many of the reported familial cases makes the evaluation of genetic factors difficult. However there are also some recent reports, where the diagnosis has probably been more firmly established [2, 10-14] although few details are given.

In the following discussion a family with a high incidence of dwarfism will be presented. Three members of this family (two of whom are siblings) have been studied in detail. The diagnosis, pituitary dwarfism has been confirmed, and all three patients have been successfully treated with human growth hormone.

Case Reports

Case I

A. S. is a girl born March 29 1949. Three older siblings are of normal height but a younger brother (Case II) suffers from pituitary dwarfism. Many relatives, both paternal and maternal, have been dwarfed or of short stature (Fig. 1). The father measures 183 cm the mother 182 cm.

The patient was born at term following normal pregnancy and delivery. Birth weight and length were normal, but already during the first year of life growth retardation became obvious. Her psychomotor development was normal, and her progress in school has been average. At seven years of age she measured only 87 cm. Since then she has been growing less than 2 cm per year.

On admission to the Pediatric Department, University Hospital, Oslo Nov 1961 her height was 96 cm, i.e. 45 cm below the 2.5 percentile. No pubertal development was present. The clinical findings and laboratory data (Tables I and 2) were consistent with the diagnosis of pituitary dwarfism, with reduced formation of somatotrophic, gonadotrophic, thyrotrophic and adrenocorticotrophic hormones.

Treatment with human growth hormone 2 mg three times weekly and 1 thyroxine 0.1 mg daily was initiated Dec 1961. During the first year of treatment she grew 11 cm, and during the second year 8 cm.

TABLE 1 *Clinical and laboratory data*

| Case No. | Sex | Age yrs. | Height age yrs. | Skeletal age yrs. | PBI % | Cholesterol mg % | Phosphorus mg % | Phosphatase Bodansky U | Iodine sensitivity |
|----------|-----|----------|-----------------|-------------------|-------|------------------|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 | F | 13 | 3 | 7 | 4.5 | 290 | 4.2 | 2.2 | Increased |
| 2 | M | 16 | 2 | 3 | 2.6 | 237 | 3.2 | 1.2 | Increased |
| 3 | F | 19 | 11 | 15 | 2.7 | 304 | 3.8 | 6.8 | Increased |

Case 2

C. S. is a younger brother of the first patient, born April 8 193 (Fig. 1). He was born at term following normal pregnancy and delivery. Birth weight and length were within normal limits. Growth retardation was observed already during the first year of life. His psychomotor development has been slightly retarded, and he started in school one year delayed. His growth has been very much retarded. From 1957 his average yearly height increment has been 1.5 cm.

On admission to our department Nov. 24 1961 he measured only 83.5 cm, i.e. 40 cm below the 2.5 percentile. In contrast to his sister he exhibited light, but obvious clinical signs of secondary hypothyroidism. The clinical findings and laboratory data confirmed the diagnosis, pituitary dwarfism (Tables 1 and 2).

He was treated with human growth hormone 3 mg three times weekly and L-thyroxine 0.1 mg daily from Dec. 1961. During the first year of treatment he grew 12 cm, and during the second year 8 cm.

Case 3

R. E. is a woman born May 28, 1944 second cousin of the two foregoing patients (Fig. 1). Her mother measures 154 cm and her father more than 170 cm. Two younger sisters are of normal height. Her birth weight and length were normal, and she seemed to grow normally during the first two or three years of life although no exact measurements are available from this period. From then on growth retardation was observed. Her yearly height increment was about 3 cm until she was 18 years of age since then about 2 cm.

She was admitted to our department in September 1963. No signs of sexual development were present. Chromosome studies revealed nothing abnormal. The diagnosis of pituitary dwarfism was confirmed (Tables 1 and 2). Treatment with human growth hormone 3 mg three times a week and L-thyroxine 0.1 mg daily was begun. Since then she increased 3 cm in height in less than three months.

TABLE 2 *SU-4885 test*

| Case No. | 17 KS (mg) Dose | | | 17 KGS (mg) Day | | | THS (μg) Dose | | |
|----------|-----------------|-----|-----|-----------------|-----|-----|---------------|-----|-----|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 1 | 0.5 | 0.4 | 1.0 | 2.2 | 1.9 | 3.7 | 0 | 162 | 134 |
| | | | | 2.2 | 6.9 | 1.0 | | | |
| 2 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 1.3 | 4.2 | 4.2 | 7.8 | 90 | 440 | 710 |

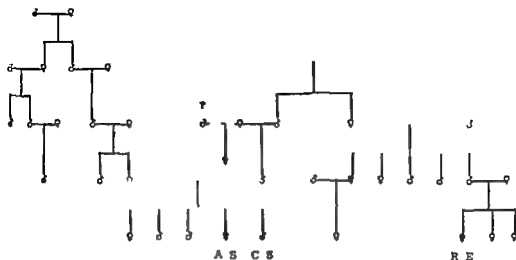


Fig 1 Pedigree of the reported family. Black signs indicate abnormally short individuals, white signs individuals of normal stature. Initials indicate the three cases of proven pituitary dwarfism.

Discussion

Two siblings, brother and sister with severe pituitary dwarfism have been studied. From early infancy they showed marked retardation of growth. At 13 years of age the girl's height was no more than the 3 year norm. The boy's height was only two years when his chronological age was 10.

It has often been postulated that the growth rate in pituitary dwarfs is normal or approximately normal during the first two or three years of life. However this is not always the case. In our two siblings growth retardation was obvious already during the first year of life. We have been able to make similar observations in several other patients with hypopituitarism.

Another interesting observation is the high incidence of dwarfism or stunted growth in this family both on the paternal and maternal side (Fig 1). The third case

reported is a paternal second cousin of the two siblings. She was studied when she was 19 years of age and measured 14 cm.

All these three patients showed signs of decreased formation of somatotrophic, thyrotrophic and corticotrophic hormones (Tables 1 and 2) and will probably also be hypogonadotropic. No sexual development was present in any of them when last observed at 19, 15 and 12 years of age. The urinary excretion of corticosteroids (Table 2) was low in all three. The response to Metapyrone (SU-4885) was poor in the two siblings, while in their cousin there was a normal increase in THS but a relatively small rise in 17-KGS.

Treatment with human growth hormone has been highly effective so far. The two siblings increased 11 and 13 cm in height during the first year of treatment and 8 cm during the second. The third patient grew 3 cm in less than three months. Some of the hormone used was produced in Uppsala in Gemzell laboratory, some of

It in our own laboratory by the method described by Roos, Fervold & Gemzell [13]. In addition to human growth hormone three times weekly a small daily dose of thyroxine was given. This, of course is recommended when signs of secondary hypothyroidism are present and is probably advantageous in most hypopituitary dwarfs under treatment with somatotropin because an adequate supply of thyroid hormone is required to obtain optimal growth.

In addition to the three reported patients, five other members of the family (three males and two females) through five generations are known to have been abnormally short with adult heights decidedly below 150 cm (Fig 1). These members have not been studied in detail and we therefore cannot maintain with certainty that the short stature has been due to hypopituitarism in all of them, although this may be a reasonable assumption. A genetic basis for the dwarfism may be presupposed. The two dwarfed siblings A. B and C. B have three paternal and three maternal relatives with adult heights of less than 150 cm, a fact which may perhaps explain their extreme degree of dwarfism.

The mode of inheritance in familial cases of pituitary dwarfism has been postulated to be autosomal recessive [5, 9, 10]. This coincides with our observations in the reported family. Whether the hormonal deficiency in these cases is due to an inborn error of metabolism similar to e.g. that in the adrenogenital syndrome or in the hereditary types of hypothyroidism is not known. It might be mentioned that pituitary dwarfism of hereditary origin is well known in mice [3].

Two of the family members with stunted growth have married and produced children (Fig 1). It may be claimed that this is evidence against the contention that short stature in these two cases was due to hypopituitarism. However patients with pituitary dwarfism and normal sexual development have been described [1, 10]. Nowakowski & Lens [10] maintain that in the hereditary type reduced production of somatotrophic hormone without concomitant deficiency of gonadotrophic hormones is more frequent than in sporadic cases. The two family members in question may be examples of such isolated growth hormone deficiency. Among other patients with pituitary dwarfism we have studied there are at least two, in whose families there is a remarkable incidence of individuals with stunted growth and normal sexual development. Particularly in such families the possibility of discovering individuals with isolated growth hormone deficiency should be considered.

In this connection it is interesting that cases of familial and hereditary hypogonadotropic hypogonadism without dwarfism have been described repeatedly [6, 7, 8]. Several other hypothalamic hypophyseal disturbances may also be genetically determined, e.g. diabetes insipidus, the Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome and Albright's syndrome. In the familial cases of generalized lipodystrophy described by Selye & Trygstad [15], a hereditary disturbance of the hypothalamic hypophyseal system is probably also present. Even acromegaly may in rare instances show familial occurrence [9].

In most cases of hypopituitarism all or several pituitary hormones are deficient although often to a variable degree. Some-

times, however one hormone is exclusively or almost exclusively affected. In addition to the isolated deficiencies of somatotrophic, antidiuretic or gonadotrophic hormone mentioned above an isolated lack of adrenocorticotrophic hormone has also been described [11]. Possibly the other pituitary hormones may be similarly affected.

The frequency of the isolated lack of somatotrophic hormone may not be constituted, until reliable methods to determine the growth hormone level in the blood are more readily available. Probably a certain number of patients classified today as primordial dwarfs belong to this category. In fact Raben [12] in a few cases of so-called primordial dwarfism has obtained good results by treatment with human growth hormone in the usual dosage.

Summary

A family with high incidence of dwarfism and stunted growth is presented. Eight members of the family (four males

and four females) through five generations are known to have been abnormally short. Three of them, two of whom are brother and sister have been studied in detail. The diagnosis pituitary dwarfism has been confirmed and treatment with human growth hormone has been effective. The disease is thought to have a hereditary basis in this family probably with autosomal recessive mode of transmission.

It is pointed out that some patients with pituitary dwarfism show obvious growth retardation as early as during the first year of life. The possibility of discovering individuals with isolated growth hormone deficiency (without concomitant lack of gonadotrophic hormones) is discussed. Other hypothalamic hypophyseal diseases caused by genetic mechanisms are mentioned briefly.

Acknowledgement

The authors wish to extend their thanks to Professor C. A. Gemzell and Dr. P. Roos, Uppsala, for most valuable assistance in preparation of human growth hormone.

References

1. ASTROM J. M. F. Hypothalamo-hypophysealer Zwergwuchs mit spontaner Pubertät. *Helv. Paediatr. Acta*, 16: 267, 1961.
2. BIRKE R. L. and GORDAN G. S. Familial hypogonadotropic eunuchoidism. *J. Clin. Endocr.* 14: 831, 1955.
3. CAMBER, R. L. and RENSVELT, E. O. Primary site of gene action in anterior pituitary dwarfism. *Science* 131: 829, 1960.
4. DAUGHADAY W. H. In *Textbook of Endocrinology* Ed. R. H. Williams. W. B. Saunders, Philadelphia and London, 1962, p. 53.
5. OSTER, H. Erblicher Zwergwuchs. *Kyogen* *Ann. Med. Kinderheilk.* 13: 343, 1939.
6. KOCK, G. and TIWISINA, T. Beitrag zur Erblichkeit der Akromegalie und der Hypopituitarism generalisata mit Pachydermie. *Arch. Forsch.* 13: 490, 1938.
7. LE MARQUAND H. S. Congenital hypogonadotropic hypogonadism in five members of a family: three brothers and two sisters. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.* 47: 442, 1954.
8. LYCKE, H. T. OSTER, F. MCNEELY C. W. JOHNSON J. E. and JAMPOURSKY K. A. Secondary male hypogonadism and congenital ichthyosis: association of two rare genetic diseases. *Amer. J. Hum. Genet.* 12: 440, 1960.
9. MOTULSKY A. In *Textbook of Endocrinology* Ed. R. H. Williams. W. B. Saunders, Philadelphia and London, 1962, p. 1112.
10. KOWAKOWSKI, H. and LIND, W. Genetic aspects in male hypogonadism. *Recent Progr. Hormone Res.* 17: 53, 1961.
11. OWELL, W. D. GREEN, G. M. and WILLIAMS, R. H. Hypoadrenotropism: the isolated de-

Science of adrenotropic hormone *J Clin Endocr* 22: 1017 1940

1. RAREY M. B.: Growth hormone *New Engl J Med*, 268: 31 and 32, 1961
12. ROOS, P. FETOLD R. and GUNDELL, C. A.: Human growth hormone preparation. In press.

14. SCHÄFER, K. and PRADER, A.: Wachstum und Knochenreife beim hypophysären Zwergwuchs in Abhängigkeit von Thyreoiden- und Nebenschilddrüsenfunkt. *Schweiz Med Wochr* 90: 1349 1960.
15. REIP M. and TRYSTAD O.: Generalized hypodystrophy *Arch Dis Child*, III 447 1962.

Submitted Jan. 27 1964

Accepted Febr 28, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Rikshospitalet
Oslo
Norway

From the Department of Virus Research, Karolinska Institutet School of Medicine the Bacteriological Laboratory and the Pediatric Clinic Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm, Sweden

Measles Vaccination

II Antibody Titers 8 to 9 Months after Vaccination with an Inactivated Vaccine¹

by E. NORRBY, GUN CARLSTRÖM, R. LAGERCRANTZ and S. GARD

A number of field trials with inactivated measles vaccine have been reported [1-5, 6, 7, 8, 9]. Serologic conversion rates of 90% were observed, protective effects of about 92-96% against typical measles and 80-88% against cases of all degrees of severity and lasting for at least several months after vaccination were recorded. However the serologic responses were usually of comparatively short duration and circulating antibodies were often no longer demonstrable 3 to 8 months after vaccination [1-9].

In a previous paper [7] the present authors reported results of a small scale field trial with formalin-inactivated, alum-precipitated measles vaccine prepared from monkey kidney tissue culture-grown virus. The present paper describes serologic follow up studies of the vaccinees.

Material and Methods

Study population Sixtyseven children aged 6 to 14 months at the time of vaccination participated in the trial. As previously described they received two or three monthly inoculations of vaccine supplied by Pfizer Inc. Pre- and post vaccination blood samples

were collected and tested as previously described.

For follow-up studies 57 of the 67 children were available. Blood samples were collected 8 to 9 months after the last inoculation, 0.3 ml of blood was drawn from the finger tip and immediately mixed with 0.6 ml of tissue culture medium containing heparin in a concentration of 1:3,000. After centrifugation the supernatant was collected and inactivated for 30 minutes at 56°C. The specimens were considered to represent a 1:5 serum dilution.

Interviews concerning possible exposure to measles and its outcome were performed at the time of bleeding and again 8 months later.

Neutralization tests In order to enhance the sensitivity of the test the antigen was prepared as follows. Monolayer cultures of a human embryonic cell line (strain Lu 106) were inoculated with the Edmonston strain of measles virus. When a clearcut cytopathic effect appeared medium was changed and the cultures were harvested after further two hours incubation at 37°C. Material thus prepared exhibited infectivity titers of about 10^4 TCID₅₀/ml with comparatively low hemagglutinin (HA) content, indicating a favourably small proportion of non-infective antibody binding antigen. Tests were set up

Supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council.

- iciency of adrenotropic hormone *J Clin Endocr* 23 1017 1960
12. RAREY M. S. Growth hormone *New Engl J Med*, 266 31 and 32, 1961
 13. ROOS, P., FYRULD R. and GIMMEL, C. A.: Human growth hormone preparation. In press.
 14. SCHÄFER, K. and PRADER, A.: Wachstum und Knochenreifung beim hypophysären Zwergwuchs in Abhängigkeit von Thyroiden- und Nebennierenfunktion. *Schweiz Med Wochr* 90 1349, 1960.
 15. SEIF M. and TRYGSTAD O.: Generalized Hypodystrophy *Arch Dis Child*, 38, 477 1963

Submitted Jan. 21 1964

Accepted Febr 28, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Rikshospitalet
Oslo
Norway

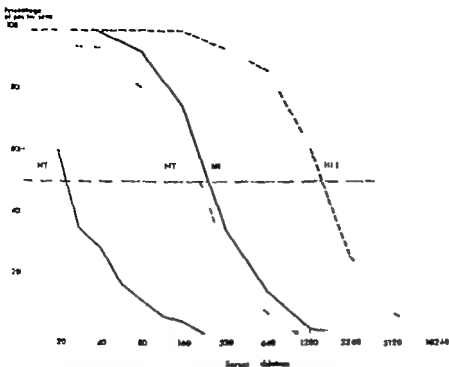


Fig. 1 Immunologic "profiles" within group (). Accumulated neutralization (NT I and II) and HI (I and II) titer distributions of 10-14 day (I; dashed lines) and 8-9 month post vaccination serum samples (II; full lines). d. on the basis stands for delayed break through of virus at low serum dilutions.

Comparison between 10-14-day and 8-9-month postvaccination results is not strictly permissible as simultaneous tests on paired sera were not feasible. In particular the neutralization titers have to be judged with caution, as the technique for preparation of antigen as well as the antigen dose used in the test were not the same on the two occasions. Reference sera were not included in the tests either.

Thus, the comparative ratios calculated in the table are presented with these reservations. The ratio of median HI to neutralization titers on the first occasion 7.3, was increased to 11. This probably reflects the increase in antigen dose from 40 to 100 TCID in the neutralization test.

The average reduction in titer over the 8 to 9 months amounts to 6.4 times in the HI test which for reasons already indicated must be considered as the most reliable indicator. Therefore since the lowest serum concentration tested in the CF test was 1:20 and with some sera 1:40 it is obvious that no positive results were to be expected in this test.

The shape of the immunity profiles" in Fig. 1 as well as the distribution of points in Figs. 2 and 3 indicate that there is no systematic variation in the rates of reduction in titer. Thus the correlation between late and early HI titers was calculated to +0.606 and the regression coefficients (late on early titers and vice

TABLE I Number of positive sera and mean titers in early and late post vaccination sera from children in group (a) The table also demonstrates the relative sensitivity of HI to neutralization test as well as change in serum titers with time expressed as the ratio between mean serum values in early and late post vaccination samples

| Time after vaccination for collection of sera | | Serological test | | | Ratio between HI and neutralization titer |
|---|---|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---|
| | | Neutralization | HI | CF | |
| 10-14 days | Frequency of positive sera Median titers | 46/49 94% 1 270 | 46/49 93% 1 1800 | 36/49 73% 1 34 | 3 |
| 8-9 months | Frequency of positive sera Median titers | 29/4 50% 1 23 | 43/49 88% 1 250 | 0/49 0% 1 0 | 11 |
| Ratio between mean serum titer in the 10-14 day and 8-9 month blood sample. | | 9.6 | 6.4 | — | |

with an antigen dose of 100 TCID₅₀ and otherwise as previously described [7].

Hemagglutination-inhibition (HI) and complement fixation (CF) tests were carried out as previously described [7]. Prior to use in HI tests all sera were adsorbed with an equal volume of a 16% suspension of washed monkey erythrocytes. haolin treatment was omitted as unnecessary at the serum concentrations actually used in the tests.

All antigens used were derived from the same tissue culture system. Titer values recorded refer to the concentration of serum in the reaction mixture before addition of possible indicator systems. The lowest concentration tested was 1:40 in neutralization and most CF tests; 1:40 in HI and some CF tests. All sera were tested simultaneously in each one of the three serological reactions.

Results

In analysing and discussing the immediate results of vaccination we found it convenient to classify the vaccinees as follows.

a. Children without previous or inter-

current exposure to measles receiving three doses of vaccine

b. Children receiving two doses only

c. Children who were possibly exposed to natural measles in the course of vaccination.

d. One child with pre immunization antibodies indicating previous exposure

The follow up studies included 49 of 55 children in group a., 4 of 5 in group b. and 4 of 6 in group c.

Serologic reactions The results of neutralization, HI and CF tests are summarized in Table I and Figs. 1 to 3. Of the children in group a., as shown in the table and in Fig. 1 98% had demonstrable HI antibodies, 60% gave clearcut positive neutralization tests, whereas none had demonstrable CF antibodies. With 1 sera break through in the neutralization test was considerably delayed, indicating sub-threshold antibody titers (less than 1:40). These included the proportion of positive neutralization tests is increased to 84%.

immunity level only but on virus dose and other conditions as well. Secondly demonstration and assay of antibody is largely a matter of sensitivity of the methods used. The HI technique used in the present study and described in greater detail in previous papers [6-7] is apparently more sensitive than those applied in most other laboratories: titers observed are higher than those commonly reported in comparable cases and the presence of antibodies in our vaccinees was easily demonstrable 8 to 9 months after vaccination, i.e. at a time when in other studies mainly negative results were reported. Thus, inability to find antibodies does not necessarily mean that they are absent. Finally secondary immune responses evoked by contact with the virus in the course of the incubation period have to be considered, as well.

Under our assumption the problem of providing protection would then be equivalent to the question of maintaining an antibody titer above a certain level. The present material does not permit any estimates of such a possibly protective antibody titer. At the time of the 8 to 9 month blood sampling only three children had had known exposures to natural measles none of them showing any clinical signs of infection. In the interval between 8 to 9 months and 16 to 17 months after vaccination 4 children out of 11 probably exposed displayed definite symptoms. Although a trend may be hidden in these figures, it is obvious that no significance can be attached to them on account of the small numbers. Further observations on rates of reduction in titers and on the correlation of resistance

to actual titers are obviously needed for clarification of this point.

Measles virus apparently carried at least two antigenically active structures: the HA and the internal nucleoprotein [8]. The important question arises whether both these antigens are essential for production of protective antibodies. There is certain evidence in favor of the assumption that neutralizing and HI antibodies are identical [7, Norrby to be published] which would seem to indicate that the nucleic acid free hemagglutinin were responsible for the production of protective antibodies. Taking this cue we have planned a study of the prophylactic value of purified hemagglutinin as a vaccine.

Summary

Out of a group of 67 children vaccinated with an inactivated measles virus vaccine 57 were followed up by serological tests 8 to 9 months after vaccination. Among 49 children who had had the full course of three monthly inoculations and no known exposure to measles during the vaccination period 41 (84%) had antibodies demonstrable in the neutralization test (highest serum concentration tested 1:20) and 48 (98%) had HI titers of 1:40 or higher. As compared to the results obtained 10 to 14 days after vaccination antibody titers had declined on an average by a factor of 6 to 7.

In a period of 17 months after vaccination 15 children had experienced exposure to natural measles in siblings or close playmates. In 5 of these exposed clinical manifestations of measles were observed, 4 of these cases were classified as mild.

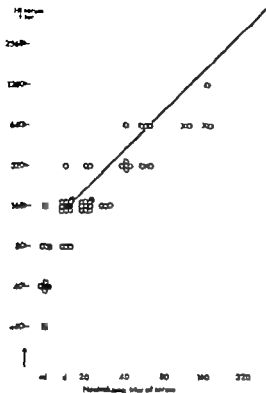


Fig 4. Correlation between HI and neutralization titers of 8 to 9 month post-vaccination samples. d. stands for delayed break-through of neutralization antigen in low dilutions of serum. Symbols as in Fig. 2.

Discussion

In the discussion on living attenuated versus killed virus as a vaccine against measles it has sometimes been assumed

that infection with live virus produces not only an immunity of longer duration, possibly lifelong, but also a more complete qualitatively superior immunity than does immunization with killed virus. This question most probably boils down to the following: Is serologic immunity alone sufficient or is some additional mechanism, for instance cell-associated immunity needed for protection against infection?

Present evidence to which our own observations may be added indicates that protection indeed is afforded by vaccination with killed virus. Thus it seems reasonable to assume that circulating antibodies are capable not only of modifying the course of an infection, which is a well established experience from the clinical use of immune gammaglobulin, but also of preventing infection.

If so the degree of protection should be correlated to the actual antibody titer. These observations reported in the literature [1, 3, 4, 5] when vaccinated children who no longer had demonstrable circulating antibodies yet remained symptomfree when challenged with wild or attenuated virus, do not necessarily refute this assumption. First of all the outcome of a challenge infection does not depend on the

TABLE 2. Clinical data of children who displayed symptoms after natural exposure to measles

| Child | Group | Time of exposure in months after vaccination | Temperature | | Rash | Other clinical symptoms |
|--------|-------|--|-------------|------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| | | | Maximum, C | Duration in days | | |
| J.C.D. | () | 15 | 39.5 | 3 | Faint | None |
| I.R. | (a) | 14 | 38.1 | 1 | Faint | None |
| T.W. | (a) | 16 | 38.5 | 3 | Faint | None |
| A.W. | () | 8 | 40.5 | 3 | Regular | Cough, Reddening |
| A.K.L. | () | 13 | 39.9 | 3 | None | Slight conjunctivitis |

From the Department of Pediatrics, Karolinska Sjukhuset and the Wenner-Gren Research Laboratory Norrtnlla Sjukhus, Stockholm, Sweden

The Changing Circulatory Pattern of the Newborn Infant Studied by the Indicator Dilution Technique

by W. JEGIER,¹ W. BLANKENSHIP,² J. LIND and A. KITCHIN³

Introduction

At birth the changes in the circulation from the intrauterine to the extrauterine type are not immediate but involve a transitional or neonatal period. In spite of all modern cardiological techniques used to analyze this transitional circulation its timing and the exact mechanism of its transition remains controversial.

Among the methods available the dye dilution technique for the study of the neonatal circulation particularly with respect to the time of closure of the ductus arteriosus was introduced by Pree *et al* in 1955. This study was performed on a small number of infants using Evans blue as an indicator.

The present study was designed to amplify this investigation and to add a

study of the time-concentration components using Indocyanine green as the indicator.

Material and Methods

Eighty-nine full term, apparently normal infants from essentially uneventful pregnancies were studied. They ranged in age from 3 hours to 23 days. The mothers received no anesthesia and the deliveries were vaginal without complications. One infant had talipes-equinovarus deformity, one had a fractured clavicle and one had a large cephalohematoma. In four infants a short, decrescendo, early systolic murmur was heard and recorded but this had disappeared by the seventh day of life in two of them. In the remaining two infants, in spite of the systolic murmur at the time of the last examination on the fifth and twenty-third day respectively apparently normal pattern indicator dilution curves were recorded. (See under results.)

The indicator used in this study was indocyanine green (manufactured in dry form by Hynson, Westcott & Dunning, Inc., Baltimore, Maryland). It was dissolved in an aqueous solvent to contain 2 mg/ml and the solution was used within 6 hours of mixing. 1.5 mg of the dissolved dye was used for each curve. Three to five injections were performed in each infant for a total dose not exceeding 5 mg/kg of body weight. There were no toxic reactions. The indicator was injected and flushed with 1 to 2 ml saline

¹This study was supported in part by grants from the Association for the Aid of Crippled Children and the Medical Research Council of Canada.

²From Montreal Children's Hospital, Montreal, Quebec, Canada. Research Fellow of the Medical Research Council of Canada.

³Research Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, Tennessee, U.S.A.

From Western General Hospital, Edinburgh, Scotland, sponsored for this project by council of Europe Medical Fellowship.

Acknowledgements

The authors are indebted to Mrs. Birgitta Lindström Mrs. Ann Marie Henning and

Mrs. Eva Olsson for their excellent technical assistance and to Miss Lilabeth Sundström and Miss Britt Marie Andersson for careful handling of the tissue cultures.

References

1. CARTER, C. H., CONWAY T. J., CORNFELD D. IZZONI, D. O. KEMPE, C. H. MOSCOVICI, C. RAUB, L. W. VIANEC, A. J. and WARREN J. J. Serologic responses of children to inactivated measles vaccine. *JAMA* 179 848 1960.
2. FRIEDMAN H. A. KOVACK, A. and WARREN J. Inactivated measles virus vaccine. II. Prevention of natural and experimental measles with the vaccine. *JAMA* 179 391 1965.
3. FRANKEL, J. W. WILTON R. A., POTKUSKI, L. and BOGER, W. P. Measles vaccination. I. Serologic responses to vaccination with inactivated vaccine. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*, 110 164, 1960.
4. FULGiniti, V. A., LELAND O. B. and KEMPE, C. H. Evaluation of measles immunisation methods. *Amer J Dis Child*, 103 5, 1963.
5. GUNTER, V. F. A collaborative study of measles vaccine in five United States communities. *Amer J Publ Health* 53, 645, 1963.
6. NORRBY E. O. J. Hemagglutination by measles virus. 4. A simple procedure for production of high potency antisera for hemagglutination-inhibition (HI) tests. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med*, 111 814, 1965.
7. NORRBY E. LAGERCRANTZ, R. ÖRD, R. and CARLSTRÖM, GUN Measles vaccination. I. Serologic responses to an inactivated vaccine. *Arch Gv Virusforsch*, 15 545, 1963.
8. NORRBY E. O. J. Separation of measles virus components by equilibrium centrifugation in CsCl gradients. I. Crude and T₂ and ether treated concentrated tissue culture material. *Arch Gv Virusforsch*, 11 306, 1964.
9. WINKELSTEIN W. JONES, R., GRAHAM, O. E., KARLOS D. T. and MOSEK, W. E. Inactivated measles vaccine. III. A field trial in young school children. *JAMA* 173: 398, 1962.

(E. N.) Department of Virus Research
Karolinska Institute
Box 764
Stockholm I
Sweden

Submitted March 2 1964

Accepted March 10, 1964

From the Department of Pediatrics, Karolinska sjukhuset and the Wenner-Gren Research Laboratory Norrtulla sjukhus Stockholm, Sweden

The Changing Circulatory Pattern of the Newborn Infant Studied by the Indicator Dilution Technique

by W. JEGIER,¹ W. BLANKENSHIP,² J. LIND and A. KITCHIN³

Introduction

At birth the changes in the circulation from the intrauterine to the extrauterine type are not immediate but involve a transitional or neonatal period. In spite of all modern cardiological techniques used to analyze this transitional circulation its timing and the exact mechanism of its transition remains controversial.

Among the methods available the dye dilution technique for the study of the neonatal circulation particularly with respect to the time of closure of the ductus arteriosus was introduced by Proo *et al* in 1965. This study was performed on a small number of infants using Evans blue as an indicator.

The present study was designed to amplify this investigation and to add a

study of the time-concentration components, using indocyanine green as the indicator.

Material and Methods

Eighty nine full term, apparently normal infant from essentially uneventful pregnancies were studied. They ranged in age from 3 hours to 23 days. The mothers received no anesthesia and the deliveries were vaginal without complications. One infant had a tall pre-equinovarus deformity, one had a fractured clavicle and one had large cephalohematoma. In four infants a short decrescendo, early systolic murmur was heard and recorded but this had disappeared by the seventh day of life in two of them. In the remaining two infants, in spite of the systolic murmur at the time of the last examination on the fifth and twenty-third day respectively apparent normal pattern indicator dilution curves were recorded. (See under results.)

The indicator used in this study was indocyanine green (manufactured in dry form by Hynson, Westcott & Dunning, Inc. Baltimore Maryland). It was dissolved in an aqueous solvent to contain mg/ml and the solution was used within 6 hours of mixing; 1.8 mg of the dissolved dye was used for each curve. Three to five injections were performed in each infant for a total dose not exceeding 8 mg/kg of body weight. There were no toxic reactions. The indicator was injected and flushed with 1 to 2 ml saline

¹The study was supported in part by grants from the Association for the Aid of Crippled Children and the Medical Research Council of Canada.

²From Montreal Children's Hospital, Montreal, Quebec Canada. Research Fellow of the Medical Research Council of Canada.

³Research Fellow, Department of Pediatrics, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine Nashville, Tennessee U.S.A.

⁴From Western General Hospital, Edinburgh, Scotland, sponsored for this project by Council of Europe Medical Fellowship.

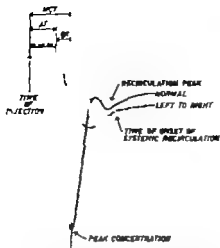


Fig. 1 Schematic representation of the normal and the left & right pattern of indicator dilution curves showing the time-concentration components.

into the jugular vein in 55 infants, the ante-cubital vein in 18 infants, a scalp vein in 14 infants and a dorsal hand vein in 3 infants. The injections were performed as rapidly as possible in one and one-half seconds or less, through a thin walled 21 gauge needle the flush being delivered from the side arm of a three way stop-cock.

The dilution curves were recorded by means of a photoelectric cell with a light source mounted on a spring clip and attached to the pinna of the ear. The output of the cell was fed into a Cambridge electronic recorder which incorporated an impedance matching pre-amplifier system. The response of the system was approximately linear over the range of dye concentration used. Since indocyanine green has an absorption peak at 800 m μ an infrared sensitive photo cell with a peak sensitivity at approximately 800 m μ was used. At this wave length, oxygenated and reduced hemoglobin have the same light absorption and thus any variations in the oxygen saturation of the arterial blood will not significantly affect the dye concentration curves [2*].

A time lapse of 5 to 10 minutes was allowed between the introduction of the needle and the recording of the curves. Only curves recorded from infants asleep or sucking quietly were included in the study and the ones showing excessive fluctuation of the base line or artifacts due to movements of the infants were excluded. The infants were breathing room air and were one-half to two hours postprandial. A blood sample was drawn following the recording of the curves for the determination of venous hematocrit.

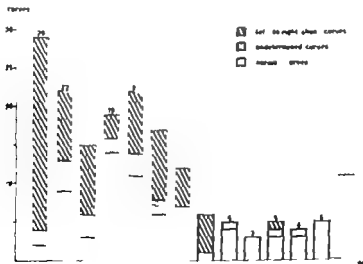


Fig. 2 The curves obtained from infants on different days of life. Not lack of linear decrease in percentage of left to right heart patterns with increasing age.

TABLE 1 The results of 176 curves obtained from 59 infants that were studied

| Age | No. of curves | No. of infants | No. of infants | | | |
|---------|---------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| | | | Normal curves | Undet. curves | Shunt curves | Mixed* curves |
| 1 d | 29 | 17 | 1 | 1 | 16 | |
| 2 d | 22 | 10 | 2 | | 4 | 4 1 NUS 1 US -UU\ |
| 3 d | 15 | 6 | | | 3 | 3 1-US 1-UN 1-UU\ |
| 4 d | 19 | 10 | 5 | | 3 | 2 2-U\ |
| 5 d | 11 | 9 | 3 | | 3 | 3 1-US 1-UN 1-UU\ |
| 6 d | 17 | 9 | 3 | | 4 | 2 1 US 1 US 1-UN |
| 7 d | 12 | 7 | 3 | | 3 | 1 1-UN |
| 8 d | 6 | 3 | 1 | | | |
| 9 d | 5 | 3 | 2 | 1 | | |
| 10 d | 2 | 1 | 1 | | | |
| 11 d | 5 | 2 | 1 | | | 1 |
| 12 d | 4 | 2 | 1 | | | 1 NUS |
| 13 d | 5 | 2 | | | | 1 |
| 14-23 d | 11 | 6 | 6 | | | 1 U\ |

* Mixed curves are infants with different patterns during the same investigation period

N Normal

S Shunt type pattern

U Undetermined type of pattern

values. The blood was withdrawn into an heparinized syringe transferred to a centrifuge tube and centrifuged at 11,500 p.m. for 5 minutes after which the packed cell volume was read from the Guetz chart [23]. One hundred and seventy five curves obtained from 59 infants were available for final analysis (Fig. 1 and Table 1). Of this group 16 babies were studied longitudinally up to 23 days (Fig. 2).

Results

1 Analysis of the types of curves

The normal arterial indicator dilution curve following a single injection of indi-

cator dye shows a time lag of a few seconds (AT) before the dye appears at the recording site. This is followed by a build up period during which time the maximum concentration (MCT) is obtained. This peak concentration is followed by a rapid disappearance phase which follows an exponential course [9]. The first appearance at the sampling site of dye which has traversed the systemic circulation for a second time causes the dilution curve to deviate from the exponential pattern and this is followed by a well defined systemic

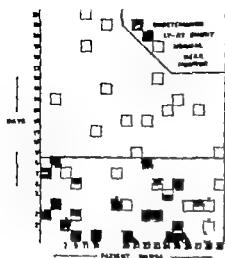


Fig 3. Group of eighteen infants with repeated investigation on different days of life. Two infants (numbers 9 and 24) had shunt and normal curves and two others (number 23 and 27) undetermined and normal curves recorded during the same investigational period.

recirculation peak (Fig 4 and 1). The presence of an abnormal recirculation pathway through the pulmonary circulation, as in left to right shunts, alters the normal curve in two ways. The normal disappearance slope is interrupted by the arrival at the sampling site of dyed blood which has recirculated through the shunt pathway and the systemic recirculation peak is obscured by the abnormal recirculating blood. Small left to right shunts of less than 20% of the pulmonary blood flow give dilution curves which may be indistinguishable from normal [13]. As the size of the shunt increases the break in the disappearance slope comes earlier and is more marked. In large shunts the peak concentration of the curve which is re

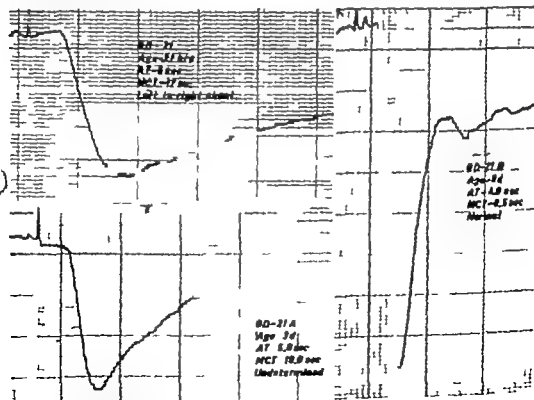


Fig 4. Dye dilution curves showing the change from a left to right shunt type pattern 2 1/2 hours, an undetermined type pattern 3 days and normal type pattern 3 days of age.

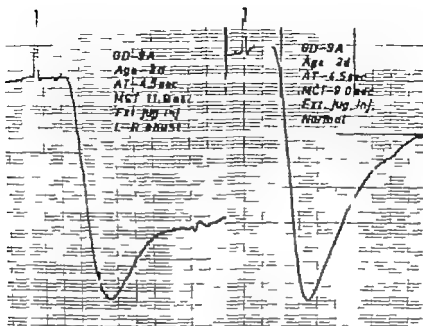


Fig 5. Indicator dilution curves showing variation in the type pattern during the same investigational period. This variation occurred without any apparent change in the state of the infant.

duced because of dilution of the dye with the large flow of blood in the lungs, is followed by a prolonged disappearance phase in which the normal features of the disappearance slope and systemic recirculation peak are lost [13].

The classification of the curves obtained in this study has been based on the work of Carter *et al* [13]. The time-concentration curves were plotted semilogarithmically and the point of deviation of the disappearance slope from an exponential course was determined. The concentration of dye at this point (in mm deflection) was then expressed as a percentage of the peak concentration of the curve. According to this calculated ratio, curves were then grouped into 3 categories. The ones with ratios under 30% were considered to have normal patterns and the ones with

ratios over 35% were considered to have left to right shunt patterns. The intermediate group was labeled "undetermined". In curves showing a very large left to right shunt pattern, no definite point of the onset of recirculation is apparent in the disappearance slope. These curves were included in the left to right shunt group.

In six cases a variation in the type of curve recorded was noted on repeat recordings separated by 5 to 6 minute intervals (Fig 5). In 2 babies the change in pattern followed a period of crying. In 4 infants the variation occurred without any apparent change in the state of the infants. None of the indicator dilution curves showed early appearance of the dye which would indicate the presence of a right to left shunt. Table 1 summarizes the results obtained from analysis of the curves. On

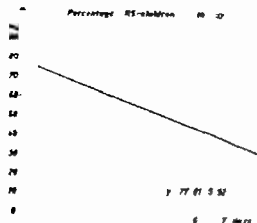


Fig. 6 The percentage of infants with shunt type curves between the age of 1 to 10 days. The points vary greatly around the line and analysis of the figure shows that the variances about the regression line are not constant and that the regression coefficient does not vary significantly from zero. Thus there is no high probability that the percentage of children with shunt type curves does decrease in a linear fashion with increasing age.

the first day of 17 infants, 15 had shunt type curves, one had a normal curve and one had an undetermined type curve. The following days of life show a rather wide scatter of values. However, after the 8th day only one shunt type curve was seen in 35 curves obtained from 18 infants. The percentage of infants with shunt type curves between the age of 1 to 7 days as shown in Fig. 6. The points vary greatly around the line and analysis of the figure shows that the variances about the regression line are not constant and that the regression coefficient does not vary significantly from zero. Thus there is no statistical probability to indicate that the percentage of children with shunt type curves does decrease in a linear fashion with increasing age.

Fig. 3 shows the result obtained from a group of eighteen infants studied longitudinally at different ages. It should be

noted that the eighth day of life forms a dividing line between the occurrence of the shunt and normal type curves.

In Cases 7, 9, 10 and 28 an early decrescendo systolic murmur was heard and recorded over the precordial area. In no other cases were murmurs detected. Phonocardiograms demonstrated the murmur as occupying the first part of systole starting with the first sound and disappearing in a decrescendo manner before the second heart sound. Case 28 had no murmur recorded on the first day of life and an "undetermined" type of curve was obtained. On the second day the same systolic murmur was recorded and a normal dilation curve was obtained.

From the above it follows that the change from shunt to normal type curves occurs at varying periods in neonatal life. Our data are not complete enough to permit a statement as to the time of change from shunt to normal patterns in individual infants. We can only point out that in four of the 18 infants that were repeatedly studied the normal pattern was recorded before the seventh day of life. In the remaining 13 infants, with the exception of Case 3 who had no follow-up after the seventh day of life, the normal pattern appeared after the eighth day.

2. Analysis of the time components

Four time components were selected for study:

(a) The appearance time (ΔT) the time from the injection of the dye to the first detectable appearance of the dye at the recording site (Fig. 1).

(b) The maximal concentration time (MCT) the time from the injection of the dye to peak concentration (Fig. 1).

(c) The build up time (BT) the time between the first detectable dye arriving at the sampling site and the peak concentration, i.e. $MCT - AT - BT$ Fig 1

(d) The time of onset of systemic recirculation (SRT) the time from injection of the indicator to the point of deviation of the normal curve from the exponential course due to systemic recirculation of the dye Fig 1

The AT and MCT were measured directly from the curves and tabulated for the normal type and the shunt type respectively in Table 2. It was found that a statistically significant difference exists between the time concentration components of the normal and the left to right shunt patterns ($P < 0.001$). This finding is in agreement with the data reported by Pree *et al.* [34]. In order to determine the influence of the injection site on the time concentration components the groups were

TABLE 2. AT and MCT relation to type of dilation curves for all age groups

The difference of AT and MCT in the normal and left to right shunt patterns is highly statistically significant ($P < 0.001$)

| | | Normal pattern | L-R Shunt pattern |
|--------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Appearance time | \bar{x} | 45 | 43 |
| | s | 4.80 | 6.03 |
| | s/\bar{x} | 0.134 | 0.140 |
| Maximal conc. time | \bar{x} | 46 | 43 |
| | s | 10.80 | 14.50 |
| | s/\bar{x} | 0.235 | 0.315 |

subdivided according to the venous site used for the injection of indicator. In order to avoid statistical bias only the first curve of each infant was included in this evaluation. There was no significant difference in curves obtained following injection into the jugular the antecubital

TABLE 3. Appearance time and maximal concentration time in relation to type of dilation curves and injection sites for all ages

χ^2 significant difference in time concentration components within normal and abnormal type group with different injection sites.

| | | | Jugular vein | Cubital vein | Scalp vein |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| Appearance time | Normal patterns | \bar{x} | 29 | 11 | 8 |
| | | s | 4.75 | 4.77 | 8.10 |
| | | s/\bar{x} | 0.157 | 0.234 | 0.557 |
| | L-R Shunt patterns | \bar{x} | 4 | 11 | 8 |
| | | s | 3.96 | 6.11 | 6.13 |
| | | s/\bar{x} | 0.314 | 0.616 | 0.712 |
| Maximal concn. time | L-R Shunt patterns | \bar{x} | 24 | 11 | 8 |
| | | s | 12.53 | 15.82 | 15.19 |
| | | s/\bar{x} | 0.567 | 1.547 | 1.871 |
| | Normal patterns | \bar{x} | 30 | 21 | 8 |
| | | s | 10.57 | 10.74 | 10.46 |
| | | s/\bar{x} | 0.314 | 0.616 | 0.712 |

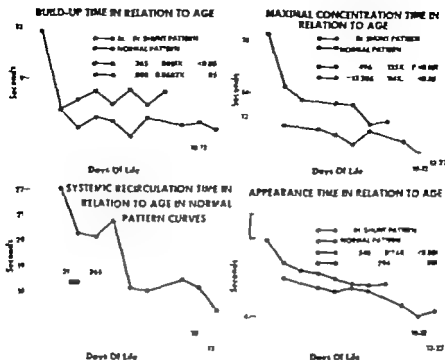


Fig. Time-concentration components (on the ordinat) plotted against τ in days (on the absciss).

or a scalp vein, Table 3 although in the last group there were only 5 cases. Thus it appears that the different injection sites did not change the time-concentration components significantly.

Fig. 7 demonstrates the relationship of different time-concentration components to the age of the infant. The values were measured on the individual dye dilution records and the mean value calculated for each day of life. The values for the time of onset of systemic recirculation were obtained after the curves were replotted semilogarithmically. Statistical evaluation showed that a significant decrease in the duration of the AT and the MCT occurred in the normal, as well as in the shunt type curves with increasing age of the infants. On the other hand, the BT which

represents the difference between the MCT and AT seems to bear no relation to the age of the infants.

Discussion

The results of the present study suggest that most infants show left to right shunt type curves between the ages of 1-4 hours which are rarely seen after the age of 8 days. In trying to pinpoint the site of this shunt one turns first to shunts known to exist during fetal life. The foramen ovale seems a logical site for the occurrence of an intracardiac shunt. James & Burnard [16] using a platinum electrode in the right atrium and giving a breath of hydrogen gas to an apparently healthy infant concluded there was left to right shunting through the foramen ovale.

during the first 24 hours, but not after that time. In the newborn lamb Barcroft *et al* [3] has furnished evidence that the foramen ovale closes immediately following the first breath. From data presented by James [7] a great majority of normal newborn infants have oxygen saturation values in excess of 92% during the first 4 hours of life thus suggesting that a significant right to left shunt through the foramen ovale at rest probably does not exist. The functional closure probably remains incomplete during the first few days of life and is closely related to change in intrathoracic pressure.

The significance of the precapillary anastomoses between the bronchial and the pulmonary arteries in a normal neonate as described by Liebow [29] and their contribution to any left to right shunt in the newborn period is at present unknown.

Different opinions exist regarding closure of the ductus arteriosus and the direction of flow through it when patent. Saling [30] suggests that the flow through the ductus arteriosus maintains its fetal direction (i.e. right to left) for as long as 9 hours after birth. Eldridge & Hultgren [31] found a significantly lower oxygen saturation of arterialized blood in the lower limbs as opposed to the upper limbs in infants under 3 days of age, but not after that age. They presumed that during the first 3 days of life a right to left shunt occurred at the level of the ductus arteriosus. James has reported an alternating flow during each cardiac cycle in a number of infants from 1 to 24 hours of age using angiocardigraphic cinerentgen technique. Adams & Lind [1] and James & Rowe [7] have concluded from oxygen saturation data obtained at the time of cardiac cath-

eterization that the ductus arteriosus may be patent for as long as 10 days. From the data of Rudolph *et al* [38] it seems that of 7 infants under 34 hours of age only showed a left to right shunt using oxygen saturation data as a criterion. They concluded "that the ductus arteriosus is functionally closed after 15 hours but since it is anatomically patent it may be opened under appropriate stimuli during the first 7 to 10 days of life. Although their subjects were without evidence of cardio-respiratory disease 3 were mongols, 1 was microcephalic, 3 were normal and 4 were infants born of diabetic mothers.

From Fig 5 it appears that the percentage of infants with left to right shunts patterns does not show a linear decline in the first 8 days of life. This is further supported by Fig 2. The lack of a definite linear decrease of percentage shunt type curves with increasing age of the infants may suggest that the obliteration of the left to right shunt is not an irreversible event and that during the first weeks of life it may be an intermittent phenomenon. The fact that we were able to obtain different patterns from the same infant during the same investigational period would be in keeping with this hypothesis.

The mean appearance time in infants during the first 4 hours of life is 7.0 seconds (s.e. 0.14). This value decreases gradually during the first 3 weeks of life and reaches a value of 4.3 seconds (s.e. 0.21) at the age of 18 to 23 days. This reduction in the AT is highly significant statistically ($P < 0.001$). The changes in the length of the AT were unrelated to the heart rate nor did they correlate with the hematocrit values.

The appearance time of dye particles at

the pick up site is governed mainly by the length of the pathway and the linear velocity of the blood flow through the segment of the circulation between the injection site and the recording site. From data supplied by Kamaras [28] and others it is evident that major changes in the length of the pathway cannot be effective in producing the changes noted in the circulation time. Also in this study the AT was not significantly affected by altering the injection sites.

The explanation for the decreasing AT during the first week of life may in part lie in the known increase in the rate of volume flow in the peripheral circulation as demonstrated by Celander [14, 15]. He has shown a significant increase during the first hours of life. In infants under 12 hours of age the measured resting blood flow in the foot and calf was found to be in the region of 2 to 5 ml/min/100 ml and in infants between 1 and 30 hours of age the resting blood flow has increased to 5 to 10 ml/min/100 ml. It appears likely that other peripheral circulatory beds such as the ear capillaries undergo similar changes and that the initial low volume flow will contribute to the prolongation of the time components in the first 24 hours of life and may account for the difference in AT, MCT and time of onset of systemic resuscitation on the first day as compared to the following days, Fig. 7.

Summary

In 89 normal full term newborn infants from healthy mothers with uneventful pregnancies, labors and deliveries, indicator dilution curves were recorded using indocyanine green and a Cambridge recording apparatus. In 15 out of 17 infants studied curves were obtained during the first 24 hours of life which indicate the presence of a left to right shunt. Between days 2 and 8 twenty two out of fifty-four infants showed the left to right shunt pattern. Seventeen infants had a normal type curve and one had an undetermined type curve. Fifteen showed mixed type curves during the same investigational period (normal, shunt or an undetermined type curve). After the 8th day only one shunt type curve was seen in 35 curves obtained from 18 infants.

In the newborn infants a prolongation of the time-concentration components was observed which gradually fell with increasing age of the infants. The difference between these time-concentration components on the first day as opposed to the values obtained between the thirteenth and twenty third day is statistically significant.

The factors shortening the time-concentration components are discussed with an increasing flow velocity considered to be the most important.

References

1. ADAMS, F. H. and LLOYD, J. Physiological studies on the cardiovascular status of normal newborn infants with special reference to the ductus arteriosus. *Pediatrics* 19: 431, 1957.
2. BARCLAY, A. E., FRANKLIN, M. J. and PRICHARD, M. M. L. *The Fetal Circulation*. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, 1945.
3. BARNHOFF, Sir Joseph. *Researches on Pre-natal Life*. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, 1947.

4. BEERWALTER, W. H., JOYSON P. C. and SOLARI, A. *J. Clinical Use of Radiotelescope* Saunders & Co., New York, 1957
5. BLUMHART, H. L. and WILKES, S. Clinical studies on the velocity of blood flow *Clin Res* 6 103 1958.
6. BLUMHART, H. L. and WILKES, S.: Studies on velocity of blood flow *Clin Res* 4 399 1957
7. BONY, H. V. R., DAWES, G. S. and MOTT J. C.: Oxygen lack and uterine nervous control of the fetal circulation in the lamb. *J. Physiol.* 124 149 1956
8. BRADY, M. and ROWE, R. D. Arrestation of the heart—early neonatal period. *Amer J Dis Child*, 101: 8-9, 1961
9. BRADY, J. C. and WOOD, E. H. Indirect dilution curves in acyanotic congenital heart disease *Circulation*, 9 890, 1954.
10. BURNARD, E. D.: A murmur from the ductus arteriosus in the newborn baby *Brit Med J* 804, 1959
11. BURNARD, E. D. and JAMES, L. S.: The cardiac silhouette in newborn infants: A cinematographic study of the normal range *Pediatrics*, 6 712, 1961.
12. BURNARD, E. D. and JAMES, L. S.: Radiographic heart size in apparently healthy newborn infants: Clinical and biochemical correlations. *Pediatrics*, 4 736, 1961
13. CARTER, S. A., BAJEC, D. F., YASTKELL, E. W. and WOOD, E. H.: Estimation of left to right shunt from arterial dilution curves. *J Lab Clin Med*, 65 77 1965
14. CHLANDER, O. and MARSH, K.: Reactive hyperemia in the foot and calf of the newborn infant *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 544, 1962.
15. CHLANDER, O. Blood flow in the foot and calf of the newborn. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 49-49A, 1960
16. COVERKILL, S. and UHARI, C.: A period of functional closure of the foramen ovale and the ductus botalli in the human newborn. *Circulation*, 30 274, 1964
17. D WIG, G. S.: Respiratory and cardiovascular function in the lamb at birth. Adaptation to extruterine life. *Res Conference on Pediatric Research*, p. 18, 1959
18. — Patterns of transitional circulation. Adaptation to extruterine life. *Res Conference on Pediatric Research*, p. 27 1959
19. — Fetal and Neonatal Circulation in Relation to Congenital Heart Disease: A symposium presented at the Washington Meeting of Amer. Ass. Advanc. Sc. Ed. Alan D. Bross and Gordon K. Moe p. 39, Washington, 1960.
20. D WIG, G. S.: Changes in the circulation birth and the effects of asphyxia, in *Recent Adv in Pediatrics* 2nd ed. 1959
21. ELKHOR, F. L. and HULTORSEN H. V.: The physiologic closure of the ductus arteriosus in newborn infants. *J. Clin. Invest.* 34 95-1955.
22. FOX, L. J., BROOKER, L. S. and HESKELT, D. S., EMMER, H. E. and WOOD, E. H.: A tricarbochrome dye for the continuous recording of dilution curves in whole blood independent of variations in blood oxygen saturation. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 32 478, 1957
23. GUEST, G. M. and SILVER, V. E.: Procedure for the Guest centrifuge method for the determination of the volume of cells in the blood. *J Lab Clin Med*, 19 787 1954
24. HALLIDAY-SMITH, K. A.: Some auscultatory and phonographic findings observed in early infancy *Brit Med J* 1 786, 1960
25. HAMILTON, W. F., MOORE, J. W., KENNEDY, J. M. and SPURLING, R. G.: Simultaneous determination of the pulmonary and circulation times in man and of a figure related to cardiac output. *Amer J Physiol*, 24 379, 1978.
26. JAMES, L. S. and BURNARD, E. D. Abnormal shunting through the foramen ovale after birth. *Amer J Dis Child*, 102 850, 1961
27. JAMES, L. S. and ROWE, R. D. The pattern of response of pulmonary and systemic pressure in newborn and older infants to short period of hypoxia. *J Pediatr*, 51 4, 1957
28. KAMBAR, J. and SIEGEL, G. Die Zeitwerte der oxymetrisch registrierten Farbstoff- und diaphragmalkurven von 4-14-jährigen gesunden Kindern. *Acta Paediatr Hung*, 3 293, 1962.
29. LITZOW, A. A.: Pulmonary structure and function. *Ciba Foundation Symposium Recent Adv. Pulm. Anat.*, p. 2, 1962.
30. LIND, J. Heart volume in normal infants. *Acta Radiol Suppl*, 22 1950.
31. — Disturbance on the post-natal closure of various blood vessels and channels and their relationship to asphyxia neonatorum. *Annals of the Northern Infant. A symposium of the Council for Intern. Org. of Med Sc.* Blackwell, Oxford, p. 171 1953.
32. LIND, J. and WIKSTRÖM, C.: Human fetal circulation. Changes in the cardiovascular system at birth and disturbances in the post-natal closure of the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus. *Cold Spring Harbor Symposium on Quantitative Biology* 19 1954, CIBA.
33. MITCHELL, S. Ductus arteriosus in the neonatal period. *J Pediatr*, 51 2, 1957
34. PEEB, K. J. and CAVALLI, D. E.: Dye dilution curves and cardiac output in newborn infants. *Circulation*, 11 789 1955.
35. REY OLDS, R. R. M.: Hemodynamic characteristics of the fetal circulation. *Amer J Ophysiol* 63 69 1964
36. REY OLDS, R. R. M.: The Fetal Circulation. *Changes at Birth, Development and Function of the Cardiovascular System*. FA. A. A.

Luisada. McGraw Hill, New York, Toronto, London, 1961

37. ROWE, R. D. Clinical observations of transitional circulation *Adaptation to Extrauterine Life*. Ross Conference on Pediatric Research, 9 33, 1959
38. RUDOLPH, A. M., AULD, P. A. M., DROM

BOUGH, J. E., NADAS, A. B. and SMITH, C. A.: Studies on the circulation of infants with hyaline membrane disease. *Amer J Dis Child*, 93 630, 1959.

39. SÄLLING, E.: Neue Untersuchungsergebnisse über den Kreislauf des Kindes unmittelbar nach der Geburt. *Arch Gynec*, 194. 287 1960.

Submitted March 9 1964

Accepted March 14 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Karolinska Sjukhuset
Stockholm 60
Sweden

Cord Around the Neck. Further Analysis of Incidence¹

by J SELWYN CRAWFORD

Recently it was suggested [1] that amongst primigravid patients, the incidence of cord around the neck at delivery was one in three. The series, as published, consisted of 598 consecutive deliveries of married primigravidae with single pregnancies, who received their antenatal care under the supervision of the Obstetric Medicine Unit, Aberdeen, and who gave birth to an infant of at least 500 g birth weight. Cases of breech presentation were not included in the study.

The figures were based upon an analysis of data collected in large part by midwives and it was felt that they were reliable: the results of personal observation of a smaller number of cases had been in close agreement with those of the major series. In approximately 80% of cases of nuchal cord, the cord had been clamped and cut prior to completion of delivery and this positive involvement by the midwives appeared likely to diminish the possibility of recorder-errors.

However as cord around the neck is one of the factors which appears significantly to influence the findings obtained in a current investigation of the bioche-

mistry of the newborn (result shortly to be published) it seemed appropriate to re-examine the data collected during the course of the previous study in a quest for maternal factors associated with nuchal cord. The results of this further analysis are presented here.

Consideration here is given to the original 598 patients; eleven patients definable in terms similar to those enumerated in the opening paragraph, but delivered by Caesarean section;

thirty-six deliveries which conformed to the general classification except that the infant weighed less than 500 g at birth (nuchal cord was present in 11 of these cases).

The possibilities that nuchal cord occurred more or less frequently in groups of mothers who had toxæmia of pregnancy or whose labour lasted for more than 18 hours, or who were aged 25 years or more were investigated. As might be expected, no significant variation was found. The incidence of nuchal cord in a group of patients who had completed 4 weeks of pregnancy prior to delivery was no different from that of the entire series.

Attention was next turned to the possibility that there was an association be-

¹Statistical consultation and computing services were provided by the Biological Sciences Computation Center, University of Chicago (XTH Grant No. FR00112).

TABLE 1 *Examination of the entire series with reference to number of completed weeks of pregnancy*

Presented in the subsidiary Tables A, B, and C are data referred to in the discussion of the statistical analysis of the results (see text).

| Completed weeks | <35 | 35 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | Total |
|-----------------|-------|------|------|------|-------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| With cord | 5 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 37 | 78 | 53 | 20 | 3 | 215 |
| Without cord | 13 | 8 | 18 | 51 | 70 | 137 | 83 | 43 | 8 | 430 |
| Total | 18 | 11 | 24 | 62 | 107 | 215 | 136 | 63 | 11 | 645 |
| Cord incidence | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.25 | 0.18 | 0.35 | 0.36 | 0.39 | 0.31 | 0.34 | |
| | 0.317 | | | | 0.358 | | | | | 0.333 |

| Table 1A | | | | Table 1B | | | Table 1C | | |
|-----------------|------|------|-------|----------|------|-------|----------|------|-------|
| Completed Weeks | <39 | 40 | Total | <38 | 39 | Total | <38 | >39 | Total |
| With cord | 62 | 78 | 140 | 25 | 57 | 82 | 28 | 190 | 218 |
| Without cord | 160 | 137 | 297 | 90 | 70 | 160 | 90 | 240 | 330 |
| Total | 222 | 215 | 437 | 115 | 127 | 242 | 118 | 530 | 648 |
| Cord incidence | 0.28 | 0.36 | 0.32 | 0.22 | 0.45 | 0.34 | 0.24 | 0.36 | 0.33 |

tween gestational age and the incidence of nuchal cord.

The hypothesis to be tested with regard to the data presented in Table 1 is that the incidence of cord is the same in all gestational age groups. Chi-square computed for Table 1 was 10.77 (8 deg. fr.) corresponding to a P value of 0.21 and not considered statistically significant. For a more detailed analysis, this X^2 was partitioned (cf. 2) arbitrarily into 8 independent chi squares (1 degree of freedom each) corresponding to the 8 inquiries whether cord incidence in each age group (except the youngest) differed from cord incidence in the combined younger age groups. Two of these latter X^2 's were moderately large: for Table 1A, $X^2=3.43$, $P=0.07$; for Table 1B, $X^2=4.11$, $P=0.05$. Thus there is some evidence albeit borderline in favour of differences in cord incidence among the gestational age groups.

The data indeed show a considerable increase in cord incidence between the completion of 38 weeks and the completion of 39 weeks. If as suggested by this observation, Table 1 is compressed into Table 1C the corresponding $X^2=7.59$, which would be significant statistically ($P=0.005$) had the decision to form Table 1C not depended on the data. These derivations thus give rise to an interesting hypothesis that could be tested specifically on a different set of data.

The relationship between gestational age and nuchal cord was maintained irrespective of the presence or absence of the factors in obstetric history mentioned previously.

There remained one further possible explanation to be tested: perhaps the infants of low gestational age being relatively smaller than the more mature infants, might slip through the loop of cord and

TABLE 2 *Consideration of entire series incidence of nuchal cord within groups defined with reference to birth weight*

| Birth weight (g) | <2000 | 2001-2500 | 2501-3000 | 3001-3500 | 3501-4000 | 4001-4500 | >4501 | Total |
|------------------|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------|-------|
| With cord | 5 | 8 | 48 | 92 | 63 | 7 | 2 | 315 |
| Without cord | 6 | 19 | 60 | 178 | 110 | 25 | 2 | 430 |
| Total | 11 | 27 | 108 | 370 | 163 | 32 | 4 | 645 |
| Cord incidence | 0.455 | 0.296 | 0.348 | 0.341 | 0.325 | 0.219 | 0.500 | 0.333 |
| | 0.343 | | 0.343 | | 0.312 | | | |
| | 0.347 | | | | 0.229 | | | |

thus be free from nuchal cord at delivery. The series was, therefore, examined with reference to the birth weight of the infant (Table 2). There was no evidence that nuchal cord occurred less frequently among smaller infants than among larger.

The major hypothesis derived from the data obtained in Aberdeen was tested by applying it to a series which has been studied at the Chicago Lying-In Hospital.

(Work supported by an Otto S. A. Sprague Memorial Institute Grant.)

(Table 3) Virtual primigravidae (i.e. patients whose only previous pregnancy had resulted in an abortion during the first trimester) and primigravidae have been considered together and although the numbers are too small to provide statistical significance they appear to strengthen the hypothesis.

It is interesting to note that if there is indeed an increase in the incidence of nuchal cord among multigravidae as gestational age progresses, it occurs approxima-

TABLE 3 *Analysis of the incidence of cord around the neck with reference to gestational age at delivery in a small series of patients delivered at Chicago Lying-In Hospital*

| Completed weeks | <36 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | Total |
|--|-------|----|----|-------|----|-------|----|----|-------|
| <i>Multigravidae</i> | | | | | | | | | |
| With cord | 3 | 2 | 0 | 10 | 12 | 9 | 0 | 1 | 38 |
| Without cord | 4 | 2 | 10 | 22 | 37 | 24 | 2 | 0 | 101 |
| Total | 7 | 4 | 10 | 32 | 50 | 33 | 2 | 1 | 139 |
| Cord incidence | 0.283 | | | 0.267 | | | | | 0.273 |
| | 0.226 | | | | | 0.290 | | | |
| <i>Primigravidae and virtual primo</i> | | | | | | | | | |
| With cord | 0 | 2 | 3 | 7 | 4 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 19 |
| Without cord | 2 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 14 | 2 | 2 | 58 |
| Total | 4 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 20 | 16 | 4 | 3 | 77 |
| Cord incidence | 0.254 | | | 0.317 | | | | | 0.258 |

tely one week earlier than is the case among the primigravidae. Speculation regarding the cause of the distinction would be premature at this time.

Discussion

As far as the writer is aware it has not previously been suggested that the incidence of nuchal cord may be correlated with any maternal factor although Shul & Eastman [3] demonstrated that it was related to the length of the cord. It appears from the present study that the incidence is indeed not influenced by maternal age, the duration of labour or the presence or absence of maternal hypertension or toxæmia. However it is suggestive from the present analysis that the likelihood of finding a nuchal cord at the delivery of a primigravid patient (whose single foetus is presenting by the vertex) increases markedly when pregnancy advances beyond the 38th week. The explanation of this increase should it be confirmed, might relate to such phenomena as "lightening", increased activity of the foetus in utero and the diminution of the volume of amniotic fluid during late pregnancy. A discussion of such hypotheses at this stage would probably be unrewarding. It is however worth emphasizing that in any study—whether based upon clinical observation or upon a study of cord blood or intervillous blood—of the effects of increasing gestational age care must be taken that the influence (pre- or intradelivery) of nuchal cord does not distort estimations of the comparisons of the efficiency of exchange at the placental barrier.

For example. Suppose a number of pri-

migravid patients, who were delivered during the 38th week of pregnancy and who were apparently free from obstetric pathology were investigated to provide base-line parameters of the biochemistry of intervillous blood or of cord blood, or of the incidence of neonatal depression; then suppose a similar investigation were undertaken upon a group of primigravidae similar in all other respects except that they were delivered at 40 weeks or 42 weeks gestation, if cases of nuchal cord were not excluded from the study there would possibly be twice as many such cases among the second group as among the first and thus the validity of many conclusions drawn from the results of the study would be open to grave doubt.

Finally it must be emphasized that this study was concerned with primigravidae only. No comparable data have yet been collected with respect to the multigravid patient.

Summary

A re-examination of data referred to in previous communications has been made. The patients studied were all married primigravidae with single pregnancies presenting by the vertex, who had attended for antenatal care under the jurisdiction of the Obstetric Unit in Aberdeen. The series is comprised of 600 mature infants (including 11 delivered by elective Caesarean section) and 86 infants premature by birth weight.

Nuchal cord was found at delivery in one-third of these cases. Closer analysis revealed that the incidence was approximately the same among groups of patients who had one of the following attributes: hypertension or toxæmia of preg-

nancy labour prolonged to or beyond 18 hours; aged ≥ 35 years or more at the time of delivery; gestational period beyond the 42nd week.

Further analysis with reference to gestational age showed that the incidence of nuchal cord rose abruptly during the 39th week, and that the incidence thereafter was maintained during subsequent weeks.

It appeared that the birth weight of the infant was not a determining factor in this relationship.

The importance of this with respect especially to the investigation of the significance of increasing gestational age is briefly discussed.

References

1. CRAWFORD, J. S.: Cord round the neck: incidence and sequelae. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 51: 554 1962.
2. MAXWELL, A. E.: *Analyzing Qualitative Data*, Methuen, London, 1961.
3. SHUL, K. F. and EASTMAN N. J.: Coiling of the umbilical cord around the foetal neck. *J Obstet Gynaec Brit Emp*, 64: 237 1957.

Submitted Febr 23, 1964

Accepted March 23, 1964.

University of Chicago, Lying In Hospital
5841 Maryland Avenue
Chicago 37 Illinois
U.S.A.

From the Department of Paediatrics, Kronprinsessan Lovisas Barnsjukhus, Stockholm
and the Department of Clinical Biochemistry, Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm

Acid Phosphatase Activity of Serum Thrombocytes and Erythrocytes in a Juvenile Form of Gaucher's Disease

by PER-OLOF HILLBORG and BENGT ESTBORN

The level of serum acid phosphatase is raised in Gaucher's disease (GD) [40-42]. To elucidate the pathogenesis of this disorder of lipid metabolism it would be of great value if the origin of this phosphatase could be revealed. It is not known whether it is derived from a particular organ or from the whole reticuloendothelial system (RES). Neither is it known if the appearance of this phosphatase in the serum is the cause of the various symptoms of the disease or if it is a side effect of another enzyme error.

In 1950 seven families from the Norrbotten County of Sweden with 12 cases of GD in children of a single generation were reported [23]. By examining the parish registers, it has been possible to show that 6 of these 7 families are related to each other and are descended from a common ancestor born about 1630 (Fig. 1).

By investigating the 6 patients with GD and some of their relatives the authors have tried to find the answer to 4 different problems of importance in the disease.

1 The symptoms of this Swedish form of GD are somewhat different from those of the classical adult and infantile forms.

In this juvenile form neurological signs develop at a later stage than in the infantile form and the patients survive until adolescence [22]. Our aim has been to investigate whether the acid phosphatase level is also raised in this variant of the disease and whether the enzyme activity shows any characteristic deviations from the normal.

2 Part of the acid phosphatase activity in serum is normally derived from the thrombocytes [44-49]. The megakaryocytes also contain acid phosphatase [35]. There is therefore reason to investigate if the serum acid phosphatase in GD comes from the megakaryocyte-thrombocytes. We therefore examined the content and type of acid phosphatase in the thrombocytes in GD to find out if they deviate from the normal and if the type is the same as in diseased serum.

3 It is known that normal erythrocytes contain a relatively large amount of acid phosphatase [23-36]. We have tried to clarify if the serum acid phosphatase in GD is derived from the erythrocytes, by analysis of the phosphatase content of the erythrocytes and by experiments with various enzyme inhibitors.

4 Gaucher's disease of this juvenile type

is inherited with an autosomal, recessive gene [3]. Since the parents and some of the siblings then are gene carriers it has been of interest to examine whether these relatives have a raised level of serum acid phosphatase.

Material

The patients are the same 6, described in a previous paper on the neurological signs in this form of GD [22]. In addition to the patients there is a group of relatives consisting of 2 grandparents, 11 parents and 9 siblings. A number of parents and siblings belong to families which have had children with GD now dead.

In 1931, Emmrich & Scheffler showed that the serum level of acid phosphatase varies with age [9]. At the beginning of our investigation we knew of no work on the content of serum acid phosphatase in children, estimated by our method. In our studies, to be able to refer to the normal values at different ages, we first measured the phosphatase activity in groups of healthy children and adults.

We did not have access to a sufficiently large group of completely healthy children. We therefore contented ourselves, in the age group 4-20 years, with patients admitted to Kronprinsessan Lovisas Barnsjukhus for common paediatric conditions, not having metabolic or skeletal disorders, in which a raised or lowered acid phosphatase level presumably occurs [4, 8, 10, 15, 20, 21, 27, 29, 31, 43, 47]. Blood samples were taken from 58 of these children. In addition there were blood samples from 10 children admitted to the Stockholm City Hospital for Infectious Diseases with scarlet fever and 4 blood donors between 18 and 40 years of age. In this way the child-adolescent group in this "normal material" contained 72 persons.

The normal values for adults were determined in 52 blood donors between 1 and 60 years of age who had undergone a routine

medical examination and been found healthy. The age distribution in the normal material is shown in Table 1.

Methods

Serum, citrated plasma rich or poor in thrombocytes and suspensions of thrombocytes and erythrocytes were collected from the normals and the patients and then prepared as described elsewhere [17]. For practical reasons only citrated plasma could be obtained from the patients' relatives. Because of primitive laboratory facilities, the samples from this last group could not be centrifuged. The red blood cells were allowed to sediment at +4°C for about 5 hours, and the plasma decanted. If the plasma samples were then kept deep frozen until analysis was possible.

The activity of the acid phosphatases was determined by the method of Stolbach et al. [20] with minor modifications as described elsewhere [12]. The substrat was 50mM diiodotriphenylphosphat. The activity in serum and plasma was expressed in King Armstrong Unit (KAU). One unit corresponds to the amount of acid phosphatase in 100 ml serum, which liberates 1.0 mg phenol from phenylphosphat at a pH of 4.9 at 37°C in one hour. The activity in thrombocytes and erythrocytes was expressed in µg phenol liberated at 37°C/hour/million cells.

The sensitivity of the acid phosphatases to inhibitory substances was examined using buffer solutions with 2mM copper sulphat.

TABLE 1 Age and sex distribution of the normal controls

| Age | Males | Females | Total | |
|-----------|-------|---------|-------|---|
| 4-9 years | 14 | 13 | 27 | 2 |
| 10-15 | 17 | 21 | 34 | |
| 16-20 | 7 | 0 | 7 | |
| 21-60 | 52 | 0 | 52 | |
| Total | 90 | 34 | 124 | |

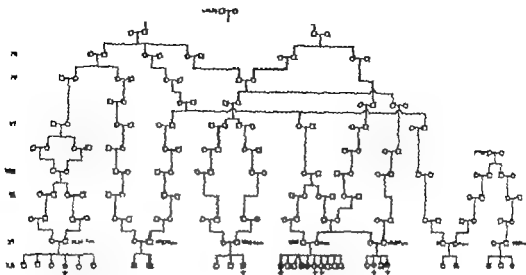


Fig. 1 Family tree of 7 families with Gaucher disease in the Norrbotten County of Sweden. Six of these families have a common ancestor born about 1830 in the community of Övertorneå. □ - Healthy male, ○ - Sick female.

0.5% formaldehyde and 20mM Li^+ tartrate respectively.

Statistical calculations of the mean standard deviation and significance of the differences between the means (t test) were performed as described by Kemp & Nielsen [19].

Results

As shown in Fig. 2 children and adolescents have a considerably higher acid phosphatase activity in serum than adults and the values have a relatively wide scatter. The activity then falls between the ages 12 and 20 years becoming rather constant in adults. Table 2 shows the material divided into various age groups. The mean for the child-adolescent group, 3.62 ± 0.94 (s.d.) kAU, is significantly higher than the mean for the adults, 2.11 ± 0.45 kAU ($P < 0.001$).

As seen in Fig. 2 and Table 2 the acid phosphatase activity in serum from patients with GD is markedly increased. The differences are statistically highly signi-

ficant if the patients' phosphatase values are compared with those of the normal controls in the corresponding age groups.

The acid phosphatase content of the thrombocytes and erythrocytes was estimated in 17 children and 20 adults from the normal material as well as in 6 patients. Table 3 shows that there is no significant

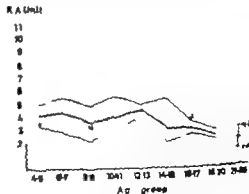


Fig. 2. Total acid phosphatase activity in serum from 8 patients with Gaucher disease (○) and from normal controls in various age groups. For the ages 4-20 years the mean, maximum and minimum values are recorded, for the age group 21-40 years the mean \pm S.D. is shown.

TABLE 3. Total acid phosphatase activity in serum from patients with Gaucher's disease and from normal controls

| | | | Acid phosphatase activity KA Units | Statistical significance of difference between groups | |
|------------------------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------|---|--------------------|
| <i>Gaucher disease</i> | | | | | |
| A. Pat. | J O | 8 years | 9.68 | A-B | $P < 0.001$ |
| | B. O | 7 | 8.04 | | |
| | L. J | 9 | 11.41 | BI-BII | $P > 0.1$ |
| | J. J | 13 | 8.76 | BI-BIII | $0.01 > P > 0.001$ |
| | A. A | 13 | 7.15 | BII-BIII | $0.01 > P > 0.001$ |
| | E. J | 10 | 6.73 | | |
| Mean \pm S.D. | | | 7.75 ± 1.97 | | |
| <i>Normals</i> | | | | | |
| B. I | 4-8 years | $n = 7$ | 3.85 ± 0.80 | BI-C | $P < 0.001$ |
| | II 10-15 | $n = 38$ | 3.04 ± 0.98 | BII-C | $P < 0.001$ |
| | III 16-20 | $n = 7$ | 3.66 ± 1.10 | BIII-C | $P > 0.1$ |
| B. | 4-20 | $n = 72$ | 3.62 ± 0.94 | | |
| C. | 21-60 | $n = 22$ | 2.11 ± 0.45 | | |

difference between the acid phosphatase content of these cells in healthy children and adults. However the mean acid phosphatase activity of the patients' thrombocytes and erythrocytes is somewhat lower than that of the normal controls. Most of the individual values lie within the normal range (Fig. 3), but for the erythrocytes the difference between the means is highly significant ($P < 0.001$).

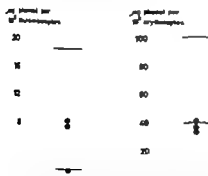


Fig. 3. Acid phosphatase activity in thrombocytes and erythrocytes from 6 patients with Gaucher's disease (●). The rectangles designate the normal range (± 2 S.D.) determined on blood from 37 normal controls.

The inhibitory effect of various substances on the acid phosphatase activity in serum, thrombocytes and erythrocytes was estimated in blood samples from the 6 patients and from normal children and adolescents between 4 and 20 years of age. As shown in Table 4 and Fig. 4 the inhibitory effect of copper sulphate and formaldehyde is lower in the serum and plasma of the patients than in those of the normals. The difference is highly significant. On the average $2(+)$ -tartrate inhibits less than 5% of the acid phosphatase activity in serum and plasma of both the patients and controls. On the other hand the inhibitory patterns in thrombocytes and erythrocytes from both the patients and controls are identical (Table 4, Fig. 5).

To find out if the serum level of acid phosphatase is raised in the presumptive gene carriers we analysed blood samples from 3 grandparents, 11 parents and 9 siblings of the patients. Only plasma samples were taken from these relatives. Because of primitive laboratory facilities the

TABLE 3 *Acid phosphatase activity in thrombocytes and erythrocytes from patients in Gaucher's disease and from normal controls*

| | Microgram phenol liberated/hour | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| | 10 ⁶ thrombocytes | 10 ⁶ erythrocytes |
| A. Pat. J O 8 years | 0.077 | 0.400 |
| S. O 7 | 0.144 | 0.328 |
| L. J 6 | 0.011 | 0.149 |
| J. J 13 | 0.033 | 0.355 |
| A. A. 13 | 0.085 | 0.688 |
| K. J 19 | 0.033 | 0.467 |
| Mean \pm s.d. n = 6 | 0.074 \pm 0.047 | 0.446 \pm 0.178 |
| B. Normals 4-14 years n = 17 | 0.095 \pm 0.038 | 0.730 \pm 0.168 |
| C. Normals 20-58 years n = 20 | 0.103 \pm 0.049 | 0.734 \pm 0.167 |
| B + C. Normal 4-58 years n = 37 | 0.100 \pm 0.044 | 0.732 \pm 0.165 |
| Difference B-C | P > 0.1 | P > 0.1 |
| A-(B + C) | P > 0.1 | P < 0.001 |

samples could not be centrifuged satisfactorily so that many of the thrombocytes remained in the plasma. These samples were kept deep frozen. When the analyses were made later varying amounts of acid phosphatase had been released from the thrombocytes (49) so that the acid phosphatase level was raised.

Table 4 and Fig 4 and 5 show that the thrombocyte phosphatase is almost completely inhibited by copper sulphate while the plasma phosphatase in GD is very little inhibited. We therefore examined the activity of copper resistant acid phosphatase of plasma from 69 of our normal controls, the patients relatives mentioned above and the patients. All of the relatives examined had values within the normal range but the patients had raised levels of acid phosphatase in plasma even after

inhibition with copper sulphate. Thus it is not possible to reveal the heterozygotes of the GD gene by phosphatase analyses. Crocker & Landing obtained the same result [6].



Fig. 4 Inhibition patterns of acid phosphatase activity in serum (S) and plasma (P) from 20 ml copper sulphate, 0.5 % formaldehyde and 30 ml IX (+)-tartrate. — Normals, — Patients with Gaucher's disease.

TABLE 4 Inhibition of acid phosphatase activity in serum plasma thrombocytes and erythrocytes from normal children (4-20 years) and patients with Gaucher's disease (5-19 years) by copper sulphate formaldehyde and L(+)-tartrate

| | Copper sulphate | | Formaldehyde | | L(+)-tartrate | |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------|
| | n | $M \pm s.d.$ | n | $M \pm s.d.$ | n | M |
| Serum | | | | | | |
| A. Normal | 50 | 11.1 ± 2.8 | 49 | 22.9 ± 7.8 | 50 | ≈ 5 |
| B. GD | 6 | 2.6 ± 2.6 | 6 | 11.6 ± 2.6 | 6 | |
| Difference A-B | | $P < 0.001$ | | $P < 0.001$ | | |
| Plasma | | | | | | |
| C. Normal | 39 | 18.8 ± 9.4 | 31 | 29.8 ± 11.1 | 31 | ≈ 5 |
| D. GD | 8 | 4.9 ± 5.1 | 6 | 14.8 ± 4.8 | 6 | |
| Difference C-D | | $0.01 > P > 0.001$ | | $P < 0.001$ | | |
| Thrombocytes | | | | | | |
| E. Normal | 9 | 92.4 ± 2.8 | 9 | 98.5 ± 2.2 | 9 | ≈ 5 |
| F. GD | 6 | 90.8 ± 2.1 | 6 | 92.2 ± 1.5 | 6 | |
| Difference E-F | | $P > 0.1$ | | $P > 0.1$ | | |
| Erythrocytes | | | | | | |
| G. Normal | 9 | 93.2 ± 2.7 | 9 | 92.9 ± 2.8 | 9 | ≈ 5 |
| H. GD | 8 | 94.7 ± 1.7 | 6 | 97.5 ± 1.7 | 6 | |
| Difference G-H | | $P > 0.1$ | | $P > 0.1$ | | |

Discussion

In their very thorough work on serum acid phosphatase in GD Crocker & Landring also gave normal values for children [6]. They used phenylphosphate as substrate. Their normal controls were 39 institutionalized children from a state hospital, free from bone or metabolic disease and 41 healthy schoolboys. They found a clear difference between the levels of acid phosphatase in serum of children and adults.

In their investigation Laron & Epstein-Halberstadt [31] had a normal material of 101 healthy children from newborn to 18 years of age as well as 13 adults. This is presumably the largest and most repre-



FIG. 4. Inhibition patterns of acid phosphatase activity in thrombocytes (T) and erythrocytes (E) from 2mM copper sulphate, 0.5 formaldehyde and 20mM L(+)-tartrate. — Normal, — Patients with Gaucher's disease

utative investigation in this field in the literature. The highest level was found during the first two days of life.

In the above two papers there was a rise in serum acid phosphatase at 12-13 years of age and the level in children was about twice as high as in adults. These results were confirmed by us. In our material the difference between the combined child-adolescent and adult groups is highly significant ($P < 0.001$).

Gebala & Rosenmund could not find any difference between the activity of serum acid phosphatase in 30 children 1-11 years of age and in adults [10]. The explanation may be that they used β -glycerophosphate as substrate.

Serum acid phosphatase activity in Gaucher's disease

Apart from metastasizing prostatic carcinoma and GD high serum acid phosphatase has been found in Paget's disease [40-47], hyperparathyroidism [40], osteopetrosis [10-43], osteogenesis imperfecta [15-27], liver disease [4], gonadal dysgenesis [8], mammary cancer [32] and Niemann-Pick's disease (NPD) [5-21]. Except for the last disease the clinical differential diagnosis from GD should present no great difficulties. It is interesting that in 11 determinations on 6 different patients with NPD Crocker & Farber [5] were unable to confirm the rise of acid phosphatase described by Hastrup & Videbæk [21] in a patient with this disease. However, the acid phosphatase in this last patient was of the type found in GD with low activity to β -glycerophosphate and high to phenylphosphate.

Rosenzajn & Efrati [37] (personal comm.) have investigated the staining pro-

perties and appearance of the GD cells and the level of serum acid phosphatase in 6 patients. Four of these patients had GD cells in which the cytoplasm gave typical staining reactions and contained curved fibrils often arranged in whorls. The serum acid phosphatase level was raised in these 4 patients. The fifth patient had typical GD cells in the bone marrow but normal value of serum acid phosphatase and a nonpalpable spleen. The GD cells of the sixth patient showed similar staining reactions but the cytoplasm was filled with vacuoles and thus resembled NPD cells. This patient's spleen was enlarged and the serum acid phosphatase was raised.

If the diagnosis were right the case of NPD of Hastrup & Videbæk and the sixth case of GD of Rosenzajn & Efrati suggest that there may be intermediary forms of these diseases, or that neither the appearance of the lipidosis cells nor the serum acid phosphatase level is completely reliable in the differential diagnosis of these two diseases. Chemical analysis of spleen or liver lipid content may be necessary in addition.

Acid phosphatase activity of leucocytes and erythrocytes

The content of p-nitro-phenyl-phosphatase in erythrocytes in different types of anaemia has recently been studied by Valentino *et al* [45] and Vessio [45]. They observed subnormal values only in occasional cases of thyrotoxicosis, leukaemia and chronic renal failure. The significance of the lowered erythrocyte acid phosphatase activity in the present case is not clear. However, this latter should be investigated in detail, since it happens that other metabolic disturbances may occur

in GD erythrocytes. It may thus be possible to find a way of revealing heterozygotes.

Inhibition patterns

In their investigation of serum acid phosphatase activity in 12 GD patients, Tuchman *et al.* [4] using the 3 substances mentioned above found greater inhibition than we. From their tables it is possible to calculate the inhibition to an average of 96% with copper sulphate, 26.6% with formaldehyde and 11.4% with tartrate. However the age distribution in the 2 series was different. Nine of their 12 patients were over 40 years of age while all of ours were less than 20. The authors did not show any normal inhibition patterns.

Crocker & Landing [6] also found greater inhibition of GD serum acid phosphatase than we viz. 30% with formaldehyde and 18% with L-tartrate but they made no comparison with normal inhibition.

The subnormal inhibition of serum acid phosphatase activity by copper sulphate and formaldehyde in our GD patients seems to imply that the increased activity depends largely on an enzyme which normally contributes very little to the total serum acid phosphatase activity.

Thrombocyte and erythrocyte acid phosphatases are both inhibited 92-98% by copper sulphate and formaldehyde but less than 5% by L (+)-tartrate thus agreeing with the erythrocyte phosphatase results of Abul Fadl & King [1] and the thrombocyte phosphatase results of Zucker & Borelli [49].

Acid phosphatase derived from thrombocytes and erythrocytes is very strongly

inhibited by copper sulphate and formaldehyde. The slight and subnormal inhibition of the increased acid phosphatase activity in GD serum by the same substances is very much against the origin of the enzyme from these cells.

Abul Fadl & King have shown that the acid phosphatase from prostate, liver, spleen and kidney are strongly inhibited by L-tartrate [1]. Since GD serum acid phosphatase is but little inhibited by this substance Tuchman *et al.* considered that it could not be derived from these organs [43].

Abul Fadl & King found that liver acid phosphatase was 70% inhibited by L-tartrate while the acid phosphatase of bile was unaffected, presumably due to a bile inhibitor of L-tartrate inhibition. If GD serum acid phosphatase were formed in the thrombocytes or erythrocytes it should be strongly inhibited by copper sulphate and formaldehyde but this is not so (Fig. 4 and 5). The latter could be explained as inhibition of these two inhibitors by a factor in GD serum by analogy with Abul Fadl's experiment. We have excluded this possibility [11].

The origin of the increased serum acid phosphatase activity in Gaucher's disease

Our investigation has not elucidated the problem of where the GD phosphatase is formed nor whether the presence of this phosphatase is the cause of or a side effect of the disease. Crocker & Landing [6] observed that the level of serum acid phosphatase in GD decreased after splenectomy but later slowly increased. We were able to confirm this in a 4-year-old girl with juvenile GD not included in this series. Both Crocker & Landing and

Rosenzajn & Efrati [37] showed that GD cells contain large quantities of acid phosphatase. The above findings strongly suggest that GD phosphatase is formed in the GD cells and leaks out into the serum. Splenectomy removes the largest depot of GD cells so that the serum acid phosphatase level falls. When GD cells in other parts of the body have formed sufficiently large quantities of phosphatase the serum level rises. This is the most plausible explanation of the origin of the GD phosphatase.

Meijer & Willighagen have shown [33] that after intraperitoneal injection in mice macromolecular substances are stored in RE cells in spleen and liver with increase in their acid phosphatase activity and enlargement of the organs. Becker & Barron [3] reported that after anoxia-ischæmic damage of the central nervous system (CNS) in rats, swelling of nerve cell lysosomes, containing acid phosphatase occurred at an early stage but that in older infarcts the picture was that of loss of acid phosphatase activity. In their investigations on human pathologic tissues from the CNS Anderson & Song [2] found intense acid phosphatase reactions in adventitious cells in hyperplastic blood vessels and in macrophages close to tumour necrosis.

These recent results may explain why the serum acid phosphatase increases so strongly in GD. The authors suggest the following hypothesis:

Gaucher's disease depends on a metabolic defect the fundamental nature of which is unknown. An increased quantity of glucocerebroside circulates in the blood. At present it is not known whether

increased breakdown of normal cerebroside or whether cerebroside of abnormal structure are formed. The circulating glucocerebroside are phagocytosed by RE cells. The process of phagocytosis causes a great increase of acid phosphatase production in the phagocytes. When these become necrotic mostly in the spleen, the acid phosphatase is released into the plasma.

The cells of the RES also proliferate in the adventitia of the brain vessels [7]. In some places this proliferation goes so far as to form cuffs of GD cells round small and medium-sized vessels constricting them and producing ischaemia. The patients with infantile or juvenile GD often have lung changes with a poor oxygenation of the blood resulting in anoxic-ischæmic damage with small necrotic areas in several organs and increased phagocytosis. In this way the level of acid phosphatase in serum is raised still more.

If this hypothesis is correct, it implies that the occurrence of the GD phosphatase is a secondary phenomenon and of no primary pathogenic significance in the disease. However the effect of phagocytosis may not be the whole explanation of the presence of the GD phosphatase and the authors have started new experiments with the following motivation:

In human organs cerebroside normally occur in relatively large quantities only in the CNS so that the cause of a disturbed cerebroside metabolism should first be looked for here. Wolf et al [46], Glick & Datta [17], Fleischacker [14] and Anderson & Song [2] have investigated the acid phosphatase content of the CNS. According to Wolf the nervous system is one of the most consistent sites of acid phosphatase

tase activity. Anderson & Song found that neurons and choroid plexus epithelium have the strongest activity of acid phosphatase in the CNS.

Investigations of the properties of acid phosphatase in nerve cells and glia cells from various parts of the CNS may reveal the primary metabolic defect in GD. The authors have started such an investigation in normal brain for later comparison with GD brains.

Summary

The serum level of acid phosphatase is raised in Gaucher's disease (GD). In Sweden a juvenile form of the disease with neurological signs, is found. The authors have shown that the serum acid phosphatase level is also raised in this variant.

Gaucher's disease is inherited with an autosomal, recessive gene. Both the parents and the siblings of the patients had normal acid phosphatase values. Thus heterozygosity for the gene cannot be demonstrated by phosphatase analyses.

The patients erythrocytes contained significantly less acid phosphatase than normal. Continued investigations will show if this can reveal the heterozygotes.

Copper sulphate and formaldehyde only inhibited the serum acid phosphatase a little in GD and less than normally. The

acid phosphatase of erythrocytes was inhibited completely by the same method. The inhibition was the same for patients and normals. This shows that acid phosphatase in GD is of a type other than the normal serum acid phosphatase and that it is not formed in thrombocytes or erythrocytes.

During the last few years various investigators have shown that phagocytes form large quantities of acid phosphatase during the phagocytosis of macromolecular substances. To explain the raised level of serum acid phosphatase in GD the authors submit a theory based on the new findings.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to express their gratitude to Miss Naim Tazli, Mrs Maj Wallin and Mrs. Gunilla Wallenberg for their skilful technical assistance.

We are much obliged to Dr Stig Johansson for assistance and valuable advice in the statistical treatment of the material. Many thanks are due to the nurses of Kronprinsessan Lovnas Barnsjukhus and of the Stockholm City Hospital for Infectious Diseases for their kind help in collecting the blood samples. Thanks are also due to Dr Beril Finer who translated the manuscript.

The work was supported by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council.

References

1. ARUL-FADIL, M. A. M. and KING, E. J. Properties of the acid phosphatase of erythrocytes and of human prostatic gland. *Biochem J* 45 311 1949.
2. ANDERSON, P. J. and BOKS, B. J. Acid phosphatase in the nervous system. *J Neuropath Exp Neurol* 11 563, 1962.
3. BECKER, N. H. and BARROW, R. D. The cytochemistry of amoxic and amoxic-rehase into encephalopathy in rats. *Amer J Path* 39 181 1961.
4. CLAYMAN, C. B., SELAS, M. and KLAYMAN, M. I. Acid phosphatase elevation in jaundiced patients. *Gastroenterology* 23 245, 1957.
5. CROCKER, A. C. and FARBER, S. J. Neuroskeletal diseases: A review of eighteen patients. *Medicine* 37 1 1958.
6. CROCKER, A. C. and LINDEN, R. H. Phos-

- phatase studies in Gaucher's disease. *Meta bolism* 9 341 1960
7. DERRA, R. et al. NORMAN R. M. et al., BARLOW C. F.: Cited in K. M. HERRLIX and P. O. HILLBORG Neurological signs in a juvenile form of Gaucher disease. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 127 1962.
 8. ELLIOTT G. A., SANDLER, A. and RABINOWITZ, D. Gonadal dysgenesis in three sisters. *J Clin Endocrin*, 19 965, 1959
 9. EMMERICH R. and SCHEFFLER, H. Die alkalische und die saure Serum Phosphatase in verschiedenen Lebensaltern. *Z Allerg* 6 180, 1935...
 10. EMMETT D. C. Serum phosphatase in osteopetrosis. *J Lab Clin Med*, 37 1841 1947
 11. ESTBORN B. and HILLBORG P. O. On the increased serum acid phosphatase in Gaucher's disease. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 12 504, 1960.
 12. ESTBORN B., HILLBORG P. O. and TÅRLÅ, N.: Studies on acid phosphatase in blood. To be published.
 13. FISCHER, W. H. and LEHNER, F. A method for estimating serum acid phosphatase of prostatic origin. *J Biol Chem*, 200 89 1953.
 14. FLISCHBACHER, H. H. Studies on the brain phosphatases. *J Neurol Sci*, 34 947 1959.
 15. GEMALA, A.: Acid hyperphosphatase in three families with osteogenesis imperfecta. *Lancet* 3 1064 1954.
 16. GEMALA, A. and ROSENTHAL H. Studies on the activity of acid phosphatases in serum of children. *Acta Paediatr Scand*, 34 810, 1955
 17. GHIL, K. V. and DATTA, N. C. Brain phosphatase. *Biochem J* 30 1089 1936
 18. GUTMAN A. B. and GUTMAN E. B.: Acid phosphatase activity of the serum of normal human subjects. *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med*, 38 470, 1938.
 19. GUTMAN A. B. and GUTMAN E. B.: An acid phosphatase occurring in the serum of patients with metastasizing carcinomas of the prostate gland. *J Clin Invest*, 17 473, 1938.
 20. GUTMAN A. B. GUTMAN E. B. and ROBINSON J. N.: Determination of serum acid phosphatase activity in differentiating skeletal metastases secondary to prostate carcinoma from Paget disease of bone. *Amer J Cancer* 35 103, 1940.
 21. HASTRUP B. and VIDENRANK, A. Acid phosphatase in Niemann Pick disease and therapeutic experiment with cortisone. *Acta Med Scand*, 149 287 1954.
 22. HERRLIX K. M. and HILLBORG, P. O. Neurological signs in juvenile form of Gaucher disease. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 51 127 1962
 23. HILLBORG, P. O. Morbus Gaucher i Norrbotten. *Nord Med*, 61 203, 1959
 24. HILLBORG P. O. and SVENSSON, L.: Blood level of cerebroside in Gaucher's disease. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)* 49 707 1960.
 25. HILLBORG P. O. The heredity of Gaucher's disease in Sweden. To be published
 26. KEMP T. and NIELSEN A.: *Stetill: for medicinske*. København 1959.
 27. KEMPH, A. W. L. and SIKKY A. B. Acid hyperphosphatase in three families with osteogenesis imperfecta. *Lancet*, 2 1217 1954
 28. KIK E. J., WOOD E. J. and DELORY G. E. Acid phosphatase of the red cells. *Biochem J* 39 Proc Biochem Soc 24-25, 1945.
 29. KLEINHAUS N. C. and KOPPE G. H.: Serum phosphatase activity in hyperparathyroidism. *J Clin Endocrin*, 5 351 1945.
 30. KUTSCHER, W. and W. DREXEL, H.: Prostatic phosphatase. *J Physiol Chem*, 236 237 1933.
 31. LARON Z. and ERNST HALLERSTADT B. Activity of acid phosphatase in the serum of normal infants and children. *Pediatrics*, 26 281, 1960
 32. LEROUX H. M. and REYNOLDS, M. D. Regression of mammary cancer metastases following decline of acid phosphatase induced by anti-estrogen therapy. *Proc Amer Assoc Cancer Res*, 5 179 1946.
 33. MEXNER, A. E. and WILLIAMS R. W. Increased activity of acid phosphatase and beta-glucuronidase in the liver and spleen of mice after intraperitoneal administration of various macromolecular substances. *Biochem J* 3 350, 1961
 34. PROSE, L. A classification of the diseases of lipid metabolism and Gaucher disease. *Amer J Med Sci*, 144 453, 1932.
 35. RABINOVITCH, M. and ANDREUCCI, D. A histochemical study of acid and alkaline phosphatase distribution in normal human bone marrow smears. *Blood*, 4 590, 1949
 36. ROGER, J. Blood phosphatase. *Biochem J* 24 1724, 1931.
 37. ROSENTHAL L. and EMMETT, P. Cytological and phase contrast techniques on Gaucher cells. *Acta Haemat*, 24 43, 1961
 38. STOLBACH, L. L., NIMHELAUM, J. B. and FISHMAN W. H. A simplified technique for measuring serum acid phosphatase of prostatic origin (Fishman Lecture method). *Amer J Clin Path*, 29 379 1958
 39. THOMPSON, E.: *Lipidases*, pp. 457 472 73, 516 Oxford University Press, 1950.
 40. TUCHMAN L. R. SUHA, H. and CARR, J. J. Elevation of serum acid phosphatase in Gaucher's disease. *J All Blood Hosp*, 21 227 1956.
 41. TUCHMAN L. R. and SWICK, M.: High acid phosphatase level indicating Gaucher's disease in patient with prostatic. *JAMA*, 164 2034, 1957
 42. TUCHMAN L. R., GOLDBERG O. and CLYMAN M.: Studies on the nature of the

- increased serum acid phosphatase in Gaucher disease *Amer J Med*, 27 989, 1959
42. TURANO, A. F., FAGAN, R. A. and CORBO, P. A.: Variations in chemical manifestations of osteopetrosis. *J Pediat* 44 692, 1954.
 43. WOODS, R. and YOUNG, A.: Alkaline and acid phosphatase in white blood cells and blood platelets. *Arch Biochem* 33 1-4, 1955
 44. V. LESTIN, W. M., TAKAKA, K. R. and FREUDENBERG, R. E.: Erythrocyte acid phosphatase in health and disease *Amer J Clin Path* 26 223, 1961
 45. WOLF, A., JAHN, E. A. and NEWMAN, W.: A study of acid phosphatases with special reference to the nervous system. *Amer J Path* 19 423, 1943.
 46. WOODARD, H. Q.: The clinical significance of serum acid phosphatase. *Amer J Med* 27 902, 1959
 47. V. COSTO, P.: Red cell enzymes in anemia. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 15 S 99, 1963
 48. ZUCKER, M. B. and BORELLI, J.: Platelets as source of serum acid nitrophenyl phosphatase. *J Clin Invest* 33 148, 1950

Submitted March 6, 1964

Accepted March 10, 1964

Department of Paediatrics
Krosspringsman Lovénss Barnsjukhus
Polhemsgatan 20
Stockholm K
Sweden

From the Department of Pediatrics (Head: Prof Bertil Lindquist) University of Lund, Sweden

Clinical Evaluation of an Oral Anabolic Steroid (Methandrostenolone, Dianabol CIBA) in Children with Muscular Weakness and Wasting

by INGRID GAMSTORP

The diseases of infancy and childhood leading to progressive muscular weakness and wasting constitute an important pediatric problem. New methods have increased the possibilities of establishing a correct diagnosis and thereby of predicting the development of the disease and of calculating the risk of children in the family being affected, no form of treatment has, however, proved successful. The present trial was prompted by encouraging reports about the effect of anabolic steroids in conditions characterized by muscular wasting and weakness [2 3 5 8 10 11 14 15 16]

Material and Methods

The material consisted of 21 children below 17 years of age who were admitted to the Department of Pediatrics in Lund between July 1 1961 and August 1 1963 because of muscular wasting and weakness. By now the patients have thus been followed between 7 months and 2½ years. Besides inquiry into the personal and family history and a careful physical examination, including

neurological examination, investigation of the patients included: electromyography measurement of conduction velocity of peripheral nerves, histological examination of a muscle biopsy specimen and determination of the activity in the serum of transaminase aldolase and lactate-dehydrogenase. A diagnosis, as specific as possible was based on the results of these examinations. The distribution of the material according to age sex and diagnosis is apparent from Table I

During the first few weeks the patients received only physical therapy in the form of active muscular training, care being taken to avoid overtraining and muscle trauma. Several of the patients improved during this treatment, which has then been continued with short interruptions regardless of other therapy given. Before treatment with anabolic steroids was started moving pictures were taken, the strength of different muscle groups was estimated, and the patients' capacity to move was also described verbally. It was noted whether the patient could perform certain defined movements, such as lifting his head when he was supine sitting up with or without help of his hands, with or without first rolling over in the prone position, getting up from sitting on the floor with or without climbing up on himself walking unassisted, climbing stairs with or without help of his hands.

Treatment with an anabolic steroid was

This study was aided by a grant from the Swedish Medical Research Council ("Sjöstickska Research Fund). CIBA provided the Dianabol tablets and gave financial support.

TABLE I *Distribution of the material according to age, sex and diagnosis*

| Age in years Sex | 0-2 | | 3-5 | | 6-10 | | 10-16 | | Total | |
|--|-----|---|-----|---|------|---|-------|---|-------|---|
| | M | F | M | F | M | F | M | F | M | F |
| <i>Spinal muscular atrophy</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polio | | | | 1 | | | | | | 1 |
| Progressive infantile type (Werdnig Hoffmann) | 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| Progressive, juvenile type (Kugelberg W. Landau) | | | 2 | | 1 | | | | | 3 |
| Anterotropic lateral sclerosis | | | | | | | 1 | | 1 | |
| <i>Heredithy chronic polyneuropathy</i> | 17 | | 17 | | | | | 1 | 7 | 1 |
| <i>Primary muscle diseases</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Progressive muscular dystrophy (type Duchenne or limb-girdle) | | | | | 6 | | 2 | | 8 | |
| Undetermined type | 1 | | | | 2 | | | | 3 | |
| Total | 4 | 0 | 1 | 3 | 8 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 16 | 5 |

then started. Methylprednisolone (Dianabol CIBA) was chosen because it is given orally which is a great advantage in the treatment of children. The dose was 0.1 mg per kg body weight per day given for periods of 3 months with free interval of 4-6 weeks. In some patients the dose was doubled during subsequent courses. The number of courses given depended on the effect and side-effects.

During the entire period of intermittent treatment the patients were re-examined clinically at intervals of 1½-3 months. Changes in the children's behavior observed by the parents were recorded, as was the patient's subjective estimation of the effect of the treatment. A note was made of any improvement or deterioration of specific functions as previously described. New moving pictures were taken once every 3-4 months. Side-effects were also apparent from the clinical examination, repeated measurement of the height and weight of the child, estimation of the skeletal age on X-ray films, the urinary excretion of 17 ketosteroids, and liver function tests.

Results

The results are summarized in Tables 1 and 2.

Three patients could only be followed up for 3-6 months, one had myopathy of undetermined type, one had juvenile spinal atrophy and the third probably had polio-sequelae. During the same period one infant with the infantile type of spinal atrophy died from his disease; the diagnosis was confirmed at autopsy. One boy with progressive muscular dystrophy was lost to follow-up after an observation period of 1½ years; the remaining 16 patients are still under observation.

In the group with muscular atrophy due to myelopathy one girl with probable polio-sequelae showed some improvement. She was a refugee originally believed to have a progressive disease. However, re-inquiry into her history suggested severe sequelae after polio or possibly RSSE (Russian spring summer encephalitis) as the probable cause of her symptoms. Her improvement was not greater than could be expected in a case of a non progressive disease. The mothers of the 10 boys with the infantile type of progressive spinal atrophy

TABLE 2 *Effect and side-effects in different diagnostic groups*

| Diagnosis | No. of patients included in study | No. of patients showing | | | | Side-effects severe enough to cause discontinuation of treatment |
|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---|--|
| | | No effect | Slight improvement | Moderate improvement | Improvement followed by rapid deterioration | |
| <i>Spinal muscular atrophy</i> | | | | | | |
| Polio | 1 | | 1 | | | |
| Progressive, infantile type (Werdnig Hoffmann) | 2 | 2 | | | | |
| Progressive juvenile type (Kugelberg Wirlander) | 3 | 1 | | | | 1 |
| <i>Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis</i> | 1 | 1 | | | | |
| <i>Hereditary chronic polyneuropathy</i> | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | | |
| <i>Primary muscle disease</i> | | | | | | |
| Progressive muscular dystrophy (type Duchenne or limb-girdle) | 8 | 1 | 1 | | 8 | 3 |
| Undetermined type | 3 | 1 | | 2 | | |
| Total | 21 | 7 | 3 | 3 | 8 | 4 |

claimed that the infants became stronger during treatment an impression which, however could not be confirmed on objective examination. One of the infants died from his disease during the second course of treatment. The other boy has now been receiving intermittent treatment for 2 years. Although no improvement has been noted, the disease has apparently not progressed during these 2 years. Of 3 girls with the juvenile type of progressive spinal atrophy one showed a steady progress of the disease apparently uninfluenced by the treatment. One girl learned to get up from sitting on the floor and to climb stairs without help of her hands, unfortunately she was one of those lost to the follow-up (lost after 5 months). The third girl showed some improvement, she learned, e.g. to rise from sitting on the floor. During the following year no progress of her disease was observed. In the

boy with juvenile amyotrophic lateral sclerosis the disease progressed steadily uninfluenced by the therapy.

Of 2 brothers with a provisional diagnosis of chronic hereditary polyneuropathy one showed definite improvement, the other no apparent change during an observation period of 9 months. In a third patient in this group the diagnosis was firm and the disease unusually severe affecting both distal and proximal muscle groups. Before treatment was started, the girl could not get up from sitting on a chair nor could she walk without support. She gained both these functions during her first course of therapy. Improvement afterwards continued at a slower rate.

Two of the 8 boys with progressive muscular dystrophy were confined to wheel chair at the beginning of the treatment; on examination no influence of the treatment was noted. However the parents of one

TABLE 3 *General survey of material and results*

| Age in years at start of treatment | Sex | Diagnosis | Dose/kg and day | Duration of therapy | Effect | Side effects |
|------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|---|---|
| 4 | F | Polio | 0.1 mg | 3 months | Less tired when sitting, could use her hands better for playing | Growth of pubic hair |
| 11 | M | Progr inf spin. musc. atrophy | 0.1 mg | 3 months | No definite change. Died at age 1. Autopsy confirmed the diagnosis | None |
| 1 | M | atrophy | 0.1 mg | 2 years | No definite change | None |
| 3½ | F | | 0.1 mg | 1 year | Learned to sit up from supine position, to get up from sitting on floor | Pubic hair phallic enlargement, deeper voice, acne, rapid increase of skeletal age |
| 4 | F | Progr juv spin. musc. atrophy | 0.1 mg | 3 months | Learned to get up from sitting on floor without climbing, learned to climb stairs without help of her hands | Slight growth of pubic hair. Lost to follow up shortly after first course |
| 9½ | F | | 0.1 mg | 8 months | Progress of disease apparently uninfluenced by therapy | Pubic hair, acne, hoarseness |
| 17 | M | ALS | 0.8 mg | 2 years | | None |
| ½ | M | | 0.1 mg | 3 months | Learned to sit without support and to stand with support | None |
| 6½ | M | Chron. her-d. polyneuropathy | 0.18 mg | 6 months | No definite change | None |
| 14½ | F | | 0.1 mg | 1½ year | Learned to walk unassisted and to get up from sitting on chair | None |
| 18 | M | | 0.18 mg | 2½ year | No change on examination. Pt. feels stronger and better | None |
| 18½ | M | | 0.1 mg | 1½ years | Learned to sit up with own help of hands, walks better | None |
| 8 | M | | 0.1 mg | 9 months | Learned to get up from sitting on floor without help of his hands, walked better after 8 months deterioration again | Weight increase 9 kg, tough thickening of skin and subcutis, phallic enlargement |
| 6½ | M | | 0.1 mg | 11 months | Improvement first 6 months, then deterioration | Tough thickening of subcutis and skin, increase in height and weight, phallic enlargement |
| 8½ | M | Progr musc dystrophy | 0.1 mg | 6 months | No definite change | Pubic hair, phallic enlargement, tough thickening of skin and subcutis, hoarse voice |

Table 3 (cont. and)

| Age in years at start of treatment | Sex | Drug and dose | Duration of therapy ^a | Effect | Side-effects |
|------------------------------------|-----|---------------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 8 | M | 0.05-0.1 mg | 18 months | Improvement first 8 months, then deterioration | Pubic hair phallic enlargement, tough thickening of skin and subcutis, hoarse voice |
| 8 | M | 0.1 mg | 3 months | Improvement first 2 months, then deterioration | Pubic hair phallic enlargement, tough thickening of skin and subcutis |
| 7 | M | 0.1 mg | 1 year | Improvement first 8 months, then deterioration | |
| 6½ | M | 0.1 mg | 1 year | Learned to climb stairs without help of hands, walks better | Pubic hair phallic enlargement |
| 7½ | M | 0.1 mg | 3 months | Learned to walk with brace but unassisted, lost to follow-up after 3 months | |
| 1 | M | 0.1 mg | 6 months | No definite change | |

^a Treatment was given intermittently in those cases where the duration of therapy exceeded 3 months.

of them believed that the boy had improved considerably and insisted on further intermittent therapy. As this severely handicapped boy may possibly feel better during such treatment and as he has shown no side-effects, their wish has been fulfilled. Of 6 boys ambulant at the beginning of the treatment 5 were below 8 years of age; these 5 responded in largely the same way. During the first course they improved, learned to climb stairs, to get up from sitting on the floor without climbing on themselves etc. Then improvement stopped and the next course was of little value. During or after the second course rapid deterioration started and continued uninfluenced of all attempts to further treatment. One year after treatment had been started their disease had progressed

to a stage that might have been expected if they had never been treated and never had this short period of improvement. Finally the 16-year-old boy who at the beginning of the treatment was still able to walk without support improved considerably during the first course of treatment and could then sit up from the supine position without using his hands, for example. Intermittent therapy has been continued for ¾ years. A slow progress has in the meantime occurred but he is still better than he was ¾ years ago.

Two of the 3 boys with myopathy of a determined type had a stationary or very slowly progressive disease. Both improved considerably during treatment and one learned how to walk. The follow-up period is, however, 3 months in one of

them and a year in the other. The third boy probably has an infantile type of progressive muscular dystrophy apparently refractory to the treatment.

Side-effects Some androgenic effects were seen, e.g., phallic enlargement and growth of pubic hair in all girls and prepuberal boys. Although this was annoying to some of the parents, it never alone prompted discontinuation of the treatment. The appearance of acne and a coarse voice which occurred both in boys and girls, was disturbing to some of the patients. Of greater importance in these weak patients was the accelerated increase in height and weight noted in 6 of the prepuberal children. Skeletal maturation out of proportion to the child's age and height was noted in one patient, in whom it was so severe as to contra-indicate continuation of therapy; closing of the epiphyses was, however, not noted. A troublesome side-effect was a tough thickening of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue stiffening the children's joints and reducing their capacity to move about particularly in the young boys with muscular dystrophy. No abnormal liver function tests were noted. Changes in the urinary excretion of 17 ketosteroids were insignificant.

Discussion

The numerous attempts to treat conditions characterized by progressive muscular wasting and weakness reflect the changing concept of these diseases [9]. As nothing is known of the nature of a postulated specific defect in these conditions, it appeared reasonable to try a general protein-saving, muscle-building substance. Testosterone is such a sub-

stance but its androgenic side-effects are too strong to permit its use in females and prepuberal boys. The administration of substances with a high anabolic and a low androgenic effect has reduced this disadvantage. Several groups of patients with muscular dystrophy have been reported to improve during treatment with anabolic steroids or at least to show an arrest of the previously steady progression [3, 5, 6, 10, 11, 14]. Some authors have stressed that children with the Duchenne type of muscular dystrophy responded least to the therapy [3, 6]. In one reported series no response to anabolic steroids was found in patients with neurogenic atrophy [11], in others a good effect of the same treatment has been described [10, 15]. Sturges [15] reports of particular interest in this connection, because his material consisted only of children, in whom he found good results of therapy with anabolic steroids in 5 of 11 patients with progressive infantile spinal muscular atrophy. His report prompted the inclusion in the present material also of cases of neurogenic muscular atrophy.

However, unfavorable results of treatment with anabolic steroids have also been reported. Dowben & Perlestein [7] emphasized the rapid deterioration, particularly in boys with the Duchenne type of muscular dystrophy, after the cessation of treatment. Fröhlich, Mamenthaler & Wiesendanger [8] found no effect of the treatment in their material which included one child and 22 adults with muscular dystrophy or lower motor neuron diseases. The absence of effect was also noted by Gyulai & Orell [9] in one case of infantile spinal muscular atrophy and by Lundberg & Blom [13]; their material con-

sisted of one child and 13 adults all with muscular dystrophy. Barwick, Newell & Walton [1] reported the results of a double blind trial using methandrostenolone or nandrolone decanoate for periods of 3 months alternating with placebos for 3 months. No significant increase in muscular power or in functional capacity was noted in patients receiving the active remedies.

The conclusion by Barwick *et al* [1] that anabolic steroids have no place in the routine treatment of cases of muscular dystrophy is valid also for the present material (here naturally confined to cases occurring in childhood). The short period of improvement noted in the patients with the Duchenne type of muscular dystrophy is of no value since it is followed by a rapid deterioration. The inspiration of vain hopes adds to the burden of the patient's parents and should be avoided.

None of the patients with spinal muscular atrophy showed such an excellent response as that described by Stur [15].

In this connection the importance of a correct diagnosis has to be stressed. In Stur's cases the diagnosis was founded on clinical (weakness, hypotonia, areflexia) and electromyographic grounds. However the clinical picture described may also be consistent with a diagnosis of chronic polyneuropathy and the needle electromyogram does not always allow a distinction between the 2 main causes of denervation i.e. myelopathy and peripheral neuropathy [12]. As pointed out by Byers & Taft [4] chronic polyneuropathy occurs in infancy and childhood, and it may be difficult to distinguish from the progressive myelopathy the prognosis of which is much worse. It thus appears conceivable

that Stur's [15] improved patients might represent examples of chronic polyneuropathy in infancy. In the present material unequivocal improvement was noted in the single case of hereditary chronic polyneuropathy.

Some improvement was also noted in 4 girls with the juvenile type of spinal atrophy. In one boy with probably chronic polyneuropathy and in 2 boys with a primary muscle disease of undetermined type. The results are however hard to evaluate in these patients, as their diseases are slowly progressive or may even be stationary: the difficulties are increased by the fact that no exact diagnosis could be established in some of the cases.

Virilization was, with the dose used, never severe enough to cause interruption of the treatment. More serious side-effects were a too rapid increase of height, weight and skeletal age and particularly a tough thickening of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue which was noted mainly in boys with progressive muscular dystrophy. In whom it counteracted the otherwise beneficial effect of physical therapy. Impaired liver function, described during treatment with oral anabolic steroids [17, 18], was not seen in the present material.

Summary and Conclusions

An oral anabolic steroid, methandrostenolone (Dianabol CIBA) was tried on 21 children with muscular weakness and wasting due to a lower motor neuron disease or a primary muscle disease. The dose was 0.1-0.2 mg per kg body weight per day for 3 months with therapy free intervals of 4-6 weeks. The observation period was $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{3}{4}$ years.

1 This therapy has no place in the routine treatment of progressive muscular dystrophy in childhood. The usual response noted in young boys with the Duchenne type of the disease was a moderate improvement, followed by a rapid deterioration.

2 The despairing course described in the previous paragraph was not seen in cases of neurogenic atrophy. Provided the disease is severe and no side-effects are noted, it therefore appears justified to try the drug in such patients. No case

of myelopathy responded strikingly to methandrostenolone. A lateral improvement was noted in the case of chronic hereditary polyneuritis.

3 A rapid increase of high weight or skeletal age noted in about a third of the prepubertal children, was considered an important side-effect. The most serious side-effect was a tough thickening of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue making the joints stiff and severely impairing physical therapy.

References

- BARWICK, D. D., NEWELL, B. J. and WALTER, J. V. Methandrostenolone and nandrolone decanoate in muscular dystrophy. *Neurology* 13 12, 1963.
- BICKERT, G., KRAFT, F. and LANGE, E. Die Anwendung von Methylandrostenol (Nandrolon) in der Behandlung der Dystrophia musculorum progressiva. *Psychiatr. Nervol. Med. Psychol. (Leipzig)* 137 193, 1959.
- BICKERT, G., KRAFT, F. and LANGE, E. Die Anwendung von Durabolin (19-Nor-Androstenediolpropionate) in der Behandlung der Dystrophia musculorum progressiva. *Nervens* 31 118, 1960.
- BYERS, R. K. and TAFT, L. T. Chronic multiple peripheral neuropathy in childhood. *Pediatrics*, 20 517 1957.
- DETOXI, E. Treatment of progressive muscular dystrophy in particular with anabolic steroids. *Acta Endoc. (Kbh)*, 5 suppl. 31 174, 1962.
- DOWNEY, R. M. Treatment of muscular dystrophy with steroids. *New Engl. J. Med.* 268 91, 1963.
- DOWNEY, R. M. and FORLATHEN, M. A. Muscular dystrophy treated with nandrolone. *Arch. Int. Med.* 107 245, 1961.
- FRIEDLICH, R., MCKENZIE, M. and WENDLANDER, M. Ergebnisse der Anwendung von anabolen Hormonen bei myopathischen Erkrankungen. *Praxis* 51 1296, 1962.
- GUYLAI, F. and ORELL, R. R. Infantile spinal muscular atrophy. *Opus. Med. (Stockh.)* 9 18, 1961.
- HANTSCHMANN, V., MATTEL, D., MEYERS, H. G., NOWAKOWSKI, H. Zur Behandlung von Muskelerkrankungen mit anabolen Steroiden. *Deutsch. Med. Woch.* 87 9619 1962.
- KAEVY, H. E. Zur Frage der Behandlung der Myopathien mit Steroidhormonen und ihren Derivaten. *Nervens* 31 33, 1961.
- LAURENT, E. H. Neuropathological techniques useful in the study of neuromuscular disorders. *Res. Publ. Ass. Nerv. Ment. Dis.* 35 57 1961.
- LECHNER, P. O. and BLOX, S. Behandlung muskeldystropher mit anabolen Steroiden. *Opus. Med. (Stockh.)* 9 1-5, 1963.
- PATERNY, E., SCHINKE, H., HANFELDER, H. A study of the treatment of dystrophia musculorum progressiva with an anabolic steroid: nor-androstenedione decanoate. *Acta Endoc. (Kbh)* 5 suppl. 63 185, 1962.
- STUR, O. Die Behandlung der infantilen spinalen Muskeldystrophie mit Norandrostenedion-decanoat. *München. Med. Woch.* 103 471 1961.
- TASSELAR, J. A. Dystrophia musculorum progressiva, het effect van hormonale behandeling. *Ned. T. Genees.* 99 2486, 1955.
- WERNER, H. Klinische Untersuchung zur Frage der Lebensverlängerung durch norandrogene und anabole Steroide. *Deutsch. Med. Woch.* 81 2227 1960.
- WYNN, V., LANDON, J. and KAWERAT, E. Studies of hepatic function during methandrostenolone therapy. *Lancet* 1 69 1961.

Submitted March 24 1964

Accepted May 15 1964

Department of Pediatrics
University of Lund
Lund
Sweden

CASE REPORT

Intestinal Function after Massive Resection of the Small Intestine in a Newborn

by PETER JOHAN NOE

From the Children's Department U University Hospital, Rikshälskaström, Oslo

Studies on patients following massive resection of the small intestine offer valuable information as to the site of absorption of different types of foodstuffs.

The literature dealing with extensive resection of the small intestine is voluminous. Hammond [3] collected 257 cases from the literature and added three cases of his own. The term massive resection has been used if 200 cm or more of the small intestine is removed. This length has been estimated to constitute about one-third of the small intestine in adults. The age of the patient was mentioned in 214 of the above cases, the youngest one being an 8-year-old boy. There are very few reports in the literature on the result of massive resection of the small intestine in small children. Swain *et al* [8] reported the course of 18 newborn infants following the resection of 5-67 cm of the small intestine. Seven of the infants died. The average length of the small intestine in newborn is, according to Potts [7] 308 cm and 67 cm is less than one-fourth of the small intestine in a newborn. There are at least three reports of cases of subtotal resection of the small intestine in infants.

Pilling & Creason [6] observed survival of two newborn infants following resection of all but 28 cm of the small intestine including the ileocecal valve. Clark & Booth [1] reported the result of the resection of about four-fifths of the distal small intestine with jejuno-colostomy in a small infant. Wilkinson in July 1963 published the effects of removal of large part of the small intestine in 6 newborn infants and in one infant aged 6 months [9]. Five of the newborn infants died within 50 days while survival of the other two infants was recorded. All jejunum was left in the infant aged 6 months, and 60 cm of the jejunum plus 10 cm of terminal ileum in the surviving newborn infant.

This article deals with a case of massive resection of the small intestine in a newborn infant and follow up studies.

Case Report

B. M. is a female child born on February 16th, 1961. She was the product of an uneventful pregnancy and uncomplicated delivery at term (birth weight 3700 g and length 50 cm). She was admitted to the Central Hospital in Trondheim at the age of

4 days because of persistent vomiting since birth. At operation on the twelfth day volvulus and malrotation of the intestine were found. A week later relaparotomy had to be performed for ileus. Almost all the small intestine was found to be necrotic, and all but 20 cm of the jejunum and 10 cm of the distal ileum were resected. The post-operative course this time, was uncomplicated.

This child has since been admitted three times to the Pediatric Department of the Rikshospital.

She was first admitted at the age of 18 weeks with a diagnosis of acute gastroenteritis. A slow but steady weight gain had been maintained since discharge from hospital with an increase from 3070 g to 4330 g eight days prior to admission. The mother had nursed the infant 5 times a day and fed her milk formula twice. The infant had been passing 2-4 stools daily. Vomiting and diarrhoea started suddenly a few days prior to admission. There had been several cases of acute gastroenteritis in the neighbourhood. Physical examination on admission revealed

a well developed 18-week-old infant. She was pale and mildly dehydrated, but she recovered quickly from her gastroenteritis. The concentration of haemoglobin was 12.9-12.8 g/100 ml, serum iron 68 mcg/100 ml, and serum protein 5.8 g/100 ml, with decreased albumin fraction. Total lipids were 890 mg and serum cholesterol 108 mg/100 ml. The serum concentrations of calcium, phosphorus, chloride and potassium were normal.

Bile sodium was decreased to 128 mg/l. Her glucose tolerance test was flat. The stools are described as bulky but the total daily fat excretion was only 1.3 g. Plasma prothrombin was 30-44%, of normal, and increased to 64% following an injection of 1 mg of vitamin K. The infant recovered rapidly during the hospital stay and she was discharged on the same type of feeding, with the addition of homogenized baby foods.

She was readmitted at the age of 7½ months and had maintained steady weight gain during her stay at home. Supplemental iron had been started. Her weight had increased to 6180 g, and her length was 68 cm.

Haemoglobin concentration was 14.3 g/100 ml, serum protein 6.3 g/100 ml with slightly increased albumin fraction. Plasma prothrombin was 19% and increased to 90% following an injection of vitamin K. The stools were bulky, total daily fat excretion had increased to 11.1 g, which was 65% of faecal dry weight. The hospital stay was uneventful, and she was discharged with prescriptions for monthly B₁₂ and vitamin K injections. (No B₁₂ absorption studies were performed.)

The last admission took place at the age of 1 year and 9 months. She had been doing fine on restricted fat intake except for 2-3 periods of diarrhoea, probably precipitated by large food intakes. She walked alone at the age of 18 months. The mother had discontinued iron some time prior to the last admission because of loose stools. Vitamin B and K injections had been given regularly. Physical examination revealed a well nourished, well developed female infant but she was short. Her height of 76 cm placed her 1 cm below 2½ percentile for her age while her weight of 10.88 kg was at the 75 percentile for her length.

Laboratory studies at the age of 1 year and 9 months revealed that her haemoglobin concentration had remained high, 13.4 g/100 ml, haematocrit was 39 vol.%, serum protein 6.4 g, with albumin 4.0 g/100 ml. The serum electrolytes were normal, magnesium 1.9 mEq/l, total lipids 635 and cholesterol 120 mg/100 ml. Plasma prothrombin remained normal in spite of no vitamin K injections during a two months period. Glucose tolerance test showed an increase from 105 to 138 mg/100 ml.

During the first part of this hospital stay she passed 2-3 green, loose stools daily but they changed to more normal colour and consistency when fat and roughage intake were restricted. The total amount of stools during a three days period was 160-280 g, with a faecal fat excretion 3.7-4.2 g. Xylose absorption was considered to be normal. Serum B₁₂ was determined at the St. Joseph Hospital in Porsgrunn and found to be 277 picogram per 1 ml serum (two months after

the last B_{12} injection). The absorption of radioactive vitamin B_{12} was measured by the method of Heine *et al.* [4]. Using a test dose of 1 μ g C^{14} labeled vitamin B_{12} , a faecal excretion of 60% of the testdose was found. The absorption of vitamin B_{12} was thus normal, judged by absorption of radio labeled vitamin B_{12} .

Roentgenographic studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract were performed on all three admissions. The barium reached the caecum within 45 minutes the first time. The passage was considerably slower the second and third time but still rapid. The small intestine remained very small, as shown on the figure. The total length of small intestine was estimated to be 50–60 cm. Gall bladder stones were seen this time.

Bone age was normal at the age of 10 weeks, but retarded at the age of 1 year and 8 months. General osteoporosis was also present.

In October 1963 we received a report from the child's physician. The child had developed remarkably well during the last year and could tolerate more fat in her diet. Her height at the age of 2½ years was 87 cm (an increase of 11 cm during one year) and her weight 12.5 kg. Her haemoglobin concentration had remained high without any iron or B₁₂ supplementations. Roentgenographic studies performed in September 1963 were interpreted as showing normal bone age.

Comments

The major problem following surgical removal of large amounts of the small intestine is maintenance of nutrition. The clinical picture will depend on the extent of intestine removed, and which part of the small intestine is left. Pathological changes in the remaining part of the small intestine are also of great importance. Surgical removal of a large part of the bowel is often performed for inflammatory



Fig. 1. Roentgenogram of gastrointestinal tract of B.S.M. at the age of 1½ years. The total length of the small intestine is estimated to be 50–60 cm. The caecum is located in the left side of the abdomen. The mucosal pattern of the small intestine is normal, but the distal part of the small intestine is slightly widened. Gall bladder stones are seen.

or vasculatory disturbances. Obstructions are usually the cause of intestinal resection in the newborn.

Diarrhoea is the common postoperative complication in patients subjected to resection of the small intestine but this can usually be controlled through parenteral fluid and electrolyte therapy and dietary measurements. Patients subjected to massive resection of the small intestine will usually show symptoms of deficiency in absorption of food stuffs.

Intestinal malabsorption following resection of the small intestine is similar to the malabsorption syndrome. Poor fat absorption is one of the main problems following massive resection of the small intestine. Fat absorption takes place mainly in the ileum according to most authors. Nutritional studies performed by Kalser *et al* [5] and Cornell *et al* [] on patients following massive resection of the small intestine have shown that the ileum is more concerned with the absorption of fat than the jejunum. Kalser *et al* compared two groups of patients subjected to massive resection of the small intestine and demonstrated that in those patients with a segment of terminal ileum and the ileocecal valve intact, the faecal fat was only one-third of those in whom these were resected. Steatorrhoea was not a large problem in our patient and was managed through restriction of fat intake.

The major absorption of amino acids takes place in the small intestine but the digestion of proteins and absorption of amino acids in patients following massive resection of the small intestine is disturbed to a lesser degree than the fat absorption. Carbohydrate absorption takes place from the stomach, small and large intestine particularly the proximal part of the intestine. Deficient carbohydrate absorption is usually no problem following massive resection of the small intestine, but the digestion of polysaccharides may be impaired to some extent.

The absorption of fat soluble vitamins is dependent on the fat absorption and a deficiency in absorption of vitamins A, D, E and K may be the result of steatorrhoea. Decreased plasma prothrombin was found in our case.

There have been some discussion as to the site of absorption of vitamin B₁₂. The studies by Kalser *et al* [5] and Cornell *et al* [2] clearly demonstrate that the terminal ileum and ileocecal valve are of major importance for the absorption of B₁₂. Kalser *et al* showed that 5 of 14 patients developed signs of severe megaloblastic anaemia following massive resection of the small intestine including ileocecal valve. No case of megaloblastic anaemia occurred in a similar group of patients with intact terminal ileum and ileocecal valve. Clark & Booth [1] found a mild degree of megaloblastic anaemia in their infant at the age of 13 months. Anastomosis between jejunum and mid colon had been performed on the 40th day of life. Wilkinson *et al* [9] also demonstrated vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the infant with only jejunum remaining of the small intestine while no signs of megaloblastic anaemia have been demonstrated in their other surviving infant and in Pilling & Cresson [6] two infants as well as the one reported here. The terminal ileum and ileocecal valve were intact in all four infants. There seemed to be normal B₁₂ absorption in our infant at the age of 1 year and 8 months.

Iron is absorbed mainly in the duodenum and iron-deficiency anaemia has not been seen in the four infants following massive resection of the small intestine. Massive resection of the small intestine may result in large loss of fluid and electrolytes, in particular potassium, and calcium absorption may be impaired. Intact terminal ileum with ileocecal valve seems to be of major importance for electrolyte and fluid absorption in such cases. Kalser *et al* reported intact bile fluid and electrolyte

low in an adult with $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet of jejunum and jejunoileostomy

It has been maintained that a remarkable growth of the small intestine may be seen following resection. The growth of the small intestine in the present case was not definitely more than corresponding to the growth of the child

Summary

Follow up on a newborn female infant after resection of all but 30 cm of the small

intestine is reported. A segment of terminal and the ileocecal valve was intact. She showed a relatively mild degree of malabsorption syndrome during her first two years of life with temporary slightly retarded growth. There were no signs of deficient iron or B_{12} absorption but her plasma prothrombin was decreased during her first year of life. Her diarrhoea periods could be prevented by means of a diet low in fat and roughage. Her growth and development were completely normal at the age of $2\frac{3}{4}$ years

References

- 1 CLARK, A. C. L. and BOOTE, C. C.: Deficiency of vitamin B_{12} after massive resection of the distal small intestine in an infant. *Arch Dis Child* 35 595 1960
- 2 CONKILL, G. N., GILDER, H. MOOREY F., FREY O and BRAL, J. M.: The pattern of absorption following surgical shortening of the bowel. *Bull NY Acad Med* 37 678, 1961
- 3 HAYMOND H. E.: Massive resection of the small intestine. *Surg Gynec Obstet* 81 693, 1935.
- 4 HEINLE, R. W. WELCH, A. D. SCHAFF L., MICHAM, G. C. and PRUDOM W. H.: Studies of excretion (and absorption) of Co^{57} labelled vitamin B_{12} in pernicious anemia. *Trans Ass Amer Physicians* 66 214 1962.
- 5 KALSER, M. H., ROTK, J. L. A., TURNER H., and JOHNSON T. A.: Relation of small bowel resection to nutrition in man. *Gastroenterology*, 31 458, 1958.
- 6 FILLING G. P. and CANNON B. L.: Mass resection of the small intestine in the neonatal period. *Pediatrics*, 18 949 1957
- 7 POTTS, W. J.: Pediatric surgery. *JAMA* 187 677 1955.
- 8 SWAIN V. A. J. PROBYER, A., and LOEWE W. F.: Prognosis after resection of small bowel in the newborn. *Arch Dis Child* 33 102, 1958
- 9 WILKINSON A. W. HUGHES, E. A. and TOWN, O. A.: Massive resection of the small intestine in infancy. *Brit J Surg*, 50 718, 1963.

Submitted March 2, 1964

Accepted March 23, 1964

Department of Paediatrics
School of Medicine
University of Bergen
Bergsjø
Norway

CASE REPORT

Chondro-Ectodermal Dysplasia (Ellis-van Creveld's Syndrome)

Two Certain and Two Probable Cases in the Same Family

by HERMAN LODIN and IRÉNE SJÖGREN

From the Departments of Diagnostic Radiology and Paediatrics, University Hospital, Uppsala, Sweden

In 1940 R. W. B. Ellis and S. van Creveld described a new syndrome of multiple deformities with dysplasia of tissues from ectoderm and mesoderm [6]. The syndrome is characterized by (1) ectodermal dysplasia, (2) polydactyly (3) chondrodysplasia and (4) congenital morbus cordis. The syndrome is now called Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome: at least three of the four criteria are required for the diagnosis. A total of 30 cases have been described [1, 4, 7, 8]. In 1960 Dayer [4] made an exhaustive study of the syndrome with a list of all the cases previously published. No case from Scandinavia appeared among these. Here will be briefly described a brother and sister who suffered from chondro-ectodermal dysplasia. In a later pregnancy abortion was performed on the mother. The twin fetuses showed the same skeletal changes as the living brother and sister.

Case Reports

K. A. (♂), born in 1957 and his sister A. K. (♀), born in 1956 (Case Nos. 1336 and 1337/1962 respectively), were transferred to

the Department of Paediatrics from the Department of Dermatology, University Hospital, Uppsala, for investigation because of a poor growth of hair and stunted development. There was no evidence of inherited arrested growth or body deformity. Both parents came from Finland, were healthy and of normal size. No consanguinity existed between the parents. When the boy was born, the mother was 22 years of age and the father 25. There were no other siblings. The two pregnancies and deliveries were without complications. At birth short clumsy arms and legs were noted in both infants.

Length at birth: ♂ 44 cm, ♀ 41 cm

Weight at birth: ♂ 2920 g, ♀ 2930 g

The development of growth was retarded (see Fig. 1). The psychomotor development was completely normal. Previously the two children had been treated in hospital for coryzal infections and diagnosis of chondrodystrophy was made. Apart from infections and pyloric stenosis (♂) they had usually been healthy.

Physical examination at the ages of 5½ (♂) and 4 (♀) years respectively: Length 82 cm (♂) and 74 cm (♀) (normal for the ages 110 and 102 cm). The hair was brittle and thin, like cotton-grass" (Fig. 1). The nails were dysplastic, brittle, furrowed and

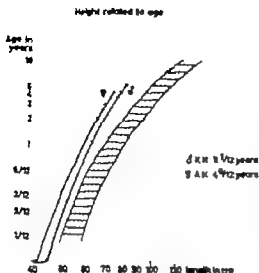


Fig. 1 Development in length relative to age for the brother and sister with the Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome. The lined area indicates the range of variation for normal Swedish children (Karlberg, P and Pernan, A. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, Suppl 117 128, 1959; Broman B Dahlborg, G and Lichtenstein, A. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 46 1 1957).

short. The skin was dry. The activity of the sweat-glands was reduced over the whole trunk in both children. Iontophoresis in increasing doses showed no sweating in the boy except for his head. The function of the lacrimal glands was obviously reduced in the right eye of the boy (Fig. 1). The inferior maxillae were somewhat small. Teeth and dental germs were normal. The extremities were short, curved, with a broadening of the metaphyses (Fig. 2). The hands were short and broad, no polydactyly.

In both children the radiological changes of the skeleton (Fig. 3) were of the same localization and character. Changes were not observed in the skull, spine or pelvis, but were restricted to the bones of the extremities, more pronounced in the legs than the arms.

In all respect the long bones were short and relatively broad. The length estimated as a percentage of normal values (8) is as follows.

Humerus: δ 65%, η 61%; Radius: δ 66%, η 60%; Ulna: δ 67%, η 66%.

Femur: δ 64%, η 64%; Tibia: δ 66%, η 67%; Fibula: δ 66%, η 69%.

The metacarpus, metatarsus and phalanges of both hands and feet were short and relatively broad. Apart from these abnormalities there was nothing of note in the upper limbs.

In the lower limbs there was a lateral convexity of both femora and a corac ridge of the hip. The metaphyses showed an obvious widening especially in the knee and ankle joints irregular towards the epiphyses while within the metaphyses there were irregular rarefactions. The epiphyses showed no changes.

In both patients the development of the bone nuclei calculated according to Eglon mark (5) was somewhat retarded. The number of bone nuclei in the boy was 56 with a normal scatter of 55-65, and in the girl 50 with a normal scatter of 55-67.

In neither of these cases was there polydactyly, polymetacarpalism, symmetacarpalism or synsarpalism, nor the lesion of the proximal part of the tibia described by Caffey (3) as pathognomonic. In all previous cases a broadening of the metaphysis had been observed with a relatively long lateral slope and a short medial slope. In addition, the medial slope was covered with a thin hypoplastic epiphyseal nucleus. In our cases the proximal border of the metaphysis was straight and at right angles to the length of the tibia and the epiphyseal nucleus was normally developed.

Radiological examination of the heart in the two children showed moderate enlargement, but without the typical changes of congenital heart disease. The size of the hearts were 430 (δ) and 468 ml/m² body surface (η) respectively (Normal values for their ages are 310 and 305 ml/m² respectively). The auscultatory findings and the electrocardiogram were quite normal.

Renal function tests and intravenous pyelography were normal.

The following tests were normal in all

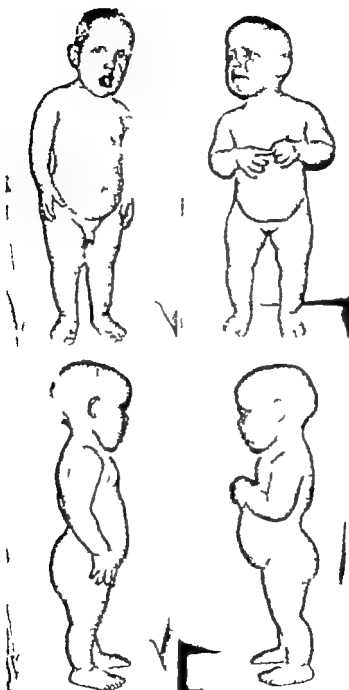


Fig. — A brother and sister with the Ellis-van Creveld syndrome. The extremities are short and stumpy, especially distally; in the usual chondro-dys trophy the shortening is most pronounced proximally.

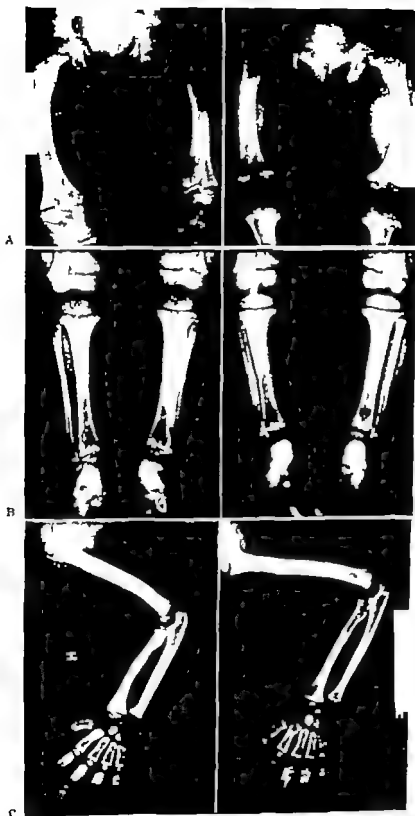


Fig. 2. (A) The femora are short and curvy with a lateral condylar exostosis; bilateral coxa plana. The knee metaphyses are broad with irregular rarefactions and with irregular borders toward the normal epiphyses. (B) Tibia and fibula are remarkably short. Changes in the metaphyses distally as in Fig. 3A. Short and somewhat broadened metatarsals. (C) The bones of the upper arm and forearm are short; phalanges and metacarpals short and relatively broad. Boy left, girl right.



Fig 4 (A) T xes in the 8th month of pregnancy. Femora are remarkably short and curved with lateral bowing. (B) Rib (fetal X-ray otherwise normal) (B) and (C) The bone-cartilage interface in the femur is diffusely irregular in structure. The osseous lamellae are broad, short, irregular. The cartilage cells are not normally grouped in palisades.

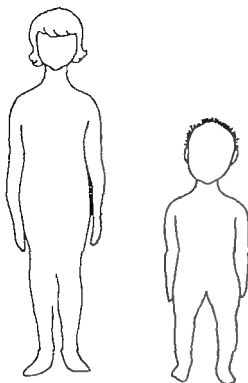


Fig 5 A girl with the Ellis-van Creveld' syndrome compared with a normally sized girl of the same age.

respects: Wassermann test, PBI, TIT cholesterol, fasting blood sugar calcium, phosphorus and phosphatase in serum serum electrolytes electrolytes in perspiration, paper chromatography of amino acids and mucopolysaccharides in the urine. There was neither protein nor reducing substance in the urine. A slight anaemia and a slightly increased sedimentation rate, probably resulting from a postinfectious condition, were found. The bone marrow showed no abnormality. Motor age examination, child psychiatry and child psychological examinations with performance test showed normal levels of development and talent relative to age. Classification of the sex chromatin was normal. The chromosome patterns were completely normal.

On reading through the hospital records it appears that the mother was granted a legal abortion in 1960: the fo-

tuses, 5-month-old male twins, showed pathological lesions of the skeleton, which were interpreted as chondro-dystrophic, but there were no other malformations. In both fetuses, radiological examination (Fig 4A) showed obviously short femora which were rather curved with a lateral convexity but nothing else of interest. The histopathological examination (Figs 4B and C) showed that the border between bone and cartilage in the femur was clearly irregular the bony lamellae were short, broad and irregular the cartilage cells were not normally grouped in palisades and the capillaries grew irregularly into the cartilage tissue (Gröntoft).

Discussion

Apart from the combination of polydactyly ectodermal and cardiac deformities Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome implies a chondro-dystrophia different from the common type. Among the 30 cases, 18 boys and 21 girls with the Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome which have been described earlier [1 4 7 8] there were 5 pairs of brothers and sisters. In 11 cases consanguinity between the parents could be demonstrated. Consequently the syndrome appears to be dependent on a non-sex linked recessive factor.

On the other hand the usual chondro-dystrophia appears in most cases by mutation and is inherited as a single dominant trait [11 12]. In a Swedish material [2] the frequency of the so-called usual chondro-dystrophia is 0.6 per 1000 births. In large groups of chondro-dystrophia in Denmark [11] and Ireland [12] there is no case with polydactyly among the living children.

The impaired growth in the Ellis-van Creveld syndrome and in the usual chondro-dystrophia is mainly due to the shortening of the extremities (Fig 5). In the usual chondro-dystrophia this shortening is most pronounced close to the shoulder and pelvic girdles; in the Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome on the other hand, there is a progressive distal shortening of the bones of the extremities [3]. The converse is found in Marfan's syndrome: arachnodactyly with a progressive distal lengthening of the extremities.

Mentally the patients with Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome are often normal like those with the usual chondro-dystrophia and like the brother and sister described in this paper.

Cardiopathy with idiopathic enlargement was found in the present cases. In the cases with Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome previously described the cardiopathy was a less constant component than the polydactyly and it often appeared as atrial or ventricular septal defect. The prognosis for survival depends on the nature and degree of the cardiac anomaly.

Histopathological examination of one case with Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome by Uehlinger [13] showed a ventricular septal defect, disturbance of cartilaginous growth, disturbance of ossification and nephrocalcinosis. No pathological lesions were found in other organs. Most probably the phenocritical phase occurs between the 3rd-6th weeks of pregnancy with a foetal length of 7-8 mm [13].

However the cause of this syndrome is not clear despite radiological, metabolic

and chromosomal investigations of the present cases.

As the disease is recessive both parents must be heterozygotes. The probability that all the children in 3 pregnancies will prove to have the disease is $1/34$ if resulting twins are monozygotes. Otherwise the risk that all four children would be affected is $1/256$. Four cases at three consecutive pregnancies do not contradict a recessive heredity: the risk of heterozygote parents having children with the disease is always 25% at every new pregnancy.

Summary

A brother and sister with ectodermal dysplasia, cardiopathy and chondrodysplasia are described, twin foetuses in the same family also showed chondrodysplasia. A total of 41 cases have now been described with the Ellis-van Creveld syndrome. Among these there were 6 pairs of brothers and sisters. Characteristics of the Ellis-van Creveld's syndrome and its differences from the usual chondro-dystrophia are discussed.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to express their thanks to Doctor Valter Haglund, Head of the Department of Gynaecology, County Hospital, Uddevalla, and Doctor Otto Gröntoft, Department of Pathology, Vänersborg, who very kindly made available material concerning the foetuses. We also thank Doctor Karl Henrik Gustavsson, The Institut for Medical Genetics, University of Uppsala, who made the genetical calculations and all those who rendered assistance to us during the investigations.

References

- 1 ANDERSEN, H.: Personal communication, Copenhagen 1963.
- 2 BOÖK, J. A.: The incidence of congenital diseases and defects in a south Swedish population. *Acta Genet (Basel)* 8: 290 1961.
- 3 CAFFEY, J.: Chondroectodermal dysplasia (Ellis-van Creveld disease). Report of three cases. *Amer J Roentgenol* 68: 875, 1957.
- 4 DAYER, L.: Le Syndrome d'Ellis-van Creveld. Une forme de dysplasie chondro-ectodermique. Discussion des limites de l'affection. *Bibl Pediatr Suppl Ann Pediatr*, 73: 1 1960.
- 5 ELGENMARK, O.: The normal development of the ossific centres during infancy and childhood. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, Suppl 57 1948.
- 6 ELLIS, R. W. B. and VAN CREVELD, S.: A syndrome characterized by ectodermal dysplasia, polydactyly, chondro-dysplasia and congenital morbus cordis. Report of three cases. *Arch Dis Child*, 15: 64 1940.
- 7 FICKER, N. A., POZO, O. O. and MORREVI, E. S.: Chondro-ectodermal dysplasia (Ellis-van Creveld syndrome). Report of case and review of the literature. *J Bone Joint Surg (Brit)* 42: 1230 1961.
- 8 GIERKE, F. L.: Single atrium and the Ellis-van Creveld syndrome. *J Pediatr*, 57: 494, 1963.
- 9 MARREN, M.: cited from F. Schradl, and G. W. Herr: *Röntgendiagnostik im Kindesalter*. Verlag von J. F. Bergmann, München 1955.
- 10 MITCHELL, F. N. and WADSWELL, W. W.: Ellis-van Creveld syndrome. Report of two cases in siblings. *Acta Paediatr (Stockh)*, 57: 142, 1958.
- 11 MORSCH, E. T.: *Chondrodysostosis Descriptive Denmark Opera E. Doms Biologiske Hæderiske Hæderiske*, 2. Ed. E. Munksgaard, Copenhagen, 1941.
- 12 STEVENSON, A. C.: Achondroplasia: an account of the condition in northern Ireland. *Amer J Hum Genet* 9: 81, 1957.
- 13 VON UEXKÜLLER, E.: Pathologische Anatomie der chondroectodermalen Dysplasie Ellis-van Creveld. *Atly Pathol Bull*, 20: 754, 1957.

Submitted March 13 1964

Accepted March 23 1964

Department of Paediatrics
Akademiska sjukhuset
Uppsala
Sweden

REVIEW ARTICLE

The Future of Measles Vaccination¹

by ARVID WALLGREN

Prior to this seminar two international expert groups on measles vaccination have been convened, the first one by United States National Institutes of Health in 1961 [7], and the other by WHO in Geneva in 1963 [1-]. At each of these meetings, some views were given on the future of the vaccination. To judge from the reports of the WHO conference and at this seminar many problems regarding measles vaccination discussed at the first meeting, have already been tackled. Many problems remain, however unsolved. I am afraid that my attempt to evaluate the further development will be a kind of wishful thinking, expressing my hope how the development should be.

It is not possible solely to confine a discussion about the future of vaccination against measles to the vaccination itself. The future development will depend also upon other factors: for instance eventual modifications of the disease, the further development of the vaccine and the method of vaccination and on the host the human being, and his degree of susceptibility and the risk he runs from the disease. In the following I will try to give a few comments on these points.

Future changes of natural measles

Measles is a typical infectious disease with general susceptibility, marked infectivity, high pathogenicity and life-long immunity. We do not know if those who acquired symptoms free measles formerly were less numerous than the few who now escape clinical disease. So far there has been no changes of the infectivity of measles and we cannot therefore expect any change in future of the infectivity. In former days, measles was a much more serious disease than to-day in Europe. Can this be due to a change in the potency of the virus? Is it nowadays a more benign mutant? Is the old virus that is active? Probably not. The more benign type of measles in our days is not due to a change of the virus itself; when imported to other parts of the world the disease runs a course corresponding with that in European countries centuries ago. We have therefore no reason to envisage a future change of the virus of measles.

The future of the vaccine

The report given at this seminar and the ensuing discussions have shown that there is no general agreement about which kind of vaccine should be regarded as the vaccine of choice. As a matter of fact, this information proves that so far nobody

¹Paper read at the International Children's Center seminar on Vaccination against Measles under the chairmanship of John F. Enders, Paris, June 17 1964.

quite satisfied with the vaccine he has studied. The ideal vaccine should not necessitate three injections or the use of gamma globulin. It should give sufficiently high and persistent immunity be safe and free from side effects and from contamination with virus of malignancy and enjoy satisfactory public acceptance. No doubt a vaccine of this standard will be produced within the near future to judge from the intense interest virologists and immunologists all over the world show in measles vaccination.

As far as I can understand, the present inactivated vaccines alone are out of consideration, because the immunological response is slighter and the duration of immunity much shorter than with attenuated vaccines. It seems improbable that the future development of an inactivated vaccine will be a more satisfactory immunizing agent than hitherto. More success seems to be offered by the further development of the attenuated vaccine. Before general acceptance of future vaccines, it is necessary to try them under different climatic conditions and during different seasons and to get more precise factual information about the contraindications now presented on theoretical grounds and how to tackle this problem.

Because there is serological similarity between measles virus and the virus of distemper [...] more attempts will probably be made to test the possibility of producing a measles preventive distemper virus vaccine. We know that distemper does not occur as disease in man. If the production of an effective and safe vaccine would be possible, then a very important problem would be solved.

The future of the method of vaccination

The present methods of measles vaccination are rather complicated to be used in a mass campaign, either three injections of inactivated measles vaccine with one month interval or one injection of attenuated virus vaccine with concomitant injection of gamma-globulin with another syringe. The further development will certainly remove the need of injection of gamma-globulin with the expected new types of attenuated vaccines, and the use of three injections of inactivated vaccine will stop because of too short immunity.

Our children are subject to a great number of injections of various kinds of vaccines at the Child Welfare Centers and the more the number of injections can be reduced the better. Studies about the most practical and successful type of vaccine combinations will certainly be undertaken and solve the problem of the best method of measles vaccination without an additional number of injections. In socio-economically developed countries Child Welfare Centers often use so called triple vaccinations against pertussis, diphtheria and tetanus. In order to get an early increased resistance against pertussis, the most dreaded of the three diseases, the first injection is made at about 3 months of age and the third and last injection at about 11 months. A combination of measles vaccination with this type of triple vaccination is not possible because the mother's antibodies at these early ages neutralizes the antigen of measles vaccine. Further studies will be made of the possibility of introducing measles vaccine in a successful pertussis-diphtheria-tetanus type of vaccination programme.

The role of the host for the future development of measles vaccination

Measles is a global problem and the future of vaccination must be evaluated with this view in mind. Even if the disease occurs and is of interest as a health problem all over the world, its significance is very different in different countries. What may be a true prediction of the future development of measles vaccination in one country will therefore not fit another country.

If we first consider measles in socio-economically highly developed countries marked changes have occurred with regard to the significance of the disease. Some centuries ago, measles was regarded as a very serious illness, causing death of thousands of children. Since then measles has become more and more benign and is at present generally regarded as a rather harmless disease in otherwise healthy children. It has turned out to be a transient evil, which parents and physicians generally accept with equanimity.

Most threatened is the age-group 9 months to 3 years and children with acute and chronic resistance-depressing disorders. The mortality rate is only about 1/100 000 [1]. As has already been pointed out this low mortality is not due to a less virulent agent but to other factors: prophylactic injection of gamma-globulin, antibiotic treatment of respiratory complications and, above all, increased unspecific resistance by a high standard of living. So far vaccination against measles has not as a rule been used in these countries, except for experimental studies. The question now arises: will there be indications for the introduction of a general

measles vaccination of small children in these countries? In view of the insignificant risk of the formerly dreaded serious respiratory complications the reply would be: No.

The risk of encephalitis puts, however, the problem of vaccination in another light. Formerly one heard rather little about measles encephalitis. It was the respiratory and otitic complications that dominated. When these have been effectively controlled, encephalitis has come more to the front. Its incidence is difficult to evaluate because in most countries measles is not a notifiable disease. Electroencephalographic studies have shown a pathological pattern of the tracings in 50% of all children with measles [4] and studies of the cerebro-spinal fluid have revealed pleocytosis in 10% of ordinary cases of measles [7]. In my opinion the minute neurological lesions that produce these pathological changes without any clinical signs of encephalo-meningitis should not play a role in evaluating the need of vaccination against measles.

Clinical cases of measles encephalitis occur at about 1/1000 of hospitalized children with measles. It is well known that the fatality rate of measles encephalitis is high and that many of those who survive may suffer from protracted sequelae. For the individual child the risk is slight and it does not create any anxiety in the parents. The total number of cases of encephalitis in our country would perhaps be about 10 annually and it would, without doubt, be very desirable to prevent these. Apparently they cannot be prevented by prophylactic use of gamma-globulin. The only preventive measure available is effective vaccination. This seems to be the only indication

for introducing measles vaccination in a socio-economically highly developed country. Measles vaccination will however probably not become a general prophylactic measure in such a country. The future vaccine will be used as combined vaccination at Child Welfare Centers, the extent of the vaccination as in other kinds of voluntary vaccinations in children depending upon the interest of the parents and the attending physicians. In selected groups of children, children in hospitals and other institutions measles vaccination will be used immediately after the introduction of the first case of measles in such a group.

I will now turn to the opposite extreme of a population, which generally is called "virgin soil population" which by its isolation from other people has been free from measles for many years, perhaps generations. In such a population the danger of measles is very great due to several associated conditions: low general resistance of the population by frequent intermarriage and unsatisfactory general state of health, more malignant character of measles when the disease is introduced and seldomly attacks the whole population causing high mortality especially among small children and old people.

There are several such virgin soil outbreaks of measles reported. The most quoted is perhaps that which occurred in the Faroe Islands and studied by Panum in 1846 [14]. Even in our days such measles epidemics have been reported from several countries, for instance Greenland [1], Canada and Polynesia [7].

At present and during the immediate future there will be a great demand for measles vaccination in such a virgin soil

population. This vaccination should be performed already before there is any immediate threat of infection. If vaccination is not performed until the first case of measles has manifested itself vaccination will be too late because the infection has had time to spread to the whole susceptible population, before the first case has come to the knowledge of the public health authorities due to the remote and isolated localisation of this group of population. Public health authorities will in future pay special attention to the eventual existence of such "virgin soil" populations and to the need of prophylactic vaccination against measles. In every known "virgin soil" population the responsible health authorities should introduce measles vaccination of the whole population and later with not too long intervals, of all children born since the last vaccination was made. This is a question of administration and of adequacy of health services of the country and would, because of the restricted number of people, not be too difficult problem to tackle.

Perhaps in a generation or two further development of communications will produce a disappearance of "virgin soil" populations and change them into the category of population, of which I now will deal with.

Most populations of the world have a borderline position between the highly developed and the virgin soil countries or areas. All of them belong to the so-called *developing countries* in Africa, Latin America and Asia. Measles is endemic or returns in short intervals and has a more or less high mortality rate. Some of these countries correspond to conditions prevailing in our country some centuries ago.

The degree of risk of measles people of these countries run varies depending upon their degree of socio-economic development and adequacy of their health administration and services.

Unsatisfactory state of health difficulty to get medical service great frequency of resistance-lowering illness such as tuberculosis, malaria and malnutrition, contribute to produce a high mortality rate. Reports are available of case fatality rates of 5-10% or more [7].

In these populations general measles vaccination is desirable but the administration of vaccination is very difficult due to the great ever increasing number of people lack of sufficient health personnel and to local geographical conditions. The health authorities have already too much to do with their other major health problems and could not afford to take over a new responsibility. They cannot in advance evaluate if their contribution will correspond to the results achieved. A general measles vaccination is therefore out of question.

Two categories of the population are often subject to satisfactory health supervision even in developing countries: labourers in industries and mines, and children in hospitals and other institutions. If it should be found that labourers recruited from remote places often fell ill with measles, vaccination should be performed by the officer of health of the industry at the start of employment. It should be remembered that it is not only the question of mortality of measles which probably will not be significant but also of the loss of working days due to the illness itself.

Children in camps, nurseries, hospital

and other institutions. In the vaccinated against measles as well as for other current infectious diseases. In regard there is no difference between developed and developing countries. At the age of elementary school all children will as a rule already have measles and are therefore not in need of vaccination.

The problem is more difficult when it comes to the question of those parts of the population that do not live with permanent medical health supervision. In these people it must depend upon the level of measles mortality whether anything should be done or not. Surveys should be made to determine the degree of morbidity and mortality and the general epidemiology of measles in the population. If vaccination is to be introduced it must be a priority drawn up, with regard to the group or groups of the population, which in the first place should be vaccinated. It is, however, better to proceed slowly instead of urgent measures. One has to consider that neither the economic nor the personnel resources at present permit an optimistic view regarding general measles vaccination in future.

Not until the socio-economic development of the country has attained a degree that permits public health authorities to afford general vaccination of the whole population can this be done. At the very remote time the number of susceptible children is probably improved, that measles is no longer a major health problem it is too late for measles vaccination could then be performed. This was discussed for developed countries.

Eradication of measles

The utopia of the future would be the eradication of measles. Lately there has been much talk about the eradication of malaria and tuberculosis but the aim will probably not be attained in our lifetime if ever. So far it has not been possible by active measures to eradicate a single infectious disease. Theoretically however measles could be eradicated by general mass vaccination of all people all over the world. Practically this will never happen. Vaccination in the long run will not be accepted by people, who are not interested in this procedure because they have no experience of the danger of the disease. The persistence of measles vaccination is therefore from psychological reasons not possible. Sooner or later people will lose interest in the procedure, oppose it, and after a certain lapse of time a gradually increasing number of the population will be unvaccinated and thus susceptible to infection. There is reason to believe that measles virus will not for ever be eradicated by general vaccination even if mass vaccination will prevent all clinical cases of the disease in human beings. There may be reservoirs of virus in animals, for instance in monkeys, and the virus may spread from these to man, if mass vaccination has stopped.

It seems to be more reasonable to try to eradicate serious types of measles by the means at our disposal. Improving the natural resistance of people by adequate nutrition, international support of the socio-economical development of the countries, promotion of public health services by education and training of health personnel, vaccination of susceptible institu-

tionalized children and children suffering from any kind of disorder threatening to decrease the resistance. Adequate use of antibiotics against respiratory complications, etc.

Conclusions

Current scientific studies performed all over the world will probably eventually lead to the production of a vaccine against measles, that will be safe, acceptable, and effective. An effective and safe measles vaccine is to be regarded as a great benefit to mankind and will certainly save many thousands of children's lives.

A mass vaccination against measles will be unlikely. Public Health authorities can hardly support financially or be willing to undertake or to push the introduction of this immunization in such public drives, as we have seen in vaccination against poliomyelitis. The propaganda of this vaccination was successful. Polio attacks both children and adults, and is a far greater threat against the lives and health of people than measles. It was therefore far more easy to persuade the populations to give their consent to mass-vaccination. In socio-economically developed countries measles is a rather benign disease and it is therefore not possible to persuade parents of the necessity of the vaccination. Measles vaccination will be a matter of decision of the individual physician attending child welfare centers and institutions for children. In developing countries measles is a more serious disease but mass-vaccination of the whole population will not be possible even with international financial support due to lack of sufficient health personnel to the size of the popu-

lation and to local geographical conditions against measles will play an important role in future vaccination all over the world the vaccination

References

1. BECK, V. Measles epidemics in Greenland. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 252, 1962.
2. CARLSTEDT, GUN. Relation of measles to other viruses. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 487, 1962.
3. EN KES, J. F. KATZ, S. L. and HOLLOWAY, A. Development of attenuated measles virus vaccines. A summary of recent investigations. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 335, 1964.
4. CHEN, F. A. and ROSENTHAL, I. M. Electroencephalography in natural and attenuated measles. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 338, 1964.
5. HEDER, T. Morbilitäts-epidemiologiska betraktelser i förbindelse med införandet av massvaccination (Measles-epidemiologic considerations in connection with the introduction of mass vaccination). *Nord Med* 70: 1-18, 1963.
6. HENDERICKSE, R. G. MONTGOMERY, D. SHERMAN, P. M. and VAN DER WALL, H. M. Studies on measles vaccination in Nigerian children. *Brit Med J* 1: 470, 1964.
7. International Conference on Measles Immunization, Bethesda, Rept. 7-9, 1961. *Amer J Dis Child* 101: 211-231, 1962.
8. KATZ, S. L., EN KES, J. F. and HOLLOWAY, A. Use of Edmonston attenuated measles virus. A summary of three year's experience. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 340, 1962.
9. KECOMAN, R. Studies in measles vaccination. *Acta Paediatr*, 2: 12, 1964.
10. LANGFORD, A. D. Medical importance of measles. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 224, 1962.
11. Measles vaccination. *WHO Chronicle* 18: 81, 1964.
12. Measles vaccines. Report of a WHO scientific group. *WHO Tech Rep Serie* 263, 1963.
13. MORLEY, H. C. Measles in Nigeria. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 230, 1964.
14. PANG, P. L. Epidemic of measles on Faros Island. *Banietti Loez* 1: 70, 1964.
15. RISTOMI, O. BOCCARDO, H., BORDOYO, J. M. and AMILO, R. J. Medical importance of measles in Chile. *Amer J Dis Child* 101: 330, 1962.
16. ROSSIGNOL, F. C. Measles. Clinical features, pathogenesis, pathology and complications. *Amer J Dis Child* 102: 266, 1962.
17. STRÖM, J. Om korvänkningstrendens i Års vanliga epidemiska infektionssjukdomar belyst förhållandena i Stockholm (On the morbidity rate of our most common epidemic infectious diseases facilitated by the conditions in Stockholm). *Svensk Med Tidn* 36: 2, 1936.
18. STRÖM, J. Dödlighet och dödsorsaker hos spädbarn och småbarn mellan 1 och 5 år i Sverige från 1911-1945. (Mortality and causes of death of infant and small children 1-5 years of age in Sweden in 1911-1945). *Nord Med*, 41: 918, 1949.
19. TILGA, P. V. CHA, O. P. and BRADY, O. V. Importance of measles in India. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 226, 1962.
20. WILSON, G. R. Scientific problems remaining unanswered. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 818, 1962.
21. WILSON, G. R. Measles as a universal disease. *Amer J Dis Child* 103: 219, 1962.

Submitted June 30, 1964

Department of Pediatrics
Karolinska sjukhuset
Stockholm 80
Sweden

PROCEEDINGS OF PEDIATRIC SOCIETY

Pediatric Society of South Sweden

Meeting, May 10 1964

P Selander and G Theander Cholecystography in Children with Recurrent Abdominal Pains

The gallbladder in 178 children was roentgenographically examined with Billjodan[®]-Natrium (sodium iopanoate) for variation in shape so-called polikilomorphosis. Such variation in adults has been found to be correlated with biliary colic. Of the children studied, 8 had a history of typical biliary colic, 89 of recurrent abdominal pains (r.a.p.) and 43 of abdominal colic other than r.a.p. In the remaining series of 38 children no history of abdominal pain had been obtained. The incidences of polikilomorphosis recorded in the respective groups were 60, 58, 42, and 29%. It seems probable that r.a.p. in children is not infrequently due to biliary dysfunction.

H Ekel and Asthmatoïd Bronchitis in Children from 0-7 Years of Age

In order to obtain an idea of the frequency and prognosis of bronchitis with asthmatoïd symptoms, all the cases in children of the age group 0-7 years who have been treated between 1949-1963 at the Children's Hospital in Malmö under the diagnosis of asthmatoïd bronchitis have been compiled. The criterion for the diagnosis has been infection of the upper respiratory tract which within a couple of days has been accompanied by gradually increasing expiratory dyspnea (wheezing) coughing and often fever. The total number of cases was 980 of which 637 were boys and 343 girls. About three fourths of the children became ill before reaching one year of age. The most common age was 5-6 months. During the ten year

period 1949-1958, 603 patients were treated and during the five-year period 1959-1963, 478 patients. A comparison with, firstly the total number of live births in Malmö and, secondly the hospital admittance figures for the same fifteen year period indicates that there was an absolute increase in the frequency of the disease. About three fourths of the patients had had asthmatoïd bronchitis only once. Half of these were uncomplicated cases (no otitis, bronchopneumonia, etc.) and had been admitted only on this occasion. The other half had complications or had received treatment all other times for infection of the upper respiratory tract: otitis or bronchopneumonia. Of the remaining one-fourth, about two-thirds had recurrences up to four times within two years after the initial occurrence of the disease, while one-third had more than four recurrences. With the help of the hospital records and questionnaires the health of the children treated during the period 1949-1958 was judged at least five years after the onset of the illness. Data could be obtained from 321 of the 603 patients. Of 147 who had had one attack, 15 had developed genuine asthma. Of 74 who had had several attacks, 38 had developed asthma. The risk of developing asthma after one attack was therefore 10% but after repeated attacks, 50%. Familial allergy occurred in 20% of the 132 children who were healthy after the five-year period, in 40% of the 18 children who had had one attack and in 60% of the 38 children who had had several attacks and who after five years had developed genuine asthma. Of these 38 children, 30% had become ill after seven months of age and 53% after one year of age. Of the 38 children who had had

repeated relapses but after five years were healthy. 70% had become ill after seven months of age and 5% after one year of age. Of 123 children who had had only one attack and after five years were healthy 55% had become ill after seven months of age and only 18% after one year of age. The differences are statistically significant and indicate that the prognosis was poorer the older the child was at the time of the initial attack of asthmatoïd bronchitis.

V. Bergfors. Partial Addison's Disease

A nine-year-old girl who repeatedly had been hospitalized for vomiting and diarrhea was shown to have a marked eosinophilia. Repeated Thorn tests were pathological, scores of 17-OH-CS and 17 KB in the urine showed decreased values, and deuterone-bearing fractions were greatly reduced. The ratio Na/K was low in the serum and high in the urine. She was not hyperpigmented, the thyroidal and parathyroidal functions were normal and there was no candidiasis. During the ACTH infusion test she vomited heavily and there was a rapid deterioration of her general condition. Cortisol in the serum diminished rapidly meanwhile. There was no increase of 17-OH-CS and 17 KB in the urine. For approximately 18 months she has been given Cortisol 20 mg/24 h and Florinef 0.1 mg/24 h. The electrolyte balance became rapidly normalized, the general condition is satisfactory as well as the rate of growth.

K. O. Nilner. Monarthrit

Of 12 boys and 7 girls with monarthrit the youngest was 2½ years and the eldest 14. In 17 cases the knee joint was affected. In 13 cases different infections had preceded the arthritis, and in one case the disease developed simultaneously with erythema nodosum. Fever was present in 8 cases but was quickly normalized. In one-fourth of the cases hemolytic streptococci were present in the throat. The sedimentation rate was elevated in 11 cases usually to more than 30 mm/h. The antistreptolysin titer was po-

sitive in 6 cases of 18 the test phyllophorin in 13 of 18, C-reactive protein in 6 of 16. Gamma globulin was increased and the alpha fraction in 10 of 13 examined cases. All cases were negative for glomerulonephritis. Roentgen examination revealed changes in the joints in only one case. Examination of 16 joints after an average of 4.3 years showed that 13 were entirely asymptomatic.

P. Selander and A. Torold. Encopresis

Of 180 cases of encopresis at the Children's Clinic in Malmö 72% were boys. Forty per cent had primary encopresis. It began fecal soiling after 1½ years of age. Treatment was sought earlier for girls than for boys. Encopresis was probably most common in the lowest social class (social group III). Obstipation, enuresis and nervous symptoms were present in 37-43 and 60% of the cases, respectively. A follow-up revealed that 61% had been entirely cured after only internal pediatric treatment (laxatives, enemas). A comparison of the cured and non-cured cases showed no significant differences as to sex, age, primary versus secondary encopresis, obstipation, concomitant nervous symptoms or intellectual retardation. Few of the children had psychoneurosis, but among the prolonged and most refractory cases there was a significant preponderance of abnormal personalities.

L. Eriksson. Spontaneously Healed Meconium Peritonitis

The boy is the fourth child of healthy parents. The pregnancy and birth were normal. The liquor amnii was thick and yellowish green. It was observed at birth that the child had marked contractions of the epigastrium during inspiration. Roentgen examination revealed extensive calcifications in the abdomen typical of meconium peritonitis. The same changes were found in the scrotum. Calcium was found in the right cupola of the diaphragm; here the diaphragm was considerably shrivelled and drawn up. Roentgenography revealed no

passage of the contrast medium out into the abdominal cavity. After a couple of weeks the respiration began to be normal. Roentgen examination at 2½ months of age showed unchanged calcifications; the diaphragm was low drawn up. At 17 months of age the boy was clinically healthy. A roentgen examination showed considerable regression of the calcifications. Of about 200 reported cases of meconium peritonitis 3 have healed spontaneously.

H. Ekblad and G. Årask: "Collodion Baby"

"Collodion baby" (lamellar ichthyosis in new born) is a rare congenital anomaly. It is often familial. The child is born with a collodion like membrane which covers it

entirely or partly. It can be so extensive that breathing and feeding are difficult. Other malformations occur. Not few of such babies die shortly after birth; those surviving develop ichthyosis. The child in question is the first born of healthy parents with no known heredity for such a disease. At birth the boy's skin was blood-red, shiny, tightly drawn especially over the joints, the movement of which was impeded. Edema developed, especially in the hands and feet. After only a few days the skin dried and scaled off. A histological examination showed hyperkeratosis. The treatment was local soft ointments being used. The boy survived but has now one year later mild form of ichthyosis.

Per Sclander, Malmö

BOOK REVIEW

G. Müller: Der plötzliche Kindstod. Pathologische Anatomie und Dynamik.

Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart 1963. 148 pp. and 56 illustrations. Price DM 9.70.

Sudden death in infancy and childhood is a major problem in pediatrics and also in pediatric pathology as its impact is very poorly compensated by the meagre clinical and morphologic finding in these cases. Dr. Müller's monograph concerns the autopsy findings in 89 children who, from apparent health, suddenly died or were found dead. The author considers the cause of death established in no less than 85 cases. The most common cause was upper respiratory infection (80.7 %), other infections together constituting 24.7. Only 5 instances of cardiovascular malformations were found. In most cases of respiratory infection the findings were very slight in the lungs but they were associated with a prominent cerebral edema which the author considers the final cause of death.

In half of the case-material necrobiotic changes in the lymphoid organs were found

pointing to a fulminating toxic mechanism. The author is very cautious in evaluating the microbiologic findings. Thirty four cases were studied virologically and in 7 there was a cytopathogenic effect, one of them displayed ECHO virus. The main theme is that in the majority of cases there is a toxic stress reaction, notably in the lymphoid apparatus. Although the relevance of these findings is supported by the absence of lymphoid tissue reaction in a control material (8 cases of accidental death) its relative frequency seems remarkable. In a large case series of sudden death in infancy and childhood one would perhaps have expected a more scattered distribution of diseases. It is noteworthy that no abnormalities of the pulmonary arteries with right heart hypertrophy or tumors or lesions of the wall of the pancreas were encountered.

With its excellent illustrations, good typography, experimental findings and histopathologic correlation the monograph is good handbook, particularly for the pediatric pathologist.

Björn Ivarmark, Stockholm

GENERAL INDEX

Authors Index

- Agreus, O 290
 Aarabog, D 393
 Agarwal, K. N 149
 Agarwal, K. N and Bratteby L. E. 143
 Allgén, L. G *et al.* 491
 Andersson, H. *et al.* 481
 Andersvall, L. *et al.* 493
 Atkins, L. *et al.* 371

 Bakwin, H. 79
 Barr M. *et al.* 1
 Bengtsson, E. and Nordenstam, H. 494
 Berg, F. Suppl 156-103
 Bergfors, P.-O 92
 Bergstrand, C. G and Qvist, O 339
 Bergstrand, C.-G *et al.* 493
 Bergström, J *et al.* 493
 Black, J. A. 109
 Blankenship W. *et al.* 541
 Bodian, M. *et al.* 282
 Bonnevier J. O *et al.* 55
 Borgfors, N 800
 Borgfors, N *et al.* 117
 Braestrup, P. W 467
 Brante G. *et al.* 483, Supplement 187
 Bratteby L. E. and Agarwal, K. N 143
 Brundeliet P. J and Suckdorff, J. hanna 221

 Carlestam, J 298
 Carlström, Gun *et al.* 533
 Cavell, B. *et al.* 203
 Cedergren, B. *et al.* 1230
 Celander O 493
 Christensen, Erna and Vøsterdal, J 488
 Cook, C. D. *et al.* 401
 Crawford J. N 553

 Dacie J. N. *et al.* 188
 Danielsson D and Laurell G 49
 Deodar N. *et al.* 42, 101
 Dintler N. Suppl 166-140
 Doniach, Deborah and Nilsson, L. R. 53

 Eeg-Olofsson, O. *et al.* 493
 Ekclund, H. 506
 Ekclund, H. and Krook, U 600
 Ekblom O. *et al.* 377
 Engström, Inga 345, 481 Supplement 155
 Engström, L. and Kager L. 376, 379
 Erikson, V 489
 Eriksson, L. 509
 Estborn, H. and Hillborg P.-O 535

 Feyerhag H. and Fock, G 496
 Finley S. C. *et al.* 172
 Finley W. H. *et al.* 172
 Fock, G. and Feyerhag, G 496
 Forsman, H. and Hagberg B. 0
 Frantzen, Esther *et al.* 484
 Fritsch, B. *et al.* 18

 Gamstorp, Ingrid 403, 570
 Gamstorp, Ingrid *et al.* 11
 Garby L. *et al.* 33, 163
 Gard, S. *et al.* 533
 Germa Hedman, Sylvia and Köhlin, P. 81
 Geniz, J. *et al.* 493
 Grotte, G. *et al.* 182
 Gruenwald, P. 470
 Gullmar Margareta *et al.* 93
 Gustavson, K. H. *et al.* 17, 371 454
 Gyllenward, A. and Mahström, S. 91

 Haavardsholme Finne P. 50
 Hagberg B. and Forsman, H. 70
 Hagberg, B. *et al.* 454, 491
 Hagne Ingrid *et al.* 491
 Hahn, P. *et al.* 343
 Hall, B. 93, 478, Supplement 184
 Hallman, N. 294
 Halvorsen, K. *et al.* 393
 Hambræus, L. and de Hervey G 213
 Hamfelt A. *et al.* 491
 Hansson, O. *et al.* 491
 Hansel, C. 484
 Hart M. C. *et al.* 401

Hedeland, H 297
 Henry J R K *et al* 188
 Hevesy G de and Hambræus, L. 13
 Hevesy G de *et al* 93
 Hillborg, P-O and Estborn, H 558
 Hjelt L. *et al* 463
 Hökfelt H *et al* 205
 Holman, R *et al* 51
 Holst H. E. *et al* 117
 Hultman, E *et al* 492

Iha, D O *et al* 377

Jagenburg, O R. *et al* 18
 Jalling B *et al* 172, 491
 Jegler W *et al* 541
 Jernellius, H. 247
 Johansson, Barbro *et al* 491

Kager L. and Engström, L. 326, 329
 Kajser K. *et al* 483 Supplement 157
 Kargsten, L. O 495
 Karlström, F 493
 Käse, A. 390
 Kildeberg P 132 505, 517
 Kili Ragnhild and Rokkones, T 366
 Killander J *et al* 55
 Kitchin, A. *et al* 541
 Kjellman, B 158.
 Knutrud, O *et al* 392
 Knutson, H *et al* 454
 Köhlin, P and Garmo Hedman, Sylvia 91
 Koldovsky O *et al* 343
 Kouvvalainen, K. *et al* 466
 Kõvamees, A. and Okmian, L. G 65
 Krook, G and Ekkelund, H 600

Lagercrantz, R. 296
 Lagercrantz, R. *et al* 230, 533
 Laurell D and Danielsson, D 49
 Lawn, L. and McCance, R. A. 317
 Leduc, J *et al* 13
 Lennax Buchthal, Margaret 485
 Lidén, G *et al* 117
 Lightwood, H *et al* 282
 Lincoln, K. and Winberg J 307 447
 Lind, J Suppl 156 9
 Lind, J *et al* 13, 51 541
 Lindblad, B *et al* 493
 Lodin, H. and Sjögren Iréne 583

MacGillivray J B *et al* 188
 Malmström, S. and Gyllenward, Å. 91
 Marstrand J 391
 McCance R. A. and Lawn, L. 31
 Melikhar V *et al* 243
 Moe, P J 423 578
 Moe, P J *et al* 39

Nilsson, K. O 599
 Nilsson, R. L. and Danilach, Deborah 255
 Nilsson, L. R. and Persson, P. S. 323
 Nilsson, R. L. *et al* 117
 Nordenstam, H. and Bengtsson, E. 484
 Nordhagen, R. *et al* 393
 Norrby E. *et al* nov
 Novák, M. *et al* 243
 Nygaard, Anne H *et al* 484
 Nyström, B. *et al* 230

Öckerman, P. A. *et al* 482, 492, Supplement 157
 Oftedal, G 395
 Ohlson, Marianna *et al* 93
 Okmian, L. G. and Kõvamees, A. 65
 Olding, L. *et al* 55, 183
 Olsen, J *et al* 393
 Ornelas M M *et al* 401

Patrick, L. *et al* 371
 Pejmo J and Silverstolpe, L. 494
 Pettersson, Anna Lena Suppl 156 70
 Persson, P. S. and Nilsson, L. R. 323
 Persson, B. *et al* 491
 Petersén, L. *et al* 491
 Pickering D 501
 Polák, K. 417
 Příbylová, H. and Znamenáček, K. 241, 301

Qvist, O and Bergstrand, C. G 339

Rajalakshmi, R. *et al* 42 101
 Ramakrishnan, C V *et al* 42 101
 Refsum, B. Jr *et al* 392
 Robertson, H. *et al* 33
 Rooh Nordlund, A. E. *et al* 49
 Rokkones, T. and Kill, Ragnhild 336
 Rootwelt, K. and Steen-Johansen, J 294
 Rudhe, U. *et al* 1 433

Sacker L. S. *et al* 188
 Sandegård, E. *et al* 203

- Sare-Söderbergh, J. et al. 493
 Schjelt-Pedersen, Ruth 480
 Schmitzer, L. B. et al. 18
 Segerstedt, Torgny T. Suppl. 156: 7
 Seip, M. and Trygstad, O. 837
 Selander, P. and Theander, O. 598
 Selander, P. and Torold, A. 599
 Sheldon, W. et al. 27^a
 Silverdalpe, L. and Frijsen, J. 484
 Sjögren, Iréne and Lodin, H. 553
 Sjögren, Iréne et al. 183
 Skjöl, E. et al. 23 165 454
 Skogseth, P. A. 393
 Sköldenberg, Birgit 484
 Skyberg, D. 290
 Söderhjelm, L. et al. 91
 Sten-Johansen, J. and Rootwelt, A. 394
 Stenålskj, R. 103
 Steinicke, O. 483, 489
 Steinicke, O. and Zachau-Christiansen, B. 480
 Stern, L. et al. 12
 Stetter, G. et al. 93
 Stoa, K. P. 392
 Stokendorf, Johanna and Brundeler, P. J. 221
 Stenander, H. M. and Tveitå, E. 39^a
 Takkanen, R. L. 293
 Theander, O. and Selander, P. 598
 Thorsén, C. 344, Suppl. 143
 Thomsen, Agnet. 231
 Tizard, J. P. M. et al. 188
 Torold, A. and Selander, P. 599
 Trygstad, O. and Seip, M. 837
 Turell, R. et al. 433, 491
 Tveitå, E. and Stenander, H. M. 292
 Valimäen, I. 294
 Vahlquist, B. 9 Suppl. 136: 2
 Vahlquist, B. and Wallgren, A. (Ed.) 48.,
 Supplement 156
 Vahlquist, B. et al. 55
 Vesterdal, J. and Christensen, Erna 488
 Vestermark, B. and Vestermark, S. 363
 Vestermark, S. and Vestermark, B. 336
 Vuffe, J.-C. et al. 23, 163
 Wallgren, A. 483, 591 Suppl. 136: 11
 Wallgren, A. and Vahlquist, B. (Ed.) 482,
 Supplement 156
 Wallgren, G. et al. 1
 Wanz Höckert, O. et al. 463
 Weirung, K. W. 393
 Wildell, R. 296, 297 298
 Winberg, J. and Lincoln, K. 30 44
 Wirsching, L. J. 293
 Wolontis, E. et al. 93
 Wolff, H. et al. 484
 Zachau-Christiansen, B. and Steinicke, O. 480
 Zetterqvist, P. et al. 377
 Znamenacek, K. and Příbylová, H. 41 301
 Subject Index
 Accidents, submersion, resuscitation of child
 ren after 496
 Addison's disease 509
 Alkalosis, metabolic in pyloric stenosis 12
 Allergic disorders
 asthma, corticosteroid therapy, effect on
 the blood 143 149
 symptom-free pulmonary function in
 401
 asthmatic bronchitis 508
 Ammonia
 tyrosine metabolism, impaired, with ric
 kets 12
 Amniotic fluid erythrocyte levels in 369
 Asthma
 effect of corticosteroid therapy on the
 blood 143, 149
 provoked attack of with respiratory
 studies 345
 respiratory studies in different stages of
 481 Suppl. 155
 symptom-free pulmonary function in 401
 wheezing bronchitis 498
 Bacteriology
 E. coli, enteropathogenic in river water 49
 staphylococci in maternity ward 230
 BCG vaccination, fatal generalised 33
 Bibliography of Kils Roesen von Rosenheim
 Suppl. 156: 140
 Blood
 acid phosphatase activity in (Gaucher
 disease 536
 apolipoproteinemia, congenital 63
 granulocytosis, congenital 189

- anemia, hemolytic, hereditary non-spherocytic 390
- arterial blood sampling in small infants 237
- beta 2M globulin, marked elevation of in plasma-cell pneumonia 465
- cortisol content and transcortin binding of cortisol in newborns and mothers 393
- exchange transfusions in a rural hospital 91
- effectiveness of 417
- excess lactate, significance of in newborns 301
- free fatty acids in newborn infants 343
- glucose in newborn infant 343
- hemoglobin, fetal and adult circulating and fecal excretion of 33
- mass in asthmatic children, effect of corticosteroid therapy 143, 149
- hypogammaglobulinemia, congenital 393
- iron requirements in infancy 423
- leukemia, acute 395
- eosinophilic 494
- mononucleosis, infectious, with hemolytic anemia 494
- therapy with immunoglobulin 494
- neutropenia, congenital, report of 5 cases 188
- red-cell lifespan in newborns 165
- volume in corticosteroid therapy 143, 149
- Rh and ABO incompatibility 393
- immunized pregnancies, erythropoietin levels of the amniotic fluid 269
- serum concentration of Ca and organic P in rickets 105
- content of unsaturated fatty acids 91
- leucine aminopeptidase in neonatal jaundice 158
- thrombocytopenia, familial, sex linked 365
- Haubrich, R.: Klinische Röntgendiagnostik innerer Krankheiten 204
- Hitzig W H Die Plasmaproteine in der klinischen Medizin 399
- Howells, J G: Family Psychiatry 97
- Lincoln, Edith and Sewell, E. M.: Tuberculosis in Children 97
- Lindsten, J: The Nature and Origin of X-Chromosome Aberrations in Turner's Syndrome 299
- Loeb, H.: Contribution à l'étude du métabolisme énergétique de l'enfant 397
- Miller F J W Seal, R. M. E. and Taylor M. D.: Tuberculosis in Children 399
- Müller G Der plötzliche Kindstod. Pathologische Anatomie und Dynamik 600
- Opitz, H. and Schmid, F.: Handbuch der Kinderheilkunde. Vol. V Infektionskrankheiten 96
- Polonovsky C. and Colin, J.: Explorations biologiques en pédiatrie 96
- Protein-Calorie Malnutrition, Mild-Moderate Form. Swedish Nutrition Foundation Symposium 98
- Rosel E. (Ed.): Neue Probleme bei Infektionskrankheiten des Kindes 300
- Rosel, E. (Ed.) Postgraduate Course in Pediatrics. Kinderpsychiatrie in der Praxis 400
- Royer P Mathieu, H. and Häbli, R.: Problèmes actuels de néphrologie infantile 397
- Tönne, W and Friedman, G.: Das Röntgenbild des Schädels bei intrakranieller Drucksteigerung im Wachstumsalter 499
- Via, H L. Aspects : Mécanismes des Hyperamidoaciduries de l'Enfance 500
- Wilkinson, A W (Ed.): Recent Advances in Paediatric Surgery 499
- Cardiovascular system
- aneurysm, cerebral, calcified 293
- aortic hypoplasia 377
- cardiomyopathy in Friedrich's ataxia 358, Suppl 153
- changing circulatory pattern of newborns 541
- Book reviews
- Bax, M. and MacKeith (Ed.): Minimal Cerebral Function 204
- Congenital Defects. International Medical Congress 999
- Fanconi, G and Wallgren, A Lehrbuch der Pädiatrie 97

- hemodynamic studies in newborns 1
 neonatal paroxysmal tachycardia with
 pre-excitation 296
- Celiac disease possible factors in incidence of
 109
- Convulsions, *f. brevis* 484
- Correspondence between Vile Rosen von Ro-
 senstein and Albrecht von Haller
 Suppl 184: 103
- Cryptorchidism, late and early operations of
 339
- Dermatology
 dermatitis enteropathica 393
 ichthyosis, congenital 600
- Diabetes
 celiac disease in a diabetic child 398
 conduction velocity of peripheral motor
 nerves 403
 muscle glycogen in 493
 Prader Willi syndrome in prediabetes 70
 skin biopsy in 493
- Electroencephalography in subdural effusion
 491
- Ellis-van Creveld syndrome multiple cases
 of in a family 383
- Encopresis 600
- Endocrine organs
 Addison's disease 599
 adrenal adenoma with aldosteronism 203
 goitre adolescent cytological biopsy of
 333
 and hypothyroidism due to defect
 in hormone synthesis 394
 non-endemic and deafness 117
 hereditary pituitary dwarfism treated
 with human growth hormone 527
 Prader Willi syndrome 70
 pruriyugum coli syndrome in males 481
 thyroiditis, auto-immune 333
 Turner syndrome with unimpaired ova-
 rian function 397
- Exchange transfusion, effectiveness of 417
- Feeding
 breast-feeding unsaturated fatty acids in
 serum 91
 cow milk, unsaturated fatty acid in
 serum 91
- Fetus
 cord around the neck 553
- Gastro-intestinal tract
 abdominal pain, recurrent cholecysto-
 graphy in 593
 celiac disease in diabetic child 398
 with cystine-lysinuria 213
 dermatitis enteropathica 393
 encopresis 599
 gastric ulcer in children 492
 gastronomy (indirect blood gas analysis)
 493
 malformations, intestinal III
 massive resection of small intestine in
 newborns, intestinal function after
 578
 meconium peritonitis, spontaneously
 healed 599
 pancreas, hypoplasia of exocrine secretion
 582
 pyloric stenosis, metabolic acidosis in 132
 ulcerous colitis 296
- Genit. organs
 Gaucher's disease juvenile form of 558
 cryptorchidism, late and early operation of
 339
- Genetics
 chromosomal anomalies in two siblings
 371
 translocation (4-5/21 21) in malfor-
 mations 172
 mongolism in newborns 4 & Suppl 184
 thrombocytopenia, familial, sex linked 363
 Turner syndrome with unimpaired ova-
 rian function 397
- Glytogeosis type I in four siblings 483
 Suppl 187
- Glytogen storage disease 492
- Goitre adolescent, cytologic aspiration
 biopsy 333
- Granuloma, eosinophilic 298
- Growth and development secular changes
 78
- Heart
 cardiovascular disorders in diaphragmatic
 hernia 231
- Hemorrhagic disorders
 (thrombocytopenia, familial, sex linked 363
- Hormones
 aldosteronism, primary in adrenal ad-
 enoma 203

- anabolic steroid (Dianabol) in muscular disease 570
- catecholamine excretion in newborns 13
- corticosteroids, effect of on red-cell volume and hemoglobin mass in asthmatic children 143 149
- human growth hormone, treatment of pituitary dwarfism 5*7
- parathyroid extract, effect on serum Ca and organic P in rickets 105
- pituitary dwarfism 527
- thyroid, defect of synthesis of 394
- Hydrocephalus in choroid plexus papilloma 183
- Hygiene
- E. coli* in River Fyris, Uppsala 49
- Hypoglycemia, idiopathic 97
- Hypoxia as stimulus of catecholamine excretion in newborns 13
- Iatromechanics, Rosén von Rosenstein and Suppl 186: 70
- Ichthyosis (colloidal baby) 600
- Immunology
- antibody titers 8-9 months after vaccination with inactivated measles vaccine 533
- autoimmune thyroiditis, clinical studies 255
- beta 2M globulin, marked elevation of in plasma cell pneumonia 465
- Infections
- in maternity wards 230
- measles, antibodies 8-9 months after vaccination with inactivated measles vaccine 533
- pertussis with pulmonary complications 47
- Jaundice neonatal, serum leucine amino peptidase in 158
- Kidney
- biopsy, pediatric viewpoints on 493
- tubular defect 18
- Kostmann disease 188
- Lactation, studies on human 42, 101
- Live
- chylocystography in children with recurrent abdominal pains 598
- carboxia, familial 18
- Malformations
- aortic hypoplasia 377
- chondro-ectodermal dysplasia 332
- chromosomal translocation (4-5'21) 2; 17
- diaphragmatic hernia with cardiovascular disorders 221
- intestinal 65
- pterygium colli syndrome in the male 45
- Measles Vaccination with inactivated vaccine 533
- future of 591
- Mental retardation
- conduction velocity of peripheral motor nerves in 408
- Metabolism
- inborn error of 483, Suppl 187
- agammeoglobulinemia, congenital 2
- cystinuria 213
- defects in synthesis of thyroid hormone 394
- maple syrup urine disease 356
- phenylketonuria 484
- tyrosin metabolism 18
- respiratory in newborns, parameters in 241
- Milk
- breast, enzyme content of during lactation 101
- vitamin contents of effect of vitamin supplementation 4
- Mongolism in newborn infant 93, 474, Suppl 154
- Mononucleosis, infectious, therapy with immunoglobulin 494
- with hemolytic anemia 494
- Newborn infants
- arterial blood sampling 237
- bacteriuria, quantitative in 307
- blood, content of free fatty acid and glucose 343
- excess lactate significance of 301
- bilirubin values after vitamin K to the mothers 394
- catecholamine excretion in 13
- cellular urinary excretion in 44
- circulatory pattern of 341
- cortisol concentration of in plasma 283

- striol in urine in congenital dysplasia of the hip 32*
- exchange transfusion, effectiveness of 417
- hemodynamic studies in 1
- herpes simplex, generalized 390
- hyaline membranes, late stages of 453
- jaundice, serum leucine amino-peptidase in 153
- major resection of small intestine in testicular function after 578
- mongolism in 93, Suppl 184
- paroxysmal tachycardia with pre-excitation 296
- plasma fibrinolytic activity in 326 329
- proteinuria, physiologic 59
- respiratory distress syndrome course of 470
- metabolism, parameters of 241
- erous system
- cerebral aneurysm, calcified 298
- cerebrospinal fluid, sulphamide concentration in 487
- conduction velocity of peripheral motor nerve 408
- convulsions in idiopathic hypoglycemia 297
- febrile 485
- Friedreich ataxia, cardiomyopathy in 233, Suppl 183
- hydrocephalus, infantile and choroid plexus papilloma 182
- Krabbe disease 483
- meningoencephalitis, serous, with pos. cold agglutination test 494
- mongolism in newborns, cytogenetic study of 478, Suppl 184 83
- subdural effusion, EEG in 491
- tuberous sclerosis 390
- Werdnig Hoffmann disease 483
- Sarrius, infections, with respiratory viruses 93
- Nutrition
- diet and state of health of rural Finnish children 293
- iron requirements in infancy 422
- Ovarianus, treatment with Vanquin 459
- Pancreas
- exocrine congenital hypoplasia of 282
- Pediatricians, need of in Finland 294
- Phenylketonuria 484
- Placenta, artificial 317
- Poisoning
- salicylate 489 501
- tranquilizers 490
- Premature (infants)
- disturbance of hydrogen ion balance 503 517
- vitamin A in infants 491
- Respiratory tract
- antibodies against virus infections 93
- asthma, effect of corticosteroid therapy on the blood 143, 149
- respiratory studies in provoked attacks 345
- asthmatoïd bronchitis in small children 598
- diaphragmatic hernia, congenital 221
- distress syndrome in newborns, course of 470
- hyaline membranes, late stages of 453
- interstitial plasma cell pneumonia, marked elevation of beta 2M globulin in 483
- perusal with pulmonary complications 247
- pneumonia, epidemic, in infant 391
- pulmonary function in symptom-free asthmatic patients 401
- studies of mechanics of breathing lung volumes and ventilatory capacity in asthmatic children 481 Suppl 153
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- monarthritis 509
- Rickets
- in renal tubular defects and cirrhosis of the liver 18
- parathyroid extract, effect of on serum concentration of Ca and organics P 103
- Rosén von Rosenstein and his textbook in Pediatrics 482, Suppl 155, Suppl 156: 7 Suppl 156: 8, 8 ppl 156. 11
- Skeleton
- dysplasia of the hip, striol in the urine in 32*
- eosinophilic granuloma 298
- monarthritis 509
- Sensory organs

- deafness in non-endemic goitre 117
eye-symptoms in dermatitis enteropathica 293
Social pediatrics 294, 295
Sulphonamide concentration in the cerebro-spinal fluid after one oral dose of Lederkyn 487
Submersion, resuscitation of children after 490
Therapy
 drug sulphonamide 93
Tryptophane-metabolism, impaired 491
Tumors
 adenoma, adrenal, with aldosteronism 203
 papilloma of choroid plexus with hydrocephalus 182
Urinary tract
 bacteriuria in newborn infants 207
 cellular excretion in unselected neonates 447
 estril in the urine in congenital dysplasia of the hip 292
 ketonaciduria, late manifesting variant of branched-chained 336
 multilocular kidney 392
 proteinuria, physiologic neonatal 394
Virology
 herpes simplex, generalized in neonates 390
 respiratory-antibodies against 93
Vitamins
 breast milk, effect of dietary supplementation 4., 101
 vitamin A poisoning 491
 vitamin B -dependency syndrome 491
 vitamin K administration to mothers, its influence on serum bilirubin values in the infants 284
Werdnig Hoffmann disease late cases 488

